

John J. Quinn · Kyung-Soo Yi

Solid State Physics

Principles and
Modern Applications

 Springer

Solid State Physics

John J. Quinn · Kyung-Soo Yi

Solid State Physics

Principles and Modern Applications

 Springer

Prof. John J. Quinn
University of Tennessee
Dept. Physics
Knoxville TN 37996
USA
jjquinn@utk.edu

Prof. Kyung-Soo Yi
Pusan National University
Dept. Physics
30 Jangjeon-Dong
Pusan 609-735
Korea, Republic of (South Korea)
ksyi@pusan.ac.kr

ISBN 978-3-540-92230-8 e-ISBN 978-3-540-92231-5
DOI 10.1007/978-3-540-92231-5
Springer Dordrecht Heidelberg London New York

Library of Congress Control Number: 2009929177

© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2009

This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilm or in any other way, and storage in data banks. Duplication of this publication or parts thereof is permitted only under the provisions of the German Copyright Law of September 9, 1965, in its current version, and permission for use must always be obtained from Springer. Violations are liable to prosecution under the German Copyright Law.

The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.

Cover design: eStudio Calamar S.L.

Printed on acid-free paper

Springer is part of Springer Science+Business Media (www.springer.com)

The book is dedicated to Betsy Quinn and Young-Sook Yi. 1

Preface

This textbook had its origin in several courses taught for two decades (1965– 4
1985) at Brown University by one of the authors (JJQ). The original assigned 5
text for the first semester course was the classic “Introduction to Solid State 6
Physics” by C. Kittel. Many topics not covered in that text were included in 7
subsequent semesters because of their importance in research during the 1960s 8
and 1970s. A number of the topics covered were first introduced in a course 9
on “Many Body Theory of Metals” given by JJQ as a Visiting Lecturer at 10
the University of Pennsylvania in 1961–1962, and later included in a course at 11
Purdue University when he was a Visiting Professor (1964–1965). A sojourn 12
into academic administration in 1984 removed JJQ from teaching for 8 years. 13
On returning to a full time teaching–research professorship at the University 14
of Tennessee, he again offered a 1 year graduate course in Solid State Physics. 15
The course was structured so that the first semester (roughly the first half 16
of the text) introduced all the essential concepts for students who wanted 17
exposure to solid state physics. The first semester could cover topics from the 18
first nine chapters. The second semester covered a selection of more advanced 19
topics for students intending to do research in this field. One of the co-authors 20
(KSY) took this course in Solid State Physics as a PhD student at Brown 21
University. He added to and improved the lecture while teaching the subject 22
at Pusan National University from 1984. The text is a true collaborative effort 23
of the co-authors. 24

The advanced topics in the second semester are covered briefly, but thor- 25
oughly enough to convey the basic physics of each topic. References point the 26
students who want more detail in the right direction. An entirely different 27
set of advanced topics could have been chosen in the place of those in the 28
text. The choice was made primarily because of the research interests of the 29
authors. 30

In addition to Kittel’s classic *Introduction to Solid State Physics*, 7th 31
edn. (Wiley, New York, 1995), other books that influenced the evolution of 32
this book are: *Methods of Quantum Field Theory in Statistical Physics* ed. by 33
A.A. Abrikosov, L.P. Gorkov, I.E. Dzyaloshinsky (Prentice-Hall, Englewood, 34

VIII Preface

NJ, 1963); *Solid State Physics* ed. by N.W. Ashcroft, N.D. Mermin 35
 (Saunders's College, New York, 1975); *Introduction to Solid State Theory* ed. 36
 by O. Madelung (Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, 1978); and *Fun-* 37
damentals of Semiconductors ed. by P.Y. Yu, M. Cardona (Springer, Berlin, 38
 Heidelberg, New York, 1995). 39

Many graduate students at Brown, Tennessee, and Pusan have helped to 40
 improve these lecture notes by pointing out sections that were difficult to 41
 understand, and by catching errors in the text. Dr. Alex Tselis presented 42
 the authors with his carefully written notes of the course at Brown when 43
 he changed his field of study to medical science. We are grateful to all the 44
 students and colleagues who have contributed to making the lecture notes 45
 better. 46

Both the co-authors want to acknowledge the encouragement and support 47
 of their families. The book is dedicated to them. 48

Knoxville and Pusan,
 August 2008

John J. Quinn 49
Kyung-Soo Yi 50

	51
Contents	52
Part I Basic Concepts in Solid-State Physics	53
1 Crystal Structures	3 54
1.1 Crystal Structure and Symmetry Groups	3 55
1.2 Common Crystal Structures	10 56
1.3 Reciprocal Lattice	15 57
1.4 Diffraction of X-Rays	16 58
1.4.1 Bragg Reflection	17 59
1.4.2 Laue Equations	17 60
1.4.3 Ewald Construction	19 61
1.4.4 Atomic Scattering Factor	20 62
1.4.5 Geometric Structure Factor	22 63
1.4.6 Experimental Techniques	23 64
1.5 Classification of Solids	24 65
1.5.1 Crystal Binding	24 66
1.6 Binding Energy of Ionic Crystals	27 67
Problems	34 68
2 Lattice Vibrations	37 69
2.1 Monatomic Linear Chain	37 70
2.2 Normal Modes	41 71
2.3 Mössbauer Effect	44 72
2.4 Optical Modes	48 73
2.5 Lattice Vibrations in Three Dimensions	50 74
2.5.1 Normal Modes	52 75
2.5.2 Quantization	53 76
2.6 Heat Capacity of Solids	54 77
2.6.1 Einstein Model	55 78
2.6.2 Modern Theory of the Specific Heat of Solids	57 79
2.6.3 Debye Model	59 80

X Contents

2.6.4	Evaluation of Summations over Normal Modes for the Debye Model	81 61 82
2.6.5	Estimate of Recoil Free Fraction in Mössbauer Effect	62 83
2.6.6	Lindemann Melting Formula	63 84
2.6.7	Critical Points in the Phonon Spectrum	65 85
2.7	Qualitative Description of Thermal Expansion	67 86
2.8	Anharmonic Effects	69 87
2.9	Thermal Conductivity of an Insulator	71 88
2.10	Phonon Collision Rate	72 89
2.11	Phonon Gas	73 90
	Problems	75 91
3	Free Electron Theory of Metals	79 92
3.1	Drude Model	79 93
3.2	Electrical Conductivity	79 94
3.3	Thermal Conductivity	80 95
3.4	Wiedemann–Franz Law	82 96
3.5	Criticisms of Drude Model	82 97
3.6	Lorentz Theory	82 98
3.6.1	Boltzmann Distribution Function	83 99
3.6.2	Relaxation Time Approximation	83 100
3.6.3	Solution of Boltzmann Equation	83 101
3.6.4	Maxwell–Boltzmann Distribution	84 102
3.7	Sommerfeld Theory of Metals	84 103
3.8	Review of Elementary Statistical Mechanics	86 104
3.8.1	Fermi–Dirac Distribution Function	87 105
3.8.2	Density of States	88 106
3.8.3	Thermodynamic Potential	89 107
3.8.4	Entropy	89 108
3.9	Fermi Function Integration Formula	91 109
3.10	Heat Capacity of a Fermi Gas	93 110
3.11	Equation of State of a Fermi Gas	94 111
3.12	Compressibility	94 112
3.13	Electrical and Thermal Conductivities	95 113
3.13.1	Electrical Conductivity	97 114
3.13.2	Thermal Conductivity	97 115
3.14	Critique of Sommerfeld Model	99 116
3.15	Magnetoconductivity	99 117
3.16	Hall Effect and Magnetoresistance	100 118
3.17	Dielectric Function	101 119
	Problems	104 120
4	Elements of Band Theory	109 121
4.1	Energy Band Formation	109 122
4.2	Translation Operator	110 123
4.3	Bloch’s Theorem	111 124

4.4	Calculation of Energy Bands	112	125
4.4.1	Tight-Binding Method	112	126
4.4.2	Tight Binding in Second Quantization Representation	127	115 128
4.5	Periodic Potential	116	129
4.6	Free Electron Model	118	130
4.7	Nearly Free Electron Model	119	131
4.7.1	Degenerate Perturbation Theory	120	132
4.8	Metals–Semimetals–Semiconductors–Insulators	121	133
	Problems	124	134
5	Use of Elementary Group Theory in Calculating Band Structure	135	129 136
5.1	Band Representation of Empty Lattice States	129	137
5.2	Review of Elementary Group Theory	129	138
5.2.1	Some Examples of Simple Groups	130	139
5.2.2	Group Representation	131	140
5.2.3	Examples of Representations of the Group 4mm ...	132	141
5.2.4	Faithful Representation	134	142
5.2.5	Regular Representation	134	143
5.2.6	Reducible and Irreducible Representations	134	144
5.2.7	Important Theorems of Representation Theory (without proof)	145	135 146
5.2.8	Character of a Representation	135	147
5.2.9	Orthogonality Theorem	136	148
5.3	Empty Lattice Bands, Degeneracies and IRs	137	149
5.3.1	Group of the Wave Vector $\mathbf{k}$	138	150
5.4	Use of Irreducible Representations	140	151
5.4.1	Determining the Linear Combinations of Plane Waves Belonging to Different IRs	152	142 153
5.4.2	Compatibility Relations	144	154
5.5	Using the Irreducible Representations in Evaluating Energy Bands	155	146 156
5.6	Empty Lattice Bands for Cubic Structure	148	157
5.6.1	Point Group of a Cubic Structure	148	158
5.6.2	Face Centered Cubic Lattice	150	159
5.6.3	Body Centered Cubic Lattice	153	160
5.7	Energy Bands of Common Semiconductors	155	161
	Problems	158	162
6	More Band Theory and the Semiclassical Approximation ..	161	163
6.1	Orthogonalized Plane Waves	161	164
6.2	Pseudopotential Method	162	165
6.3	$\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{p}$ Method and Effective Mass Theory	165	166

XII Contents

6.4	Semiclassical Approximation for Bloch Electrons	168	167
6.4.1	Effective Mass	170	168
6.4.2	Concept of a Hole	171	169
6.4.3	Effective Hamiltonian of Bloch Electron	172	170
	Problems	174	171
7	Semiconductors	179	172
7.1	General Properties of Semiconducting Material	179	173
7.2	Typical Semiconductors	180	174
7.3	Temperature Dependence of the Carrier Concentration	182	175
7.3.1	Carrier Concentration: Intrinsic Case	184	176
7.4	Donor and Acceptor Impurities	185	177
7.4.1	Population of Donor Levels	186	178
7.4.2	Thermal Equilibrium in a Doped Semiconductor	187	179
7.4.3	High-Impurity Concentration	189	180
7.5	p-n Junction	189	181
7.5.1	Semiclassical Model	190	182
7.5.2	Rectification of a p-n Junction	193	183
7.5.3	Tunnel Diode	194	184
7.6	Surface Space Charge Layers	195	185
7.6.1	Superlattices	200	186
7.6.2	Quantum Wells	200	187
7.6.3	Modulation Doping	201	188
7.6.4	Minibands	201	189
7.7	Electrons in a Magnetic Field	203	190
7.7.1	Quantum Hall Effect	205	191
7.8	Amorphous Semiconductors	206	192
7.8.1	Types of Disorder	207	193
7.8.2	Anderson Model	207	194
7.8.3	Impurity Bands	208	195
7.8.4	Density of States	208	196
	Problems	210	197
8	Dielectric Properties of Solids	215	198
8.1	Review of Some Ideas of Electricity and Magnetism	215	199
8.2	Dipole Moment Per Unit Volume	216	200
8.3	Atomic Polarizability	217	201
8.4	Local Field in a Solid	217	202
8.5	Macroscopic Field	218	203
8.5.1	Depolarization Factor	218	204
8.6	Lorentz Field	219	205
8.7	Clausius–Mossotti Relation	221	206
8.8	Polarizability and Dielectric Functions	207	
	of Some Simple Systems	222	208
8.8.1	Evaluation of the Dipole Polarizability	222	209
8.8.2	Polarizability of Bound Electrons	224	210

8.8.3	Dielectric Function of a Metal	224	211
8.8.4	Dielectric Function of a Polar Crystal	225	212
8.9	Optical Properties	229	213
8.9.1	Wave Equation	229	214
8.10	Bulk Modes	230	215
8.10.1	Longitudinal Modes	231	216
8.10.2	Transverse Modes	232	217
8.11	Reflectivity of a Solid	235	218
8.11.1	Optical Constants	236	219
8.11.2	Skin Effect	236	220
8.12	Surface Waves	237	221
8.12.1	Plasmon	239	222
8.12.2	Surface Phonon-Polariton	240	223
	Problems	243	224
9	Magnetism in Solids	247	225
9.1	Review of Some Electromagnetism	247	226
9.1.1	Magnetic Moment and Torque	247	227
9.1.2	Vector Potential of a Magnetic Dipole	248	228
9.2	Magnetic Moment of an Atom	250	229
9.2.1	Orbital Magnetic Moment	250	230
9.2.2	Spin Magnetic Moment	250	231
9.2.3	Total Angular Momentum and Total Magnetic Moment	251	232 233
9.2.4	Hund's Rules	251	234
9.3	Paramagnetism and Diamagnetism of an Atom	252	235
9.4	Paramagnetism of Atoms	255	236
9.5	Pauli Spin Paramagnetism of Metals	257	237
9.6	Diamagnetism of Metals	259	238
9.7	de Haas-van Alphen Effect	262	239
9.8	Cooling by Adiabatic Demagnetization of a Paramagnetic Salt	265	240 241
9.9	Ferromagnetism	266	242
	Problems	268	243
Part II Advanced Topics in Solid-State Physics			244
10	Magnetic Ordering and Spin Waves	275	245
10.1	Ferromagnetism	275	246
10.1.1	Heisenberg Exchange Interaction	275	247
10.1.2	Spontaneous Magnetization	277	248
10.1.3	Domain Structure	279	249
10.1.4	Domain Wall	280	250
10.1.5	Anisotropy Energy	281	251

XIV Contents

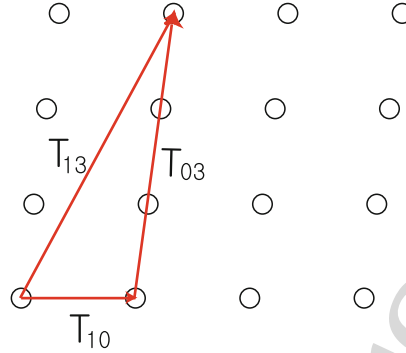
10.2	Antiferromagnetism	282	252
10.3	Ferrimagnetism	283	253
10.4	Zero-Temperature Heisenberg Ferromagnet	283	254
10.5	Zero-Temperature Heisenberg Antiferromagnet	286	255
10.6	Spin Waves in Ferromagnet	287	256
10.6.1	Holstein–Primakoff Transformation	287	257
10.6.2	Dispersion Relation for Magnons	291	258
10.6.3	Magnon–Magnon Interactions	291	259
10.6.4	Magnon Heat Capacity	292	260
10.6.5	Magnetization	293	261
10.6.6	Experiments Revealing Magnons	295	262
10.6.7	Stability	295	263
10.7	Spin Waves in Antiferromagnets	296	264
10.7.1	Ground State Energy	299	265
10.7.2	Zero Point Sublattice Magnetization	300	266
10.7.3	Finite Temperature Sublattice Magnetization	301	267
10.7.4	Heat Capacity due to Antiferromagnetic Magnons ..	303	268
10.8	Exchange Interactions	303	269
10.9	Itinerant Ferromagnetism	304	270
10.9.1	Stoner Model	305	271
10.9.2	Stoner Excitations	305	272
10.10	Phase Transition	306	273
	Problems	308	274
11	Many Body Interactions – Introduction	311	275
11.1	Second Quantization	311	276
11.2	Hartree–Fock Approximation	314	277
11.2.1	Ferromagnetism of a degenerate electron gas in Hartree–Fock Approximation	278 316	278 279
11.3	Spin Density Waves	318	280
11.3.1	Comparison with Reality	326	281
11.4	Correlation Effects–Divergence of Perturbation Theory	326	282
11.5	Linear Response Theory	328	283
11.5.1	Density Matrix	328	284
11.5.2	Properties of Density Matrix	329	285
11.5.3	Change of Representation	329	286
11.5.4	Equation of Motion of Density Matrix	331	287
11.5.5	Single Particle Density Matrix of a Fermi Gas	332	288
11.5.6	Linear Response Theory	332	289
11.5.7	Gauge Invariance	335	290
11.6	Lindhard Dielectric Function	339	291
11.6.1	Longitudinal Dielectric Constant	340	292
11.6.2	Kramers–Kronig Relation	343	293
11.7	Effect of Collisions	346	294

11.8	Screening	349	295
11.8.1	Friedel Oscillations	350	296
11.8.2	Kohn Effect	353	297
	Problems	355	298
12	Many Body Interactions: Green's Function Method	361	299
12.1	Formulation	361	300
12.1.1	Schrödinger Equation	362	301
12.1.2	Interaction Representation	363	302
12.2	Adiabatic Approximation	366	303
12.3	Green's Function	368	304
12.3.1	Averages of Time-Ordered Products of Operators	368	305 306
12.3.2	Wick's Theorem	369	307
12.3.3	Linked Clusters	372	308
12.4	Dyson's Equations	372	309
12.5	Green's Function Approach to the Electron-Phonon Interaction	374	310 311
12.6	Electron Self Energy	382	312
12.7	Quasiparticle Interactions and Fermi Liquid Theory	383	313
	Problems	385	314
13	Semiclassical Theory of Electrons	391	315
13.1	Bloch Electrons in a dc Magnetic Field	391	316
13.1.1	Energy Levels of Bloch Electrons in a Magnetic Field	392	317 318
13.1.2	Quantization of Energy	394	319
13.1.3	Cyclotron Effective Mass	395	320
13.1.4	Velocity Parallel to $\mathbf{B}$	395	321
13.2	Magnetoresistance	396	322
13.3	Two-Band Model and Magnetoresistance	397	323
13.4	Magnetoconductivity of Metals	401	324
13.4.1	Free Electron Model	407	325
13.4.2	Propagation Parallel to B_0	410	326
13.4.3	Propagation Perpendicular to B_0	411	327
13.4.4	Local vs. Nonlocal Conduction	411	328
13.5	Quantum Theory of Magnetoconductivity of an Electron Gas	413	329
13.5.1	Propagation Perpendicular to $\mathbf{B}_0$	415	330
	Problems	418	331
14	Electrodynamics of Metals	423	332
14.1	Maxwell's Equations	423	333
14.2	Skin Effect in the Absence of a dc Magnetic Field	424	334
14.3	Azbel-Kaner Cyclotron Resonance	427	335
14.4	Azbel-Kaner Effect	430	336
14.5	Magnetoplasma Waves	431	337
14.6	Discussion of the Nonlocal Theory	434	338

XVI Contents

14.7	Cyclotron Waves	435	339
14.8	Surface Waves	437	340
14.9	Magnetoplasma Surface Waves	440	341
14.10	Propagation of Acoustic Waves	441	342
14.10.1	Propagation Parallel to $\mathbf{B}_0$	445	343
14.10.2	Helicon-Phonon Interaction	446	344
14.10.3	Propagation Perpendicular to $\mathbf{B}_0$	447	345
	Problems	450	346
15	Superconductivity	455	347
15.1	Some Phenomenological Observations of Superconductors ...	455	348
15.2	London Theory	459	349
15.3	Microscopic Theory—An Introduction	462	350
15.3.1	Electron-Phonon Interaction	462	351
15.3.2	Cooper Pair	464	352
15.4	The BCS Ground State	467	353
15.4.1	Bogoliubov-Valatin Transformation	469	354
15.4.2	Condensation Energy	472	355
15.5	Excited States	472	356
15.6	Type I and Type II Superconductors	475	357
	Problems	479	358
16	The Fractional Quantum Hall Effect: The Paradigm	359	
	for Strongly Interacting Systems	483	360
16.1	Electrons Confined to a Two-Dimensional Surface in a Perpendicular Magnetic Field	361	483
16.2	Integral Quantum Hall Effect	484	363
16.3	Fractional Quantum Hall Effect	485	364
16.4	Numerical Studies	486	365
16.5	Statistics of Identical Particles in Two Dimension	490	366
16.6	Chern-Simons Gauge Field	492	367
16.7	Composite Fermion Picture	494	368
16.8	Fermi Liquid Picture	499	369
16.9	Pseudopotentials	500	370
16.10	Angular Momentum Eigenstates	504	371
16.11	Correlations in Quantum Hall States	506	372
	Problems	510	373
A	Operator Method for the Harmonic Oscillator Problem	515	374
	Problems	518	375
B	Neutron Scattering	519	376
	References	523	377
	Index	529	378

1	3
Crystal Structures	4
1.1 Crystal Structure and Symmetry Groups	5
Although everyone has an intuitive idea of what a solid is, we will consider (in this book) only materials with a well-defined crystal structure. What we mean by a well-defined crystal structure is an arrangement of atoms in a <i>lattice</i> such that the atomic arrangement looks absolutely identical when viewed from two different points that are separated by a <i>lattice translation vector</i> . A few definitions are useful.	6 7 8 9 10 11
<i>Lattice</i>	12
A lattice is an infinite array of points obtained from three primitive translation vectors $\mathbf{a}_1$, $\mathbf{a}_2$, $\mathbf{a}_3$. Any point on the lattice is given by	13 14
$\mathbf{n} = n_1\mathbf{a}_1 + n_2\mathbf{a}_2 + n_3\mathbf{a}_3.$	(1.1) 15
<i>Translation Vector</i>	16
Any pair of lattice points can be connected by a vector of the form	17
$\mathbf{T}_{n_1n_2n_3} = n_1\mathbf{a}_1 + n_2\mathbf{a}_2 + n_3\mathbf{a}_3.$	(1.2) 18
The set of translation vectors form a group called the <i>translation group</i> of the lattice.	19 20
<i>Group</i>	21
A set of elements of any kind with a set of operations, by which any two elements may be combined into a third, satisfying the following requirements is called a <i>group</i> :	22 23 24
• The product (under group multiplication) of two elements of the group belongs to the group.	25 26

**Fig. 1.1.** Translation operations in a two-dimensional lattice

- The associative law holds for group multiplication. 27
- The identity element belongs to the group. 28
- Every element in the group has an inverse which belongs to the group. 29

Translation Group 30

The set of translations through any translation vector $\mathbf{T}_{n_1 n_2 n_3}$ forms a group. 31
 Group multiplication consists in simply performing the translation operations 32
 consecutively. For example, as is shown in Fig. 1.1, we have $\mathbf{T}_{13} = \mathbf{T}_{03} + \mathbf{T}_{10}$. 33
 For the simple translation group the operations commute, i.e., $\mathbf{T}_{ij} \mathbf{T}_{kl} = \mathbf{T}_{kl} \mathbf{T}_{ij}$ 34
 for every pair of translation vectors. This property makes the group 35
 an *Abelian group*. 36

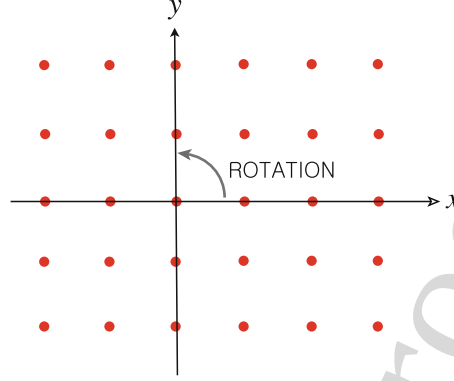
Point Group 37

There are other symmetry operations which leave the lattice unchanged. These 38
 are *rotations*, *reflections*, and the *inversion* operations. These operations form 39
 the *point group* of the lattice. As an example, consider the two-dimensional 40
 square lattice (Fig. 1.2). The following operations (performed about any lattice 41
 point) leave the lattice unchanged. 42

- E : identity 43
- R_1, R_3 : rotations by $\pm 90^\circ$ 44
- R_2 : rotation by 180° 45
- m_x, m_y : reflections about x -axis and y -axis, respectively 46
- m_+, m_- : reflections about the lines $x = \pm y$ 47

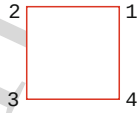
The multiplication table for this point group is given in Table 1.1. The oper- 48
 ations in the first column are the first (right) operations, such as m_+ in 49
 $R_1 m_+ = m_y$, and the operations listed in the first row are the second (left) 50
 operations, such as R_1 in $R_1 m_+ = m_y$. 51

1.1 Crystal Structure and Symmetry Groups 5

**Fig. 1.2.** The two-dimensional square lattice

t1.1 **Table 1.1.** Multiplication table for the group $4mm$. The first (right) operations, such as m_+ in $R_1 m_+ = m_y$, are listed in the first column, and the second (left) operations, such as R_1 in $R_1 m_+ = m_y$, are listed in the first row

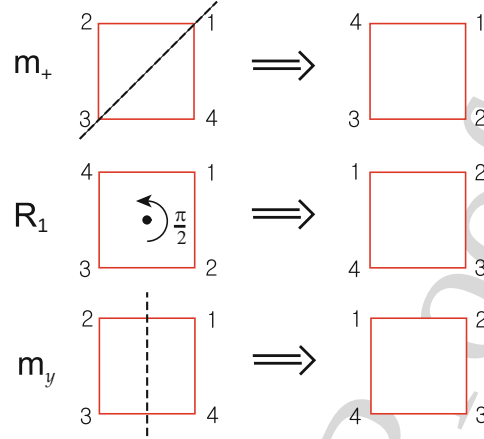
t1.2	Operation	E	R_1	R_2	R_3	m_x	m_y	m_+	m_-
t1.3	$E^{-1} = E$	E	R_1	R_2	R_3	m_x	m_y	m_+	m_-
t1.4	$R_1^{-1} = R_3$	R_3	E	R_1	R_2	m_+	m_-	m_y	m_x
t1.5	$R_2^{-1} = R_2$	R_2	R_3	E	R_1	m_y	m_x	m_-	m_+
t1.6	$R_3^{-1} = R_1$	R_1	R_2	R_3	E	m_-	m_+	m_x	m_y
t1.7	$m_x^{-1} = m_x$	m_x	m_+	m_y	m_-	E	R_2	R_1	R_3
t1.8	$m_y^{-1} = m_y$	m_y	m_-	m_x	m_+	R_2	E	R_3	R_1
t1.9	$m_+^{-1} = m_+$	m_+	m_y	m_-	m_x	R_3	R_1	E	R_2
t1.10	$m_-^{-1} = m_-$	m_-	m_x	m_+	m_y	R_1	R_3	R_2	E

**Fig. 1.3.** Identity operation on a two-dimensional square

The multiplication table can be obtained as follows: 52

- Label the corners of the square (Fig. 1.3). 53
- Operating with a symmetry operation simply reorders the labeling. For 54 example, see Fig. 1.4 for symmetry operations of m_+ , R_1 , and m_x . 55

Therefore, $R_1 m_+ = m_y$. One can do exactly the same for all other prod- 56 ucts, for example, such as $m_y R_1 = m_+$. It is also very useful to note what hap- 57 pens to a point (x, y) under the operations of the point group (see Table 1.2). 58 Note that under every group operation $x \rightarrow \pm x$ or $\pm y$ and $y \rightarrow \pm y$ or $\pm x$. 59

**Fig. 1.4.** Point symmetry operations on a two-dimensional square**Table 1.2.** Point group operations on a point (x, y)

Operation	E	R_1	R_2	R_3	m_x	m_y	m_+	m_-
x	x	y	$-x$	$-y$	x	$-x$	y	$-y$
y	y	$-x$	$-y$	x	$-y$	y	x	$-x$

**Fig. 1.5.** The two-dimensional rectangular lattice

The point group of the two-dimensional square lattice is called 4 mm . The notation denotes the fact that it contains a fourfold axis of rotation and two mirror planes (m_x and m_y); the m_+ and m_- planes are required by the existence of the other operations. Another simple example is the symmetry group of a two-dimensional rectangular lattice (Fig. 1.5). The symmetry operations are E, R_2, m_x, m_y , and the multiplication table is easily obtained from that of 4 mm . This point group is called 2 mm , and it is a subgroup of 4 mm .

Allowed Rotations

Because of the requirement of translational invariance under operations of the translation group, the allowed rotations of the point group are restricted to certain angles. Consider a rotation through an angle ϕ about an axis through some lattice point (Fig. 1.6). If A and B are lattice points separated by a primitive translation $\mathbf{a}_1$, then A' (and B') must be a lattice point obtained by a rotation through angle ϕ about B (or $-\phi$ about A). Since A' and B' are lattice points, the vector B'A' must be a translation vector. Therefore,

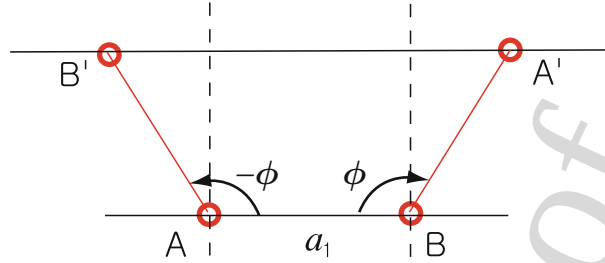


Fig. 1.6. Allowed rotations of angle ϕ about an axis passing through some lattice points A and B consistent with translational symmetry

t3.1 **Table 1.3.** Allowed rotations of the point group

t3.2	p	$\cos \phi$	ϕ	$n (= 2\pi/\phi)$
t3.3	-1	1	0 or 2π	1
t3.4	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\pm \frac{2\pi}{6}$	6
t3.5	1	0	$\pm \frac{2\pi}{4}$	4
t3.6	2	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$\pm \frac{2\pi}{3}$	3
t3.7	3	-1	$\pm \frac{2\pi}{2}$	2

$$|B'A'| = pa_1, \quad (1.3)$$

where p is an integer. But $|B'A'| = a_1 + 2a_1 \sin(\phi - \frac{\pi}{2}) = a_1 - 2a_1 \cos \phi$.
Solving for $\cos \phi$ gives

$$\cos \phi = \frac{1-p}{2}. \quad (1.4)$$

Because $-1 \leq \cos \phi \leq 1$, we see that p must have only the integral values -1, 0, 1, 2, 3. This gives for the possible values of ϕ listed in Table 1.3.

Although only rotations of $60^\circ, 90^\circ, 120^\circ, 180^\circ$, and 360° are consistent with translational symmetry, rotations through other angles are obtained in *quasicrystals* (e.g., fivefold rotations). The subject of quasicrystals, which do not have translational symmetry under the operations of the translation group, is an interesting modern topic in solid state physics which we will not discuss in this book.

Bravais Lattice

If there is only one atom associated with each lattice point, the lattice is called *Bravais lattice*. If there is more than one atom associated with each lattice point, the lattice is called a *lattice with a basis*. One atom can be considered to be located at the lattice point. For a lattice with a basis it is necessary to give the locations (or basis vectors) for the additional atoms associated with the lattice point.

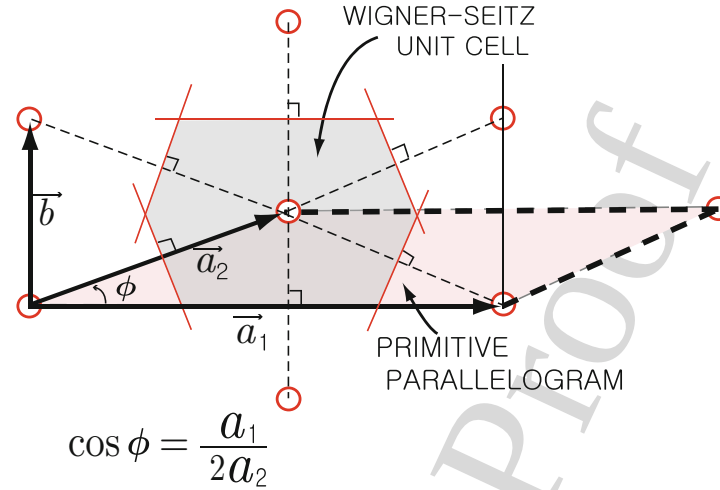


Fig. 1.7. Construction of the Wigner-Seitz cell of a two-dimensional centered rectangular lattice. Note that $\cos \phi = a_1/2a_2$

Primitive Unit Cell

92

From the three primitive translation vectors $\mathbf{a}_1$, $\mathbf{a}_2$, $\mathbf{a}_3$, one can form a parallelepiped that can be used as a primitive unit cell. By stacking primitive unit cells together (like building blocks) one can fill all of space.

95

Wigner-Seitz Unit Cell

96

From the lattice point $(0,0,0)$ draw translation vectors to neighboring lattice points (to nearest, next nearest, etc., neighbors). Then, draw the planes which are perpendicular bisectors of these translation vectors (see, for example, Fig. 1.7). The interior of these intersecting planes (i.e., the space closer to $(0,0,0)$ than to any other lattice point) is called the *Wigner-Seitz unit cell*.

102

Space Group

103

For a Bravais lattice, the space group is simply the product of the operations of the translation group and of the point group. For a lattice with a basis, there can be other symmetry operations. Examples are *glide planes* and *screw axes*; illustration of each is shown in Figs. 1.8 and 1.9, respectively.

107

Glide Plane

108

In Fig. 1.8, each unit cell contains six atoms and $T_{1/2}m_x$ is a symmetry operation even though neither $T_{1/2}$ nor m_x is an operation of the symmetry group by them.

111

1.1 Crystal Structure and Symmetry Groups

9

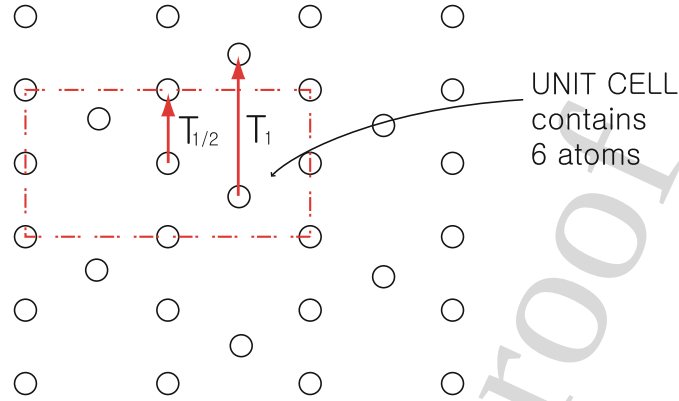


Fig. 1.8. Glide plane of a two-dimensional lattice. Each unit cell contains six atoms

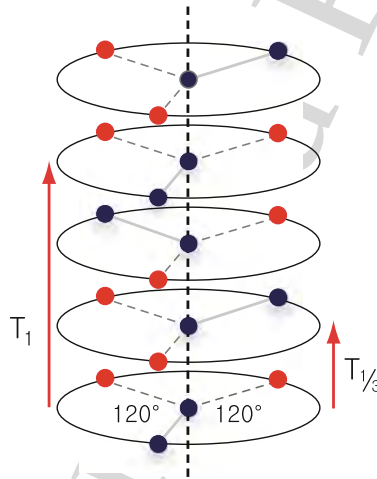


Fig. 1.9. Screw axis. Unit cell contains three layers and T_1 is the smallest translation. Occupied sites are shown by *solid dots*

Screw Axis 112

In Fig. 1.9, $T_{1/3}R_{120^\circ}$ is a symmetry operation even though $T_{1/3}$ and R_{120° themselves are not. 113
114

Two-Dimensional Bravais Lattices 115

There are only five different types of two-dimensional Bravais lattices. 116

1. Square lattice: primitive (P) one only 117
It has $a = b$ and $\alpha = \beta = 90^\circ$. 118
2. Rectangular: primitive (P) and centered (C) ones 119
They have $a \neq b$ but $\alpha = \beta = 90^\circ$. 120

10 1 Crystal Structures

3. Hexagonal: primitive (P) one only 121
 It has $a = b$ and $\alpha = 120^\circ$ ($\beta = 60^\circ$). 122
 4. Oblique: primitive (P) one only 123
 It has $a \neq b$ and $\alpha \neq 90^\circ$. 124

Three-Dimensional Bravais Lattices 125

There are 14 different types of three-dimensional Bravais lattices. 126

1. Cubic: primitive (P), body centered (I), and face centered (F) ones. 127
 For all of these $a = b = c$ and $\alpha = \beta = \gamma = 90^\circ$. 128
 2. Tetragonal: primitive and body centered (I) ones. 129
 For these $a = b \neq c$ and $\alpha = \beta = \gamma = 90^\circ$. One can think of them as cubic 130
 lattices that have been stretched (or compressed) along one of the cube 131
 axes. 132
 3. Orthorhombic: primitive (P), body centered (I), face centered (F), and base 133
 centered (C) ones. 134
 For all of these $a \neq b \neq c$ but $\alpha = \beta = \gamma = 90^\circ$. These can be thought 135
 of as cubic lattices that have been stretched (or compressed) by different 136
 amounts along two of the cube axes. 137
 4. Monoclinic: primitive (P) and base centered (C) ones. 138
 For these $a \neq b \neq c$ and $\alpha = \beta = 90^\circ \neq \gamma$. These can be thought of as 139
 orthorhombic lattices which have suffered shear distortion in one direction. 140
 5. Triclinic: primitive (P) one. 141
 This has the lowest symmetry with $a \neq b \neq c$ and $\alpha \neq \beta \neq \gamma$. 142
 6. Trigonal: 143
 It has $a = b = c$ and $\alpha = \beta = \gamma \neq 90^\circ < 120^\circ$. The primitive cell is a 144
 rhombohedron. The trigonal lattice can be thought of as a cubic lattice 145
 which has suffered shear distortion. 146
 7. Hexagonal: primitive (P) one only. 147
 It has $a = b \neq c$ and $\alpha = \beta = 90^\circ$, $\gamma = 120^\circ$. 148

1.2 Common Crystal Structures 149

1. *Cubic* 150
 (a) Simple cubic (sc): Fig. 1.10 151
 For simple cubic crystal the lattice constant is a and the volume per 152
 atom is a^3 . The nearest neighbor distance is also a , and each atom has 153
 six nearest neighbors. The primitive translation vectors are $\mathbf{a}_1 = a\hat{x}$, 154
 $\mathbf{a}_2 = a\hat{y}$, $\mathbf{a}_3 = a\hat{z}$. 155
 (b) Body centered cubic (bcc): Fig. 1.11 156
 If we take a unit cell as a cube of edge a , there are two atoms 157
 per cell (one at $(0,0,0)$ and one at $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$). The atomic volume 158
 is $\frac{1}{2}a^3$, and the nearest neighbor distance is $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}a$. Each atom has 159

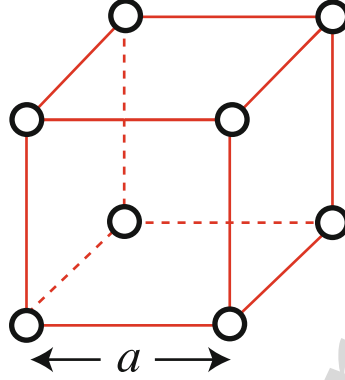


Fig. 1.10. Crystallographic unit cell of a simple cubic crystal of lattice constant a

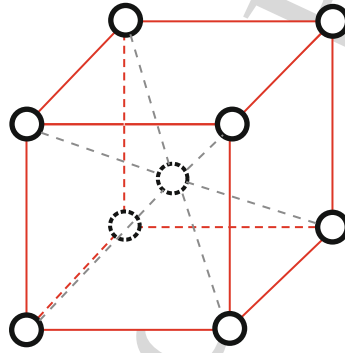


Fig. 1.11. Crystallographic unit cell of a body centered cubic crystal of lattice constant a

eight nearest neighbors. The primitive translations can be taken as
 $\mathbf{a}_1 = \frac{1}{2}a(\hat{x} + \hat{y} + \hat{z})$, $\mathbf{a}_2 = \frac{1}{2}a(-\hat{x} + \hat{y} + \hat{z})$, and $\mathbf{a}_3 = \frac{1}{2}a(-\hat{x} - \hat{y} + \hat{z})$.
 The parallelepiped formed by $\mathbf{a}_1$, $\mathbf{a}_2$, $\mathbf{a}_3$ is the primitive unit cell (con-
 taining a single atom), and there is only one atom per primitive unit
 cell.

(c) Face centered cubic (fcc): Fig. 1.12

If we take a unit cell as a cube of edge a , there are four atoms per cell;
 $\frac{1}{8}$ of one at each of the eight corners and $\frac{1}{2}$ of one on each of the six
 faces. The volume per atom is $\frac{a^3}{4}$; the nearest neighbor distance is $\frac{a}{\sqrt{2}}$,
 and each atom has 12 nearest neighbors. The primitive unit cell is the
 parallelepiped formed from the primitive translations $\mathbf{a}_1 = \frac{1}{2}a(\hat{x} + \hat{y})$,
 $\mathbf{a}_2 = \frac{1}{2}a(\hat{y} + \hat{z})$, and $\mathbf{a}_3 = \frac{1}{2}a(\hat{z} + \hat{x})$.

All three cubic lattices have the cubic group as their point group.
 Because the primitive translations are different, the simple cubic, bcc,
 and fcc lattices have different translation groups.

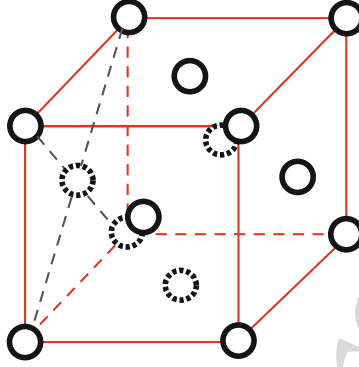


Fig. 1.12. Crystallographic unit cell of a face centered cubic crystal of lattice constant a

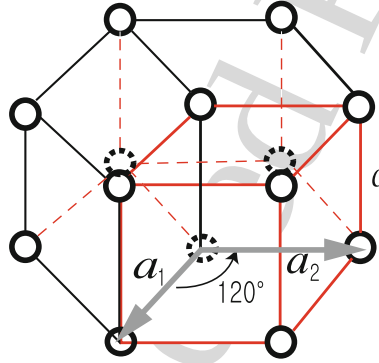


Fig. 1.13. Crystallographic unit cell of a simple hexagonal crystal of lattice constants a_1 , a_2 , and c

2. Hexagonal

(a) Simple hexagonal: See Fig. 1.13.

(b) Hexagonal close packed (hcp):

This is a non-Bravais lattice. It contains two atoms per primitive unit cell of the simple hexagonal lattice, one at $(0,0,0)$ and the second at $(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{1}{2})$. The hexagonal close packed crystal can be formed by stacking the first layer (A) in a hexagonal array as is shown in Fig. 1.14. Then, the second layer (B) is formed by stacking atoms in the alternate triangular holes on top of the first layer. This gives another hexagonal layer displaced from the first layer by $(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{1}{2})$. Then the third layer is placed above the first layer (i.e., at $(0,0,1)$). The stacking is then repeated ABABAB If one stacks ABCABC ..., where C is the hexagonal array obtained by stacking the third layer in the other set of triangular holes above the set B (instead of the set A), one gets an fcc lattice. The closest possible packing of the hcp atoms occurs

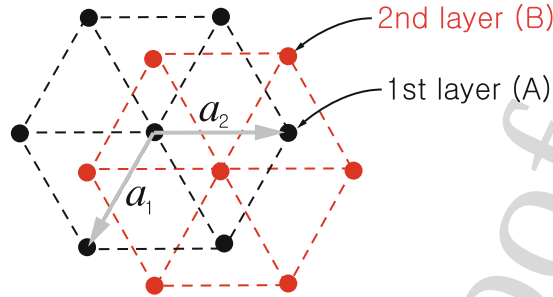
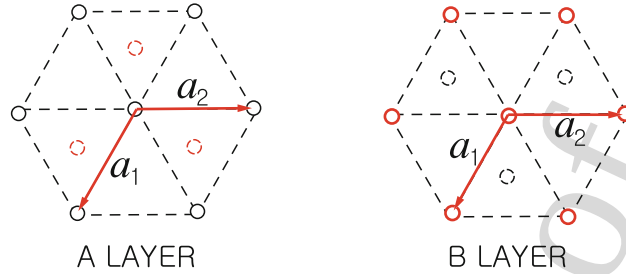


Fig. 1.14. Stacking of layers A and B in a hexagonal close packed crystal of lattice constants a_1 , a_2 , and c

when $\frac{c}{a} = \sqrt{8/3} \approx 1.633$. We leave this as an exercise for the reader. 190

Zn crystallizes in a hcp lattice with $a = 2.66 \text{ \AA}$ and $c = 4.96 \text{ \AA}$ giving 191
 $\frac{c}{a} \approx 1.85$, larger than the ideal $\frac{c}{a}$ value. 192

3. *Zincblende Structure* This is a non-Bravais lattice. It is an FCC with two 193
atoms per primitive unit cell located at $(0,0,0)$ and $(\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4})$. The structure 194
can be viewed as two interpenetrating fcc lattices displaced by one fourth 195
of the body diagonal. Examples of the zincblende structure are ZnS (cubic 196
phase), ZnO (cubic phase), CuF, CuCl, ZnSe, CdS, GaN (cubic phase), 197
InAs, and InSb. The metallic ions are on one sublattice, the other ions on 198
the second sublattice. 199
4. *Diamond Structure* This structure is identical to the zincblende structure, 200
except that there are two identical atoms in the unit cell. This struc- 201
ture (unlike zincblende) has inversion symmetry about the point $(\frac{1}{8}, \frac{1}{8}, \frac{1}{8})$. 202
Diamond, Si, Ge, and gray tin are examples of the diamond structure. 203
5. *Wurtzite Structure* This structure is a simple hexagonal lattice with 204
four atoms per unit cell, located at $(0,0,0)$, $(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{1}{2})$, $(0,0,\frac{3}{8})$, and $(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{7}{8})$. 205
It can be pictured as consisting of two interpenetrating hcp lattices sepa- 206
rated by $(0,0,\frac{3}{8})$. In the wurtzite phase of ZnS, the Zn atoms sit on one hcp 207
lattice and the S atoms on the other. ZnS, BeO, ZnO (hexagonal phase), 208
CdS, GaN (hexagonal phase), and AlN are materials that can occur in the 209
wurtzite structure. 210
6. *Sodium Chloride Structure* It consists of a face centered cubic lattice with 211
a basis of two unlike atoms per primitive unit cell, located at $(0,0,0)$ and 212
 $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$. In addition to NaCl, other alkali halide salts like LiH, KBr, RbI 213
form crystals with this structure. 214
7. *Cesium Chloride Structure* It consists of a simple cubic lattice with two 215
atoms per unit cell, located at $(0,0,0)$ and $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$. Besides CsCl, CuZn 216
(β -brass), AgMg, and LiHg occur with this structure. 217
8. *Calcium Fluoride Structure* It consists of a face centered cubic lattice with 218
three atoms per primitive unit cell. The Ca ion is located at $(0,0,0)$, the F 219
atoms at $(\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4})$ and $(\frac{3}{4}, \frac{3}{4}, \frac{3}{4})$. 220

**Fig. 1.15.** Stacking of layers A and B in a graphite structure

9. *Graphite Structure* This structure consists of a simple hexagonal lat- 221
tice with four atoms per primitive unit cell, located at $(0,0,0)$, $(\frac{2}{3}, \frac{1}{3}, 0)$, 222
 $(0, 0, \frac{1}{2})$, and $(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{1}{2})$. It can be pictured as two interpenetrating HCP lat- 223
tices separated by $(0, 0, \frac{1}{2})$. It, therefore, consists of tightly bonded planes 224
(as shown in Fig. 1.15) stacked in the sequence ABABAB... The individ- 225
ual planes are very tightly bound, but the interplanar binding is rather 226
weak. This gives graphite its well-known properties, like easily cleaving 227
perpendicular to the c -axis. 228

Miller Indices

229

Miller indices are a set of three integers that specify the orientation of a crystal 230
plane. The procedure for obtaining Miller indices of a plane is as follows: 231

1. Find the intercepts of the plane with the crystal axes. 232
2. Take the reciprocals of the three numbers. 233
3. Reduce (by multiplying by the same number) this set of numbers to the 234
smallest possible set of integers. 235

As an example, consider the plane that intersects the cubic axes at A_1, A_2, A_3 236
as shown in Fig. 1.16. Then $x_i a_i = \overline{OA_i}$. The reciprocals of (x_1, x_2, x_3) 237
are $(x_1^{-1}, x_2^{-1}, x_3^{-1})$, and the Miller indices of the plane are $(h_1 h_2 h_3) =$ 238
 $p(x_1^{-1}, x_2^{-1}, x_3^{-1})$, where $(h_1 h_2 h_3)$ are the smallest possible set of integers 239
 $(\frac{p}{x_1}, \frac{p}{x_2}, \frac{p}{x_3})$. 240

Indices of a Direction

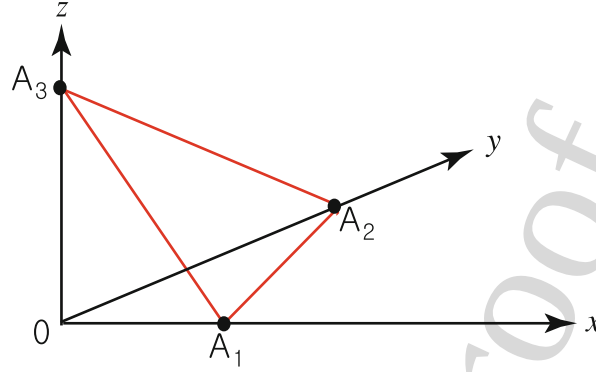
241

A direction in the lattice can be specified by a vector $\mathbf{V} = u_1 \mathbf{a}_1 + u_2 \mathbf{a}_2 + u_3 \mathbf{a}_3$, 242
or by the set of integers $[u_1 u_2 u_3]$ chosen to have no common integral factor. For 243
cubic lattices the plane $(h_1 h_2 h_3)$ is perpendicular to the direction $[h_1 h_2 h_3]$, 244
but this is not true for general lattices. 245

Packing Fraction

246

The packing fraction of a crystal structure is defined as the ratio of the volume 247
of atomic spheres in the unit cell to the volume of the unit cell. 248

**Fig. 1.16.** Intercepts of a plane with the crystal axes*Examples*

1. Simple cubic lattice:

We take the atomic radius as $R = \frac{a}{2}$ (then neighboring atoms just touch).

The packing fraction p will be given by

$$p = \frac{\frac{4}{3}\pi \left(\frac{a}{2}\right)^3}{a^3} = \frac{\pi}{6} \approx 0.52$$

2. Body centered cubic lattice:

Here, we take $R = \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}a\right)$, i.e., half the nearest neighbor distance. For the non-primitive cubic cell of edge a , we have two atoms per cell giving

$$p = \frac{2 \times \frac{4}{3}\pi \left(\frac{a\sqrt{3}}{4}\right)^3}{a^3} = \frac{\pi}{8}\sqrt{3} \approx 0.68$$

1.3 Reciprocal Lattice

If $\mathbf{a}_1, \mathbf{a}_2, \mathbf{a}_3$ are the primitive translations of some lattice, we can define the vectors $\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2, \mathbf{b}_3$ by the condition

$$\mathbf{a}_i \cdot \mathbf{b}_j = 2\pi\delta_{ij}, \quad (1.5)$$

where $\delta_{ij} = 0$ if i is not equal to j and $\delta_{ii} = 1$. It is easy to see that

$$\mathbf{b}_i = 2\pi \frac{\mathbf{a}_j \times \mathbf{a}_k}{\mathbf{a}_i \cdot (\mathbf{a}_j \times \mathbf{a}_k)}, \quad (1.6)$$

16 1 Crystal Structures

where i, j , and k are different. The denominator $\mathbf{a}_i \cdot (\mathbf{a}_j \times \mathbf{a}_k)$ is simply the volume v_0 of the primitive unit cell. The lattice formed by the primitive translation vectors $\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2, \mathbf{b}_3$ is called the *reciprocal lattice* (reciprocal to the lattice formed by $\mathbf{a}_1, \mathbf{a}_2, \mathbf{a}_3$), and a reciprocal lattice vector is given by

$$\mathbf{G}_{h_1 h_2 h_3} = h_1 \mathbf{b}_1 + h_2 \mathbf{b}_2 + h_3 \mathbf{b}_3. \quad (1.7)$$

Useful Properties of the Reciprocal Lattice

1. If $\mathbf{r} = n_1 \mathbf{a}_1 + n_2 \mathbf{a}_2 + n_3 \mathbf{a}_3$ is a lattice vector, then we can write $\mathbf{r}$ as

$$\mathbf{r} = \sum_i (\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{b}_i) \mathbf{a}_i. \quad (1.8)$$

2. The lattice reciprocal to $\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2, \mathbf{b}_3$ is $\mathbf{a}_1, \mathbf{a}_2, \mathbf{a}_3$.
3. A vector $\mathbf{G}_h$ from the origin to a point (h_1, h_2, h_3) of the reciprocal lattice is perpendicular to the plane with Miller indices $(h_1 h_2 h_3)$.
4. The distance from the origin to the first lattice plane $(h_1 h_2 h_3)$ is $d(h_1 h_2 h_3) = 2\pi |\mathbf{G}_h|^{-1}$. This is also the distance between neighboring $\{h_1 h_2 h_3\}$ planes.

The proof of 3 is established by demonstrating that $\mathbf{G}_h$ is perpendicular to the plane $A_1 A_2 A_3$ shown in Fig. 1.16. This must be true if $\mathbf{G}_h$ is perpendicular to both $\overline{A_1 A_2}$ and to $\overline{A_2 A_3}$. But $\overline{A_1 A_2} = \overline{OA_2} - \overline{OA_1} = p \left(\frac{\mathbf{a}_2}{h_2} - \frac{\mathbf{a}_1}{h_1} \right)$. Therefore,

$$\mathbf{G}_h \cdot \overline{A_1 A_2} = (h_1 \mathbf{b}_1 + h_2 \mathbf{b}_2 + h_3 \mathbf{b}_3) \cdot p \left(\frac{\mathbf{a}_2}{h_2} - \frac{\mathbf{a}_1}{h_1} \right), \quad (1.9)$$

which vanishes. The same can be done for $\overline{A_2 A_3}$. The proof of 4 is established by noting that

$$d(h_1 h_2 h_3) = \frac{\mathbf{a}_1}{h_1} \cdot \frac{\mathbf{G}_h}{|\mathbf{G}_h|}.$$

The first factor is just the vector $\overline{OA_1}$ for the situation where $p = 1$, and the second factor is a unit vector perpendicular to the plane $(h_1 h_2 h_3)$. Since $\mathbf{a}_1 \cdot \mathbf{G}_h = 2\pi h_1$, it is apparent that $d(h_1 h_2 h_3) = 2\pi |\mathbf{G}_h|^{-1}$.

1.4 Diffraction of X-Rays

Crystal structures are usually determined experimentally by studying how the crystal diffracts waves. Because the interatomic spacings in most crystals are of the order of a few Å ($1 \text{ Å} = 10^{-8} \text{ cm}$), the maximum information can most readily be obtained by using waves whose wave lengths are of that

order of magnitude. Electromagnetic, electron, or neutron waves can be used to study diffraction by a crystal. For electromagnetic waves, $E = h\nu$, where E is the energy of the photon, $\nu = \frac{c}{\lambda}$ is its frequency and λ its wave length, and h is Planck's constant. For $\lambda = 10^{-8}$ cm, $c = 3 \times 10^{10}$ cm/s and $h = 6.6 \times 10^{-27}$ erg · s, the photon energy is equal to roughly 2×10^{-8} ergs or 1.24×10^4 eV. Photons of energies of tens of kilovolts are in the X-ray range. For electron waves, $p = \frac{h}{\lambda} \simeq 6.6 \times 10^{-19}$ g · cm/s when $\lambda = 10^{-8}$ cm. This gives $E = \frac{p^2}{2m_e}$, where $m_e \simeq 0.9 \times 10^{-27}$ g, of 2.4×10^{-10} ergs or roughly 150 eV. For neutron waves, we need simply replace m_e by $m_n = 1.67 \times 10^{-24}$ g to obtain $E = 1.3 \times 10^{-13}$ ergs $\simeq 0.08$ eV. Thus neutron energies are of the order of a tenth of an eV. Neutron scattering has the advantages that the low energy makes inelastic scattering studies more accurate and that the magnetic moment of the neutron allows the researcher to obtain information about the magnetic structure. It has the disadvantage that high intensity neutron sources are not as easily obtained as X-ray sources.

1.4.1 Bragg Reflection

We have already seen that we can discuss crystal planes in a lattice structure. Assume that an incident X-ray is specularly reflected by a set of crystal planes as shown in Fig. 1.17. Constructive interference occurs when the difference in path length is an integral number of wave length λ . It is clear that this occurs when

$$2d \sin \theta = n\lambda, \quad (1.10)$$

where d is the interplane spacing, θ is the angle between the incident beam and the crystal planes, as is shown on the figure, and n is an integer. Equation (1.10) is known as *Bragg's law*.

1.4.2 Laue Equations

A slightly more elegant discussion of diffraction from a crystal can be obtained as follows:

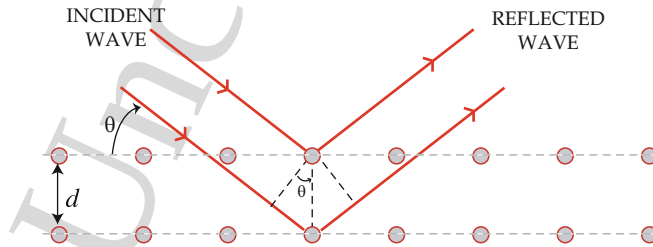
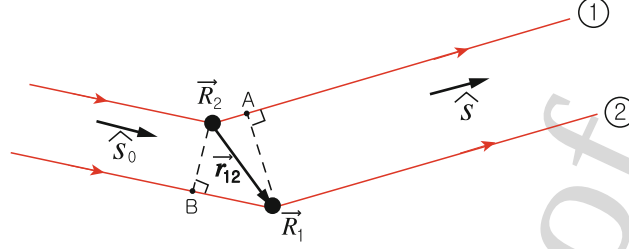


Fig. 1.17. Specular reflection of X-rays by a set of crystal planes separated by a distance d

**Fig. 1.18.** Scattering of X-rays by a pair of atoms in a crystal

1. Let $\hat{s}_0$ be a unit vector in the direction of the incident wave, and $\hat{s}$ be a unit vector in the direction of the scattered wave.
2. Let $\mathbf{R}_1$ and $\mathbf{R}_2$ be the position vectors of a pair of atoms in a Bravais lattice, and let $\mathbf{r}_{12} = \mathbf{R}_1 - \mathbf{R}_2$.

Let us consider the waves scattered by $\mathbf{R}_1$ and by $\mathbf{R}_2$ and traveling different path lengths as shown in Fig. 1.18. The difference in path length is $|\overline{R_2A} - \overline{BR_1}|$. But this is clearly equal to $|\mathbf{r}_{12} \cdot \hat{s} - \mathbf{r}_{12} \cdot \hat{s}_0|$. We define $\mathbf{S}$ as $\mathbf{S} = \hat{s} - \hat{s}_0$; then the difference in path length for the two rays is given by

$$\Delta = |\mathbf{r}_{12} \cdot \mathbf{S}|. \quad (1.11)$$

For constructive interference, this must be equal to an integral number of wave length. Thus, we obtain

$$\mathbf{r}_{12} \cdot \mathbf{S} = m\lambda, \quad (1.12)$$

where m is an integer and λ is the wave length. To obtain constructive interference from every atom in the Bravais lattice, this must be true for every lattice vector $\mathbf{R}_n$. Constructive interference will occur only if

$$\mathbf{R}_n \cdot \mathbf{S} = \text{integer} \times \lambda \quad (1.13)$$

for every lattice vector $\mathbf{R}_n$ in the crystal. Of course there will be different integers for different $\mathbf{R}_n$ in general. Recall that

$$\mathbf{R}_n = n_1 \mathbf{a}_1 + n_2 \mathbf{a}_2 + n_3 \mathbf{a}_3. \quad (1.14)$$

The condition (1.13) is obviously satisfied if

$$\mathbf{a}_i \cdot \mathbf{S} = ph_i\lambda, \quad (1.15)$$

where h_i is the smallest set of integers and p is a common multiplier. We can obviously express $\mathbf{S}$ as

$$\mathbf{S} = (\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{a}_1) \mathbf{b}_1 + (\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{a}_2) \mathbf{b}_2 + (\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{a}_3) \mathbf{b}_3. \quad (1.16)$$

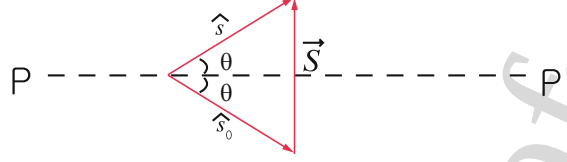


Fig. 1.19. Relation between the scattering vector $\mathbf{S} = \hat{\mathbf{s}} - \hat{\mathbf{s}}_0$ and the Bragg angle θ

Therefore, condition (1.13) is satisfied and constructive interference from every lattice site occurs if

$$\mathbf{S} = p(h_1\mathbf{b}_1 + h_2\mathbf{b}_2 + h_3\mathbf{b}_3) \lambda, \quad (1.17)$$

or

$$\frac{\mathbf{S}}{\lambda} = p\mathbf{G}_h, \quad (1.18)$$

where $\mathbf{G}_h$ is a vector of the reciprocal lattice. Equation (1.18) is called the *Laue equation*.

Connection of Laue Equations and Bragg's Law

From (1.18) $\mathbf{S}$ must be perpendicular to the planes with Miller indices $(h_1h_2h_3)$. The distance between two planes of this set is

$$d(h_1h_2h_3) = \frac{2\pi}{|\mathbf{G}_h|} = p \frac{\lambda}{|\mathbf{S}|}. \quad (1.19)$$

We know that $\mathbf{S}$ is normal to the reflection plane PP' with Miller indices $(h_1h_2h_3)$. From Fig. 1.19, it is apparent that $|\mathbf{S}| = 2 \sin \theta$. Therefore, (1.19) can be written by

$$2d(h_1h_2h_3) \sin \theta = p\lambda,$$

where p is an integer. According to Laue's equation, associated with any reciprocal lattice vector $\mathbf{G}_h = h_1\mathbf{b}_1 + h_2\mathbf{b}_2 + h_3\mathbf{b}_3$, there is an X-ray reflection satisfying the equation $\lambda^{-1}\mathbf{S} = p\mathbf{G}_h$, where p is an integer.

1.4.3 Ewald Construction

This is a geometric construction that illustrates how the Laue equation works. The construction goes as follows: See Fig. 1.20.

1. From the origin O of the reciprocal lattice draw the vector $\overline{AO}$ of length λ^{-1} parallel to $\hat{\mathbf{s}}_0$ and terminating on O .
2. Construct a sphere of radius λ^{-1} centered at A .

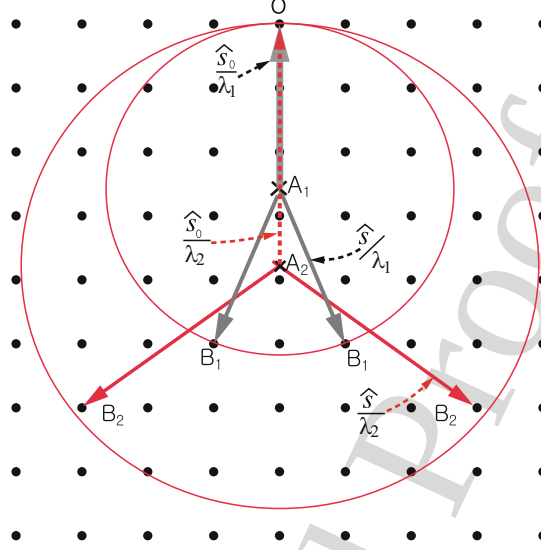


Fig. 1.20. Ewald construction for diffraction peaks

If this sphere intersects a point $\mathbf{B}$ of the reciprocal lattice, then $\overline{AB} = \frac{\hat{s}}{\lambda}$ is 358
 in a direction in which a diffraction maximum occurs. Since $\overline{A_1O} = \frac{\hat{s}_0}{\lambda_1}$ and 359
 $\overline{A_1B_1} = \frac{\hat{s}}{\lambda_1}$, $\frac{\mathbf{S}}{\lambda_1} = \frac{\hat{s} - \hat{s}_0}{\lambda_1} = \overline{OB_1}$ is a reciprocal lattice vector and satisfies the 360
 Laue equation. If a higher frequency X-ray is used, λ_2 , A_2 , and B_2 replace λ_1 , 361
 A_1 , and B_1 . For a continuous spectrum with $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda \geq \lambda_2$, all reciprocal lattice 362
 points between the two sphere (of radii λ_1^{-1} and λ_2^{-1}) satisfy Laue equation 363
 for some frequency in the incident beam. 364

Wave Vector

It is often convenient to use the set of vectors $\mathbf{K}_h = 2\pi\mathbf{G}_h$. Then, the Ewald 366
 construction gives 367

$$\mathbf{q}_0 + \mathbf{K}_h = \mathbf{q}, \quad (1.20)$$

where $\mathbf{q}_0 = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\hat{s}_0$ and $\mathbf{q} = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\hat{s}$ are the wave vectors of the incident and 368
 scattered waves. Equation (1.20) says that wave vector is conserved up to 2π 369
 times a vector of the reciprocal lattice. 370

1.4.4 Atomic Scattering Factor

It is the electrons of an atom that scatter the X-rays since the nucleus is so 372
 heavy that it hardly moves in response to the rapidly varying electric field of 373
 the X-ray. So far, we have treated all of the electrons as if they were localized 374
 at the lattice point. In fact, the electrons are distributed about the nucleus of 375
 the atom (at position $\mathbf{r} = 0$, the lattice point) with a density $\rho(\mathbf{r})$. If you know 376

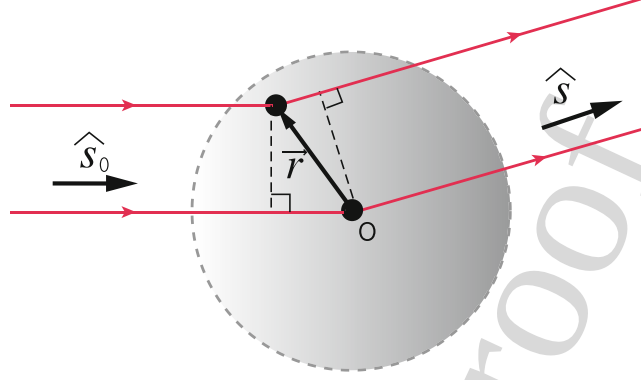


Fig. 1.21. Path difference between waves scattered at O and those at r

the wave function $\Psi(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2, \dots, \mathbf{r}_z)$ describing the z electrons of the atom, $\rho(\mathbf{r})$ is given by

$$\rho(\mathbf{r}) = \left\langle \sum_{i=1}^z \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_i) \right\rangle = \left\langle \Psi(\mathbf{r}_1, \dots, \mathbf{r}_z) \left| \sum_{i=1}^z \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_i) \right| \Psi(\mathbf{r}_1, \dots, \mathbf{r}_z) \right\rangle. \quad (1.21)$$

Now, consider the difference in path length Δ between waves scattered at O and those scattered at r (Fig. 1.21).

$$\Delta = \mathbf{r} \cdot (\hat{s} - \hat{s}_0) = \mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{S}. \quad (1.22)$$

The phase difference is simply $\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}$ times Δ , the difference in path length. Therefore, the scattering amplitude will be reduced from the value obtained by assuming all the electrons were localized at the origin O by a factor $z^{-1}f$, where f is given by

$$f = \int d^3r \rho(\mathbf{r}) e^{\frac{2\pi i}{\lambda} \mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{S}}. \quad (1.23)$$

This factor is called the *atomic scattering factor*. If $\rho(\mathbf{r})$ is spherically symmetric we have

$$f = \int_0^\infty \int_{-1}^1 2\pi r^2 dr d(\cos \phi) \rho(r) e^{\frac{2\pi i}{\lambda} S r \cos \phi}. \quad (1.24)$$

Recall that $S = 2 \sin \theta$, where θ is the angle between $\hat{s}_0$ and the reflecting plane PP' of Fig. 1.19. Define μ as $\frac{4\pi}{\lambda} \sin \theta$; then f can be expressed as

$$f = \int_0^\infty dr 4\pi r^2 \rho(r) \frac{\sin \mu r}{\mu r}. \quad (1.25)$$

If λ is much larger than the atomic radius, μr is much smaller than unity wherever $\rho(r)$ is finite. In that case $\frac{\sin \mu r}{\mu r} \simeq 1$ and $f \rightarrow z$, the number of electrons.

1.4.5 Geometric Structure Factor

393

So far we have considered only a Bravais lattice. For a non-Bravais lattice the scattered amplitude depends on the locations and atomic scattering factors of all the atoms in the unit cell. Suppose a crystal structure contains atoms at positions $\mathbf{r}_j$ with atomic scattering factors f_j . It is not difficult to see that this changes the scattered amplitude by a factor

$$F(h_1, h_2, h_3) = \sum_j f_j e^{\frac{2\pi i}{\lambda} \mathbf{r}_j \cdot \mathbf{S}(h_1 h_2 h_3)} \quad (1.26)$$

for the scattering from a plane with Miller indices $(h_1 h_2 h_3)$. In (1.26) the position vector $\mathbf{r}_j$ of the j th atom can be expressed in terms of the primitive translation vectors $\mathbf{a}_i$

$$\mathbf{r}_j = \sum_i \mu_{ji} \mathbf{a}_i. \quad (1.27)$$

For example, in a hcp lattice $\mathbf{r}_1 = (0, 0, 0)$ and $\mathbf{r}_2 = (\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{1}{2})$ when expressed in terms of the primitive translation vectors. Of course, $\mathbf{S}(h_1 h_2 h_3)$ equal to $\lambda \sum_i h_i \mathbf{b}_i$, where $\mathbf{b}_i$ are primitive translation vectors in the reciprocal lattice. Therefore, $\frac{2\pi i}{\lambda} \mathbf{r}_j \cdot \mathbf{S}(h_1 h_2 h_3)$ is equal to $2\pi i (\mu_{j1} h_1 + \mu_{j2} h_2 + \mu_{j3} h_3)$, and the structure amplitude $F(h_1, h_2, h_3)$ can be expressed as

$$F(h_1, h_2, h_3) = \sum_j f_j e^{2\pi i \sum_i \mu_{ji} h_i}. \quad (1.28)$$

If all of the atoms in the unit cell are identical (as in diamond, Si, Ge, etc.) all of the atomic scattering factors f_j are equal, and we can write

$$F(h_1, h_2, h_3) = f \mathcal{S}(h_1 h_2 h_3). \quad (1.29)$$

The $\mathcal{S}(h_1 h_2 h_3)$ is called the *geometric structure amplitude*. It depends only on crystal structure, not on the atomic constituents, so it is the same for all hcp lattices or for all diamond lattices, etc.

Example

A useful demonstration of the geometric structure factor can be obtained by considering a bcc lattice as a simple cubic lattice with two atoms in the simple cubic unit cell located at $(0, 0, 0)$ and $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$. Then

$$\mathcal{S}(h_1 h_2 h_3) = 1 + e^{2\pi i (\frac{1}{2} h_1 + \frac{1}{2} h_2 + \frac{1}{2} h_3)}. \quad (1.30)$$

If $h_1 + h_2 + h_3$ is odd, $e^{i\pi(h_1 + h_2 + h_3)} = -1$ and $\mathcal{S}(h_1 h_2 h_3)$ vanishes. If $h_1 + h_2 + h_3$ is even, $\mathcal{S}(h_1 h_2 h_3) = 2$. The reason for this effect is that the additional planes (associated with the body centered atoms) exactly cancel the scattering amplitude from the planes made up of corner atoms when $h_1 + h_2 + h_3$ is odd, but they add constructively when $h_1 + h_2 + h_3$ is even.

The scattering amplitude depends on other factors (e.g. thermal motion and zero point vibrations of the atoms), which we have neglected by assuming a perfect and stationary lattice.

1.4.6 Experimental Techniques 425

We know that constructive interference from a set of lattice planes separated 426
by a distance d will occur when 427

$$2d \sin \theta = n\lambda, \quad (1.31)$$

where θ is the angle between the incident beam and the planes that are scat- 428
tering, λ is the X-ray wave length, and n is an integer. For a given crystal 429
the possible values of d are fixed by the atomic spacing, and to satisfy (1.31), 430
one must vary either θ or λ over a range of values. Different experimental 431
methods satisfy (1.31) in different ways. The common techniques are (1) the 432
Laue method, (2) the *rotating crystal method*, and (3) the *powder method*. 433

Laue Method 434

In this method a single crystal is held stationary in a beam of continuous wave 435
length X-ray radiation (Fig. 1.22). Various crystal planes select the appropri- 436
ate wave length for constructive interference, and a geometric arrangement of 437
bright spots is obtained on a film. 438

Rotating Crystal Method 439

In this method a monochromatic beam of X-ray is incident on a rotating 440
single crystal sample. Diffraction maxima occur when the sample orientation 441
relative to the incident beam satisfies Bragg's law (Fig. 1.23). 442

Powder Method 443

Here, a monochromatic beam is incident on a finely powdered specimen. The 444
small crystallites are randomly oriented with respect to the incident beam, 445
so that the reciprocal lattice structure used in the Ewald construction must 446
be rotated about the origin of reciprocal space through all possible angles. 447
This gives a series of spheres in reciprocal space of radii $K_1, K_2, \dots$ (we 448
include the factor 2π in these reciprocal lattice vectors) equal to the smallest, 449

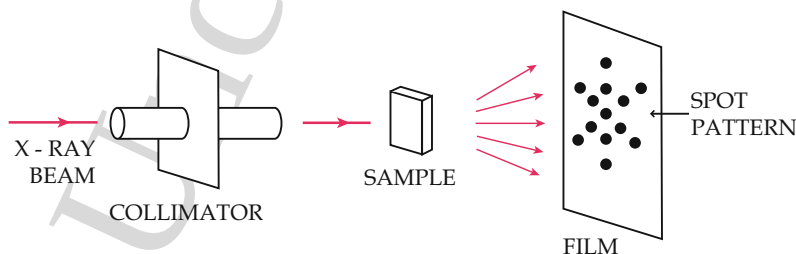


Fig. 1.22. Experimental arrangement of the Laue method

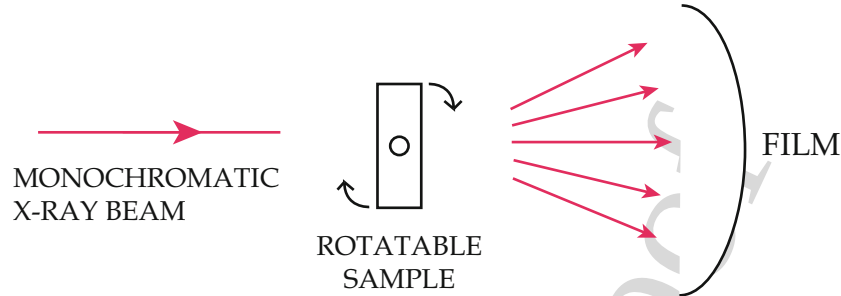


Fig. 1.23. Experimental arrangement of the rotating crystal method

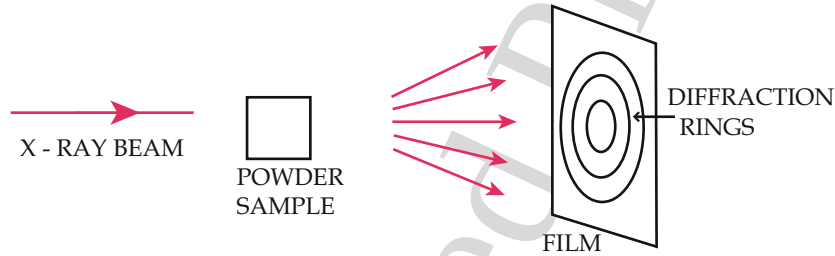


Fig. 1.24. Experimental arrangement of the powder method

next smallest, etc. reciprocal lattice vectors. The sequence of values $\frac{\sin(\phi_i/2)}{\sin(\phi_1/2)}$ 450
 give the ratios of $\frac{K_i}{K_1}$ for the crystal structure. This sequence is determined 451
 by the crystal structure. Knowledge of the X-ray wave length $\lambda = \frac{2\pi}{k}$ allows 452
 determination of the lattice spacing (Fig. 1.24). 453

1.5 Classification of Solids 454

1.5.1 Crystal Binding 455

Before considering even in a qualitative way how atoms bind together to 456
 form crystals, it is worthwhile to review briefly the periodic table and the 457
 ground state configurations of atoms. The single particle states of electrons 458
 moving in an effective central potential (which includes the attraction of the 459
 nucleus and some average repulsion associated with all other electrons) can 460
 be characterized by four quantum numbers: n , the principal quantum number 461
 takes on the values $1, 2, 3, \dots, l$, the angular momentum quantum number 462
 takes on values $0, 1, \dots, n-1$; m , the azimuthal quantum number (projection 463
 of l onto a given direction) is an integer satisfying $-l \leq m \leq l$; and σ , the 464
 spin quantum number takes on the values $\pm\frac{1}{2}$. 465

The energy of the single particle orbital is very insensitive to m and σ (in the absence of an applied magnetic field), but it depends strongly on n and l . Of course, due to the Pauli principle only one electron can occupy an orbital with given n, l, m , and σ . The periodic table is constructed by making an array of slots, with l value increasing from $l = 0$ as one moves to the left, and the value of $n + l$ increasing as one moves down. (Table 1.4) Of course, the correct number of slots must be allowed to account for the spin and azimuthal degeneracy $2(2l + 1)$ of a given l value. One then begins filling the slots from the top left, moving to the right, and then down when all slots of a given $(n + l)$ value have been used up. See Table 1.4, which lists the atoms (H, He, ...) and their atomic numbers in the appropriate slots. As the reader can readily observe, H has one electron, and it will occupy the $n = 1, l = 0(1s)$ state. Boron has five electrons and they will fill the $(1s)$ and $2s$ states with the fifth electron in the $2p$ state. Everything is very regular until Cr and Cu. These two elements have ground states in which one $4s$ electron falls into the $3d$ shell, giving for Cr the atomic configuration $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^6(3s)^2(3p)^6(4s)^1(3d)^5$, and for Cu the atomic configuration $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^6(3s)^2(3p)^6(4s)^1(3d)^{10}$. Other exceptions occur in the second transition series (the filling of the $4d$ levels) and in the third transition series (filling the $5d$ levels), and in the rare earth series (filling the $4f$ and $5f$ levels). Knowing this table allows one to write down the ground state electronic configuration of any atom. Note that the inert gases He, Ne, Kr, Rn, complete the shells $n = 1, n = 2, n = 3$, and $n = 4$, respectively. Ar and Xe are inert also; they complete the $n = 3$ shell (except for $3d$ electrons), and $n = 4$ shell (except for $4f$ electrons), respectively. Na, K, Rb, Cs, and Fr have one weakly bound s electron outside these closed shell configurations; F, Cl, Br, I and At are missing one p electron from the closed shell configurations. The alkali metals easily give up their loosely bound s electrons, and the halogens readily attract one p electron to give a closed shell configuration. The resulting $\text{Na}^+ - \text{Cl}^-$ ions form an ionic bond which is quite strong. Atoms like C, Si, Ge, and Sn have an $(np)^2(n + 1 s)^2$ configuration. These four valence electrons can be readily shared with other atoms in covalent bonds, which are also quite strong.¹ Compounds like GaAs,

¹ In Table 1.4, we note exceptions (i)–(vii):

- i Dropping a $4s$ electron into the $3d$ shell while filling $3d$ shell (Cr, Cu)
- ii Dropping a $5s$ electron into the $4d$ shell while filling $4d$ shell (Nb, Mo, Ru, Rh, Ag)
- iii Dropping both $5s$ electrons into the $4d$ shell while filling $4d$ shell (Pd)
- iv Dropping both $6s$ electrons into the $5d$ shell while filling $5d$ shell (Pt)
- v Dropping one $6s$ electron into the $5d$ shell while filling $5d$ shell (Au)
- vi Adding one $5d$ electron before filling the entire $4f$ shell (La, Gd)
- vii Adding one $6d$ electron before filling the entire $5f$ shell (Ac, Pa, U, Cm, Cf)
- viii (h) Adding two $5d$ electrons before filling the entire $5f$ shell (Th, Bk)

t4.1 Table 1.4. Ground state electron configurations in a periodic table: Note that $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots; l < n; m = -l, -l + 1, \dots, l; \sigma = \pm \frac{1}{2}$

	$\leftarrow l n + l \downarrow$																								
	$l = 0$																								
	1	2	1																						
	H	He	(1s)																						
	3	4	2																						
	Li	Be	(2s)																						
	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	3																
	B	C	N	O	F	Ne	Na	Mg	(2p, 3s)																
	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	4																
	Al	Si	P	S	Cl	Ar	K	Ca	(3p, 4s)																
	21	22	23	24	(i)	25	26	27	28	29	(i)	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	5				
	Sc	Ti	V	Cr	Mn	Fe	Co	Ni	Cu	Zn	Ga	Ge	As	Se	Br	Kr	Rb	Sr	(4p, 5s)						
	39	40	41	(ii)	42	(ii)	43	44	(ii)	45	(ii)	46	(iii)	47	(ii)	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	6
	Y	Zr	Nb	Mo	Tc	Ru	Rh	Pd	Ag	Cd	In	Sn	Sb	Te	I	Xe	Cs	Ba	(4d, 5p, 6s)						
	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	(iv)	79	(v)	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	7				
	Lu	Hf	Ta	W	Re	Os	Ir	Pt	Au	Hg	Tl	Pb	Bi	Po	At	Rn	Fr	Ra	(4f, 5d, 6p, 7s)						
	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115	116	117	118	119	120	(5f, 6d, 7p, 8s)					
	Ac	Th	Pa	U	Np	Pu	Am	Cm	Bk	Cf	Es	F	Md	No											

We note exceptions (i)–(vii):

- i Dropping a 4s electron into the 3d shell while filling 3d shell (Cr, Cu)
- ii Dropping a 5s electron into the 4d shell while filling 4d shell (Nb, Mo, Ru, Rh, Ag)
- iii Dropping both 5s electrons into the 4d shell while filling 4d shell (Pd)
- iv Dropping both 6s electrons into the 5d shell while filling 5d shell (Pt)
- v Dropping one 6s electron into the 5d shell while filling 5d shell (Au)
- vi Adding one 5d electron before filling the entire 4f shell (La, Gd)
- vii Adding one 6d electron before filling the entire 5f shell (Ac, Pa, U, Cm, Cf)
- viii (h) Adding two 5d electrons before filling the entire 5f shell (Th, Bk)

GaP, GaSb, or InP, InAs, InSb, etc., are formed from column III and column V constituents. With the partial transfer of an electron from As to Ga, one obtains the covalent bonding structure of Si or Ge as well as some degree of ionicity as in NaCl. Metallic elements like Na and K are relatively weakly bound. Their outermost s electrons become almost free in the solid and act as a glue holding the positively charged ions together. The weakest bonding in solids is associated with weak Van der Waals coupling between the constituent atoms or molecules. To give some idea of the binding energy of solids, we will consider the binding of ionic crystals like NaCl or CsCl.

1.6 Binding Energy of Ionic Crystals

The binding energy of ionic crystals results primarily from the electrostatic interaction between the constituent ions. A rough order of magnitude estimate of the binding energy per molecule can be obtained by simply evaluating

$$\langle V \rangle = \frac{e^2}{R_0} = \frac{(4.8 \times 10^{-10} \text{esu})^2}{2.8 \times 10^{-8} \text{cm}} \simeq 8 \times 10^{-12} \text{ergs} \sim 5 \text{eV}.$$

Here, R_0 is the observed interatomic spacing (which we take as $2.8 \text{ \AA}$, the spacing in NaCl). The experimentally measured value of the binding energy of NaCl is almost 8 eV per molecule, so our rough estimate is not too bad.

Interatomic Potential

For an ionic crystal, the potential energy of a pair of atoms i, j can be taken to be

$$\phi_{ij} = \pm \frac{e^2}{r_{ij}} + \frac{\lambda}{r_{ij}^n}. \quad (1.32)$$

Here, r_{ij} is the distance between atoms i and j . The $\pm$ sign depends on whether the atoms are like (+) or unlike (−). The first term is simply the Coulomb potential for a pair of point charges separated by r_{ij} . The second term accounts for *core repulsion*. The atoms or ions are not point charges, and when a pair of them gets close enough together their core electrons can repel one another. This core repulsion is expected to decrease rapidly with increasing r_{ij} . The parameters λ and n are phenomenological; they are determined from experiment.

Total Energy

The total potential energy is given by

$$U = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i \neq j} \phi_{ij}. \quad (1.33)$$

It is convenient to define ϕ_i , the potential energy of the i^{th} atom as 527

$$\phi_i = \sum_j' \phi_{ij}. \quad (1.34)$$

Here, the prime on the sum implies that the term $i = j$ is omitted. It is 528
apparent from symmetry considerations that ϕ_i is independent of i for an 529
infinite lattice, so we can drop the subscript i . The total energy is then 530

$$U = \frac{1}{2} 2N\phi = N\phi, \quad (1.35)$$

where $2N$ is the number of atoms and N is the number of molecules. 531

It is convenient in evaluating ϕ to introduce a dimensionless parameter p_{ij} 532
defined by $p_{ij} = R^{-1}r_{ij}$, where R is the distance between nearest neighbors. 533
In terms of p_{ij} , the expression for ϕ is given by 534

$$\phi = \frac{\lambda}{R^n} \sum_j' p_{ij}^{-n} - \frac{e^2}{R} \sum_j' (\mp p_{ij})^{-1}. \quad (1.36)$$

Here, the primes on the summations denote omission of the term $i = j$. We 535
define the quantities 536

$$A_n = \sum_j' p_{ij}^{-n}, \quad (1.37)$$

and 537

$$\alpha = \sum_j' (\mp p_{ij})^{-1}. \quad (1.38) \quad 538$$

The α and A_n are properties of the crystal structure; α is called the *Madelung* 539
constant. The internal energy of the crystal is given by $N\phi$, where N is the 540
number of molecules. The internal energy is given by 541

$$U = N \left[\lambda \frac{A_n}{R^n} - \alpha \frac{e^2}{R} \right]. \quad (1.39)$$

At the equilibrium separation R_0 , $(\frac{\partial U}{\partial R})_{R_0}$ must vanish. This gives the result 542

$$\lambda \frac{A_n}{R_0^n} = \alpha \frac{e^2}{nR_0}. \quad (1.40)$$

Therefore, the equilibrium value of the internal energy is 543

$$U_0 = N\phi_0 = -N\alpha \frac{e^2}{R_0} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n} \right). \quad (1.41)$$

Compressibility

The best value of the parameter n can be determined from experimental data on the compressibility κ . κ is defined by the negative of the change in volume per unit change in pressure at constant temperature divided by the volume.

$$\kappa = -\frac{1}{V} \left(\frac{\partial V}{\partial P} \right)_T. \quad (1.42)$$

The subscript T means holding temperature T constant, so that (1.42) is the isothermal compressibility. We will show that at zero temperature

$$\kappa^{-1} = V \left(\frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial V^2} \right)_{T=0}. \quad (1.43)$$

Equation (1.43) comes from the thermodynamic relations

$$F = U - TS, \quad (1.44)$$

and

$$dU = TdS - PdV. \quad (1.45)$$

By taking the differential of (1.44) and making use of (1.45), one can see that

$$dF = -PdV - SdT. \quad (1.46)$$

From (1.46) we have

$$P = - \left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial V} \right)_T. \quad (1.47)$$

Equation (1.42) can be written as

$$\kappa^{-1} = -V \left(\frac{\partial P}{\partial V} \right)_T = V \left(\frac{\partial^2 F}{\partial V^2} \right)_T. \quad (1.48)$$

But at $T = 0$, $F = U$ so that

$$\kappa^{-1} = V \left(\frac{\partial^2 F}{\partial V^2} \right)_{T=0} \quad (1.49)$$

is the inverse of the isothermal compressibility at $T = 0$. We can write the volume V as $2NR^3$ and use $\frac{\partial}{\partial V} = \frac{\partial R}{\partial V} \frac{\partial}{\partial R} = \frac{1}{6NR^2} \frac{\partial}{\partial R}$ in (1.39) and (1.43). This gives

$$\kappa_{T=0}^{-1} = \frac{\alpha e^2}{18R_0^4} (n-1), \quad (1.50)$$

or

$$n = 1 + \frac{18R_0^4}{\alpha e^2 \kappa}. \quad (1.51)$$

From the experimental data on NaCl, the best value for n turns out to be ~ 9.4 .

Evaluation of the Madelung Constant

564

For simplicity let us start with a linear chain. Each positive (+) atom has two
 neighbors, which are negative (−) atoms, at $p_{01} = 1$. Therefore,

565
566

$$\alpha = \sum_j' \mp p_{ij}^{-1} = 2 \left[1 - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{4} + \dots \right]. \quad (1.52)$$

If you remember that the power series expansion for $\ln(1+x)$ is given by
 $-\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-x)^n}{n} = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \dots$ and is convergent for $x \leq 1$, it is
 apparent that

567

568

569

$$\alpha = 2 \ln 2. \quad (1.53)$$

If we attempt the same approach for NaCl, we obtain

570

$$\alpha = \frac{6}{1} - \frac{12}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{8}{\sqrt{3}} - \frac{6}{2} + \dots \quad (1.54)$$

This is taking six opposite charge nearest neighbors at a separation of one
 nearest neighbor distance, 12 same charge next nearest neighbors at $\sqrt{2}$ times
 that distance, etc. It is clear that the series in (1.54) converges very poorly.
 The convergence can be greatly improved by using a different counting pro-
 cedure in which one works with groups of ions which form a more or less
 neutral array. The motivation is that the potential of a neutral assembly of
 charges falls off much more quickly with distance than that of a charged
 assembly.

571

572

573

574

575

576

577

578

Evjen's Method

579

We will illustrate *Evjen's method*² by considering a simple square lattice in
 two dimensions with two atoms per unit cell, one at (0,0) and one at $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$.
 The crystal structure is illustrated in Fig. 1.25. The calculation is carried out
 as follows:

580

581

582

583

1. One considers the charges associated with different shells where the first
 shell is everything inside the first square, the second is everything outside
 the first but inside the second square, etc.
2. An ion on a face is considered to be half inside and half outside the square
 defined by that face; a corner atom is one quarter inside and three quarters
 outside.
3. The total Madelung constant is given by $\alpha = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3 + \dots$, where
 α_j is the contribution from the i th shell.

584

585

586

587

588

589

590

591

As an example, let us evaluate the total charge on the first few shells. The
 first shell has four atoms on faces, all with the opposite charge to the atom

592

593

² H.M. Evjen, Phys. Rev. **39**, 675 (1932).

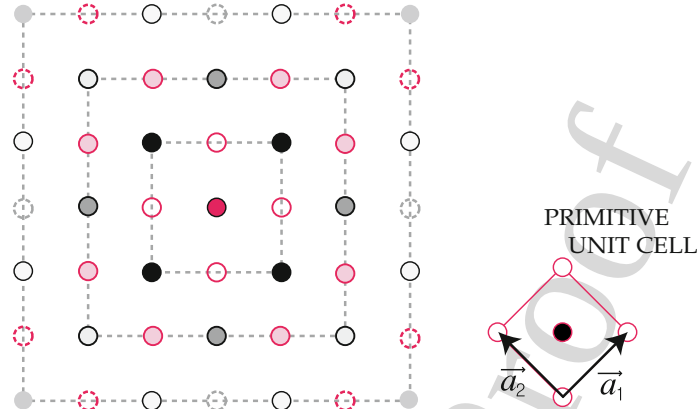


Fig. 1.25. Evjen method for a simple square lattice in two dimensions

at the origin and four corner atoms all with the same charge as the atom at the origin. Therefore, the charge of shell number one is

$$Q_1 = 4 \left(\frac{1}{2} \right) - 4 \left(\frac{1}{4} \right) = 1. \quad (1.55)$$

Doing the same for the second shell gives

$$Q_2 = 4 \left(\frac{1}{2} \right) - 4 \left(\frac{3}{4} \right) - 4 \left(\frac{1}{2} \right) + 8 \left(\frac{1}{2} \right) - 4 \left(\frac{1}{4} \right) = 0. \quad (1.56)$$

Here the first two terms come from the remainder of the atoms on the outside of the first square; the next three terms come from the atoms on the inside of the second square. To get α_1 and α_2 we simply divide the individual charges by their separations from the origin. This gives

$$\alpha_1 = \frac{4 \left(\frac{1}{2} \right)}{1} - \frac{4 \left(\frac{1}{4} \right)}{\sqrt{2}} \simeq 1.293, \quad (1.57)$$

$$\alpha_2 = \frac{4 \left(\frac{1}{2} \right)}{1} - \frac{4 \left(\frac{3}{4} \right)}{\sqrt{2}} - \frac{4 \left(\frac{1}{2} \right)}{2} + \frac{8 \left(\frac{1}{2} \right)}{\sqrt{5}} + \frac{4 \left(\frac{1}{4} \right)}{2\sqrt{2}} \simeq 0.314. \quad (1.58)$$

This gives $\alpha \simeq \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 \simeq 1.607$. The readers should be able to evaluate α_3 for themselves.

Madelung Constant for Three-Dimensional Lattices

For a three-dimensional crystal, Evjen's method is essentially the same with the exception that

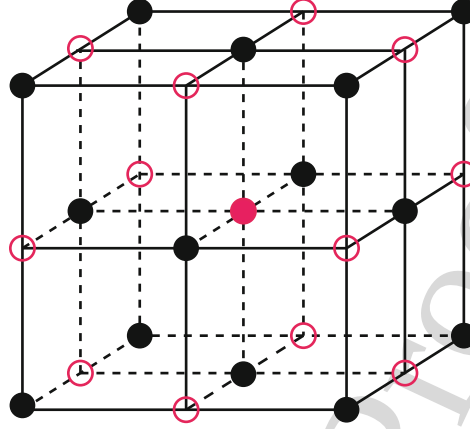


Fig. 1.26. Central atom and the first cube of the Evjen method for the NaCl structure

1. The squares are replaced by cubes. 607
2. Atoms on the face of a cube are considered to be half inside and half outside 608
the cube; atoms on the edge are $\frac{1}{4}$ inside and $\frac{3}{4}$ outside, and corner atoms 609
are $\frac{1}{8}$ inside and $\frac{7}{8}$ outside. 610

We illustrate the case of the NaCl structure as an example in the three 611
dimensions (see Fig. 1.26). 612

For α_1 we obtain 613

$$\alpha_1 = \frac{6 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)}{1} - \frac{12 \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{8 \left(\frac{1}{8}\right)}{\sqrt{3}} \simeq 1.456. \quad (1.59)$$

For α_2 we have the following contributions: 614

1. remainder of the contributions from the atoms on the first cube 615

$$= \frac{6 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)}{1} - \frac{12 \left(\frac{3}{4}\right)}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{8 \left(\frac{7}{8}\right)}{\sqrt{3}} \quad 616$$
2. Atoms on the interior of faces of the second cube 617

$$= -\frac{6 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)}{2} + \frac{6(4) \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)}{\sqrt{5}} - \frac{6(4) \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)}{\sqrt{6}} \quad 618$$
3. Atoms on the interior of edges of the second cube 619

$$= -\frac{12 \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)}{\sqrt{8}} + \frac{12(2) \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)}{\sqrt{9}} \quad 620$$
4. Atoms on the interior of the coners of the second cube 621

$$= -\frac{8 \left(\frac{1}{8}\right)}{\sqrt{12}} \quad 622$$

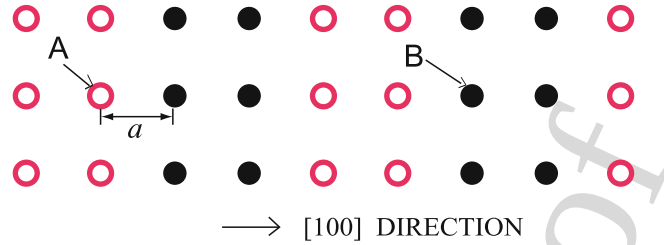
Adding them together gives 623

$$\alpha_2 = \left(3 - \frac{9}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{7}{\sqrt{3}}\right) + \left(-\frac{3}{2} + \frac{12}{\sqrt{5}} - \frac{12}{\sqrt{6}}\right) + \left(-\frac{3}{\sqrt{8}} + \frac{6}{3}\right) - \frac{1}{\sqrt{12}} \simeq 0.295. \quad (1.60)$$

Thus, to the approximation $\alpha \simeq \alpha_1 + \alpha_2$ we find that $\alpha \simeq 1.752$. The exact
 result for NaCl is $\alpha = 1.747558\dots$, so Evjen's method gives a surprisingly
 accurate result after only two shells.

Results of rather detailed evaluations of α for several different crystal struc-
 tures are $\alpha(\text{NaCl}) = 1.74756$, $\alpha(\text{CsCl}) = 1.76267$, $\alpha(\text{zincblende}) = 1.63806$,
 $\alpha(\text{wurtzite}) = 1.64132$. The NaCl structure occurs much more frequently than
 the CsCl structure. This may seem a bit surprising since $\alpha(\text{CsCl})$ is about 1%
 larger than $\alpha(\text{NaCl})$. However, core repulsion accounts for about 10% of the
 binding energy (see (1.41)). In the CsCl structure, each atom has eight nearest
 neighbors instead of the six in NaCl. This should increase the core repulsion
 by something of the order of 25% in CsCl. Thus, we expect about 2.5% larger
 contribution (from core repulsion) to the binding energy of CsCl. This negative
 contribution to the binding energy more than compensates the 1% difference
 in Madelung constants.

Problems	638
1.1. Demonstrate that	639
(a) The reciprocal lattice of a simple cubic lattice is simple cubic.	640
(b) The reciprocal lattice of a body centered cubic lattice is a face centered cubic lattice.	641 642
(c) The reciprocal lattice of a hexagonal lattice is hexagonal.	643
1.2. Determine the packing fraction of	644
(a) A simple cubic lattice	645
(b) A face centered lattice	646
(c) A body centered lattice	647
(d) The diamond structure	648
(e) A hexagonal close packed lattice with an ideal $\frac{c}{a}$ ratio	649
(f) The graphite structure with an ideal $\frac{c}{a}$.	650
1.3. The Bravais lattice of the diamond structure is fcc with two carbon atoms per primitive unit cell. If one of the two basis atoms is at (0,0,0), then the other is at $(\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4})$.	651 652 653
(a) Illustrate that a reflection through the (100) plane followed by a non-primitive translation through $[\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4}]$ is a glide-plane operation for the diamond structure.	654 655 656
(b) Illustrate that a fourfold rotation about an axis in diamond parallel to the x -axis passing through the point $(1, \frac{1}{4}, 0)$ (the screw axis) followed by the translation $[\frac{1}{4}, 0, 0]$ parallel to the screw axis is a screw operation for the diamond structure.	657 658 659 660
1.4. Determine the group multiplication table of the point group of an equilateral triangle.	661 662
1.5. CsCl can be thought of as a simple cubic lattice with two different atoms [at (0,0,0) and $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$] in the cubic unit cell. Let f_+ and f_- be the atomic scattering factors of the two constituents.	663 664 665
(a) What is the structure amplitude $F(h_1, h_2, h_3)$ for this crystal?	666
(b) An X-ray source has a continuous spectrum with wave numbers $\mathbf{k}$ satisfying: $\mathbf{k}$ is parallel to the [110] direction and $2^{-1/2} (\frac{2\pi}{a}) \leq \mathbf{k} \leq 3 \times 2^{1/2} (\frac{2\pi}{a})$, where a is the edge distance of the simple cube. Use the Ewald construction for a plane that contains the direction of incidence to show which reciprocal lattice points display diffraction maxima.	667 668 669 670 671
(c) If $f_+ = f_-$, which of these maxima disappear?	672
1.6. A simple cubic structure is constructed in which two planes of A atoms followed by two planes of B atoms alternate in the [100] direction.	673 674



1. What is the crystal structure (viewed as a non-Bravais lattice with four atoms per unit cell)?
2. What are the primitive translation vectors of the reciprocal lattice?
3. Determine the structure amplitude $F(h_1, h_2, h_3)$ for this non-Bravais lattice.

1.7. Powder patterns of three cubic crystals are found to have their first four diffraction rings at the values given below:

t4.2	ϕ_A	30°	35°	50°	60°
t4.3	ϕ_B	21°	29°	36°	42°
t4.4	ϕ_o	30°	50°	60°	74°

The crystals are monatomic, and the observer believes that one is body centered, one face centered, and one is a diamond structure.

1. What structures are the crystals A, B, and C?
2. The wave length λ of the incident X-ray is $0.95 \text{ \AA}$. What is the length of the cube edge for the cubic unit cell in A, B, and C, respectively?

1.8. Determine the ground state atomic configurations of C(6), O(8), Al(13), Si(16), Zn(30), Ga(31), and Sb(51).

1.9. Consider $2N$ ions in a linear chain with alternating $\pm e$ charges and a repulsive potential AR^{-n} between nearest neighbors.

1. Show that, at the equilibrium separation R_0 , the internal energy becomes

$$U(R_0) = -2 \ln 2 \times \frac{Ne^2}{R_0} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n} \right).$$

2. Let the crystal be compressed so that $R_0 \rightarrow R_0(1 - \delta)$. Show that the work done per unit length in compressing the crystal can be written $\frac{1}{2}C\delta^2$, and determine the expression for C .

1.10. For a BCC and for an FCC lattice, determine the separations between nearest neighbors, next nearest neighbors, ... down to the 5th nearest neighbors. Also determine the separations between n th nearest neighbors ($n = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5$) in units of the cube edge a of the simple cube.

Summary

699

In this chapter first we have introduced basic geometrical concepts useful in describing periodic arrays of objects and crystal structures both in real and reciprocal spaces assuming that the atoms sit at lattice sites.

A lattice is an infinite array of points obtained from three primitive translation vectors $\mathbf{a}_1$, $\mathbf{a}_2$, $\mathbf{a}_3$. Any point on the lattice is given by

$$\mathbf{n} = n_1\mathbf{a}_1 + n_2\mathbf{a}_2 + n_3\mathbf{a}_3.$$

Any pair of lattice points can be connected by a vector of the form

$$\mathbf{T}_{n_1n_2n_3} = n_1\mathbf{a}_1 + n_2\mathbf{a}_2 + n_3\mathbf{a}_3.$$

Well defined crystal structure is an arrangement of atoms in a *lattice* such that the atomic arrangement looks absolutely identical when viewed from two different points that are separated by a *lattice translation vector*. Allowed types of Bravais lattices are discussed in terms of symmetry operations both in two and three dimensions. Because of the requirement of translational invariance under operations of the lattice translation, the rotations of 60° , 90° , 120° , 180° , and 360° are allowed.

If there is only one atom associated with each lattice point, the lattice of the crystal structure is called *Bravais lattice*. If more than one atom is associated with each lattice point, the lattice is called *a lattice with a basis*. If $\mathbf{a}_1$, $\mathbf{a}_2$, $\mathbf{a}_3$ are the primitive translations of some lattice, one can define a set of primitive translation vectors $\mathbf{b}_1$, $\mathbf{b}_2$, $\mathbf{b}_3$ by the condition

$$\mathbf{a}_i \cdot \mathbf{b}_j = 2\pi\delta_{ij},$$

where $\delta_{ij} = 0$ if i is not equal to j and $\delta_{ii} = 1$. It is easy to see that

$$\mathbf{b}_i = 2\pi \frac{\mathbf{a}_j \times \mathbf{a}_k}{\mathbf{a}_i \cdot (\mathbf{a}_j \times \mathbf{a}_k)},$$

where i, j , and k are different. The lattice formed by the primitive translation vectors $\mathbf{b}_1$, $\mathbf{b}_2$, $\mathbf{b}_3$ is called the *reciprocal lattice* (reciprocal to the lattice formed by $\mathbf{a}_1$, $\mathbf{a}_2$, $\mathbf{a}_3$), and a reciprocal lattice vector is given by

$$\mathbf{G}_{h_1h_2h_3} = h_1\mathbf{b}_1 + h_2\mathbf{b}_2 + h_3\mathbf{b}_3.$$

Simple crystal structures and principles of commonly used experimental methods of wave diffraction are also reviewed briefly. Connection of Laue equations and Bragg's law is shown. Classification of crystalline solids are then discussed according to configuration of valence electrons of the elements forming the solid.

2

1

Lattice Vibrations

2

2.1 Monatomic Linear Chain

3

So far, in our discussion of the crystalline nature of solids we have assumed that the atoms sat at lattice sites. This is not actually the case; even at the lowest temperatures the atoms perform small vibrations about their equilibrium positions. In this chapter we shall investigate the vibrations of the atoms in solids. Many of the significant features of lattice vibrations can be understood on the basis of a simple one-dimensional model, a monatomic linear chain. For that reason we shall first study the linear chain in some detail.

We consider a linear chain composed of N identical atoms of mass M (see Fig. 2.1). Let the positions of the atoms be denoted by the parameters R_i , $i = 1, 2, \dots, N$. Here, we assume an infinite crystal of vanishing surface to volume ratio, and apply *periodic boundary conditions*. That is, the chain contains N atoms and the N th atom is connected to the first atom so that

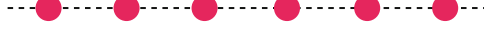
$$R_{i+N} = R_i. \quad (2.1)$$

The atoms interact with one another (e.g., through electrostatic forces, core repulsion, etc.). The potential energy of the array of atoms will obviously be a function of the parameters R_i , i.e.,

$$U = U(R_1, R_2, \dots, R_N). \quad (2.2)$$

We shall assume that U has a minimum $U(R_1^0, R_2^0, \dots, R_N^0)$ for some particular set of values $(R_1^0, R_2^0, \dots, R_N^0)$, corresponding to the equilibrium state of the linear chain. Define $u_i = R_i - R_i^0$ to be the deviation of the i th atom from its equilibrium position. Now expand U about its equilibrium value to obtain

$$U(R_1, R_2, \dots, R_N) = U(R_1^0, R_2^0, \dots, R_N^0) + \sum_i \left(\frac{\partial U}{\partial R_i} \right)_0 u_i + \frac{1}{2!} \sum_{i,j} \left(\frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial R_i \partial R_j} \right)_0 u_i u_j + \frac{1}{3!} \sum_{i,j,k} \left(\frac{\partial^3 U}{\partial R_i \partial R_j \partial R_k} \right)_0 u_i u_j u_k + \dots \quad (2.3)$$

**Fig. 2.1.** Linear chain of N identical atoms of mass M

The first term is a constant which can simply be absorbed in setting the zero of energy. By the definition of equilibrium, the second term must vanish (the subscript zero on the derivative means that the derivative is evaluated at $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n = 0$). Therefore, we can write

$$U(R_1, R_2, \dots, R_N) = \frac{1}{2!} \sum_{i,j} c_{ij} u_i u_j + \frac{1}{3!} \sum_{i,j,k} d_{ijk} u_i u_j u_k + \dots, \quad (2.4)$$

where

$$c_{ij} = \left(\frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial R_i \partial R_j} \right)_0, \quad d_{ijk} = \left(\frac{\partial^3 U}{\partial R_i \partial R_j \partial R_k} \right)_0. \quad (2.5)$$

For the present, we will consider only the first term in (2.4); this is called *the harmonic approximation*. The Hamiltonian in the harmonic approximation is

$$H = \sum_i \frac{P_i^2}{2M} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i,j} c_{ij} u_i u_j. \quad (2.6)$$

Here, P_i is the momentum and u_i the displacement from the equilibrium position of the i th atom.

Equation of Motion

Hamilton's equations

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{P}_i &= -\frac{\partial H}{\partial u_i} = -\sum_j c_{ij} u_j, \\ \dot{u}_i &= \frac{\partial H}{\partial P_i} = \frac{P_i}{M}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.7)$$

can be combined to yield the equation of motion

$$M\ddot{u}_i = -\sum_j c_{ij} u_j. \quad (2.8)$$

In writing down the equation for $\dot{P}_i$, we made use of the fact that c_{ij} actually depends only on the relative positions of atoms i and j , i.e., on $|i - j|$. Notice that $-c_{ij} u_j$ is simply the force on the i th atom due to the displacement u_j of the j th atom from its equilibrium position. Now let $R_n^0 = na$, so that $R_n^0 - R_m^0 = (n - m)a$. We assume a solution of the coupled differential equations

2.1 Monatomic Linear Chain 39

of motion, (2.8), of the form 43

$$u_n(t) = \xi_q e^{i(qna - \omega_q t)}. \quad (2.9)$$

By substituting (2.9) into (2.8) we find 44

$$M\omega_q^2 = \sum_m c_{nm} e^{iq(m-n)a}. \quad (2.10)$$

Because c_{nm} depends only on $l = m - n$, we can rewrite (2.10) as 45

$$M\omega_q^2 = \sum_{l=1}^N c(l) e^{iqla}. \quad (2.11) \quad 46$$

Boundary Conditions 47

We apply periodic boundary conditions to our chain; this means that the 48
chain contains N atoms and that the N th atom is connected to the first atom 49
(Fig. 2.2). This means that the $(n + N)$ th atom is the same atoms as the n th 50
atom, so that $u_n = u_{n+N}$. Since $u_n \propto e^{iqna}$, the condition means that 51

$$e^{iqNa} = 1, \quad (2.12)$$

or that $q = \frac{2\pi}{Na} \times p$ where $p = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$. However, not all of these values 52
of q are independent. In fact, there are only N independent values of q since 53
there are only N degrees of freedom. If two different values of q , say q and q' 54
give identical displacements for every atom, they are equivalent. It is easy to 55
see that 56

$$e^{iqna} = e^{iq'na} \quad (2.13)$$

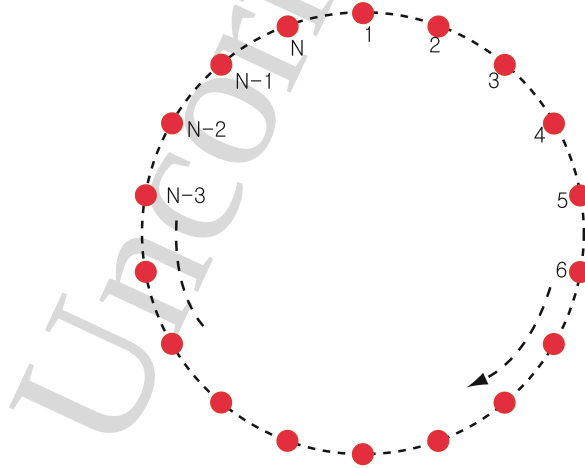


Fig. 2.2. Periodic boundary conditions on a linear chain of N identical atoms

for all values of n if $q' - q = \frac{2\pi}{a}l$, where $l = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$. The set of independent values of q are usually taken to be the N values satisfying $q = \frac{2\pi}{L}p$, where $-\frac{N}{2} \leq p \leq \frac{N}{2}$. We will see later that in three dimensions the independent values of $\mathbf{q}$ are values whose components (q_1, q_2, q_3) satisfy $q_i = \frac{2\pi}{L_i}p$, and which lie in the first Brillouin zone, the Wigner-Seitz unit cell of the reciprocal lattice.

Long Wave Length Limit

Let us look at the long wave length limit, where the wave number q tends to zero. Then $u_n(t) = \xi_0 e^{-i\omega_{q=0}t}$ for all values of n . Thus, the entire crystal is uniformly displaced (or the entire crystal is translated). This takes no energy if it is done very very slowly, so it requires $M\omega^2(0) = \sum_{l=1}^N c(l) = 0$, or $\omega(q=0) = 0$. In addition, it is not difficult to see that since $c(l)$ depends only on the magnitude of l that

$$M\omega^2(-q) = \sum_l c(l)e^{-iqla} = \sum_{l'} c(l')e^{iq'l'a} = M\omega^2(q). \quad (2.14)$$

In the last step in this equation, we replaced the dummy variable l by l' and used the fact that $c(-l') = c(l')$. Equation (2.14) tells us that $\omega^2(q)$ is an even function of q which vanishes at $q = 0$. If we make a power series expansion for small q , then $\omega^2(q)$ must be of the form

$$\omega^2(q) = s^2 q^2 + \dots \quad (2.15)$$

The constant s is called the *velocity of sound*.

Nearest Neighbor Forces: An Example

So far, we have not specified the interaction law among the atoms; (2.15) is valid in general. To obtain $\omega(q)$ for all values of q , we must know the interaction between atoms. A simple but useful example is that of nearest neighbor forces. In that case, the equation of motion is

$$M\omega^2(q) = \sum_{l=1}^1 c_l e^{iqla} = c_{-1}e^{-iqa} + c_0 + c_1 e^{iqa}. \quad (2.16)$$

Knowing that $\omega(0) = 0$ and that $c_{-l} = c_l$ gives the relation $c_1 = c_{-1} = -\frac{1}{2}c_0$. Therefore, (2.16) is simplified to

$$M\omega^2(q) = c_0 \left[1 - \left(\frac{e^{iqa} + e^{-iqa}}{2} \right) \right]. \quad (2.17)$$

Since $1 - \cos x = 2 \sin^2 \frac{x}{2}$, (2.17) can be expressed as

$$\omega^2(q) = \frac{2c_0}{M} \sin^2 \frac{qa}{2}, \quad (2.18)$$

which is displayed in Fig. 2.3. By looking at the long wave length limit, the coupling constant is determined by $c_0 = \frac{2Ms^2}{a^2}$, where s is the velocity of sound.

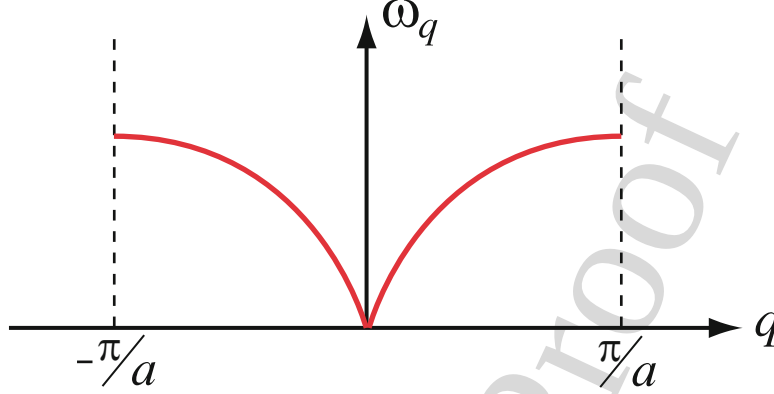


Fig. 2.3. Dispersion relation of the lattice vibration in a monatomic linear chain

2.2 Normal Modes

86

The general solution for the motion of the n th atom will be a linear combination of solutions of the form of (2.9). We can write the general solution as

$$u_n(t) = \sum_q [\xi_q e^{iqna - i\omega t} + \text{cc}] , \quad (2.19)$$

where cc means the complex conjugate of the previous term. The form of (2.19) assures the reality of $u_n(t)$, and the $2N$ parameters (real and imaginary parts of ξ_q) are determined from the initial values of the position and velocity of the N atoms which specify the initial state of the system.

In most problems involving small vibrations in classical mechanics, we seek new coordinates p_k and q_k in terms of which the Hamiltonian can be written as

$$H = \sum_k H_k = \sum_k \left[\frac{1}{2M} p_k p_k^* + \frac{1}{2} M \omega_k^2 q_k q_k^* \right] . \quad (2.20)$$

In terms of these normal coordinates p_k and q_k , the Hamiltonian is a sum of N independent simple harmonic oscillator Hamiltonians. Because we use running waves of the form $e^{iqna - i\omega_q t}$ the new coordinates q_k and p_k can be complex, but the Hamiltonian must be real. This dictates the form of (2.20).

The normal coordinates turn out to be

$$q_k = N^{-1/2} \sum_n u_n e^{-ikna} , \quad (2.21)$$

and

$$p_k = N^{-1/2} \sum_n P_n e^{+ikna} . \quad (2.22)$$

We will demonstrate this for q_k and leave it for the student to do the same 105
for p_k . We can write (2.19) as 106

$$u_n(t) = \alpha \sum_k \xi_k(t) e^{ikna}, \quad (2.23)$$

where ξ_k is complex and satisfies $\xi_{-k}^* = \xi_k$. With this condition $u_n(t)$, given 107
by (2.23), is real and α is simply a constant to be determined. We can write 108
the potential energy $U = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{mn} c_{mn} u_m u_n$ in terms of the new coordinates 109
 ξ_k as follows. 110

$$U = \frac{1}{2} |\alpha|^2 \sum_{mn} c_{mn} \sum_k \xi_k e^{ikma} \sum_{k'} \xi_{k'} e^{ik'na}. \quad (2.24)$$

Now, let us use $k' = q - k$ to rewrite (2.24) as 111

$$U = \frac{1}{2} |\alpha|^2 \sum_{nkq} \left[\sum_m c_{mn} e^{ik(m-n)a} \right] \xi_k \xi_{q-k} e^{iqna}. \quad (2.25)$$

From (2.10) one can see that the quantity in the square bracket in (2.25) is 112
equal to $M\omega_k^2$. Thus, U becomes 113

$$U = \frac{1}{2} |\alpha|^2 \sum_{nkq} M\omega_k^2 \xi_k \xi_{q-k}^* e^{iqna}. \quad (2.26)$$

The only factor in (2.26) that depends on n is e^{iqna} . It is not difficult to prove 114
that $\sum_n e^{iqna} = N\delta_{q,0}$. We do this as follows: Define $S_N = 1 + x + x^2 + \cdots +$ 115
 x^{N-1} ; then $xS_N = x + x^2 + \cdots + x^N$ is equal to $S_N - 1 + x^N$. 116

$$xS_N = S_N - 1 + x^N. \quad (2.27)$$

Solving for S_N gives 117

$$S_N = \frac{1 - x^N}{1 - x}. \quad (2.28)$$

Now, let $x = e^{iqa}$. Then, (2.28) says 118

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (e^{iqa})^n = \frac{1 - e^{iqaN}}{1 - e^{iqa}}. \quad (2.29)$$

Remember that the allowed values of q were given by $q = \frac{2\pi}{Na} \times \text{integer}$. 119
Therefore, $iqaN = i\frac{2\pi}{Na}aN \times \text{integer}$, and $e^{iqaN} = e^{2\pi i \times \text{integer}} = 1$. Therefore, 120
the numerator vanishes. The denominator does not vanish unless $q = 0$. When 121
 $q = 0$, $e^{iqa} = 1$ and the sum gives N . This proves that $\sum_n e^{iqna} = N\delta(q, 0)$ 122
when $q = \frac{2\pi}{Na} \times \text{integer}$. Using this result in (2.26) gives 123

$$U = \frac{1}{2} |\alpha|^2 \sum_k M \omega_k^2 \xi_k \xi_k^* N. \quad (2.30)$$

Choosing $\alpha = N^{-1/2}$ puts U into the form of the potential energy for N simple harmonic oscillators labeled by the k value. By assuming that P_n is proportional to $\sum_k p_k e^{-ikna}$ with $p_{-k}^* = p_k$, it is not difficult to show that (2.22) gives the kinetic energy in the desired form $\sum_k \frac{p_k p_k^*}{2M}$. The inverse of (2.21) and (2.22) are easily determined to be

$$u_n = N^{-1/2} \sum_k q_k e^{ikna}, \quad (2.31)$$

and

$$P_n = N^{-1/2} \sum_k p_k e^{-ikna}. \quad (2.32)$$

Quantization

Up to this point our treatment has been completely classical. We quantize the system in the standard way. The dynamical variables q_k and p_k are replaced by quantum mechanical operators $\hat{q}_k$ and $\hat{p}_k$ which satisfy the commutation relation

$$[p_k, q_{k'}] = -i\hbar \delta_{k,k'}. \quad (2.33)$$

The quantum mechanical Hamiltonian is given by $H = \sum_k H_k$, where

$$H_k = \frac{\hat{p}_k \hat{p}_k^\dagger}{2M} + \frac{1}{2} M \omega_k^2 \hat{q}_k \hat{q}_k^\dagger. \quad (2.34)$$

$\hat{p}_k^\dagger$ and $\hat{q}_k^\dagger$ are the Hermitian conjugates of $\hat{p}_k$ and $\hat{q}_k$, respectively. They are necessary in (2.34) to assure that the Hamiltonian is a Hermitian operator. The Hamiltonian of the one-dimensional chain is simply the sum of N independent simple Harmonic oscillator Hamiltonians. As with the simple Harmonic oscillator, it is convenient to introduce the operators a_k and its Hermitian conjugate $a_k^\dagger$, which are defined by

$$q_k = \left(\frac{\hbar}{2M\omega_k} \right)^{1/2} (a_k + a_{-k}^\dagger), \quad (2.35)$$

$$p_k = i \left(\frac{\hbar M \omega_k}{2} \right)^{1/2} (a_k^\dagger - a_{-k}). \quad (2.36)$$

The commutation relations satisfied by the a_k 's and $a_k^\dagger$'s are

$$[a_k, a_{k'}^\dagger]_- = \delta_{k,k'} \text{ and } [a_k, a_{k'}]_- = [a_k^\dagger, a_{k'}^\dagger]_- = 0. \quad (2.37)$$

The displacement of the n th atom and its momentum can be written 148

$$u_n = \sum_k \left(\frac{\hbar}{2MN\omega_k} \right)^{1/2} e^{ikna} (a_k + a_{-k}^\dagger), \quad (2.38) \quad 149$$

$$P_n = \sum_k i \left(\frac{\hbar\omega_k M}{2N} \right)^{1/2} e^{-ikna} (a_k^\dagger - a_{-k}). \quad (2.39) \quad 151$$

The Hamiltonian of the linear chain of atoms can be written 152

$$H = \sum_k \hbar\omega_k \left(a_k^\dagger a_k + \frac{1}{2} \right), \quad (2.40) \quad 153$$

and its eigenfunctions and eigenvalues are 154

$$|n_1, n_2, \dots, n_N\rangle = \frac{(a_{k_1}^\dagger)^{n_1}}{\sqrt{n_1!}} \cdots \frac{(a_{k_N}^\dagger)^{n_N}}{\sqrt{n_N!}} |0\rangle, \quad (2.41) \quad 155$$

and 156

$$E_{n_1, n_2, \dots, n_N} = \sum_i \hbar\omega_{k_i} \left(n_i + \frac{1}{2} \right). \quad (2.42) \quad 157$$

In (2.41), $|0\rangle = |0_1\rangle |0_2\rangle \cdots |0_N\rangle$ is the ground state of the entire system; it is a product of ground state wave functions for each harmonic oscillator. It is convenient to think of the energy $\hbar\omega_k$ as being carried by an *elementary excitations* or *quasiparticle*. In lattice dynamics, these elementary excitations are called *phonons*. In the ground state, no phonons are present in any of the harmonic oscillators. In an arbitrary state, such as (2.41), n_1 phonons are in oscillator k_1 , n_2 in k_2 , ..., n_N in k_N . We can rewrite (2.41) as $|n_1, n_2, \dots, n_N\rangle = |n_1\rangle |n_2\rangle \cdots |n_N\rangle$, a product of kets for each oscillator. 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165

2.3 Mössbauer Effect 166

With the simple one-dimensional harmonic approximation, we have the tools necessary to understand the physics of some interesting effects. One example is *the Mössbauer effect*.¹ This effect involves the decay of a nuclear excited state via γ -ray emission. First, let us discuss the decay of a nucleus in a free atom; to be explicit, let us consider the decay of the excited state of Fe^{57} via emission of a 14.4 keV γ -ray. 167 168 169 170 171 172



The excited state of Fe^{57} has a lifetime of roughly 10^{-7} s. The uncertainty principle tells us that by virtue of the finite lifetime $\Delta t = \tau = 10^{-7}$ s, there 173 174

¹ R. L. Mössbauer, D.H. Sharp, Rev. Mod. Phys. **36**, 410–417 (1964).

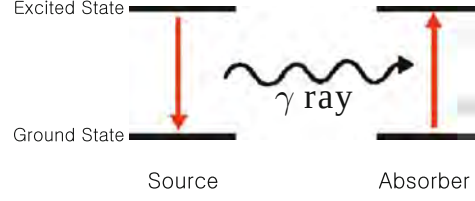


Fig. 2.4. The exact transition energy is required to be reabsorbed because of the very sharply defined nuclear energy states

is an uncertainty ΔE in the energy of the excited state (or a natural linewidth 175 for the γ -ray) given by $\Delta E = \frac{\hbar}{\Delta t}$. Using $\Delta t = 10^{-7}$ s gives $\Delta\omega = 10^7 \text{ s}^{-1}$ or 176 $\Delta(\hbar\omega) \simeq 6 \times 10^{-9} \text{ eV}$. Thus, the ratio of the linewidth $\Delta\omega$ to the frequency 177 ω is $\frac{\Delta\omega}{\omega} \simeq 4 \times 10^{-13}$. 178

In a resonance experiment, the γ -ray source emits and the target reso- 179 nantly absorbs the γ -rays. Unfortunately, when a γ -ray is emitted or absorbed 180 by a nucleus, the nucleus must recoil to conserve momentum. The momen- 181 tum of the γ -ray is $p_\gamma = \frac{\hbar\omega}{c}$, so that the nucleus must recoil with momentum 182 $\hbar K = p_\gamma$ or energy $E(K) = \frac{\hbar^2 K^2}{2M}$ where M is the mass of the atom. The 183 recoil energy is given by $E(K) = \frac{\hbar^2 \omega^2}{2Mc^2} = \frac{(\hbar\omega)^2}{2(M/m)mc^2}$. But $mc^2 \simeq 0.5 \times 10^6 \text{ eV}$ 184 and the ratio of the mass of Fe^{57} to the electron mass m is $\sim 2.3 \times 10^5$, giv- 185 ing $E(K) \simeq 2 \times 10^{-3} \text{ eV}$. This recoil energy is much larger than the energy 186 uncertainty of the γ -ray ($6 \times 10^{-9} \text{ eV}$). Because of the recoil on emission and 187 absorption, the γ -ray is short by $4 \times 10^{-3} \text{ eV}$ of energy necessary for reso- 188 nance absorption. Mössbauer had the idea that if the nucleus that underwent 189 decay was bound in a crystal (containing $\sim 10^{23}$ atoms) the recoil of the entire 190 crystal would carry negligible energy since the crystal mass would replace 191 the atomic mass of a single Fe^{57} atom. However, the quantum mechanical 192 state of the crystal might change in the emission process (via emission of 193 phonons). A typical phonon has a frequency of the order of 10^{13} s^{-1} , much 194 larger than $\Delta\omega = 10^7 \text{ s}^{-1}$ the natural line width. Therefore, in order for res- 195 onance absorption to occur, the γ -ray must be emitted without simultaneous 196 emission of phonons. This *no phonon γ -ray emission* occurs a certain fraction 197 of the time and is referred to as *recoil free fraction*. We would like to estimate 198 the recoil free fraction. 199

As far as the recoil-nucleus is concerned, the effect of the γ -ray emission 200 can be represented by an operator H' defined by 201

$$H' = Ce^{i\mathbf{K} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{R}}_N}, \quad (2.44)$$

where C is some constant, $\hbar K$ is the recoil momentum, and $\hat{\mathbf{R}}_N$ is the position 202 operator of the decaying nucleus. This expression can be derived using the 203 semiclassical theory of radiation, but we simply state it and demonstrate that 204 it is plausible by considering a free nucleus. 205

AQ: Please provide
Fig. 2.4 citation.

Recoil of a Free Nucleus 206

The Hamiltonian describing the motion of the center of mass of a free atom 207
is 208

$$H_0 = \frac{P^2}{2M} \quad (2.45)$$

The eigenstates of H_0 are plane waves 209

$$|k\rangle = V^{-1/2} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{R}_N}$$

whose energy is 210

$$E(k) = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2M}.$$

Operating on an initial state $|k\rangle$ with H' gives a new eigenstate proportional 211
to $|k + K\rangle$. The change in energy (i.e., the recoil energy) is 212

$$\Delta E = E(k + K) - E(k) = \frac{\hbar^2}{2M} (2\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{K} + K^2).$$

For a nucleus that is initially at rest, $\Delta E = \frac{\hbar^2 K^2}{2M}$, exactly what we had given 213
previously. 214

Mössbauer Recoil Free Fraction 215

When the atom whose nucleus emits the γ -ray is bound in the crystal, the 216
initial and final eigenstates must describe the entire crystal. Suppose the initial 217
eigenstate is 218

$$|n_1, n_2, \dots, n_N\rangle = \prod_i n_i^{-1/2} \left(a_{k_i}^\dagger \right)^{n_i} |0\rangle.$$

In evaluating H' operating on this state, we write $R_N = R_N^0 + u_N$ to describe 219
the center of mass of the nucleus which emits the γ -ray. We can choose the 220
origin of our coordinate system at the position R_N^0 and write 221

$$R_N = u_N = \sum_k \left(\frac{\hbar}{2MN\omega_k} \right)^{1/2} \left(a_k + a_{-k}^\dagger \right). \quad (2.46)$$

Because k is a dummy variable to be summed over, and because $\omega_k = \omega_{-k}$, 222
we can replace $a_{-k}^\dagger$ by $a_k^\dagger$ in (2.46). 223

The probability of a transition from initial state $|n_i\rangle = |n_1, n_2, \dots, n_N\rangle$ 224
to final state $|m_f\rangle = |m_1, m_2, \dots, m_N\rangle$ is proportional to the square of the 225
matrix element $\langle m_f | H' | n_i \rangle$. This result can be established by using time 226
dependent perturbation theory with H' as the perturbation. Let us write this 227
probability as $P(m_f, n_i)$. Then $P(m_f, n_i)$ can be expressed as 228

$$P(m_f, n_i) = \alpha \left| \langle m_f | C e^{i\mathbf{K} \cdot \mathbf{R}_N} | n_i \rangle \right|^2. \quad (2.47)$$

In (2.47) α is simply a proportional constant, and we have set $H' =$ 229
 $Ce^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{R}_N}$. Because $P(m_f, n_i)$ is the probability of going from $|n_i\rangle$ to $|m_f\rangle$, 230
 $\sum_{m_f} P(m_f, n_i) = 1$. This condition gives the relation 231

$$\alpha|C|^2 \sum_{m_f} \langle m_f | e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{R}_N} | n_i \rangle^* \langle m_f | e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{R}_N} | n_i \rangle = 1. \quad (2.48)$$

Because $e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{R}_N}$ is Hermitian, $\langle m_f | e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{R}_N} | n_i \rangle^*$ is equal to $\langle n_i | e^{-i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{R}_N} | m_f \rangle$. 232
 We use this result in (2.48) and make use of the fact that $|m_f\rangle$ is part of a 233
 complete orthonormal set so that $\sum_{m_f} |m_f\rangle\langle m_f|$ is the unit operator to obtain 234

$$\alpha|C|^2 [\langle n_i | e^{-i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{R}_N} \times e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{R}_N} | n_i \rangle]^2 = 1.$$

This is satisfied only if $\alpha|C|^2 = 1$, establishing the result 235

$$P(m_f, n_i) = |\langle m_f | e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{R}_N} | n_i \rangle|^2. \quad (2.49) \quad 236$$

Evaluation of $P(n_i, n_i)$ 237

The probability of γ -ray emission without any change in the state of the lat- 238
 tice is simply $P(n_i, n_i)$. We can write R_N in (2.49) as 239

$$R_N = \sum_k \beta_k (a_k + a_k^\dagger), \quad (2.50) \quad 240$$

where we have introduced $\beta_k = \left(\frac{\hbar}{2MN\omega_k}\right)^{1/2}$. If we write $|n_i\rangle = |n_1\rangle |n_2\rangle \dots |n_N\rangle$, 241
 $\dots |n_N\rangle$, then 242

$$\langle n_i | e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{R}_N} | n_i \rangle = \langle n_1 | \langle n_2 | \dots \langle n_N | [e^{iK \sum_k \beta_k (a_k + a_k^\dagger)}] | n_1 \rangle | n_2 \rangle \dots | n_N \rangle. \quad (2.51)$$

The operator a_k and $a_k^\dagger$ operates only on the k th harmonic oscillator, so that 243
 (2.51) can be rewritten 244

$$\langle n_i | e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{R}_N} | n_i \rangle = \prod_k \langle n_k | e^{iK\beta_k(a_k + a_k^\dagger)} | n_k \rangle. \quad (2.52)$$

Each factor in the product can be evaluated by expanding the exponential in 245
 power series. This gives 246

$$\begin{aligned} \langle n_k | e^{iK\beta_k(a_k + a_k^\dagger)} | n_k \rangle &= 1 + \frac{(iK\beta_k)^2}{2!} \langle n_k | a_k a_k^\dagger + a_k^\dagger a_k | n_k \rangle \\ &+ \frac{(iK\beta_k)^4}{4!} \langle n_k | (a_k + a_k^\dagger)^4 | n_k \rangle + \dots \end{aligned} \quad (2.53)$$

The result for this matrix element is 247

$$\langle n_k | e^{iK\beta_k(a_k + a_k^\dagger)} | n_k \rangle = 1 - \frac{E(K)}{\hbar\omega_k} \frac{n_k + \frac{1}{2}}{N} + O(N^{-2}). \quad (2.54)$$

We shall neglect terms of order N^{-2} , N^{-3} , ..., etc. in this expansion. With this approximation we can write

$$\langle n_i | e^{i\mathbf{K} \cdot \mathbf{R}_N} | n_i \rangle \simeq \prod_k \left[1 - \frac{E(K)}{\hbar\omega_k} \frac{n_k + \frac{1}{2}}{N} \right]. \quad (2.55)$$

To terms of order N^{-1} , the product appearing on the right-hand side of (2.55) is equivalent to $e^{-\frac{E(K)}{N} \sum_k \frac{n_k + \frac{1}{2}}{\hbar\omega_k}}$ to the same order. Thus, for the recoil free fraction, we find

$$P(n_i, n_i) = e^{-2 \frac{E(K)}{N} \sum_k \frac{n_k + \frac{1}{2}}{\hbar\omega_k}}. \quad (2.56)$$

Although we have derived (2.56) for a simple one-dimensional model, the result is valid for a real crystal if sum over k is replaced by a three-dimensional sum over all $\mathbf{k}$ and over the three polarizations. We will return to the evaluation of the sum later, after we have considered models for the phonon spectrum in real crystals.

2.4 Optical Modes

So far, we have restricted our consideration to a monatomic linear chain. Later on, we shall consider three-dimensional solids (the added complication is not serious). For the present, let us stick with the one-dimensional chain, but let us generalize to the case of two atoms per unit cell (Fig. 2.5).

If atoms A and B are identical, the primitive translation vector of the lattice is a , and the smallest reciprocal vector is $K = \frac{2\pi}{a}$. If A and B are distinguishable (e.g. of slightly different mass) then the smallest translation vector is $2a$ and the smallest reciprocal lattice vector is $K = \frac{2\pi}{2a} = \frac{\pi}{a}$. In this case, the part of the ω vs. q curve lying outside the region $|q| \leq \frac{\pi}{2a}$ must be translated (or folded back) into the first Brillouin zone (region between $-\frac{\pi}{2a}$ and $\frac{\pi}{2a}$) by adding or subtracting the reciprocal lattice vector $\frac{\pi}{a}$. This results in the spectrum shown in Fig. 2.6. Thus, for a non-Bravais lattice, the phonon spectrum has more than one branch. If there are p atoms per primitive unit cell, there will be p branches of the spectrum in a one-dimensional crystal. One branch, which satisfies the condition that $\omega(q) \rightarrow 0$ as $q \rightarrow 0$ is called the *acoustic branch* or *acoustic mode*. The other $(p - 1)$ branches are called *optical branches* or *optical modes*. Due to the difference between the

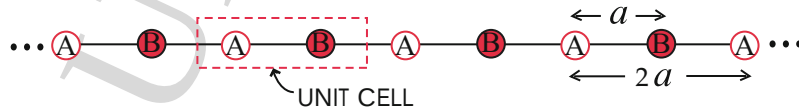


Fig. 2.5. Linear chain with two atoms per unit cell

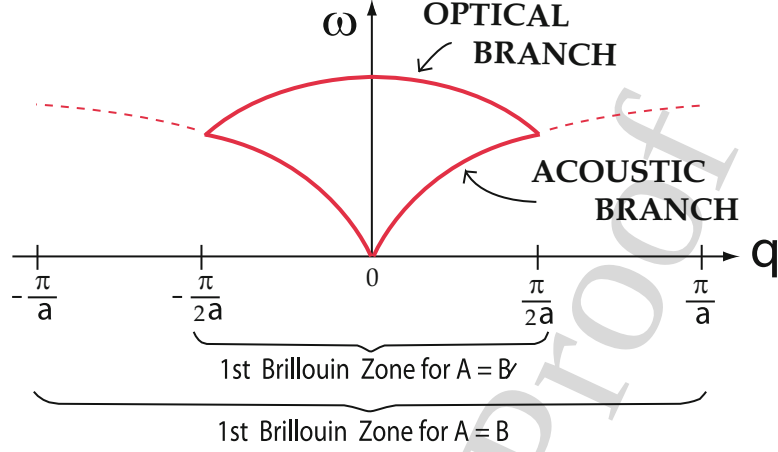


Fig. 2.6. Dispersion curves for the lattice vibration in a linear chain with two atoms per unit cell

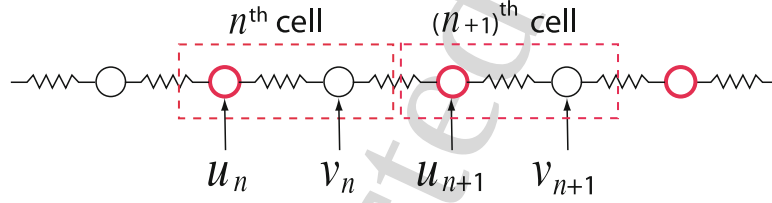


Fig. 2.7. Unit cells of a linear chain with two atoms per cell

pair of atoms in the unit cell when $A \neq B$, the degeneracy of the acoustic and optical modes at $q = \pm \frac{\pi}{2a}$ is usually removed. Let us consider a simple example, the linear chain with nearest neighbor interactions but with atoms of mass M_1 and M_2 in each unit cell. Let u_n be the displacement from its equilibrium position of the atom of mass M_1 in the n th unit cell; let v_n be the corresponding quantity for the atom of mass M_2 . Then, the equations of motion are

$$M_1 \ddot{u}_n = K [(v_n - u_n) - (u_n - v_{n-1})], \quad (2.57)$$

$$M_2 \ddot{v}_n = K [(u_{n+1} - v_n) - (v_n - u_n)]. \quad (2.58)$$

In Fig. 2.7, we show unit cells n and $n + 1$. We assume solutions of (2.57) and (2.58) of the form

$$u_n = u_q e^{iq2an - i\omega_q t}, \quad (2.59)$$

$$v_n = v_q e^{iq(2an+a) - i\omega_q t}. \quad (2.60)$$

where u_q and v_q are constants. Substituting (2.59) and (2.60) into the equations of motion gives the following matrix equation.

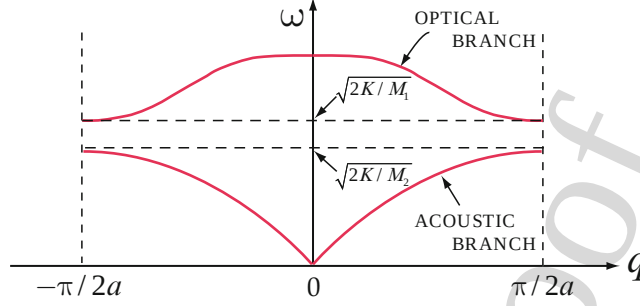


Fig. 2.8. Dispersion relations for the acoustical and optical modes of a diatomic linear chain

$$\begin{bmatrix} -M_1\omega^2 + 2K & -2K \cos qa \\ -2K \cos qa & -M_2\omega^2 + 2K \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u_q \\ v_q \end{bmatrix} = 0. \quad (2.61)$$

The nontrivial solutions are obtained by setting the determinant of the 2×2 matrix multiplying the column vector $\begin{bmatrix} u_q \\ v_q \end{bmatrix}$ equal to zero. The roots are

$$\omega_{\pm}^2(q) = \frac{K}{M_1 M_2} \left\{ M_1 + M_2 \mp [(M_1 + M_2)^2 - 4M_1 M_2 \sin^2 qa]^{1/2} \right\}. \quad (2.62)$$

We shall assume that $M_1 < M_2$. Then at $q = \pm \frac{\pi}{2a}$, the two roots are $\omega_{\text{OP}}^2(q = \frac{\pi}{2a}) = \frac{2K}{M_1}$ and $\omega_{\text{AC}}^2(q = \frac{\pi}{2a}) = \frac{2K}{M_2}$. At $q \approx 0$, the two roots are given by $\omega_{\text{AC}}^2(q) \simeq \frac{2Ka^2}{M_1 + M_2} q^2$ and $\omega_{\text{OP}}^2(q) = \frac{2K(M_1 + M_2)}{M_1 M_2} \left[1 - \frac{M_1 M_2}{(M_1 + M_2)^2} q^2 a^2 \right]$. The dispersion relations for both modes are sketched in Fig. 2.8.

2.5 Lattice Vibrations in Three Dimensions

Now let us consider a primitive unit cell in three dimensions defined by the translation vectors $\mathbf{a}_1$, $\mathbf{a}_2$, and $\mathbf{a}_3$. We will apply periodic boundary conditions such that N_i steps in the direction $\mathbf{a}_i$ will return us to the original lattice site. The Hamiltonian in the harmonic approximation can be written as

$$H = \sum_i \frac{\mathbf{P}_i^2}{2M} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i,j} \mathbf{u}_i \cdot \underline{C}_{ij} \cdot \mathbf{u}_j. \quad (2.63)$$

Here, the tensor $\underline{C}_{ij}$ (i and j refer to the i th and j th atoms and $\underline{C}_{ij}$ is a three-dimensional tensor for each value of i and j) is given by

$$\underline{C}_{ij} = [\nabla_{R_i} \nabla_{R_j} U(\mathbf{R}_1, \mathbf{R}_2, \dots)]_{R_i^0 R_j^0}. \quad (2.64)$$

2.5 Lattice Vibrations in Three Dimensions 51

In obtaining (2.63) we have expanded $U(\mathbf{R}_1, \mathbf{R}_2, \dots)$ in powers of $\mathbf{u}_i = \mathbf{R}_i - \mathbf{R}_i^0$, the deviation from the equilibrium position, and we have used the definition of equilibrium to eliminate the term that is linear in $\mathbf{u}_i$.

From Hamilton's equation we obtain the equation of motion

$$M\ddot{\mathbf{u}}_n = - \sum_j \underline{C}_{ij} \cdot \mathbf{u}_j. \quad (2.65)$$

We assume a solution to (2.65) of the form

$$\mathbf{u}_n = \boldsymbol{\xi}_{\mathbf{k}} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{R}_n^0 - i\omega_{\mathbf{k}} t}. \quad (2.66)$$

Here, $\boldsymbol{\xi}_{\mathbf{k}}$ is a vector whose magnitude gives the size of the displacement associated with wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ and whose direction gives the direction of the displacement. It is convenient to write

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}_{\mathbf{k}} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_{\mathbf{k}} q_{\mathbf{k}}, \quad (2.67)$$

where $\hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_{\mathbf{k}}$ is a unit polarization vector (a unit vector in the direction of $\boldsymbol{\xi}_{\mathbf{k}}$) and $q_{\mathbf{k}}$ is the amplitude. Substituting the assumed solution into the equation of motion gives

$$M\omega_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \boldsymbol{\epsilon}_{\mathbf{k}} = \sum_j \underline{C}_{ij} \cdot \hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_{\mathbf{k}} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot (\mathbf{R}_j^0 - \mathbf{R}_i^0)}. \quad (2.68)$$

Because (2.68) is a vector equation, it must have three solutions for each value of $\mathbf{k}$. This is apparent if we define the tensor $\underline{F}(\mathbf{k})$ by

$$\underline{F}(\mathbf{k}) = - \sum_j e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot (\mathbf{R}_j^0 - \mathbf{R}_i^0)} \underline{C}_{ij}. \quad (2.69)$$

Then, (2.68) can be written as a matrix equation

$$\begin{pmatrix} M\omega_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + F_{xx} & F_{xy} & F_{xz} \\ F_{yx} & M\omega_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + F_{yy} & F_{yz} \\ F_{zx} & F_{zy} & M\omega_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + F_{zz} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \hat{\epsilon}_{\mathbf{k}x} \\ \hat{\epsilon}_{\mathbf{k}y} \\ \hat{\epsilon}_{\mathbf{k}z} \end{pmatrix} = 0. \quad (2.70)$$

The three solutions of the three by three secular equation for a given value of $\mathbf{k}$ can be labeled by a *polarization index* λ . The eigenvalues of (2.70) will be $\omega_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^2$ and the eigenfunctions will be

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} = (\hat{\epsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^x, \hat{\epsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^y, \hat{\epsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^z)$$

with $\lambda = 1, 2, 3$.

When we apply periodic boundary conditions, then we must have the condition

$$e^{ik_i N_i a_i} = 1 \quad (2.71)$$

satisfied for $i = 1, 2, 3$ the three primitive translation directions. In (2.71), k_i is the component of $\mathbf{k}$ in the direction of $\mathbf{a}_i$ and N_i is the period associated

with the periodic boundary conditions in this direction. From the condition (2.71), it is clear that the allowed values of the wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ must be of the form

$$\mathbf{k} = 2\pi \left(\frac{n_1}{N_1} \mathbf{b}_1 + \frac{n_2}{N_2} \mathbf{b}_2 + \frac{n_3}{N_3} \mathbf{b}_3 \right), \quad (2.72)$$

where n_1 , n_2 , and n_3 are integers, and $\mathbf{b}_1$, $\mathbf{b}_2$, $\mathbf{b}_3$ are primitive translation vectors of the reciprocal lattice. As in the one-dimensional case, not all of the values of $\mathbf{k}$ given by (2.72) are independent. It is customary to choose as independent values of $\mathbf{k}$ those which satisfy (2.72) and the condition

$$-\frac{N_i}{2} \leq n_i \leq \frac{N_i}{2}. \quad (2.73)$$

This set of $\mathbf{k}$ values is restricted to the first Brillouin zone, the set of all values of $\mathbf{k}$ satisfying (2.72) that are closer to the origin in reciprocal space than to any other reciprocal lattice point. The total number of $\mathbf{k}$ values in the first Brillouin zone is $N = N_1 N_2 N_3$, and there are three normal modes (three polarizations λ) for each $\mathbf{k}$ value. This gives a total of $3N$ normal modes, the number required to describe a system of $N = N_1 N_2 N_3$ atoms each having three degrees of freedom. For $\mathbf{k}$ values that lie outside the Brillouin zone, one simply adds a reciprocal lattice vector $\mathbf{K}$ to obtain an equivalent $\mathbf{k}$ value inside the Brillouin zone.

2.5.1 Normal Modes

As we did in the one-dimensional case, we can define new coordinates $q_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ and $p_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ as

$$\mathbf{u}_n = N^{-1/2} \sum_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} \hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} q_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{R}_n^0}, \quad (2.74)$$

$$\mathbf{P}_n = N^{-1/2} \sum_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} \hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} p_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{R}_n^0}. \quad (2.75)$$

The Hamiltonian becomes

$$H = \sum_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} H_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} = \sum_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} \left[\frac{1}{2M} p_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} p_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^* + \frac{1}{2} M \omega_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^2 q_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} q_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^* \right]. \quad (2.76)$$

It is customary to define the polarization vectors $\hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ to satisfy $\hat{\varepsilon}_{-\mathbf{k}\lambda} = -\hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ and $\hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} \cdot \hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda'} = \delta_{\lambda\lambda'}$. Remembering that $\sum_n e^{i(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}') \cdot \mathbf{R}_n^0} = N \delta_{\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}'}$, one can see immediately that

$$\sum_n \hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} \cdot \hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}'\lambda'} e^{i(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}') \cdot \mathbf{R}_n^0} = N \delta_{\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}'} \delta_{\lambda\lambda'}. \quad (2.77)$$

The conditions resulting from requiring $\mathbf{P}_n$ and $\mathbf{u}_n$ to be real are 348

$$\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^* = \mathbf{P}_{-\mathbf{k}\lambda} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{Q}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^* = \mathbf{Q}_{-\mathbf{k}\lambda} \quad (2.78)$$

where $\mathbf{p}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} = \hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} p_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ and $\mathbf{q}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} = \hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} q_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$. The condition on the scalar quantities 349
 $p_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ and $q_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ differs by a minus sign from the vector relation (2.78) because 350
 $\hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ changes sign when $\mathbf{k}$ goes to $-\mathbf{k}$. 351

2.5.2 Quantization 352

To quantize, the dynamical variables $p_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ and $q_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ are replaced by quantum 353
mechanical operators $\hat{p}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ and $\hat{q}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ which satisfy the commutation relations 354

$$[\hat{p}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}, \hat{q}_{\mathbf{k}'\lambda'}]_- = -i\hbar\delta_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'}\delta_{\lambda\lambda'}. \quad (2.79)$$

It is again convenient to introduce creation and annihilation operators $a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^\dagger$ 355
and $a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ defined by 356

$$q_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} = \left(\frac{\hbar}{2M\omega_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}} \right)^{1/2} (a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} - a_{-\mathbf{k}\lambda}^\dagger), \quad (2.80)$$

$$p_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} = i \left(\frac{\hbar M\omega_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}}{2} \right)^{1/2} (a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^\dagger + a_{-\mathbf{k}\lambda}). \quad (2.81)$$

The differences in sign from one-dimensional case result from using scalar 357
quantities $q_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ and $p_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ in defining $a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ and $a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^\dagger$. The operators $a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ and $a_{\mathbf{k}'\lambda'}$ 358
satisfy the commutation relations 359

$$[a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}, a_{\mathbf{k}'\lambda'}^\dagger]_- = \delta_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'}\delta_{\lambda\lambda'}, \quad (2.82)$$

$$[a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}, a_{\mathbf{k}'\lambda'}]_- = [a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^\dagger, a_{\mathbf{k}'\lambda'}^\dagger]_- = 0. \quad (2.83)$$

The Hamiltonian is given by 360

$$H = \sum_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} \left(a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} + \frac{1}{2} \right). \quad (2.84) \quad 361$$

From this point on the analysis is essentially identical to that of the one- 362
dimensional case which we have treated in detail already. In the three- 363
dimensional case, we can write the displacement $\mathbf{u}_n$ and momentum $\mathbf{P}_n$ of 364
the n th atom as the quantum mechanical operators given below: 365

$$\mathbf{u}_n = \sum_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} \left(\frac{\hbar}{2MN\omega_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}} \right)^{1/2} \hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{R}_n^0} (a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} - a_{-\mathbf{k}\lambda}^\dagger), \quad (2.85) \quad 366$$

$$\mathbf{P}_n = \sum_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} i \left(\frac{\hbar M\omega_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}}{2N} \right)^{1/2} \hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} e^{-i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{R}_n^0} (a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^\dagger + a_{-\mathbf{k}\lambda}). \quad (2.86) \quad 368$$

Mean Squared Displacement of an Atom

369

As an example of how to use the quantum mechanical eigenstates and the operator describing dynamical variables, let us evaluate the mean squared displacement of an atom from its equilibrium position in a three-dimensional crystal. We can write

$$\mathbf{u}_n \cdot \mathbf{u}_n = \sum_{\mathbf{k}\lambda, \mathbf{k}'\lambda'} \left(\frac{\hbar}{2MN} \right) (\omega_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} \omega_{\mathbf{k}'\lambda'})^{-1/2} \hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} \cdot \hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}'\lambda'} \left(a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} + a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^\dagger \right) \left(a_{\mathbf{k}'\lambda'} + a_{\mathbf{k}'\lambda'}^\dagger \right). \quad (2.87)$$

Here, we have again chosen the origin at the equilibrium position of the n^{th} atom so that $R_n^0 = 0$. Then, we can replace $\hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} a_{-\mathbf{k}\lambda}^\dagger$ by $-\hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^\dagger$ in (2.85). This was done in obtaining (2.87). If we assume the eigenstate of the lattice is $|n_{\mathbf{k}_1\lambda_1}, n_{\mathbf{k}_2\lambda_2}, \dots\rangle$, it is not difficult to see that

$$\langle \mathbf{u}_n \rangle = \langle n_{\mathbf{k}_1\lambda_1}, n_{\mathbf{k}_2\lambda_2}, \dots | \mathbf{u}_n | n_{\mathbf{k}_1\lambda_1}, n_{\mathbf{k}_2\lambda_2}, \dots \rangle = 0, \quad (2.88)$$

and that

$$\langle \mathbf{u}_n \cdot \mathbf{u}_n \rangle = \sum_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} \left(\frac{\hbar}{2MN\omega_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}} \right) (2n_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} + 1). \quad (2.89)$$

2.6 Heat Capacity of Solids

380

In the nineteenth century, it was known from experiment that at room temperature the specific heat of a solid was given by the Dulong–Petit law which said

$$C_v = 3R, \quad (2.90)$$

where $R = N_A k_B$, and $N_A =$ Avogadro number ($=6.03 \times 10^{23}$ atoms/mole) and $k_B =$ Boltzmann's constant ($=1.38 \times 10^{-16}$ ergs/°K). Recall that 1 calorie = 4.18 joule = 4.18×10^7 ergs. Thus, (2.90) gave the result

$$C_v \simeq 6 \text{ cal/deg mole}. \quad (2.91)$$

The explanation of the Dulong–Petit law is based on the equipartition theorem of classical statistical mechanics. This theorem assumes that each atom oscillates harmonically about its equilibrium position, and that the energy of one atom is

$$E = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}kr^2 = \frac{1}{2m} (p_x^2 + p_y^2 + p_z^2) + \frac{1}{2}k(x^2 + y^2 + z^2). \quad (2.92)$$

The equipartition theorem states that for a classical system in equilibrium $\langle \frac{p_x^2}{2m} \rangle = \frac{1}{2}k_B T$. The same is true for the other terms in (2.92), so that the energy per atom at temperature T is $E = 3k_B T$. The energy of 1 mole is

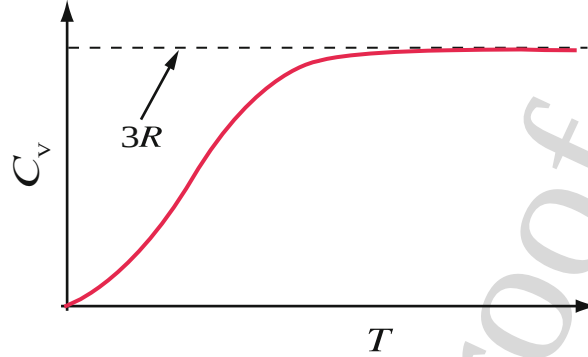


Fig. 2.9. Temperature dependence of the specific heat of a typical solid

$$U = 3N_A k_B T = 3RT. \quad (2.93)$$

It follows immediately that C_v , which is equal to $(\frac{\partial U}{\partial T})_v$ is given by (2.90). It was later discovered that the Dulong–Petit law was valid only at sufficiently high temperature. The temperature dependence of C_v for a typical solid was found to behave as shown in Fig. 2.9.

2.6.1 Einstein Model

To explain why the specific heat decreased as the temperature was lowered, Einstein made the assumption that the atomic vibrations were quantized. By this we mean that if one assumes that the motion of each atom is described by a harmonic oscillator, then the allowed energy values are given by $\varepsilon_n = (n + \frac{1}{2}) \hbar \omega$, where $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$, and ω is the oscillator frequency.² Einstein used a very simple model in which each atom vibrated with the same frequency ω . The probability p_n that an oscillator has energy ε_n is proportional to $e^{-\varepsilon_n/k_B T}$. Because p_n is a probability and $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_n = 1$, we find that it is convenient to write

$$p_n = Z^{-1} e^{-\varepsilon_n/k_B T}, \quad (2.94)$$

and to determine the constant Z from the condition $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_n = 1$. Doing so gives

$$Z = e^{-\hbar \omega / 2 k_B T} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(e^{-\hbar \omega / k_B T} \right)^n. \quad (2.95)$$

The power series expansion of $(1 - x)^{-1}$ is equal to $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x^n$. Making use of this result in (2.95) gives

² See Appendix A for a quantum mechanical solution of a harmonic oscillator problem.

$$Z = \frac{e^{-\hbar\omega/2k_B T}}{1 - e^{-\hbar\omega/k_B T}} = \frac{e^{\hbar\omega/2k_B T}}{e^{\hbar\omega/k_B T} - 1}. \quad (2.96)$$

The mean value of the energy of one oscillator at temperature T is given by 412
 $\bar{\varepsilon} = \sum_n \varepsilon_n p_n$. Making use of (2.94) and (2.95) and the formula $\sum_n n e^{-nx} =$ 413
 $-\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \sum_n e^{-nx}$ gives 414

$$\bar{\varepsilon} = \frac{\hbar\omega}{2} + \bar{n}\hbar\omega. \quad (2.97)$$

Here, $\bar{n}$ is the thermal average of n ; it is given by 415

$$\bar{n} = \frac{1}{e^{\hbar\omega/k_B T} - 1}, \quad (2.98)$$

and is called the *Bose–Einstein distribution function*. The internal energy of 416
 a lattice containing N atoms is simply $U = 3N\hbar\omega (\bar{n} + \frac{1}{2})$, where $\bar{n}$ is given 417
 by (2.98). If N is the Avogadro number, then the specific heat is given by 418

$$C_v = \left(\frac{\partial U}{\partial T} \right)_v = 3Nk_B F_E \left(\frac{\hbar\omega}{k_B T} \right), \quad (2.99) \quad 419$$

where the *Einstein function* $F_E(x)$ is defined by 420

$$F_E(x) = \frac{x^2}{(e^x - 1)(1 - e^{-x})}. \quad (2.100)$$

It is useful to define the *Einstein temperature* T_E by $\hbar\omega = k_B T_E$. Then the x 421
 appearing in $F_E(x)$ is $\frac{T_E}{T}$. 422

In the high-temperature limit ($T \gg T_E$), x is very small compared to unity. 423
 Expanding $F_E(x)$ for small x gives 424

$$F_E(x) = 1 - \frac{1}{12}x^2 + \dots, \quad (2.101)$$

and 425

$$C_v = 3Nk_B \left[1 - \frac{1}{12} \left(\frac{T_E}{T} \right)^2 + \dots \right]. \quad (2.102)$$

This agrees with the classical Dulong–Petit law at very high temperature and 426
 it falls off with decreasing T . 427

In the low temperature limit ($T \ll T_E$), x is very large compared to unity. 428
 In this limit, 429

$$F_E(x) \simeq x^2 e^{-x}, \quad (2.103)$$

and 430

$$C_v = 3Nk_B \left(\frac{T_E}{T} \right)^2 e^{-T_E/T}. \quad (2.104) \quad 431$$

The Einstein temperature was treated as a parameter to be determined by comparison with experiment. The Einstein model reproduced the Dulong–Petit law at high temperature and showed that C_v decreased as the temperature was lowered. Careful comparison of experimental data with the model showed that the low temperature behavior was not quite correct. The experimental data fit a T^3 law at low temperature (i.e., $C_v \propto T^3$) instead of decreasing exponentially as predicted by the simple Einstein model.

2.6.2 Modern Theory of the Specific Heat of Solids

We know from our study of lattice vibrations that Einstein’s assumption that each atom in the crystal oscillated at a single frequency ω is too great a simplification. In fact, the normal modes of vibration have a spectrum $\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}$, where $\mathbf{q}$ is a wave vector restricted to the first Brillouin zone and λ is a label that defines the polarization of the mode. The energy of the crystal at temperature T is given by

$$U = \sum_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} \left(\bar{n}_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} + \frac{1}{2} \right) \hbar \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}, \quad (2.105)$$

In (2.105), $\bar{n}_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}$ is given by

$$\bar{n}_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} = \frac{1}{e^{\hbar \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}/k_B T} - 1}. \quad (2.106)$$

From (2.105), the specific heat can be obtained; it is given by

$$C_v = \left(\frac{\partial U}{\partial T} \right)_v = k_B \sum_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} \left(\frac{\hbar \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}}{k_B T} \right)^2 \left(e^{\frac{\hbar \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}}{k_B T}} - 1 \right)^{-1} \left(1 - e^{-\frac{\hbar \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}}{k_B T}} \right)^{-1}. \quad (2.107)$$

To carry out the summation appearing in (2.107), we must have either more information or some model describing how $\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}$ depends on $\mathbf{q}$ and λ is needed.

Density of States

Recall that the allowed values of $\mathbf{q}$ were given by

$$\mathbf{q} = 2\pi \left(\frac{n_1}{N_1} \mathbf{b}_1 + \frac{n_2}{N_2} \mathbf{b}_2 + \frac{n_3}{N_3} \mathbf{b}_3 \right), \quad (2.108)$$

where $\mathbf{b}_i$ were primitive translations of the reciprocal lattice, n_i were integers and N_i were the number of steps in the direction i that were required before the periodic boundary conditions returned one to the initial lattice site. For simplicity, let us consider a simple cubic lattice. Then $\mathbf{b}_i = a^{-1} \hat{x}_i$, where a is the lattice spacing and $\hat{x}_i$ is a unit vector (in the x , y , or z direction). The allowed (independent) values of $\mathbf{q}$ are restricted to the first Brillouin zone. In this case, that implies that $-\frac{1}{2}N_i \leq n_i \leq \frac{1}{2}N_i$. Then, the summations over

q_x , q_y , and q_z can be converted to integrals as follows:

459

$$\sum_{q_x} \Rightarrow \frac{\int dq_x}{2\pi/N_x a} \Rightarrow \frac{L_x}{2\pi} \int dq_x. \quad (2.109)$$

Therefore, the three-dimensional sum $\sum_{\mathbf{q}}$ becomes

460

$$\sum_{\mathbf{q}} = \frac{L_x L_y L_z}{(2\pi)^3} \int d^3 q = \frac{V}{(2\pi)^3} \int d^3 q. \quad (2.110)$$

In these equations L_x , L_y , and L_z are equal to the length of the crystal in the x , y , and z directions, and $V = L_x L_y L_z$ is the crystal volume. For any function $f(\mathbf{q})$, we can write

463

$$\sum_{\mathbf{q}} f(\mathbf{q}) = \frac{V}{(2\pi)^3} \int d^3 q f(\mathbf{q}). \quad (2.111)$$

Now, it is convenient to introduce the *density of states* $g(\omega)$ defined by

464

$$g(\omega)d\omega = \begin{cases} \text{The number of normal modes per unit volume} \\ \text{Whose frequency } \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} \text{ satisfies } \omega < \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} < \omega + d\omega. \end{cases} \quad (2.112)$$

From this definition, it follows that

465

$$g(\omega)d\omega = \frac{1}{V} \sum_{\substack{\mathbf{q}\lambda \\ \omega < \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} < \omega + d\omega}} 1 = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \sum_{\lambda} \int_{\omega < \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} < \omega + d\omega} d^3 q. \quad (2.113)$$

Let $S_{\lambda}(\omega)$ be the surface in three-dimensional wave vector space on which $\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}$ has the value ω . Then $dS_{\lambda}(\omega)$ is an infinitesimal element of this surface of constant frequency (see Fig. 2.10). The frequency change $d\omega$ in going from the surface $S_{\lambda}(\omega)$ to the surface $S_{\lambda}(\omega + d\omega)$ can be expressed in terms of $d\mathbf{q}$, an infinitesimal displacement in $\mathbf{q}$ space as

470

$$d\omega = d\mathbf{q} \cdot [\nabla_{\mathbf{q}} \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}]_{\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}=\omega} \quad \text{or} \quad d\omega = dq_{\perp} |\nabla_{\mathbf{q}} \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}|_{\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}=\omega}. \quad (2.114)$$

Here, $dq_{\perp}$ is the component of $d\mathbf{q}$ normal to the surface of constant frequency $S_{\lambda}(\omega)$. The volume element $d^3 q$ in wave vector space can be written $d^3 q = dq_{\perp} dS_{\lambda}(\omega)$, and using (2.114) allows us to write

473

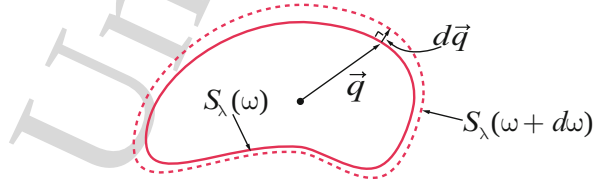


Fig. 2.10. Constant frequency surfaces in three-dimensional wave vector space

$$d^3q = \frac{d\omega}{|\nabla_{\mathbf{q}}\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}|_{\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}=\omega}} dS_{\lambda}(\omega). \quad (2.115)$$

With this result, we can express the density of states as

$$g(\omega) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \sum_{\lambda} \int \frac{dS_{\lambda}(\omega)}{|\nabla_{\mathbf{q}}\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}|_{\omega}}. \quad (2.116)$$

In (2.116) the integration is performed over the surface of constant frequency $S_{\lambda}(\omega)$. The denominator contains the magnitude of the gradient of $\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}$ (with respect to $\mathbf{q}$) evaluated at $\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} = \omega$.

2.6.3 Debye Model

To evaluate (2.107) and obtain the specific heat, Debye³ introduced a simple assumption about the phonon spectrum. He took $\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} = s_{\lambda} |\mathbf{q}|$ for all values of $\mathbf{q}$ in the first Brillouin zone. Then, the surfaces of constant energy are spheres (i.e., $S_{\lambda}(\omega)$ is a sphere in $\mathbf{q}$ space of radius $q = \frac{\omega}{s_{\lambda}}$). In addition, Debye replaced the Brillouin zone by a sphere of the same volume. Since $\sum_{\mathbf{q} \in 1^{\text{st}} \text{BZ}} 1 = N$, we can write

$$N = \left(\frac{L}{2\pi}\right)^3 \int_{|\mathbf{q}| < q_D} d^3q = \frac{V}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{4}{3} \pi q_D^3. \quad (2.117)$$

In (2.117) we have introduced q_D , the *Debye wave vector*. A sphere of radius q_D contains the N independent values of $\mathbf{q}$ associated with a crystal containing N atoms. From (2.117), $q_D^3 = 6\pi^2 N/V$, where V is the volume of the crystal.

The density of states for the Debye model is very simple since $|\nabla_{\mathbf{q}}\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}| = s_{\lambda}$. Substituting this result into (2.116) gives

$$g(\omega) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \sum_{\lambda} \left[\frac{4\pi q^2}{s_{\lambda}} \right]_{q=\frac{\omega}{s_{\lambda}} \leq q_D}. \quad (2.118)$$

If we introduce the unit step function $\theta(x) = 1$ for $x > 0$ and $\theta(x) = 0$ for $x < 0$, $g(\omega)$ can be expressed

$$g(\omega) = \frac{\omega^2}{2\pi^2} \left[\frac{\theta(s_l k_D - \omega)}{s_l^3} + \frac{2\theta(s_t k_D - \omega)}{s_t^3} \right]. \quad (2.119)$$

Here, of course, s_l and s_t are the speed of a longitudinal and of a transverse sound wave. Figure 2.11 shows the frequency dependence of the three-dimensional density of states in the Debye model. Any summation over allowed values of wave vector can be converted into an integral over frequency by using the relation

³ P. Debye, *Annalen der Physik* **39**, 789 (1912).

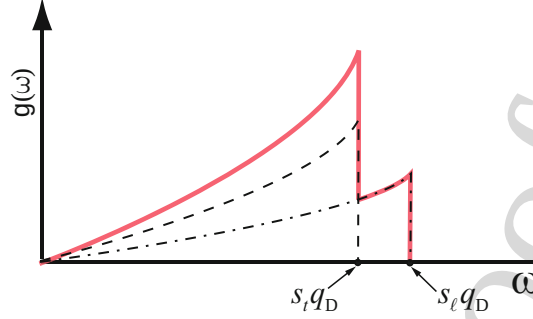


Fig. 2.11. Three-dimensional density of states in the Debye model

$$\sum_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} f(\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}) = V \int d\omega g(\omega) f(\omega). \quad (2.120)$$

Here, $f(\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda})$ is an arbitrary function of the normal mode frequencies $\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}$. 499
Making use of (2.120), the expression for the specific heat [(2.107)] can be 500
written 501

$$C_v = k_B V \int d\omega \left(\frac{\hbar\omega}{\Theta} \right)^2 \left(e^{\hbar\omega/\Theta} - 1 \right)^{-1} \left(1 - e^{-\hbar\omega/\Theta} \right)^{-1} g(\omega). \quad (2.121)$$

Here, we have introduced $\Theta = k_B T$. We define the *Debye temperature* T_D by 502
 $\Theta_D = k_B T_D = \hbar s_l q_D$. Remembering that $V = 6\pi^2 N q_D^{-3}$ and that the integral 503
 $\int d\omega$ goes from $\omega = 0$ to $\omega = \omega_D = s_l q_D$ for longitudinal waves and from $\omega = 0$ 504
to $\omega = s_t q_D = \frac{s_t}{s_l} \omega_D$ for transverse waves, it is not difficult to demonstrate 505
that 506

$$C_v = 3Nk_B \left[\frac{1}{3} F_D \left(\frac{\Theta_D}{\Theta} \right) + \frac{2}{3} F_D \left(\frac{s_t \Theta_D}{s_l \Theta} \right) \right], \quad (2.122) \quad 507$$

where the *Debye function* $F_D(x)$ is defined by 508

$$F_D(x) = \frac{3}{x^3} \int_0^x \frac{z^4 dz}{(e^z - 1)(1 - e^{-z})}. \quad (2.123)$$

Behavior at $\Theta \gg \Theta_D$ 509

In this limit, x which equals $\frac{\Theta_D}{\Theta}$ or $\frac{s_t \Theta_D}{s_l \Theta}$ is much smaller than unity. Therefore, 510
we can expand the exponentials for small argument to obtain 511

$$F_D(x) \simeq \frac{3}{x^3} \int_0^x \frac{z^4 dz}{z^2} \approx 1. \quad (2.124)$$

In this limit, $C_v = 3Nk_B$, in agreement with the classical Dulong–Petit law. 512

Behavior at $\Theta \ll \Theta_D$ 513

In this limit, x is much larger than unity, and because of the exponential in the denominator of the integral little error arises from replacing the upper limit by infinity. This gives 514 515 516

$$F_D(x) \simeq \frac{3}{x^3} \int_0^\infty \frac{z^4 dz}{(e^z - 1)(1 - e^{-z})}. \quad (2.125)$$

The integral is simply a constant. Its value can be obtained analytically 517

$$\int_0^\infty \frac{z^4 dz}{(e^z - 1)(1 - e^{-z})} = \frac{4}{15} \pi^4. \quad (2.126)$$

The result for C_v at very low temperature is 518

$$C_v = \frac{4}{5} \pi^4 N k_B \left[1 + 2 \left(\frac{s_l}{s_t} \right)^3 \right] \left(\frac{\Theta}{\Theta_D} \right)^3. \quad (2.127) \quad 519$$

This agrees with the observed behavior of the specific heat at very low temperature, viz. $C_v = AT^3$, where A is a constant. 520 521

2.6.4 Evaluation of Summations over Normal Modes for the Debye Model 522 523

In our calculation of the recoil free fraction in the Mössbauer effect (See (2.56)), and in the evaluation of (2.89), the mean square displacement $\langle \mathbf{u}_n \cdot \mathbf{u}_n \rangle$ of an atom from its equilibrium position, we encountered sums of the form 524 525 526

$$I = N^{-1} \sum_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} \frac{\bar{n}_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} + \frac{1}{2}}{\hbar \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}}. \quad (2.128)$$

These sums can be performed by converting the sums to integrals through the standard prescription 527 528

$$\sum_{\mathbf{q}} f(\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}) \rightarrow \frac{V}{(2\pi)^3} \int d^3q f(\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}), \quad (2.129)$$

or by making use of the density of states $g(\omega)$ and the result that 529

$$\sum_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} f(\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}) = V \int d\omega g(\omega) f(\omega). \quad (2.130)$$

For simplicity, we will use a Debye model with the velocity of transverse and longitudinal waves both equal to s . Then 530 531

$$g(\omega) = \frac{3\omega^2}{2\pi^2 s^3} \theta(sk_D - \omega). \quad (2.131)$$

The summation in (2.128) can then be written as

532

$$I = \frac{V}{N} \int_0^{\omega_D} d\omega \frac{3\omega^2}{2\pi^2 s^3} \frac{1}{\hbar\omega} \left[\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{e^{\hbar\omega/\Theta} - 1} \right]. \quad (2.132)$$

Let $z = \frac{\hbar\omega}{\Theta}$, and make use of $k_D^3 = 6\pi^2 \frac{N}{V}$. Then (2.132) can be rewritten

533

$$I = \frac{9}{\Theta_D} \left(\frac{\Theta}{\Theta_D} \right)^2 \int_0^{\Theta_D/\Theta} dz \, z \left[\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{e^z - 1} \right]. \quad (2.133)$$

First, let us look at the high temperature limit of (2.133). If $\Theta \gg \Theta_D$, then for values of z appearing in the integrand $\frac{1}{e^z - 1} \approx \frac{1}{z}$. This corresponds to the classical equipartition of energy since the energy of a mode of frequency $\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}$ is given by

534

535

536

537

$$\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} \left[\frac{1}{e^{\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}/\Theta} - 1} + \frac{1}{2} \right] \simeq \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} \left[\frac{\Theta}{\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}} + \frac{1}{2} \right],$$

and this is equal to Θ for every mode (the $\frac{1}{2}$ is negligible if $\Theta \gg \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}$) as required by classical statistical mechanics. With this approximation

538

539

$$I \simeq \frac{9}{\Theta_D} \left(\frac{\Theta}{\Theta_D} \right)^2 \int_0^{\Theta_D/\Theta} dz = \frac{9\Theta}{\Theta_D^2}. \quad (2.134)$$

At very low temperature, $\Theta \ll \Theta_D$, we can approximate the upper limit by ∞ in the term proportional to $(e^z - 1)^{-1}$, since the contribution from very large values of z is very small. This gives

540

541

542

$$I = \frac{9}{\Theta_D} \left(\frac{\Theta}{\Theta_D} \right)^2 \left[\int_0^\infty \frac{dz \, z}{e^z - 1} + \int_0^{\Theta_D/\Theta} dz \, \frac{z}{2} \right]. \quad (2.135)$$

The first integral in the square bracket is a constant, while the second is $\frac{1}{4} \left(\frac{\Theta_D}{\Theta} \right)^2$. The second term is much larger than the first for $\Theta \ll \Theta_D$, so it is a reasonable approximation to take

543

544

545

$$I = \frac{9}{4\Theta_D}. \quad (2.136)$$

(see, for example, Fig. 2.12).

546

2.6.5 Estimate of Recoil Free Fraction in Mössbauer Effect

547

Equation (2.56) gave the probability of starting in a lattice state $|n_i\rangle$ and ending, after the γ -ray emission, in the same state. If we assume that the crystal is in thermal equilibrium at a temperature Θ , then (2.56) is simply

548

549

550

551

$$P(\bar{n}_i, \bar{n}_i) = e^{-2E(K)I}, \quad (2.137)$$

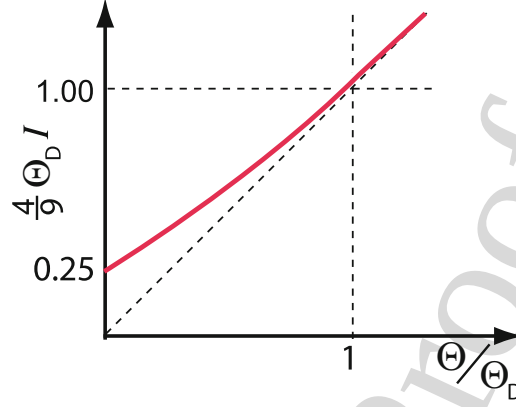


Fig. 2.12. Behavior of an integral I for $\Theta \leq \Theta_D$

where $\bar{n}_i$ is the *Bose–Einstein distribution function*, $E(K)$ is the recoil energy, 552
and I is given by (2.132). We have just evaluated I using a simplified Debye 553
model at both high ($\Theta \gg \Theta_D$) and low ($\Theta \ll \Theta_D$) temperatures. If we use 554
(2.134) and (2.137), we find that at ($\Theta_D \gg \Theta$), $P \simeq e^{-\frac{9E(K)}{2\Theta_D}}$. Remember that 555
 $E(K) \simeq 2 \times 10^{-3}$ eV. For a typical crystal $\Theta_D \simeq 300\text{K} \cdot k_B \approx 2.5 \times 10^{-2}$ eV, 556
giving for P , $P \simeq e^{-\frac{1}{3}} \approx 0.7$. This means that at very low temperature, 70% 557
of the γ rays are emitted without any change in the number of phonons in the 558
crystal. 559

At high temperature (let us take $\Theta = 400\text{K}$, larger than but not much 560
larger than $\Theta_D \simeq 300\text{K}$) $I \simeq \frac{9\Theta}{\Theta_D^2}$ giving $P(\bar{n}_i, \bar{n}_i) \simeq e^{-\frac{9E(K)}{2\Theta_D} \frac{4\Theta}{\Theta_D}}$. This gives 561
 $P(\bar{n}_i, \bar{n}_i)$ at $\Theta = 400\text{K}$ of roughly 0.14, so that, even at room temperature 562
the Mössbauer recoil free fraction is reasonably large. 563

2.6.6 Lindemann Melting Formula 564

The *Lindemann melting formula* is based on the idea that melting will occur 565
when the amplitude of the atomic vibrations (i.e., $\langle (\delta R)^2 \rangle^{1/2}$) becomes 566
equal to some fraction γ of the interatomic spacing. Recall that $\langle \mathbf{u}_n \cdot \mathbf{u}_n \rangle =$ 567
 $\frac{\hbar^2}{M} I$ where I is given by (2.128) (see (2.89)). We can use the $\Theta \gg \Theta_D$ limit 568
for I to write 569

$$\langle (\delta R)^2 \rangle \simeq \frac{9\hbar^2 \Theta}{M \Theta_D^2}. \quad (2.138) \quad 570$$

The melting temperature is assumed to be given by $\Theta_{\text{Melting}} = \frac{M \Theta_D^2}{9\hbar^2} \gamma^2 r_0^2$, 571
where r_0 is the atomic spacing and γ is a constant in the range ($0.2 \leq \gamma \leq$ 572
 0.25). This result is only very qualitative since it is based on a very much 573
oversimplified model. 574

Some Remarks on the Debye Model

575

One can obtain an intuitive picture of the temperature dependence of the specific heat by applying the idea of classical equipartition of energy, but only to modes for which $\hbar\omega < \Theta$. By this we mean that only modes whose energy $\hbar\omega$ is smaller than $\Theta = k_B T$ can be thermally excited at a temperature Θ and make a contribution to the internal energy U , and such modes contribute an energy Θ . Thus, we can write for U

$$U = \sum_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} \left(\bar{n}_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} + \frac{1}{2} \right) \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} \simeq 3 \frac{V}{(2\pi)^3} \int_0^{\Theta/\hbar s} \Theta 4\pi q^2 dq. \quad (2.139)$$

In writing (2.139) we have omitted the zero point energy since it does not depend on temperature and put $\hbar\omega[\bar{n}(\omega)] \simeq \Theta$ for all modes of energy less than Θ . This gives (using $V = \frac{6\pi^2 N}{k_D^3}$ and $\hbar s k_D = \Theta_D$)

$$U = 3N \left(\frac{\Theta}{\Theta_D} \right)^3 \Theta. \quad (2.140)$$

Differentiating with respect to T gives

585

$$C_V = 12Nk_B \left(\frac{\Theta}{\Theta_D} \right)^3. \quad (2.141)$$

This rough approximation gives the correct T^3 temperature dependence, but the coefficient is not correct as might be expected from such a simple picture.

Experimental Data

589

Experimentalists measure the specific heat as a function of temperature over a wide range of temperatures. They often use the Debye model to fit their data, taking the Debye temperature as an adjustable parameter to be determined by fitting the data to (2.122) or some generalization of it. Thus, if you see a plot of Θ_D as a function of temperature, it only means that at that particular temperature T one needs to take $\Theta_D = \Theta_D(T)$ for that value of T to fit the data to a Debye model. It is always found that at very low T and at very high T the correct Debye temperature $\Theta_D = \hbar s \left(\frac{6\pi^2 N}{V} \right)^{1/3}$ agrees with the experiment. At intermediate temperatures these might be fluctuations in Θ_D of the order of 10% from the correct value. The reason for this is that $g(\omega)$, the density of states, for the Debye model is a considerable simplification of the actual of $g(\omega)$ for real crystals. This can be illustrated by considering briefly the critical points in the phonon spectrum.

2.6.7 Critical Points in the Phonon Spectrum

604

Remember that the general expression for the density of states was given by (2.116). Points at which $\nabla_{\mathbf{q}}\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} = 0$ are called *critical points*; the integrand in (2.116) becomes infinite at such points.

Suppose that $\mathbf{q}_c$ is a critical point in the phonon spectrum. Let $\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{q} - \mathbf{q}_c$; then for points in the neighborhood of $\mathbf{q}_c$ we can write

$$\omega_{\mathbf{q}} = \omega_c + \alpha_1 \xi_1^2 + \alpha_2 \xi_2^2 + \alpha_3 \xi_3^2, \quad (2.142)$$

where ξ_i are the components of $\boldsymbol{\xi}$, and $\omega_c = \omega(\mathbf{q}_c)$. If α_1 , α_2 , and α_3 are all negative, by substituting into the expression for $g(\omega)$ and evaluating in the neighborhood of q_c , one obtains

$$g(\omega) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } \omega > \omega_c, \\ \text{Constant } (\omega_c - \omega)^{1/2} & \text{if } \omega < \omega_c. \end{cases} \quad (2.143)$$

Thus, although $g(\omega)$ is continuous at a critical point, its first derivative is discontinuous.

In three dimensions there are four kinds of critical points:

1. *Maxima*: Points at which all three α_i are negative.
2. *Minima*: Points at which all three α_i are positive.
3. *Saddle Points of the First Kind*: Points at which two α_i 's are positive and one is negative.
4. *Saddle Points of the Second Kind*: Points at which one α_i is positive and the other two are negative.

The critical points all show up as points at which $\frac{dg(\omega)}{d\omega}$ is discontinuous. A rough sketch of $g(\omega)$ vs. ω showing several critical points is shown in Fig. 2.13. It is not too difficult to demonstrate that in three dimensions the phonon spectrum must have at least one maximum, one minimum, three saddle points of each kind. As an example, we look at the simpler case of two dimensions. Then

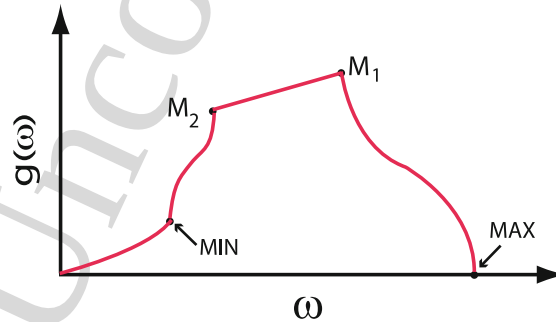


Fig. 2.13. Behavior of the density of states at various critical points

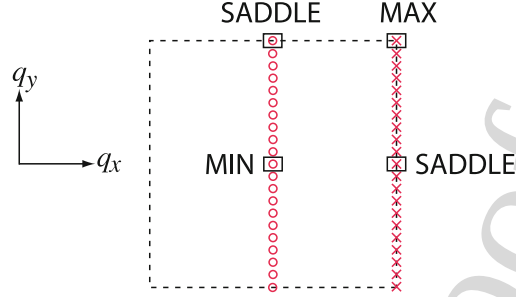


Fig. 2.14. Behavior of critical points in two dimensions

the phonon spectrum must have at least one maximum, one minimum, and two saddle points (there is only one kind of saddle point in two dimensions) (see Fig. 2.14). This can be demonstrated as follows:

1. We know $\omega_{\mathbf{q}}$ is a periodic function of $\mathbf{q}$; values of $\mathbf{q}$ which differ by a reciprocal lattice vector $\mathbf{K}$ give the same $\omega_{\mathbf{q}}$.
2. For a Brillouin zone of a two-dimensional square, we can consider $\omega(q_x, q_y)$ as a function of q_x for a sequence of different fixed values of q_y . Because $\omega(q_x, q_y)$ is a periodic function of q_x there must be at least one maximum and one minimum on each line $q_y = \text{constant}$.
3. Consider the locus of all maxima (represented by X's in Fig. 2.14). Along this locus $\omega(\mathbf{q})$ must have at least one maximum and one minimum as a function of q_y . These points will be an absolute maximum and a saddle point.
4. Doing the same for the locus of all minima (represented by O's in Fig. 2.14) gives one absolute minimum and another saddle point.

Because of the critical points, the phonon spectrum of a real solid looks quite different from that of the Debye model. However, the Debye model is constructed so that

1. The low frequency behavior of $g(\omega)$ is correct because for very small ω , $\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} = s_{\lambda} |q|$ is a very accurate approximation.
2. The total area under the curve $g(\omega)$ is correct since k_D , the Debye wave vector is chosen so that there are exactly the correct total number of modes $3N$.

Because of this, the Debye model is good at very low temperature (where only very low frequency modes are important) and at very high temperature (where only the total number of modes and equipartition of energy are important). In Fig. 2.15 we compare $g(\omega)$ for a Debye model with that of a real crystal. We note that $\int g_{\text{Debye}}(\omega) d\omega \approx \int g_{\text{Actual}}(\omega) d\omega$.

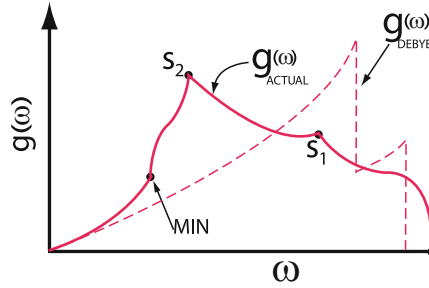


Fig. 2.15. Comparison of the density of states $g(\omega)$ for a Debye model and that of a real crystal

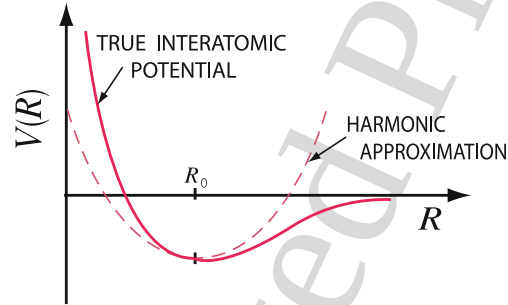


Fig. 2.16. Comparison of the potential felt by an atom and the harmonic approximation to it

2.7 Qualitative Description of Thermal Expansion

655

We have approximated the interatomic potential in a crystal by

656

$$V(R) = V(R_0) + \sum_{ij} c_{ij} u_i u_j + \text{higher terms.} \quad (2.144)$$

In Fig. 2.16 we show a sketch of the potential felt by one atom and the harmonic approximation to it. There are two main differences in the two potentials:

659

1. The true interatomic potential has a very strong repulsion at $u = R - R_0$ negative (i.e., close approach of the pair of atoms).
2. The true potential levels off as R becomes very large (i.e., for large positive u).

660

661

662

663

For a simple one-dimensional model we can write $x = x_0 + u$, where x_0 is the equilibrium separation between a pair of atoms and $u = x - x_0$ is the deviation from equilibrium. Then, we can model the behavior shown in Fig. 2.16 by assuming that

664

665

666

667

$$V(x) = V_0 + cu^2 - gu^3 - fu^4. \quad (2.145)$$

Here, g and f are positive constants. The fu^4 term simply accounts for the fact that the harmonic approximation rises too quickly for large u . The gu^3 term accounts for the asymmetry in the potential for u greater than or less than zero. When u is negative, $-gu^3$ is positive making the short range repulsion larger; when u is positive, $-gu^3$ is negative softening the interatomic repulsion for large R .

Now let us evaluate the expectation value of u at a temperature $k_B T = \beta^{-1}$.

$$\langle u \rangle = \frac{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} du u e^{-\beta V}}{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} du e^{-\beta V}}. \quad (2.146)$$

But, $V = V_0 + cu^2 - gu^3 - fu^4$, and we can expand $e^{\beta(gu^3 + fu^4)}$, for small values of u , to obtain

$$e^{-\beta V} = e^{-\beta(V_0 + cu^2)} (1 + \beta gu^3 + \beta fu^4). \quad (2.147)$$

The integrals in the numerator and denominator of (2.146) can be evaluated. Because of the factor $e^{-\beta cu^2}$, we do not have to worry about the behavior of the integrand for very large values of $|u|$ so there is little error in taking the limit as $u = \pm\infty$. We can easily see that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} du e^{-\beta V} = e^{-\beta V_0} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} du e^{-\beta cu^2} (1 + \beta gu^3 + \beta fu^4). \quad (2.148)$$

The βgu^3 term vanishes because it is an odd function of u ; the βfu^4 gives a small correction to the first term so it can be neglected. This results in

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} du e^{-\beta V} \simeq e^{-\beta V_0} \left(\frac{\pi}{\beta c} \right)^{1/2}. \quad (2.149)$$

In writing down (2.149) we have made use of the result $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dz e^{-z^2} = \sqrt{\pi}$. The integral in the numerator of (2.146) becomes

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} du u e^{-\beta V} = e^{-\beta V_0} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} du u e^{-\beta cu^2} (1 + \beta gu^3 + \beta fu^4). \quad (2.150)$$

Only the βgu^3 term in the square bracket contributes to the integral. The result is

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} du u e^{-\beta V} \simeq e^{-\beta V_0} \frac{3\sqrt{\pi}}{4} \beta g (\beta c)^{-5/2}. \quad (2.151)$$

In obtaining (2.151) we have made use of the result $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dz z^4 e^{-z^2} = \frac{3\sqrt{\pi}}{4}$. Substituting it back in (2.146) gives

$$\langle u \rangle = \frac{1}{\beta} \frac{3g}{4c^2} = \frac{3g}{4c^2} k_B T. \quad (2.152)$$

The displacement from equilibrium is positive and increases with temperature. This suggests why a crystal expands with increasing temperature.

2.8 Anharmonic Effects

692

To get some idea about how one would go about treating *anharmonic effect*, let us go back to the simple one-dimensional model and include terms that we have neglected (up to this time) in the expansion of the potential energy. We can write $H = H_{\text{Harmonic}} + H'$, where H' is given by

$$H' = \frac{1}{3!} \sum_{lmn} d_{lmn} u_l u_m u_n + \frac{1}{4!} \sum_{lmnp} f_{lmnp} u_l u_m u_n u_p + \dots \quad (2.153)$$

As a first approximation, let us keep only the cubic anharmonic term and make use of

$$u_m = \sum_k \left(\frac{\hbar}{2MN\omega_k} \right)^{1/2} \left(a_k + a_{-k}^\dagger \right) e^{ikma}. \quad (2.154)$$

Substituting (2.154) in (2.153) gives

699

$$H'_3 = \frac{1}{3!} \sum_{lmn} d_{lmn} \sum_{kk'k''} \left(\frac{\hbar}{2MN} \right)^{3/2} (\omega_k \omega_{k'} \omega_{k''})^{-1/2} \times \left(a_k + a_{-k}^\dagger \right) \left(a_{k'} + a_{-k'}^\dagger \right) \left(a_{k''} + a_{-k''}^\dagger \right) e^{ikna} e^{ik'ma} e^{ik''la}. \quad (2.155)$$

As before, d_{lmn} does not depend on l, m, n individually, but on their relative positions. We can, therefore, write $d_{lmn} = d(n - m, n - l)$. Now introduce $g = n - m$ and $j = n - l$ and sum over all values of g, j , and n instead of l, m , and n . This gives for the cubic anharmonic correction to the Hamiltonian

$$H'_3 = \frac{1}{3!} \sum_{ngj} d(g, j) \sum_{kk'k''} \left(\frac{\hbar}{2MN} \right)^{3/2} (\omega_k \omega_{k'} \omega_{k''})^{-1/2} \times \left(a_k + a_{-k}^\dagger \right) \left(a_{k'} + a_{-k'}^\dagger \right) \left(a_{k''} + a_{-k''}^\dagger \right) e^{ikna} e^{ik'(n-g)a} e^{ik''(n-j)a}. \quad (2.156)$$

The only factor depending on n is $e^{i(k+k'+k'')na}$, and

704

$$\sum_n e^{i(k+k'+k'')na} = N \delta(k + k' + k'', K). \quad (2.157)$$

Here, K is a reciprocal lattice vector; the value of K is uniquely determined since k, k', k'' must all lie within the first Brillouin zone. Eliminate k'' remembering that if $-(k + k')$ lies outside the first Brillouin zone, one must add a reciprocal lattice vector K to k'' to satisfy (2.157). With this H'_3 becomes

705

since k, k', k'' must all lie within the first Brillouin zone. Eliminate k'' remembering that if $-(k + k')$ lies outside the first Brillouin zone, one must add a reciprocal lattice vector K to k'' to satisfy (2.157). With this H'_3 becomes

706

since k, k', k'' must all lie within the first Brillouin zone. Eliminate k'' remembering that if $-(k + k')$ lies outside the first Brillouin zone, one must add a reciprocal lattice vector K to k'' to satisfy (2.157). With this H'_3 becomes

707

since k, k', k'' must all lie within the first Brillouin zone. Eliminate k'' remembering that if $-(k + k')$ lies outside the first Brillouin zone, one must add a reciprocal lattice vector K to k'' to satisfy (2.157). With this H'_3 becomes

708

$$H'_3 = N \sum_{kk'} \frac{1}{3!} \sum_{gj} d(g, j) e^{-ik'ga} e^{irmi(k+k')ja} \left(\frac{\hbar}{2MN} \right)^{3/2} \times (\omega_k \omega_{k'} \omega_{k+k'})^{-1/2} \left(a_k + a_{-k}^\dagger \right) \left(a_{k'} + a_{-k'}^\dagger \right) \left(a_{-(k+k')} + a_{k+k'}^\dagger \right). \quad (2.158)$$

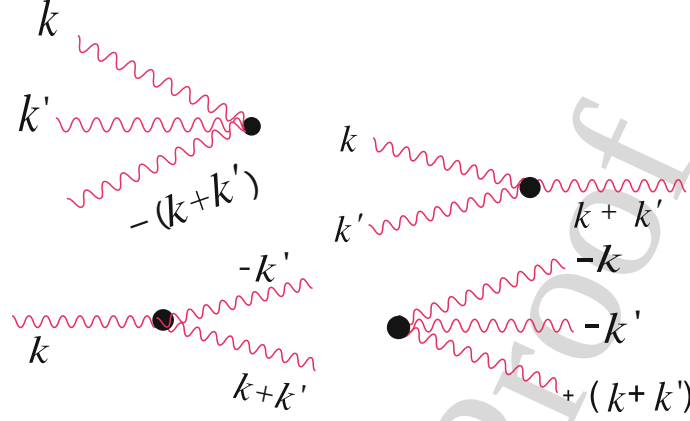


Fig. 2.17. Scattering of phonons: (a) annihilation of three phonons, (b) annihilation of two phonons and creation of a third phonon, (c) annihilation of one phonon and creation of two phonons, (d) creation of three phonons

Now define

$$G(k, k') = \frac{1}{3!} \sum_{gj} d(g, j) e^{ikja} e^{ik'(j-g)a} \left(\frac{\hbar^3}{2^3 M^3 N \omega_k \omega_{k'} \omega_{k+k'}} \right)^{1/2}. \quad (2.159)$$

Then, H'_3 is simply

$$H'_3 = \sum_{kk'} G(k, k') \left(a_k + a_{-k}^\dagger \right) \left(a_{k'} + a_{-k'}^\dagger \right) \left(a_{-(k+k')} + a_{k+k'}^\dagger \right). \quad (2.160)$$

Feynman Diagrams

In keeping track of the results obtained by applying H' to a state of the harmonic crystal, it is useful to use *Feynman diagrams*. A wavy line will represent a phonon propagating to the right (time increases to the right). The interaction (i.e., the result of applying H'_3) is represented by a point into (or out of) which three wavy lines run. There are four fundamentally different kinds of diagrams (see Fig. 2.17):

1. $a_k a_{k'} a_{-(k+k')}$ annihilates three phonons (Fig. 2.17a).
2. $a_k a_{k'} a_{k+k'}^\dagger$ annihilates two phonons and creates a third phonon (Fig. 2.17b).
3. $a_k a_{-k'}^\dagger a_{k+k'}^\dagger$ annihilates a phonon but creates two phonons (Fig. 2.17c).
4. $a_{-k}^\dagger a_{-k'}^\dagger a_{k+k'}^\dagger$ creates three phonons (Fig. 2.17d).

Due to the existence of anharmonic terms (cubic, quartic, etc. in the displacements from equilibrium) the simple harmonic oscillators which describe

2.9 Thermal Conductivity of an Insulator 71

the normal modes in the harmonic approximation are coupled. This anhar- 725
 monicity leads to a number of interesting results (e.g., thermal expansion, 726
 phonon-phonon scattering, phonon lifetime, etc.) We will not have space to 727
 take up these effects in this book. However, one should be aware that the har- 728
 monic approximation is an approximation. It ignores all the interesting effects 729
 resulting from anharmonicity. 730

2.9 Thermal Conductivity of an Insulator 731

When one part of a crystal is heated, a temperature gradient is set up. In 732
 the presence of the temperature gradient heat will flow from the hotter to the 733
 cooler region. The ratio of this heat current density to the magnitude of the 734
 temperature gradient is called the *thermal conductivity* κ_T . 735

In an insulating crystal (i.e., one whose electrical conductivity is very small 736
 at low temperatures as a result of the absence of nearly free electrons) the 737
 heat is transported by phonons. Let us define $u(x)$ as the internal energy per 738
 unit volume in a small region about the position x in the crystal. We assume 739
 that $u(x)$ depends on position because there is a temperature gradient $\frac{\partial T}{\partial x}$ in 740
 the x -direction. Because the temperature T depends on x , the local thermal 741
 equilibrium phonon density $\bar{n}_{q\lambda} = [e^{\hbar\omega_{q\lambda}/\Theta} - 1]^{-1}$ will also depend on x . 742
 This takes a little explanation. In our discussion of phonons up until now, a 743
 phonon of wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ was not localized anywhere in the crystal. In fact, all 744
 of the atoms in the crystal vibrated with an amplitude u_k and different phases 745
 $e^{ikna - i\omega_k t}$. In light of this, a phonon is everywhere in the crystal, and it seems 746
 difficult to think about difference in phonon density at different positions. In 747
 order to do so, we must construct wave packets with a spread in k values, Δk , 748
 chosen such that $(\Delta k)^{-1}$ is much larger than the atomic spacing but much 749
 smaller than the distance Δx over which the temperature changes appreciably. 750
 Then, by a phonon of wavenumber k we will mean a wavepacket centered at 751
 wavenumber k . The wavepacket can then be localized to a region Δx of the 752
 order $(\Delta k)^{-1}$. If the temperature at position x is different from that at some 753
 other position, the phonon will transport energy from the warmer to the cooler 754
 region. The thermal current density at position x can be written 755

$$j_T(x) = \int \frac{d\Omega}{4\pi} s \cos \theta u(x - l \cos \theta). \quad (2.161)$$

In this equation $u(x)$ is the internal energy per unit volume at position x , 756
 s is the sound velocity, l is the phonon mean free path ($l = s\tau$, where τ is 757
 the average time between phonon collisions), and θ is the angle between the 758
 direction of propagation of the phonon and the direction of the temperature 759
 gradient (see Fig. 2.18). A phonon reaching position x at angle θ (as shown 760
 in Fig. 2.18 had its last collision, on the average, at $x' = x - l \cos \theta$. But the 761
 phonons carry internal energy characteristic of the position where they had 762

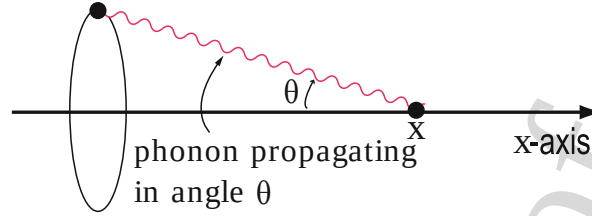


Fig. 2.18. Phonon propagation in the presence of a temperature gradient in the x -direction

their last collision, so such phonons carry internal energy $u(x - l \cos \theta)$. We can expand $u(x - l \cos \theta)$ as $u(x) - \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} l \cos \theta$, and integrate over $d\Omega = 2\pi \sin \theta d\theta$. This gives the result

$$j_T(x) = -\frac{1}{3} s l \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}. \quad (2.162)$$

Of course the internal energy depends on x because of the temperature gradient, so we can write $\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial T} \frac{\partial T}{\partial x}$. The result for the *thermal conductivity* $\kappa_T = -j_T \left(\frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \right)^{-1}$ is

$$\kappa_T = \frac{1}{3} s^2 \tau C_v. \quad (2.163)$$

In (2.163), we have set $l = s\tau$ and $\frac{\partial u}{\partial T} = C_v$, the specific heat of the solid.

2.10 Phonon Collision Rate

The collision rate τ^{-1} of phonons depends on

1. Anharmonic effects which cause phonon-phonon scattering
2. Defects and impurities which can scatter phonons and
3. The surfaces of the crystal which can also scatter phonons

Only the phonon-phonon collisions are very sensitive to temperature, since the phonon density available to scatter one phonon varies with temperature. For a perfect infinite crystal, defects, impurities, and surfaces can be ignored.

Phonon-phonon scattering can degrade the thermal current, but at very low temperature, where only low frequency ($\omega \ll \omega_D$ or $k \ll k_D$) phonons are excited, most phonon-phonon scattering conserves *crystal momentum*. By this we mean that in the real scattering processes shown in Fig. 2.19, no reciprocal lattice vector $\mathbf{K}$ is needed in the conservation of crystal momentum, and Fig. 2.19a would contain a delta function $\delta(\mathbf{k}_1 + \mathbf{k}_2 - \mathbf{k}_3)$, Fig. 2.19b a $\delta(\mathbf{k}_1 - \mathbf{k}_2 - \mathbf{k}_3)$, and Fig. 2.19c a $\delta(\mathbf{k}_1 + \mathbf{k}_2 - \mathbf{k}_3 - \mathbf{k}_4)$. This occurs because each k -value is very small compared to the smallest reciprocal lattice vector $\mathbf{K}$. These scattering processes are called *N processes* (for normal scattering processes), and they do not degrade the thermal current.

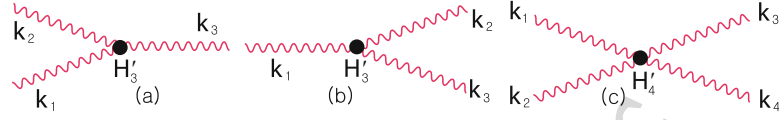


Fig. 2.19. Phonon-phonon scattering (a) Scattering of two phonons into one phonon, (b) Scattering of one phonon into two phonons, (c) Scattering of two phonons into two phonons

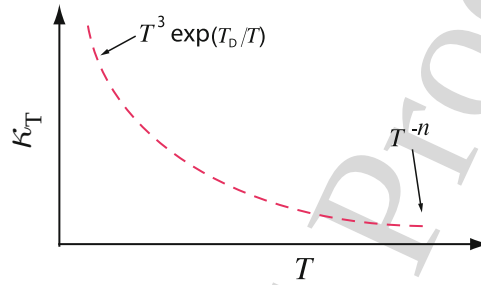


Fig. 2.20. Temperature dependence of the thermal conductivity of an insulator

At high temperatures phonons with k values close to a reciprocal lattice vector K will be thermally excited. In this case, the sum of $\mathbf{k}_1$ and $\mathbf{k}_2$ in Fig. 2.19a might be outside the first Brillouin zone so that $\mathbf{k}_3 = \mathbf{k}_1 + \mathbf{k}_2 - \mathbf{K}$. It turns out that these processes, *U-processes* (for Umklapp processes) degrade the thermal current. At high temperatures it is found that τ is proportional to temperature to the $-n$ power, where $1 \leq n \leq 2$. The high temperature specific heat is the constant Dulong-Petit value, so that according to (2.163) $\kappa_T \propto T^{-n}$ at high temperature.

At low temperature, only U-processes limit the thermal conductivity (or contribute to the thermal resistivity). But few phonons with $k \approx k_D$ are present at low temperature. A rough estimate would give $e^{-\hbar\omega_D/\Theta}$ for the probability of U-scattering at low temperature. Therefore, τ_U , the scattering time for U-processes is proportional to $e^{\Theta_D/\Theta}$. Since the low temperature specific heat varies as T^3 , (2.163) would predict $\kappa_T \propto T^3 e^{T_D/T}$ for the thermal conductivity at low temperature. The result for the temperature dependence of thermal conductivity of an insulator is sketched in Fig. 2.20.

2.11 Phonon Gas

Landau introduced the concept of thinking of elementary excitations as particles. He suggested that it was possible to have a gas of phonons in a crystal whose properties were analogous to those of a classical gas. Both the atoms or molecules of a classical gas and the phonons in a crystal undergo collisions. For the former, the collisions are molecule-molecule collisions or molecule-wall of container collisions. For the latter they are phonon-phonon,

phonon–imperfection or phonon–surface collisions. Energy is conserved in these collisions. Momentum is conserved in molecule–molecule collisions in a classical gas and in N-process phonon–phonon collisions in a *phonon gas*. Of course, the number of particles is conserved in the molecule–molecule collisions of a classical gas, but phonons can be created or annihilated in phonon–phonon collisions, so their number is not a conserved quantity.

The sound waves of a classical gas are oscillations of the particle density. They occur if $\omega\tau \ll 1$, so that thermal equilibrium is established very quickly compared to the period of the sound wave. They also require that momentum be conserved in the collision process.

Landau⁴ called normal sound waves in a gas *first sound*. He proposed an oscillation of the phonon density in a phonon gas that named *second sound*. This oscillation of the phonon density (or energy density) occurred in a crystal if $\omega\tau_N \ll 1$ (as in first sound) but $\omega\tau_U \gg 1$ so that crystal momentum is conserved. Second sound has been observed in He⁴ and in a few crystals.

⁴ L. Landau, J. Phys. U.S.S.R. **5**, 71 (1941).

Problems

827

2.1. Consider a three-dimensional Einstein model in which each degree of freedom of each atom has a vibrational frequency ω_0 .

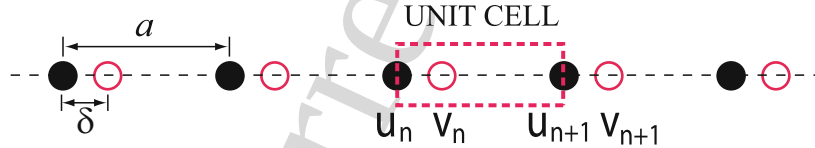
- (a) Evaluate $G(\omega)$, the number of modes per unit volume whose frequency is less than ω .
- (b) Evaluate $g(\omega) = \frac{dG(\omega)}{d\omega}$.
- (c) Make a rough sketch of both $G(\omega)$ and $g(\omega)$ as a function of ω .

2.2. For a one-dimensional lattice a phonon of wave number k has frequency $\omega_k = \omega_0 \sin \frac{|k|a}{2}$ for a nearest neighbor coupling model. Now approximate this model by a Debye model with $\omega = s|k|$.

- (a) Determine the value of s , the sound speed, and k_D , the Debye wave vector.
- (b) Sketch ω as a function of k for each model over the entire Brillouin zone.
- (c) Evaluate $g(\omega)$ for each model and make a sketch of $g(\omega)$ vs. ω for each.

2.3. Consider a diatomic linear chain. Evaluate u_q/v_q for the acoustic and optical modes at $q = 0$ and at $q = \frac{\pi}{2a}$.

2.4. Consider a linear chain with two atoms per unit cell (each of mass M) located at 0 and δ , where $\delta < \frac{a}{2}$, a being the primitive translation vector. Let C_1 be the force constant between nearest neighbors and C_2 the force constant between next nearest neighbors. Determine $\omega_{\pm}(k = 0)$ and $\omega_{\pm}(k = \frac{\pi}{a})$.



847

2.5. Show that the normal mode density (for small ω) in a d -dimensional harmonic crystal varies as ω^{d-1} . Use this result to determine the temperature dependence of the specific heat.

2.6. In a linear chain with nearest neighbor interactions $\omega_k = \omega_0 \sin \frac{|k|a}{2}$. Show that $g(\omega) \simeq \left(\frac{2}{\pi a}\right) \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega_0^2 - \omega^2}}$.

2.7. For a certain three-dimensional simple cubic lattice the phonon spectrum is independent of polarization λ and is given by

$$\omega(k_x, k_y, k_z) = \omega_0 \left[\sin^2 \left(\frac{k_x a}{2} \right) + \sin^2 \left(\frac{k_y a}{2} \right) + \sin^2 \left(\frac{k_z a}{2} \right) \right]^{1/2}.$$

- (a) Sketch a graph of ω vs. k for 855
1. $k_y = k_z = 0$ and $0 \leq k_x \leq \frac{\pi}{a}$ (i.e., along $\Gamma \rightarrow X$), 856
 2. $k_z = 0$ and $k_x = k_y = \frac{k}{\sqrt{2}}$ for $0 \leq k \leq \frac{\sqrt{2}\pi}{a}$ (i.e., along $\Gamma \rightarrow K$), 857
 3. $k_x = k_y = k_z = \frac{k}{\sqrt{3}}$ for $0 \leq k \leq \frac{\sqrt{3}\pi}{a}$ (i.e., along $\Gamma \rightarrow L$). 858
- (b) Draw the ω vs. k curve for the Debye approximation to these dispersion 859
curves as dashes lines on the diagram used in part (a). 860
- (c) What are the critical points of this phonon spectrum? How many are 861
there? 862
- (d) Make a rough sketch of the Debye density of states $g(\omega)$. How will the 863
actual density of states differ from the Debye approximation? 864
- (e) Using this example, discuss the shortcomings and the successes of the 865
Debye model in predicting the thermodynamic properties (like specific 866
heat) of solids. 867
- 2.8.** For a two-dimensional crystal a simple Debye model takes $\omega = sk$ for the 868
longitudinal and the single transverse modes for all allowed k values up to the 869
Debye wave number k_D . 870
- (a) Determine k_D as a function of $\frac{N}{L^2}$, where N is the number of atoms 871
and L^2 is the area of the crystal. 872
 - (b) Determine $g(\omega)$, the density of normal modes per unit area. 873
 - (c) Find the expression for the internal energy at a temperature T as 874
an integral over the density of states times an appropriate function of 875
frequency and temperature. 876
 - (d) From the result of part (c) determine the specific heat c_v . 877
 - (e) Evaluate c_v for $k_B T \ll \hbar \omega_D = \hbar s k_D$. 878

Summary

879

In this chapter, we discussed the vibrations of the atoms in solids. Quantum mechanical treatment of lattice dynamics and dispersion curves of the normal modes are described.

The Hamiltonian of a linear chain is written, in the harmonic approximation, as $H = \sum_i \frac{P_i^2}{2M} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i,j} c_{ij} u_i u_j$, where P_i is the momentum and $u_i = R_i - R_i^0$ is the deviation of the i th atom from its equilibrium position. A general dispersion relation of the normal modes is $M\omega_q^2 = \sum_{l=1}^N c(l)e^{iqla}$. The normal coordinates are given by

$$q_k = N^{-1/2} \sum_n u_n e^{-ikna}; \quad p_k = N^{-1/2} \sum_n P_n e^{+ikna}.$$

The inverse of q_k and p_k are $u_n = N^{-1/2} \sum_k q_k e^{ikna}$; $P_n = N^{-1/2} \sum_k p_k e^{-ikna}$.

The quantum mechanical Hamiltonian is given by $H = \sum_k H_k$, where

$$H_k = \frac{\hat{p}_k \hat{p}_k^\dagger}{2M} + \frac{1}{2} M \omega_k^2 \hat{q}_k \hat{q}_k^\dagger.$$

The dynamical variables q_k and p_k are replaced by quantum mechanical operators $\hat{q}_k$ and $\hat{p}_k$ which satisfy the commutation relation $[p_k, q_{k'}] = -i\hbar \delta_{k,k'}$. It is convenient to rewrite $\hat{q}_k$ and $\hat{p}_k$ in terms of the operators a_k and $a_k^\dagger$, which are defined by

$$q_k = \left(\frac{\hbar}{2M\omega_k} \right)^{1/2} (a_k + a_{-k}^\dagger); \quad p_k = i \left(\frac{\hbar M \omega_k}{2} \right)^{1/2} (a_k^\dagger - a_{-k}).$$

The a_k 's and $a_k^\dagger$'s satisfy $[a_k, a_{k'}^\dagger]_- = \delta_{k,k'}$ and $[a_k, a_{k'}]_- = [a_k^\dagger, a_{k'}^\dagger]_- = 0$. The displacement of the n th atom and its momentum can be written

$$u_n = \sum_k \left(\frac{\hbar}{2MN\omega_k} \right)^{1/2} e^{ikna} (a_k + a_{-k}^\dagger),$$

$$P_n = \sum_k i \left(\frac{\hbar \omega_k M}{2N} \right)^{1/2} e^{-ikna} (a_k^\dagger - a_{-k}).$$

The Hamiltonian of the linear chain of atoms can be written

$$H = \sum_k \hbar \omega_k \left(a_k^\dagger a_k + \frac{1}{2} \right),$$

and its eigenfunctions and eigenvalues are

$$|n_1, n_2, \dots, n_N\rangle = \frac{(a_{k_1}^\dagger)^{n_1}}{\sqrt{n_1!}} \dots \frac{(a_{k_N}^\dagger)^{n_N}}{\sqrt{n_N!}} |0\rangle$$

and $E_{n_1, n_2, \dots, n_N} = \sum_i \hbar \omega_{k_i} (n_i + \frac{1}{2})$.

In the three-dimensional case, the Hamiltonian is given by

899

$$H = \sum_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} \left(a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} + \frac{1}{2} \right).$$

The allowed values of $\mathbf{k}$ are given by $\mathbf{k} = 2\pi \left(\frac{n_1}{N_1} \mathbf{b}_1 + \frac{n_2}{N_2} \mathbf{b}_2 + \frac{n_3}{N_3} \mathbf{b}_3 \right)$. The displacement $\mathbf{u}_n$ and momentum $\mathbf{P}_n$ of the n th atom are written, respectively, as

900

$$\mathbf{u}_n = \sum_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} \left(\frac{\hbar}{2MN\omega_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}} \right)^{1/2} \hat{\epsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{R}_n^0} \left(a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} - a_{-\mathbf{k}\lambda}^\dagger \right)$$

903

$$\mathbf{P}_n = \sum_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} i \left(\frac{\hbar M \omega_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}}{2N} \right)^{1/2} \hat{\epsilon}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda} e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{R}_n^0} \left(a_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}^\dagger + a_{-\mathbf{k}\lambda} \right).$$

The energy of the crystal is given by $U = \sum_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} \left(\bar{n}_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} + \frac{1}{2} \right) \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}$, where $\bar{n}_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}$ is given by $\bar{n}_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} = \frac{1}{e^{\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}/k_B T} - 1}$. The lattice heat capacity is written as

905

$$C_v = \left(\frac{\partial U}{\partial T} \right)_v = k_B \sum_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} \left(\frac{\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}}{k_B T} \right)^2 \left(e^{\frac{\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}}{k_B T}} - 1 \right)^{-1} \left(1 - e^{-\frac{\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}}{k_B T}} \right)^{-1}.$$

The density of states $g(\omega)$ defined by

906

$$g(\omega)d\omega = \begin{cases} \text{The number of normal modes per unit volume} \\ \text{Whose frequency } \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} \text{ satisfies } \omega < \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} < \omega + d\omega. \end{cases}$$

Then we have $g(\omega) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \sum_{\lambda} \int \frac{dS_{\lambda}(\omega)}{|\nabla_{\mathbf{q}} \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}|_{\omega}}$. Here, $|dS_{\lambda}(\omega)|$ is an infinitesimal element of the surface of constant frequency in three-dimensional wave vector space on which $\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}$ has the value ω . Near a critical point $\mathbf{q}_c$, at which $\nabla_{\mathbf{q}} \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} = 0$, in the phonon spectrum, we can write

907

908

909

910

$$\omega_q = \omega_c + \alpha_1 \xi_1^2 + \alpha_2 \xi_2^2 + \alpha_3 \xi_3^2,$$

where ξ_i are the components of $\xi = \mathbf{q} - \mathbf{q}_c$, and $\omega_c = \omega(q_c)$. In three dimensions, there are four kinds of critical points:

911

912

1. *Maxima*: points at which all three α_i are negative. 913
2. *Minima*: points at which all three α_i are positive. 914
3. *Saddle Points of the First Kind*: Points at which two α_i 's are positive and one is negative. 915
4. *Saddle Points of the Second Kind*: Points at which one α_i is positive and the other two are negative. 916

918

The density of states for the Debye model is expressed as

919

$$g(\omega) = \frac{\omega^2}{2\pi^2} \left[\frac{\theta(s_l k_D - \omega)}{s_l^3} + \frac{2\theta(s_t k_D - \omega)}{s_t^3} \right].$$

Here, s_l and s_t are the speed of a longitudinal and of a transverse sound wave. 920

3

1

Free Electron Theory of Metals

2

3.1 Drude Model

3

The most important characteristic of a metal is its high electrical conductivity. 4
 Around 1900, shortly after J.J. Thompson's discovery of the electron, people 5
 became interested in understanding more about the mechanism of metallic 6
 conduction. The first work by E. Riecke in 1898 was quickly superseded by 7
 that of Drude in 1900. Drude¹ proposed an exceedingly simple model that 8
 explained a well-known empirical law, the Wiedermann–Franz law (1853). 9
 This law states that at a given temperature the ratio of the thermal conduc- 10
 tivity to the electrical conductivity is the same for all metals. The assumptions 11
 of the *Drude model* are: 12

1. A metal contains free electrons which form an electron gas. 13
2. the electrons have some average thermal energy $\langle \frac{1}{2}mv_T^2 \rangle$, but they pursue 14
 random motions through the metal so that $\langle \mathbf{v}_T \rangle = 0$ even though $\langle v_T^2 \rangle \neq 0$. 15
 The random motions result from collisions with the ions. 16
3. Because the ions have a very large mass, they are essentially immovable. 17

3.2 Electrical Conductivity

18

In the presence of an electric field $\mathbf{E}$, the electrons acquire a drift velocity 19
 $\mathbf{v}_D$ which is superimposed on the thermal motion. Drude assumed that the 20
 probability that an electron collides with an ion during a time interval dt is 21
 simply proportional to $\frac{dt}{\tau}$, where τ is called the *collision time* or *relaxation* 22
time. Then Newton's law gives 23

$$m \left(\frac{d\mathbf{v}_D}{dt} + \frac{\mathbf{v}_D}{\tau} \right) = -e\mathbf{E}, \quad (3.1) \quad 24$$

¹ P. Drude, Annalen der Physik **1**, 566 (1900); *ibid.*, **3**, 369 (1900); *ibid.*, **7**, 687 (1902).

80 3 Free Electron Theory of Metals

where $-e$ is the charge on an electron. Some appreciation of the term of relaxation time $\frac{dt}{\tau}$ can be obtained by assuming that the system acquires a drift velocity $\mathbf{v}_D$ in the presence of an electric field $\mathbf{E}$, and then, at time $t = 0$, the electric field is turned off. The behavior of $\mathbf{v}_D(t)$ as a function of time is given by

$$\mathbf{v}_D(t) = \mathbf{v}_D(0)e^{-t/\tau}, \quad (3.2)$$

showing that $\mathbf{v}_D$ relaxes from $\mathbf{v}_D(0)$ toward zero with a relaxation time τ .

In the steady-state (where $\dot{\mathbf{v}}_D = 0$), $\mathbf{v}_D$ is given by

$$\mathbf{v}_D = -\frac{e\mathbf{E}\tau}{m}. \quad (3.3)$$

The quantity $\frac{e\tau}{m}$, the drift velocity per unit electric field, is called μ , the *drift mobility*. The velocity of an electron including both thermal and drift components is

$$\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}_T - \frac{e\tau\mathbf{E}}{m}. \quad (3.4)$$

The current density caused by the electric field $\mathbf{E}$ is simply

$$\mathbf{j} = V^{-1} \sum_{\text{all electrons}} (-e)\mathbf{v}. \quad (3.5)$$

But $\sum_{\text{all electrons}} \mathbf{v}_T = 0$, so that

$$\mathbf{j} = V^{-1}N(-e) \left(-\frac{e\tau\mathbf{E}}{m} \right) = \sigma\mathbf{E}. \quad (3.6)$$

Here σ , the *electrical conductivity*, is equal to $\frac{n_0 e^2 \tau}{m}$ where $n_0 = \frac{N}{V}$ is the electron concentration.

3.3 Thermal Conductivity

The thermal conductivity is the ratio of the thermal current (i.e., the energy current) to the magnitude of the temperature gradient. In the presence of a temperature gradient $\frac{\partial T}{\partial x}$, the average thermal energy $\langle \frac{1}{2}mv_T^2 \rangle$ will depend on the local temperature $T(x)$. The electrons sense the local temperature through collisions with the lattice. Thus, the thermal energy of a given electron will depend on where it made its last collision. If we choose an electron at random, the mean time back to its last collision is τ . Therefore, an electron crossing the plane $x = x_0$ at an angle θ to the x -axis had its last collision at $x = x_0 - v_T \tau \cos \theta$. (See Fig. 3.1.) The energy of such an electron is $E(x) = E(x_0 - v_T \tau \cos \theta)$. The number of electrons per unit volume whose direction of motion is in the solid angle $d\Omega$ is simply $n_0 \frac{d\Omega}{4\pi}$. (See Fig. 3.2.)

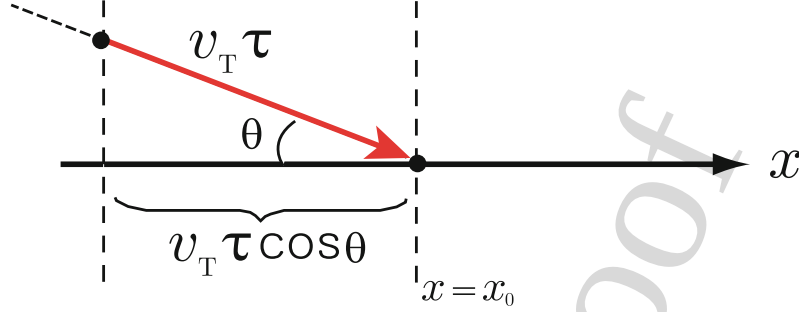


Fig. 3.1. An electron crossing the plane $x = x_0$ at an angle θ to the x -axis

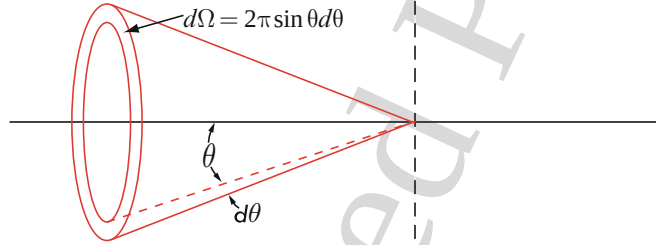


Fig. 3.2. Solid angle $d\Omega$ in which electrons moving to cross the plane $x = x_0$ at an angle θ to the x -axis

The number of such electrons crossing a unit area at x_0 is $n_0 \frac{d\Omega}{4\pi} v_T \cos \theta$, 51
giving for the energy flux through a unit area at x_0 52

$$w(x_0) = \int E(x_0 - v_T \tau \cos \theta) n_0 v_T \cos \theta \frac{d\Omega}{4\pi}. \quad (3.7)$$

Just as we did for the thermal conductivity due to phonons we expand $E(x_0 - v_T \tau \cos \theta)$ and perform the integral over θ from 0 to π . This gives 54

$$w(x) = -\frac{1}{3} n_0 v_T^2 \tau \left(\frac{\partial E}{\partial x} \right). \quad (3.8)$$

But $\frac{\partial E}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial E}{\partial T} \frac{\partial T}{\partial x}$, so the thermal conductivity κ is given by 55

$$\kappa = \frac{w}{-\partial T / \partial x} = \frac{1}{3} n_0 v_T^2 \tau \frac{dE}{dT} = \frac{1}{3} v_T^2 \tau C_v, \quad (3.9)$$

where $C_v = n_0 \frac{dE}{dT}$ is the heat capacity per unit volume (or the specific heat). 56

3.4 Wiedemann–Franz Law 57

The ratio of κ to σ is given by 58

$$\frac{\kappa}{\sigma} = \frac{\frac{1}{3}v_T^2\tau C_v}{\frac{n_0 e^2 \tau}{m}}. \quad (3.10)$$

Now Drude applied the classical gas laws to evaluation of v_T^2 and C_v , viz., $\langle \frac{1}{2}mv_T^2 \rangle = \frac{3}{2}k_B T$ and $C_v = n_0 \left(\frac{3}{2}\right) k_B$. This gave 59 60

$$\frac{\kappa}{\sigma} = \frac{3}{2} \left(\frac{k_B}{e} \right)^2 T. \quad (3.11) \quad 61$$

In addition to agreeing with the Wiedemann–Franz law, the ratio $\mathcal{L} = \frac{\kappa}{\sigma T}$ 62 had the value $\frac{3}{2} \left(\frac{k_B}{e} \right)^2$ which was equal to 1.24×10^{-13} esu. The observed val- 63 ues for $\mathcal{L}$, called the *Lorenz number*², averaged to roughly 2.72×10^{-13} esu. 64 Drude made an error of a factor of 2 in his original paper and found that 65 $\mathcal{L} \sim 2.48 \times 10^{-13}$ esu, remarkably close to the experimental value. 66

3.5 Criticisms of Drude Model 67

1. If $\langle \frac{1}{2}mv_T^2 \rangle = \frac{3}{2}k_B T$, then the electronic contribution to C_v had to be $C_v =$ 68 $\frac{3}{2}Nk_B = \frac{3}{2}R$. This is half as big as the lattice contribution and was simply 69 not observed. 70
2. Experimentally σ varies as T^{-1} . This implies that $n_0\tau \propto T^{-1}$ since e^2 71 and m are constants. In Drude's picture, the mean free path $l \simeq v_T\tau$ was 72 thought to be of the order of the atomic spacing and therefore independent 73 of T . Since $v_T \propto T^{1/2}$ this would imply that $\tau \propto T^{-1/2}$ and, to satisfy 74 $n_0\tau \propto T^{-1}$, that $n_0 \propto T^{-1/2}$. This did not make any sense. 75

3.6 Lorentz Theory 76

Since Drude's simple model gave some results that agree fairly well with 77 experiment, Lorentz³ decided to use the full apparatus of kinetic theory to 78 investigate the model more carefully. He did not succeed in improving on 79 Drude's model, but he did make use of the Boltzmann distribution function 80 and Boltzmann equation which we would like to describe. 81

² Ludvig Valentin Lorenz (1829–1891).

³ Hendrik Antoon Lorentz (1853–1928).

3.6.1 Boltzmann Distribution Function 82

The Boltzmann distribution function $f(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{r}, t)$ is defined by 83

$f(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{r}, t)d^3r d^3v =$ the number of electrons in the volume element d^3r centered
at $\mathbf{r}$ whose velocity is between $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{v} + d\mathbf{v}$ at time t . 84 85

Boltzmann's equation says that the total time rate of change of $f(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{r}, t)$ must 86
be balanced by its time rate of change due to collisions, i.e., 87

$$\frac{df(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{r}, t)}{dt} = \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} \right)_c. \quad (3.12)$$

Here, $\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} \right)_c d^3r d^3v dt$ is the net number of electrons forced into the volume 88
element $d^3r d^3v$ (in phase space) by collisions in the time interval dt . 89

3.6.2 Relaxation Time Approximation 90

The simplest form of the collision term is 91

$$\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} \right)_c = -\frac{f - f_0}{\tau}, \quad (3.13) \quad 92$$

where f_0 is the thermal equilibrium distribution function, f the actual nonequi- 93
librium distribution function (which differs from f_0 due to some external 94
disturbance), and τ is a relaxation time. Once again if $f - f_0$ is nonzero due 95
to some external disturbance, and if at time $t = 0$ the disturbance is turned 96
off, one can simply write 97

$$(f - f_0)_t = (f - f_0)_{t=0} e^{-t/\tau}. \quad (3.14)$$

3.6.3 Solution of Boltzmann Equation 98

We are frequently interested in small perturbations away from equilibrium 99
and can linearize the Boltzmann equation. For example, suppose the external 100
perturbation is a small electric field $\mathbf{E}$ in the x -direction, and a temperature 101
gradient $\frac{\partial T}{\partial x}$. The steady-state Boltzmann equation ($\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} = 0$) is 102

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial v_x} \left(-\frac{eE}{m} \right) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} v_x = -\frac{f - f_0}{\tau}. \quad (3.15)$$

If $f - f_0$ is small we can approximate f on the left-hand side by f_0 and obtain 103

$$f \simeq f_0 + \tau \left[\frac{eE}{m} \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial v_x} - v_x \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial x} \right]. \quad (3.16) \quad 104$$

This is *linear response* since E and $\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial x}$ are already linear in E or $\frac{\partial T}{\partial x}$. The electrical current density and thermal current density are given, respectively, by

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \int (-e)\mathbf{v} f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{v}, t) d^3v, \quad (3.17)$$

and

$$\mathbf{w}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \int \varepsilon \mathbf{v} f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{v}, t) d^3v. \quad (3.18)$$

In (3.18) $\varepsilon = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ is the kinetic energy of the electron of velocity $\mathbf{v}$. We substitute the solution for f given by (3.16) into (3.17) and (3.18) to calculate $\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{w}$.

3.6.4 Maxwell–Boltzmann Distribution

To evaluate $\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{w}$ it is necessary to know $f_0(v)$. Lorentz used the following expression:

$$f_0(v) = n_0 \left(\frac{m}{2\pi\Theta} \right)^{3/2} e^{-\varepsilon/\Theta}. \quad (3.19)$$

Here $n_0 = N/V$, $\Theta = k_B T$, and $\varepsilon = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$. The normalization constant has been chosen so that $\int f_0(v) d^3v = n_0$. The reader should check this. (Use $\int_0^\infty x^{1/2} e^{-x} dx = \Gamma(\frac{3}{2}) = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}$.)

The use of classical statistical mechanics and the Maxwell–Boltzmann distribution function is the source of the difficulty with the Lorentz theory. In 1925 Pauli⁴ proposed the *exclusion principle*; in 1926 Fermi and Dirac⁵ proposed the Fermi–Dirac statistics, and in 1928 Sommerfeld published the *Sommerfeld Theory of Metals*. The Sommerfeld theory was simply the Lorentz theory with the Fermi–Dirac distribution function replacing the Boltzmann–Maxwell distribution function.

3.7 Sommerfeld Theory of Metals

Sommerfeld⁶ treated the Drude electron gas quantum mechanically. We can assume that the electron gas is contained in a cubic box of edge L , and that the potential inside the box is constant. The Schrödinger equation is

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 \Psi(\mathbf{r}) = E \Psi(\mathbf{r}), \quad (3.20)$$

⁴ W. Pauli, Z. Physik **31**, 765 (1925).

⁵ E. Fermi, Z. Physik **36**, 902 (1926); P.A.M. Dirac, Proc. Roy. Soc. London, A **112**, 661 (1926).

⁶ A. Sommerfeld, Zeits. für Physik **47**, 1 (1928).

and its solution is 131

$$\begin{aligned}\Psi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r}) &= V^{-1/2} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} \\ E_{\mathbf{k}} &= \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m}.\end{aligned}\quad (3.21)$$

To avoid difficulties with boundaries, we can assume periodic boundary conditions so that $x = 0$ and $x = L$ are the same point. Then the allowed values of k_x (and k_y and k_z) satisfy $k_x = \frac{2\pi}{L} n_x$, where $n_x = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$, and 132 133 134

$$E_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \left(\frac{2\pi}{L} \right)^2 (n_x^2 + n_y^2 + n_z^2). \quad (3.22)$$

The functions $|\mathbf{k}\rangle$ form a complete orthonormal set with 135

$$\langle \mathbf{k} | \mathbf{k}' \rangle = \int d^3r \Psi_{\mathbf{k}}^*(\mathbf{r}) \Psi_{\mathbf{k}'}(\mathbf{r}) = \delta_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'}. \quad (3.23)$$

$$\sum_{\mathbf{k}} |\mathbf{k}\rangle \langle \mathbf{k}| = 1 \text{ or } \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \Psi_{\mathbf{k}}^*(\mathbf{r}') \Psi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r}) = \delta(\mathbf{r}' - \mathbf{r}). \quad (3.24)$$

Fermi Energy 136

The Pauli principle states that only one electron can occupy a given quantum state. In the Sommerfeld model, states are labeled by $\{\mathbf{k}, \sigma\} = (k_x, k_y, k_z)$ and σ , where σ is a spin index which takes on the two values $\uparrow$ or $\downarrow$. At $T = 0$, only the lowest N energy states will be occupied by the N electrons in the system. Define k_F as the value of k for the highest energy occupied state. Then the number of particles is given by 137 138 139 140 141 142

$$N = \sum_{\substack{k < k_F \\ \sigma}} 1 = \frac{V}{(2\pi)^3} 2 \int_{k < k_F} d^3k. \quad (3.25)$$

The factor of 2 comes from summing over spin. The integration simply gives $\frac{4}{3}\pi k_F^3$, resulting in the relation 143 144

$$k_F^3 = 3\pi^2 n_0. \quad (3.26) \quad 145$$

The *Fermi energy* $\varepsilon_F (\equiv \Theta_F)$, *Fermi velocity* v_F , and *Fermi temperature* $T_F (= \frac{\Theta_F}{k_B})$ are defined, respectively, by 146 147

$$\varepsilon_F = \frac{\hbar^2 k_F^2}{2m} = \frac{1}{2} m v_F^2 = \Theta_F. \quad (3.27)$$

For a typical metal, we have $n_0 = 10^{23} \text{ cm}^{-3}$ giving $\varepsilon_F \simeq 5 \text{ eV}$, $v_F \simeq 10^8 \text{ cm/s}$, and $T_F \simeq 10^5 \text{ K}$. 148 149

3.8 Review of Elementary Statistical Mechanics 150

Suppose that the states of an ideal Fermi gas are labeled $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_i, \dots$ 151
and that they have energies $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_i, \dots$. Then, if N is the total number 152
of Fermions 153

$$\sum_i n_i = N, \quad (3.28)$$

where $n_i = 1$ if the state ϕ_i is occupied and $n_i = 0$ if it is not. The *partition* 154
function Z_N for this N particle system is defined by 155

$$Z_N = \sum_{\{n_i\}}' e^{-\beta \sum_i n_i \varepsilon_i}. \quad (3.29)$$

In (3.29) $\beta = (k_B T)^{-1}$ and the symbol $\sum_{\{n_i\}}'$ means a summation over all sets 156
of values $\{n_i\} = \{n_1, n_2, \dots, n_i, \dots\}$ which satisfy the condition $\sum_i n_i = N$. 157
This restriction makes performing the sum to obtain Z_N difficult. One can 158
avoid this difficulty by using the *grand canonical ensemble* instead of the 159
canonical ensemble. The *grand partition function* Q is defined by 160

$$Q = \sum_{N=0}^{\infty} e^{\beta \zeta N} Z_N. \quad (3.30)$$

The symbol ζ is called the *chemical potential*. When we substitute (3.29) into 161
(3.30), the summation over N removes the restriction on the sets of values $\{n_i\}$ 162
included in the sum appearing in (3.29). We can rewrite the grand partition 163
function as follows: 164

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= \sum_{N=0}^{\infty} \sum_{\{n_i\}}' e^{-\beta \sum_i n_i (\varepsilon_i - \zeta)} \\ &= \sum_{n_1=0}^1 \sum_{n_2=0}^1 \dots \sum_{n_i=0}^1 \dots e^{-\beta(\varepsilon_1 - \zeta)n_1} e^{-\beta(\varepsilon_2 - \zeta)n_2} \dots e^{-\beta(\varepsilon_i - \zeta)n_i} \dots \end{aligned} \quad (3.31)$$

It is easy to see that 165

$$\sum_{n_i=0}^1 e^{-\beta(\varepsilon_i - \zeta)n_i} = 1 + e^{-\beta(\varepsilon_i - \zeta)}$$

so that 166

$$Q = \prod_i \left[1 + e^{-\beta(\varepsilon_i - \zeta)} \right]. \quad (3.32)$$

The average occupancy of some quantum state l is given by 167

$$\bar{n}_l = Q^{-1} \sum_{\{n_i\}} n_l e^{-\beta \sum_i n_i (\varepsilon_i - \zeta)}. \quad (3.33)$$

3.8 Review of Elementary Statistical Mechanics 87

For all $i \neq l$, the factor involving i in the numerator is exactly cancelled by the same factor in Q^{-1} leaving us

$$\bar{n}_l = \frac{\sum_{n_l} n_l e^{-\beta(\varepsilon_l - \zeta)n_l}}{\sum_{n_l} e^{-\beta(\varepsilon_l - \zeta)n_l}} = \frac{e^{-\beta(\varepsilon_l - \zeta)}}{1 + e^{-\beta(\varepsilon_l - \zeta)}}. \quad (3.34)$$

Thus we find the *Fermi–Dirac distribution function* of

$$\bar{n}_l = \frac{1}{e^{(\varepsilon_l - \zeta)/\Theta} + 1}. \quad (3.35)$$

At $\Theta = 0$ all states whose energy is smaller than ε_F are occupied; all states of higher energy empty. Notice that (3.33) can be written

$$\bar{n}_l = -k_B T \frac{\partial}{\partial \varepsilon_l} \ln Q, \quad (3.36)$$

a form that is sometimes useful.

3.8.1 Fermi–Dirac Distribution Function

At zero temperature the Fermi–Dirac distribution function can be written, as a function of energy ε , as

$$f_0(\varepsilon) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } \varepsilon < \varepsilon_F, \\ 0 & \text{if } \varepsilon > \varepsilon_F. \end{cases} \quad (3.37)$$

At a finite temperature

$$f_0(\varepsilon) = \frac{1}{e^{(\varepsilon - \zeta)/\Theta} + 1}. \quad (3.38)$$

Clearly at $\varepsilon = \zeta$, $f_0(\varepsilon = \zeta)$ is equal to $\frac{1}{2}$. (See Fig. 3.3.) The value of ζ is determined (as a function of T) by the condition

$$\sum_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} f_0(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}) = N. \quad (3.39)$$

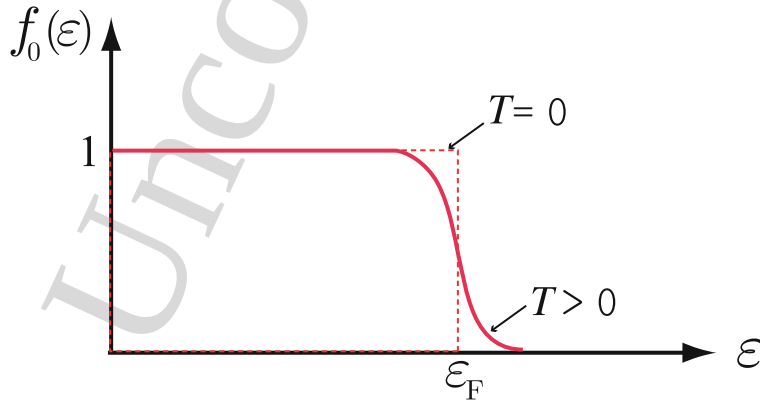


Fig. 3.3. Fermi–Dirac distribution function $f_0(\varepsilon)$ for two different temperatures

3.8.2 Density of States

It is easy to determine $G(\varepsilon)$, the total number of states per unit volume whose energy is less than ε , and then obtain $g(\varepsilon)$ from it.

$$G(\varepsilon + d\varepsilon) - G(\varepsilon) = \frac{dG}{d\varepsilon} d\varepsilon = g(\varepsilon) d\varepsilon. \quad (3.40)$$

For free electrons we have

$$G(\varepsilon) = V^{-1} \sum_{\substack{\mathbf{k}\sigma \\ \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} \leq \varepsilon}} 1 = \frac{2}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{4\pi}{3} k^3, \quad (3.41)$$

where $\frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} = \varepsilon$. It is easy to see that

$$G(\varepsilon) = n_0 \left(\frac{k}{k_F} \right)^3 = n_0 \left(\frac{\varepsilon}{\varepsilon_F} \right)^{3/2}. \quad (3.42)$$

Thus, from (3.40) we find

$$g(\varepsilon) = \frac{3}{2} \frac{n_0}{\varepsilon_F} \left(\frac{\varepsilon}{\varepsilon_F} \right)^{1/2} = \frac{1}{2\pi^2} \left(\frac{2m}{\hbar^2} \right)^{3/2} \varepsilon^{1/2}. \quad (3.43)$$

For electrons moving in a periodic potential, $g(\varepsilon)$ does not have such a simple form.

At a finite temperature Θ , the number of electrons per unit volume having energies between ε and $\varepsilon + d\varepsilon$ is simply the product of $g(\varepsilon)d\varepsilon$ and $f_0(\varepsilon)$: $n(\varepsilon)d\varepsilon = g(\varepsilon)f_0(\varepsilon)d\varepsilon$. (See Fig. 3.4.) The chemical potential ζ is determined from

$$N = V \int_0^\infty g(\varepsilon) f_0(\varepsilon) d\varepsilon. \quad (3.44)$$

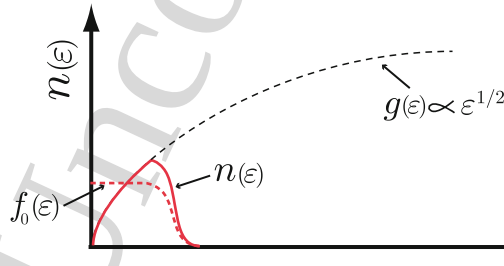


Fig. 3.4. Particle density $n(\varepsilon)$ and the density of states $g(\varepsilon)$

3.8 Review of Elementary Statistical Mechanics 89

3.8.3 Thermodynamic Potential 196

The thermodynamic potential Ω is defined by 197

$$\Omega = -\Theta \ln Q = -\Theta \sum_i \ln \left(1 + e^{(\zeta - \varepsilon_i)/\Theta} \right). \quad (3.45)$$

Functions that are commonly used in statistical mechanics are: 198

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Internal energy } U, \\ \text{Helmholtz free energy } F = U - TS, \\ \text{Thermodynamic potential } \Omega = U - TS - \zeta N = -PV, \\ \text{enthalpy } \mathcal{H} = U + PV = TS + \zeta N, \\ \text{Gibbs free energy } G = U - TS + PV = \zeta N. \end{aligned} \quad (3.46)$$

These definitions together with Euler's relation 199

$$U = TS - PV + \zeta N \quad (3.47)$$

and the second law of thermodynamics 200

$$dU = TdS - PdV + \zeta dN \quad (3.48)$$

are very useful to remember. By using (3.47) and (3.48) and $\Omega = -PV$, one 201
can obtain 202

$$d\Omega = -SdT - PdV - Nd\zeta. \quad (3.49)$$

From (3.49) one can see that the entropy S , pressure P , and particle number 203
 N can be obtained from the thermodynamic potential Ω 204

$$\begin{aligned} S &= - \left(\frac{\partial \Omega}{\partial T} \right)_{V, \zeta}, \\ P &= - \left(\frac{\partial \Omega}{\partial V} \right)_{T, \zeta}, \\ N &= - \left(\frac{\partial \Omega}{\partial \zeta} \right)_{V, T}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.50)$$

3.8.4 Entropy 205

We know that 206

$$\Omega = -\Theta \sum_i \ln \left(1 + e^{(\zeta - \varepsilon_i)/\Theta} \right). \quad (3.51)$$

But we can write 207

$$1 - \bar{n}_i = 1 - \frac{1}{e^{(\varepsilon_i - \zeta)/\Theta} + 1} = \frac{1}{e^{(\zeta - \varepsilon_i)/\Theta} + 1}, \quad (3.52)$$

90 3 Free Electron Theory of Metals

so that

$$\ln(1 - \bar{n}_i) = -\ln \left[1 + e^{(\zeta - \varepsilon_i)/\Theta} \right]. \quad (3.53)$$

We can express (3.51) as

$$\Omega = \Theta \sum_i \ln(1 - \bar{n}_i). \quad (3.54)$$

Since the entropy is given by $S = -\frac{\partial \Omega}{\partial \Theta}$, we can obtain

$$S = -\sum_i \ln(1 - \bar{n}_i) + \Theta \sum_i (1 - \bar{n}_i)^{-1} \frac{\partial \bar{n}_i}{\partial \Theta}. \quad (3.55)$$

Evaluating $\frac{\partial \bar{n}_i}{\partial \Theta}$ and multiplying by $\Theta(1 - \bar{n}_i)^{-1}$ gives

$$\frac{\Theta}{1 - \bar{n}_i} \frac{\partial \bar{n}_i}{\partial \Theta} = \bar{n}_i \ln \left(\frac{1 - \bar{n}_i}{\bar{n}_i} \right). \quad (3.56)$$

Sustituting this result into (3.55) gives

$$S = -k_B \sum_i [(1 - \bar{n}_i) \ln(1 - \bar{n}_i) + \bar{n}_i \ln \bar{n}_i]. \quad (3.57)$$

We have inserted the factor k_B into (3.57); in the derivation we had essentially set it equal to unity. Notice that the expression for S goes to zero as T goes to zero because $\bar{n}_i$ takes on the values 0 or 1 in this limit. In addition, we can write that

$$\begin{aligned} \Theta S &= -\Theta \sum_i \left[\ln(1 - \bar{n}_i) + \bar{n}_i \ln \left(\frac{\bar{n}_i}{1 - \bar{n}_i} \right) \right], \\ &= -\Theta \sum_i \ln(1 - \bar{n}_i) - \Theta \sum_i \bar{n}_i \left(\frac{\zeta - \varepsilon_i}{\Theta} \right), \\ &= -\Theta \sum_i \ln(1 - \bar{n}_i) - \zeta \sum_i \bar{n}_i + \sum_i \bar{n}_i \varepsilon_i, \\ &= -\Theta \sum_i \ln(1 - \bar{n}_i) - \zeta N + U. \end{aligned} \quad (3.58)$$

If we write $F = U - TS$ we have

$$\begin{aligned} F &= N\zeta + \Theta \sum_i \ln(1 - \bar{n}_i), \\ &= N\zeta - \Theta \sum_i \ln \left(1 + e^{\frac{\zeta - \varepsilon_i}{\Theta}} \right). \end{aligned} \quad (3.59)$$

3.9 Fermi Function Integration Formula 91

If we hold V and T constant, the energy levels ε_i are unchanged and 218

$$\left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial N}\right)_{T,V} = \zeta + N \left(\frac{\partial \zeta}{\partial N}\right)_{T,V} - \Theta \frac{\partial}{\partial N} \sum_i \ln \left(1 + e^{\frac{\zeta - \varepsilon_i}{\Theta}}\right). \quad (3.60)$$

It is not difficult to show that (since $\ln \left[1 + e^{\frac{\zeta - \varepsilon_i}{\Theta}}\right]$ depends on N through ζ) 219
the last two terms cancel and hence 220

$$\left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial N}\right)_{T,V} = \zeta. \quad (3.61)$$

3.9 Fermi Function Integration Formula 221

To study how the chemical potential ζ and internal energy U vary with tem- 222
perature, we must evaluate the integrals 223

$$\frac{N}{V} = n_0 = \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon g(\varepsilon) f_0(\varepsilon) \quad (3.62) \quad 224$$

and 225

$$\frac{U}{V} = u = \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon \varepsilon g(\varepsilon) f_0(\varepsilon). \quad (3.63) \quad 226$$

In evaluating integrals of this type there is a very useful integration formula 227
which we will now derive. Let us define an integral I as follows: 228

$$I = \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon f_0(\varepsilon) \frac{dF(\varepsilon)}{d\varepsilon}. \quad (3.64)$$

Integrating by parts gives 229

$$I = [f_0(\varepsilon)F(\varepsilon)]_0^\infty - \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} F(\varepsilon). \quad (3.65)$$

For many functions $F(\varepsilon)$, $F(0) = 0$ and $\lim_{\varepsilon \rightarrow \infty} f_0(\varepsilon)F(\varepsilon) \rightarrow 0$. For such 230
functions we can write (3.65) simply as 231

$$I = - \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} F(\varepsilon). \quad (3.66)$$

The functions f_0 changes rather quickly in an interval of width of the order of 232
 $k_B T$ about $\varepsilon = \zeta$. It is obvious that 233

$$\int_0^\infty \left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon}\right) d\varepsilon = 1.$$

If the function $F(\varepsilon)$ is slowly varying compared to $\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon}$ in the region $\varepsilon \simeq \zeta$, we 234
can expand $F(\varepsilon)$ in Taylor series as follows: 235

92 3 Free Electron Theory of Metals

$$F(\varepsilon) = F(\zeta) + (\varepsilon - \zeta)F'(\zeta) + \frac{1}{2!}(\varepsilon - \zeta)^2 F''(\zeta) + \dots \quad (3.67)$$

Then, we can write I as

$$I = F(\zeta) \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon \left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \right) + F'(\zeta) \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon (\varepsilon - \zeta) \left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \right) + \frac{1}{2!} F''(\zeta) \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon (\varepsilon - \zeta)^2 \left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \right) + \dots$$

But we note that

$$-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} = \beta \frac{e^{\beta(\varepsilon - \zeta)}}{[e^{\beta(\varepsilon - \zeta)} + 1]^2}.$$

Introduce the parameter $z = \beta(\varepsilon - \zeta)$ and note that

$$\int_0^\infty d\varepsilon (\varepsilon - \zeta)^n \left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \right) = \Theta^n \int_{-\zeta/\Theta}^\infty dz \frac{z^n}{(e^z + 1)(e^{-z} + 1)}.$$

If ζ is much larger than Θ (this is certainly true in metals) the lower limit on the integral over z can be replaced by $-\infty$. Since $\frac{z^n}{(e^z + 1)(e^{-z} + 1)}$ is an odd function of z for n odd, we obtain

$$I \simeq F(\zeta) + \frac{1}{2!} \Theta^2 F''(\zeta) \int_{-\infty}^\infty dz \frac{z^2}{(e^z + 1)(e^{-z} + 1)} + \dots + \frac{1}{(2n)!} \Theta^{2n} F^{(2n)}(\zeta) \int_{-\infty}^\infty dz \frac{z^{2n}}{(e^z + 1)(e^{-z} + 1)}. \quad (3.68)$$

The first few integrals are

$$\int_{-\infty}^\infty dz \frac{z^2}{(e^z + 1)(e^{-z} + 1)} = \frac{\pi^2}{3},$$

$$\int_{-\infty}^\infty dz \frac{z^4}{(e^z + 1)(e^{-z} + 1)} = \frac{7\pi^4}{15}.$$

To order Θ^2 we have

$$I = F(\zeta) + \frac{\pi^2}{6} \Theta^2 F''(\zeta). \quad (3.69)$$

To evaluate the integral given in (3.62), we note that $F(\zeta)$ is just $G(\varepsilon)$, the total number of states per unit volume whose energy is less than ε . Then using (3.69) gives us

$$n_0 = G(\zeta) + \frac{\pi^2}{6} \Theta^2 G''(\zeta). \quad (3.70)$$

Define ζ_0 as the chemical potential at $T = 0$. Then $n_0 = G(\zeta_0)$ and

$$G(\zeta) = G(\zeta_0) - \frac{\pi^2}{6} \Theta^2 g'(\zeta). \quad (3.71)$$

3.10 Heat Capacity of a Fermi Gas 93

Here, we have used $G'(\varepsilon) = g(\varepsilon)$ and set $n_0 = G(\zeta_0)$. Write $G(\zeta)$ as $G(\zeta_0) + g(\zeta_0)(\zeta - \zeta_0)$ and substitute into (3.71) to obtain

$$\zeta = \zeta_0 - \frac{\pi^2}{6} \Theta^2 \frac{g'(\zeta_0)}{g(\zeta_0)}.$$

But for free electrons $g(\zeta) = \frac{3}{2} \frac{n_0}{\zeta_0} \left(\frac{\varepsilon}{\zeta_0} \right)^{1/2}$ so that

$$\zeta = \zeta_0 \left[1 - \frac{\pi^2}{12} \left(\frac{\Theta}{\zeta_0} \right)^2 + \cdots \right]. \quad (3.72)$$

Applying the integration formula to the integral for $\frac{U}{V}$, $F(\varepsilon)$ is simply $\int_0^\varepsilon \varepsilon' g(\varepsilon') d\varepsilon'$; therefore we have

$$\frac{U}{V} = \int_0^\zeta \varepsilon g(\varepsilon) d\varepsilon + \frac{\pi^2}{6} \Theta^2 \left[\frac{d}{d\varepsilon} (\varepsilon g(\varepsilon)) \right]_{\varepsilon=\zeta}. \quad (3.73)$$

Define $U_0 = V \int_0^{\zeta_0} \varepsilon g(\varepsilon) d\varepsilon$ and use the expression for $g(\varepsilon)$ given above for free electrons. One can find that

$$\frac{U}{V} = \frac{U_0}{V} + \frac{\pi^2}{6} \Theta^2 g(\zeta_0). \quad (3.74)$$

3.10 Heat Capacity of a Fermi Gas

The heat capacity $C_v = \left(\frac{\partial U}{\partial T} \right)_V$ is given, using (3.74), by

$$C_v = V \frac{\pi^2}{3} k_B^2 g(\zeta_0) T = \gamma T. \quad (3.75)$$

For free electrons we have $\gamma = \frac{\pi^2 k_B^2}{2\zeta_0} N$. It is interesting to compare the quantum mechanical Sommerfeld result $C_v^{\text{QM}} = \gamma T$ with the classical Drude result $C_v^{\text{CM}} = \frac{3}{2} N k_B$:

$$\frac{C_v^{\text{QM}}}{C_v^{\text{CM}}} = \frac{\pi^2}{3} \frac{T}{T_F}. \quad (3.76)$$

For a typical metal, $T_F \simeq 10^5$ K, while at room temperature $T \simeq 300$ K. This solves the problem that perplexed Drude concerning why the classical specific heat C_v^{CM} was not observed. The correct quantum mechanical specific heat is so small (because $\frac{T}{T_F} \ll 1$) that it is difficult to observe even at room temperature.

One can obtain a rough estimate of the specific heat by saying that only quantum states within $k_B T$ of the Fermi energy contribute to the classical estimate of the specific heat. This means that

$$N_{\text{eff}} = V [G(\varepsilon_F) - G(\varepsilon_F - k_B T)].$$

This gives

$$U \approx \left(\frac{3}{2} k_B T \right) N_{\text{eff}} = \left[\frac{3}{2} k_B T \right] [V g(\varepsilon_F) k_B T], \quad (3.77)$$

and hence

$$C_v = \frac{\partial U}{\partial T} \approx V 3 k_B^2 g(\varepsilon_F) T. \quad (3.78)$$

3.11 Equation of State of a Fermi Gas

The equation of state relates the variables P , V , and T . For the Fermi gas we know that

$$P = - \left(\frac{\partial \Omega}{\partial V} \right)_{T, \zeta}. \quad (3.79)$$

But $\Omega = -\Theta \sum_i \ln(1 + e^{(\zeta - \varepsilon_i)/\Theta})$. At constant values of $\Theta = k_B T$ and ζ , Ω depends on V through ε_i :

$$\varepsilon_i = \frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \left(\frac{2\pi}{L} \right)^2 (n_{ix}^2 + n_{iy}^2 + n_{iz}^2). \quad (3.80)$$

We can write $\frac{\partial \varepsilon_i}{\partial V} = \frac{\partial \varepsilon_i}{\partial L} \left(\frac{\partial V}{\partial L} \right)^{-1}$. Since $\varepsilon_i \propto L^{-2}$ and $V \propto L^3$ this gives $\frac{\partial \varepsilon_i}{\partial V} = -\frac{2}{3} \frac{\varepsilon_i}{V}$. Using this result in (3.79) gives

$$P = \Theta \sum_i \left(\frac{e^{(\zeta - \varepsilon_i)/\Theta}}{1 + e^{(\zeta - \varepsilon_i)/\Theta}} \right) (-\Theta^{-1}) \frac{\partial \varepsilon_i}{\partial V}. \quad (3.81)$$

From this we find (since $G(\varepsilon) = \frac{2}{3} \varepsilon g(\varepsilon)$ for a free Fermi gas) that

$$P = \frac{2}{3} \frac{U}{V} = \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon G(\varepsilon) f_0(\varepsilon). \quad (3.82)$$

If we keep terms to order Θ^2 we obtain

$$P = P_0 + \frac{\pi^2}{6} \Theta^2 \left\{ g(\varepsilon_F) - \frac{g'(\varepsilon_F)}{g(\varepsilon_F)} G(\varepsilon_F) \right\}. \quad (3.83)$$

3.12 Compressibility

The compressibility κ_T is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} \kappa_T^{-1} &= -V \left(\frac{\partial P}{\partial V} \right)_{T, \zeta} \\ &= -V \frac{\partial}{\partial V} \int_0^\infty G(\varepsilon) f_0(\varepsilon) d\varepsilon. \end{aligned} \quad (3.84)$$

3.13 Electrical and Thermal Conductivities 95

If we define $H(\varepsilon) = \int_0^\varepsilon G(\varepsilon) d\varepsilon$, then the integral can be evaluated by 286
integrating by parts to get (at $T = 0$) 287

$$\int_0^\infty G(\varepsilon) f_0(\varepsilon) d\varepsilon = H(\varepsilon_F).$$

But we know that $G(\varepsilon) = A\varepsilon^{3/2}$, therefore $H(\varepsilon) = \frac{2}{5}A\varepsilon^{5/2} = \frac{2}{5}\varepsilon G(\varepsilon)$ to have 288

$$\kappa_T^{-1} = -V \frac{\partial}{\partial V} \left(\frac{2}{5} \varepsilon_F n_0 \right),$$

since $G(\varepsilon_F) = n_0$. ε_F is proportional to L^{-2} , and n_0 is proportional to L^{-3} so 289
 $\varepsilon_F n_0$ is proportional to $L^{-5} = V^{-5/3}$. This gives 290

$$\kappa_T^{-1} = -V \frac{2}{5} \left(-\frac{5}{3} \right) \frac{n_0 \varepsilon_F}{V} = \frac{2}{3} n_0 \varepsilon_F.$$

Using $g(\varepsilon_F) = \frac{3}{2} \frac{n_0}{\varepsilon_F}$ allows us to write 291

$$\kappa_T^{-1} = \frac{n_0^2}{g(\varepsilon_F)}. \quad (3.85) \quad 292$$

For free electrons $g(\zeta_0) = \frac{3n_0}{2\varepsilon_F}$ and $\kappa_T = \frac{3}{2n_0\zeta_0}$. The velocity of sound in a solid 293
is given by 294

$$s = (\kappa_T \rho)^{-1/2} \quad (3.86)$$

where ρ is the mass density. κ_T is the compressibility of the material in (3.86), 295
and it includes the ion core repulsion as well as the pressure due to compressing 296
the electron gas. The ionic contribution is small in simple metals like the alkali 297
metals. If we neglect it and put $\rho = \frac{n_0 M}{z}$, where M is the ionic mass and z 298
the number of electrons per atom, we find 299

$$s = \left(\frac{zm}{3M} \right)^{1/2} v_F. \quad (3.87)$$

This result was first obtained by Bohm and Staver in a somewhat different 300
way. 301

3.13 Electrical and Thermal Conductivities 302

Assume that there is an electric field $\mathbf{E} = E\hat{x}$ and a temperature gradient 303
 $\nabla T = \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \hat{x}$. In discussing the Lorentz model, we wrote down the solution to 304
the linearized Boltzmann equation 305

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{r}} f + \dot{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{v}} f = - \left(\frac{f - f_0}{\tau} \right) \quad (3.88)$$

in the form

$$f = f_0 - \tau \left[-\frac{eE}{m} \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial v_x} + v_x \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial x} \right]. \quad (3.89)$$

The equilibrium distribution function is the Fermi–Dirac distribution function

$$f_0 = \frac{1}{1 + e^{(\varepsilon - \zeta)/\Theta}}. \quad (3.90)$$

Because of the temperature gradient, both T and ζ depend on the coordinate x , but the energy ε does not. We can write

$$\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \alpha} \frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial x}, \quad (3.91)$$

where $\alpha = \frac{\varepsilon - \zeta}{\Theta}$. This can be rewritten

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial x} &= \Theta \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{\varepsilon - \zeta}{\Theta} \right) \\ &= -\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \left[\frac{\varepsilon}{\Theta} \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial x} + \Theta \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{\zeta}{\Theta} \right) \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (3.92)$$

Because $\varepsilon = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ we can write

$$\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial v_x} = \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial v_x} = mv_x \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon}. \quad (3.93)$$

We now substitute (3.90), (3.92), and (3.93) into (3.89) and use the resulting expression for $f(\varepsilon)$ in the equations for the electrical current density j_x and the thermal current density w_x :

$$j_x = \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon (-ev_x) g(\varepsilon) f(\varepsilon), \quad (3.94)$$

$$w_x = \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon (\varepsilon v_x) g(\varepsilon) f(\varepsilon). \quad (3.95)$$

For the electrical current density we obtain

$$j_x = e \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon v_x g(\varepsilon) \tau v_x \left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \right) \left[eE + \frac{\varepsilon}{\Theta} \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial x} + \Theta \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{\zeta}{\Theta} \right) \right]. \quad (3.96)$$

Factoring all quantities that are independent of ε out of the integral gives

$$\begin{aligned} j_x &= \left[e^2 E + e\Theta \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{\zeta}{\Theta} \right) \right] \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon v_x^2 g(\varepsilon) \tau \left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \right) \\ &\quad + \frac{e}{\Theta} \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial x} \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon v_x^2 \varepsilon g(\varepsilon) \tau \left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \right). \end{aligned} \quad (3.97)$$

3.13 Electrical and Thermal Conductivities 97

Now substitute $v_x^2 = \frac{2}{3} \frac{\varepsilon}{m}$ and $g(\varepsilon) = \frac{3}{2} \frac{n_0}{\zeta_0^{3/2}} \varepsilon^{1/2}$ into (3.97) to have 317

$$j_x = \left[e^2 E + e\Theta \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{\zeta}{\Theta} \right) \right] \mathcal{K}_1 + \frac{e}{\Theta} \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial x} \mathcal{K}_2, \quad (3.98) \quad 318$$

where we have introduced the symbol $\mathcal{K}_n$ defined by 319

$$\mathcal{K}_n = \frac{n_0}{m\zeta_0^{3/2}} \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon \left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \right) \varepsilon^{n+1/2} \tau. \quad (3.99)$$

In the calculation of w_x , a factor of ε replaces $(-e)$; this gives 320

$$w_x = - \left[eE + \Theta \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{\zeta}{\Theta} \right) \right] \mathcal{K}_2 - \frac{1}{\Theta} \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial x} \mathcal{K}_3. \quad (3.100) \quad 321$$

The function $\mathcal{K}_n$ can be evaluated using the integration formula (3.69). We 322
obtain 323

$$\mathcal{K}_n = \frac{n_0}{m\zeta_0^{3/2}} \left[\zeta^{n+1/2} \tau(\zeta) + \frac{\pi^2}{6} \Theta^2 \frac{d^2}{d\varepsilon^2} \left(\varepsilon^{n+1/2} \tau(\varepsilon) \right) \Big|_{\varepsilon=\zeta} \right]. \quad (3.101) \quad 324$$

At $T = 0$ we have 325

$$\mathcal{K}_n = \frac{n_0}{m} \zeta_0^{n-1} \tau(\zeta_0). \quad (3.102)$$

3.13.1 Electrical Conductivity 326

If we set $\frac{\partial T}{\partial x} = 0$, then j_x is given by $j_x = e^2 E \mathcal{K}_1$, and at $T = 0$ we have 327

$$j_x = \frac{n_0 e^2 \tau(\zeta_0)}{m} E = \sigma E. \quad (3.103)$$

This is exactly the Drude result for the conductivity σ with $\tau(\varepsilon)$ evaluated on 328
the Fermi surface so that $\tau = \tau(\zeta_0)$. 329

3.13.2 Thermal Conductivity 330

The thermal conductivity is defined as the ratio of the thermal current w_x 331
to $(-\frac{\partial T}{\partial x})$ under conditions of zero electrical current. Therefore, we must set 332
 $j_x = 0$ in (3.98) and solve for E . This gives 333

$$j_x = \left[e^2 E + e\Theta \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{\zeta}{\Theta} \right) \right] \mathcal{K}_1 + \frac{e}{\Theta} \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial x} \mathcal{K}_2 = 0$$

or 334

$$- \left[eE + \Theta \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{\zeta}{\Theta} \right) \right] \mathcal{K}_1 = \frac{1}{\Theta} \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial x} \mathcal{K}_2. \quad (3.104)$$

98 3 Free Electron Theory of Metals

Substitute this into (3.100) to obtain w_x ; the result is 335

$$\begin{aligned} w_x &= \frac{1}{\Theta} \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial x} \frac{\mathcal{K}_2}{\mathcal{K}_1} \mathcal{K}_2 - \frac{1}{\Theta} \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial x} \mathcal{K}_3 \\ &= \frac{\mathcal{K}_3 \mathcal{K}_1 - \mathcal{K}_2^2}{\mathcal{K}_1 \Theta} \left(-\frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial x} \right). \end{aligned} \quad (3.105)$$

Thus the thermal conductivity $\kappa_T = k_B w_x \left(-\frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial x} \right)^{-1}$ is 336

$$\kappa_T = k_B \frac{\mathcal{K}_3 \mathcal{K}_1 - \mathcal{K}_2^2}{\mathcal{K}_1 \Theta}. \quad (3.106)$$

If we evaluate $\mathcal{K}_n$ as a function of Θ using (3.101) and the result 337

$$\left(\frac{\zeta}{\zeta_0} \right)^l \simeq 1 - \frac{\pi^2}{12} \left(\frac{\Theta}{\zeta_0} \right)^2 l, \quad (3.107)$$

we find (for τ independent of energy) 338

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{K}_1 &\simeq \frac{n_0 \tau}{m}, \\ \mathcal{K}_2 &\simeq \frac{n_0 \tau \zeta_0}{m} \left[1 + \frac{5}{12} \pi^2 \left(\frac{\Theta}{\zeta_0} \right)^2 \right], \\ \mathcal{K}_3 &\simeq \frac{n_0 \tau \zeta_0^2}{m} \left[1 + \frac{7}{6} \pi^2 \left(\frac{\Theta}{\zeta_0} \right)^2 \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (3.108)$$

Now, substitute these results into (3.106) to obtain 339

$$\kappa_T = k_B \frac{\pi^2}{3} \frac{n_0 \tau}{m} \Theta.$$

Thus the Sommerfeld expression for κ_T can be written 340

$$\kappa_T = \frac{\pi^2}{3} k_B^2 \frac{n_0 \tau}{m} T. \quad (3.109)$$

The Lorenz ratio for the Sommerfeld model $\mathcal{L}_S$ is given by 341

$$\mathcal{L}_S = \frac{\kappa_T}{\sigma T} = \frac{\pi^2}{3} \left(\frac{k_B}{e} \right)^2 \simeq 2.71 \times 10^{-13} \text{ esu}. \quad (3.110)$$

Recall that for the Drude model 342

$$\mathcal{L}_D = \frac{3}{2} \left(\frac{k_B}{e} \right)^2 \simeq 1.24 \times 10^{-13} \text{ esu}, \quad (3.111)$$

and the average experimental result is $\mathcal{L} \approx 2.72 \times 10^{-13} \text{ esu}$. 343

3.14 Critique of Sommerfeld Model 344

The main achievements of the Sommerfeld model were as follows: 345

1. It explained the specific heat dilemma by showing that C_v for the electrons 346
was very small. 347
2. It showed that even though there was one free electron per atom, the Pauli 348
principle made only those in an energy range $k_B T$ about ζ_0 effectively free. 349
3. It not only explained the Wiedemann–Franz law but it gave a very accurate 350
value for the Lorenz ratio. 351
4. It correctly predicted the Pauli spin paramagnetism of metals. 352
5. It predicted Fermi energies that agreed with observed X-ray band widths. 353

The main shortcomings of the Sommerfeld model were: 354

1. It said nothing about the relaxation time $\tau(\varepsilon)$, τ appeared only as a 355
phenomenological parameter. To agree with observed conductivities, the 356
mean free path $l = v_F \tau$ had to be of the order of a 100 atomic spac- 357
ings ($\sim 5 \times 10^{-6}$ cm), and had to vary as T^{-1} at room temperature. These 358
requirements were difficult to understand in 1928. 359
2. The model ignored the interaction of the free electrons with the fixed ions 360
and with one another. These interactions were surely large. How could 361
one achieve such excellent agreement with experiment when they were 362
ignored. Furthermore, attempts to include these interaction ran into great 363
difficulties. 364

3.15 Magnetoconductivity 365

In the presence of a large dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$, the conductivity of a metal 366
displays some new effects. These can be understood very simply using the 367
Drude model (the Sommerfeld model gives exactly the same result but involves 368
much more mathematics). 369

In the presence of an electric field $\mathbf{E}$ and a dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$, the Drude 370
model would predict a drift velocity $\mathbf{v}_D$ which was a solution of the equation 371

$$m \left(\frac{d\mathbf{v}_D}{dt} + \frac{\mathbf{v}_D}{\tau} \right) = -e\mathbf{E} - \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{v}_D \times \mathbf{B}. \quad (3.112)$$

Let us choose the z -axis along $\mathbf{B}$ and assume that $\mathbf{E}$ is spatially uniform but 372
varies in time as $e^{i\omega t}$. Then (3.112) can be rewritten (we drop the subscript 373
D of $\mathbf{v}_D$ in the rest of this section) as follows: 374

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + i\omega\tau)v_x &= -\frac{e\tau}{m}E_x - \frac{e\tau}{mc}Bv_y, \\ (1 + i\omega\tau)v_y &= -\frac{e\tau}{m}E_y + \frac{e\tau}{mc}Bv_x, \\ (1 + i\omega\tau)v_z &= -\frac{e\tau}{m}E_z. \end{aligned} \quad (3.113)$$

Define the cyclotron frequency $\omega_c = \frac{eB}{mc}$ and solve for $\mathbf{v}$. The result is 375

$$\begin{aligned} v_x &= -\left(\frac{e\tau}{m}\right) \frac{[(1+i\omega\tau)E_x - \omega_c\tau E_y]}{(1+i\omega\tau)^2 + (\omega_c\tau)^2}, \\ v_y &= -\left(\frac{e\tau}{m}\right) \frac{[\omega_c\tau E_x + (1+i\omega\tau)E_y]}{(1+i\omega\tau)^2 + (\omega_c\tau)^2}, \\ v_z &= -\left(\frac{e\tau}{m}\right) \frac{E_z}{1+i\omega\tau}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.114)$$

The current density is given by $\mathbf{j} = -en_0\mathbf{v}$. This can be written $\mathbf{j} = \bar{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{E}$, 376
where $\bar{\sigma}$ is called the *magnetoconductivity tensor*. Its components are $\sigma_{xx} =$ 377
 $\sigma_{zx} = \sigma_{yz} = \sigma_{zy} = 0$, and 378

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_{xx} = \sigma_{yy} &= \frac{\sigma_0(1+i\omega\tau)}{(1+i\omega\tau)^2 + (\omega_c\tau)^2}, \\ \sigma_{xy} = -\sigma_{yx} &= \frac{\sigma_0(-\omega_c\tau)}{(1+i\omega\tau)^2 + (\omega_c\tau)^2}, \\ \sigma_{zz} &= \frac{\sigma_0}{1+i\omega\tau}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.115) \quad 379$$

Here $\sigma_0 = \frac{n_0 e^2 \tau}{m}$ is just the Drude's dc conductivity. 380

3.16 Hall Effect and Magnetoresistance 381

If we apply an electric field $\mathbf{E}$ in the x -direction, the Lorentz force, $-\frac{e}{c}\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}$ 382
causes a drift velocity in the y -direction. If $\omega = 0$ charge will accumulate on 383
the surfaces normal to the y -direction until a field E_y builds up that exactly 384
cancels the Lorentz force. (See Fig. 3.5.) The condition $j_y = 0$ gives 385

$$j_y = \sigma_{xx}E_y - \sigma_{xy}E_x = 0,$$

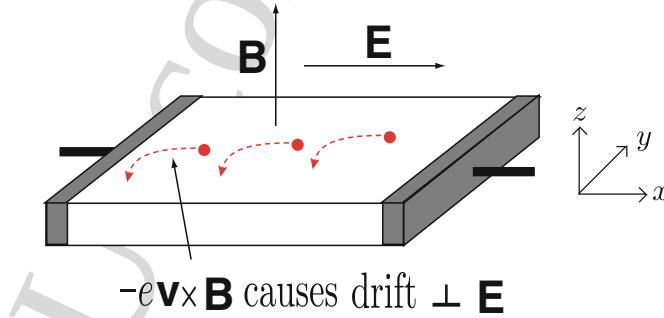


Fig. 3.5. Schematics of the Hall effect experiment. The initial drift of the negatively charged electron is illustrated

or

$$E_y = \frac{\sigma_{xy}}{\sigma_{xx}} E_x.$$

The *Hall coefficient* $\mathcal{R}$ is defined as the ratio of E_y to $j_x B$:

$$\mathcal{R} = \frac{E_y}{j_x B}. \quad (3.116)$$

But $j_x = \sigma_{xx} E_x + \sigma_{xy} E_y = (\sigma_{xx}^2 + \sigma_{xy}^2) / \sigma_{xx} E_x$. If we substitute it into the expression for the Hall coefficient, we find

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{R} &= \frac{E_y}{j_x B} = \frac{(\sigma_{xy} / \sigma_{xx}) E_x}{[(\sigma_{xx}^2 + \sigma_{xy}^2) / \sigma_{xx}] E_x B} \\ &= \frac{\sigma_{xy}}{\sigma_{xx}^2 + \sigma_{xy}^2} \frac{1}{B}. \end{aligned}$$

Making use of (3.115) in the limit $\omega \rightarrow 0$ gives

$$\mathcal{R} = \frac{1}{n_0 (-e) c}. \quad (3.117)$$

Because $\mathcal{R}$ depends on the carrier concentration, the Hall effect is often used to measure n_0 .

*Magnetoresistance*When $B = 0$, $j_x = \sigma_0 E_x$. In the presence of the magnetic field B , we have

$$j_x = \frac{\sigma_{xx}^2 + \sigma_{xy}^2}{\sigma_{xx}} E_x. \quad (3.118)$$

For the free electron model $\frac{\sigma_{xx}^2 + \sigma_{xy}^2}{\sigma_{xx}} = \sigma_0$ (one can check this relation as an exercise). Therefore even in the presence of the B -field $j_x = \sigma_0 E_x$. The magnetic field causes no change in the ratio $\frac{E_x}{j_x} = \rho$, the *resistivity*, and we would say that

$$\Delta\rho = \rho(B) - \rho(0) = 0,$$

or that the magnetoresistance vanishes. This does not occur in more general cases than the simple free electron model as we shall see later.

3.17 Dielectric Function

The electrical current density $\mathbf{j}$ can be thought of as the time rate of change of the polarization $\mathbf{P}$. Assume $\mathbf{D}$, $\mathbf{P}$, and $\mathbf{E}$ vary as $e^{i\omega t}$. Then $\mathbf{j} = \dot{\mathbf{P}} = i\omega\mathbf{P}$ and $\mathbf{D} = \epsilon\mathbf{E} = \mathbf{E} + 4\pi\mathbf{P}$ where ϵ is the *dielectric function*. This gives us the relation

$$\epsilon(\omega) = 1 - \frac{4\pi i}{\omega} \sigma(\omega), \quad (3.119)$$

102 3 Free Electron Theory of Metals

where $\sigma(\omega)$ is the frequency dependent Drude conductivity. In the presence of a dc magnetic field, the dielectric function and conductivity become tensor quantities: $\underline{\sigma}(\omega)$ and $\underline{\varepsilon}(\omega)$, whose off-diagonal components result from the Lorentz force.

The dielectric function $\varepsilon(\omega)$ or conductivity $\sigma(\omega)$ appear in Maxwell's equation for $\nabla \times \mathbf{B}$:

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \frac{1}{c} \dot{\mathbf{E}} + \frac{4\pi}{c} \mathbf{j} = \frac{i\omega}{c} \left[\mathbf{1} - \frac{4\pi i}{\omega} \underline{\sigma}(\omega) \right] \cdot \mathbf{E} = \frac{1}{c} \underline{\varepsilon}(\omega) \cdot \dot{\mathbf{E}}. \quad (3.120)$$

In the Drude model

$$\begin{aligned} \varepsilon(\omega) &= 1 - \frac{4\pi i}{\omega} \sigma(\omega), \\ &= 1 - \frac{4\pi i}{\omega} \frac{n_0 e^2 \tau / m}{1 + i\omega\tau}. \end{aligned}$$

Define the *plasma frequency* ω_p by $\omega_p^2 = \frac{4\pi n_0 e^2}{m}$; then we have

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega(\omega - i/\tau)}. \quad (3.121)$$

$\varepsilon(\omega)$ has real and imaginary parts, ε_1 and ε_2 , respectively, as

$$\begin{aligned} \varepsilon_1(\omega) &= 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2 + 1/\tau^2}, \\ \varepsilon_2(\omega) &= -\frac{\omega_p^2/\omega\tau}{\omega^2 + 1/\tau^2}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.122)$$

In general, we can ask how electromagnetic waves propagate in a medium described by a dielectric tensor $\underline{\varepsilon}(\omega)$. The wave equation can be obtained from the two Maxwell equations:

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla \times \mathbf{E} &= -\frac{1}{c} \dot{\mathbf{B}}, \\ \nabla \times \mathbf{B} &= \frac{1}{c} \underline{\varepsilon} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{E}}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.123)$$

Assume $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ vary as $e^{i\omega t - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$. The two Maxwell equations can then be combined, by eliminating $\mathbf{B}$, to give

$$\mathbf{q}(\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{E}) - q^2 \mathbf{E} + \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \underline{\varepsilon} \cdot \mathbf{E} = 0. \quad (3.124)$$

This can be applied to a case in which a dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}_0$ is present and oriented in the z -direction. Then without loss of generality we can choose $\mathbf{q} = (0, q_y, q_z)$ and write (3.124) as

$$\begin{pmatrix} \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \varepsilon_{xx} - q^2 & \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \varepsilon_{xy} & 0 \\ -\frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \varepsilon_{xy} & \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \varepsilon_{xx} - q_z^2 & q_y q_z \\ 0 & q_y q_z & \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \varepsilon_{zz} - q_y^2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} E_x \\ E_y \\ E_z \end{pmatrix} = 0. \quad (3.125)$$

The description of the bulk modes are given by setting the determinant of the 426
matrix multiplying the column vector equal to zero. 427

For surface modes at a metal–dielectric interface, think of ω and q_y (wave 428
vector along the surface) as given and determine the allowed values of q_z in 429
the solid (with a given $\underline{\varepsilon}(\omega)$) and in the dielectric. One can get modes from 430
applying standard boundary conditions. 431

Uncorrected Proof

Problems

432

3.1. A two-dimensional electron gas is contained within a square box of side L . 433

- (a) Apply periodic boundary conditions and determine $E(k_x, k_y)$ and $\Psi_{\mathbf{k}}(x, y)$ for the free electron Hamiltonian $H = \frac{1}{2m} (p_x^2 + p_y^2)$. 434
- (b) Determine the Fermi wave number k_F in terms of the density $n_0 = \frac{N}{L^2}$. 435
- (c) Evaluate $G(\varepsilon)$ and $g(\varepsilon)$ for this system. 437
- (d) Use $n_0 = \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon g(\varepsilon) f_0(\varepsilon)$ together with the Fermi function integration formula to determine how the chemical potential ζ depends on T . 438

3.2. In the simple Drude model it is assumed that the probability that an electron has a collision in a time interval dt is given by $\frac{dt}{\tau}$. 440

- (a) Show that an electron picked at random at a given instant had no collision during the past t seconds with probability $e^{-t/\tau}$. Demonstrate that it will have no collision during the next t seconds with the same probability, 441
- (b) Show that the probability that the time interval between two successive collisions falls in the range t to $t + dt$ is $(\frac{dt}{\tau}) e^{-t/\tau}$, 442
- (c) as a consequence of (a), the mean time (at any given instant) back to the last collision (or up to the next collision) averaged over all electrons is τ , 443
- (d) and, as a consequence of (b), the mean time between collisions is τ . 444

3.3. Think about the following argument, and use physical intuition (not formal mathematics) to say why it is wrong. 445

Argument: Both (c) and (d) in Problem 2 cannot be simultaneously correct for the following reason. If I catch a bus each morning to go to work, and the buses arrive at random times except that the average time between buses is 15 min, then (c) would imply that, on the average, I have to wait 15 min. However, if a friend got off each bus at my stop, and then got on the next bus with me, then the average time waited by my friend boarding the bus with me would be 15 min also. Clearly the friend boarding with me is waiting at the bus stop when I arrive. How can it be that we wait the same amount of time? 446

3.4. A metal is described by the conductivity tensor $\sigma_{xx} = \sigma_{yy} = \frac{\sigma_0(1+i\omega\tau)}{(1+i\omega\tau)^2 + (\omega_c\tau)^2}$, $\sigma_{xy} = -\sigma_{yx} = \frac{\sigma_0(-\omega_c\tau)}{(1+i\omega\tau)^2 + (\omega_c\tau)^2}$, and $\sigma_{zz} = \frac{\sigma_0}{1+i\omega\tau}$ in the presence of a dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B} = B\hat{z}$. Consider the propagation of an electromagnetic wave $E_{\pm} = (E_x \pm iE_y)e^{i\omega t}$ parallel to the z -axis. Use Maxwell's equations to obtain the wave equation, and show that $c^2k^2 = \omega^2\varepsilon_{\pm}(\omega)$, where $\underline{\varepsilon} = \underline{1} - \frac{4\pi i}{\omega}\underline{\sigma}(\omega)$. Consider the cases $\omega_c\tau \gg 1$ and $\omega_c \gg \omega$ and show that $\omega = \frac{c^2k^2\omega_c}{\omega_p^2}$ for one circular polarization. 447

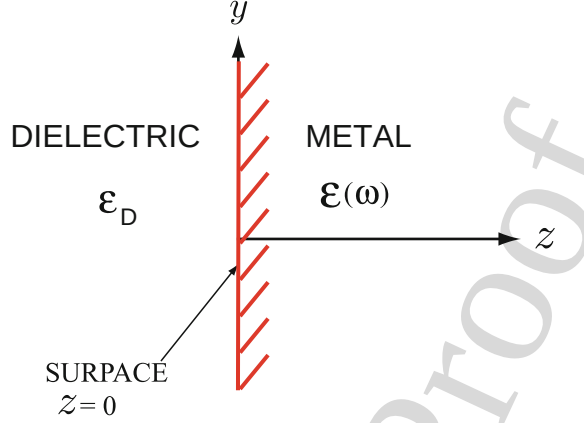


Fig. 3.6. Interface between a dielectric and a metal

3.5. Let us consider the interface between a dielectric of dielectric constant ϵ_D and a metal of dielectric function $\epsilon(\omega) = 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2}$, where $\omega_p^2 = \frac{4\pi ne^2}{m\omega^2}$. It is illustrated in Fig. 3.6.

If the normal to the surface is in the z direction and the wave vector $\mathbf{q} = (0, q_y, q_z)$, consider the region of $\omega - q_y$ space in which q_z is imaginary (i.e. $q_z^2 < 0$) both in the dielectric and in the metal. Impose the appropriate boundary conditions at $z = 0$ and at $|z| \rightarrow \infty$, and determine the dispersion relation (ω as a function of q_y) for these surface plasma modes.

3.6. At a temperature T a semiconductor contains n_e electrons and n_h holes per unit volume in parabolic energy bands (i.e. $E \propto k^2$). The mass, charge, and collision time of the electrons and holes are m_e , $-e$, τ_e , and m_h , e , τ_h , respectively.

- Use the equations of motion of charged particles in the presence of a dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B} = B\hat{z}$ and an ac electric field $\mathbf{E}e^{i\omega t}$ to determine $\underline{\sigma}_e(\omega)$ and $\underline{\sigma}_h(\omega)$, the electron and hole contributions to the frequency dependent magnetoconductivity tensor.
- Consider $\omega_{ce} = \frac{eB}{m_e c}$ and $\omega_{ch} = \frac{eB}{m_h c}$ to be large compared to τ_e^{-1} and τ_h^{-1} , respectively. Determine the Hall coefficient for $\omega = 0$.
- Under the conditions of part (b), determine the magnetoresistance.

Summary

489

In this chapter, first we have briefly reviewed classical kinetic theories of an electron gas both by Drude and by Lorentz as simple models of metals. Then Sommerfeld's elementary quantum mechanical theory of metals is discussed.

In the Drude model, the electrical conductivity $\sigma = \frac{n_0 e^2 \tau}{m}$ is determined by the Newton's law of motion given by

$$m \left(\frac{d\mathbf{v}_D}{dt} + \frac{\mathbf{v}_D}{\tau} \right) = -e\mathbf{E}.$$

Here, $n_0 = \frac{N}{V}$ and $-e$ are the electron concentration and the charge on an electron. The thermal conductivity is given by

$$\kappa = \frac{w}{-\partial T / \partial x} = \frac{1}{3} n_0 v_T^2 \tau \frac{dE}{dT} = \frac{1}{3} v_T^2 \tau C_v,$$

where $C_v = n_0 \frac{dE}{dT}$ is the electronic specific heat.

The electrical current density $\mathbf{j}$ and thermal current density $\mathbf{w}$ are given, in terms of distribution function f , by

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \int (-e)\mathbf{v} f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{v}, t) d^3v \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{w}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \int \varepsilon \mathbf{v} f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{v}, t) d^3v.$$

In the Sommerfeld model, states are labeled by $\{\mathbf{k}, \sigma\} = (k_x, k_y, k_z)$ and σ , where σ is a spin index. The *Fermi energy* $\varepsilon_F (\equiv \Theta_F)$, *Fermi velocity* v_F , and *Fermi temperature* $T_F (= \frac{\Theta_F}{k_B})$ are defined, respectively, by

$$\varepsilon_F = \frac{\hbar^2 k_F^2}{2m} = \frac{1}{2} m v_F^2 = \Theta_F,$$

where the Fermi wave number k_F is related to the carrier concentration n_0 by $k_F^3 = 3\pi^2 n_0$. The density of states of an electron gas is

$$g(\varepsilon) = \frac{1}{2\pi^2} \left(\frac{2m}{\hbar^2} \right)^{3/2} \varepsilon^{1/2}.$$

For electrons moving in a periodic potential, $g(\varepsilon)$ does not have such a simple form. At a finite temperature, the chemical potential ζ is determined from

$$N = V \int_0^\infty g(\varepsilon) f_0(\varepsilon) d\varepsilon.$$

The internal energy U is given by

$$\frac{U}{V} = u = \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon \varepsilon g(\varepsilon) f_0(\varepsilon).$$

These integrals are of the form $I = \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon f_0(\varepsilon) \frac{dF(\varepsilon)}{d\varepsilon}$. At low temperatures, 508
we have, to order Θ^2 , 509

$$I = F(\zeta) + \frac{\pi^2}{6} \Theta^2 F''(\zeta).$$

The electronic heat capacity $C_v = \left(\frac{\partial U}{\partial T}\right)_V$ is given, at low temperature, by 510
 $C_v = \gamma T$, where $\gamma = \frac{\pi^2 k_B^2}{2\zeta_0} N$ for free electrons. 511

The electrical and thermal current densities j_x and w_x are, respectively, 512
written as 513

$$j_x = \left[e^2 E + e\Theta \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{\zeta}{\Theta} \right) \right] \mathcal{K}_1 + \frac{e}{\Theta} \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial x} \mathcal{K}_2$$

and

$$w_x = - \left[eE + \Theta \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{\zeta}{\Theta} \right) \right] \mathcal{K}_2 - \frac{1}{\Theta} \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial x} \mathcal{K}_3.$$

where

$$\mathcal{K}_n = \frac{n_0}{m\zeta_0^{3/2}} \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon \left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \right) \varepsilon^{n+1/2} \tau.$$

The function $\mathcal{K}_n$ is given by

$$\mathcal{K}_n = \frac{n_0}{m\zeta_0^{3/2}} \left[\zeta^{n+1/2} \tau(\zeta) + \frac{\pi^2}{6} \Theta^2 \frac{d^2}{d\varepsilon^2} \left(\varepsilon^{n+1/2} \tau(\varepsilon) \right) \Big|_{\varepsilon=\zeta} \right].$$

The electrical and thermal conductivities are given, in terms of $\mathcal{K}_1$, by $\sigma = e\mathcal{K}_1$ 517
and $\kappa_T = k_B \frac{\mathcal{K}_3 \mathcal{K}_1 - \mathcal{K}_2^2}{\mathcal{K}_1 \Theta}$. The Sommerfeld expression for κ_T is $\kappa_T = \frac{\pi^2}{3} k_B^2 \frac{n_0 \tau}{m} T$. 518

In the presence of an electric field $\mathbf{E}$ and a dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$, the mag- 519
netoconductivity tensor has nonzero components, for the case $\mathbf{B}$ along the 520
 z -axis, as follows: $\sigma_{xx} = \sigma_{yy} = \frac{\sigma_0(1+i\omega\tau)}{(1+i\omega\tau)^2 + (\omega_c\tau)^2}$, $\sigma_{xy} = -\sigma_{yx} = \frac{\sigma_0(-\omega_c\tau)}{(1+i\omega\tau)^2 + (\omega_c\tau)^2}$, 521

$\sigma_{zz} = \frac{\sigma_0}{1+i\omega\tau}$. Here $\omega_c = \frac{eB}{mc}$ and $\sigma_0 = \frac{n_0 e^2 \tau}{m}$ is just the Drude's dc conductivity. 522

The electrical current density $\mathbf{j}$ can be thought of as the time rate of change 523
of the polarization $\mathbf{P}$, that is, $\mathbf{j} = \dot{\mathbf{P}} = i\omega\mathbf{P}$, where $\mathbf{P} = \frac{\varepsilon-1}{4\pi}\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{D}$, $\mathbf{P}$, and 524
 $\mathbf{E}$ are assumed to vary as $e^{i\omega t}$. Hence, we have the relation 525

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = 1 - \frac{4\pi i}{\omega} \sigma(\omega).$$

$\varepsilon(\omega)$ has real and imaginary parts, ε_1 and ε_2 , respectively, and in the Drude 526
model, we have $\varepsilon_1(\omega) = 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2 + 1/\tau^2}$ and $\varepsilon_2(\omega) = -\frac{\omega_p^2/\omega\tau}{\omega^2 + 1/\tau^2}$. The two Maxwell 527
equations $\nabla \times \mathbf{E} = -\frac{1}{c} \dot{\mathbf{B}}$ and $\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \frac{1}{c} \dot{\mathbf{E}}$ can be combined to obtain the 528
wave equation 529

$$\mathbf{q}(\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{E}) - q^2 \mathbf{E} + \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \underline{\varepsilon} \cdot \mathbf{E} = 0.$$

4	1
Elements of Band Theory	2

4.1 Energy Band Formation 3

So far, we have completely neglected the effects of the ion cores on the motion of the valence electrons. We consider “valence electrons” to be those outside of a closed shell configuration, so that

1. Na has a single $3s$ valence electron outside a [Ne] core. 7
2. Mg has two $3s$ electrons outside a [Ne] core. 8
3. Ga has ten $3d$ electrons, two $4s$ electrons, and one $3p$ electrons outside an [Ar] core. 9

The s and p electrons are usually considered as the “valence” electrons, since they are responsible for “bonding”. Sometimes the mixing of d -electron atomic states with “valence” electron states is important.

To get some idea about the potential due to the ion cores let’s consider the simple case of an isolated Na^+ ion. This ion has charge $+e$ and attracts an electron via the Coulomb potential. (See Fig. 4.1.)

$$V(r) = -\frac{e^2}{r} \quad \text{if } r > \text{ion radius.} \quad (4.1)$$

For a pair of Na atoms separated by a large distance, each “conduction electron” ($3s$ -electron in Na) has a well-defined atomic energy level. As the two atoms are brought closer together, the atomic potentials $V(r)$ begin to overlap. Then, each electron can feel the potential of both ions. This gives rise a splitting of the degeneracy of atomic levels.

For a large number of atoms, the same effect occur. Think of a crystal structure with a nearest neighbor separation of 1 cm. The energy levels of the system will be atomic in character. However, as we decrease the nearest neighbor separation the atomic energy levels will begin to broaden into bands. (See Fig. 4.2.) The equilibrium separation of the crystal is the position at which the total energy of the system is a minimum. In all crystalline solids the

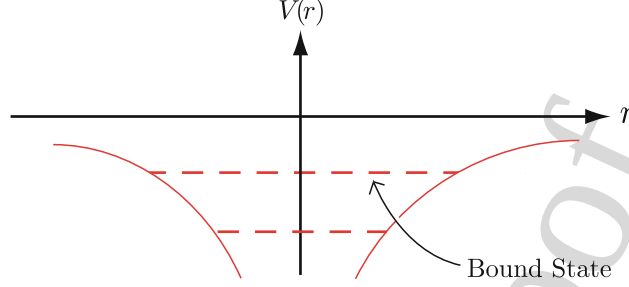


Fig. 4.1. Coulomb potential

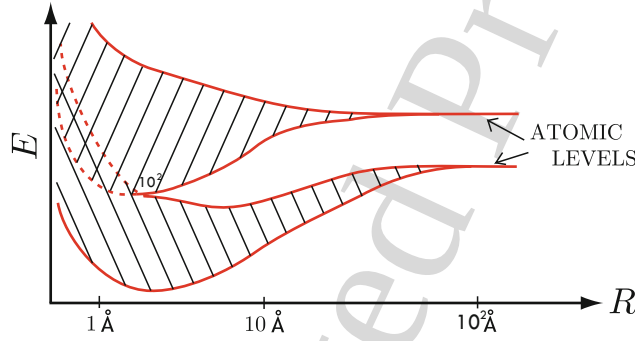


Fig. 4.2. Schematic illustration of energy band formation

electronic energies form bands of allowed energy values separated by energy
gaps (bands of forbidden energy values). These energy bands determine the
electrical properties of the solid.

4.2 Translation Operator

Because the crystalline potential seen by a single electron in a solid is a peri-
odic function of position, with the period of the lattice, it is useful to introduce
a translation operator T defined by

$$Tf(x) = f(x + a), \quad (4.2)$$

where $f(x)$ is an arbitrary function of position and a is the period of the
lattice. It is clear that T commutes with the single particle Hamiltonian H

$$H = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + V(x), \quad (4.3)$$

because if we let $x' = x + a$, we can see that $\partial/\partial x' = \partial/\partial x$ and $V(x') = V(x)$.

4.3 Bloch's Theorem 111

One of the most useful theorems of linear algebra for the study of quantum systems states that if two operators commute, one can find common eigenfunctions for them (i.e, they can both be diagonal in the same representation). Let Ψ be an eigenfunction of H and of T

$$H\Psi = E\Psi \quad \text{and} \quad T\Psi = \lambda\Psi. \quad (4.4)$$

Here, E and λ are eigenvalues. Clearly applying T to Ψ N times gives

$$T^N\Psi(x) = \lambda^N\Psi(x) = \Psi(x + Na). \quad (4.5)$$

If we apply periodic boundary conditions with period N , then $\Psi(x + Na) = \Psi(x)$. This implies that

$$T^N\Psi(x) = \Psi(x), \quad (4.6)$$

or that $\lambda^N = 1$. Thus, λ itself must be the N th root of unity

$$\lambda = e^{i\frac{2\pi}{N}n}, \quad (4.7)$$

where $n = 0, \pm 1, \dots$. We can write λ as

$$\lambda = e^{ika}, \quad (4.8)$$

where $k = \frac{2\pi}{Na} \times n$. Then, it is apparent that two values of k which differ by $2\pi/a$ times an integer give identical values of λ . As usual, we choose the N independent values of k to lie in the range $-\pi/a < k \leq \pi/a$, the first Brillouin zone of a one dimensional crystal.

For more than one dimension, $T_{\mathbf{R}}$ translates through a lattice vector $\mathbf{R}$

$$T_{\mathbf{R}}\Psi(r) = e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{R}}\Psi(r), \quad (4.9)$$

where $\mathbf{k} = \frac{2\pi}{N}(n_1\mathbf{b}_1 + n_2\mathbf{b}_2 + n_3\mathbf{b}_3)$. Here n_1, n_2, n_3 are integers and $\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2, \mathbf{b}_3$ are primitive translations of the reciprocal lattice. We have assumed a period N for periodic boundary condition with $L_1 = N\mathbf{a}_1, L_2 = N\mathbf{a}_2, L_3 = N\mathbf{a}_3$, and values of n_1, n_2, n_3 are chosen to restrict k to the first Brillouin zone.

4.3 Bloch's Theorem 57

We have just demonstrated that for a one-dimensional crystal with N -atoms and periodic boundary conditions

$$T\Psi(x) \equiv \Psi(x + a) = e^{ika}\Psi(x), \quad (4.10)$$

where the N independent values of k are restricted to the first Brillouin zone. We can define a function

$$u_k(x) = e^{-ikx}\Psi(x). \quad (4.11)$$

It is apparent that

$$Tu_k(x) = T\{e^{-ikx}\Psi(x)\} = e^{-ik(x+a)}\Psi(x+a) = e^{-ikx}\Psi(x) = u_k(x).$$

Therefore, we can write

$$\Psi(x) = e^{ikx}u_k(x), \quad (4.12)$$

where $u_k(x)$ is a periodic function i.e. $u_k(x+a) = u_k(x)$. This is known to physicists as Bloch's theorem, although it had been proven sometime earlier than Bloch¹ and is known to mathematicians as Floquet's theorem.

4.4 Calculation of Energy Bands

There are two very different starting points from which one can approach energy bands in solids. The first approach is to start with atomic orbitals to form linear combinations which satisfy Bloch's theorem. The second is to start with a Sommerfeld free electron gas picture (for the electrons outside a closed shell core) and to see how the periodic potential of ions changes the $\varepsilon_k = \hbar^2 k^2 / 2m$ free electron dispersion. The first approach works well for systems of rather tightly bound electrons, while the second works well for weakly bound electrons. We will spend a good deal of time on the "nearly free electron" model and how group theory helps to make the calculations easier. Before doing that, we begin with the first approach called the "tight-binding method" or the LCAO (linear combination of atomic orbitals).

4.4.1 Tight-Binding Method

Suppose that a free atom has a potential $V_a(r)$, so that a "conduction electron," like the 3s electron in sodium, satisfies the Schrödinger equation

$$\left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla^2 + V_a(r) - E_a\right)\phi(r) = 0. \quad (4.13)$$

Here, E_a is the atomic energy level of this conduction electron. When atoms form a crystal, the potentials of the individual atoms overlap, as indicated schematically in Fig. 4.3.

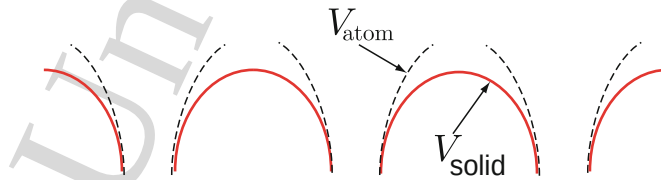


Fig. 4.3. Tight-Binding Potential

¹ Felix Bloch, Z. Physik **52**, 555 (1928).

4.4 Calculation of Energy Bands 113

In the tight-binding approximation, one assumes that the electron in the unit cell about R_j is only slightly influenced by atoms other than the one located at R_j . Its wave function in that cell will be close to $\phi(r - R_j)$, the atomic wave function, and its energy close to E_a . One can make a linear combination of atomic orbitals $\phi(r - R_j)$ as a trial function for the electronic wave function in the solid.

To satisfy Bloch's theorem, we can write

$$\Psi_k(r) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_j e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{R}_j} \phi(r - R_j). \quad (4.14)$$

Clearly, the translation operator operating on $\Psi_k(r)$ gives

$$\begin{aligned} T_{R_n} \Psi_k(r) &= \Psi_k(r + R_n) \\ &= e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{R}_n} \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_j e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot (\mathbf{R}_j - \mathbf{R}_n)} \phi(r - R_j + R_n) = e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{R}_n} \Psi_k(r). \end{aligned}$$

The energy of a state $\Psi_k(r)$ is given by

$$E_k = \frac{\langle \Psi_k | H | \Psi_k \rangle}{\langle \Psi_k | \Psi_k \rangle}, \quad (4.15)$$

where H is the Hamiltonian for an electron in the crystal, and

$$\langle \Psi_k | \Psi_k \rangle = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{j,m} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot (\mathbf{R}_j - \mathbf{R}_m)} \int d^3r \phi^*(r - R_m) \phi(r - R_j). \quad (4.16)$$

If we neglect overlap between $\phi(r - R_j)$ and $\phi(r - R_m)$, the d^3r integration gives $\delta_{j,m}$ and the sum over j simply gives a factor N , the number of atoms in the crystal.

The Hamiltonian for an electron in the solid contains the potential $V(r)$. Let's write

$$V(r) = \tilde{V}(r - R_j) + V_a(r - R_j). \quad (4.17)$$

In other words, $\tilde{V}(r - R_j)$ is the full potential of the solid minus the potential of an atom located at R_j . It's clear from Fig. 4.3 that V_a is larger than $V(r)$ in the cell containing R_j so that $\tilde{V}(r - R_j)$ is negative. Since

$$\left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 + V_a(r - R_j) - E_a \right] \phi(r - R_j) = 0, \quad (4.18)$$

$$E_k = \frac{1}{N} \sum_j \sum_m e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot (\mathbf{R}_j - \mathbf{R}_m)} \int d^3r \phi^*(r - R_m) \left[E_a + \tilde{V}(r - R_j) \right] \phi(r - R_j). \quad (4.19)$$

In the first term, E_a is the constant value of the atomic energy level and it can be taken out of the integration. All that remains in the integral is $\langle \Psi_k | \Psi_k \rangle$ which is 1, so the first term is just E_a . We can define

$$\alpha = - \int d^3r \phi^*(r - R_j) \tilde{V}(r - R_j) \phi(r - R_j), \quad (4.20)$$

and

$$\gamma = - \int d^3r \phi^*(r - R_m) \tilde{V}(r - R_j) \phi(r - R_j). \quad (4.21)$$

In the definition of γ we assume that the only terms that are not negligible are terms in which R_m is a nearest neighbor of R_j . Then, we have

$$E_k = E_a - \alpha - \gamma \sum'_m e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot (\mathbf{R}_j - \mathbf{R}_m)} \quad (4.22)$$

where the sum is over all nearest neighbors of $\mathbf{R}_j$. We chose minus signs in the definition of α and γ to make α and γ positive (since $\tilde{V}(r - R_j)$ is negative).

Now look at what happens for a simple cubic lattice. There are six nearest neighbors of $\mathbf{R}_j$ located at $\mathbf{R}_j \pm a\hat{x}$, $\mathbf{R}_j \pm a\hat{y}$, and $\mathbf{R}_j \pm a\hat{z}$. Substituting into (4.22) gives

$$E_k = E_a - \alpha - 2\gamma (\cos k_x a + \cos k_y a + \cos k_z a). \quad (4.23)$$

Because γ is positive

$$E_k^{\text{Min}} = E_a - \alpha - 6\gamma, \quad (4.24)$$

and

$$E_k^{\text{Max}} = E_a - \alpha + 6\gamma. \quad (4.25)$$

The result is sketched in Fig. 4.4.

For $k \ll \pi/a$

$$\begin{aligned} E_k &\simeq E_a - \alpha - 6\gamma + \gamma a^2 k^2; \quad k^2 = k_x^2 + k_y^2 + k_z^2 \\ &= E_k^{\text{Min}} + \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m^*}. \end{aligned}$$

The effective mass $m^* = \frac{\hbar^2}{2\gamma a^2}$. As γ decreases, the band width ΔE gets smaller and the effective mass near $E = E_k^{\text{Min}}$ increases.

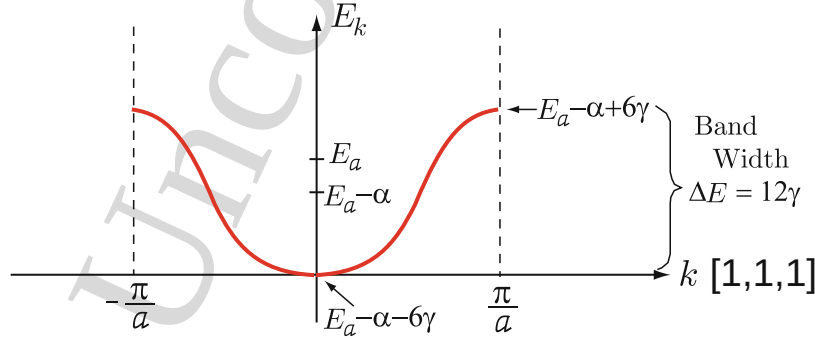


Fig. 4.4. Tight-binding dispersion for simple cubic lattice

4.4.2 Tight Binding in Second Quantization Representation 124

Suppose a system of free electrons is described by the Hamiltonian 125

$$H_0 = \sum_k \varepsilon_k c_k^\dagger c_k, \quad (4.26)$$

where $\varepsilon_k = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m}$ is the kinetic energy. In the presence of a periodic potential 126
 $V(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mathbf{K}} V_{\mathbf{K}} e^{i\mathbf{K} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$, we can write the potential energy of the electrons as 127

$$H' = \sum_{k, K} V_K c_{k+K}^\dagger c_k. \quad (4.27)$$

Now, introduce the operators c_n and $c_n^\dagger$ which annihilate or create electrons 128
 at site R_n^0 . 129

$$c_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_k c_k e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{R}_n^0}. \quad (4.28)$$

The inverse transformation is 130

$$c_k = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_n c_n e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{R}_n^0}. \quad (4.29)$$

Substitute the latter equation into H_0 to obtain 131

$$H_0 = \sum_k \varepsilon_k \sum_{nm} \frac{1}{N} c_n^\dagger c_m e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot (\mathbf{R}_n^0 - \mathbf{R}_m^0)}. \quad (4.30)$$

Define 132

$$T_{nm} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_k \varepsilon_k e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot (\mathbf{R}_n^0 - \mathbf{R}_m^0)}. \quad (4.31)$$

Then 133

$$H_0 = \sum_{nm} T_{nm} c_n^\dagger c_m. \quad (4.32)$$

Now, look at H' 134

$$\begin{aligned} H' &= \sum_{\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{K}} V_K \frac{1}{N} \sum_{nm} c_n^\dagger e^{i(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}) \cdot \mathbf{R}_n^0} c_m e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{R}_m^0} \\ &= \sum_{\mathbf{K}, nm} \left[\sum_k \frac{1}{N} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot (\mathbf{R}_n^0 - \mathbf{R}_m^0)} \right] V_K e^{i\mathbf{K} \cdot \mathbf{R}_n^0} c_n^\dagger c_m. \end{aligned}$$

Since $\frac{1}{N} \sum_k e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot (\mathbf{R}_n^0 - \mathbf{R}_m^0)} = \delta_{nm}$, we have 135

$$H' = \sum_{\mathbf{K}, n} V_K e^{i\mathbf{K} \cdot \mathbf{R}_n^0} c_n^\dagger c_n. \quad (4.33)$$

116 4 Elements of Band Theory

But we note that $\sum_K V_K e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{R}_n^0} = V(R_n^0)$, and hence H' becomes 136

$$H' = \sum_n V(R_n^0) c_n^\dagger c_n. \quad (4.34)$$

Adding H_0 and H' gives 137

$$\begin{aligned} H &= \sum_n (T_{nn} + V(R_n^0)) c_n^\dagger c_n + \sum_{n \neq m} T_{nm} c_n^\dagger c_m \\ &= \sum_n \varepsilon_n c_n^\dagger c_n + \sum_{n \neq m} T_{nm} c_n^\dagger c_m, \end{aligned} \quad (4.35) \quad 138$$

where $\varepsilon_n = T_{nn} + V(R_n^0)$ represents an energy on site n and T_{nm} denotes the 139
amplitude of hopping from site m to site n . Starting with atomic levels ε_n and 140
allowing hopping to neighboring sites results in energy bands, and the band 141
width depends on the hopping amplitude T_{nm} . Later we will see that starting 142
with free electrons and adding a periodic potential $V(r) = \sum_K V_K e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{r}}$ also 143
results in energy bands. The band gaps between bands depend on the Fourier 144
components V_K of the periodic potential. 145

4.5 Periodic Potential 146

Because the potential experienced by an electron is periodic with the period 147
of the lattice, it can be expanded in a Fourier series 148

$$V(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mathbf{K}} V_{\mathbf{K}} e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{r}}, \quad (4.36)$$

where the sum is over all vectors $\mathbf{K}$ of the reciprocal lattice, and 149

$$V_{\mathbf{K}} = \frac{1}{\Omega} \int d^3r V(\mathbf{r}) e^{-i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{r}}.$$

For any reciprocal lattice vector $\mathbf{K}$ 150

$$\mathbf{K} \cdot \mathbf{R} = 2\pi \times \text{integer},$$

if $\mathbf{R}$ is any translation vector of the lattice. Thus 151

$$\begin{aligned} V(\mathbf{r} + \mathbf{R}) &= \sum_{\mathbf{K}} V_{\mathbf{K}} e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot(\mathbf{r}+\mathbf{R})}, \\ &= \sum_{\mathbf{K}} V_{\mathbf{K}} e^{i\mathbf{K}\cdot\mathbf{r}} = V(\mathbf{r}). \end{aligned}$$

The periodic part of the Bloch function can also be expanded in Fourier series. 152
We can write 153

$$u_n(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mathbf{K}} C_{\mathbf{K}}(n, \mathbf{k}) e^{i\mathbf{K} \cdot \mathbf{r}}, \quad (4.37)$$

For the moment, let us omit the band index n and wave number $\mathbf{k}$ and simply write

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r}) = e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} u(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mathbf{K}} C_{\mathbf{K}} e^{i(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}) \cdot \mathbf{r}}. \quad (4.38)$$

Use the Fourier expansion of $V(\mathbf{r})$ and $u(\mathbf{r})$ in the Schrödinger equation; this gives

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{\mathbf{K}'} \left[\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} (\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}')^2 + \sum_{\mathbf{K}''} V_{\mathbf{K}''} e^{i\mathbf{K}'' \cdot \mathbf{r}} \right] C_{\mathbf{K}'} e^{i(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}') \cdot \mathbf{r}} \\ = E \sum_{\mathbf{K}'} C_{\mathbf{K}'} e^{i(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}') \cdot \mathbf{r}}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.39)$$

We multiply by $e^{-i(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}) \cdot \mathbf{r}}$ and integrate recalling that $\int d^3r e^{i\mathbf{K} \cdot \mathbf{r}} = \Omega \delta(\mathbf{K})$ where Ω is the volume. This gives

$$\left[E - V_0 - \frac{\hbar^2}{2m} (\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K})^2 \right] C_{\mathbf{K}} = \sum_{\mathbf{H} \neq 0} V_{\mathbf{H}} C_{\mathbf{K} - \mathbf{H}} \quad (4.40)$$

Here, we have set $\mathbf{K}'' = \mathbf{H}$ and have separated the $\mathbf{H} = 0$ term from the other terms in the potential. This is an infinite set of linear equations for the coefficients $C_{\mathbf{K}}$. The non-trivial solutions are obtained by setting the determinant of the matrix multiplying the column vector

$$\begin{pmatrix} \vdots \\ C_{\mathbf{K}} \\ \vdots \end{pmatrix}$$

equal to zero. The roots give the energy levels (an infinite number – one for each value of $\mathbf{K}$) in the periodic potential of a crystal. We can express the infinite set of linear equations in the following matrix notation:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{K}_1} + \langle \mathbf{K}_1 | V | \mathbf{K}_1 \rangle & \langle \mathbf{K}_1 | V | \mathbf{K}_2 \rangle \cdots & \langle \mathbf{K}_1 | V | \mathbf{K}_n \rangle \cdots \\ \langle \mathbf{K}_2 | V | \mathbf{K}_1 \rangle & \varepsilon_{\mathbf{K}_2} + \langle \mathbf{K}_2 | V | \mathbf{K}_2 \rangle & \langle \mathbf{K}_2 | V | \mathbf{K}_n \rangle \cdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \langle \mathbf{K}_n | V | \mathbf{K}_1 \rangle & \langle \mathbf{K}_n | V | \mathbf{K}_2 \rangle \cdots & \varepsilon_{\mathbf{K}_n} + \langle \mathbf{K}_n | V | \mathbf{K}_n \rangle \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} C_{\mathbf{K}_1} \\ C_{\mathbf{K}_2} \\ \vdots \\ C_{\mathbf{K}_n} \\ \vdots \end{pmatrix} = 0 \quad (4.41)$$

Here, $\varepsilon_{\mathbf{K}} = \frac{\hbar^2}{2m} (\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K})^2$ and $\langle \mathbf{K} | V | \mathbf{K}' \rangle = V_{\mathbf{K} - \mathbf{K}'}$, where $|\mathbf{K}\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\Omega}} e^{i\mathbf{K} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$. The object of energy band theory is to obtain a good approximation to $V(r)$ and to solve this infinite set of equations in an approximate way.

4.6 Free Electron Model

If $V_{\mathbf{K}} = 0$ for all $\mathbf{K} \neq 0$, then in the notation used earlier

$$(E - V_0 - \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{K}}) C_{\mathbf{K}} = 0. \quad (4.42)$$

This is exactly the Sommerfeld model of free electrons in a constant potential V_0 . We can write

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\mathbf{K}}^{(0)} &= V_0 + \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{K}} \\ C_{\mathbf{K}}^{(0)} &= \begin{cases} 1 & \text{For the band } \mathbf{K} \\ 0 & \text{For all other bands} \end{cases} \end{aligned} \quad (4.43)$$

Let us discuss this in detail by considering a simple one-dimensional case, for example, as shown in Fig. 4.5. The allowed values of the Bloch wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ are restricted to the first Brillouin zone. Values of $\mathbf{k}$ outside the first Brillouin zone are obtained by adding a reciprocal lattice vector $\mathbf{K}$ to $\mathbf{k}$. The labels C_n refer to the non-zero coefficients for that particular band; e.g. for C_{+2} we have

$$\left. \begin{aligned} E_2^{(0)} &= V_0 + \frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \left[k + 2 \left(\frac{2\pi}{a} \right) \right]^2 \\ \Psi_{n\mathbf{k}}^{(0)}(\mathbf{r}) &= e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} u_{n\mathbf{k}}^{(0)}(\mathbf{r}). \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (4.44)$$

But $u_{n\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mathbf{K}} C_{\mathbf{K}}(\mathbf{k}) e^{i\mathbf{K} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$; with $C_{\mathbf{K}}^{(0)}(\mathbf{k}) = 1$ for $|\mathbf{K}| = K_n = \left(\frac{2\pi}{a}\right) \cdot n$, we have $\Psi_{n\mathbf{k}}^{(0)}(\mathbf{r}) = e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \cdot e^{i\mathbf{K}_n \cdot \mathbf{r}}$. All of this is simply a restatement of the free electron model in the “reduced” zone scheme (i.e. all Bloch $\mathbf{k}$ -vectors are in the first Brillouin zone, but energies of higher bands are obtained by adding reciprocal lattice vectors $\mathbf{K}$ to $\mathbf{k}$; the periodic part of the Bloch function is $u_K = e^{i\mathbf{K} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$).

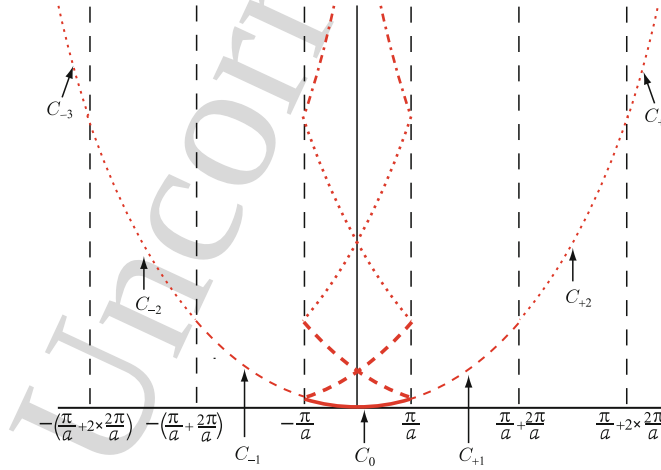


Fig. 4.5. One dimensional free electron band

4.7 Nearly Free Electron Model

187

If we take $V_{\mathbf{K}}$ for $|\mathbf{K}| \neq 0$ to be very small but non-zero, we can use “perturbation theory” to solve the infinite set of coupled equations approximately.

For the lowest band (the one with $C_0^{(0)} = 1$) we know that in zeroth order (i.e. with $V_{\mathbf{K}} = 0$ for $|\mathbf{K}| \neq 0$)

$$\begin{aligned} E^{(0)} &= V_0 + \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m}, \\ C_0^{(0)} &= 1 \quad \text{and} \quad C_{\mathbf{K}}^{(0)} = 0 \quad \text{for} \quad |\mathbf{K}| \neq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Let us look at other values of $C_{\mathbf{K}}$ (i.e. not $|\mathbf{K}| = 0$ value) for $V_{\mathbf{K}} \neq 0$ (but very small) when $|\mathbf{K}| \neq 0$. The first order correction to $C_{\mathbf{K}}^{(0)}$ is given by

$$\left[E - V_0 - \frac{\hbar^2}{2m}(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K})^2 \right] C_{\mathbf{K}}^{(1)} = \sum_{|\mathbf{H}| \neq 0} C_{\mathbf{K}-\mathbf{H}} V_{|\mathbf{H}|}. \quad (4.45)$$

On the right-hand side all the $V_{|\mathbf{H}|}$ appearing are small; therefore to first order we can use for $C_{\mathbf{K}-\mathbf{H}}$ the value $C_{\mathbf{K}-\mathbf{H}}^{(0)}$ which equals unity for $\mathbf{K} - \mathbf{H} = 0$ and zero otherwise. Solving for $C_{\mathbf{K}}^{(1)}$ gives

$$C_{\mathbf{K}}^{(1)} = \frac{V_{\mathbf{K}}}{\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}[k^2 - (\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K})^2]} \quad (4.46)$$

Here, we have used $E \simeq \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} + V_0$ for the zeroth order approximation to the energy of the lowest band (the one we are investigating). We substitute this result back into the equation for C_0 , which is approximately equal to unity.

$$\left(E - V_0 - \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} \right) C_0 \simeq \sum_{|\mathbf{H}| \neq 0} C_{0-\mathbf{H}} V_{\mathbf{H}} = \frac{V_{-\mathbf{H}} V_{\mathbf{H}}}{\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}[k^2 - (\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{H})^2]} \quad (4.47)$$

$C_0 = 1 + C_0^{(1)}$, but $C_0^{(1)}$ can be neglected since the right-hand side is already small. Setting $C_0 \simeq 1$ and solving for E gives

$$E = V_{000} + \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} - \sum_{|\mathbf{K}| \neq 0} \frac{|V_{\mathbf{K}}|^2}{\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{K}} - \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}} \quad (4.48)$$

In this equation, we have used $V_{-\mathbf{H}} = V_{\mathbf{H}}^*$ and let $-\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{K}$. As long as $|\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{K}} - \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}| \gg |V_{\mathbf{K}}|$, this perturbation expansion is rather good. It clearly breaks down when

$$\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{K}} = \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}$$

or

$$|\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}| = |\mathbf{k}|.$$

This is exactly the condition for a Bragg reflection; when $\mathbf{k}' - \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{K}$ we get Bragg reflection.

4.7.1 Degenerate Perturbation Theory

209

Suppose that for some particular reciprocal lattice vector $\mathbf{K}$

210

$$|\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}| \simeq |\mathbf{k}| \quad (4.49)$$

Our simple perturbation theory result gave

211

$$C_{\mathbf{K}}^{(1)} = \frac{V_{\mathbf{K}}}{\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} - \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{K}}}.$$

It is clear that this result is inconsistent with our starting assumption that $C_{\mathbf{K}}$ was very small except for $\mathbf{K} = 0$. To remedy this shortcoming we assume that both C_0 and $C_{\mathbf{K}}$ (for the particular value satisfying $|\mathbf{k}| = |\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}|$) are important. This assumption gives us a pair of equations

212

213

214

215

$$\begin{aligned} (E - V_0 - \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}) C_0 &= C_{\mathbf{K}} V_{-\mathbf{K}} \\ (E - V_0 - \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{K}}) C_{\mathbf{K}} &= C_0 V_{\mathbf{K}}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.50)$$

The solutions are obtained by setting the determinant of the matrix multiplying the column vector $\begin{pmatrix} C_0 \\ C_{\mathbf{K}} \end{pmatrix}$ equal to zero. The two roots are given by

216

217

218

$$E_{\pm}(k) = V_0 + \frac{1}{2}[\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} + \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{K}}] \pm \left\{ |V_{\mathbf{K}}|^2 + \left(\frac{\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} - \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{K}}}{2} \right)^2 \right\}^{1/2} \quad (4.51)$$

For $|\mathbf{k}| = |\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}|$, $\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} - \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{K}} = 0$ and the solutions become

219

$$E_{\pm}(k) = V_0 + \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} \pm |V_{\mathbf{K}}| \quad (4.52)$$

220

This behavior is shown in Fig. 4.6. If we introduce $\mathbf{q} = \frac{\mathbf{K}}{2} + \mathbf{k}$, where $q \ll \frac{K}{2}$, we can expand the roots for small q and obtain

221

222

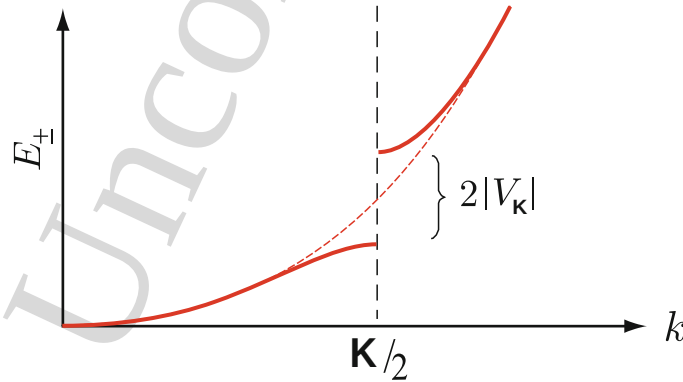


Fig. 4.6. Bandgap formation at the zone boundary $\mathbf{k} = \frac{\mathbf{K}}{2}$

4.8 Metals–Semimetals–Semiconductors–Insulators 121

$$E_{\pm} = V_0 + \varepsilon_{\frac{\mathbf{K}}{2}} + \varepsilon_q \pm |V_{\mathbf{K}}| \left\{ 1 + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\varepsilon_{\mathbf{K}}}{|V_{\mathbf{K}}|^2} \varepsilon_q \right\}.$$

If we define

$$E_0 = V_0 + \varepsilon_{\frac{\mathbf{K}}{2}} - |V_{\mathbf{K}}|,$$

and choose zero of energy at E_0 , the two roots can be written (for small q)

$$\begin{aligned} E_- &= \frac{\hbar^2 q^2}{2m_-^*} \\ E_+ &= E_G + \frac{\hbar^2 q^2}{2m_+^*}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.53)$$

Here, the energy gap E_G is equal to $2|V_{\mathbf{K}}|$ and the *effective masses* $m_{\pm}^*$ are given by

$$m_{\pm}^* = \frac{m}{1 \mp \frac{\varepsilon_{\mathbf{K}}}{2|V_{\mathbf{K}}|}}. \quad (4.54)$$

It is common for $\varepsilon_{\mathbf{K}}$ to be larger than $2|V_{\mathbf{K}}|$ so that m_-^* is negative. Then the two roots are commonly expressed as

$$\begin{aligned} E_v(k) &= -\frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m_v}, \\ E_c(k) &= E_G + \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m_c}, \end{aligned}$$

where $m_v = -m_-^*$. These results are frequently used to describe the valence band and conduction band in semiconductors. The results are only valid near $q = 0$ since we expanded the original equations for small deviations q from the extrema. This result is called the *effective mass approximation*.

4.8 Metals–Semimetals–Semiconductors–Insulators

The very simple Bloch picture of energy bands and energy gaps allows us to understand in a qualitative way why some crystals are metallic, some insulating, and some in between. For a one-dimensional crystal there will be a gap separating every band (assuming that V_K is non-zero for all values of K). We know that the gaps occur when $|\mathbf{k}| = |\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}|$. This defines the first Brillouin zone's boundaries.

In more than one dimension, the highest energy levels in a lower band can exceed the energy at the bottom of a higher band. This is referred to as band overlap. It is illustrated for a two-dimensional square lattice in Fig. 4.7. The square represents the first Brillouin zone bounded by $|k_x| = \pi/a$ and $|k_y| = \pi/a$. The point Γ indicates the zone center of $\mathbf{k} = 0$. The points $X = (\frac{\pi}{a}, 0)$ and $M = (\frac{\pi}{a}, \frac{\pi}{a})$ are particular $\mathbf{k}$ -values lying on the zone boundary. The Δ and Σ are arbitrary points on the lines connecting $\Gamma \rightarrow X$ and $\Gamma \rightarrow M$, respectively. If we plot the energy along these lines, we obtain the result illustrated in Fig. 4.8. It is clear that if the gaps are not too large, the maximum energy in

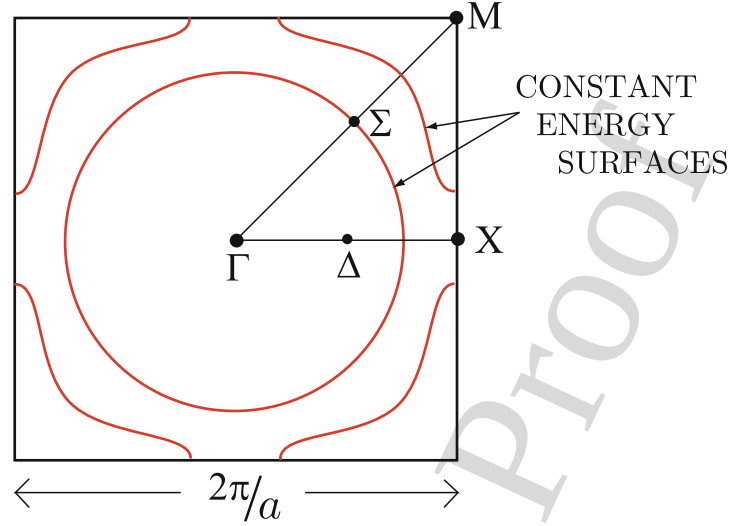


Fig. 4.7. Constant energy surface in two-dimensional square lattice

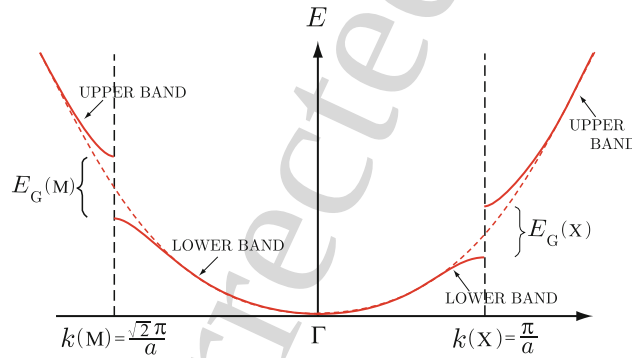


Fig. 4.8. Energy dispersion along the line M - Γ - X

the lower band $E_{LB}(M)$ is higher than the minimum energy in the upper band $E_{UB}(X)$. If we fill all the lowest energy states with electrons, being mindful of the exclusion principle, then it is clear that there will be some empty states in the lower band as we begin to fill the low-energy states of the upper band. The band overlap can be large (when the energy gaps are very small) or non-existent (when the energy gaps are very large).

The existence of

1. Band gaps in the energy spectrum at Brillouin zone boundaries
2. Band overlap in more than one dimension when energy gaps are small and
3. The Pauli exclusion principle allows us to classify solids as follows:

- Metal 260
 1. *Monovalent metal.* A material which contains one electron (outside a 261
closed core) on each atom and one atom per unit cell. Na, K, Rb, Cs 262
are good examples of monovalent metals. Because the total number of 263
allowed $\mathbf{k}$ values in the first Brillouin zone is equal to N , the number 264
of unit cells in the crystal, and because each $\mathbf{k}$ -state can accommodate 265
one spin up and one spin down electron, each band can accommodate 266
 $2N$ electrons. A monovalent metal has N electrons, so the conduction 267
band will be half filled. The Fermi energy is far (in comparison to 268
 $k_B T$) from the band edges and band gaps. Therefore, the crystal acts 269
very much like a Sommerfeld free electron model. The same picture 270
holds for any odd valency solid containing 1, 3, 5, ... electrons per 271
unit cell. 272
 2. Even-valency metals When the band gaps are very small, there can be 273
a very large overlap between neighboring bands. The resultant solid 274
will have a large number n_h of empty states in the lower band and 275
an equal number n_e ($n_e = n_h$) of electrons in the higher band. If n_e 276
and n_h are of the order of N , the number of unit cells, the material is 277
metallic. 278
- *Insulator.* For a material with an even number of electrons per unit cell 279
and a large gap ($\geq 4\text{eV}$) between the highest filled state and the lowest 280
empty state, an insulating crystal results. The application of a modest 281
electric field cannot alter the electron distribution function because to do 282
so would require a large energy E_G . 283
- *Semiconductor.* A material which is insulating at low temperature, but 284
whose band gap E_G is small ($0.1\text{eV} \leq E_G \leq 2\text{eV}$) is called a semiconduc- 285
tor. At finite temperature a few electrons will be excited from the filled 286
valence band to the empty conduction band. These electrons and holes 287
(empty states in the valence band) can carry current. Because the con- 288
centration of electrons in the conduction band varies like $e^{-E_G/2k_B T}$, the 289
conductivity increases with increasing temperature. 290
- *Semimetal.* These materials are even-valency materials with small band 291
overlap. The number of electrons n_e equals the number of holes n_h but 292
both are small compared to N , the number of unit cells in the crystal. 293
Typically n_e and n_h might be 10^{-3} or 10^{-4} times the number of unit 294
cells. 295

Examples 296

Monovalent metals	Li, Na, K, Rb, Cs, Cu, Ag, Au	297
Divalent metals	Zn, Cd, Ca, Mg, Ba	298
Polyvalent metals	Al, Ga, In, Tl	299
Semimetals	As, Sb, Bi, Sn, graphite	300
Insulators	Al_2O_3 , diamond	301
Semiconductors	Ge, Si, InSb, GaAs, AlSb, InAs, InP	302

Problems

303

4.1. In an infinite linear chain of A and B atoms (...ABABAB...) with equal spacings R between each atom, the energies of electrons in the system are given by $E_k = \pm(\epsilon^2 + 4\beta^2 \cos^2 kR)^{1/2}$, where k is the wavevector of the electron state. What is the band gap in the electronic band structure for this system? How would you expect the electrical and optical properties of this structure to depend on ϵ and β ?

4.2. Consider a crystal of sodium with a volume 0.10 cm^3 , estimate the average spacing between the energy levels in the $3s$ band given that the $3s$ electron energies span a range of 3.20 eV . The electron concentration of a sodium crystal is approximately $2.65 \times 10^{28} \text{ m}^{-3}$. (You can estimate this value by yourself.)

4.3. A BCC lattice has eight nearest neighbors at $\mathbf{r} = \frac{a}{2}(\pm\hat{x} \pm \hat{y} \pm \hat{z})$. Use the s -band tight-binding formula, (4.22), to evaluate $E(\mathbf{k})$.

4.4. A single graphite sheet (called graphene) has a honeycomb structure. Let us assume that there is one p_z orbital, which is oriented perpendicular to the sheet, on each carbon atom and forms the active valence and conduction bands of this two-dimensional crystal.

- (a) Using the tight-binding method and only nearest-neighbor interactions, calculate and sketch the p -electron band structure $E_n(k)$ for graphene. You may assume the overlap matrix is the unity matrix.
- (b) Show that this is a zero-gap semiconductor or a zero-overlap semimetal. Note that there is one p electron per carbon atom.
- (c) Locate the position where the zero gap occurs in the momentum space.

4.5. A one-dimensional attractive potential is given by $V(z) = -\lambda\delta(z)$.

- (a) Show that the lowest energy state occurs at $\epsilon_0 = -\frac{\hbar^2 K^2}{2m}$, where $K = \frac{m\lambda}{\hbar^2}$.
- (b) Determine the normalized wave function $\phi_0(z)$.

4.6. Consider a superlattice with $V(z) = -\lambda \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(z - la)$.

- (a) Obtain $\epsilon_0(k_z)$, the energy of the lowest band as a function of k_z by using the tight-binding approximation (i.e. overlap between only neighboring sites is kept).
- (b) Use the tight binding form of the wave function $\Psi_0(k_z, z)$ and show that it can be expressed as

$$\Psi_0(k_z, z) = e^{ik_z z} u(k_z, z),$$

where $u(k_z, z)$ is periodic with period a . Determine an expression for $u(k_z, z)$.

4.7. Let us consider electrons in a one-dimensional Bravais lattice described 340
by the wave function and potential written as $\Psi(x) = \alpha e^{ikx} + \beta e^{i(kG)x}$ and 341
 $V(x) = 2V_1 \cos(Gx)$. The zone boundary is at $k = G/2 = \pi/a$, where a is the 342
lattice constant. 343

- (a) Obtain the band structure by solving the Schrödinger equation, and 344
sketch the band for $0 \leq k \leq G$ for $V_1 = 0$ and $V_1 = 0.2\hbar^2 G^2/2m$. 345
- (b) What kind of material do we have when $V_1 = 0$? 346
- (c) If $V_1 = 0.2\hbar^2 G^2/2m$ and each atom has three electrons, what kind of 347
material do we have? Explain the reason. 348

Uncorrected Proof

Summary

349

In this chapter, we studied the electronic states from the consideration of the 350
 periodicity of the crystal structure. In the presence of periodic potential the 351
 electronic energies form bands of allowed energy values separated by bands of 352
 forbidden energy values. Bloch functions were introduced as a consequence of 353
 the translational symmetry of the lattice. Energy bands obtained by a simplest 354
 tight-binding method and nearly free electron model are discussed. 355

The eigenfunction of the Hamiltonian H can be written as 356

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r}) = e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{R}} u_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r}),$$

where $u_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r})$ is a lattice periodic function i.e. $u_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r} + \mathbf{R}) = u_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r})$. This is the 357
 Bloch's theorem. For an electron in a crystalline potential, we have 358

$$T_{\mathbf{R}}\Psi(\mathbf{r}) = e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{R}}\Psi(\mathbf{r}),$$

where $T_{\mathbf{R}}$ is a lattice translation operator and $\mathbf{k} = \frac{2\pi}{N}(n_1\mathbf{b}_1 + n_2\mathbf{b}_2 + n_3\mathbf{b}_3)$. 359
 Here n_1, n_2, n_3 are integers and $\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2, \mathbf{b}_3$ are primitive translations of the 360
 reciprocal lattice. 361

In the tight-binding approximation one assumes that the electron in the 362
 unit cell about R_j is only slightly influenced by atoms other than the one 363
 located at R_j . Its wave function in that cell will be close to $\phi(r - R_j)$, the 364
 atomic wave function, and its energy close to E_a . One can make a linear 365
 combination of atomic orbitals $\phi(r - R_j)$ as a trial function for the electronic 366
 wave function in the solid: 367

$$\Psi_k(r) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_j e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{R}_j} \phi(r - R_j).$$

The energy of a state $\Psi_k(r)$ is given by 368

$$E_k = E_a - \alpha - \gamma \sum'_m e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot(\mathbf{R}_j - \mathbf{R}_m)}$$

where the sum is over all nearest neighbors of $\mathbf{R}_j$ and 369

$$\alpha = - \int d^3r \phi^*(r - R_j) \tilde{V}(r - R_j) \phi(r - R_j)$$

and 370

$$\gamma = - \int d^3r \phi^*(r - R_m) \tilde{V}(r - R_j) \phi(r - R_j).$$

In second quantization representation, the tight-binding Hamiltonian is given 371
 by 372

$$H = \sum_n \varepsilon_n c_n^\dagger c_n + \sum_{n \neq m} T_{nm} c_n^\dagger c_m$$

4.8 Metals–Semimetals–Semiconductors–Insulators 127

where $\varepsilon_n = T_{nn} + V(R_n^0)$ represents an energy on site n and T_{nm} denotes the
amplitude of hopping from site m to site n .

The periodic part of the Bloch function is expanded in Fourier series as

$$u_n(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mathbf{K}} C_{\mathbf{K}}(n, \mathbf{k}) e^{i\mathbf{K} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$$

and the energy eigenfunction is simply written as

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r}) = e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} u(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mathbf{K}} C_{\mathbf{K}} e^{i(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}) \cdot \mathbf{r}}.$$

The Schrödinger equation of an electron in a lattice periodic potential is
written as an infinite set of linear equations for the coefficients $C_{\mathbf{K}}$:

$$\left[E - V_0 - \frac{\hbar^2}{2m} (\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K})^2 \right] C_{\mathbf{K}} = \sum_{\mathbf{H} \neq 0} V_{\mathbf{H}} C_{\mathbf{K} - \mathbf{H}}.$$

We can express the infinite set of linear equations in a matrix notation:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{K}_1} + \langle \mathbf{K}_1 | V | \mathbf{K}_1 \rangle & \langle \mathbf{K}_1 | V | \mathbf{K}_2 \rangle \cdots & \langle \mathbf{K}_1 | V | \mathbf{K}_n \rangle \cdots \\ -E & \varepsilon_{\mathbf{K}_2} + \langle \mathbf{K}_2 | V | \mathbf{K}_2 \rangle & \langle \mathbf{K}_2 | V | \mathbf{K}_n \rangle \cdots \\ \langle \mathbf{K}_2 | V | \mathbf{K}_1 \rangle & -E \cdots & \langle \mathbf{K}_2 | V | \mathbf{K}_n \rangle \cdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \langle \mathbf{K}_n | V | \mathbf{K}_1 \rangle & \langle \mathbf{K}_n | V | \mathbf{K}_2 \rangle \cdots & \varepsilon_{\mathbf{K}_n} + \langle \mathbf{K}_n | V | \mathbf{K}_n \rangle \\ & -E \cdots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} C_{\mathbf{K}_1} \\ C_{\mathbf{K}_2} \\ \vdots \\ C_{\mathbf{K}_n} \\ \vdots \end{pmatrix} = 0.$$

Here, $\varepsilon_{\mathbf{K}} = \frac{\hbar^2}{2m} (\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K})^2$ and $\langle \mathbf{K} | V | \mathbf{K}' \rangle = V_{\mathbf{K} - \mathbf{K}'}$, where $|\mathbf{K}\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\Omega}} e^{i\mathbf{K} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$.

In the nearly free electron method, the energies near the zone boundary
become

$$E_{\pm}(k) = V_0 + \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} \pm |V_{\mathbf{K}}|.$$

The two roots can be written, for small q , as

$$E_{-} = \frac{\hbar^2 q^2}{2m_{-}^{*}}; \quad E_{+} = E_G + \frac{\hbar^2 q^2}{2m_{+}^{*}},$$

where $\mathbf{q} = \frac{\mathbf{K}}{2} + \mathbf{k}$. Here, the energy gap E_G is equal to $2|V_{\mathbf{K}}|$ and the *effective*
masses $m_{\pm}^{*}$ are given by

$$m_{\pm}^{*} = \frac{m}{1 \mp \frac{\varepsilon_{\mathbf{K}}}{2|V_{\mathbf{K}}|}}.$$

The results are only valid near $q = 0$ since we expanded the original equations
for small deviations q from the extrema. This result is called the *effective*
mass approximation. Crystalline solids are classified as metals, semimetals,
semiconductors, and insulators according to the magnitudes and shapes of
the energy gap of the material.

5	1
Use of Elementary Group Theory in Calculating Band Structure	2 3

5.1 Band Representation of Empty Lattice States 4

For a three-dimensional crystal, the free electron energies and wave functions can be expressed in the Bloch function form in the following way: 5 6

1. Write the plane-wave wave vector as a sum of a Bloch wave vector and a reciprocal lattice vector. The Bloch wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ is restricted to the first Brillouin zone; the reciprocal lattice vectors are given by 7 8 9

$$\mathbf{K}_\ell = 2\pi[l_1\mathbf{b}_1 + l_2\mathbf{b}_2 + l_3\mathbf{b}_3] \quad (5.1) \quad 10$$

where $(l_1, l_2, l_3) = \ell$ are integers and $\mathbf{b}_i$ are primitive translations of the reciprocal lattice. Then 11 12

$$\Psi_\ell(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{r}) = e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} e^{i\mathbf{K}_\ell \cdot \mathbf{r}}. \quad (5.2)$$

The second factor has the periodicity of the lattice since $e^{i\mathbf{K}_1 \cdot \mathbf{R}} = 1$ for any translation vector $\mathbf{R}$. 13 14

2. The energy is given by 15

$$E_\ell(\mathbf{k}) = \frac{\hbar^2}{2m} (\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}_1)^2. \quad (5.3) \quad 16$$

3. Each band is labeled by $\ell = (l_1, l_2, l_3)$ and has $\Psi_\ell(k, r)$ given by (5.2) and $E_\ell(k)$ given by (5.3). 17 18

5.2 Review of Elementary Group Theory 19

In our brief discussion of translational and rotational symmetries of a lattice, we introduced a few elementary concepts of group theory. The object of this chapter is to show how group theory can be used in evaluating the band structure of a solid. We begin with a few definitions. 20 21 22 23

130 5 Use of Elementary Group Theory in Calculating Band Structure

Order of a group: If a group $\mathcal{G}$ contains g elements, it is said to be of order g . 24

Abelian group: A group in which all elements commute. 25

Cyclic group: A group of g elements, in which the elements can be written 26

$$A, A^2, A^3, \dots, A^{g-1}, A^g = E.$$

Class When an element R of a group is multiplied by A and A^{-1} to form 27
 $R' = ARA^{-1}$, where A and A^{-1} are elements of the group, the set of 28
 elements R' obtained by using every A belonging to $\mathcal{G}$ is said to form a 29
 class. Elements belong to the same class if they do essentially the same 30
 thing when viewed from different coordinate system. For example, for 31
 4 mm there are five classes: 32

(1) E , (2) R_{90° and R_{-90° , (3) R_{180° , (4) m_x and m_y , (5) m_+ and m_- 33

Rearrangement theorem If $\mathcal{G} = \{E, A, B, \dots\}$ is the set of elements of a group, 34

$A\mathcal{G} = \{AE, AA, AB, \dots\}$ is simply a rearrangement of this set. Therefore 35

$$\sum_{R \in \mathcal{G}} f(R) = \sum_{R \in \mathcal{G}} f(AR). \quad 36$$

Generators If all the elements of a group can be expressed in form $A^m D^n$, 37
 where m and n are integers, then A and D are called generators of the 38
 group. For example, the four operators of 2mm can all be expressed in 39
 terms of R and m_x such as $E = R^2 = m_x^2$, $R = R$, $m_x = m_x$, $m_y = R^1 m_x^1$. 40

5.2.1 Some Examples of Simple Groups 41

Cyclic Group of Order 42

n Consider an n -sided regular polygon. Rotation by $R_j = \frac{2\pi}{n} \times j$ with $j =$ 43
 $0, 1, 2, \dots, n-1$ form a group of symmetry operations. The generator of this 44
 group is $R_1 =$ rotation by $\frac{2\pi}{n}$. 45

$$\mathcal{G} = \{R_1, R_1^2, R_1^3, \dots, R_1^n = E\} \quad (5.4)$$

46

Symmetry Operations of an Equilateral Triangle 47

$$\mathcal{G} = \{E, R_{120}, R_{-120}, J_A, J_B, J_C\} \quad (5.5)$$

Here, R_{120} and J_A are generators of $\mathcal{G}$. In this case, we have three classes of 48
 $\{E\}$, $\{R_{120}, R_{-120}\}$, and $\{J_A, J_B, J_C\}$. (See Fig. 5.1.) 49

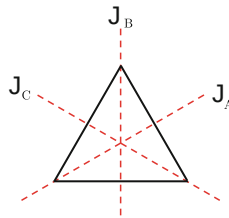
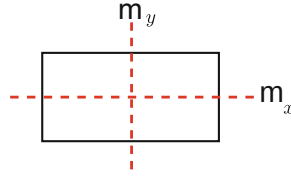
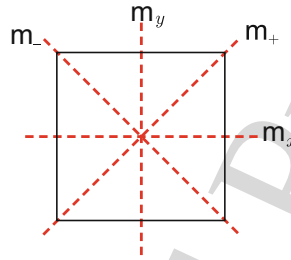


Fig. 5.1. Equilateral triangle

**Fig. 5.2.** Rectangle**Fig. 5.3.** Square

Symmetry Group of a Rectangle 50

$$\mathcal{G} = \{E, R, m_x, m_y\} \quad (5.6)$$

Here, R and m_x are generators of $\mathcal{G}$, and each element belongs to a different class since x and y directions differ. (See Fig. 5.2.) 51
52

Symmetry Group of a Square 53

$$\mathcal{G} = \{E; R_{90} (\equiv R_1), R_{-90} (\equiv R_3); R_{180} (\equiv R_2); m_x, m_y; m_+, m_-\} \quad (5.7)$$

Here, R_{90} and m_x are generators, and classes are discussed earlier. (See Fig. 5.3.) 54
55

Other Examples 56

Groups of matrices, e.g., (1) $n \times n$ matrices with determinant equal to unity 57
and (2) $n \times n$ orthogonal matrices. 58

5.2.2 Group Representation 59

A group of matrices that satisfy the same multiplication as the elements of the group is said to form a representation of the group. To be concrete, suppose a group $\mathcal{G} = \{E, A, B, \dots\}$ of symmetry operations operates on some function $\Psi(x, y, z)$. These operations give us the set of functions. 60
61
62
63

$$E\Psi, A\Psi, B\Psi, \dots \quad (5.8)$$

132 5 Use of Elementary Group Theory in Calculating Band Structure

which form a vector space that is invariant under the operations of the group. 64
By this, we mean that the space of all functions of the form 65

$$\Phi = c_1 E\Psi + c_2 A\Psi + c_3 B\Psi + \cdots \quad (5.9)$$

where c_i are complex numbers is invariant under the operations of the group. 66
We can choose a basis set Ψ_j with $j = 1, 2, \dots, l \leq g$, where g is the order of 67
the group. Then for any ϕ belonging to this vector space we can write 68

$$\phi = \sum_{j=1}^l c_j \Psi_j. \quad (5.10)$$

For any element $R \in \mathcal{G}$, 69

$$R\Psi_j = \sum_{k=1}^l D_{jk}(R)\Psi_k, \quad (5.11)$$

where $D(R)$ is a matrix. The set of matrices $D(R)$ (for each $R \in \mathcal{G}$) form a 70
representation of $\mathcal{G}$. 71

5.2.3 Examples of Representations of the Group 4mm 72

Under the operations of the eight elements of the group 4mm, x always 73
transforms into $\pm x$ or into $\pm y$ as shown in Table 5.1. 74

Representation Γ_1 Consider the function $\Psi_0 = x^2 + y^2$. It is obvious that 75
under every operation belonging to $\mathcal{G}$, Ψ_0 is unchanged. For example, 76

$$R_{180}\Psi_0 = R_{180}(x^2 + y^2) = (-x)^2 + (-y)^2 = x^2 + y^2 = \Psi_0. \quad (5.12)$$

Thus, every operation of $\mathcal{G}$ can be represented by the unit matrix 77

$$D(E) = D(R_{180}) = D(R_{90}) = D(R_{-90}) = \cdots = D(m_-) = 1. \quad (5.13)$$

This set of matrices forms a representation of $\mathcal{G}$ that is called the “iden- 78
tity” representation and denoted by the symbol Γ_1 (i.e. the representation 79
 Γ_1). Any function $f(x, y)$ that transforms under the group operation R in 80
exactly the same manner as multiplication by the matrix $D(R)$ represent- 81
ing R in the representation Γ_n is said to belong to the representation Γ_n . 82

t1.1 **Table 5.1.** Operations of the group 4mm on functions of x and y

t1.2 Operation	E	R_{180}	R_{90}	R_{-90}	m_x	m_y	m_+	m_-
t1.3 x	x	$-x$	y	$-y$	x	$-x$	y	$-y$
t1.4 y	y	$-y$	$-x$	x	$-y$	y	x	$-x$

5.2 Review of Elementary Group Theory 133

Representation Γ_4 Consider the function $\Psi_4 = xy$. It is obvious that $E, R_{180},$ 83
 m_+ , and m_- operating on Ψ_4 leave it unchanged but that $R_{90}, R_{-90}, m_x,$ 84
and m_y operating on Ψ_4 change it to $-\Psi_4$. Therefore the matrices 85

$$\begin{aligned} D(E) &= D(R_{180}) = D(m_+) = D(m_-) = 1 \\ D(R_{90}) &= D(R_{-90}) = D(m_x) = D(m_y) = -1 \end{aligned}$$

form a representation of $\mathcal{G}$. This representation is called the Γ_4 represen- 86
tion. 87

By constructing $\Psi_3 = x^2 - y^2$, $\Psi_2 = xy(x^2 - y^2)$, and $\Psi_5 = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$, it 88
is easy to construct Table 5.2, which illustrates the sets of matrices $D_{\Gamma_j}(R)$ 89
for each $R \in \mathcal{G}$ of the group 4mm. The sets of matrices $\{D_{\Gamma_j}(R)\}$ for each 90
 $R \in \mathcal{G}$ form representations of the group 4mm. Functions belonging to the 91
representation Γ_j transform under the operations of 4mm in exactly the same 92
way as multiplying them by the appropriate $D_{\Gamma_j}(R)$. 93

t2.1 Table 5.2. Group representation table of the group 4mm

t2.2	R	$\Psi_0 = x^2 + y^2$ $D_{\Gamma_1}(R)$	$\Psi_2 = xy(x^2 - y^2)$ $D_{\Gamma_2}(R)$	$\Psi_3 = x^2 - y^2$ $D_{\Gamma_3}(R)$	$\Psi_4 = xy$ $D_{\Gamma_4}(R)$	$\Psi_5 = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ $D_{\Gamma_5}(R)$
t2.3	E	1	1	1	1	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$
t2.4	R_{180}	1	1	1	1	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$
t2.5	R_{90}	1	1	-1	-1	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$
t2.6	R_{-90}	1	1	-1	-1	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$
t2.7	m_x	1	-1	1	-1	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$
t2.8	m_y	1	-1	1	-1	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$
t2.9	m_+	1	-1	-1	1	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$
t2.10	m_-	1	-1	-1	1	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$
t2.11		$\uparrow$	$\uparrow$	$\uparrow$	$\uparrow$	$\uparrow$
t2.12		Γ_1	Γ_2	Γ_3	Γ_4	Γ_5

5.2.4 Faithful Representation

94

You will notice that the set of matrices forming the representation Γ_1 of 4 mm 95
to which the function $x^2 + y^2$ belonged were all identical, i.e. $D(E) = D(R_1) =$ 96
 $D(R_2) = \dots = D(m_x) = 1$. Such a representation is a homomorphism between 97
the group of symmetry operators and the group of matrices, and it is said to be 98
an *unfaithful representation*. A representation in which each operation $R \in \mathcal{G}$ 99
is represented by a different matrix $D(R)$ is called a *faithful representation*. 100
In this case, the group of symmetry operations and the group of matrices are 101
isomorphic. 102

5.2.5 Regular Representation

103

If we construct a multiplication table for a finite group $\mathcal{G}$ as shown in Table 5.3 104
for 2 mm and we form 4×4 matrices $D(E)$, $D(R)$, $D(m_x)$, $D(m_y)$ by sub- 105
stituting 1 in the 4×4 array wherever the particular operation appears and 106
0 everywhere else, the set of matrices form a representation known as the 107
regular representation. Thus, we have 108

$$D(E) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, D(R) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ etc.} \quad (5.14)$$

109

5.2.6 Reducible and Irreducible Representations

111

Suppose $D^{(1)}(R)$ and $D^{(2)}(R)$ are two representations of the same group, then 112
 $D(R)$ defined by 113

$$D(R) = \begin{pmatrix} D^{(1)}(R) & 0 \\ 0 & D^{(2)}(R) \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.15)$$

also forms a representation of $\mathcal{G}$. $D(R)$ is called the direct sum of the first two 114
representations $D^{(1)}(R)$ and $D^{(2)}(R)$. A representation which can be written 115
as the direct sum of two smaller representations is said to be reducible. Some- 116
times a representation is reducible, but it is not at all apparent. The reason 117
for this is that if the matrices $D(R)$ form a representation of $\mathcal{G}$, then 118

t3.1 **Table 5.3.** Multiplication table of the group 2 mm

t3.2	$E^{-1} = E$	$R^{-1} = R$	$m_x^{-1} = m_x$	$m_y^{-1} = m_y$
t3.3 E	E	R	m_x	m_y
t3.4 R	R	E	m_y	m_x
t3.5 m_x	m_x	m_y	E	R
t3.6 m_y	m_y	m_x	R	E

$$\tilde{D}(R) = S^{-1}D(R)S \quad (5.16)$$

also form a representation (corresponding to a change in the basis vectors of the vector space on which the matrices act). This similarity transformation can scramble the block diagonal form so that the resulting $\tilde{D}(R)$ do not look reducible. A representation is reducible if and only if it is possible to perform the same similarity transformation on all the matrices in the representation and reduce them to block diagonal form. Otherwise, the representation is irreducible. Clearly all one-dimensional representations (1×1 matrices) are irreducible.

5.2.7 Important Theorems of Representation Theory (without proof)

1. *Theorem one* The number of irreducible representations (IRs) is equal to the number of conjugate classes.
2. *Theorem two* If l_i is the dimension of the i th IR and g is the number of operations in the group $\mathcal{G}$

$$\sum_i l_i^2 = g. \quad (5.17)$$

Example

1. 2 mm. There are four operations E, R, m_x, m_y and there are four classes (remember that because the x and y directions are distinct m_x and m_y belong to different classes). From Theorem one, there are four IRs; from Theorem two, they are all one dimensional so that

$$\sum_i l_i^2 = 1^2 + 1^2 + 1^2 + 1^2 = 4 = g.$$

2. 4 mm. There are eight operations falling into five conjugate classes: $E; R_2; R_1$ and $R_3; m_x$ and $m_y; m_+$ and m_- . Therefore, there are five IRs and four IR's must be one dimensional and one must be two dimensional so that

$$\sum_i l_i^2 = 1^2 + 1^2 + 1^2 + 1^2 + 2^2 = 8 = g$$

5.2.8 Character of a Representation

The character χ of a representation $D(R)$ is defined as

$$\chi(R) = \sum_j D_{jj}(R) \text{ for each } R \in \mathcal{G}. \quad (5.18)$$

Because the application of a similarity transformation does not change the trace of a matrix

136 5 Use of Elementary Group Theory in Calculating Band Structure

1. $\chi(R)$ is independent of the basis used for the vector space. 147
 2. $\chi(R)$ is the same for all elements R belonging to the same conjugate class. 148
- Thus, we can define $\chi(C)$ to be the common value of $\chi(R)$ for all R belonging 149
to conjugate class C .¹ 150

5.2.9 Orthogonality Theorem 151

In trying to determine the IRs and their characters certain orthogonality 152
theorems are very useful. We state them without proof. 153

1. 154

$$\sum_{R \in \mathcal{G}} \chi^i(R) \chi^{j*}(R) = g \delta_{ij}, \quad (5.19)$$

where χ^i and χ^j are the characters of two representations. This can also 155
be written 156

$$\sum_C n_C \chi^i(C) \chi^{j*}(C) = g \delta_{ij}, \quad (5.20)$$

where n_C is the number of elements in the class C . 158

2. 159

$$\sum_i \chi^i(C) \chi^{i*}(C') = \frac{g}{n_C} \delta_{C,C'}. \quad (5.21)$$

3. If $D_{\mu\nu}^{(i)}(R)$ is the $\mu\nu$ matrix element of the i th IR for the operation R , then 160

$$\sum_{R \in \mathcal{G}} D_{\mu\nu}^{(i)}(R) [D^{(j)}(R)]_{\nu'\mu'}^{-1} = \frac{1}{l_i} \delta_{ij} \delta_{\mu\mu'} \delta_{\nu\nu'}. \quad (5.22)$$

For a unitary representation $[D^{(j)}(R)]_{\nu'\mu'}^{-1} = D_{\mu'\nu'}^{(j)*}(R)$ so that for unitary 163
representation 164

$$\sum_{R \in \mathcal{G}} D_{\mu\nu}^{(i)}(R) D_{\mu'\nu'}^{(j)*}(R) = \frac{1}{l_i} \delta_{ij} \delta_{\mu\mu'} \delta_{\nu\nu'}. \quad (5.23)$$

Some Examples 166

1. 2mm. We know there are four IRs all of which are one dimensional. We 167
label them $\Gamma_1, \Gamma_2, \Gamma_3, \Gamma_4$. The 1×1 matrices representing each element 168
are given in Table 5.4. 169
2. 4mm. There are five IRs; one is two dimensional and the rest are one 170
dimensional as are shown in Table 5.5. 171

The reader should use these simple examples to demonstrate that the orthog- 172
onality theorems hold. 173

¹ In the regular representation, each IR Γ_i appears l_i times, where l_i is the dimension of the IR Γ_i .

5.3 Empty Lattice Bands, Degeneracies and IRs at High-Symmetry Points 137

t4.1 **Table 5.4.** Irreducible representations of the group 2 mm

t4.2		Γ_1	Γ_2	Γ_3	Γ_4
t4.3	E	1	1	1	1
t4.4	R	1	1	-1	-1
t4.5	m_x	1	-1	1	-1
t4.6	m_y	1	-1	-1	1

t5.1 **Table 5.5.** Irreducible representations of the group 4 mm

t5.2		Γ_1	Γ_2	Γ_3	Γ_4	Γ_5
t5.3	E	1	1	1	1	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow 2$
t5.4	R_2	1	1	1	1	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow -2$
t5.5	R_1, R_3	1	1	-1	-1	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow 0$
t5.6	m_x, m_y	1	-1	1	-1	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow 0$
t5.7	m_+, m_-	1	-1	-1	1	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow 0$

5.3 Empty Lattice Bands, Degeneracies and IRs at High-Symmetry Points

174
175

In Sect. 5.2 we determined the free electron energies and wave functions in the
reduced zone scheme for a two-dimensional rectangular lattice. The starting
point for many band structure calculations is this empty lattice band structure
obtained by writing, as (5.3),

176
177
178
179

$$E_1(\mathbf{k}) = \frac{\hbar^2}{2m} (\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}_1)^2,$$

where $\mathbf{k}$ is restricted to lie in the first Brillouin zone and $\mathbf{K}_1$ is a reciprocal
lattice vector of (5.1)

180
181

$$\mathbf{K}_1 = 2\pi[l_1\mathbf{b}_1 + l_2\mathbf{b}_2 + l_3\mathbf{b}_3].$$

Here, $\mathbf{b}_i$ are the primitive translation vectors of the reciprocal lattice and
 $l_i = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$. We evaluate the energy at particular symmetry points, e.g.
at $k = 0$, the Γ point, along $k_y = k_z = 0$, the line Δ , etc.

182
183
184

The group of symmetry operations which leave the lattice invariant also
leaves the reciprocal lattice invariant. Suppose we know some wave function
 $\Psi_{\mathbf{k}}$. A rotation or reflection operation of the point group acting on $\Psi_{\mathbf{k}}$ will
give the same result as the rotation or reflection of $\mathbf{k}$, that is

185
186
187
188

$$R\Psi_{\mathbf{k}}(x) = \Psi_{R\mathbf{k}}(x) = \Psi_{\mathbf{k}}(R^{-1}x). \quad (5.24)$$

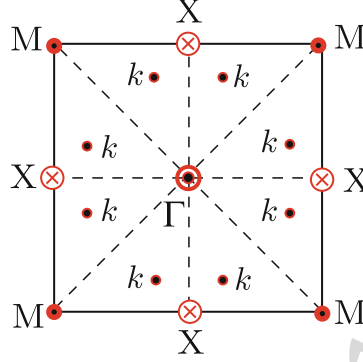


Fig. 5.4. STAR of square lattice

Here, we used the fact that applying the same orthogonal transformation to both vectors in a scalar product does not change the value of the product, for example $\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{R}^{-1}\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{R}\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{R}\mathbf{R}^{-1}\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{R}\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}$. By applying every $R \in \mathcal{G}$ to a wave vector $\mathbf{k}$, we generate the *STAR* of $\mathbf{k}$. For a two-dimensional square lattice, all operations leave Γ invariant so Γ is its own STAR. (See Fig. 5.4) For a general point $\mathbf{k}$, there will be g ($=8$ for 4mm) points in the STAR of $\mathbf{k}$. The symmetry point X has four points in its STAR; two of these lie along the x -axis and are equivalent because they are separated by a reciprocal lattice vector. The other two points in the STAR of X are not equivalent to the X -point along the x -axis because they are not separated from it by a reciprocal lattice vector. All four points in the STAR of M are equivalent since they are all separated by vectors of the reciprocal lattice.

5.3.1 Group of the Wave Vector $\mathbf{k}$

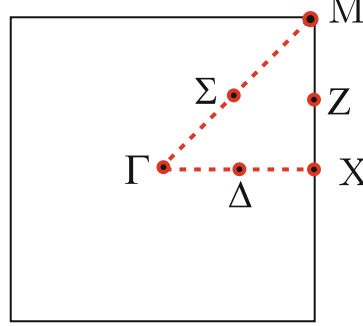
The group (or subgroup of the original point group) of rotations and reflections that transform $\mathbf{k}$ into itself or into a new $\mathbf{k}$ vector separated from the original $\mathbf{k}$ point by a reciprocal lattice vector belong to the *group of the wave vector* $\mathbf{k}$.

Example

For two-dimensional square lattice (Fig. 5.5) we remember that Δ , Z , and Σ denote, respectively, any point on the line from $\Gamma \rightarrow X$, $X \rightarrow M$, and $\Gamma \rightarrow M$. We have the groups of the wave vectors as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{G}_\Gamma &= \mathcal{G}_M = \{E, R_1, R_2, R_3, m_x, m_y, m_+, m_-\} \\ \mathcal{G}_X &= \{E, R_2, m_x, m_y\} \\ \mathcal{G}_\Delta &= \{E, m_x\} \\ \mathcal{G}_\Sigma &= \{E, m_+\} \\ \mathcal{G}_Z &= \{E, m_y\}\end{aligned}\tag{5.25}$$

5.3 Empty Lattice Bands, Degeneracies and IRs at High-Symmetry Points 139

**Fig. 5.5.** First Brillouin zone of a square lattice

When the empty lattice bands are calculated, there are often a number of degenerate bands at points of high symmetry like the Γ -point, the M -point, and the X -point. Because the operations of the group of the wave vector Γ (or M or X) leave this point invariant, one can construct linear combinations of these degenerate states that belong to representations of the group of the wave vector Γ (or M or X , etc.).

Example

Empty lattice bands for a two-dimensional square lattice are written by

$$E_{l_1 l_2}(\mathbf{k}) = \frac{\hbar^2}{2m} (\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}_{l_1 l_2})^2 \quad \text{and} \quad \Psi_{l_1 l_2}(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{r}) = e^{i(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}_{l_1 l_2}) \cdot \mathbf{r}}. \quad (5.26)$$

Here

$$\mathbf{K}_{l_1 l_2} = \frac{2\pi}{a} (l_1 \hat{x} + l_2 \hat{y}) \quad (5.27)$$

with $l_1, l_2 = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$. The empty lattice bands are labelled by the pair of integers (l_1, l_2) . (See Fig. 5.6.) By defining ξ and η by

$$\mathbf{k} = \frac{2\pi}{a} [\xi \hat{x} + \eta \hat{y}] \quad (5.28)$$

then we have

$$E_{l_1 l_2} = \frac{\hbar^2}{2ma^2} [(\xi + l_1)^2 + (\eta + l_2)^2] \quad \text{and} \quad \Psi_{l_1 l_2} = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{a} [(\xi + l_1)x + (\eta + l_2)y]}. \quad (5.29)$$

The parameters ξ and η are restricted to the range $[-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}]$.

Exercise

Evaluate the energies $E_{l_1 l_2}(\Gamma)$, $E_{l_1 l_2}(X)$ for energies up to $E = \frac{\hbar^2}{2ma^2} \times 10$. Make a sketch of the empty square lattice bands going from $\Gamma \rightarrow \Delta \rightarrow X$. (Use straight lines to connect $E_{l_1 l_2}(\Gamma)$ to $E_{l_1 l_2}(X)$). List the degeneracies at Γ , Δ , and X . For example, see Table 5.6.

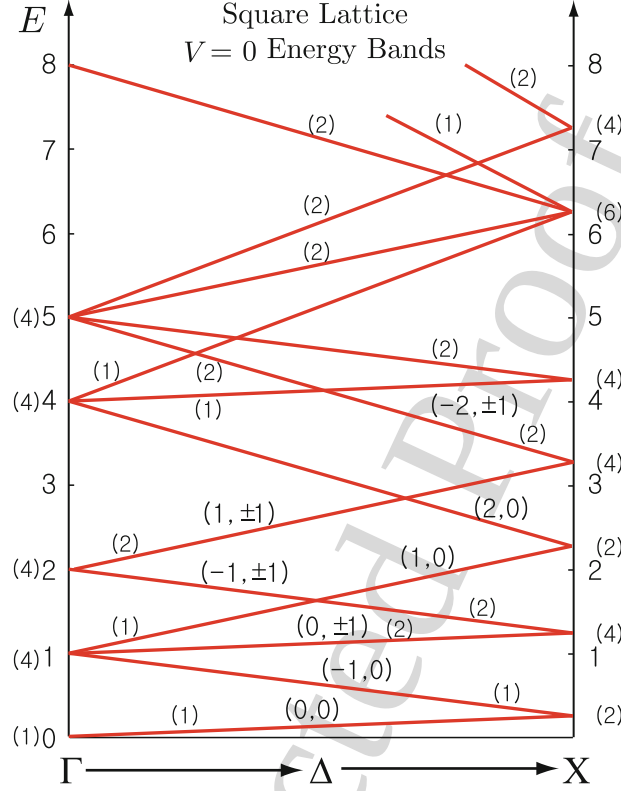


Fig. 5.6. Empty lattice bands of a square lattice along the line $\Gamma \rightarrow \Delta \rightarrow X$. Energy is measured in units of $\frac{h^2}{2ma^2}$. We have drawn *straight lines* connecting $E_{l_1 l_2}(\Gamma)$ to $E_{l_1 l_2}(X)$ for the sake of simplicity. The pair of integers (l_1, l_2) is indicated for each band, and the band degeneracy is given in the parenthesis. In fact the energy along Δ varies as $\xi^2 + 2l_1\xi + l_1^2 + l_2^2$

5.4 Use of Irreducible Representations

228

It is apparent from the $V(r) = 0$ empty lattice structure that at some points 229
in the Brillouin zone more than one band has the same energy. If we refer 230
to the two-dimensional square lattice, we find that at $E(X) = \frac{1}{4} \frac{h^2}{2ma^2}$ there 231
are two degenerate bands, viz. $(l_1, l_2) = (0, 0)$ and $(-1, 0)$. At $E(\Gamma) = \frac{h^2}{2ma^2}$ 232
there are four degenerate bands $(-1, 0)$, $(1, 0)$, $(0, 1)$, $(0, -1)$. The vector space 233
formed by the degenerate bands at $E(\mathbf{k})$ is invariant under the operations 234
of the group of the wave vector $\mathbf{k}$. This means that the space of degenerate 235
states at a point $\mathbf{k}$ in the Brillouin zone provides a representation of the 236
group of the wave vector $\mathbf{k}$. We can decompose this representation into its 237
irreducible components and use the decomposition to label the states. This 238
process does not change the empty lattice band structure that we have already 239

t6.1 **Table 5.6.** Empty lattice bands of the group $4mm$

t6.2	$l_1,$	l_2	$\frac{2ma^2}{\hbar^2} E_{l_1 l_2}(\Gamma) = l_1^2 + l_2^2$	$\frac{2ma^2}{\hbar^2} E_{l_1 l_2}(X) = (l_1 + \frac{1}{2})^2 + l_2^2$
t6.3	0	0	0	$\frac{1}{4}$
t6.4	-1	0	1	$\frac{1}{4}$
t6.5	1	0	1	$\frac{9}{4}$
t6.6	-2	0	4	$\frac{9}{4}$
t6.7	2	0	4	$\frac{25}{4}$
t6.8	0	± 1	1	$\frac{5}{4}$
t6.9	0	± 2	4	$\frac{17}{4}$
t6.10	-1	± 1	2	$\frac{5}{4}$
t6.11	-1	± 2	5	$\frac{17}{4}$

obtained. It is simply a convenient choice of basis functions for each of the spaces of degenerate energy states. However, once the periodic potential $V(r)$ is introduced, it is immediately seen that band gaps appear as a consequence of the decomposition of degenerate states into irreducible components. We shall see that states belonging to different IR's do not interact (i.e. they are not coupled together by the periodic potential).

The periodic potential $V(r)$ can be expressed as a Fourier series

$$V(r) = \sum_{\mathbf{K}} V_{\mathbf{K}} e^{i\mathbf{K} \cdot \mathbf{r}}, \quad (5.30)$$

where $\mathbf{K}$ is a reciprocal lattice vector. For the two-dimensional square lattice we can write

$$V(r) = \sum_{l_1 l_2} V_{l_1, l_2} e^{\frac{2\pi i}{a} (l_1 x + l_2 y)}. \quad (5.31)$$

Because $V(r)$ is invariant under the operations of the point group, it is not difficult to see that

$$V_{l_1, l_2} = V_{-l_1, l_2} = V_{l_1, -l_2} = V_{-l_1, -l_2} = V_{l_2, l_1} = V_{-l_2, l_1} = V_{l_2, -l_1} = V_{-l_2, -l_1}. \quad (5.32)$$

In our previous discussion of the effect of the periodic potential, we were able to obtain an infinite set of coupled algebraic equations, (4.40), which could be written

$$\left[E - V_0 - \frac{\hbar^2}{2m} (\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K})^2 \right] C_{\mathbf{K}} = \sum_{\mathbf{H} \neq 0} V_{\mathbf{H}} C_{\mathbf{K} - \mathbf{H}}. \quad (5.33)$$

142 5 Use of Elementary Group Theory in Calculating Band Structure

Here, $C_{\mathbf{K}}$ was the coefficient in the expansion of $u(r)$, the periodic part of the Bloch function, in Fourier series. This infinite set of equations could be expressed as a matrix equation, (4.41). The off-diagonal matrix elements are of the form $\langle \mathbf{K}_i | V(r) | \mathbf{K}_j \rangle = V_{\mathbf{K}_i - \mathbf{K}_j}$. When the degeneracy of a particular energy state becomes large (e.g. at $E(\Gamma) = 5 \frac{\hbar^2}{2ma^2}$ the degeneracy is 8), the degenerate states must be treated exactly and there is no reason to suppose that any off-diagonal matrix elements vanish. However, when we classify the degenerate states according to the IR's of the group of the wave vector, we are able to simplify the secular equation by virtue of a fundamental theorem on matrix elements.

Theorem on Matrix Elements (without proof)
Matrix elements of any operator which is invariant under all the operations of a group are zero between functions belonging to different IRs of the group. Matrix elements are also zero between functions belonging to different rows of the same representation.

When one classifies the degenerate states according to the IR's of the group of the wave vector, many of the degenerate states will belong to different IRs and therefore the off-diagonal matrix elements of $V(r)$ between them will vanish.

5.4.1 Determining the Linear Combinations of Plane Waves Belonging to Different IRs

Let us begin by considering the states at Γ . The plane-wave wave functions and energies are given, respectively, by

$$\begin{aligned}\Psi_{l_1 l_2}(\Gamma) &= e^{\frac{2\pi i}{a}(l_1 x + l_2 y)} \\ E_{l_1 l_2}(\Gamma) &= \frac{\hbar^2}{2ma^2}(l_1^2 + l_2^2).\end{aligned}\quad (5.34)$$

Therefore, the energies at Γ , the bands corresponding to that energy, and the degeneracy are as given in Table 5.7.

At $E_{\Gamma} = 0$, there is a single state (let us measure E in units of $\frac{\hbar^2}{2ma^2}$). The wave function is given by

$$\Psi_{00}(\Gamma) = 1 \quad (5.35)$$

It is unchanged by every operation of $\mathcal{G}_{\Gamma}$, the group of the wave vector Γ . Therefore, it belongs to the IR Γ_1 because every element of $\mathcal{G}_{\Gamma}$ operating on Ψ_{00} gives $+1 \times \Psi_{00}$ or every operation is represented by the 1×1 unit matrix $D = 1$. This, of course, is the Γ_1 representation. At $E_{\Gamma} = 1$, there are four states

$$\begin{aligned}\Psi_{\pm 1, 0}(\Gamma) &= e^{\pm \frac{2\pi i}{a}x}, \\ \Psi_{0, \pm 1}(\Gamma) &= e^{\pm \frac{2\pi i}{a}y}.\end{aligned}\quad (5.36)$$

t7.1 **Table 5.7.** Empty lattice energy at Γ and its degeneracy for a two dimensional square lattice

t7.2	$\frac{2ma^2}{h^2}E(\Gamma)$	Bands (l_1, l_2)	Degeneracy
t7.3	0	(0,0)	1
t7.4	1	($\pm 1, 0$); ($0, \pm 1$)	4
t7.5	2	($-1, \pm 1$); ($1, \pm 1$)	4
t7.6	4	($\pm 2, 0$); ($0, \pm 2$)	4
t7.7	5	($-1, \pm 2$); ($1, \pm 2$); ($-2, \pm 1$); ($2, \pm 1$)	8

The eight operations of $\mathcal{G}_\Gamma$ change x into $\pm x$ and y into $\pm y$ or x into $\pm y$ and y into $\pm x$. From the four function $\Psi_{\pm 1,0}$ and $\Psi_{0,\pm 1}$ we can form the following linear combinations

$$\Psi(\Gamma_1) = \cos \frac{2\pi x}{a} + \cos \frac{2\pi y}{a} \propto \Psi_{1,0} + \Psi_{-1,0} + \Psi_{0,1} + \Psi_{0,-1}, \quad (5.37)$$

$$\Psi(\Gamma_3) = \cos \frac{2\pi x}{a} - \cos \frac{2\pi y}{a} \propto \Psi_{1,0} + \Psi_{-1,0} - \Psi_{0,1} - \Psi_{0,-1}, \quad (5.38)$$

and

$$\Psi(\Gamma_5) = \begin{pmatrix} \Psi^{(1)}(\Gamma_5) \\ \Psi^{(2)}(\Gamma_5) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \sin \frac{2\pi x}{a} \\ \sin \frac{2\pi y}{a} \end{pmatrix} \propto \begin{pmatrix} \Psi_{1,0} - \Psi_{-1,0} \\ \Psi_{0,1} - \Psi_{0,-1} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (5.39)$$

Because the cosine function is an even function of its argument, every operation of $\mathcal{G}_\Gamma$ leaves $(\cos \frac{2\pi x}{a} + \cos \frac{2\pi y}{a})$ unchanged, and this function transforms according to the IR Γ_1 . The function $(\cos \frac{2\pi x}{a} - \cos \frac{2\pi y}{a})$ is left unchanged by operations (E, R_2, m_x, m_y) which change $x \rightarrow \pm x$, but it changes to minus itself under operations (R_1, R_3, m_+, m_-) which change $x \rightarrow \pm y$. Thus the operations of $\mathcal{G}_\Gamma$ operating on $(\cos \frac{2\pi x}{a} - \cos \frac{2\pi y}{a})$ do exactly the same thing as multiplying by the matrices belonging to the representation Γ_3 . In a similar way one can show that the operations of $\mathcal{G}_\Gamma$ operating on the column vector $\begin{pmatrix} \sin \frac{2\pi x}{a} \\ \sin \frac{2\pi y}{a} \end{pmatrix}$ have exactly the same effect as multiplying by the set of matrices forming the 2×2 representation Γ_5 .

Exercise

The reader should determine the linear combinations of plane waves at $E_\Gamma = 2$ and $E_\Gamma = 4$ belonging to the appropriate IRs of $\mathcal{G}_\Gamma$.

At $E_\Gamma = 5$ there are eight states

$$\begin{aligned} \Psi_{\pm 1, \pm 2}(\Gamma) &= e^{\pm \frac{2\pi i}{a}(\pm x \pm y)}, \\ \Psi_{\pm 2, \pm 1}(\Gamma) &= e^{\pm \frac{2\pi i}{a}(\pm 2x \pm y)}. \end{aligned} \quad (5.40)$$

The simplest way to determine the linear combinations belonging to IRs of $\mathcal{G}_\Gamma$ is first to form sine and cosine functions like

$$\begin{aligned}
\Psi_1 &= \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}x \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}2y, \\
\Psi_2 &= \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}2x \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}y, \\
\Psi_3 &= \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}x \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}2y, \\
\Psi_4 &= \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}2x \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}y, \\
\Psi_5 &= \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}x \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}2y, \\
\Psi_6 &= \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}2x \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}y, \\
\Psi_7 &= \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}x \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}2y, \\
\Psi_8 &= \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}2x \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}y.
\end{aligned}$$

It is easy to see how these Ψ_i 's are transformed by the operations of $\mathcal{G}_\Gamma$. 309
 For example, all operations of $\mathcal{G}_\Gamma$ which transform $x \rightarrow \pm x$ transform Ψ_1 310
 into itself; all operations which transform $x \rightarrow \pm y$ transform Ψ_1 into Ψ_2 . 311
 Therefore, the linear combination $\Psi_1 + \Psi_2$ is unchanged by every operation 312
 of $\mathcal{G}_\Gamma$ and belongs to Γ_1 . The linear combination $\Psi_1 - \Psi_2$ is unchanged by 313
 the operations which take $x \rightarrow \pm x$, but changed to $-(\Psi_1 - \Psi_2)$ by operations 314
 which take $x \rightarrow \pm y$. Thus $\Psi_1 - \Psi_2$ belongs to the IR Γ_3 . We find, by similar 315
 analysis 316

$$\begin{aligned}
\Psi(\Gamma_1) &= \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}x \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}2y + \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}2x \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}y = \Psi_1 + \Psi_2, \\
\Psi(\Gamma_3) &= \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}x \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}2y - \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}2x \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}y = \Psi_1 - \Psi_2, \\
\Psi(\Gamma_2) &= \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}x \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}2y - \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}2x \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}y = \Psi_3 - \Psi_4, \\
\Psi(\Gamma_4) &= \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}x \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}2y + \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}2x \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}y = \Psi_3 + \Psi_4, \\
\Psi^{(1)}(\Gamma_5) &= \begin{pmatrix} \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}x \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}2y \\ \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}y \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}2x \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \Psi_5 \\ \Psi_8 \end{pmatrix}, \\
\Psi^{(2)}(\Gamma_5) &= \begin{pmatrix} \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}x \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}2y \\ \sin \frac{2\pi}{a}y \cos \frac{2\pi}{a}2x \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \Psi_7 \\ \Psi_6 \end{pmatrix}.
\end{aligned} \tag{5.41}$$

5.4.2 Compatibility Relations

317

The character tables for $4mm$ and its principal subgroups are listed in Tables 318
 5.8-5.11. Notice that under the operation m_x , functions belonging to the IR's 319

t8.1 **Table 5.8.** Character table of the groups 4 mm and its principal subgroups

t8.2		$\Gamma_1 = M_1$	$\Gamma_2 = M_2$	$\Gamma_3 = M_3$	$\Gamma_4 = M_4$	$\Gamma_5 = M_5$
t8.3	E	1	1	1	1	2
t8.4	R_2	1	1	1	1	-2
t8.5	R_1, R_3	1	1	-1	-1	0
t8.6	m_x, m_y	1	-1	1	-1	0
t8.7	m_+, m_-	1	-1	-1	1	0

t9.1 **Table 5.9.** Character table of a principal subgroup $\mathcal{G}_X$

t9.2		X_1	X_2	X_3	X_4
t9.3	E	1	1	1	1
t9.4	R_2	1	1	-1	-1
t9.5	m_x	1	-1	1	-1
t9.6	m_y	1	-1	-1	1

t10.1 **Table 5.10.** Character table of a principal subgroup $\mathcal{G}_\Delta$

t10.2		Δ_1	Δ_2
t10.3	E	1	1
t10.4	m_x	1	-1

t11.1 **Table 5.11.** Character table of a principal subgroup $\mathcal{G}_\Sigma$

t11.2		Σ_1	Σ_2
t11.3	E	1	1
t11.4	m_+	1	-1

1. Γ_1 and Γ_3 are unchanged. 320
2. Γ_2 and Γ_4 change sign. 321
3. X_1 and X_3 are unchanged. 322
4. X_2 and X_4 change sign. 323
5. Δ_1 are unchanged. 324
6. Δ_2 change sign. 325

Because of this only a Δ_1 band can begin at an Γ_1 or Γ_3 band and only a Δ_1 band can end at an X_1 or X_3 band. We call such restrictions *compatibility relations*. For our purpose it is sufficient to know that

- A band Δ_1 can connect $\Gamma_1, \Gamma_3, \Gamma_5$ to X_1, X_3 . 329
- A band Δ_2 can connect $\Gamma_2, \Gamma_4, \Gamma_5$ to X_2, X_4 . 330
- A band Σ_1 can connect $\Gamma_1, \Gamma_4, \Gamma_5$ to M_1, M_4, M_5 . 331
- A band Σ_2 can connect $\Gamma_2, \Gamma_3, \Gamma_5$ to M_2, M_3, M_5 . 332

5.5 Using the Irreducible Representations in Evaluating Energy Bands

333

334

Instead of labelling energy bands at particular symmetry points or along particular symmetry lines by the integers (l_1, l_2) [or in three-dimensions (l_1, l_2, l_3)], it is possible to label the states by their energy and by the linear combination belonging to a particular IR of $\mathcal{G}_k$. Thus, at the Γ point of $E = 1 \cdot \frac{\hbar^2}{2ma^2}$ we may write the four states as

$$|l_1, l_2\rangle = \begin{cases} |1, 0\rangle = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{a}x} \\ |-1, 0\rangle = e^{-\frac{2\pi i}{a}x} \\ |1, 0\rangle = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{a}y} \\ |0, -1\rangle = e^{-\frac{2\pi i}{a}y} \end{cases} \quad (5.42)$$

or we can write (in units of $\frac{\hbar^2}{2ma^2} = 1$)

340

$$|E_\Gamma = 1, \Gamma_1\rangle = \cos \frac{2\pi x}{a} + \cos \frac{2\pi y}{a} \quad (5.43)$$

$$|E_\Gamma = 1, \Gamma_3\rangle = \cos \frac{2\pi x}{a} - \cos \frac{2\pi y}{a} \quad (5.44)$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} |E_\Gamma = 1, \Gamma_5\rangle_1 \\ |E_\Gamma = 1, \Gamma_5\rangle_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \Psi^{(1)}(\Gamma_5) \\ \Psi^{(2)}(\Gamma_5) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \sin \frac{2\pi x}{a} \\ \sin \frac{2\pi y}{a} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (5.45)$$

There is a distinct advantage to using the basis functions belonging to IRs of $\mathcal{G}_\Gamma$ that results from the theorem on matrix elements.

341

342

Any matrix elements of the periodic potential (i.e. an operator with the full symmetry of the point group) between states belonging to different IR's is zero. Thus, the secular equation becomes

343

344

345

$$\begin{vmatrix} \varepsilon_0(\Gamma_1) - E & \langle \Gamma_1 0 | V | 1\Gamma_1 \rangle & \langle \Gamma_1 0 | V | 1\Gamma_3 \rangle & \langle \Gamma_1 0 | V | 1\Gamma_5 \rangle_1 \cdots \\ \langle \Gamma_1 1 | V | 0\Gamma_1 \rangle & \varepsilon_1(\Gamma_1) - E & \langle \Gamma_1 1 | V | 1\Gamma_3 \rangle & \langle \Gamma_1 1 | V | 1\Gamma_5 \rangle_1 \cdots \\ \langle \Gamma_3 1 | V | 0\Gamma_1 \rangle & \langle \Gamma_3 1 | V | 1\Gamma_1 \rangle & \varepsilon_1(\Gamma_3) - E & \langle \Gamma_3 1 | V | 1\Gamma_5 \rangle_1 \cdots \\ 1 \langle \Gamma_5 1 | V | 0\Gamma_1 \rangle & 1 \langle \Gamma_5 1 | V | 1\Gamma_1 \rangle & 1 \langle \Gamma_5 1 | V | 1\Gamma_3 \rangle_1 & \varepsilon_1(\Gamma_5) - E \cdots \\ 2 \langle \Gamma_5 1 | V | 0\Gamma_1 \rangle & 2 \langle \Gamma_5 1 | V | 1\Gamma_1 \rangle & \vdots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{vmatrix} = 0 \quad (5.46)$$

Equation (5.46) reduces to

346

$$\begin{vmatrix} \varepsilon_0(\Gamma_1) - E & \langle \Gamma_1 0 | V | 1\Gamma_1 \rangle & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ \langle \Gamma_1 1 | V | 0\Gamma_1 \rangle & \varepsilon_1(\Gamma_1) - E & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & \varepsilon_1(\Gamma_3) - E & 0 & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \varepsilon_1(\Gamma_5) - E & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \cdots \end{vmatrix} = 0 \quad (5.47)$$

5.5 Using the Irreducible Representations in Evaluating Energy Bands 147

Here, $\varepsilon_n(\Gamma_j) = \frac{\hbar^2}{2ma^2}n^2 + \langle \Gamma_j n | V | \Gamma_j n \rangle$. There are two things to be noted: 347

1. The matrix elements of V between different IR's vanish, so many off- 348
diagonal matrix elements are zero. This reduces the determinantal equation 349
to a block diagonal form. 350
2. The diagonal matrix elements $\langle \Gamma_j n | V | \Gamma_j n \rangle$ are, in general, different for 351
different IRs Γ_j . This lifts the degeneracy at the symmetry points and 352
splits the fourfold degeneracy into nondegenerate states Γ_1 and Γ_3 and 353
one doubly degenerate state Γ_5 at $E(\Gamma) \simeq 1 \cdot \frac{\hbar^2}{2ma^2}$. 354

When the energy bands along Δ and along X are classified according to the 355
IRs of the appropriate symmetry group, a band structure like that sketched 356
in Fig. 5.7 results. The degeneracies at Γ and X are lifted by the diagonal 357
matrix elements of the potential. The rare case when two different IRs have 358
the same value of the diagonal matrix element of $V(r)$ is called as *accidental* 359
degeneracy. Two Δ -bands belonging to Δ_1 , or two belonging to Δ_2 cannot 360
cross because they are coupled by the nonvanishing matrix elements of $V(r)$ 361
between the two bands. However, a Δ_1 band can cross a Δ_2 band because 362

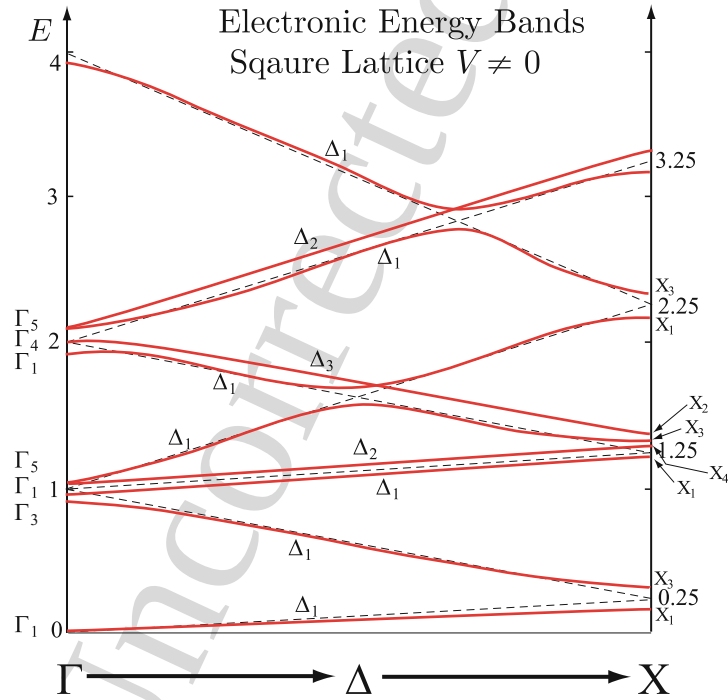


Fig. 5.7. Electronic energy bands of a square lattice with $V \neq 0$ along the line $\Gamma \rightarrow \Delta \rightarrow X$. The bands are schematic, showing where splittings and anticrossings occur on the simplified diagram (Fig. 5.6) which connects $E(\Gamma)$ and $E(X)$ by *straight lines*

148 5 Use of Elementary Group Theory in Calculating Band Structure

$\langle \Psi_{\Delta_1} | V(r) | \Psi_{\Delta_2} \rangle = 0$. Bands that are widely separated in energy (e.g. the 363
bands at $E(\Gamma) = 1$ and $E(\Gamma) = 4$) can be treated by perturbation theory as 364
was done in the nearly free electron model. One can observe that degeneracies 365
do not occur frequently for bands belonging to the same IR's at Γ (or at X) 366
until the energies become high. 367

5.6 Empty Lattice Bands for Cubic Structure 368

5.6.1 Point Group of a Cubic Structure 369

Every operation of the cubic group will turn x into $\pm x, \pm y, \pm z$. It is easy to 370
see that there are 48 different operations that can be listed as follows: 371

1. $x \rightarrow \pm x, y \rightarrow \pm y, z \rightarrow \pm z$. 372
2. $x \rightarrow \pm x, y \rightarrow \pm z, z \rightarrow \pm y$. 373
3. $x \rightarrow \pm y, y \rightarrow \pm x, z \rightarrow \pm z$. 374
4. $x \rightarrow \pm y, y \rightarrow \pm z, z \rightarrow \pm x$ 375
5. $x \rightarrow \pm z, y \rightarrow \pm y, z \rightarrow \pm x$ 376
6. $x \rightarrow \pm z, y \rightarrow \pm x, z \rightarrow \pm y$ 377

Since there are $\pm$ signs we have two possibilities at each step, giving $2^3 = 8$ 378
operations on each line or 48 operations all together. 379

We can also think of the 48 operations in terms of 24 proper rotations and 380
24 improper rotations: 381

Proper Rotations 382

E: Identity $\rightarrow$ 1 operation 383

4: Rotation by $\pm 90^\circ$ about x -, y -, or z -axis $\rightarrow$ six operations 384

4^2 : Rotation by $\pm 180^\circ$ about x -, y -, or z -axis $\rightarrow$ three operations 385

2: Rotation by $\pm 180^\circ$ about the six $[110], [\bar{1}\bar{1}0], [101], [10\bar{1}], [011], [01\bar{1}]$ axes $\rightarrow$ 386
six operations 387

3: Rotation by $\pm 120^\circ$ about the four $\langle 111 \rangle$ axes $\rightarrow$ eight operations Hence, 388
we have 24 proper rotations in total. 389

Improper Rotations 390

Multiply each by J (inversion operator: $\mathbf{r} \rightarrow -\mathbf{r}$) to have 24 improper rota- 391
tions. 392

The 24 improper rotations are obtained by multiplying each of the 24 394
proper rotations by J , the inversion operation ($\mathbf{r} \rightarrow -\mathbf{r}$). Clearly there are 10 395
classes and 48 operations. Using the theorem 396

$$\sum_{i=1R} l_i^2 = g$$

we can see that there are 10 IRs, four one-dimensional, and two two- 397
dimensional, and four three-dimensional ones. 398

$$2\{1^2 + 1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + 3^2\} = 48.$$

It is probably worthwhile to sit down with a simple cube and work out the following rotations:

1. E: $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix}.$

2. Rotation of $\pm \frac{\pi}{2}$ about x, y, z axes,

$$C_x(1): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} x \\ z \\ -y \end{pmatrix}, C_x(-1): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} x \\ -z \\ y \end{pmatrix}$$

$$C_y(1): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -z \\ y \\ x \end{pmatrix}, C_y(-1): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} z \\ y \\ -x \end{pmatrix}$$

$$C_z(1): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} y \\ -x \\ z \end{pmatrix}, C_z(-1): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -y \\ x \\ z \end{pmatrix}$$

3. Rotation of π about x, y, z axes,

$$C_x(2): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} x \\ -y \\ -z \end{pmatrix}, C_y(2): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -x \\ y \\ -z \end{pmatrix}$$

$$C_z(2): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -x \\ -y \\ z \end{pmatrix}$$

4. Rotation of π about the six $\langle 110 \rangle$ axes,

$$C_{x,y}(2): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} y \\ x \\ -z \end{pmatrix}, C_{x,-y}(2): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -y \\ -x \\ -z \end{pmatrix}$$

$$C_{y,z}(2): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -x \\ z \\ y \end{pmatrix}, C_{y,-z}(2): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -x \\ -z \\ -y \end{pmatrix}$$

$$C_{z,x}(2): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} z \\ -y \\ -x \end{pmatrix}, C_{z,-x}(2): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -z \\ -y \\ -x \end{pmatrix}$$

5. Rotation of $\pm \frac{2\pi}{3}$ about the six $\langle 111 \rangle$ axes,

$$C_{x,y,z}(+): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} y \\ z \\ x \end{pmatrix}, C_{x,y,z}(-): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} z \\ x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$$

$$C_{x,y,-z}(+): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -z \\ x \\ -y \end{pmatrix}, C_{x,y,-z}(-): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} y \\ -z \\ -x \end{pmatrix}$$

$$C_{x,-y,z}(+): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -y \\ -z \\ x \end{pmatrix}, C_{x,-y,z}(-): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} x \\ -x \\ -y \end{pmatrix}$$

t12.1 **Table 5.12.** Characters and IRs of cubic group

t12.2	(number of operations)	(1)	(3)	(6)	(6)	(8)	(1)	(3)	(6)	(6)	(8)
t12.3	<i>class</i> →	<i>E</i>	<i>4</i> ²	<i>4</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>J</i>	<i>J4</i> ²	<i>J4</i>	<i>J2</i>	<i>J3</i>
t12.4	<i>representation</i> ↓										
t12.5	Γ_1 (A_{1g})	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
t12.6	Γ_2 (A_{2g})	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1
t12.7	Γ_{12} (E_g)	2	2	0	0	-1	2	2	0	0	-1
t12.8	Γ'_{15} (T_{1g})	3	-1	1	-1	0	3	-1	1	-1	0
t12.9	Γ'_{25} (T_{2g})	3	-1	-1	1	0	3	-1	-1	1	0
t12.10	Γ'_1 (A_{1u})	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1
t12.11	Γ'_2 (A_{2u})	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1
t12.12	Γ'_{12} (E_u)	2	2	0	0	-1	-2	-2	0	0	1
t12.13	Γ_{15} (T_{1u})	3	-1	1	-1	0	-3	1	-1	1	0
t12.14	Γ_{25} (T_{2u})	3	-1	-1	1	0	-3	1	1	-1	0

$$C_{x,-y,-z}(+): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -y \\ z \\ -x \end{pmatrix}, \quad C_{x,-y,-z}(-): \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -z \\ -x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \quad 417$$

6. All of the above operations multiplied by the inversion **J**, 418

$$\mathbf{J} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -x \\ -y \\ -z \end{pmatrix}$$

gives the 24 improper rotations. 419

Characters and irreducible representations of the cubic group are listed in 420
Table 5.12. 421

5.6.2 Face Centered Cubic Lattice 422

The primitive translation vectors of a face centered cubic lattice are given by 423

$$\mathbf{a}_1 = \frac{a}{2}(\hat{x} + \hat{y}), \quad \mathbf{a}_2 = \frac{a}{2}(\hat{z} + \hat{x}), \quad \mathbf{a}_3 = \frac{a}{2}(\hat{y} + \hat{z}). \quad (5.48)$$

The primitive vectors of the reciprocal lattice (including the factor 2π) are 424

$$\mathbf{b}_1 = \frac{2\pi}{a}(-\hat{x} - \hat{y} + \hat{z}), \quad \mathbf{b}_2 = \frac{2\pi}{a}(-\hat{x} + \hat{y} - \hat{z}), \quad \mathbf{b}_3 = \frac{2\pi}{a}(\hat{x} - \hat{y} - \hat{z}). \quad (5.49)$$

An arbitrary vector of the reciprocal lattice can be written as 425

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{k}} &= h_1 \mathbf{b}_1 + h_2 \mathbf{b}_2 + h_3 \mathbf{b}_3, \\ \mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{k}} &= \frac{2\pi}{a} [(-h_1 - h_2 + h_3)\hat{x} + (-h_1 + h_2 - h_3)\hat{y} + (h_1 - h_2 - h_3)\hat{z}]. \end{aligned} \quad (5.50)$$

Brillouin Zone 426

There are eight shortest and six next shortest reciprocal lattice vectors 427
from the origin of reciprocal space to neighboring points (remember that the 428
reciprocal lattice of an FCC is a BCC). They are given by 429

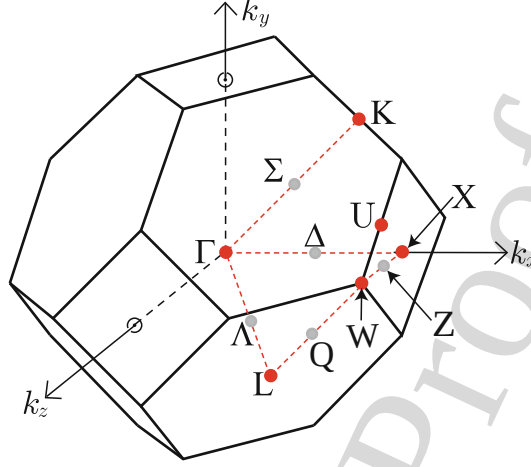


Fig. 5.8. The first Brillouin zone of FCC lattice

1. The eight vectors $\frac{2\pi}{a} [\pm\hat{x}, \pm\hat{y}, \pm\hat{z}]$ whose length is $|G| = \frac{2\pi}{a}\sqrt{3}$. 430
2. The six vectors $\frac{2\pi}{a}(\pm 2\hat{x}), \frac{2\pi}{a}(\pm 2\hat{y}), \frac{2\pi}{a}(\pm 2\hat{z})$ whose length is $|G| = \frac{2\pi}{a} \cdot 2$. 431

The first Brillouin zone is the volume enclosed by the planes which are the 432
perpendicular bisectors of these 14 $\mathbf{G}$ -vectors. The first Brillouin zone of FCC 433
lattice has six square faces perpendicular to (100) and eight hexagonal faces 434
perpendicular to (111). (See Fig. 5.8.) 435

The names of high symmetry points are labelled in Fig. 5.8. Γ is the origin. 436
Arbitrary points along (100), (110), and (111) directions are called Δ , Σ , and 437
 Λ , respectively. The special points X , L , K , and W are 438

$$X = \frac{2\pi}{a}(1, 0, 0), L = \frac{2\pi}{a}\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right), K = \frac{2\pi}{a}\left(\frac{3}{4}, \frac{3}{4}, 0\right), W = \frac{2\pi}{a}\left(\frac{1}{2}, 1, 0\right).$$

The energy of a free electron is given by 439

$$E = \frac{h^2}{2ma^2} [(l_1 + \xi)^2 + (l_2 + \eta)^2 + (l_3 + \zeta)^2] \quad (5.51) \quad 440$$

where 441

$$l_1 = -h_1 - h_2 + h_3, l_2 = -h_1 + h_2 - h_3, l_3 = h_1 - h_2 - h_3$$

and h_i are integers. If we measure energy in units of $\frac{h^2}{2ma^2}$, then 442

$$\begin{aligned} E(\Gamma) &= l_1^2 + l_2^2 + l_3^2, \\ E(X) &= (l_1 + 1)^2 + l_2^2 + l_3^2, \\ E(L) &= (l_1 + \frac{1}{2})^2 + (l_2 + \frac{1}{2})^2 + (l_3 + \frac{1}{2})^2. \end{aligned} \quad (5.52)$$

One should obtain a table similar to Table 5.13. From the table you con- 443
structed, you can draw the empty lattice band structure, showing the bands 444
going from $\Gamma \rightarrow X$ and from $\Gamma \rightarrow L$. 445

t13.1 **Table 5.13.** Energies for FCC empty lattice $E(\Gamma) \leq 8$. Energy is measured in units of $\frac{h^2}{2ma^2}$

t13.2	h_1	h_2	h_3	l_1	l_2	l_3	$E(\Gamma)$	$E(X)$	$E(L)$
t13.3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	$\frac{3}{4}$
t13.4	1	0	0	-1	-1	1	3	2	$\frac{11}{4}$
t13.5	-1	0	0	1	1	-1	3	6	$\frac{19}{4}$
t13.6	0	1	0	-1	1	-1	3	2	$\frac{11}{4}$
t13.7	0	-1	0	1	-1	1	3	6	$\frac{19}{4}$
t13.8	0	0	1	1	-1	-1	3	6	$\frac{11}{4}$
t13.9	0	0	-1	-1	1	1	3	2	$\frac{19}{4}$
t13.10	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	3	2	$\frac{3}{4}$
t13.11	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	3	6	$\frac{27}{4}$
t13.12	1	1	0	-2	0	0	4	1	$\frac{11}{4}$
t13.13	-1	-1	0	2	0	0	4	9	$\frac{27}{4}$
t13.14	1	0	1	0	-2	0	4	5	$\frac{11}{4}$
t13.15	-1	0	-1	0	2	0	4	5	$\frac{27}{4}$
t13.16	0	1	1	0	0	-2	4	5	$\frac{11}{4}$
t13.17	0	-1	-1	0	0	2	4	5	$\frac{27}{4}$
t13.18	1	-1	0	0	-2	2	8	9	$\frac{35}{4}$
t13.19	-1	1	0	0	2	-2	8	9	$\frac{35}{4}$
t13.20	1	0	-1	-2	0	2	8	5	$\frac{35}{4}$
t13.21	-1	0	1	2	0	-2	8	13	$\frac{35}{4}$
t13.22	0	1	-1	-2	2	0	8	5	$\frac{35}{4}$
t13.23	0	-1	1	2	-2	0	8	13	$\frac{35}{4}$
t13.24	2	1	1	-2	-2	0	8	5	$\frac{19}{4}$
t13.25	-2	-1	-1	2	2	0	8	13	$\frac{51}{4}$
t13.26	1	2	1	-2	0	-2	8	5	$\frac{19}{4}$
t13.27	-1	-2	-1	2	0	2	8	13	$\frac{51}{4}$
t13.28	1	1	2	0	-2	-2	8	9	$\frac{19}{4}$
t13.29	-1	-1	-2	0	2	2	8	9	$\frac{51}{4}$

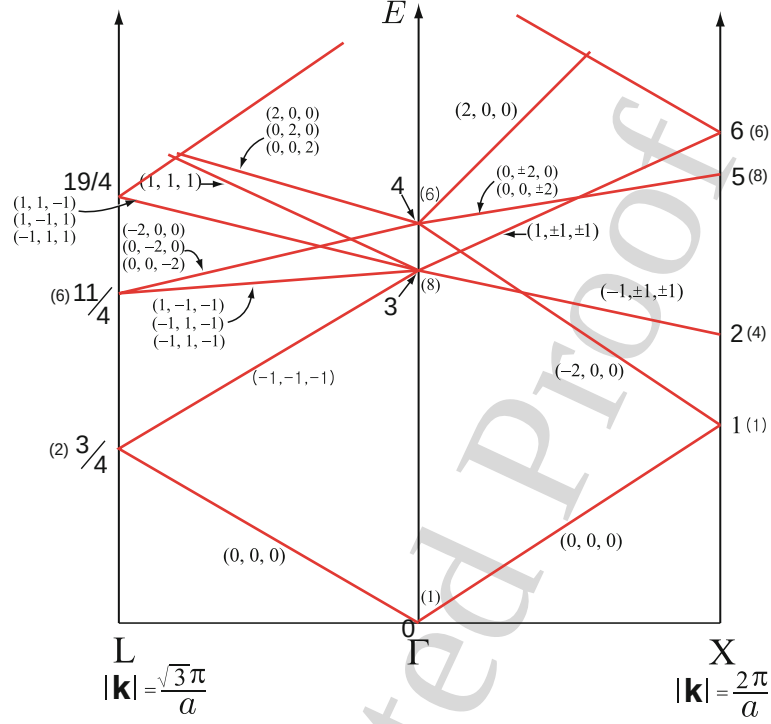


Fig. 5.9. Empty lattice band of the FCC lattice. The energy E is measured in units of $\frac{h^2}{2ma^2}$ and plotted as a function of k . Each band is schematically represented by a straight line going from $E_l(\Gamma)$ to $E_l(X)$ or $E_l(L)$ even though the bands really have a more complicated (quadratic form) dependence of the Bloch wave vector $\mathbf{k}$. The set of integers (l_1, l_2, l_3) is indicated for each band

This empty lattice band structure is shown in Fig. 5.9. Note that $\mathbf{k} = \frac{2\pi}{a}\hat{x}$ at X and $\mathbf{k} = \frac{\pi}{a}(\hat{x} + \hat{y} + \hat{z})$ at L. The energy E is sketched as a function of k .

5.6.3 Body Centered Cubic Lattice

The primitive translations of the reciprocal lattice (including 2π) are

$$\mathbf{b}_1 = \frac{2\pi}{a}(\hat{x} + \hat{z}), \mathbf{b}_2 = \frac{2\pi}{a}(-\hat{x} + \hat{y}), \mathbf{b}_3 = \frac{2\pi}{a}(-\hat{y} + \hat{z}). \quad (5.53)$$

Therefore a general reciprocal lattice vector $\mathbf{G}_{h_1 h_2 h_3}$ is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{G}_{h_1 h_2 h_3} &= \frac{2\pi}{a} [h_1 \mathbf{b}_1 + h_2 \mathbf{b}_2 + h_3 \mathbf{b}_3] \\ &= \frac{2\pi}{a} [(h_1 - h_2)\hat{x} + (h_2 - h_3)\hat{y} + (h_3 + h_1)\hat{z}]. \end{aligned} \quad (5.54)$$

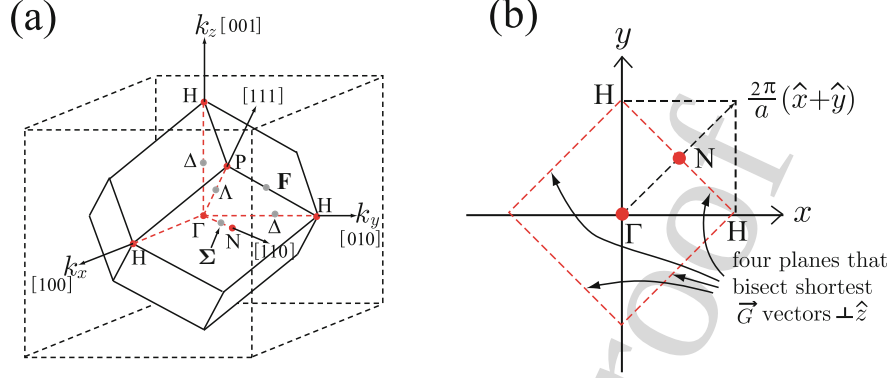


Fig. 5.10. (a) First Brillouin zone of the BCC lattice, (b) cross section of the four planes bisecting the $\mathbf{G} = \pm \frac{2\pi}{a}(\hat{x} \pm \hat{y})$ perpendicular to the z -axis of the first Brillouin zone of a BCC lattice

The 12 shortest reciprocal lattice vectors are

$$\pm \frac{2\pi}{a}(\hat{x} \pm \hat{y}), \pm \frac{2\pi}{a}(\hat{y} \pm \hat{z}), \pm \frac{2\pi}{a}(\hat{x} \pm \hat{z}).$$

They have length $\frac{2\pi}{a}\sqrt{2}$. The first Brillouin zone is formed by the 12 planes that bisect these 12 shortest reciprocal lattice vectors. (See Fig. 5.10a.)

Figure 5.10b shows the cross section of the four planes that bisect the shortest $\mathbf{G} = \pm \frac{2\pi}{a}(\hat{x} \pm \hat{y})$ perpendicular to the z -axis of the first Brillouin zone of the BCC lattice. The empty lattice energy bands can be written by

$$E_{l_1 l_2 l_3} = \frac{\hbar^2}{2ma^2} [(l_1 + \xi)^2 + (l_2 + \eta)^2 + (l_3 + \zeta)^2] \quad (5.55)$$

where

$$l_1 = h_1 - h_2, \quad l_2 = h_2 - h_3, \quad l_3 = h_3 + h_1,$$

and h_i are integers. We use the symbols of $\mathbf{k} = \frac{2\pi}{a}(\xi, \eta, \zeta)$, $H = \frac{2\pi}{a}(1, 0, 0)$, $P = \frac{2\pi}{a}(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$, and $N = \frac{2\pi}{a}(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, 0)$. Thus, we have, in units of $\frac{\hbar^2}{2ma^2}$

$$\begin{aligned} E_{l_1 l_2 l_3}(\Gamma) &= l_1^2 + l_2^2 + l_3^2, \\ E_{l_1 l_2 l_3}(H) &= (l_1 + 1)^2 + l_2^2 + l_3^2, \\ E_{l_1 l_2 l_3}(P) &= (l_1 + \frac{1}{2})^2 + (l_2 + \frac{1}{2})^2 + (l_3 + \frac{1}{2})^2, \\ E_{l_1 l_2 l_3}(N) &= (l_1 + \frac{1}{2})^2 + (l_2 + \frac{1}{2})^2 + l_3^2. \end{aligned} \quad (5.56)$$

Since $l_1 = h_1 - h_2$, $l_2 = h_2 - h_3$, $l_3 = h_3 + h_1$, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} E(\Gamma) &= (h_1 - h_2)^2 + (h_2 - h_3)^2 + (h_1 + h_3)^2, \\ E(H) &= (h_1 - h_2 + 1)^2 + (h_2 - h_3)^2 + (h_1 + h_3)^2, \\ E(P) &= (h_1 - h_2 + \frac{1}{2})^2 + (h_2 - h_3 + \frac{1}{2})^2 + (h_1 + h_3 + \frac{1}{2})^2, \\ E(N) &= (h_1 - h_2 + \frac{1}{2})^2 + (h_2 - h_3 + \frac{1}{2})^2 + (h_1 + h_3)^2. \end{aligned} \quad (5.57)$$

5.7 Energy Bands of Common Semiconductors

463

Many common semiconductors which crystallize in the cubic zincblende structure have valence-conduction band structures that are quite similar in gross features. This results from the fact that each atom (or ion) has four electrons outside a closed shell and there are two atoms per unit cell. For example, silicon has the electron configuration $[\text{Ne}]3s^23p^2$, i.e., two $3s$ electrons and two $3p$ electrons outside a closed neon core. With two silicon atoms per unit cell, this gives eight electrons per unit cell. The empty lattice has a single Γ_1 band at $E_\Gamma = 0$ and 8-fold degenerate bands at $E_\Gamma = 3$. The eightfold degeneracy is lifted by the periodic potential, so the valence and conduction bands at Γ will arise from these eight bands. Germanium has the electron configuration of $[\text{Ar}]3d^{10}4s^24p^2$, and III-V compounds like GaAs $\{Ga ([\text{Ar}]3d^{10}4s^24p^1) As ([\text{Ar}]3d^{10}4s^24p^3)\}$ look just like Ge if one $4p$ electron transfers from As to Ga leaving a somewhat ionic Ga^-As^+ molecule in the unit cell instead of two Ge atoms. The same is true if any III-V elements replace a pair of Si atoms or Ge atoms in a zincblende structure.

A nice example of the use of group concepts in studying energy band structure is a simple nearly free electron type model used to give a rather good description of the valence-conduction band semiconductors with zincblende structures. We will give a rough sketch of the calculation, referring the reader to an article by D. Brust². To describe the band structures of Si and Ge, Brust use the following 15 plane-wave wave functions corresponding to the 15 bands at Γ which have energy $E \leq 4$. (See the 15 bands at Γ in Fig. 5.9.) We can write these 15 plane waves as w_i , with $i = 1, 2, 3, \dots, 15$ defined by

$$\begin{aligned} w_0 &= 1 \quad E_0(\Gamma) = 0, \\ w_1 &= w_5^* = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{a}(x+y+z)} \quad E_1(\Gamma) = E_5(\Gamma) = 3, \\ w_2 &= w_6^* = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{a}(x-y-z)} \quad E_2(\Gamma) = E_6(\Gamma) = 3, \\ w_3 &= w_7^* = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{a}(-x+y-z)} \quad E_3(\Gamma) = E_7(\Gamma) = 3, \\ w_4 &= w_8^* = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{a}(-x-y+z)} \quad E_4(\Gamma) = E_8(\Gamma) = 3, \\ w_9 &= w_{12}^* = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{a}x} \quad E_9(\Gamma) = E_{12}(\Gamma) = 4, \\ w_{10} &= w_{13}^* = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{a}y} \quad E_{10}(\Gamma) = E_{13}(\Gamma) = 4, \\ w_{11} &= w_{14}^* = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{a}z} \quad E_{11}(\Gamma) = E_{14}(\Gamma) = 4, \end{aligned}$$

From these 15 functions $w_0, w_1, \dots, w_{14}$, one can construct linear superpositions belonging to IRs of the group of the wave vector Γ , X, L, etc. Some examples are

² D. Brust, Phys. Rev. **134**, A1337 (1964).

156 5 Use of Elementary Group Theory in Calculating Band Structure

$$\begin{aligned}
\Psi_1 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{V}} w_0 && \text{belongs to } \Gamma_1, \\
\Psi_2 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{8V}} [w_1 - w_2 - w_3 - w_4 + w_5 - w_6 - w_7 - w_8] && \text{belongs to } \Gamma_1, \\
&\vdots && \vdots \\
\Psi_9 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{8V}} [w_1 + w_2 - w_3 + w_4 - w_5 - w_6 + w_7 - w_8] && \text{belongs to } \Gamma_{15}, \\
\Psi_{10} &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{8V}} [w_9 + w_{10} + w_{11} - w_{12} - w_{13} - w_{14}] && \text{belongs to } \Gamma'_2, \\
&\vdots && \vdots \\
\Psi_{15} &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2V}} [w_{11} + w_{14}] && \text{belongs to } \Gamma_{25}.
\end{aligned}$$

If you use these combinations of plane waves, the Schrödinger equation breaks up into a block diagonal 15×15 matrix as shown in (5.58). 490 491

$$\begin{vmatrix}
\Gamma_1 & & & & & & \\
& \Gamma'_{25}[3 \times 3] & & & & & \\
& & \Gamma_{15}[3 \times 3] & & & & \\
& & & \Gamma'_2 & & & \\
& & & & \Gamma_1 & & \\
& & & & & \Gamma_1 & \\
& & & & & & \Gamma_{12}[2 \times 2] \\
& & & & & & & \Gamma_{25}[3 \times 3]
\end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (5.58)$$

Here Γ_1 and Γ'_2 are 1×1 , Γ_{12} is a 2×2 , and Γ_{15} , Γ_{25} , and Γ'_{25} are 3×3 matrices, 492 respectively. Off diagonal elements and bands in higher empty lattice states 493 are treated by standard nondegenerate perturbation theory. 494

Now the question arises “What do we use for the periodic potential 495 $V(r) = \sum_{l_1 l_2 l_3} V_{l_1 l_2 l_3} e^{i\mathbf{K}_1 \cdot \mathbf{r}}$?” Brust simply treated the parameters $V_{l_1 l_2 l_3}$ as 496 phenomenological coefficients to be obtained by fitting band gaps and effective 497 masses measured experimentally or fitting more detailed first-principles band 498 structure calculations. He found that he could obtain a reasonably satisfactory 499 fit by keeping only three parameters: 500

$$\begin{aligned}
V(3) &= V_{l_1 l_2 l_3} \text{ when } l_1^2 + l_2^2 + l_3^2 = 3, \\
V(8) &= V_{l_1 l_2 l_3} \text{ when } l_1^2 + l_2^2 + l_3^2 = 8, \\
V(11) &= V_{l_1 l_2 l_3} \text{ when } l_1^2 + l_2^2 + l_3^2 = 11.
\end{aligned} \quad (5.59)$$

Remember, by cubic symmetry, $V_{1,1,1} = V_{1,1,-1} = V_{1,-1,-1} = V_{-1,-1,-1}$ etc. 501 For Si, Brust found that $V(3) \simeq -0.21$ Ry, $V(8) \simeq 0.04$ Ry, $V(11) \simeq 0.08$ Ry. 502 For Ge he found that $V(3) \simeq -0.23$ Ry, $V(8) \simeq 0.00$ Ry, $V(11) \simeq 0.06$ Ry. 503

The band structure obtained for Si is illustrated in Fig. 5.11. This diagram 504 shows 11 bands at Γ out of the 15 bands we put into the calculation. Since 505 there are two atoms per unit cell and four valence electrons per atom, we 506 have eight electrons per unit cell or enough to fill four bands. Thus the Γ'_{25} 507 state is the top of the valence band. The conduction band is Γ_{15} at Γ , but 508 the minimum is at near the X-point, so the conduction band minimum has 509 six valleys, each very near one of the six X points. 510

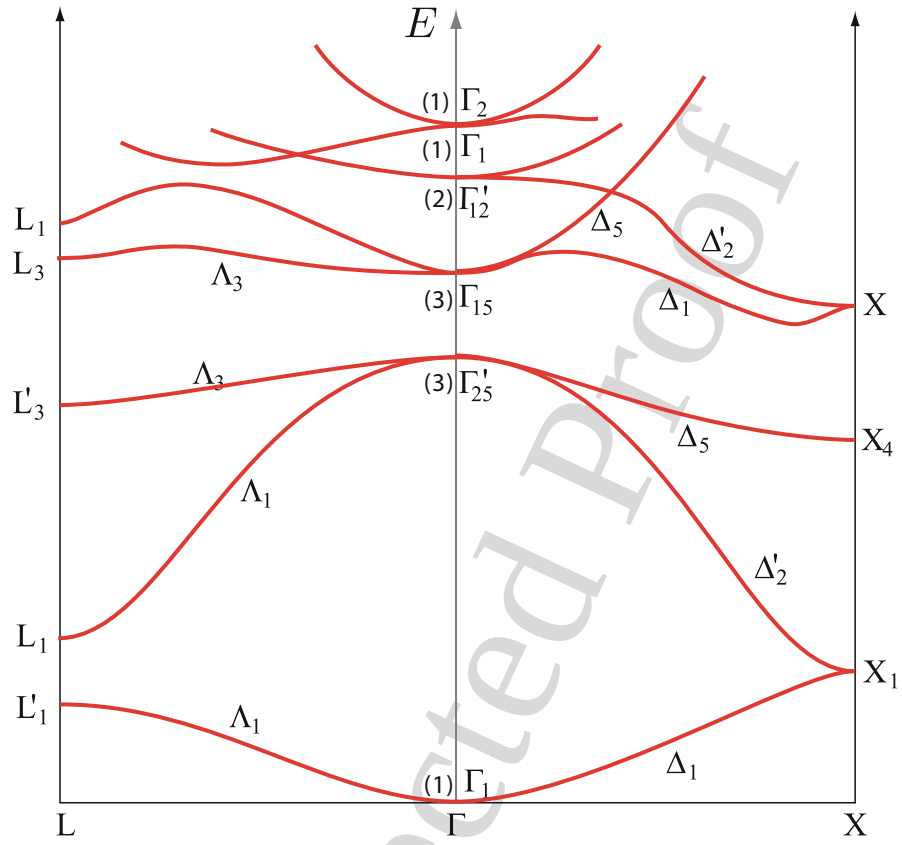


Fig. 5.11. Simple band structure of Si

Problems

511

5.1. At $E(X) = 0.25 \frac{h^2}{2ma^2}$ there are two degenerate bands. At $E(X) = 1.25 \frac{h^2}{2ma^2}$ there are four. Determine the linear combinations of degenerate states at these points belonging to IR's of $\mathcal{G}_X$. Do the same for $E(\Gamma) = 1 \left[\frac{h^2}{2ma^2} \right]$ and $2 \left[\frac{h^2}{2ma^2} \right]$

515

5.2. Make a table, with values of h_1, h_2, h_3 , of the resulting l_1, l_2, l_3 and $E(\Gamma)$, $E(X)$, $E(L)$ for all bands with $E(\Gamma) \leq 4$ for an FCC lattice.

516

517

5.3. Use your knowledge of the irreducible representations at $E(\Gamma) = 0, 1, 2$ (in units of $\frac{h^2}{2ma^2}$) and at $E(X) = 0.25$ and 1.25 , together with the compatibility relations to determine the irreducible representations for each of these bands along the line Δ .

518

519

520

521

5.4. Tabulate $E(\Gamma), E(H), E(P)$ for all bands that have $E(\Gamma) \leq 4$. Then sketch E vs. $\mathbf{k}$ along $\Delta(\Gamma \rightarrow H)$ and along $\Lambda(\Gamma \rightarrow P)$.

522

523

5.5. Do the same as above in part 4 for simple cubic lattice where

524

$$E_l = \frac{h^2}{2ma^2} [(l_1 + \xi)^2 + (l_2 + \eta)^2 + (l_3 + \zeta)^2]$$

for Γ , $X = \frac{\pi}{a}(1, 0, 0)$, and $R = \frac{\pi}{a}(1, 1, 1)$. Sketch E vs. $\mathbf{k}$ along $\Gamma \rightarrow X$ and along $\Gamma \rightarrow R$ for all bands having $E(\Gamma) \leq 4$.

525

526

5.6. Use the irreducible representations at $E(X) = 0.25$ to evaluate

527

$$V_{ij} = \langle \Psi_{X_i}(0.25) | V(\mathbf{r}) | \Psi_{X_j}(0.25) \rangle$$

where $\Psi_{X_i}(0.25)$ is the wave function at $E(X) = 0.25$ belonging to the irreducible representation X_i .

528

529

- (a) Show that $V_{ij} = 0$ if $i \neq j$.
- (b) Show that the diagonal matrix elements give the same energies (and band gap) as obtained by degenerate perturbation theory with the original plane waves.

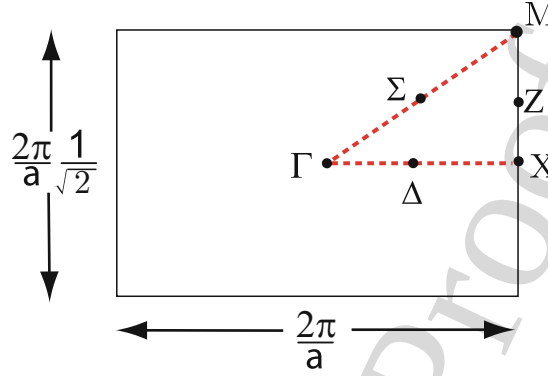
530

531

532

533

5.7. A two dimensional rectangular lattice has a reciprocal lattice whose primitive translations, including the 2π , are $\mathbf{b}_1 = \frac{2\pi}{a}\hat{x}$ and $\mathbf{b}_2 = \frac{2\pi}{a}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\hat{y}$.



- List the operations belonging to G_Γ .
- Do the same for G_X and G_Δ .
- For the empty lattice the wave functions and energies can be written $\Psi_l(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{r}) = e^{i(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}_l) \cdot \mathbf{r}}$ and $E_l(\mathbf{k}) = \frac{\hbar^2}{2m}(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}_l)^2$. Here, $\mathbf{K}_l = l_1 \mathbf{b}_1 + l_2 \mathbf{b}_2$, and l_1 and l_2 are integers. Tabulate the energies at Γ and at X for $(l_1, l_2) = (0,0), (0, \pm 1), (-1,0), (1,0),$ and $(-1, \pm 1)$.
- Sketch (straight lines are OK) E vs. k along the line Δ (going from Γ to X) for these bands.
- Two degenerate bands at the point $E(\Gamma) = 0.5$ connect to $E(X) = 0.75$. Write down the wave functions for an arbitrary value of k_x for these two bands.
- From these wave functions, construct the linear combinations belonging to irreducible representations of G_Δ .

5.8. Graphene has a two-dimensional regular hexagonal reciprocal lattice whose primitive translations are $\mathbf{b}_1 = \frac{2\pi}{a}(1, -\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}})$ and $\mathbf{b}_2 = \frac{2\pi}{a}(0, \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}})$.

- List the operations belonging to G_Γ .
- Do the same for G_K and G_M . Note that $\mathbf{k}_K = \frac{2\pi}{a}(\frac{2}{3}, 0)$ and $\mathbf{k}_M = \frac{2\pi}{a}(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2\sqrt{3}})$.
- Write down the empty lattice wave functions and energies $\Psi_l(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{r})$ and $E_l(\mathbf{k})$ at Γ and K .
- Tabulate the energies at Γ and at K for $(l_1, l_2) = (0,0), (0, \pm 1), (\pm 1, 0), (-1, -1),$ and $(1,1)$.
- Sketch E vs. k along the line going from Γ to K for these bands.
- Write down the wave functions for the three fold degenerate bands at the energy $E(K) = 4/9$.

Summary

562

In this chapter, we first reviewed elementary group theory and studied the electronic band structure in terms of elementary concepts of the group theory. We have shown that how group theory ideas can be used in obtaining the band structure of a solid. Group representations and characters of two-dimensional square lattice are discussed in depth and empty lattice bands of the square lattice are illustrated. Concepts of irreducible representations and compatibility relations are used in discussing the symmetry character of bands connecting different symmetry points and the removal of band degeneracies. We also discussed empty lattice bands of the cubic system and sketched the band calculation of common semiconductors.

The starting point for many band structure calculations is the empty lattice band structure. In the empty lattice band representation, each band is labeled by $\ell = (l_1, l_2, l_3)$ where the reciprocal lattice vectors are given by

$$\mathbf{K}_\ell = 2\pi[l_1\mathbf{b}_1 + l_2\mathbf{b}_2 + l_3\mathbf{b}_3]$$

where $(l_1, l_2, l_3) = \ell$ are integers and $\mathbf{b}_i$ are primitive translations of the reciprocal lattice. Energy eigenvalues and eigenfunctions are written as

$$E_\ell(\mathbf{k}) = \frac{\hbar^2}{2m}(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}_\ell)^2$$

and

$$\Psi_\ell(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{r}) = e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} e^{i\mathbf{K}_\ell\cdot\mathbf{r}}.$$

The Bloch wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ is restricted to the first Brillouin zone.

The vector space formed by the degenerate bands at $E(\mathbf{k})$ is invariant under the operations of the group of the wave vector $\mathbf{k}$. That is, the space of degenerate states at a point $\mathbf{k}$ in the Brillouin zone provides a representation of the group of the wave vector $\mathbf{k}$. We can decompose this representation into its irreducible components and use the decomposition to label the states.

When we classify the degenerate states according to the IRs of the group of the wave vector, we are able to simplify the secular equation by virtue of a fundamental theorem on matrix elements:

1. The matrix elements of V between different IRs vanish, so many off-diagonal matrix elements are zero. This reduces the determinantal equation to a block diagonal form.
2. The diagonal matrix elements $\langle \Gamma_j n | V | \Gamma_j n \rangle$ are, in general, different for different IRs Γ_j . This lifts the degeneracy at the symmetry points.

Many common semiconductors which crystallize in the cubic zincblende structure have valence-conduction band structures that are quite similar in gross features. This results from the fact that each atom has four electrons outside a closed shell and there are two atoms per unit cell.

6

1

More Band Theory and the Semiclassical Approximation

2

3

6.1 Orthogonalized Plane Waves

4

So far, we have expanded the periodic part of the Bloch function $u_{\ell}(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{r})$ in a plane wave basis, i.e.,

6

$$u_{\ell}(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mathbf{K}_{\ell'}} C_{\ell\ell'}(\mathbf{k}) e^{i\mathbf{K}_{\ell'} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \quad (6.1)$$

It often occurs that the series for $u_{\ell}(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{r})$ converges very slowly so that many different plane waves must be included in the expansion. The reason for this is that plane wave is not a very good description of the valence and conduction band states in the region of real space in which the core levels are of large amplitude. What are the core levels? They are the tightly bound atomic states associated with closed shell configurations. States outside the core are valence states that are responsible for the binding energy of the solid. For example, consider Table 6.1.

14

Let us define the eigenfunction

15

$$|c_j\rangle = \Psi_{c_j}(r - R_j) \quad (6.2)$$

to be the core level c ($c = 1s, 2s, 2p, 3s, \dots$) of the atom located at position R_j . The valence and conduction band states that we are interested in must be orthogonal to these core states. When we expand the periodic part of the Bloch function in plane waves, it takes a very large number of plane waves to give band wave functions with all the necessary wiggles needed to make them orthogonal to core states. For this reason, the *orthogonalized plane waves* (OPW) was introduced by Herring and Hill.¹ We define

22

$$|w_k\rangle = |k\rangle - \sum_{c', j'} \langle c' j' | k \rangle |c' j'\rangle. \quad (6.3)$$

23

¹ C. Herring, Phys. Rev. **57**, 1169 (1940) and C. Herring, A.G. Hill, Phys. Rev. **58**, 132 (1940).

t1.1 **Table 6.1.** Electron configurations of core states and valence states of Na, Si, and Cu atoms

t1.2	Atom	Core states	Valence states
t1.3	Na	$1s^2, 2s^2, 2p^6$	$3s^1$ and higher
t1.4	Si	$1s^2, 2s^2, 2p^6$	$3s^2, 3p^2$ and higher
t1.5	Cu	$1s^2, 2s^2, 2p^6, 3s^2, 3p^6$	$3d^{10}, 4s^1$ and higher

Here, $|w_j\rangle$ is an OPW, $|k\rangle$ is a simple plane wave, and the sum is over all core levels on all atoms in the crystal. The core levels are solutions of the Schrödinger equation

$$\left[-\frac{\hbar^2 \nabla^2}{2m} + V_j(r) - E_c \right] \Psi_{cj} = 0 \quad (6.4)$$

where $V_j(r)$ is the atomic potential for the atom located at r_j . Because the core levels are tightly bound, this potential is essentially identical to the value of the periodic crystalline potential in the unit cell centered at r_j .

It is clear from (6.3) that $|w_j\rangle$ is orthogonal to the core levels since

$$\langle cj|w_k\rangle = \langle cj|k\rangle - \sum_{c',j'} \langle c'j'|k\rangle \langle cj|c'j'\rangle, \quad (6.5)$$

but the core levels themselves satisfy

$$\langle cj|c'j'\rangle = \delta_{cc'} \delta_{jj'} \quad (6.6)$$

This gives $\langle cj|w_k\rangle = 0$. In an OPW calculation, the periodic part of the Bloch function is expanded in OPW's instead of in plane waves. This improves the convergence.

6.2 Pseudopotential Method

We can think of the operator P defined by

$$P = \sum_{cj} |cj\rangle \langle cj| \quad (6.7)$$

as a projection operator. It gives the projection of any eigenfunction $|\phi\rangle$ onto the core states. If we expand the wave function Ψ_k in OPW's we can write

$$|\Psi_k\rangle = \sum_K a_K |w_{k+K}\rangle = (1 - P) \sum_K a_K |(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K})\rangle. \quad (6.8)$$

Let us define $|\phi_k\rangle = \sum_K a_K |\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}\rangle$ as the *pseudo-wavefunction*. Clearly, we have

$$|\Psi_k\rangle = (1 - P) |\phi_k\rangle. \quad (6.9)$$

We note that $|\phi_k\rangle$ is the plane wave part of the OPW expansion. Both $|cj\rangle$ and $|\Psi_k\rangle$ are solutions of the Schrödinger equation

$$\left[-\frac{\hbar^2 \nabla^2}{2m} + V(r) \right] \Psi = E \Psi, \quad (6.10)$$

with eigenvalues E_c and $E(k)$, respectively. Let us substitute $|\Psi\rangle = (1 - P) |\phi\rangle$ into (6.10). This gives

$$\left[-\frac{\hbar^2 \nabla^2}{2m} + V(r) - E \right] (1 - P) |\phi\rangle = 0. \quad (6.11)$$

Recall that

$$P |\phi\rangle = \sum_{cj} |cj\rangle \langle cj | \phi \rangle. \quad (6.12)$$

Therefore, we have

$$\begin{aligned} HP |\phi\rangle &= \sum_{cj} H |cj\rangle \langle cj | \phi \rangle \\ &= \sum_{cj} E_{c_j} |cj\rangle \langle cj | \phi \rangle. \end{aligned} \quad (6.13)$$

We use this in the Schrödinger equation to obtain

$$\left[-\frac{\hbar^2 \nabla^2}{2m} + V(r) - E \right] |\phi\rangle + \sum_{cj} (E - E_{c_j}) |cj\rangle \langle cj | \phi \rangle = 0. \quad (6.14)$$

We define an *effective potential* or *pseudopotential* by

$$W(r) = V(r) + \sum_{cj} (E - E_{c_j}) |cj\rangle \langle cj|. \quad (6.15)$$

The first term in the pseudopotential is just the usual periodic crystalline potential. The second term is a nonlocal repulsive potential.

$$\begin{aligned} W(r) \phi(r) &= V(r) \phi(r) + \sum_{cj} (E - E_{c_j}) \Psi_{cj}(r) \langle cj | \phi(r') \rangle \\ &= \int d^3 r' [V(r') \delta(r - r') + \sum_{cj} (E - E_{c_j}) \Psi_{cj}(r) \Psi_{cj}^*(r')] \phi(r'). \end{aligned} \quad (6.16)$$

It is clear that W is nonlocal since only the first term involving the periodic potential contains a δ -function. The second term

$$V_R = \sum_{cj} (E - E_{cj}) |cj\rangle \langle cj| \quad (6.17)$$

is repulsive as opposed to an attractive potential like $V(r)$. We can see this by evaluating $\langle \phi | V_R | \phi \rangle$ for any function ϕ . We find that

$$\langle \phi | V_R | \phi \rangle = \sum_{cj} (E - E_{cj}) |\langle \phi | cj \rangle|^2. \quad (6.18)$$

Because $|\langle \phi | cj \rangle|^2$ is positive and the valence-conduction band energies E are, by definition, larger than core levels,

$$\langle \phi | V_R | \phi \rangle > 0. \quad (6.19)$$

Therefore, V_R cancels a portion of the attractive periodic potential V . The diagram shown in Fig. 6.1 is a sketch of what the periodic potential $V(r)$, the repulsive part of the pseudopotential V_R , and the full pseudopotential look like.

A number of people have used model pseudopotentials in which the potential is replaced by the one shown in Fig. 6.2. The pseudopotential $W(r)$ is taken to be a local potential which has (1) a constant value V_0 inside a core or radius d and (2) the actual potential $V(r)$ for $r > d$. Both V_0 and d are used as adjustable parameters to fit the energy bands to experimental observation.

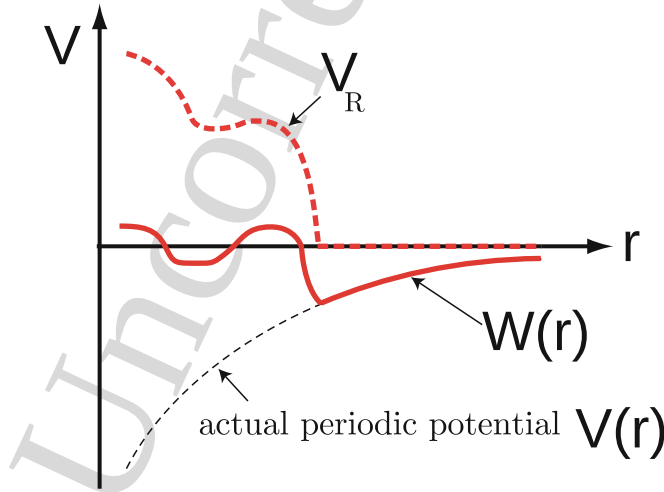


Fig. 6.1. A sketch of various potentials

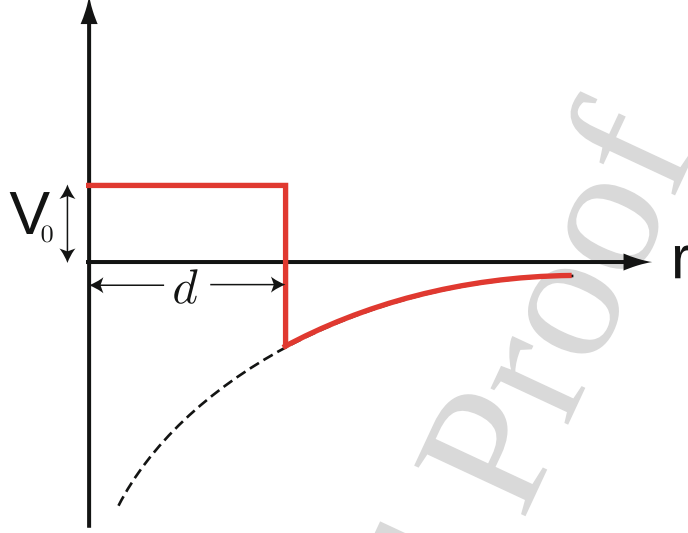


Fig. 6.2. A model pseudopotential

6.3 $\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{p}$ Method and Effective Mass Theory

72

Often in discussing properties of semiconductors it is more important to have a single analytic description of the band structure very close to a conduction band minimum or valence band maximum than to have detailed numerical calculations of $E_n(k)$ and Ψ_{nk} throughout the Brillouin zone. One approach that has proven to be useful is called the $\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{p}$ method. We know that $\Psi_k = e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} u_k(r)$ is a solution of the Schrödinger equation

$$\left(\frac{p^2}{2m} + V(r) - E_k \right) \Psi_k(r) = 0. \quad (6.20)$$

By substituting the Bloch wave form for Ψ_k , it is easy to see that $u_k(r)$ satisfies the Schrödinger equation

$$\left[\frac{(\mathbf{p} + \hbar \mathbf{k})^2}{2m} + V(r) - E_k \right] u_k(r) = 0. \quad (6.21)$$

For $k = 0$ (i.e., at the Γ -point) this equation can be written as

81

$$\left(\frac{p^2}{2m} + V(r) - E_0 \right) u_0(r) = 0. \quad (6.22)$$

There are an infinite number of solutions $u_0^{(1)}, u_0^{(2)}, u_0^{(3)}, \dots, u_0^{(n)}, \dots$ with energies at the Γ -point $E_0^{(1)}, \dots, E_0^{(n)}, \dots$. Here, the superscript (n) is a band

83

index and the subscript 0 stands for $\mathbf{k} = 0$. For any fixed value of k the set 84
of functions $u_k^{(n)}(r)$ form a complete orthonormal set in which any function 85
with the periodicity of the lattice can be expanded. Therefore, we can use the 86
set of function $u_0^{(n)}(r)$ as a basis set for a perturbation expansion of $u_k^{(m)}$ for 87
 $k \neq 0$ and for any band m . By this, we mean that we can write 88

$$u_k^{(m)} = \sum_n a_n^{(m)}(k) u_0^{(n)}. \quad (6.23)$$

The Schrödinger equation for $u_k^{(m)}$ can be written as 89

$$\left[\frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{\hbar}{m} \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{p} + \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} + V(r) - E_k \right] \sum_n a_n^{(m)}(k) u_0^{(n)}(r) = 0. \quad (6.24)$$

We omit the band superscript (m) for simplicity. We know that $\left[\frac{p^2}{2m} + V(r) \right] 90$
 $u_0^{(n)} = E_0^{(n)} u_0^{(n)}$; therefore, we can write 91

$$\left(E_0^{(n)} + \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} - E_k \right) \sum_n a_n u_0^{(n)}(r) + \frac{\hbar}{m} \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{p} \sum_n a_n u_0^{(n)}(r) = 0. \quad (6.25)$$

Take the scalar product with $u_0^{(m)}$ remembering that $\langle u_0^{(m)} | u_0^{(n)} \rangle = \delta_{mn}$. This 92
gives 93

$$\left[E_0^{(m)} + \varepsilon_k - E_k \right] a_m + \sum_n \left\langle u_0^{(m)} \left| \frac{\hbar}{m} \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{p} \right| u_0^{(n)} \right\rangle a_n = 0. \quad (6.26) 94$$

This is just a matrix equation of the form 95

$$\begin{pmatrix} E_0^{(1)} + \varepsilon_k - E_k & \langle u_0^{(1)} | H_1 | u_0^{(2)} \rangle & \cdots \\ \langle u_0^{(2)} | H_1 | u_0^{(1)} \rangle & E_0^{(2)} + \varepsilon_k - E_k & \cdots \\ \langle u_0^{(3)} | H_1 | u_0^{(1)} \rangle & \langle u_0^{(3)} | H_1 | u_0^{(2)} \rangle & \cdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ a_3 \\ \vdots \end{pmatrix} = 0 \quad (6.27)$$

Here, $H_1 = \frac{\hbar}{m} \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{p}$, where $\mathbf{p} = -i\hbar \nabla$, $\varepsilon_k = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m}$, and we have put 96
 $\langle u_0^{(n)} | \mathbf{p} | u_0^{(n)} \rangle = 0$. This last result holds for crystals with a center of sym- 97
metry because parity is a good quantum number and $\mathbf{p}$ is an operator that 98
changes parity. If this matrix element does not vanish it must be added 99
to ε_k . 100

If we consider k to be small (compared to $\frac{\pi}{a}$), then if $\langle u_0^{(m)} | \frac{\hbar}{m} \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{p} | u_0^{(n)} \rangle$ 101
does not vanish, it is usually quite small compared to $|E_0^{(n)} - E_0^{(m)}|$. When 102

6.3 $\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{p}$ Method and Effective Mass Theory 167

the off-diagonal elements are treated by perturbation theory, the resulting expression for $E_k^{(n)}$ is written as

$$E_k^{(n)} = E_0^{(n)} + \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} + \frac{\hbar^2}{m^2} \sum_l \frac{|\mathbf{k} \cdot \langle u_0^{(n)} | \mathbf{p} | u_0^{(l)} \rangle|^2}{E_0^{(n)} - E_0^{(l)}}. \quad (6.28)$$

This can be rewritten as

$$E_k^{(n)} = E_0^{(n)} + \frac{\hbar^2}{2} \mathbf{k} \cdot \underline{m}^{*-1} \cdot \mathbf{k}, \quad (6.29)$$

where the *inverse effective mass tensor* (for the band n) is given by

$$m_{ij}^{*-1} = m^{-1} \delta_{ij} + \frac{2}{m^2} \sum_l \frac{\langle u_0^{(n)} | p_i | u_0^{(l)} \rangle \langle u_0^{(l)} | p_j | u_0^{(n)} \rangle}{E_0^{(n)} - E_0^{(l)}}. \quad (6.30)$$

Because $u_0^{(n)}$ is a periodic function with period a , the lattice spacing, the matrix element $\langle u_0^{(n)} | p_i | u_0^{(l)} \rangle$ is of the order of $\frac{\hbar}{a}$ if it does not vanish by symmetry considerations. Thus for two coupled bands separated by an energy gap ΔE

$$\frac{m}{m^*} \simeq 1 + 2 \frac{\hbar^2 / m a^2}{\Delta E} \quad (6.31)$$

Since $a \simeq 3 \times 10^{-8}$ cm, $\frac{\hbar^2}{m a^2} \simeq 10$ eV, but typical gaps in semiconductors can be as small as 10^{-1} eV. Thus, in small-gap semiconductors it is very possible to have

$$m^* = \frac{m}{1 + \frac{\hbar^2 / m a^2}{\Delta E}} \simeq 10^{-2} m.$$

Effective masses of $0.1 - 0.01 m$ are not at all unusual in semiconductors.

The simple perturbation theory breaks down when there are a number of almost degenerate bands at the point in k -space about which the $\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{p}$ expansion is being made. In that case, it is necessary to keep all the nearly degenerate states in the matrix Schrödinger equation and refrain from using second-order (nondegenerate) perturbation theory. One example of this is the Kane Model² used frequently in zincblende semiconductors (like InSb, InAs, GaSb, GaAs, etc.). In these materials, there are four bands that are rather close together (see Fig. 6.3). If spin-orbit coupling is included (it can be important in heavy atoms) one must add to the periodic potential $V(r)$ the *atomic spin-orbit coupling*

$$\frac{\hbar}{4m_0^2 c^2} (\boldsymbol{\sigma} \times \nabla \mathbf{r} V) \cdot \mathbf{p}. \quad (6.32)$$

² E.O. Kane, J. Phys. Chem. Solids **1**, 82 (1956); *ibid.* **1**, 249 (1957); *Semiconductors and Semimetals*, Vol. 1, pp.75-100 (Academic, New York, 1966).

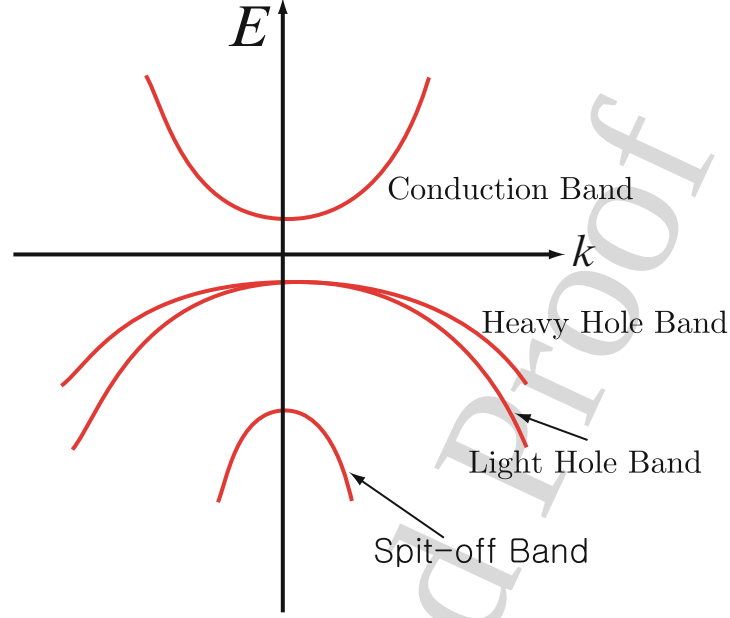


Fig. 6.3. Schematics of the band structure of zincblende semiconductors near the Γ point. Nonparabolicity of the valence band is neglected here

Then the four bands become eight (including the spin splitting) and $\hbar\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{p}$ is replaced by $\mathbf{\Pi} \cdot \mathbf{p}$, where $\mathbf{\Pi} = \hbar\mathbf{k} + \frac{\hbar}{4m_0c^2}\boldsymbol{\sigma} \times \nabla_{\mathbf{r}}V$. The 8×8 matrix must be diagonalized to obtain a good description of the conduction–valence band structure near the Γ point.

6.4 Semiclassical Approximation for Bloch Electrons

When we discussed the Sommerfeld model of free electrons, we discussed the motion of electrons in response to electric fields and temperature gradients which introduced $\mathbf{r}$ -dependence into the equilibrium distribution function

$$f_0(\varepsilon) = \frac{1}{\exp[\varepsilon - \zeta(\mathbf{r})]/k_B T(\mathbf{r}) + 1}. \quad (6.33)$$

The eigenfunctions of the Sommerfeld model were plane waves, so the probability that an electron was at a given position $\mathbf{r}$ was independent of $\mathbf{r}$. Therefore, the r -dependence in $f_0(\varepsilon)$ only made sense if we introduced the idea of localized wave packets defined by

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \sum_{\mathbf{k}'} g(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}') e^{i(\mathbf{k}' \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega_{\mathbf{k}'} t)}, \quad (6.34)$$

6.4 Semiclassical Approximation for Bloch Electrons 169

where $g(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}') \simeq 0$ if $|\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}'|$ is larger than some value Δk . By the Heisenberg principle 139

$$\Delta k \Delta x \gtrsim 1, \quad (6.35) \quad 140$$

so that the electron can be localized in a region Δx of the order of $(\Delta k)^{-1}$. 141
We must have 142

1. $\Delta x \gg a$, the atomic spacing. 143
2. $\Delta x \ll L$ the distance over which the potential $\phi(x) = eEx$ or the 144
temperature $T(x)$ changes appreciably. 145

Thus, the semiclassical wave packet picture can be applied only to slowly 146
varying (in space) perturbations on the free electrons. 147

In the presence of a periodic potential, we have Bloch states (or Bloch 148
electrons) described by 149

$$\Psi_{n\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r}) = e^{i\mathbf{k}' \cdot \mathbf{r}} u_{n\mathbf{k}}(r) \quad (6.36)$$

and 150

$$E = \varepsilon_n(\mathbf{k}) \quad (6.37)$$

Here, $\mathbf{k}$ is restricted to the first Brillouin zone, and there is a gap between 151
different energy bands at the same value of $\mathbf{k}$, i.e., $\varepsilon_n(\mathbf{k}) - \varepsilon_{n'}(\mathbf{k}) = E_{\text{GAP}}$ 152
($\mathbf{k} \neq 0$). 153

The semiclassical wave packet picture can be used to describe the motion 154
of Bloch electrons in a given band in response to slowly varying perturbations 155
by taking 156

$$\Psi_{n\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mathbf{k}'} g_n(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}') \Psi_{n\mathbf{k}'}(\mathbf{r}) \quad (6.38)$$

with $g_n(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}') \simeq 0$ if $|\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}'| > \Delta k$. Then, the standard expression for the 157
group velocity of a wave packet gives 158

$$\mathbf{v}_n(\mathbf{k}) = \frac{1}{\hbar} \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon_n(\mathbf{k}) \quad (6.39)$$

as the velocity of a Bloch electron of wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ in the n th band. In the 159
presence of a force $\mathbf{F}$, the work done in moving an electron wavepacket a 160
distance $\delta \mathbf{x}$ is written by 161

$$\delta W = \mathbf{F} \cdot \delta \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v}_n \delta t \quad (6.40)$$

But this must equal the change in energy 162

$$\begin{aligned} \delta W &= E_n(\mathbf{k} + \delta \mathbf{k}) - E_n(\mathbf{k}) \\ &= \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} E_n(\mathbf{k}) \cdot \delta \mathbf{k} = \hbar \mathbf{v}_n \cdot \dot{\mathbf{k}} \delta t \end{aligned} \quad (6.41)$$

Equating (6.40) and (6.41) gives 163

$$\dot{\mathbf{k}} = \hbar^{-1} \mathbf{F}. \quad (6.42) \quad 164$$

165

170 6 More Band Theory and the Semiclassical Approximation

The semiclassical description of Bloch electrons satisfies the following rules: 166

1. The band index n is a constant of the motion; no interband transitions are 167
allowed. 168

2.
$$\dot{\mathbf{r}} = \mathbf{v}_n(\mathbf{k}) = \frac{1}{\hbar} \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon_n(\mathbf{k}). \quad (6.43) \quad 169$$

3.
$$\hbar \dot{\mathbf{k}} = -e \left(\mathbf{E} + \frac{1}{c} \mathbf{v}_n(\mathbf{k}) \times \mathbf{B} \right). \quad (6.44) \quad 170$$

4. The contribution of the n th band to the electron density will be 171

$$2f_0(\varepsilon_n(k)) \frac{d^3k}{(2\pi)^3} = \frac{d^3k/4\pi^3}{1 + \exp[(\varepsilon_n(k) - \mu)/k_B T]}. \quad (6.45)$$

For free electrons (Sommerfeld model), electrons are not restricted to one 172
band but move continuously in k -space according to $\hbar \dot{\mathbf{k}} = \text{Force}$. For Bloch 173
electrons $\mathbf{k}$ is restricted to the first Brillouin zone and $\mathbf{k} \equiv \mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}$. Clearly the 174
restriction to band n requirement must break down when the gap $E_{\text{GAP}}(k)$ 175
becomes very small. It can be shown (but not very easily) that the conditions 176

$$eEa \ll \frac{[E_{\text{GAP}}(k)]^2}{E_F} \quad (6.46)$$

and

$$\hbar \omega_c \ll \frac{[E_{\text{GAP}}(k)]^2}{E_F}. \quad (6.47) \quad 177$$

must be satisfied for the semiclassical treatment of Bloch electrons to be valid. 178
Here, E is the electric field and a the atomic spacing. ω_c is the electron 179
cyclotron frequency and E_F the Fermi energy. The breakdown of the inequali- 180
ties (6.46) and (6.47) lead to interband transitions; they are known as *electric* 181
breakdown and *magnetic breakdown*, respectively. 182

6.4.1 Effective Mass 183

The acceleration of a Bloch electron in band n can be written as 184

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a}_n &\equiv \frac{d\mathbf{v}_n}{dt} = \frac{1}{\hbar} \frac{d}{dt} \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon_n(\mathbf{k}) \\ &= \frac{1}{\hbar} \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon_n(\mathbf{k}) \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{k}}{dt} \end{aligned} \quad (6.48)$$

If we write this tensor equation in terms of components, we have 185

$$\frac{dv_i^{(n)}}{dt} = \frac{1}{\hbar} \sum_j \frac{\partial}{\partial k_j} \frac{\partial}{\partial k_i} \varepsilon_n(\mathbf{k}) \frac{dk_j}{dt}. \quad (6.49)$$

6.4 Semiclassical Approximation for Bloch Electrons 171

But $\hbar \frac{dk_j}{dt} = F_j$, the j -component of the force. Thus, we can write 186

$$\frac{d\mathbf{v}_n}{dt} = \underline{m}_n^{*-1} \cdot \mathbf{F} \quad (6.50) \quad 187$$

where the *effective mass tensor* is defined by 187

$$\left(\underline{m}_n^{*-1}\right)_{ij} = \frac{1}{\hbar^2} \frac{\partial^2 \varepsilon_n(\mathbf{k})}{\partial k_i \partial k_j}. \quad (6.51) \quad 188$$

Measured effective masses in different materials have widely different values. 189
For example, in nickel there are electrons with $m^* \simeq 15m$ while in InSb there 190
are electrons with $m^* \simeq 0.015m$. 191

6.4.2 Concept of a Hole 192

Symmetry requires that if a band has an energy $\varepsilon(\mathbf{k})$, then the solid must have 193
an energy $\varepsilon(-\mathbf{k})$ satisfying $\varepsilon(-\mathbf{k}) = \varepsilon(\mathbf{k})$. The group velocity of the states $\mathbf{k}$ 194
and $-\mathbf{k}$ are equal in magnitude and opposite in direction. In equilibrium, if 195
the state $\mathbf{k}$ is occupied, so is the state $-\mathbf{k}$. Since the velocities are equal in 196
magnitude and opposite in direction, there is no current. A current is obtained 197
by changing the probability of occupancy of the electron states. 198

A filled band cannot carry any current even in the presence of an electric 199
field. Each electron is accelerated according to the equation: 200

$$\frac{d\mathbf{k}}{dt} = \frac{1}{\hbar} \mathbf{F}. \quad (6.52)$$

If $\mathbf{F}$ is in the x -direction, the electrons move in $\mathbf{k}$ space with $k_x(t) = k_x(0) +$ 201
 $\frac{1}{\hbar} F_x t$. An electron arriving at $k_x = \frac{\pi}{a}$ (for a cubic crystal), the edge of the 202
Brillouin zone, reappears at $k_x = -\frac{\pi}{a}$ (i.e., it is Bragg reflected through $k_x -$ 203
 $k'_x = K = \frac{2\pi}{a}$). Thus at all times the band is filled; for each electron at $\mathbf{k}$ 204
there is one at $-\mathbf{k}$ with equal but oppositely directed velocity. Therefore, the 205
electrical current density $\mathbf{j} = 0$. 206

For a partially filled band we can write 207

$$\mathbf{j} = \frac{1}{V} \sum_{\mathbf{k} \text{ occupied}} (-e\mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{k}}). \quad (6.53)$$

This can be rewritten as $\mathbf{j} = \frac{1}{V} \left[\sum_{\text{entire band}} (-e\mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{k}}) - \sum_{\mathbf{k} \text{ unoccupied}} (-e\mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{k}}) \right]$. 208
The first term vanishes, so that 209

$$\mathbf{j} = \frac{1}{V} \sum_{\mathbf{k} \text{ empty}} + e\mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{k}}. \quad (6.54) \quad 210$$

Thus, for a nearly filled band, we can think of the current as being carried 211
by *holes*, empty states in the almost filled band. These act as if they have a 212
charge $+e$ instead of $-e$, the charge on an electron. 213

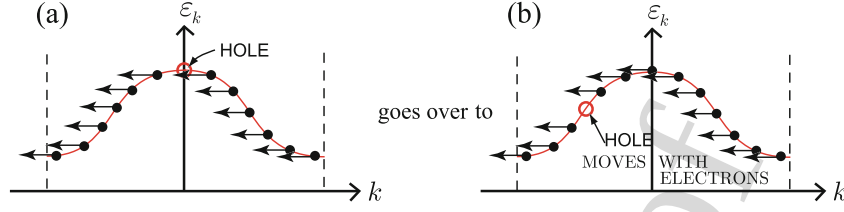


Fig. 6.4. Motion of an electron and a hole: panel (a) goes over to panel (b), and a hole moves with electrons

Because the equation of motion in $\mathbf{k}$ space is

$$\hbar \dot{k}_x = -eE_x \quad (6.55)$$

every electron in the nearly filled band moves in k space according to $k_x(t) = k_x(0) - \frac{eE_x}{\hbar}t$. Therefore, the hole moves in the same direction; Fig. 6.4a goes over to b. Of course, the effective mass m^* near the top of a valence band is negative since

$$\frac{1}{m^*} = \frac{1}{\hbar^2} \frac{\partial^2 \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k^2} < 0. \quad (6.56)$$

It is interesting to write down the following equations that describe the motion of a hole:

$$\hbar \dot{\mathbf{k}} = -e \left(\mathbf{E} + \frac{1}{c} \mathbf{v}_h \times \mathbf{B} \right). \quad (6.57)$$

$$\mathbf{v}_h = \frac{1}{\hbar} \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}. \quad (6.58)$$

$$m_k^* = -\frac{1}{\hbar^2} \frac{\partial^2 \varepsilon}{\partial k^2} > 0. \quad (6.59)$$

We can assume that a hole has a positive mass near the top of the band where an electron has a negative mass. Then,

$$\frac{d\mathbf{v}_h}{dt} = \underline{m}_k^{*-1} \cdot \left[e\mathbf{E} + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{v}_h \times \mathbf{B} \right]. \quad (6.60)$$

Here, we have used a positive mass $\underline{m}_k^*$ and a positive charge $+e$ to describe the hole. In the valence band of a semiconductor, a few holes can be thermally excited. They can be treated as particles having positive mass and positive charge.

6.4.3 Effective Hamiltonian of Bloch Electron

We know that for Bloch electrons we can write

1. $E = \varepsilon_n(\mathbf{k})$ for the energy of an electron in the n th band.
2. $\Psi_{n\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r}) = e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} u_{n\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r})$, where $u_{n\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r})$ is periodic with the lattice periodicity.

6.4 Semiclassical Approximation for Bloch Electrons 173

We have seen that close to a minimum (e.g. at $\mathbf{k} = 0$) we can write 232

$$\varepsilon_n(k) = \varepsilon_n(0) + \frac{\hbar^2}{2} \mathbf{k} \cdot \underline{m}^{*-1} \cdot \mathbf{k}. \quad (6.61)$$

The form of this equation might lead us to write an *effective Hamiltonian* 233

$$H_{\text{eff}} = \varepsilon_n(0) + \frac{\hbar^2}{2} (-i\nabla) \cdot \underline{m}^{*-1} \cdot (-i\nabla), \quad (6.62) \quad 234$$

and an effective Schrödinger equation 235

$$H_{\text{eff}}\varphi(\mathbf{r}) = E\varphi(\mathbf{r}). \quad (6.63) \quad 236$$

The solution $\varphi(\mathbf{r})$ of (6.63) is not a true wave function for an electron. For 237
example, if we set $\varphi(r) = V^{-1/2}e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}$, we obtain $E = \varepsilon_n(0) + \frac{\hbar^2}{2}\mathbf{k} \cdot \underline{m}^{*-1} \cdot \mathbf{k}$. 238
However, the true wave function Ψ is obtained from the *pseudo-wavefunction* 239
 φ by multiplying it by $u_{n\mathbf{k}}$, the periodic part of the Bloch function. 240

So far, we have not really done anything new. However, if we introduce a 241
potential $W(\mathbf{r})$ which is very slowly varying on the atomic scale, we can take 242
as the effective Hamiltonian 243

$$H_{\text{eff}} = \varepsilon_n(0) + \frac{\hbar^2}{2} (-i\nabla) \cdot \underline{m}^{*-1} \cdot (-i\nabla) + W(\mathbf{r}). \quad (6.64)$$

Then the solutions to $(H_{\text{eff}} - E)\varphi(\mathbf{r}) = 0$ will mix Bloch wave functions with 244
different values of $\mathbf{k}$. The smooth function $\varphi(\mathbf{r})$ is called the *envelope function*. 245
This approach can be justified rigorously if the perturbing potential $W(\mathbf{r})$ and 246
the energy band $\varepsilon_n(\mathbf{k})$ satisfy certain conditions. 247

It turns out that the effective Hamiltonian approach works not only in the 248
regime of the effective mass approximation. In fact, for a Bloch electron (in 249
band n) in the presence of a time independent vector potential $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ and a 250
scalar potential $\varphi(\mathbf{r}, t)$, which is slowly varying in space and time, we may 251
define an effective Hamiltonian 252

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{eff}} = \varepsilon_n \left(-i\nabla + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) \right) - e\phi(\mathbf{r}, t). \quad (6.65) \quad 253$$

This effective Hamiltonian leads to the *semiclassical* equation of motion 254

$$\dot{\mathbf{r}} = \frac{1}{\hbar} \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon_n(\mathbf{k}) = \mathbf{v}_n(\mathbf{k}) \quad (6.66)$$

$$\hbar \dot{\mathbf{k}} = -e\mathbf{E} - \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{v}_n(\mathbf{k}) \times \mathbf{B}, \quad (6.67)$$

where $\mathbf{E} = -\nabla\phi$ and $\mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}$. 255

Problems

256

6.1. For a one-dimensional δ -function potential $V(z) = -\lambda\delta(z)$, show that the lowest energy state occurs at $\varepsilon_0 = -\frac{\hbar^2\kappa^2}{2m}$, where $|\kappa| = \frac{m\lambda}{\hbar^2}$. Determine the normalized wave function $\Psi_0(z)$.

257

258

259

6.2. Consider a periodic one-dimensional potential

260

$$V(z) = -\lambda \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(z - la).$$

- (a) Use the tight binding approximation (keeping overlap between nearest neighbors only) to determine the energy $\varepsilon_0(k)$ as a function of wave number k .
- (b) Use the tight binding form of the wave function to express the Bloch function in the form $\Psi_0(k, z) = e^{ikz}u_0(k, z)$, where $u_0(k, z)$ is a periodic function of z . Write down an expression for $u_0(k, z)$ valid in the region $0 \leq z \leq a$.

261

262

263

264

265

266

267

6.3. A Wannier function for the n th band of a one-dimensional lattice can be written as

268

269

$$a_n(z - la) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_k e^{-ikla} \Psi_{nk}(z).$$

Here, $\Psi_{nk}(z)$ is a Bloch function, $a_n(z - la)$ a Wannier function, and $k = \frac{2\pi}{Na}n$, where $-\frac{N}{2} \leq n \leq \frac{N}{2} - 1$.

270

271

- (a) Use the orthogonality relation $\langle \Psi_{nk} | \Psi_{nk'} \rangle = \delta_{kk'}$ to show that Wannier functions on different sites are orthogonal, i.e.,

272

273

$$\langle a_n(z - l'a) | a_n(z - la) \rangle = \delta_{ll'}.$$

- (b) For the model described in Problem 2, determine the Wannier function for the site at the origin, i.e., $l = 0$.

274

275

6.4. In the semiclassical treatment of Bloch electrons, one constructs wave packets by making linear combinations of Bloch functions within a single band with a spread $\Delta\mathbf{k}$ in wave vectors about some particular value of $\mathbf{k}$. The wave packets are localized in coordinate space in a region Δx_i ($i = 1, 2, 3$) centered on some point $\mathbf{r} = (x_1, x_2, x_3)$, and $\Delta x_i \Delta k_i \simeq 1$. The electron velocity is given by the group velocity $\mathbf{v}_n(\mathbf{k}) = \frac{1}{\hbar} \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon_n(\mathbf{k})$. (Let us omit the band index n hereafter.) The time rate of change of the wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ is given by $\frac{d\mathbf{k}}{dt} = \frac{1}{\hbar} \mathbf{F}$, where $\mathbf{F}$ is the external force on the electron.

276

277

278

279

280

281

282

283

- (a) If $\mathbf{F} = -eE\hat{x}$, show that

284

$$k_x(t) = k_x(0) - \frac{eE}{\hbar}t.$$

What happens when $k_x(t)$ reaches the Brillouin zone boundary?

285

6.4 Semiclassical Approximation for Bloch Electrons 175

- (b) If $\mathbf{F} = -\frac{e}{c}\mathbf{v}_n \times B\hat{z}$, the Lorentz force in a magnetic field $\mathbf{B} = B\hat{z}$, show 286
 that the electron moves on a path in $\mathbf{k}$ -space that is the intersection of a 287
 plane $k_z = \text{constant}$ and a surface of constant energy $\varepsilon(\mathbf{k}) = \text{constant}$. 288

Uncorrected Proof

Summary

289

In this chapter, we studied more theories of band structure calculation and semiclassical description of Bloch electrons. We first introduced orthogonalized plane wave method for expanding the periodic part of the Bloch functions and discussed pseudopotential method and $\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{p}$ effective mass theory as practical alternative ways of including the effects of periodic symmetry of crystal potential. Then, the semiclassical wave packet picture is discussed to describe the motion of the Bloch electrons in a given band. In addition, ideas of effective mass and hole are shown to be convenient in describing the behavior of band electrons.

It often occurs that the series for $u_{\ell}(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mathbf{K}_{\ell'}} C_{\ell\ell'}(k) e^{\mathbf{K}_{\ell'} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$ converges very slowly so that many different plane waves must be included in the expansion. In an orthogonalized plane wave calculation, the periodic part of the Bloch function is expanded in orthogonalized plane waves instead of in plane waves. This improves the convergence. In many calculations, model pseudopotentials $W(r)$ are introduced in such a way that $W(r)$ is taken to be a local potential which has

1. A constant value V_0 inside a core or radius d and
2. The actual potential $V(r)$ for $r > d$.

Both V_0 and d are used as adjustable parameters to fit the energy bands to experimental observation.

In discussing properties of semiconductors, it is often more important to have a single analytic description of the band structure very close to a conduction band minimum or valence band maximum than to have detailed numerical calculations of $E_n(k)$ and Ψ_{nk} throughout the Brillouin zone. In a $\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{p}$ method, energy eigenvalue $E_k^{(n)}$ is written as

$$E_k^{(n)} = E_0^{(n)} + \frac{\hbar^2}{2} \mathbf{k} \cdot \underline{m}^{*-1} \cdot \mathbf{k},$$

where the *inverse effective mass tensor* (for the band n) is given by

$$m_{ij}^{*-1} = m^{-1} \delta_{ij} + \frac{2}{m^2} \sum_l \frac{\langle u_0^{(n)} | p_i | u_0^{(l)} \rangle \langle u_0^{(l)} | p_j | u_0^{(n)} \rangle}{E_0^{(n)} - E_0^{(l)}}.$$

The semiclassical wave packet picture can be used to describe the motion of Bloch electrons in a given band in response to slowly varying perturbations, and the group velocity of a wave packet gives

$$\mathbf{v}_n(\mathbf{k}) = \frac{1}{\hbar} \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon_n(\mathbf{k})$$

as the velocity of a Bloch electron of wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ in the n th band. In the presence of a force $\mathbf{F}$, we have $\dot{\mathbf{k}} = \hbar^{-1} \mathbf{F}$. The semiclassical description of Bloch electrons satisfies the following rules:

6.4 Semiclassical Approximation for Bloch Electrons 177

1. The band index n is a constant of the motion; no interband transitions are allowed. 322
2. $\dot{\mathbf{r}} = \mathbf{v}_n(\mathbf{k}) = \frac{1}{\hbar} \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon_n(\mathbf{k})$. 323
3. $\hbar \dot{\mathbf{k}} = -e (\mathbf{E} + \frac{1}{c} \mathbf{v}_n(\mathbf{k}) \times \mathbf{B})$. 324
4. The contribution of the n th band to the electron density is 325

$$2f_0(\varepsilon_n(k)) \frac{d^3k}{(2\pi)^3} = \frac{d^3k/4\pi^3}{1 + \exp[(\varepsilon_n(k) - \mu)/k_B T]}.$$

For free electrons, electrons are not restricted to one band but move continuously in k -space according to $\hbar \dot{\mathbf{k}} = \text{Force}$. For Bloch electrons $\mathbf{k}$ is restricted to the first Brillouin zone and $\mathbf{k} \equiv \mathbf{k} + \mathbf{K}$. Clearly the restriction to band n requirement must break down when the gap $E_{\text{GAP}}(k)$ becomes very small. The conditions

$$eEa \ll \frac{[E_{\text{GAP}}(k)]^2}{E_F}; \quad \hbar\omega_c \ll \frac{[E_{\text{GAP}}(k)]^2}{E_F}.$$

must be satisfied for the semiclassical treatment of Bloch electrons to be valid. Here, E is the electric field and a the atomic spacing. ω_c is the electron cyclotron frequency and E_F the Fermi energy.

The equation of motion becomes

$$\frac{d\mathbf{v}_n}{dt} = \underline{m}_n^{*-1} \cdot \mathbf{F}$$

where the *effective mass tensor* is defined by $(\underline{m}_n^{*-1})_{ij} = \frac{1}{\hbar^2} \frac{\partial^2 \varepsilon_n(\mathbf{k})}{\partial k_i \partial k_j}$.

The motion of a hole is described by

$$\hbar \dot{\mathbf{k}} = -e \left(\mathbf{E} + \frac{1}{c} \mathbf{v}_h \times \mathbf{B} \right); \quad \mathbf{v}_h = \frac{1}{\hbar} \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}; \quad m_k^* = -\frac{1}{\hbar^2} \frac{\partial^2 \varepsilon}{\partial k^2} > 0.$$

Since a hole has a positive mass near the top of the band where an electron has a negative mass, we have

$$\frac{d\mathbf{v}_h}{dt} = \underline{m}_k^{*-1} \cdot \left[e\mathbf{E} + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{k}} \times \mathbf{B} \right].$$

The effective Hamiltonian of Bloch electron is written, in the presence of slowly varying potential $W(\mathbf{r})$, as

$$H_{\text{eff}} = \varepsilon_n(0) + \frac{\hbar^2}{2} (-i\nabla) \cdot \underline{m}^{*-1} \cdot (-i\nabla) + W(\mathbf{r}).$$

In the presence of a time-independent vector potential $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ and a scalar potential $\varphi(\mathbf{r}, t)$, which is slowly varying in space and time, we have an effective Hamiltonian

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{eff}} = \varepsilon_n \left(-i\nabla + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) \right) - e\varphi(\mathbf{r}, t).$$

178 6 More Band Theory and the Semiclassical Approximation

This effective Hamiltonian leads to the *semiclassical* equation of motion 345

$$\dot{\mathbf{r}} = \frac{1}{\hbar} \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon_n(\mathbf{k}) = \mathbf{v}_n(\mathbf{k}) \text{ and } \hbar \dot{\mathbf{k}} = -e\mathbf{E} - \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{v}_n(\mathbf{k}) \times \mathbf{B},$$

where $\mathbf{E} = -\nabla\phi$ and $\mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}$. 346

Uncorrected Proof

7 1

Semiconductors 2

7.1 General Properties of Semiconducting Material 3

In earlier sections, we have seen that a perfect crystal will be 4

1. An insulator at $T = 0$ K, if there is a gap separating the filled and empty energy bands. 5
6
2. A conductor at $T = 0$ K, if the conduction band is only partially occupied. 7

A special case of the insulating crystal is that of the semiconductor. In a semiconductor, the gap separating the filled and empty bands is very small, and at finite temperature some electrons from the filled valence band are thermally excited across the energy gap giving $n_e(T)$ electrons per unit volume in the conduction band and $n_h(T)$ holes per unit volume in the valence band (of course $n_e = n_h$). 8
9
10
11
12
13

If we recall the expression for the conductivity of a free electron model 14

$$\sigma = \frac{ne^2\tau}{m}, \quad (7.1)$$

where n is the number of carriers per unit volume, we find that different types of materials can be described by different values of n . For a metal $n \simeq 10^{22}$ to 10^{23} cm^{-3} and is independent of temperature. For a semimetal $n \simeq 10^{18}$ to 10^{20} cm^{-3} and is also roughly temperature independent. For an insulator or a semiconductor 15
16
17
18
19

$$n \simeq n_0 e^{-\frac{E_G}{2k_B T}},$$

where $n_0 \simeq 10^{22}$ to 10^{23} cm^{-3} and the energy gap E_G is large ($E_G \geq 4 \text{ eV}$) for an insulator and is small ($E_G \leq 2 \text{ eV}$) for a semiconductor. 20
21

At room temperature, $k_B T \simeq 25 \text{ meV}$, so that $e^{-\frac{E_G}{2k_B T}} \leq e^{-80} \simeq 10^{-35}$ for an insulator, while for a semiconductor $e^{-\frac{E_G}{2k_B T}} \geq e^{-20} \simeq 10^{-9}$. The factor 10^{-35} even when multiplied by 10^{23} cm^{-3} gives $n \simeq 0$ for an insulator. With 22
23
24

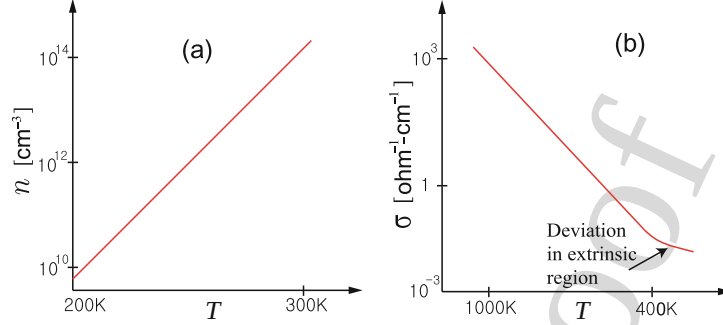


Fig. 7.1. Temperature dependence of carrier concentration (a) and electrical conductivity (b) of a typical semiconductor

$0.1\text{ eV} \leq E_G < 2.0\text{ eV}$ the carrier concentration satisfies $10^{22}\text{ cm}^{-3} > n > 10^{13}\text{ cm}^{-3}$. The relaxation time τ in the expression for the conductivity is associated with scattering events that dissipate current. These are scattering due to impurities, defects, and phonons. At room temperature, the relaxation time τ of a very pure material will be dominated by phonon scattering. For phonon scattering in this range of temperature $\tau \propto T^{-1}$. Therefore, in a metal the conductivity σ decreases as the temperature is increased. For a semiconductor, τ behaves the same as in a metal for the same temperature range. However, the carrier concentration n increases as the temperature increases. Since n increases exponentially with $\frac{1}{k_B T}$, this increase outweighs the decrease in relaxation time, which is a power law, and σ increases with increasing T .

Intrinsic Electrical Conductivity

In a very pure sample, the conductivity of a semiconductor is due to the excitation of electrons from the valence to the conduction band by thermal fluctuations. For a semiconductor at room temperature the resistivity is between $10^{-2}\ \Omega\text{-cm}$ and $10^9\ \Omega\text{-cm}$ depending on the band gap of the material. In contrast, a typical metal has a resistivity of $10^{-6}\ \Omega\text{-cm}$ and a typical insulator satisfies $10^{14}\ \Omega\text{-cm} \leq \rho \leq 10^{22}\ \Omega\text{-cm}$. A plot of carrier concentration versus temperature and a plot of conductivity versus temperature is shown in Fig. 7.1 a and b.

7.2 Typical Semiconductors

Silicon and germanium are the prototypical covalently bonded semiconductors. In our discussions of energy bands we stated that their valence band maxima were at the Γ -point. The valence band originates from atomic p -states and is threefold degenerate at Γ . Group theory tells us that this degeneracy gives rise to light hole and heavy hole bands, and that an additional splitting

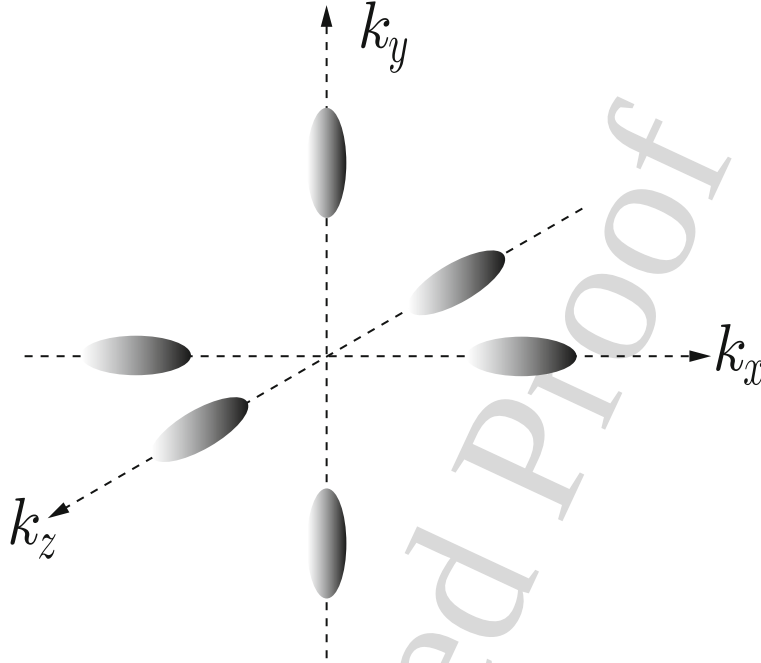


Fig. 7.2. Constant energy surfaces near the conduction band minima for Si

occurs if spin-orbit coupling is taken into account. The conduction band arises 51
 from an atomic s -state, but the minimum does not occur at the Γ -point. In Si, 52
 the conduction band minimum occurs along the line Δ , at about 90% of the 53
 way to the zone boundary. This gives six conduction band minima or *valleys*. 54
 (see Fig. 7.2). In the effective mass approximation, these valleys have a longi- 55
 tudinal mass $m_l \simeq 0.98 m_e$ along the axis and a transverse mass $m_t \simeq 0.19 m_e$ 56
 perpendicular to it. Here, m_e is the mass of a free electron. 57

For Ge, the conduction band minimum is located at the L-point. This gives 58
 the Ge conduction band four minima (one half of each valley is at the zone 59
 boundary in the $\langle 111 \rangle$ directions). In Ge, $m_l \simeq 1.64 m_e$ and $m_t = 0.08 m_e$. 60
 Silicon and germanium are called *indirect gap* semiconductors because the 61
 valence band maximum and conduction band minimum are at different point 62
 in k -space. Materials like InSb, InAs, InP, GaAs, and GaSb are *direct gap* 63
 semiconductors because both conduction minimum and valence band maxi- 64
 mum occur at the Γ -point. The band structures of many III-V compounds 65
 are similar; the sizes of energy gaps, effective masses, and spin splittings differ 66
 but the overall features are the same as those of Si and Ge (see Table 7.1). 67
 The energy gap is usually determined either by optical absorption or by mea- 68
 suring the temperature dependence of the conductivity. In optical absorption, 69
 the initial and final state must have the same wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ if no phonons 70

t1.1 **Table 7.1.** Comparison of energy gaps of Si, Ge, diamond, and various III–V compound semiconductors

t1.2	Crystal	Type of energy gap	E_G [eV] at °K
t1.3	Si	Indirect	1.2
t1.4	Ge	Indirect	0.8
t1.5	InSb	Direct	0.2
t1.6	InAs	Direct	0.4
t1.7	InP	Direct	1.3
t1.8	GaP	Indirect	2.3
t1.9	GaAs	Direct	1.5
t1.10	GaSb	Direct	1.8
t1.11	AlAs	Indirect	2.24
t1.12	GaN	Direct	3.5
t1.13	ZnO	Direct	3.4
t1.14	Diamond	Indirect	5.48

are involved in the absorption process because the $\mathbf{k}_{\text{ph}}$ vector of the photon 71
 is essentially zero on the scale of electron $\mathbf{k}$ vectors. This leads to a sharp 72
 increase in absorption at the energy gap of a direct band gap material. For 73
 an indirect gap semiconductor, the absorption process is phonon-assisted. It 74
 is less abrupt and shows a temperature dependence. The temperature depen- 75
 dence of the conductivity varies, as we shall show, as $e^{-\frac{E_G}{2k_B T}}$ where E_G is the 76
 minimum gap, the energy difference between the conduction band minimum 77
 and the valence band maximum. 78

7.3 Temperature Dependence of the Carrier Concentration

Let the conduction and valence band energies be given, respectively, by

$$\varepsilon_c(k) = \varepsilon_c + \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m_c} \quad (7.2)$$

and

$$\varepsilon_v(k) = \varepsilon_v - \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m_v} \quad (7.3)$$

The minimum energy gap is $E_G = \varepsilon_c - \varepsilon_v$. The density of states in the 83
 conduction band is given by 84

$$g_c(\varepsilon)d\varepsilon = \frac{2}{(2\pi)^3} \int_{\varepsilon < \varepsilon_c(k) < \varepsilon + d\varepsilon} d^3k \quad (7.4)$$

7.3 Temperature Dependence of the Carrier Concentration 183

Since, $\varepsilon_c(k)$ is isotropic $d^3k = 4\pi k^2 dk$ and $d\varepsilon = \frac{\hbar^2}{m_c} k dk$. Substituting into (7.4) gives

$$g_c(\varepsilon) = \frac{\sqrt{2}m_c^{3/2}}{\pi^2\hbar^3} (\varepsilon - \varepsilon_c)^{1/2}. \quad (7.5)$$

In a similar way, we have

$$g_v(\varepsilon) = \frac{\sqrt{2}m_v^{3/2}}{\pi^2\hbar^3} (\varepsilon_v - \varepsilon)^{1/2}. \quad (7.6)$$

The number of electrons per unit volume in the conduction band is given by

$$n_c(T) = \int_{\varepsilon_c}^{\infty} d\varepsilon g_c(\varepsilon) f_0(\varepsilon), \quad (7.7)$$

where $f_0(\varepsilon) = \frac{1}{e^{\frac{\varepsilon-\zeta}{\Theta}} + 1}$ is the Fermi distribution function. The concentration of holes in the valence band is written by

$$p_v(T) = \int_{-\infty}^{\varepsilon_v} d\varepsilon g_v(\varepsilon) [1 - f_0(\varepsilon)]. \quad (7.8)$$

Note that $1 - f_0(\varepsilon) = 1 / [e^{\frac{\zeta-\varepsilon}{\Theta}} + 1]$. Clearly $n_c(T)$ and $p_v(T)$ depend on the value of the chemical potential ζ . We will make the simplifying assumption that $\varepsilon_c - \zeta \gg \Theta$ and $\zeta - \varepsilon_v \gg \Theta$, where Θ is, of course, $k_B T$. This nondegeneracy assumption makes the calculation much simpler, and we will evaluate ζ in the course of the calculation and check if the assumption is valid. With this assumption, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} f_0(\varepsilon) &\simeq e^{-\frac{\varepsilon-\zeta}{\Theta}}, \\ 1 - f_0(\varepsilon) &\simeq e^{-\frac{\zeta-\varepsilon}{\Theta}} \end{aligned} \quad (7.9)$$

The first line of (7.9) can be rewritten as $f_0(\varepsilon) \simeq e^{-\frac{\varepsilon-\varepsilon_c}{\Theta}} e^{-\frac{\varepsilon_c-\zeta}{\Theta}}$. The second factor is independent of ε and can be taken out of the integral in (7.7) to obtain

$$n_c(T) = N_c(T) e^{-\frac{\varepsilon_c-\zeta}{\Theta}}, \quad (7.10)$$

where

$$N_c(T) = \int_{\varepsilon_c}^{\infty} d\varepsilon g_c(\varepsilon) e^{-\frac{\varepsilon-\varepsilon_c}{\Theta}}. \quad (7.11)$$

In a similar manner, one can obtain

$$p_v(T) = P_v(T) e^{-\frac{\zeta-\varepsilon_v}{\Theta}}, \quad (7.12)$$

and

$$P_v(T) = \int_{-\infty}^{\varepsilon_v} d\varepsilon g_v(\varepsilon) e^{-\frac{\varepsilon_v-\varepsilon}{\Theta}}. \quad (7.13)$$

Because the density of states varies as $g_c \propto (\varepsilon - \varepsilon_c)^{1/2}$ and $g_v \propto (\varepsilon_v - \varepsilon)^{1/2}$, the integral for $N_c(T)$ and $P_v(T)$ can be evaluated exactly by using the fact that $\int_0^\infty dx \sqrt{x} e^{-x} = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{\pi}$. The results are

$$N_c(T) = \frac{1}{4} \left(\frac{2m_c \Theta}{\pi \hbar^2} \right)^{3/2}. \quad (7.14)$$

The result for $P_v(T)$ differs only in having m_v replace m_c . It is sometimes convenient to use the practical expression

$$N_c(T) \simeq 2.5 \left(\frac{m_c}{m} \right)^{3/2} \left(\frac{T}{300\text{K}} \right)^{3/2} \times 10^{19} \text{ cm}^{-3}. \quad (7.15)$$

Again for $P_v(T)$ we need only replace m_c by m_v . Note the very important fact that the product $n_c(T)p_v(T)$ is independent of ζ , so that

$$n_c(T)p_v(T) = N_c(T)P_v(T)e^{-E_G/\Theta}. \quad (7.16)$$

7.3.1 Carrier Concentration: Intrinsic Case

In the absence of impurities, the only carriers are thermally excited electron-hole pairs, so that $n_c(T) = p_v(T)$; this is defined as $n_i(T)$, where i stands for intrinsic. From (7.16), we have

$$n_i(T) = [N_c(T)P_v(T)]^{1/2} e^{-E_G/2\Theta}. \quad (7.17)$$

To obtain the value of ζ for this case (we will call it ζ_i , i for the intrinsic case) we note that $n_i(T) = n_c(T)$, or

$$[N_c(T)P_v(T)]^{1/2} e^{-E_G/2\Theta} = N_c(T)e^{-(\varepsilon_c - \zeta_i)\Theta}. \quad (7.18)$$

This can be rewritten as

$$[P_v(T)/N_c(T)]^{1/2} = e^{\frac{\zeta_i - \varepsilon_c + \frac{1}{2}E_G}{\Theta}}. \quad (7.19)$$

Solving for ζ_i gives

$$\zeta_i = \varepsilon_c - \frac{1}{2}E_G + \frac{3}{4}\Theta \ln \left(\frac{m_v}{m_c} \right). \quad (7.20)$$

In writing (7.20) we have used $[P_v(T)/N_c(T)] = (m_v/m_c)^{3/2}$. In terms of ε_v we can express (7.20) as

$$\zeta_i = \varepsilon_v + \frac{1}{2}E_G + \frac{3}{4}\Theta \ln \left(\frac{m_v}{m_c} \right). \quad (7.21)$$

If $m_v = m_c$, then ζ_i always sits in mid-gap. If $m_v \neq m_c$, ζ_i sits at mid-gap at $\Theta = 0$, but moves away from the higher density of states band as

7.4 Donor and Acceptor Impurities 185

Θ is increased. For $E_G \simeq 1$ eV, the separations $\zeta_i - \varepsilon_v$ and $\varepsilon_c - \zeta_i$ are large compared to Θ for any reasonable temperature, so our assumption is justified.

7.4 Donor and Acceptor Impurities

Si and Ge have four valence electrons. If a small concentration of a column V element replaces some of the host atoms, then there is one electron more than necessary for the formation of the covalent bonds. The extra electron must be placed in the conduction band, and such atoms like As, Sb, and P are known as *donors*. For column III elements (Al, Ga, In, etc.) there is a shortage of one electron, thus, the valence band is not full and a hole exists for every *acceptor* atom.

Let us consider the case of donors (for acceptors, the same picture applies if electrons in the conduction band are replaced by holes in the valence band and, as an example, As^+ ions are replaced by Al^- ions). To a first approximation the extra electron of the As atom will go into the conduction band of the host material. This would give one conduction electron for each impurity from the column V. However, these conduction electron leaves behind an As^+ ion, and the As^+ ion acts as a center of attraction which can bind the conduction electron similar to the binding of an electron by a proton to form a hydrogen atom.

For a hydrogen atom, the Hamiltonian for an electron moving in the presence of a proton located at $r = 0$ is

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} - \frac{e^2}{r}. \quad (7.22)$$

The Schrödinger equation has, for its ground state eigenfunction and eigenvalue,

$$\Psi_0 = N_0 e^{-r/a_B} \quad \text{and} \quad E_0 = -\frac{e^2}{2a_B}, \quad (7.23)$$

where $a_B = \frac{\hbar^2}{me^2}$ is the Bohr radius ($a_B \sim 0.5\text{\AA}$).

For a conduction electron in the presence of a donor ion, we have

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m_c^*} - \frac{e^2}{\epsilon_s r}. \quad (7.24)$$

Here, m_c^* is the conduction band effective mass and ϵ_s is the background dielectric constant of the semiconductor. The ground state will have

$$\Psi_0 = N_0 e^{-r/a_B^*} \quad \text{and} \quad E_0 = -\frac{e^2}{2\epsilon_s a_B^*}. \quad (7.25)$$

The effective Bohr radius a_B^* is given by $a_B^* = \frac{\hbar^2 \epsilon_s}{m_c^* e^2}$. For a typical semiconductor $m_c^* \simeq 0.1m$ and $\epsilon_s \simeq 10$. This gives $a_B^* \approx 10^2 a_B \simeq 50\text{\AA}$ and $E_0 \approx -10^{-3} \frac{e^2}{2a_B} \simeq -13\text{ meV}$.

When donors are present, the chemical potential ζ will move from its intrinsic value ζ_i to a value near the conduction band edge. We know that $n_c(T) = N_c(T)e^{-\frac{\varepsilon_c - \zeta}{\Theta}}$; we can define the intrinsic carrier concentration $n_i(T)$ by $n_i(T) = N_c(T)e^{-\frac{\varepsilon_c - \zeta_i}{\Theta}}$. Then we can write for the general case

$$n_c(T) = n_i(T)e^{\frac{\zeta - \zeta_i}{\Theta}} \quad \text{and} \quad p_v(T) = n_i(T)e^{-\frac{\zeta - \zeta_i}{\Theta}}. \quad (7.26)$$

If $\zeta = \zeta_i$, $n_c(T) = p_v(T) = n_i(T)$. If $\zeta \neq \zeta_i$, then $n_c(T) \neq p_v(T)$ and we can write

$$\Delta n \equiv n_c(T) - p_v(T) = 2 n_i \sinh\left(\frac{\zeta - \zeta_i}{\Theta}\right) = n_c - \frac{n_i^2}{n_c}. \quad (7.27)$$

The product $n_c(T)p_v(T)$ is still independent of ζ so we can write $n_c(T)p_v(T) = n_i^2$. Using $p_v = \frac{n_i^2}{n_c}$, (7.27) gives a quadratic equation for n_c

$$n_c^2 - \Delta n n_c - n_i^2 = 0$$

whose solution is

$$n_c = \frac{\Delta n}{2} + \sqrt{\left(\frac{\Delta n}{2}\right)^2 + n_i^2}. \quad (7.28)$$

We take the positive(+) root because donor impurities must increase the concentration $n_c(T)$.

7.4.1 Population of Donor Levels

If the concentration of donors is sufficiently small ($N_d \leq 10^{19} \text{cm}^{-3}$) that interactions between donor electrons can be neglected, then the average occupancy of a single donor impurity state is given by

$$\langle n_d \rangle = \frac{\sum_j N_j e^{-\beta(E_j - \zeta N_j)}}{\sum_j e^{-\beta(E_j - \zeta N_j)}}. \quad (7.29)$$

Here, $\beta = 1/\Theta$ and the possible values of N_j are

1. $N_j = 0$ when donor atom is empty.
2. $N_j = 1$ when donor atom is occupied by an electron of spin σ .
3. $N_j = 1$ when donor atom is occupied by an electron of spin $-\sigma$.
4. $N_j = 2$ when donor atom is occupied by two electrons of spin σ and $-\sigma$.

There is actually a large repulsion (repulsive energy U) between the electrons in case of $N_j = 2$, so that case of $N_j = 2$ does not actually occur. If we use the cases listed above in (7.29), we obtain

$$\langle n_d \rangle = \frac{0 + 2e^{-\beta(\varepsilon_d - \zeta)} + 2e^{-\beta(2\varepsilon_d + U - 2\zeta)}}{1 + 2e^{-\beta(\varepsilon_d - \zeta)} + e^{-\beta(2\varepsilon_d + U - 2\zeta)}}. \quad (7.30)$$

7.4 Donor and Acceptor Impurities 187

If U is much larger than the other energies, then the terms involving U can be neglected; the following result is obtained:

$$\langle n_d \rangle = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}e^{\beta(\varepsilon_d - \zeta)} + 1}. \quad (7.31)$$

The numerical factor of $\frac{1}{2}$ in this expression comes from the fact that either spin up or spin down states can be occupied but not both.

7.4.2 Thermal Equilibrium in a Doped Semiconductor

Let us assume that we have N_d donors and N_a acceptors per unit volume, and let us take $N_d \gg N_a$. This material would be doped n-type since it has many more donors than acceptors. The energies of interest are shown in Fig. 7.3.

At zero temperature, there must be

- $n_c = 0$, no electrons in the conduction band 193
- $p_v = 0$, no holes in the valence band 194
- $p_a = 0$, no holes bound to acceptors and 195
- $n_d = N_d - N_a$, electrons bound to donor atoms. 196

The $(N_d - N_a)$ donors with electrons bound to them are neutral. The remaining N_a donors have lost their electrons to the N_a acceptors. Thus we have positively charged donor ions and negatively charged acceptor ions per unit volume. The chemical potential must clearly be at the donor level since they are partially occupied, and only at the energy of $\varepsilon = \zeta$ can the Fermi function have a value different from unity or zero at $T = 0$.

At a finite temperature, we have

$$n_c(T) = N_c(T)e^{-\beta(\varepsilon_c - \zeta)}, \quad (7.32)$$

$$p_v(T) = P_v(T)e^{-\beta(\zeta - \varepsilon_v)}, \quad (7.33)$$

$$n_d(T) = \frac{N_d}{\frac{1}{2}e^{\beta(\varepsilon_d - \zeta)} + 1}, \quad (7.34)$$

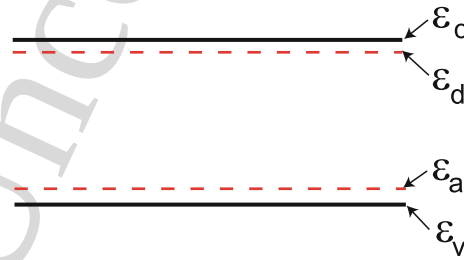


Fig. 7.3. Impurity levels in semiconductors doped with N_d donors and N_a acceptors per unit volume

188 7 Semiconductors

and

$$p_a(T) = \frac{N_a}{\frac{1}{2}e^{\beta(\zeta - \varepsilon_a)} + 1}. \quad (7.35)$$

In addition to these four equations, we must have charge neutrality so that

$$n_c + n_d = N_d - N_a + p_v + p_a \quad (7.36)$$

Here, $n_c + n_d$ is the number of electrons that are either in the conduction band or bound to a donor. If we forget about holes, $n_c + n_d$ must equal $N_d - N_a$, the excess number of electrons introduced by the impurities. For every hole, either bound to an acceptor or in the valence band, we must have an additional electron contributing to $n_c + n_d$. Equations (7.32)–(7.36) form a set of five equations in five unknowns. We know β , N_d , N_a , ε_c , ε_v , ε_d , and ε_a ; the unknowns are $n_c(T)$, $p_v(T)$, $n_d(T)$, $p_a(T)$, and $\zeta(T)$. Although the equations can easily be solved numerically, it is worth looking at the simple case where $\varepsilon_d - \zeta \gg \Theta$ and $\zeta - \varepsilon_a \gg \Theta$. This does not occur at $T = 0$ since $\zeta = \varepsilon_d$ in that case; nor does it apparently occur at very high temperature. However, there is a range of temperature where the assumption is valid. With this assumption

$$n_d(T) \simeq 2 N_d e^{-\beta(\varepsilon_d - \zeta)} \ll N_d, \quad (7.37)$$

and

$$p_a(T) \simeq 2 N_a e^{-\beta(\zeta - \varepsilon_a)} \ll N_a. \quad (7.38)$$

We know from (7.36)–(7.38) that

$$\Delta n \equiv n_c - p_v = N_d - N_a + p_a - n_d \approx N_d - N_a. \quad (7.39)$$

From (7.27) $\Delta n = 2 n_i \sinh \beta(\zeta - \zeta_i)$, and for low concentrations of impurities at sufficiently high temperatures $\beta(\zeta - \zeta_i)$ must be small. We can then approximate $\sinh x$ by x and obtain

$$\Delta n \simeq 2 n_i \beta (\zeta - \zeta_i). \quad (7.40)$$

We know that

$$n_c(T) = n_i(T) e^{\beta(\zeta - \zeta_i)} \simeq n_i [1 + \beta(\zeta - \zeta_i)]. \quad (7.41)$$

Using (7.39)–(7.41) gives

$$n_c \simeq n_i + \frac{1}{2} (N_d - N_a), \quad (7.42)$$

and

$$p_v \simeq n_i - \frac{1}{2} (N_d - N_a). \quad (7.43)$$

For low concentrations of donors and acceptors at reasonably high temperatures $\Delta n \ll n_i(T)$, so that $2\beta(\zeta - \zeta_i) \ll 1$ and ζ is relatively close to ζ_i . Because $\varepsilon_d - \zeta_i$ is an appreciable fraction of the band gap the assumptions $\beta(\varepsilon_d - \zeta) \gg 1$ and $\beta(\zeta - \varepsilon_a) \gg 1$ are valid.

7.4.3 High-Impurity Concentration

232

For high donor concentration $N_d - N_a \gg n_i$; then $\beta(\zeta - \varepsilon_a) \gg 1$ since the
chemical potential moves from midgap closer to the conduction band edge.
Because

$$p_a(T) \simeq 2 N_a e^{-\beta(\zeta - \varepsilon_a)}, \quad (7.44)$$

and

$$p_v(T) = n_i e^{-\beta(\zeta - \zeta_i)} = P_v(T) e^{-\beta(\zeta - \varepsilon_v)}, \quad (7.45)$$

p_a must be very small compared to N_a and p_v must be very small compared
to n_i which is, in turn, small compared to $N_d - N_a$. That is, $p_a \ll N_a$ and
 $p_v \ll N_d - N_a$. Equation (7.36) then gives

$$n_c + n_d \simeq N_d - N_a. \quad (7.46)$$

But $n_d(T) = \frac{N_d}{\frac{1}{2}e^{\beta(\varepsilon_d - \zeta)} + 1}$. If $\beta(\varepsilon_d - \zeta) \gg 1$, then $n_d \ll N_d$, and we find

$$n_c \simeq N_d - N_a, \quad (7.47)$$

$$p_v \simeq \frac{n_i^2}{N_d - N_a} \approx 0, \quad (7.48)$$

$$p_a \simeq 2 N_a e^{-\beta(\zeta - \varepsilon_a)} \approx 0, \quad (7.49)$$

$$n_d \simeq 2 N_d e^{-\beta(\varepsilon_d - \zeta)} \approx 0. \quad (7.50)$$

7.5 p-n Junction

241

The p-n junction is of fundamental importance in understanding semicon-
ductor devices, so we will spend a little time discussing the physics of
p-n junctions. We consider a material with donor concentration $N_d(z)$ and
acceptor concentration $N_a(z)$ given by

$$N_d(z) = N_d \Theta(z) \quad \text{and} \quad N_a(z) = N_a [1 - \Theta(z)]. \quad (7.51)$$

We know that for $z \gg a$, where a is the atomic spacing the chemical potential
must lie close to the donor levels and for $z \ll -a$ it must lie close to the
acceptor levels. Since the chemical potential must be constant (independent
of z) for the equilibrium case, we expect a picture like that sketched in Fig. 7.4.
On the left we have a normal p-type material, and at low temperature, the
chemical potential must sit very close to the acceptor levels which are shown
by the dots at the chemical potential ζ . On the right, the chemical potential
must be close to the donor levels (shown as dots at $\varepsilon = \zeta$) which are near the
conduction band edge. In between, there must be a region in which there is a
built-in potential $\phi(z)$ that results from the transfer of electrons from donors
on the right to acceptors on the left in a region close to $z = 0$. We want to
calculate this potential $\phi(z)$.

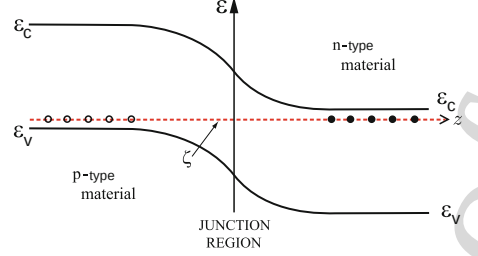


Fig. 7.4. Impurity levels and chemical potential across the p-n junction

7.5.1 Semiclassical Model

258

The effective Hamiltonian describing the conduction or valence band of a system containing a p-n junction can be written

$$H = \varepsilon (-i\hbar\nabla) - e\phi(z), \quad (7.52)$$

where $\phi(z)$ is an electrostatic potential that must be slowly varying on the atomic scale in order for the semiclassical approximation to be valid. The energies of the conduction and valence band edges will be given by

$$\begin{aligned} \varepsilon_c(z) &= \varepsilon_c - e\phi(z), \\ \varepsilon_v(z) &= \varepsilon_v - e\phi(z). \end{aligned} \quad (7.53)$$

The concentration of electrons and holes will vary with position z as

264

$$\begin{aligned} n_c(z) &= N_c(T) e^{-\beta[\varepsilon_c - e\phi(z) - \zeta]}, \\ p_v(z) &= P_v(T) e^{-\beta[\zeta - \varepsilon_v + e\phi(z)]}. \end{aligned} \quad (7.54)$$

265

The most important case to study is the high concentration limit where $N_d \gg n_i$ and $N_a \gg n_i$ on the right and left sides of the junction, respectively. In that case, the concentration of electrons and holes will vary with position z as

266

267

268

269

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{z \rightarrow \infty} n_c(z) &= N_c(T) e^{-\beta[\varepsilon_c - e\phi(\infty) - \zeta]} \approx N_d, \\ \lim_{z \rightarrow -\infty} p_v(z) &= P_v(T) e^{-\beta[\zeta - \varepsilon_v + e\phi(-\infty)]} \approx N_a. \end{aligned} \quad (7.55)$$

These two equations can be combined to give

270

$$e\Delta\phi = e[\phi(\infty) - \phi(-\infty)] = E_G + \Theta \ln \left[\frac{N_d N_a}{N_c(T) P_v(T)} \right]. \quad (7.56)$$

The potential $\phi(z)$ must satisfy Poisson's equation given by 271

$$\frac{\partial^2 \phi(z)}{\partial z^2} = -\frac{4\pi\rho(z)}{\epsilon_s}, \quad (7.57) \quad 272$$

where the charge density $\rho(z)$ is given by 273

$$\rho(z) = e [N_d(z) - N_a(z) - n_c(z) + p_v(z)]. \quad (7.58) \quad 274$$

In using (7.55), we are assuming that all donors and acceptors are ionized 275
[since $n_c(\infty) = N_d$, all the donor electrons are in the conduction band so the 276
donors must be positively charged]. Thus we have 277

$$N_d(z) = N_d \Theta(z), \quad (7.59) \quad 278$$

$$N_a(z) = N_a [1 - \Theta(z)], \quad (7.60) \quad 279$$

$$n_c(z) = N_d e^{-\beta[\phi(\infty) - \phi(z)]}, \quad (7.61) \quad 280$$

$$p_v(z) = N_a e^{-\beta[\phi(z) - \phi(-\infty)]}. \quad (7.62) \quad 281$$

Equations (7.57)–(7.62) form a complicated set of nonlinear equations. The 281
solution is simple if we assume that the change in $\phi(z)$ occurs entirely over a 282
relatively small region near the junction known as the *depletion region*. 283

We will assume that 284

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(z) &= \phi(-\infty) \text{ for } z < -d_p; \text{ region I} \\ \phi(z) &= \phi(\infty) \text{ for } z > d_n; \text{ region II} \\ \phi(z) &\text{varies with } z \text{ for } -d_p < z < d_n; \text{ region III} \end{aligned} \quad (7.63)$$

The length d_p (or d_n) is called the *depletion length* of the p-type (or n-type) 285
region. In region II the concentration of electron in the conduction band n_c is 286
equal to the number of ionized donors N_d so that $\rho_{II}(z) = -en_c + eN_d = 0$. 287
In region I, the concentration of holes p_v is equal to the number of ionized 288
acceptors so that $\rho_I(z) = ep_v - eN_a = 0$. In region III, there are no electrons or 289
holes (the built-in junction potential sweeps them out) so $p_v(z) = n_c(z) = 0$ 290
in this region. Therefore, for $\rho(z)$ we have 291

$$\rho_{III}(z) = \begin{cases} +eN_d & \text{for } 0 < z < d_n, \\ -eN_a & \text{for } -d_p < z < 0. \end{cases} \quad (7.64)$$

We can integrate Poisson's equation. In the region $0 < z < d_n$, we have 292

$$\frac{\partial^2 \phi(z)}{\partial z^2} = -\frac{4\pi e}{\epsilon_s} N_d, \quad (7.65)$$

and integration gives 293

$$\frac{\partial \phi(z)}{\partial z} = -\frac{4\pi e}{\epsilon_s} N_d z + C_1. \quad (7.66)$$

Here, C_1 is a constant of integration. Integrating (7.66) gives

$$\phi(z) = -\frac{2\pi e N_d}{\epsilon_s} z^2 + C_1 z + C_2. \quad (7.67)$$

We choose the constants so that $\phi(z)$ evaluated at $z = d_n$ has the value $\phi(\infty)$ and $\frac{\partial \phi(z)}{\partial z} = 0$ at $z = d_n$. This gives

$$\phi(z) = \phi(\infty) - \frac{2\pi e N_d}{\epsilon_s} (z - d_n)^2, \text{ for } 0 < z < d_n. \quad (7.68)$$

Doing exactly the same thing in the region $-d_p < z < 0$ gives

$$\phi(z) = \phi(-\infty) + \frac{2\pi e N_a}{\epsilon_s} (z + d_p)^2, \text{ for } -d_p < z < 0. \quad (7.69)$$

Of course, for $z > d_n$, $\phi(z) = \phi(\infty)$ and for $z < -d_p$, $\phi(z) = \phi(-\infty)$ (see Fig. 7.5).

Charge conservation requires that

$$N_d d_n = N_a d_p. \quad (7.70)$$

This condition insures the continuity of $\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial z}$ at $z = 0$. The continuity of $\phi(z)$ at $z = 0$ requires that

$$\phi(\infty) - \frac{2\pi e N_d}{\epsilon_s} d_n^2 = \phi(-\infty) + \frac{2\pi e N_a}{\epsilon_s} d_p^2. \quad (7.71)$$

We can solve (7.71) for $\Delta\phi \equiv \phi(\infty) - \phi(-\infty)$ to obtain

$$\Delta\phi = \frac{2\pi e}{\epsilon_s} [N_d d_n^2 + N_a d_p^2]. \quad (7.72)$$

Combining (7.70) and (7.72) allows us to determine d_n and d_p

$$d_n = \left[\frac{(N_a/N_d) \epsilon_s \Delta\phi}{2\pi e (N_a + N_d)} \right]^{1/2}. \quad (7.73)$$

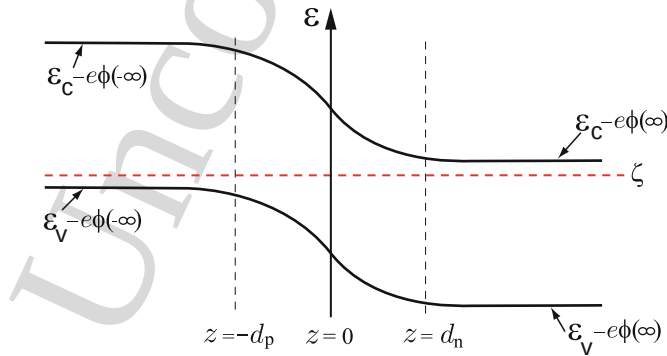


Fig. 7.5. Band bending across the p-n junction

The equation for d_p is obtained by interchanging N_a and N_d . If N_a were equal 309
to N_d then $d_n = d_p = d$ and is given by 310

$$d \simeq \left(\frac{\epsilon_s e \Delta\phi}{4\pi e^2 N} \right)^{1/2} \approx \left(\frac{\epsilon_s E_G}{4\pi e^2 N} \right)^{1/2}, \quad (7.74)$$

where $N = N_d = N_a$. In the last result, we have simply put $e\Delta\phi \approx E_G$. 311

7.5.2 Rectification of a p-n Junction 312

The region of the p-n junction is a high resistance region because the carrier 313
concentration in the region ($-d_p < z < d_n$) is depleted. When a voltage V 314
is applied, almost all of the voltage drop occurs across the high resistance 315
junction region. We write $\Delta\phi$ in the presence of an applied voltage V as 316

$$\Delta\phi = (\Delta\phi)_0 - V. \quad (7.75)$$

Here, $(\Delta\phi)_0$ is, of course, the value of $\Delta\phi$ when $V = 0$. The sign of V is 317
taken as positive (*forward bias*) when V decreases the voltage drop across the 318
junction. The depletion layer width d_n changes with voltage 319

$$d_n(V) = d_n(0) \left[1 - \frac{V}{(\Delta\phi)_0} \right]^{1/2}. \quad (7.76)$$

A similar equation holds for $d_p(V)$. When $V = 0$, there is no hole current J_h 320
and no electron current J_e . When V is finite both J_e and J_h are nonzero. Let 321
us look at J_h . It has two components: 322

Generation current This current results from the small concentration of holes 323
on the n-side of the junction that are created to be in thermal equilib- 324
rium, i.e., to have ζ remain constant. These holes are immediately swept 325
into the p-side of the junction by the electric field of the junction. This 326
generation current is rather insensitive to applied voltage V , since the 327
built-in potential $(\Delta\phi)_0$ is sufficient to sweep away all the carriers that 328
are thermally generated. 329

Recombination current This current results from the diffusion of holes from 330
the p-side to the n-side. On the p-side there is a very high concentration 331
of holes. In order to make it cross the depletion layer (and recombine with 332
an electron on the n-side), a hole must overcome the junction potential 333
barrier $-e[(\Delta\phi)_0 - V]$. This recombination current does depend on V as 334

$$J_h^{\text{rec}} \propto e^{-e[(\Delta\phi)_0 - V]/\Theta}. \quad (7.77)$$

Here, J_h^{rec} indicates the number current density of holes from the p- to 335
n-side. 336

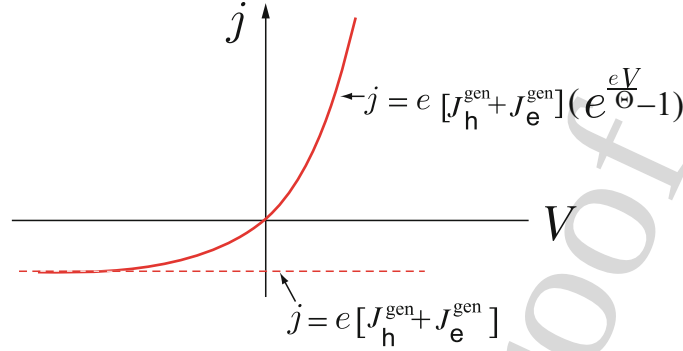


Fig. 7.6. Current-voltage characteristic across the p-n junction

Now, at $V = 0$ these two currents must cancel to give $J_h = J_h^{\text{rec}} - J_h^{\text{gen}} = 0$
 We can write

$$J_h = J_h^{\text{gen}} \left[e^{eV/\Theta} - 1 \right]. \quad (7.78)$$

The electrical current density due to holes is $j_h = eJ_h$, and it vanishes at $V = 0$ and has the correct V dependence for J_h^{rec} . If we do the same for electrons, we obtain the current density $J_e = J_e^{\text{gen}} \left[e^{eV/\Theta} - 1 \right]$, which flows oppositely to the J_h . The electrical current density of electrons j_e is parallel to the j_h . Therefore, the combined electrical current density becomes as follows:

$$j = e(J_h^{\text{gen}} + J_e^{\text{gen}}) \left(e^{eV/\Theta} - 1 \right). \quad (7.79)$$

A plot of j versus V looks as shown in Fig. 7.6. The applied-voltage behavior of an electrical current across the p-n junction is called *rectification* because a circuit can easily be arranged in which no current flows when V is negative (smaller than some value) but a substantial current flows for positive applied voltage.

7.5.3 Tunnel Diode

In the late 1950s, Leo Esaki¹ was studying the current voltage characteristics of very heavily doped p-n junctions. He found and explained the $j - V$ characteristic shown in Fig. 7.7. Esaki noted that, for very heavily doped materials, impurity band was formed and one would obtain degenerate n-type and p-type regions where the chemical potential ζ was actually in the conduction band on the n-side and in the valence band on the p-side as shown in Fig. 7.8. For a forward bias the electrons on the n-side can tunnel through the energy gap into the empty states (holes) in the valence band. This current occurs only for $V > 0$, and it cuts off when the voltage V exceeds the value at

¹ L. Esaki, Phys. Rev. **109**, 603–604 (1958).

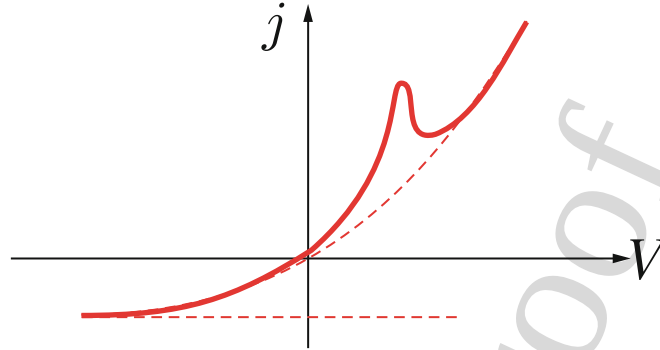


Fig. 7.7. Current-voltage characteristic across a heavily doped p-n junction

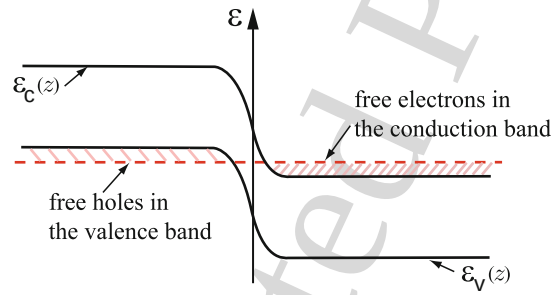


Fig. 7.8. Chemical potential across the heavily doped p-n junction

which $\varepsilon_c(\infty) = \varepsilon_v(-\infty)$. When the tunnel current is added to the normal p-n junction current, the negative resistance region shown in Fig. 7.7 occurs.

7.6 Surface Space Charge Layers

The metal-oxide-semiconductor (MOS) structure is the basis for all of current microelectronics. We will consider the *surface space charge layers* that can occur in an MOS structure. Assume a semiconductor surface is produced with a uniform and thin insulating layer (usually on oxide), and then on top of this oxide a metallic gate electrode is deposited as is shown in Fig. 7.9.

In the absence of any applied voltage, the bands line up as shown in Fig. 7.10. If a voltage is applied which lowers the Fermi level in the metal relative to that in the semiconductor, most of the voltage drop will occur across the insulator and the depletion layer of the semiconductor.

For a relatively small applied voltage, we obtain a band alignment as shown in Fig. 7.11. In the depletion layer all of the acceptors are ionized and the hole concentration is zero since the field in the depletion layer sweeps the holes into

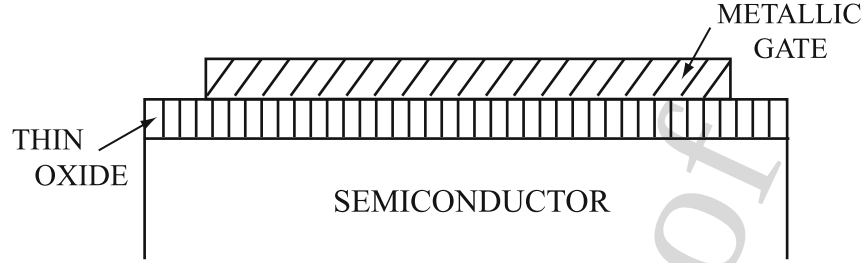


Fig. 7.9. Metal-oxide-semiconductor structure

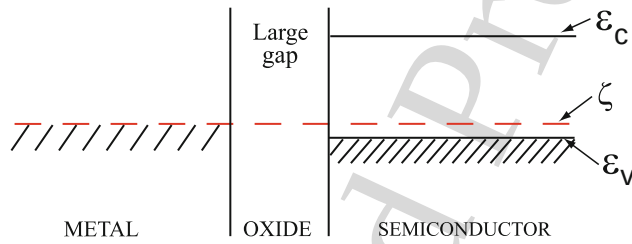


Fig. 7.10. Band edge alignment across an MOS structure

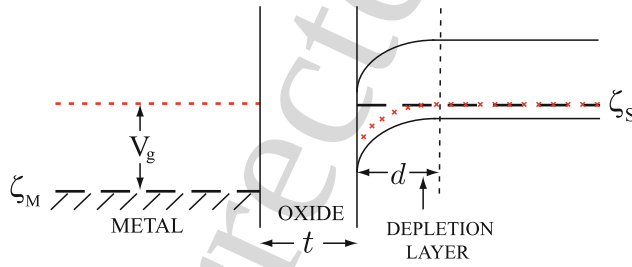


Fig. 7.11. Band alignment across an MOS structure in the presence of a small applied voltage

the bulk of the semiconductor. The normal component of the displacement 376
field $D = \epsilon E$ must be continuous at the semiconductor-oxide interface, and 377
the sum of the voltage drop V_d across the depletion layer and V_{ox} across the 378
oxide must equal the applied voltage V_g . If we take the electrostatic potential 379
to be $\phi(z)$, then 380

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(z) &= \phi(\infty) \text{ for } z > d, \\ \phi(z) &= \phi(\infty) + \frac{2\pi e N_a}{\epsilon_s} (z - d)^2 \text{ for } 0 < z < d. \end{aligned} \quad (7.80)$$

381

The potential energy V is $-e\phi$. V_{ox} is simply $E_{\text{ox}}t$, where E_{ox} and t are the
 electric field in the oxide and the thickness of the oxide layer, respectively.
 Equating $\epsilon_0 E_{\text{ox}}$ to $-\epsilon_s \phi'(z=0)$ gives

$$e \frac{V_{\text{ox}}}{t} \epsilon_0 = 4\pi e^2 N_a d. \quad (7.81)$$

Equation (7.81) gives us d in terms of V_{ox} . Adding V_{ox} to the voltage drop
 $\frac{2\pi e N_a}{\epsilon_s} d^2$ across the depletion layer gives

$$V_{\text{ox}} = V_g - \frac{2\pi e N_a}{\epsilon_s} d^2. \quad (7.82)$$

Note that d must grow as V_g increases since the voltage drop is divided between
 the oxide and the depletion layer. The only way that V_d can grow, since N_a is
 fixed, is by having d grow. The surface layer just discussed is called a *surface*
depletion layer since the density of holes in the layer is depleted from its bulk
 value. For a gate voltage in the opposite direction the bands look as shown
 in Fig. 7.12. Here, the surface layer will have an excess of holes either bound
 to the acceptors or in the valence band. This is called an *accumulation layer*
 since the density of holes is increased at the surface. If the gate voltage V_g is
 increased to a large value in the direction of depletion, one can wind up with
 the conduction band edge at the interface below ζ_s , the chemical potential of
 the semiconductor. This is shown in Fig. 7.13.

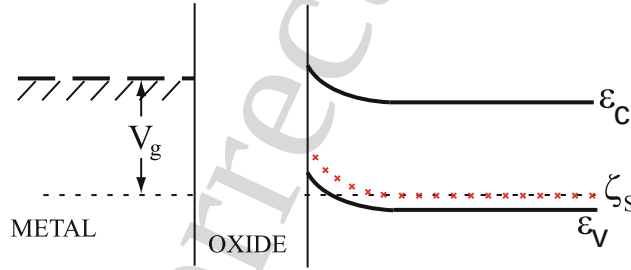


Fig. 7.12. Band alignment across an MOS structure in the presence of a small negative gate voltage

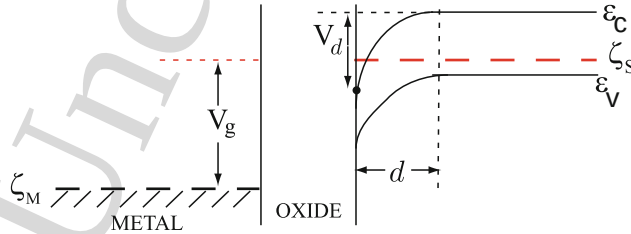


Fig. 7.13. Band alignment across an MOS structure in the presence of a large applied voltage

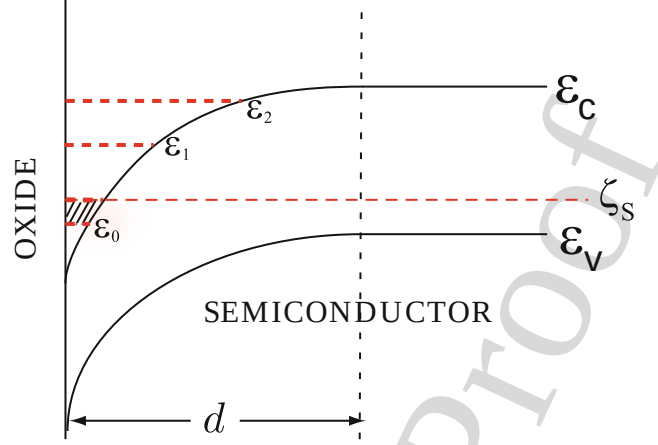


Fig. 7.14. Band edge near the interface of the semiconductor–insulator in the MOS structure in the presence of a large applied voltage

Now, there can be electrons in the conduction band because ζ_s is higher than $\varepsilon_c(z)$ evaluated at the semiconductor–oxide interface. The part of the diagram near this interface is enlarged in Fig. 7.14. This system is called a *semiconductor surface inversion layer* because in this surface layer we have trapped electrons (minority carriers in the bulk). The motion of the electrons in the direction normal to the interface is quantized, so there are discrete energy levels $\varepsilon_0, \varepsilon_1, \dots$ forming *subband structure*. If only ε_0 lies below the chemical potential and $\varepsilon_1 - \zeta \gg 0$, the electronic system behaves like a *two-dimensional electron gas* (2DEG) because

$$\varepsilon = \varepsilon_0 + \frac{\hbar^2}{2m_c^*} (k_x^2 + k_y^2), \quad (7.83)$$

and

$$\Psi_{n,k_x,k_y} = \frac{1}{L} e^{i(k_x x + k_y y)} \xi_n(z). \quad (7.84)$$

Here, $\xi_n(z)$ is the n th eigenfunction of a differential equation given by

$$\left[\frac{1}{2m_c^*} \left(-i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \right)^2 + V_{\text{eff}}(z) - \varepsilon_n \right] \xi_n(z) = 0. \quad (7.85)$$

In (7.85) the effective potential $V_{\text{eff}}(z)$ must contain contributions from the depletion layer charge, the *Hartree potential* of the electrons trapped in the inversion layer, an image potential if the dielectric constants of the oxide and semiconductor are different, and an *exchange–correlation potential* of the electrons with one another beyond the simple Hartree term. Because the electrons are completely free to move in the $x-y$ plane, but “frozen” into a single

7.6 Surface Space Charge Layers 199

quantized level ε_0 in the z -direction, the z -degree of freedom is frozen out 418
of the problem, and in this sense the electrons behave as a two-dimensional 419
electron gas. We fill up a circle in $k_x - k_y$ space up to k_F , and 420

$$2 \sum_{\substack{k_x, k_y \\ \varepsilon < \varepsilon_F}} 1 = N, \quad (7.86)$$

giving $2 \left(\frac{L}{2\pi}\right)^2 \pi k_F^2 = N$. This means that $k_F^2 = 2\pi n_s$, where $n_s \equiv N/L^2$ 421
is the number of electrons per unit area of the inversion layer. Of course 422
 $\varepsilon_F \equiv \frac{\hbar^2 k_F^2}{2m_e^*} = \zeta - \varepsilon_0$. 423

The potential due to the depletion charge is calculated exactly as before. 424
The Hartree potential is a solution of Poisson's equation given below 425

$$\frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2} V_H = -\frac{4\pi e^2}{\varepsilon_s} \rho_e(z). \quad (7.87)$$

The electron density is given by 426

$$\rho_e(z) = \sum_{n,k} f_0(\varepsilon_{nk}) |\Psi_{nk}(z)|^2, \quad (7.88)$$

where $\Psi_{nk}(z) = L^{-1} \xi_n(z) e^{ik \cdot r}$ is the *envelope wave function* for the electrons 427
in the effective potential. The exchange–correlation potential V_{xc} is a func- 428
tional of the electron density $\rho_e(z)$. This surface inversion layer system is the 429
basis of all large scale integrated circuit chips that we use every day. The 430
basic unit is the MOS field effect transistor (MOSFET) shown in Fig. 7.15. 431
The source–drain conductivity can be controlled by varying the applied gate 432
voltage V_g . This allows one to make all kinds of electronic devices like oscil- 433
lators, transistors *etc.* This was an extremely active field of semiconductor 434

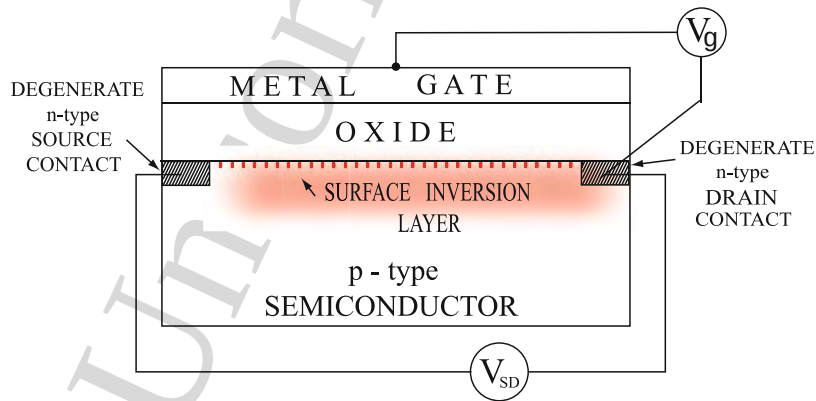


Fig. 7.15. Schematic diagram of the metal–oxide–semiconductor field effect transistor

physics from the late 60's till the present time. Some basic problems that were investigated include:

- *Transport along the layer*
surface electron density n_s and relaxation time τ as a function of the gate voltage V_g , cyclotron resonance, localization, magnetoconductivity, and Hall effect.
- *Transport perpendicular to the layer*
optical absorption; Raman scattering, coupling to optical phonons, intra and intersubband collective modes.
- *Many-body effects* on subband structure and on effective mass and effective g -value.

7.6.1 Superlattices

By novel growth techniques like *molecular beam epitaxy* (MBE) novel structures can be grown almost one atomic layer at a time. The requirements for such growth are

1. The lattice constants of the two materials must be rather close. Otherwise, large strains lead to many crystal imperfections.
2. The materials must form appropriate bonds with one another.

One very popular example is the GaAs–AlAs system shown in Fig. 7.16. A single layer of GaAs in an AlAs host would be called a *quantum well*. A periodic array of such layers is called a *superlattice*. It can be thought of as a new material with a *supercell* in real space that goes from one GaAs to AlAs interface to the next GaAs to AlAs interface.

7.6.2 Quantum Wells

If a quantum well is narrow, it will lead to quantized motion and subbands just as the MOS surface inversion layer did (see, for example, Fig. 7.17). For

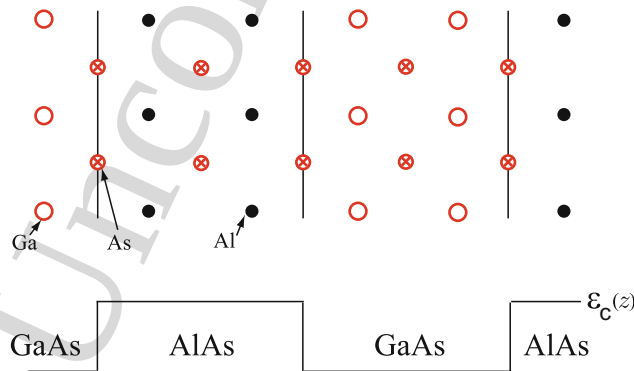


Fig. 7.16. Schematic diagram of the GaAs–AlAs superlattice system

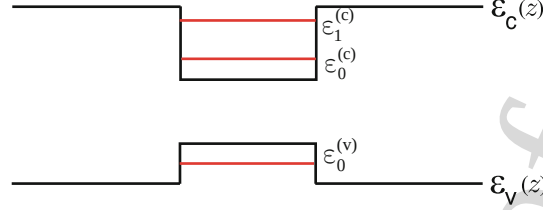


Fig. 7.17. Schematic diagram of the subbands formation in a quantum well of the GaAs–AlAs structure

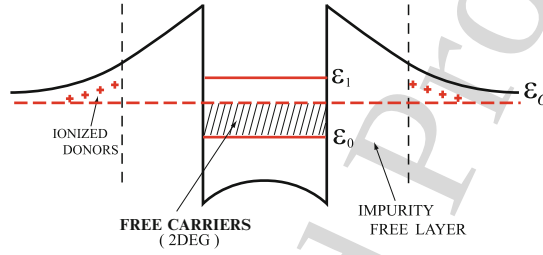


Fig. 7.18. Schematic diagram of a quantum well in a modulation doped GaAs/Ga_{1-x}Al_xAs quantum well

the subbands in the conduction band we have

$$\varepsilon_n^{(c)}(\mathbf{k}) = \varepsilon_n^{(c)} + \frac{\hbar^2}{2m_c^*} (k_x^2 + k_y^2). \quad (7.89)$$

The band offsets are difficult to predict theoretically, but they can be measured.

7.6.3 Modulation Doping

The highest mobility materials have been obtained by growing modulation doped GaAs/Ga_{1-x}Al_xAs quantum wells. In these materials, the donors are located in the GaAlAs barriers, but no closer than several hundred Angstroms to the quantum well. The bands look as shown in Fig. 7.18. A typical sample structure would look like GaAlAs with N_d donors/cm³ || pure GaAlAs of 20 nm thick // GaAs of 10 nm thick // pure GaAlAs of 20 nm thick // GaAlAs with N_d donors/cm³ (see, e.g., Fig. 7.19). Because the ionized impurities are rather far away from the quantum well electrons, ionized impurity scattering is minimized and very high mobilities can be attained.

7.6.4 Minibands

When the periodic array of quantum wells in a superlattice has very wide barriers, the subband levels in each quantum well are essentially unchanged

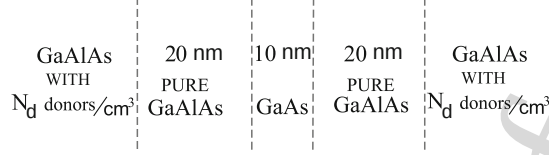


Fig. 7.19. Schematic layered structure of a typical modulation doped GaAs/ $\text{Ga}_{1-x}\text{Al}_x\text{As}$ quantum well system

(see, for example, Fig. 7.20). However, a new periodicity has been introduced, 478
so we have a quantum number k_z that has to do with the eigenvalues of the 479
translation operator. 480

$$T_a \Psi_{nk}(z) = e^{ik_z a} \Psi_{nk}(z) \quad (7.90)$$

This looks just like the problem of atomic energy levels that give rise to 481
band structure when the atoms are brought together to form a crystal. For 482
very large values of the barrier width, no tunneling occurs, and the *minibands* 483
are essentially flat as is shown in Fig. 7.21. The supercell in real space extends 484
from $z = 0$ to $z = a$. The first Brillouin zone in k -space extends $-\frac{\pi}{a} \leq k_z \leq \frac{\pi}{a}$. 485
The minibands $\varepsilon_n(k_z)$ are flat if the barriers are so wide that no tunneling 486
from one quantum well to its neighbor is possible. When the barriers are nar- 487
rower and tunneling can take place, the flat bands become k_z -dependent. One 488
can easily show that in tight binding calculation one would get bands with 489
sinusoidal shape as shown in Fig. 7.22 below. Of course, the same band struc- 490
ture would result from taking free electrons moving in a periodic potential 491

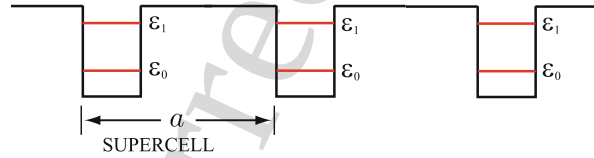


Fig. 7.20. Schematic subband alignments in a superlattice of supercell width a

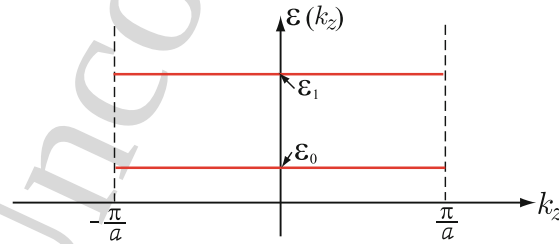


Fig. 7.21. Schematic miniband alignment in a superlattice of very large barrier width

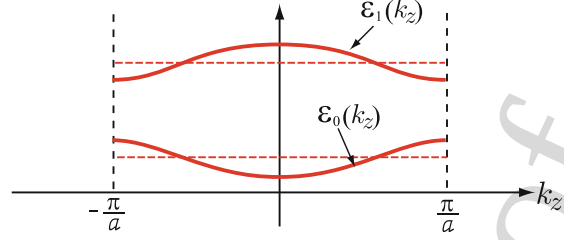


Fig. 7.22. Miniband structure in a superlattice of very narrow barrier width

$$V(r) = \sum_n V_n e^{i\frac{2\pi}{a}nz}. \quad (7.91)$$

During the past 20 years, there has been an enormous explosion in the study (both experimental and theoretical) of optical and transport properties of quantum wells, superlattices, quantum wires, and quantum dots. One of the most exciting developments was the observation by Klaus von Klitzing of the quantum Hall effect in a 2DEG in a strong magnetic field. Before we give a very brief description of this work, we must discuss the eigenstates of free electrons in two dimensions in the presence of a perpendicular magnetic field.

7.7 Electrons in a Magnetic Field

Consider a 2DEG with n_s electrons per unit area. In the presence of a dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ applied normal to the plane of the 2DEG, the Hamiltonian of a single electron is written by

$$H = \frac{1}{2m} \left(\mathbf{p} + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A} \right)^2. \quad (7.92)$$

Here, $\mathbf{p} = (p_x, p_y)$ and $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ is the vector potential whose curl gives $\mathbf{B} = (0, 0, B)$, i.e., $\mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}$. There are a number of different possible choices for $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ (different gauges) that give a constant magnetic field in the z -direction. For example, the *Landau gauge* chooses $\mathbf{A} = (0, Bx, 0)$ giving us $(\hat{x} \frac{\partial}{\partial x}) \times (\hat{y} Bx) = B\hat{z}$. Another common choice is $\mathbf{A} = \frac{B}{2}(-y, x, 0)$; this is called the *symmetric gauge*. Different gauges have different eigenstates, but the observables have to be the same.

Let us look at the Schrödinger equation in the Landau gauge. $(H - E)\Psi = 0$ can be rewritten as

$$\left[\frac{p_x^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2m} \left(p_y + \frac{e}{c} Bx \right)^2 - E \right] \Psi(\mathbf{r}) = 0. \quad (7.93)$$

Because H is independent of the coordinate y , we can write

$$\Psi(x, y, z) = e^{iky} \varphi(x). \quad (7.94)$$

Substituting this into the Schrödinger equation gives

$$\left[\frac{p_x^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2} m \omega_c^2 \left(x + \frac{\hbar k}{m \omega_c} \right)^2 - E \right] \varphi(x) = 0. \quad (7.95)$$

Here, of course, $\omega_c = \frac{eB}{mc}$ is the *cyclotron frequency*. If we define $\tilde{x} = x + \frac{\hbar k}{m \omega_c}$,

$\frac{\partial}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \tilde{x}}$ and the Schrödinger equation is just the simple harmonic oscillator equation. Its solutions are as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} E_{nk} &= \hbar \omega_c \left(n + \frac{1}{2} \right), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots \\ \Psi_{nk}(x, y, z) &= e^{iky} u_n \left(x + \frac{\hbar k}{m \omega_c} \right). \end{aligned} \quad (7.96)$$

The energy is independent of k , so the density of states (per unit length) is a series of δ -functions, as is shown in Fig. 7.23.

$$g(\varepsilon) \propto \sum_n \delta \left(\varepsilon - \hbar \omega_c \left(n + \frac{1}{2} \right) \right). \quad (7.97)$$

The constant of proportionality for a finite size sample of area L^2 is $\frac{m \omega_c L^2}{2\pi \hbar}$, so that the total number of states per Landau level is

$$N_L = L \left(\frac{m \omega_c L}{2\pi \hbar} \right) = \frac{BL^2}{hc/e}. \quad (7.98)$$

For a sample of area L^2 , each Landau level can accommodate N_L electrons (we have omitted spin) and N_L is the *magnetic flux* through the sample divided

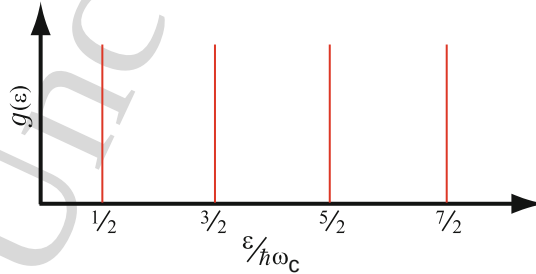


Fig. 7.23. Density of states for electrons in a dc magnetic field

by the *quantum of magnetic flux* $\frac{hc}{e}$. We note that the degeneracy of each Landau level can also be rewritten by $N_L = \frac{L^2}{2\pi\lambda^2}$ in terms of the *magnetic length* $\lambda = \sqrt{\frac{\hbar c}{eB}}$.

7.7.1 Quantum Hall Effect

If we make contacts to the 2DEG, and send a current I in the x -direction, then we expect

$$\sigma_{xx} \propto \frac{I}{V_x} \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_{xy} \propto \frac{I}{V_y}. \quad (7.99)$$

Here, V_x is the applied voltage in the direction of I and V_y is the Hall voltage. In the simple classical (Drude model) picture, we know that

$$\sigma_{xx} = \sigma_{yy} = \frac{\sigma_0}{1 + (\omega_c\tau)^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_{xy} = -\sigma_{yx} = -\frac{\omega_c\tau\sigma_0}{1 + (\omega_c\tau)^2}, \quad (7.100)$$

where $\sigma_0 = \frac{n_s e^2 \tau}{m}$. In the limit as $\tau \rightarrow \infty$ we have $\sigma_0 \rightarrow \infty$, $\sigma_{xx} \rightarrow 0$, and $\sigma_{xy} \rightarrow -\frac{n_s e c}{B}$.

In the absence of scattering, $g(\varepsilon)$ is a series of δ -functions. With scattering, the δ -functions are broadened as shown in Fig. 7.24. We know that, when one Landau level is completely filled and the one above it is completely empty, there can be no current, because to modify the distribution function $f_0(\varepsilon)$ would require promotion of electrons to the next Landau level. There is a gap for doing this, and at $T = 0$ there will be no current. If we plot σ_{xx} versus $n_s/n_L \equiv \nu$, the *filling factor* ($n_L = N_L/L^2$) we expect σ_{xx} to go to zero at any integer values of ν as shown in Fig. 7.25.

Our understanding of the *integral quantum Hall effect* is based on the idea that within the broadened δ -functions representing the density of states, we have both *extended states* and *localized states* as shown in Fig. 7.26. The quantum Hall effect was very important because it led to

1. A resistance standard $\rho = \frac{h}{e^2} \frac{1}{n}$.
2. Better understanding of *Anderson localization*.
3. Discovery of the *fractional quantum Hall effect*.

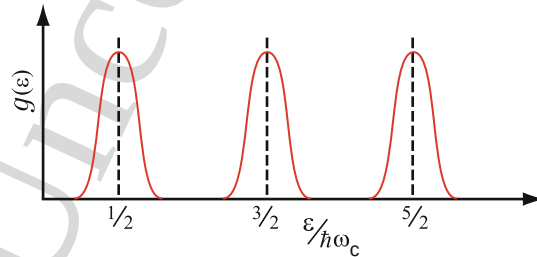


Fig. 7.24. Density of states for electrons in a dc magnetic field in the presence of scattering

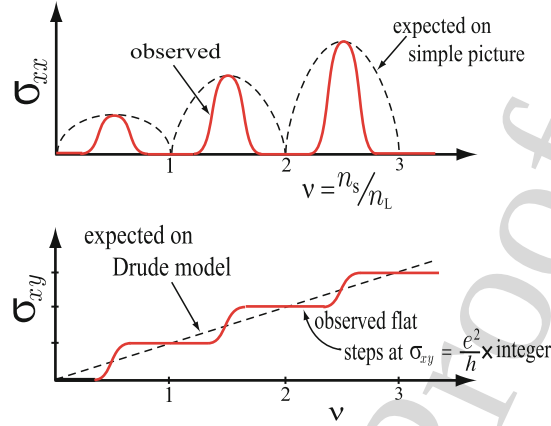


Fig. 7.25. Conductivities as a function of the Landau level filling factor. (a) Longitudinal conductivity σ_{xx} , (b) Hall conductivity σ_{xy}

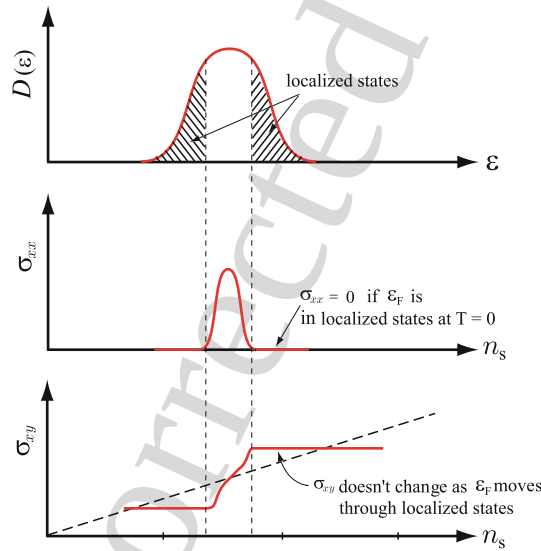


Fig. 7.26. Scattering effects on the density of states and conductivity components in an integral quantum Hall state

7.8 Amorphous Semiconductors

553

Except for introducing donors and acceptors in semiconductors, we have essentially restricted our consideration to ideal, defect-free infinite crystals. There are two important aspects of order that crystals display. The first is *short range order*. This has to do with the regular arrangement of atoms in the

554

555

556

557

vicinity of any particular atom. This short range order determines the local bonding and the crystalline fields acting on a given atom. The second aspect is *long range order*. This is responsible for the translational and rotational invariance that we used in discussing Bloch functions and band structure. It allowed us to use Bloch's theorem and to define the Bloch wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ within the first Brillouin zone.

In real crystals, there are always

- Surface effects associated with the finite size of the sample.
- Elementary excitations (dynamic perturbations like phonons, magnons, etc.)
- Imperfections and defects (static disorder).

For an *ordered solid*, one can start with the perfect crystal as the zeroth approximation and then treat static and dynamic perturbations by perturbation theory. For a *disordered solid* this type of approximation is not meaningful.

7.8.1 Types of Disorder

We can classify disorder by considering some simple examples in two dimensions that we can represent on a plane.

Perfect Crystalline Order Atoms in perfect crystalline array (see Fig. 7.27a).

Compositional Disorder Impurity atoms (e.g. in an alloy) are randomly distributed among crystalline lattice sites (See Fig. 7.27(b).)

Positional Disorder Some separations and some bond angles are not perfect (See Fig. 7.27(c).)

Topological Disorder Fig. 7.27d shows some topological disorder.

Because we cannot use translational invariance and energy band concepts, it is difficult to evaluate the eigenstates of a disordered system. What has been found is that in disordered systems, some of the electronic states can be extended states and some can be localized states. An extended state is one in which, if $|\Psi(0)|^2$ is finite, $|\Psi(r)|^2$ remains finite for r very large. A localized state is one in which $|\Psi(r)|^2$ falls off very quickly as r becomes large (usually exponentially). There is an enormous literature on disorder and localization (starting with a classic, but difficult, paper by P.W. Anderson² in the 1950s).

7.8.2 Anderson Model

The Anderson model described a system of atomic levels at different sites n and allowed for hopping from site n to m . The Hamiltonian is written by

$$H = \sum_n \varepsilon_n c_n^\dagger c_n + T \sum_{nm} c_m^\dagger c_n \quad (7.101)$$

² P.W. Anderson, Phys. Rev. **109**, 1492 (1958).

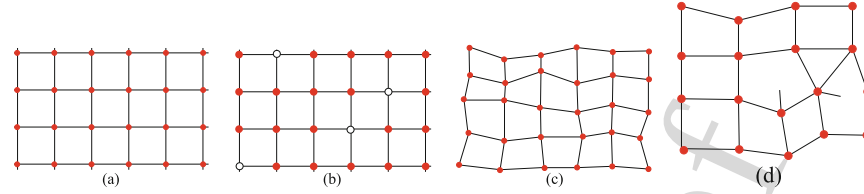


Fig. 7.27. Various types of disorder. (a) Atoms in perfect crystalline array. (b) Impurity atoms are randomly distributed among crystalline lattice sites. (c) Some separations and some bond angles are not perfect. (d) Not all fourfold rings, but some five and sixfold rings leaving dangling bonds represent topological disorder

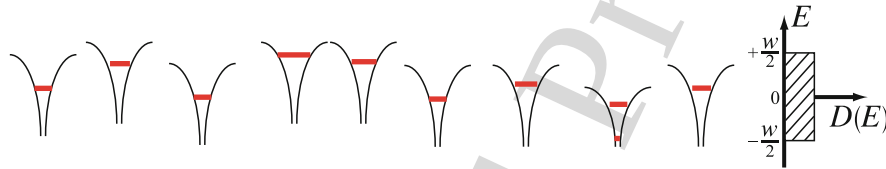


Fig. 7.28. Basic assumption of energy level distribution on different sites in the Anderson model

This is just the description of band structure in terms of an atomic level ε on site n where the periodic potential gives rise to the *hopping term*. In tight binding approximation, we would restrict T , the hopping term to nearest neighbor hops, and that is what the prime on $\sum'$ in the second-term means.

In Anderson model, it was assumed that ε_n the energy on site n was not a constant, but that it was randomly distributed over a range w (see, for example, Fig. 7.28). Anderson showed that if the parameter $\frac{w}{B}$, where B is the band width (caused by and proportional to T) satisfied $\frac{w}{B} \geq 5$, the state at $E = 0$ (the center of the band) is localized, while if $\frac{w}{B} \leq 5$ it is extended.

7.8.3 Impurity Bands

Impurity levels in semiconductors form Anderson-like systems. In these systems, the energy E is independent of n ; it is equal to the donor energy ε_d . However, the hopping term T is randomly distributed between certain limits, since the impurities are randomly distributed. Sometimes (when two impurities are close together) it is easy to hop and T is large. Sometimes, when they are far apart, T is small.

7.8.4 Density of States

Although the eigenvalues of the Anderson Hamiltonian can not be calculated in a useful way, it is possible to make use of the idea of density of states. In

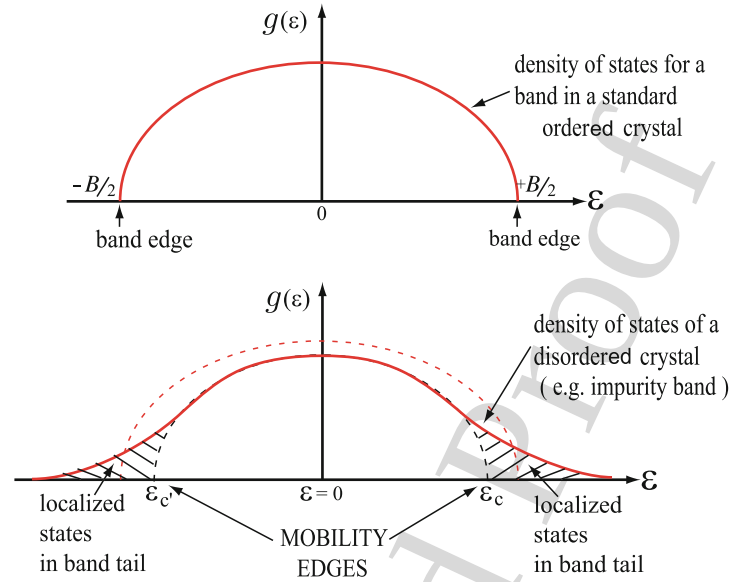


Fig. 7.29. Density of states of an ordinary crystal and that of a disordered material

Fig. 7.29, we sketch the density of states of an ordinary crystal and then the density of states of a disordered material. In the latter, the tails on the density of states usually contain localized states, while the states in the center of the band are extended. The energies $E_{c'}$ and E_c are called *mobility edges*. They separate localized and extended states. When E_F is in the localized states, there is no conduction at $T = 0$. The field of amorphous materials, Anderson localization, and mobility edges are of current research interest, but we do not have time to go into greater detail.

Problems**7.1.** Intrinsic carrier concentration can be written as

$$n_i(T) = 2.5 \left(\frac{m_c}{m} \frac{m_v}{m} \right)^{3/4} \left(\frac{k_B T}{E_G} \right)^{3/2} \left(\frac{E_G \text{ in eV}}{\frac{1}{40} \text{ eV}} \right)^{3/2} e^{-\frac{E_G}{2k_B T}} \times 10^{19} / \text{cm}^3.$$

Take $E_G = 1.5 \text{ eV}$, $m_h = 0.7m$, and $m_e = 0.06m$ roughly those of GaAs, and plot $\ln n_i$ vs T in the range $T = 3 \text{ K}$ to 300 K .

7.2. Plot the chemical potential $\zeta(T)$ vs T in the range $T = 3 - 300 \text{ K}$ for values of $E_G = 1.5 \text{ eV}$, $m_h = 0.7m$, and $m_e = 0.06m$.

7.3. For InSb, we have $E_G \simeq 0.18 \text{ eV}$, $\varepsilon_s \simeq 17$, and $m_e \simeq 0.014m$.

- i) Evaluate the binding energy of a donor.
- ii) Evaluate the orbit radius of a conduction electron in the ground state.
- iii) Evaluate the donor concentration at which overlap effects between neighboring impurities become significant.
- iv) If $N_d = 10^{14} \text{ cm}^{-3}$ in a sample of InSb, calculate n_c at $T = 4 \text{ K}$.

7.4. Let us consider a case that the work function of two metals differ by 2 eV ; $E_{F1} - E_{F2} = 2 \text{ eV}$.



If the metals are brought into contact, electrons will flow from metal 1 to metal 2. Assume the transferred electrons are displaced by $3 \times 10^{-8} \text{ cm}$. How many electrons per square centimeter are transferred?

7.5. Consider a semiconductor quantum well consisting of a very thin layer of narrow gap semiconductor of $E_G = \varepsilon_c - \varepsilon_v$ contained in a wide band gap host material of $E_G = \varepsilon_c^H - \varepsilon_v^H$. The conduction and valence band edges are shown in the figure. The dashed lines indicate the positions of energy levels associated with the quantized motion of electrons (ε_0^c) and holes (ε_0^v) in this quantum well. We can write the electron and hole energies, respectively, as

$$\varepsilon_c(k) = \tilde{\varepsilon}_c + \frac{\hbar^2}{2m_c} (k_x^2 + k_y^2)$$

and

$$\varepsilon_v(k) = \tilde{\varepsilon}_v - \frac{\hbar^2}{2m_v} (k_x^2 + k_y^2)$$

where $\tilde{\varepsilon}_c = \varepsilon_c + \varepsilon_0^c$ and $\tilde{\varepsilon}_v = \varepsilon_v + \varepsilon_0^v$.

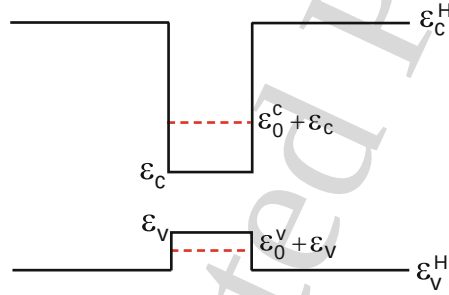
- (a) Calculate the two-dimensional density of states for the electrons and
holes assuming that other quantized levels can be ignored. Remember
that

$$L^2 g_c(\varepsilon) = \sum_{\substack{k_x, k_y, \sigma \\ \varepsilon < \varepsilon_k < \varepsilon + d\varepsilon}} 1.$$

- (b) Determine $N_c(T)$ and $P_v(T)$ for this two-dimensional system. Remem-
ber that

$$N_c(T) = \int_{\tilde{\varepsilon}_c}^{\infty} d\varepsilon g_c(\varepsilon) e^{-\frac{\varepsilon - \tilde{\varepsilon}_c}{\Theta}}.$$

- (c) Determine $n_c(T)$ and $p_v(T)$ for the intrinsic case.
(d) Determine the value of the chemical potential for this case.



Summary

654

In this chapter, we studied the physics of semiconducting material and artificial structures made of semiconductors. General properties of typical semiconductors are reviewed and temperature dependence of carrier concentration is considered for both intrinsic and doped cases. Then basic physics of p-n junctions is covered in equilibrium and the current-voltage characteristic of the junction is described. The characteristics of two-dimensional electrons are discussed for the electrons in surface space charge layers formed in metal-oxide-semiconductor structures, semiconductor superlattices, and quantum wells. The fundamentals of the quantum Hall effects and the effects of disorders and modulation doping are also discussed.

The densities of states in the conduction and valence bands are given by

$$g_c(\varepsilon) = \frac{\sqrt{2}m_c^{3/2}}{\pi^2\hbar^3} (\varepsilon - \varepsilon_c)^{1/2}; \quad g_v(\varepsilon) = \frac{\sqrt{2}m_v^{3/2}}{\pi^2\hbar^3} (\varepsilon_v - \varepsilon)^{1/2}.$$

In the case of nondegenerate regime, we have $\varepsilon_c - \zeta \gg \Theta$ and $\zeta - \varepsilon_v \gg \Theta$, where Θ is $k_B T$. Then the carrier concentrations become

$$n_c(T) = N_c(T) e^{-\frac{\varepsilon_c - \zeta}{\Theta}}; \quad p_v(T) = P_v(T) e^{-\frac{\zeta - \varepsilon_v}{\Theta}},$$

where

$$N_c(T) = \int_{\varepsilon_c}^{\infty} d\varepsilon g_c(\varepsilon) e^{-\frac{\varepsilon - \varepsilon_c}{\Theta}}; \quad P_v(T) = \int_{-\infty}^{\varepsilon_v} d\varepsilon g_v(\varepsilon).$$

The product $n_c(T)p_v(T)$ is independent of ζ such that

$$n_c(T)p_v(T) = N_c(T)P_v(T)e^{-E_G/\Theta}.$$

In the absence of impurities, $n_c(T) = p_v(T)$ and we have

$$n_i(T) = [N_c(T)P_v(T)]^{1/2} e^{-E_G/2\Theta}.$$

The chemical potential now becomes

$$\zeta_i = \varepsilon_c - \frac{1}{2}E_G + \frac{3}{4}\Theta \ln\left(\frac{m_v}{m_c}\right); \quad \zeta_i = \varepsilon_v + \frac{1}{2}E_G + \frac{3}{4}\Theta \ln\left(\frac{m_v}{m_c}\right).$$

When donors are present, the chemical potential ζ will move from its intrinsic value ζ_i to a value near the conduction band edge. If the concentration of donors is sufficiently small, the average occupancy of a single donor impurity state is given by

$$\langle n_d \rangle = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}e^{\beta(\varepsilon_d - \zeta)} + 1}.$$

The numerical factor of $\frac{1}{2}$ in $\langle n_d \rangle$ comes from the fact that either spin up or spin down states can be occupied but not both.

7.8 Amorphous Semiconductors 213

At a finite temperature, we have 678

$$n_c(T) = N_c(T)e^{-\beta(\varepsilon_c - \zeta)}, \quad p_v(T) = P_v(T)e^{-\beta(\zeta - \varepsilon_v)},$$

$$n_d(T) = \frac{N_d}{\frac{1}{2}e^{\beta(\varepsilon_d - \zeta)} + 1}, \quad p_a(T) = \frac{N_a}{\frac{1}{2}e^{\beta(\zeta - \varepsilon_a)} + 1}.$$

In addition, we have charge neutrality condition given by 680

$$n_c + n_d = N_d - N_a + p_v + p_a.$$

The set of these five equations should be solved numerically in order to have 681
self consistent result for five unknowns. 682

The region of the p-n junction is a high resistance region and the electrical 683
current density becomes 684

$$j = e(J_h^{\text{gen}} + J_e^{\text{gen}}) \left(e^{eV/\Theta} - 1 \right),$$

where J_h^{gen} and J_e^{gen} are hole and electron generation current densities, 685
respectively. 686

Near the interface of metal-oxide-semiconductor structure under a strong 687
enough gate voltage, the motion of the electrons is characterized by 688

$$\varepsilon = \varepsilon_0 + \frac{\hbar^2}{2m_c^*} (k_x^2 + k_y^2); \quad \Psi_{n,k_x,k_y} = \frac{1}{L} e^{i(k_x x + k_y y)} \xi_n(z).$$

Here, $\xi_n(z)$ is the n th eigenfunction of a differential equation given by 689

$$\left[\frac{1}{2m_c^*} \left(-i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \right)^2 + V_{\text{eff}}(z) - \varepsilon_n \right] \xi_n(z) = 0.$$

If a quantum well is narrow, it leads to quantized motion and subbands: 690

$$\varepsilon_n^{(c)}(\mathbf{k}) = \varepsilon_n^{(e)} + \frac{\hbar^2}{2m_c^*} (k_x^2 + k_y^2).$$

In the presence of a dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ applied normal to the plane of 691
the 2DEG, the Hamiltonian of a single electron is written by 692

$$H = \frac{1}{2m} \left(\mathbf{p} + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A} \right)^2.$$

Here, $\mathbf{p} = (p_x, p_y)$ and $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ is the vector potential whose curl gives $\mathbf{B} =$ 693
(0, 0, B). The electronic states are described by 694

$$E_{nk} = \hbar\omega_c \left(n + \frac{1}{2} \right), \quad \Psi_{nk}(x, y, z) = e^{iky} u_n \left(x + \frac{\hbar k}{m\omega_c} \right); \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$

The density of states (per unit length) is given by $g(\varepsilon) \propto \sum_n \delta(\varepsilon - \hbar\omega_c(n + \frac{1}{2}))$. 695
The total number of states per Landau level is equal to the *magnetic flux* 696
through the sample divided by the *flux quantum* $\frac{hc}{e}$: 697

$$N_L = \frac{BL^2}{hc/e}.$$

Dielectric Properties of Solids

8.1 Review of Some Ideas of Electricity and Magnetism 3

When an external electromagnetic disturbance is introduced into a solid, it will produce induced charge density and induced current density. These induced densities produce induced electric and magnetic fields. We begin with a brief review of some elementary electricity and magnetism. In this chapter, we will neglect the magnetization produced by induced current density and concentrate on the electric polarization field produced by the induced charge density.

The potential $\phi(\mathbf{r})$ set up by a collection of charges q_i at positions $\mathbf{r}_i$ is given by

$$\phi(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_i \frac{q_i}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_i|}. \quad (8.1)$$

The electric field $\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r})$ is given by $\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}) = -\nabla\phi(\mathbf{r})$.

Now, consider a dipole at position $\mathbf{r}'$ (see Fig. 8.1).

$$\phi(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{q}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}' - \frac{\mathbf{d}}{2}|} - \frac{q}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}' + \frac{\mathbf{d}}{2}|}. \quad (8.2)$$

By a dipole we mean $\mathbf{p} = q\mathbf{d}$ is a constant, called the *dipole moment*, but $|\mathbf{d}| = d$ itself is vanishingly small. If we expand for $|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'| \gg |\mathbf{d}|$, we find

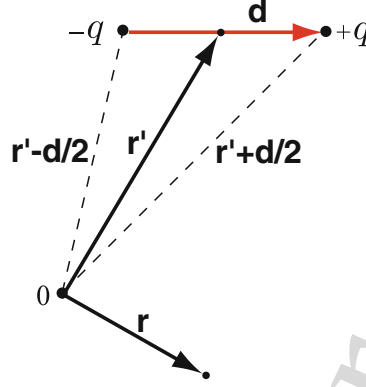
$$\phi(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{q\mathbf{d} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}')}{(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}')^3} = \frac{\mathbf{p} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|^3}. \quad (8.3)$$

The potential produced by a collection of dipoles $\mathbf{p}_i$ located at $\mathbf{r}_i$ is simply

$$\phi(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_i \frac{\mathbf{p}_i \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_i)}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_i|^3}. \quad (8.4)$$

Again the electric field $\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}) = -\nabla\phi(\mathbf{r})$, so

$$\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_i \frac{3(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_i) [\mathbf{p}_i \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_i)] - (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_i)^2 \mathbf{p}_i}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_i|^5}. \quad (8.5)$$

Fig. 8.1. Electric dipole of moment $\mathbf{p} = q\mathbf{d}$ located at $\mathbf{r}'$

8.2 Dipole Moment Per Unit Volume

19

Let us introduce the electric polarization $\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r})$, which is the dipole moments per unit volume. Consider a volume V bounded by a surface S filled with a polarization $\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}')$ that depends on the position $\mathbf{r}'$. Then

22

$$\phi(\mathbf{r}) = \int d^3r' \frac{\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}') \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|^3}. \quad (8.6)$$

If we look at the divergence of $\frac{\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|}$ with respect to $\mathbf{r}'$, we note that

23

$$\nabla' \cdot \left[\frac{\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|} \right] = \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|} \nabla' \cdot \mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}') + \frac{\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}') \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|^3}. \quad (8.7)$$

We can solve for $\frac{\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}') \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|^3}$ and substitute into our expression for $\phi(\mathbf{r})$. The integral of the divergence term can be expressed as a surface integral using divergence theorem. This gives

25

26

$$\phi(\mathbf{r}) = \oint_S dS' \frac{\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}') \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}}'}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|} + \int_V d^3r' \frac{[-\nabla' \cdot \mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}')] }{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|}. \quad (8.8)$$

27

The potential $\phi(\mathbf{r})$ can be associated with a potential produced by a volume distribution of charge density

28

29

$$\rho_P(\mathbf{r}) = -\nabla \cdot \mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}) \quad (8.9)$$

30

and the potential produced by a surface charge density

31

$$\sigma_P(\mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}}. \quad (8.10)$$

32

Here, of course, $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ is a unit vector outward normal to the surface S bounding the volume V .

33

34

Poisson's equation tells us that 35

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = 4\pi(\rho_0 + \rho_P), \quad (8.11)$$

where ρ_0 is some *external charge density* and ρ_P is the *polarization charge density*. Since $\rho_P = -\nabla \cdot \mathbf{P}$, we can write 36 37

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = 4\pi\rho_0 - 4\pi\nabla \cdot \mathbf{P}. \quad (8.12)$$

If we define $\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{E} + 4\pi\mathbf{P}$, then 38

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = 4\pi\rho_0. \quad (8.13)$$

Thus, $\mathbf{D}$ is the electric field that would be produced by the external charge density ρ_0 if a polarizable material were absent. $\mathbf{E}$ is the true electric field produced by all the charge densities including both ρ_0 and ρ_P . 39 40 41

In general, $\mathbf{P}$ and $\mathbf{E}$ need not be in the same direction. However, for sufficiently small value of $\mathbf{E}$, the relationship between $\mathbf{P}$ and $\mathbf{E}$ is linear. We can write 42 43 44

$$P_i = \sum_j \chi_{ij} E_j, \quad (8.14)$$

where $\underline{\chi}$ is called the *electrical susceptibility tensor*. We can write 45

$$\mathbf{D} = \underline{\varepsilon} \cdot \mathbf{E}, \quad (8.15)$$

where $\underline{\varepsilon} = \underline{1} + 4\pi\underline{\chi}$ is the *dielectric tensor*. 46

8.3 Atomic Polarizability 47

An atom in its ground state has no dipole moment. However, in the presence of an electric field $\mathbf{E}$, an induced dipole moment results from the relative displacements of the positive and negative charges within the atom. We can write 48 49 50 51

$$\mathbf{p}_{\text{ind}} = \alpha \mathbf{E}, \quad (8.16)$$

and α is called the *atomic polarizability*. 52

8.4 Local Field in a Solid 53

In a dilute gas of atoms the electric field $\mathbf{E}$ that produces the induced dipole moment on an atom is simply the applied electric field. In a solid, however, all of the dipole moments produced on other atoms in the solid make a contribution to the field acting on a given atom. The value of this microscopic field at the position of the atom is called the *local field*. The local field $\mathbf{E}_{\text{LF}}(\mathbf{r})$ is different from the applied electric field $\mathbf{E}_0$ and from the *macroscopic electric* 54 55 56 57 58 59

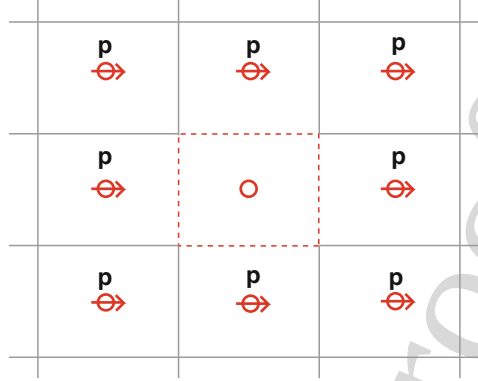


Fig. 8.2. Induced dipoles of moment $\mathbf{p}$ located on neighboring atoms

field $\mathbf{E}$ (which is the average of the microscopic field $\mathbf{E}_{\text{LF}}(\mathbf{r})$ over a region 60 that is large compared to a unit cell). Clearly, the contributions to the micro- 61 scopic field from the induced dipoles on neighboring atoms vary considerably 62 over the unit cell (see Fig. 8.2). The standard method of evaluating the local 63 field $\mathbf{E}_{\text{LF}}(\mathbf{r})$ in terms of the macroscopic field $\mathbf{E}$ is to make use of the *Lorentz* 64 *sphere*. Before introducing the Lorentz field, let us review quickly the relation 65 between the external field $\mathbf{E}_0$ and the macroscopic field $\mathbf{E}$ in the solid. 66

8.5 Macroscopic Field

Suppose the solid we are studying is shaped like an ellipsoid. It is a stan- 68 dard problem in electromagnetism to determine the electric field $\mathbf{E}$ inside the 69 ellipsoid in terms of the external electric field $\mathbf{E}_0$ (see Fig. 8.3). 70

The applied field $\mathbf{E}_0$ is the value of the electric field very far away from 71 the sample. The macroscopic field inside the ellipsoid is given by 72

$$\mathbf{E} = \mathbf{E}_0 - \lambda \mathbf{P} = \mathbf{E}_0 + \mathbf{E}_1. \quad (8.17)$$

The field $\mathbf{E}_1 = -\lambda \mathbf{P}$ is called the *depolarization field*, due to surface charge 73 density $\hat{\mathbf{n}} \cdot \mathbf{P}$ on the outer surface of the specimen, and λ is called the 74 *depolarization factor*. 75

8.5.1 Depolarization Factor

The standard electromagnetic theory problem of determining λ involves 77

1. Solving Laplace's equation $\nabla^2 \phi(\mathbf{r}) = 0$ in cylindrical coordinates so that 78

$$\phi(\mathbf{r}) = \left(ar^l + br^{-(l+1)} \right) P_l(\cos \theta) (C \sin m\phi + D \cos m\phi)$$

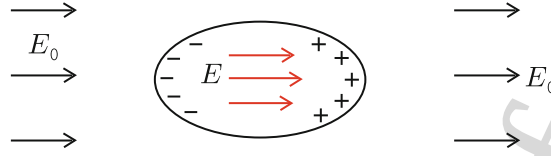


Fig. 8.3. The macroscopic electric field $\mathbf{E}$ inside an ellipsoid located in an external electric field $\mathbf{E}_0$ is the sum of $\mathbf{E}_0$ and polarization field $\mathbf{E}_1 = -\lambda\mathbf{P}$ due to the surface charge density $\hat{\mathbf{n}} \cdot \mathbf{P}$

t1.1 **Table 8.1.** Depolarization factors λ of typical ellipsoids

t1.2	Type of ellipsoid	Axis	λ
t1.3	Sphere	Any	$\frac{4\pi}{3}$
t1.4	Thin slap	Normal	4π
t1.5	Thin slap	Parallel	0
t1.6	Long cylinder	Along axis	0
t1.7	Long circular cylinder	normal to axis	2π

- (a) Inside the sample (where r can approach 0) and 79
- (b) Outside the sample (where r can approach ∞), 80
- 2. Imposing boundary conditions 81
 - (a) $\mathbf{E}$ well behaved as $r \rightarrow 0$, 82
 - (b) $\mathbf{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{E}_0$ as $r \rightarrow \infty$, 83
 - (c) $\mathbf{D}_{\text{normal}} = (\mathbf{E} + 4\pi\mathbf{P})_{\text{normal}}$ and $\mathbf{E}_{\text{trans}}$ be continuous at the surface. 84

For an ellipsoid with the depolarization factors λ_1 , λ_2 , and λ_3 along the three principal axes. 85

$$\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \lambda_3 = 4\pi. \quad (8.18) \quad 87$$

Some examples are listed in Table 8.1. 88

8.6 Lorentz Field 89

Assume that we know $\mathbf{E}$, the macroscopic field inside the solid. Now consider 90
 an atom at position $\mathbf{R}$. Draw a sphere of radius ℓ (named as *Lorentz sphere*) 91
 about $\mathbf{R}$ where $\ell \gg a$, the interatomic spacing (see Fig. 8.4). The contribution 92
 to the microscopic field at $\mathbf{R}$ from induced dipoles on other atoms can be 93
 divided into two parts: 94

1. For atoms inside the sphere we will actually sum over the contribution 95
 from their individual dipole moments $\mathbf{p}_i$. 96
2. For atoms outside the sphere we can treat the contribution macroscopically, 97
 treating them as part of a continuum with polarization $\mathbf{P}$. 98

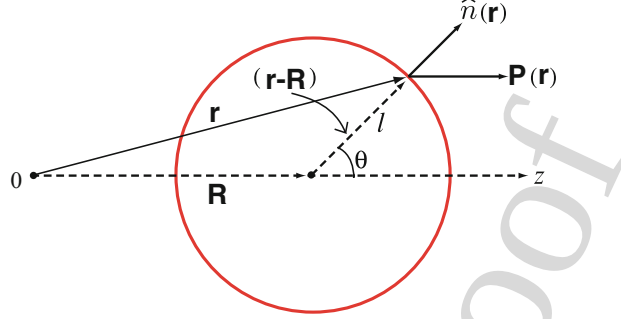


Fig. 8.4. A Lorentz sphere of radius ℓ centered at $\mathbf{R}$

The dipole moments outside the Lorentz sphere contribute a surface charge density on the surface of the Lorentz sphere, and we can write

$$\phi(\mathbf{R}) = \int_{\text{Lorentz sphere}} dS \frac{\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \hat{n}(\mathbf{r})}{|\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{r}|}. \quad (8.19)$$

The field $\mathbf{E}_2$ caused by this surface charge on the spherical cavity (Lorentz sphere) is called the *Lorentz field*:

$$\mathbf{E}_2(\mathbf{R}) = -\nabla_{\mathbf{R}}\phi(\mathbf{R}) = \int dS \mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \hat{n}(\mathbf{r}) \frac{(\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{r})}{|\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{r}|^3}. \quad (8.20)$$

To evaluate this integral note, from Fig. 8.4, that

$$\begin{aligned} |\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R}| &= \ell, \\ \mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \hat{n}(\mathbf{r}) &= P \cos \theta, \\ dS &= 2\pi\ell^2 \sin \theta d\theta, \text{ and} \\ \mathbf{R} - \mathbf{r} &= \ell (\sin \theta \cos \phi, \sin \theta \sin \phi, \cos \theta). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have

$$E_2(\mathbf{R}) = - \int_0^\pi 2\pi\ell^2 d(\cos \theta) P \cos \theta \frac{\ell \cos \theta}{\ell^3}.$$

Only the z -component of $\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{r}$ survives the integration. We find that

$$\mathbf{E}_2(\mathbf{R}) = 2\pi\mathbf{P} \int_{-1}^1 d(\cos \theta) \cos^2 \theta = \frac{4\pi}{3}\mathbf{P}. \quad (8.21)$$

$\mathbf{E}_2 = \frac{4\pi\mathbf{P}}{3}$ is the Lorentz field.

The final contribution $\mathbf{E}_3$ arises from the contribution of the dipoles within the Lorentz sphere (L.S.). It is given by

$$\mathbf{E}_3 = \sum_{i \in \text{L.S.}} \frac{3(\mathbf{p}_i \cdot \mathbf{r}_i) \mathbf{r}_i - r_i^2 \mathbf{p}_i}{r_i^5}. \quad (8.22)$$

This term clearly depends on the crystal structure. If $\mathbf{p}_i = \mathbf{p} = p\hat{z}$, then the field at the center of the Lorentz sphere is

$$\mathbf{E}_3 = (0, 0, E_3) = p \sum_{i \in \text{L.S.}} \frac{3z_i^2 - r_i^2}{r_i^5} \hat{z}. \quad (8.23)$$

For a crystal with cubic symmetry

$$\sum_i \frac{x_i^2}{r_i^5} = \sum_i \frac{y_i^2}{r_i^5} = \sum_i \frac{z_i^2}{r_i^5} = \frac{1}{3} \sum_i \frac{r_i^2}{r_i^5}.$$

Thus, for a cubic crystal, the two terms cancel and $E_3 = 0$. Hence, we find the local field in a cubic crystal

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\text{LF}} &= \underbrace{E_0 + E_1}_E + \underbrace{E_2}_{+\frac{4\pi}{3}P} + E_3 \\ &= E + \frac{4\pi}{3}P + 0. \end{aligned} \quad (8.24)$$

The last expression is the *Lorentz relation*. We note that, since $E_1 = -\frac{4\pi}{3}P$ for a spherical specimen, the local field at the center of a sphere of cubic crystal is simply given by

$$E_{\text{LF}}^{\text{sphere}} = E_0 - \frac{4\pi}{3}P + \frac{4\pi}{3}P + 0 = E_0.$$

8.7 Clausius–Mossotti Relation

The induced dipole moment of an atom is given, in terms of the local field, by $\mathbf{p} = \alpha \mathbf{E}_{\text{LF}}$. The polarization $\mathbf{P}$ is given, for a cubic crystal, by

$$\mathbf{P} = N\mathbf{p} = N\alpha \mathbf{E}_{\text{LF}} = N\alpha \left(\mathbf{E} + \frac{4\pi}{3}\mathbf{P} \right), \quad (8.25)$$

where N is the number of atoms per unit volume. Solving for $\mathbf{P}$ gives

$$\mathbf{P} = \frac{N\alpha}{1 - \frac{4\pi N\alpha}{3}} \mathbf{E} \equiv \chi \mathbf{E}. \quad (8.26)$$

Thus, the electrical susceptibility of the solid is

$$\chi = \frac{N\alpha}{1 - \frac{4\pi N\alpha}{3}}. \quad (8.27)$$

Since $\mathbf{D} = \epsilon \mathbf{E}$ with $\epsilon = 1 + 4\pi\chi$, we find that

$$\epsilon = 1 + \frac{4\pi N\alpha}{1 - \frac{4\pi N\alpha}{3}}. \quad (8.28)$$

or

$$\varepsilon = \frac{1 + \frac{8\pi N\alpha}{3}}{1 - \frac{4\pi N\alpha}{3}}. \quad (8.29)$$

This relation between the macroscopic dielectric function ε and the atomic polarizability α is called the *Clausius–Mossotti relation*. It can also be written (solving for $\frac{4\pi N\alpha}{3}$) by

$$\frac{\varepsilon - 1}{\varepsilon + 2} = \frac{4\pi N\alpha}{3}. \quad (8.30)$$

8.8 Polarizability and Dielectric Functions of Some Simple Systems

The total polarizability of the atoms or ions within a unit cell can usually be separated into three parts:

1. *Electronic polarizability* α_e : the displacement of the electrons relative to the nucleus.
2. *Ionic polarizability* α_i : The displacement of an ion itself with respect to its equilibrium position.
3. *Dipolar polarizability* α_{dipole} : The orientation of any permanent dipoles by the electric field in the presence of thermal disorder.

Atoms and homonuclear diatomic molecules have no dipole moments in their ground states. Molecules like KCl, HCl, H₂O, ... do exhibit permanent dipole moments. A typical dipole moment $p = qd$ has $q \simeq 4.8 \times 10^{-10}$ esu and $d \simeq 10^{-8}$ cm, giving $p \simeq 5 \times 10^{-18}$ stat-coulomb cm.

8.8.1 Evaluation of the Dipole Polarizability

In the absence of an electric field, the probability that a dipole $\mathbf{p}$ will be oriented within the solid angle $d\Omega = \sin\theta d\theta d\phi$ is independent of θ and ϕ and is given by $\frac{d\Omega}{4\pi}$. In the presence of a field $\mathbf{E}$, the probability is proportional to $d\Omega e^{-W/k_B T}$, where $W = -\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{E}$ is the energy of the dipole in the field $\mathbf{E}$. If we choose the z -direction parallel to $\mathbf{E}$, then the average values of p_x and p_y vanish and we have

$$\bar{p}_z = \frac{\int d\Omega e^{pE \cos\theta/k_B T} p \cos\theta}{\int d\Omega e^{pE \cos\theta/k_B T}}. \quad (8.31)$$

Let $\frac{pE}{k_B T} = \xi$, $\cos\theta = x$ and rewrite $\bar{p}_z$ as

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{p}_z &= p \frac{\int_{-1}^1 dx x e^{\xi x}}{\int_{-1}^1 dx e^{\xi x}} = p \frac{d}{d\xi} \ln \int_{-1}^1 dx e^{\xi x} \\ &= p \frac{d}{d\xi} \ln \left(\frac{2 \sinh \xi}{\xi} \right) = p \left(\coth \xi - \frac{1}{\xi} \right). \end{aligned}$$

8.8 Polarizability and Dielectric Functions of Some Simple Systems 223

Thus, we can write $\bar{p}_z$ as

$$\bar{p}_z = p\mathcal{L}(\xi). \quad (8.32)$$

Here, $\mathcal{L}(\xi)$ is the *Langevin function* defined by $\mathcal{L}(\xi) = \coth \xi - \frac{1}{\xi}$. The dipole moment per unit volume is then given by

$$P = N\bar{p}_z = Np\mathcal{L}\left(\frac{pE}{k_B T}\right).$$

We note that for $\xi \rightarrow \infty$, $\mathcal{L}(\xi) \rightarrow 1$, while for $\xi \rightarrow 0$, $\mathcal{L}(\xi) = \frac{\xi}{3}$. If $\xi \ll 1$, $P = \frac{Np^2 E}{3k_B T}$. At room temperature the condition is satisfied if $E \ll \frac{k_B T}{p} \simeq 10^7$ volts/cm. The standard unit of dipole moment is the *Debye*, defined by 1 Debye = 10^{-18} esu. Figure 8.5 is a sketch of the temperature dependence of an electrical polarization P .

The electronic polarizability α_e and the ionic polarizability α_{ion} are almost independent of temperature. Therefore, by measuring $\frac{\epsilon-1}{\epsilon+2} \equiv \frac{4\pi N\alpha}{3}$ as a function of temperature one can obtain the value of p^2 from the slope (see Fig. 8.6).

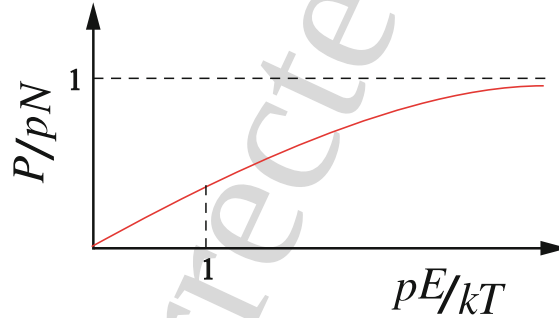


Fig. 8.5. Temperature dependence of an electrical polarization P

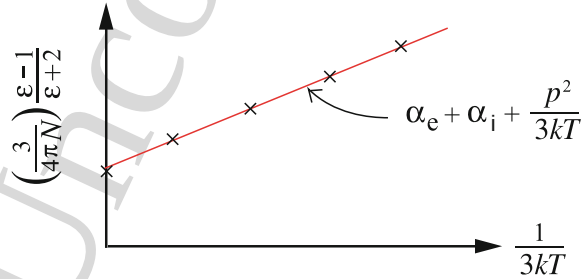


Fig. 8.6. An electrical polarizability α as a function of temperature

8.8.2 Polarizability of Bound Electrons

165

Assume that an electron (of charge $q = -e$) is bound harmonically to a particular location (e.g., the position of a particular ion). Its equation of motion is written by

$$m \left(\ddot{\mathbf{r}} + \frac{\dot{\mathbf{r}}}{\tau} \right) = -k\mathbf{r} - e\mathbf{E}, \quad (8.33)$$

where $-k\mathbf{r}$ is the restoring force and $\mathbf{E}$ is the perturbing electric field. Assume $\mathbf{E} \propto e^{i\omega t}$ and let $k = m\omega_0^2$. Then we can solve for $\mathbf{r} \propto e^{i\omega t}$ to obtain

$$\mathbf{r} = \frac{-e\mathbf{E}/m}{-\omega^2 + i\omega/\tau + \omega_0^2} \equiv \frac{\mathbf{p}}{-e}. \quad (8.34)$$

The dipole moment of the atom will be $\mathbf{p} = -e\mathbf{r}$ and the polarization $\mathbf{P} = N\mathbf{p} = -Ne\mathbf{r} \equiv N\alpha_{\text{el}}\mathbf{E}$. This gives for α_{el}

$$\alpha_{\text{el}} = \frac{(e^2/m) [\omega_0^2 - \omega^2 - i\omega/\tau]}{(\omega_0^2 - \omega^2)^2 + (\omega/\tau)^2}. \quad (8.35)$$

The dielectric function $\varepsilon = 1 + 4\pi N\alpha_{\text{el}}$ is

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = 1 + \frac{(4\pi Ne^2/m) (\omega_0^2 - \omega^2 - i\omega/\tau)}{(\omega_0^2 - \omega^2)^2 + (\omega/\tau)^2}. \quad (8.36)$$

It is clear that α_e has a real and an imaginary part whose frequency dependences are of the form sketched in Fig. 8.7.

8.8.3 Dielectric Function of a Metal

177

In a metal (e.g., Drude model) the electrons are free. This means that the restoring force vanishes (i.e., $k \rightarrow 0$) or $\omega_0 = 0$. In that case, we obtain

$$\alpha_e = \frac{e^2/m}{-\omega^2 + i\omega/\tau}, \quad (8.37)$$

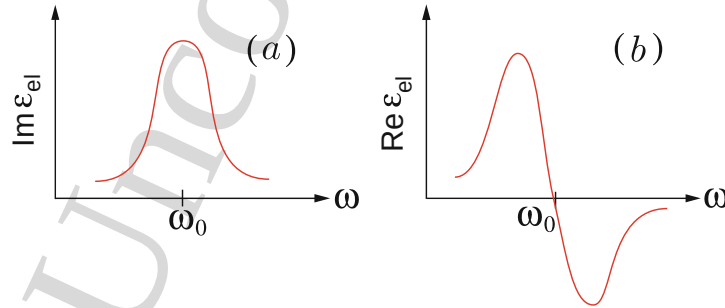


Fig. 8.7. The frequency dependence of the dielectric function ε of atoms with bound electrons. (a) Real part of $\varepsilon(\omega)$, (b) imaginary part of $\varepsilon(\omega)$

8.8 Polarizability and Dielectric Functions of Some Simple Systems 225

or

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = 1 - \frac{4\pi N e^2 / m}{\omega^2 - i\omega/\tau} = 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2 - i\omega/\tau}. \quad (8.38)$$

The real and imaginary parts of $\varepsilon(\omega)$ are

$$\Re \varepsilon(\omega) = 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2 \tau^2}{1 + \omega^2 \tau^2} \quad (8.39)$$

and

$$\Im \varepsilon(\omega) = -\frac{\omega_p^2 \tau^2}{\omega \tau (1 + \omega^2 \tau^2)}. \quad (8.40)$$

The fact that $\Re \varepsilon(\omega) < 0$ for $\omega^2 < \omega_p^2 - \frac{1}{\tau^2}$ leads to an imaginary refractive index and is responsible for the fact that metals are good reflectors.

8.8.4 Dielectric Function of a Polar Crystal

In an ionic crystal like NaCl, longitudinal optical phonons have associated with them charge displacements, which result in a macroscopic polarization field $\mathbf{P}_L$. Here the subscript L stands for the lattice polarization. (See, for example, Fig. 8.8.)

The polarization field $\mathbf{P}_L$ consists of two parts: (1) the displacements of the charged individual ions from their equilibrium positions and (2) the polarization of the ions themselves resulting from the displacement of the electrons relative to the nucleus under the influence of the $\mathbf{E}$ field. In determining each of these contributions to $\mathbf{P}_L$, we must use the local field $\mathbf{E}_{LF}$. We shall consider the following model of a polar crystal:

1. The material is a cubic lattice with two atoms per unit cell; the volume of the unit cell is V .
2. The charges, masses, and atomic polarizabilities of these ions are $\pm ze$, $M_{\pm}$, and $\alpha_{\pm}$
3. In addition to long range electrical forces, there is a short range restoring force that is proportional to the relative displacement of the pair of atoms in the same cell.

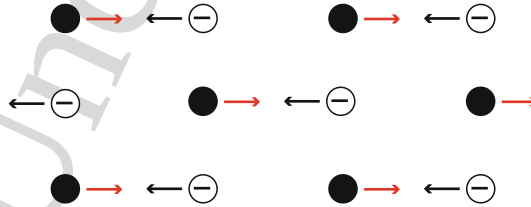


Fig. 8.8. Polarization field due to charge displacements in a polar crystal

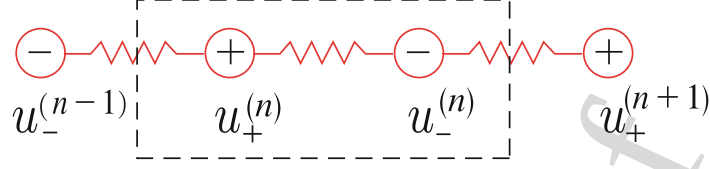


Fig. 8.9. Ionic displacements in the n^{th} unit cell and its nearest neighbor atoms

Note: Here we are considering only the $q = 0$ optical phonon, so that the ionic displacements are identical in each cell. Therefore, the restoring force can be written in such a way that: The force on $M_+^{(n)}$ depends on $u_+^{(n)} - u_-^{(n)}$ and $u_+^{(n)} - u_-^{(n-1)}$, but $u_-^{(n)} = u_-^{(n-1)}$ so the force is simply proportional to $u_+^{(n)} - u_-^{(n)}$. (See Fig. 8.9.)

We can write the equations of motion of u_+ and u_- as

$$\begin{aligned} M_+ \ddot{u}_+ &= -k(u_+ - u_-) + zeE_{\text{LF}}, \\ M_- \ddot{u}_- &= k(u_+ - u_-) - zeE_{\text{LF}}. \end{aligned} \quad (8.41)$$

The local field $\mathbf{E}_{\text{LF}}$ is given, for cubic crystals, by (8.24):

$$\mathbf{E}_{\text{LF}} = \mathbf{E} + \frac{4\pi}{3} \mathbf{P}_L, \quad (8.42)$$

and

$$\mathbf{P}_L = \frac{ze}{V} (\mathbf{u}_+ - \mathbf{u}_-) + \frac{1}{V} (\alpha_+ + \alpha_-) \mathbf{E}_{\text{LF}}. \quad (8.43)$$

Substitute for $\mathbf{E}_{\text{LF}}$ in terms of $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{P}_L$, and then solve for $\mathbf{P}_L$. This gives us

$$\mathbf{P}_L = \frac{ze}{V\beta} \mathbf{r} + \frac{\alpha_+ + \alpha_-}{V\beta} \mathbf{E}. \quad (8.44)$$

Here, $\beta = 1 - \frac{4\pi}{3} \left(\frac{\alpha_+ + \alpha_-}{V} \right)$ and $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{u}_+ - \mathbf{u}_-$. Introduce

$$\begin{aligned} \Omega_{\pm}^2 &\equiv \frac{k}{M_{\pm}}, \\ \Omega_{p\pm}^2 &\equiv \frac{4\pi e^2}{VM_{\pm}}, \\ \overline{M}^{-1} &\equiv M_+^{-1} + M_-^{-1}. \end{aligned} \quad (8.45)$$

The equations of motion can be rewritten

$$\begin{aligned} -\omega^2 \mathbf{u}_+ &= -\Omega_+^2 \mathbf{r} + \frac{1}{3\beta} \Omega_{p+}^2 \mathbf{r} + \frac{ze}{M_+\beta} \mathbf{E}, \\ -\omega^2 \mathbf{u}_- &= +\Omega_-^2 \mathbf{r} - \frac{1}{3\beta} \Omega_{p-}^2 \mathbf{r} - \frac{ze}{M_-\beta} \mathbf{E}. \end{aligned} \quad (8.46)$$

If we subtract the second equation from the first we obtain

$$\left[-\omega^2 + (\Omega_+^2 + \Omega_-^2) - \frac{\Omega_{p+}^2 + \Omega_{p-}^2}{3\beta} \right] \mathbf{r} = \frac{ze}{\beta \overline{M}} \mathbf{E}. \quad (8.47)$$

8.8 Polarizability and Dielectric Functions of Some Simple Systems 227

This can be rewritten 219

$$\mathbf{r} = -\frac{ze}{\beta M} (\omega^2 + b_{11})^{-1} \mathbf{E}, \quad (8.48)$$

where 220

$$b_{11} = -\left[\Omega_+^2 + \Omega_-^2 - \frac{\Omega_{p+}^2 + \Omega_{p-}^2}{3\beta} \right] \equiv -\omega_T^2. \quad (8.49)$$

$-b_{11}$ is a frequency squared and it is positive since $\Omega_{p\pm}^2$ is always smaller than $\Omega_{\pm}^2$. Let us call it $+\omega_T^2$. Since we know the expression for $\mathbf{P}_L$ in terms of $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{E}$ we can write 221
222
223

$$\mathbf{P}_L = \frac{ze}{V\beta} \left(-\frac{ze}{\beta M} \right) \frac{\mathbf{E}}{\omega^2 - \omega_T^2} + \frac{\alpha_+ + \alpha_-}{\beta V} \mathbf{E}. \quad (8.50)$$

Let us define 224

$$b_{22} = \frac{\alpha_+ + \alpha_-}{\beta V}, \quad (8.51)$$

$$b_{12}^2 = \frac{z^2 e^2}{\beta^2 M V}.$$

Then, we can rewrite $\mathbf{P}_L$ as 225

$$\mathbf{P}_L = \left(b_{22} - \frac{b_{12}^2}{\omega^2 - \omega_T^2} \right) \mathbf{E} \equiv \chi \mathbf{E}. \quad (8.52)$$

Recall that the electrical susceptibility is defined by $\chi(\omega) = \frac{P_L(\omega)}{E(\omega)}$, and the dielectric function by 226
227

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = 1 + 4\pi\chi(\omega). \quad (8.53)$$

From (8.52) for $\mathbf{P}_L$ we find 228

$$\chi(\omega) = b_{22} - \frac{b_{12}^2}{\omega^2 - \omega_T^2}. \quad (8.54)$$

The frequency ω_T is in the infrared ($\sim 10^{13}$ /sec). If we look at frequencies much larger than ω_T we find 229
230

$$\chi_{\infty} = b_{22}. \quad (8.55)$$

For $\omega \rightarrow 0$ we find that 231

$$\chi_0 = b_{22} + \frac{b_{12}^2}{\omega_T^2} = \chi_{\infty} + \frac{b_{12}^2}{\omega_T^2}. \quad (8.56)$$

Therefore we can write 232

$$b_{12}^2 = \omega_T^2 (\chi_0 - \chi_{\infty}) = \frac{\omega_T^2}{4\pi} (\varepsilon_0 - \varepsilon_{\infty}). \quad (8.57)$$

This, of course, is positive since ε_0 contains contributions from the displacements of the ions as well as the electronic displacements within each ion. The latter is very fast while the former is slow. The dielectric function $\varepsilon(\omega)$ can be written

$$\begin{aligned}\varepsilon(\omega) &= \varepsilon_\infty - \frac{\omega_T^2}{\omega^2 - \omega_T^2}(\varepsilon_0 - \varepsilon_\infty) \\ &= \varepsilon_\infty \left[1 - \left(\frac{\varepsilon_0}{\varepsilon_\infty} - 1 \right) \frac{\omega_T^2}{\omega^2 - \omega_T^2} \right].\end{aligned}$$

We define $\omega_L^2 = \omega_T^2 \frac{\varepsilon_0}{\varepsilon_\infty} > \omega_T^2$. Then, we can write

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = \varepsilon_\infty \left[\frac{\omega^2 - \omega_L^2}{\omega^2 - \omega_T^2} \right]. \quad (8.58)$$

Here, ω_L and ω_T are the TO and LO phonon frequencies, respectively. We note that $\omega_L > \omega_T$ since $\varepsilon_0 > \varepsilon_\infty$ in general. Values of ε_0 and ε_∞ for some polar materials are listed in Table 8.2. Instead of discussing the lattice polarization $\mathbf{P}_L$, we could have discussed the lattice current density

$$\mathbf{j}_L = \dot{\mathbf{P}}_L = i\omega \mathbf{P}_L = i\omega \chi(\omega) \mathbf{E}.$$

A plot of $\varepsilon(\omega)$ versus ω is shown in Fig. 8.10. At $\omega = 0$ ε has the static value ε_0 , and as $\omega \rightarrow \infty$ it approaches the high-frequency value ε_∞ . ε_0 is always larger than ε_∞ . There is a resonance at $\omega = \omega_T$.

t2.1 **Table 8.2.** Dielectric constants ε_0 and ε_∞ for polar materials

t2.2	Crystal	ε_0	ε_∞	$\varepsilon_0/\varepsilon_\infty$
t2.3	LiF	8.7	1.93	4.5
t2.4	NaCl	5.62	2.25	2.50
t2.5	KBr	4.78	2.33	2.05
t2.6	Cu ₂ O	8.75	4.0	2.2
t2.7	PbS	17.9	2.81	6.37

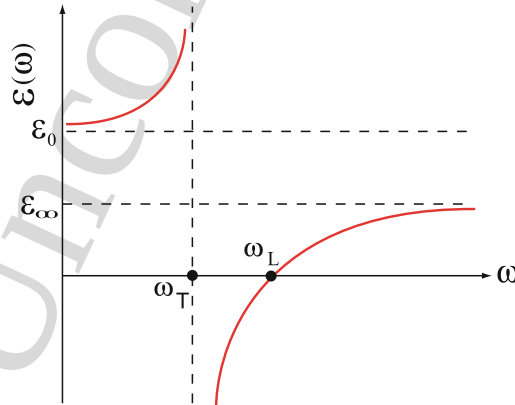


Fig. 8.10. Frequency dependence of the dielectric function $\varepsilon(\omega)$ of a polar crystal

8.9 Optical Properties 246

The dielectric and magnetic properties of a medium are characterized by the 247
dielectric function $\varepsilon(\omega)$ and the magnetic permeability $\mu(\omega)$: 248

$$\mathbf{D} = \varepsilon \mathbf{E} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{B} = \mu \mathbf{H}. \quad (8.59)$$

In terms of $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{B}$, Maxwell's equations can be written 249

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} &= 4\pi\rho = 4\pi(\rho_0 + \rho_P) \\ \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} &= 0 \\ \nabla \times \mathbf{E} &= -\frac{1}{c} \dot{\mathbf{B}} \\ \nabla \times \mathbf{B} &= \frac{1}{c} \dot{\mathbf{E}} + \frac{4\pi}{c} (\mathbf{j}_0 + \mathbf{j}_P) + 4\pi \nabla \times \mathbf{M}. \end{aligned} \quad (8.60) \quad 250$$

The last equation involves the magnetization which is normally very small. 251
Here, we will neglect it; this is equivalent to taking $\mu = 1$ or $\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{H}$. The 252
sources of $\mathbf{E}$ are all charges; external (ρ_0) and induced polarization (ρ_P) charge 253
densities. The sources of $\mathbf{B}$ are the rate of change of $\mathbf{E}$ and the total cur- 254
rent (external $\mathbf{j}_0$ and induced $\mathbf{j}_P$ current densities). Recall that $\mathbf{j}_P = \dot{\mathbf{P}}$ and 255
 $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{P} = -\rho_P$. 256

Note: Sometimes the first Maxwell equation is replaced by $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = 4\pi\rho_0$.
Here $\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{E} + 4\pi\mathbf{P}$ and as we have seen $\rho_P = -\nabla \cdot \mathbf{P}$. The fourth 257
equation is sometimes replaced by $\nabla \times \mathbf{H} = \frac{1}{c} \dot{\mathbf{D}} + \frac{4\pi}{c} \mathbf{j}_0$, which omits
all polarization currents.

In this chapter, we shall ignore all magnetic effects and take $\mu(\omega) = 1$. This is 258
an excellent approximation for most materials since the magnetic susceptibil- 259
ity is usually much smaller than unity. There are two extreme ways of writing 260
the equation for $\nabla \times \mathbf{B}$: 261

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla \times \mathbf{B} &= \frac{\varepsilon}{c} \dot{\mathbf{E}} + \frac{4\pi}{c} \mathbf{j}_0 \quad \text{or} \\ \nabla \times \mathbf{B} &= \frac{1}{c} \dot{\mathbf{E}} + \frac{4\pi}{c} (\mathbf{j}_0 + \sigma \mathbf{E}) \end{aligned} \quad (8.61)$$

The first equation is just that for $\mathbf{H}$ in which we put $\mu = 1$ and $\mathbf{D} = \varepsilon \mathbf{E}$. The 262
second equation is that for $\nabla \times \mathbf{B}$ in which we have taken $\mathbf{j}_P = \sigma \mathbf{E}$ where σ 263
is the conductivity. From this we see that $\frac{i\omega}{c} \varepsilon(\omega) = \frac{i\omega}{c} + \frac{4\pi}{c} \sigma(\omega)$, or 264

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = 1 - \frac{4\pi i}{\omega} \sigma(\omega) \quad (8.62) \quad 265$$

is a complex dielectric constant and simply related to the conductivity $\sigma(\omega)$. 266
We have assumed that $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ are proportional to $e^{i\omega t}$. 267

8.9.1 Wave Equation 268

For the propagation of light in a material characterized by a complex dielectric 269
function $\varepsilon(\omega)$, the external sources $\mathbf{j}_0$ and ρ_0 vanishes. Therefore, we have 270

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla \times \mathbf{E} &= -\frac{i\omega}{c}\mathbf{B} \\ \nabla \times \mathbf{B} &= \frac{i\omega\varepsilon(\omega)}{c}\mathbf{E}.\end{aligned}\quad (8.63)$$

Later, we will consider both bulk and surface waves. We will take the normal to the surface as the z -direction and consider waves that propagate at some angle to the interface. There is no loss of generality in assuming that the wave vector $\mathbf{q} = (0, q_y, q_z)$, so that the $\mathbf{E}$ field is given by

$$\mathbf{E} = (E_x, E_y, E_z)e^{i(\omega t - q_y y - q_z z)}.$$

The operators ∇ and $\frac{\partial}{\partial t}$ become $-i\mathbf{q}$ and $i\omega$, and the two Maxwell equations for $\nabla \times \mathbf{E}$ and $\nabla \times \mathbf{B}$ can be combined to give

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{E}) &= -\frac{i\omega}{c}\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = -\frac{i\omega}{c}\left(\frac{i\omega\varepsilon}{c}\mathbf{E}\right) \\ &= \nabla(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E}) - \nabla^2 \mathbf{E}.\end{aligned}$$

This can be rewritten

$$\left(\frac{\omega^2}{c^2}\varepsilon(\omega) - q^2\right)\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{q}(\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{E}) = 0. \quad (8.64)$$

This vector equation can be expressed as a matrix equation

$$\begin{pmatrix} \frac{\omega^2}{c^2}\varepsilon(\omega) - q^2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{\omega^2}{c^2}\varepsilon(\omega) - q_z^2 & q_y q_z \\ 0 & q_y q_z & \frac{\omega^2}{c^2}\varepsilon(\omega) - q_y^2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} E_x \\ E_y \\ E_z \end{pmatrix} = 0. \quad (8.65)$$

8.10 Bulk Modes

For an infinite homogeneous medium of dielectric function $\varepsilon(\omega)$, the nontrivial solutions are obtained by setting the determinant of the 3×3 matrix (multiplying the column vector $\mathbf{E}$ in (8.65)) equal to zero. This gives

$$\varepsilon(\omega) \left[\frac{\omega^2}{c^2}\varepsilon(\omega) - q^2 \right]^2 = 0. \quad (8.66)$$

There are two *transverse modes* satisfying

$$\omega^2 = \frac{c^2 q^2}{\varepsilon(\omega)}. \quad (8.67)$$

One of these has $q_y E_y + q_z E_z \equiv \mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{E} = 0$; $E_x = 0$. The other has $E_x \neq 0$ and $E_y = E_z = 0$. The other mode is longitudinal and has $E_x = 0$ and $\mathbf{q} \parallel \mathbf{E}$ or $\frac{E_z}{E_y} = \frac{q_z}{q_y}$, and has the dispersion relation

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = 0. \quad (8.68)$$

First, let us look at *longitudinal modes*.

8.10.1 Longitudinal Modes 291

Longitudinal modes, as we have seen, are given by the zeros of the dielectric function $\varepsilon(\omega)$. For simplicity we will neglect collisions and set $\tau \rightarrow \infty$ in the various dielectric functions we have studied.

Bound Electrons 295

We found that (for $\tau \rightarrow \infty$) 296

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = 1 + \frac{4\pi N e^2 / m}{\omega_0^2 - \omega^2}. \quad (8.69)$$

We have seen the quantity $4\pi N e^2 / m$ before. It is just the square of the plasma frequency ω_p of a system of N electrons per unit volume. The zero of $\varepsilon(\omega)$ occurs at

$$\omega^2 = \omega_0^2 + \omega_p^2 \equiv \Omega^2. \quad (8.70)$$

Free Electrons 300

For free electrons $\omega_0 = 0$. Therefore, the longitudinal mode (plasmon) occurs at

$$\omega^2 = \omega_p^2. \quad (8.71)$$

Polar Crystal 303

For a polar dielectric, the dielectric function is given by

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = \varepsilon_\infty \frac{\omega^2 - \omega_L^2}{\omega^2 - \omega_T^2}. \quad (8.72)$$

The longitudinal mode occurs at $\omega = \omega_L$, the longitudinal optical phonon frequency.

Degenerate Polar Semiconductor 307

For a polar semiconductor containing N free electrons per unit volume in the conduction band

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = \varepsilon_\infty \left(\frac{\omega^2 - \omega_L^2}{\omega^2 - \omega_T^2} \right) - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2}. \quad (8.73)$$

This can be written as

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = \varepsilon_\infty \frac{(\omega^2 - \omega_+^2)(\omega^2 - \omega_-^2)}{\omega^2(\omega^2 - \omega_T^2)}. \quad (8.74)$$

Here, $\omega_\pm^2$ are two solutions of the quadratic equation

$$\omega^4 - \omega^2(\omega_L^2 + \tilde{\omega}_p^2) + \omega_T^2 \tilde{\omega}_p^2 = 0, \quad (8.75)$$

where $\tilde{\omega}_p^2 = \frac{\omega_p^2}{\varepsilon_\infty}$ with background dielectric constant ε_∞ . The modes are *coupled plasmon-LO phonon modes*. One can see where these two modes occur by plotting $\varepsilon(\omega)$ versus ω (see Fig. 8.11).

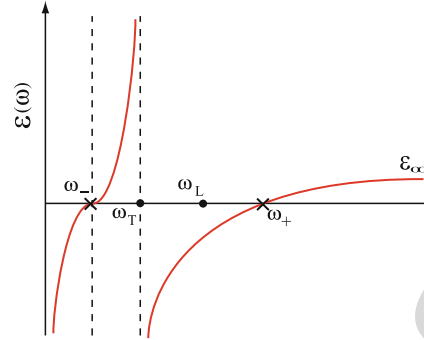


Fig. 8.11. Frequency dependence of the dielectric function $\epsilon(\omega)$ for a degenerate polar semiconductor

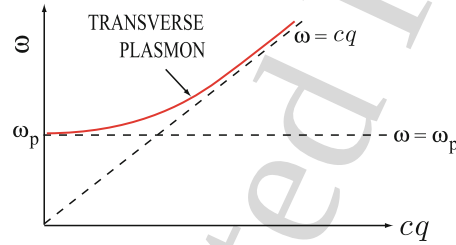


Fig. 8.12. Dispersion relations of the transverse modes in a metal

8.10.2 Transverse Modes

315

For transverse waves $\omega^2 = \frac{c^2 q^2}{\epsilon(\omega)}$. Again we will take the limit $\tau \rightarrow \infty$.

316

Dielectric

317

For a dielectric $\epsilon(\omega)$ is a constant ϵ_0 independent of frequency. Thus, we have

318

$$\omega = \frac{c}{\sqrt{\epsilon_0}} q. \quad (8.76)$$

Here, $\sqrt{\epsilon_0}$ is called the *refractive index* n , and the velocity of light in the medium is $\frac{c}{n}$. For a metal $\epsilon = 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2}$, giving

319

320

$$\omega^2 = \omega_p^2 + c^2 q^2. \quad (8.77)$$

No transverse waves propagate for $\omega < \omega_p$ since $\epsilon(\omega)$ is negative there (see Fig. 8.12).

321

322

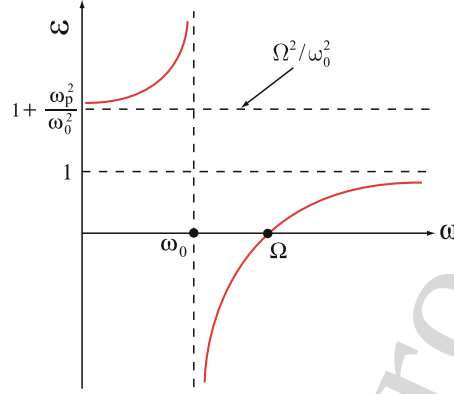


Fig. 8.13. Frequency dependence of the dielectric function $\varepsilon(\omega)$ for bound electrons

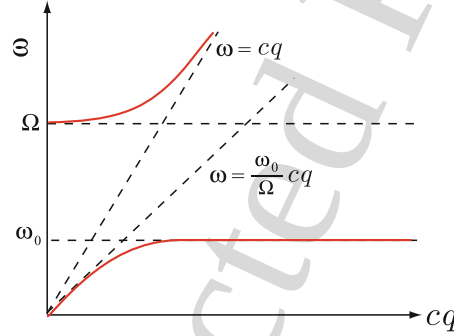


Fig. 8.14. Dispersion relation of the transverse modes for bound electrons

Bound Electrons

323

For bound electrons $\varepsilon = 1 + \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega_0^2 - \omega^2} = \frac{\Omega^2 - \omega^2}{\omega_0^2 - \omega^2}$ giving for the transverse mode

324

$$c^2 q^2 = \omega^2 \left(\frac{\Omega^2 - \omega^2}{\omega_0^2 - \omega^2} \right). \quad (8.78)$$

It is worth sketching $\varepsilon(\omega)$ versus ω (see Fig. 8.13).

325

The dielectric function is negative for $\omega_0 < \omega < \Omega$. The dispersion relation of the transverse mode for bound electrons given by (8.78) is sketched in Fig. 8.14.

326

327

328

No transverse modes propagate where $\varepsilon(\omega) < 0$ since $c^2 q^2 = \omega^2 \varepsilon$ gives imaginary values of q in that region.

329

330

Polar Dielectric

331

In this case $\varepsilon(\omega) = \varepsilon_\infty \frac{\omega^2 - \omega_L^2}{\omega^2 - \omega_T^2}$ and again it is worth plotting $\varepsilon(\omega)$ versus ω . It is shown in Fig. 8.15. $\varepsilon(\omega)$ is negative in the region $\omega_T < \omega < \omega_L$. Plotting

332

333

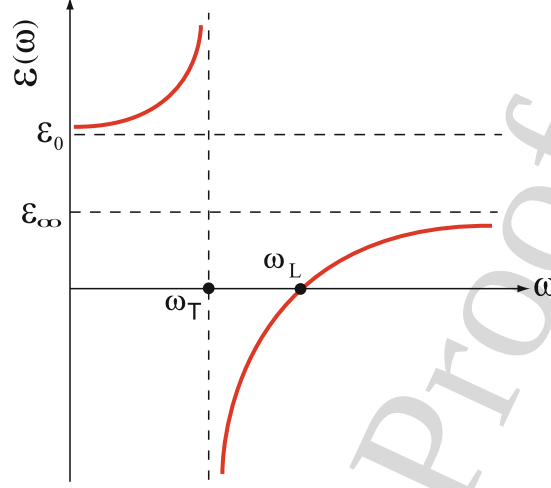


Fig. 8.15. Frequency dependence of the dielectric function $\varepsilon(\omega)$ in a polar dielectric

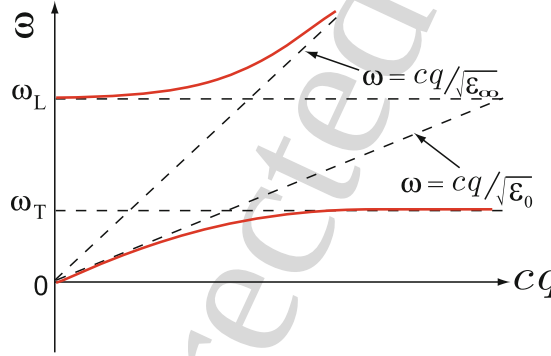


Fig. 8.16. Dispersion relation of the transverse modes in a polar dielectric

ω versus cq we have result shown in Fig. 8.16. There is a region between ω_T 334
and ω_L where no light propagates the (*reststrahlen region*). The propagating 335
modes are referred to as *polariton modes*. They are linear combinations of 336
transverse phonon and electromagnetic modes. 337

Degenerate Polar Semiconductor 338

Here $\varepsilon(\omega) = \varepsilon_\infty \frac{\omega^2 - \omega_+^2}{\omega^2 - \omega_T^2} - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2}$. We have already shown in (8.74) that this can be 339
written in terms of ω_+ and ω_- . The equation for a transverse mode becomes 340

$$c^2 q^2 = \varepsilon_\infty \frac{(\omega^2 - \omega_+^2)(\omega^2 - \omega_-^2)}{\omega^2 - \omega_T^2}. \quad (8.79)$$

In Fig. 8.11 the dielectric function $\varepsilon(\omega)$ was plotted as a function of ω in order 341
to study the longitudinal modes. There, we found that $\varepsilon(\omega)$ was negative if 342

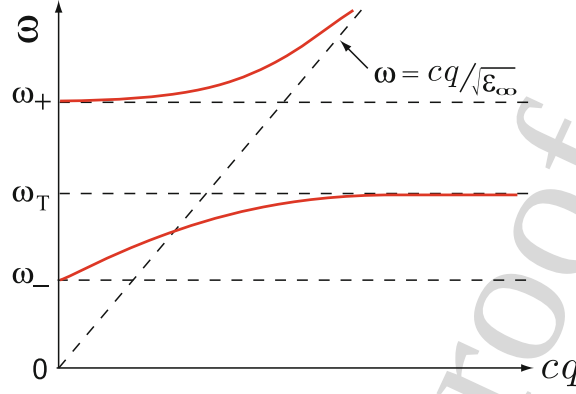


Fig. 8.17. Dispersion relation of the transverse modes in a polar semiconductor

$\omega < \omega_-$ or if $\omega_T < \omega < \omega_+$. The dispersion curve for the transverse mode is displayed in Fig. 8.17.

8.11 Reflectivity of a Solid

A vacuum–solid interface is located at $z = 0$. The solid ($z > 0$) is described by a dielectric function $\varepsilon(\omega)$ and vacuum ($z < 0$) by $\varepsilon = 1$. An incident light wave of frequency ω propagates in the z -direction as shown in Fig. 8.18.

Here we take the wave to be polarized in the $\hat{y}$ -direction and $q_0 = \frac{\omega}{c}$ while $q = \sqrt{\varepsilon(\omega)}q_0$. There are three waves to consider:

1. The incident wave whose electric field is given by

$$\mathbf{E}_I = \hat{y} E_I e^{i(\omega t - q_0 z)}.$$

2. The reflected wave whose electric field is given by

$$\mathbf{E}_R = \hat{y} E_R e^{i(\omega t + q_0 z)}. \quad (8.80)$$

3. The transmitted wave whose electric field is given by

$$\mathbf{E}_T = \hat{y} E_T e^{i(\omega t - qz)}.$$

Because $\nabla \times \mathbf{E} = -\frac{1}{c}\dot{\mathbf{B}}$, $\mathbf{B} = \frac{cq_i}{\omega} \times \mathbf{E}$, where $q_i = q_0$ for the wave in vacuum and $q_i = q$ for the wave in the solid. We can easily see that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{B}_I &= -\hat{x} E_I e^{i(\omega t - q_0 z)}, \\ \mathbf{B}_R &= \hat{x} E_R e^{i(\omega t + q_0 z)}, \\ \mathbf{B}_T &= -\hat{x} \sqrt{\varepsilon(\omega)} E_T e^{i(\omega t - qz)}. \end{aligned} \quad (8.81)$$

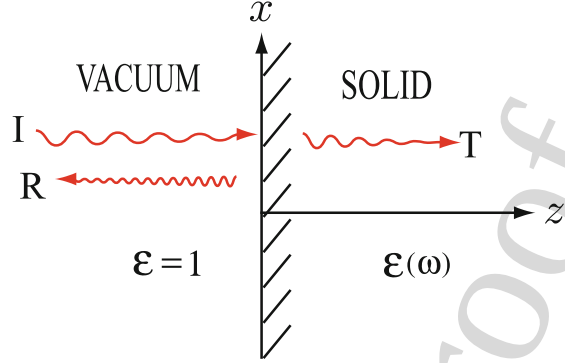


Fig. 8.18. Reflection of light wave at the interface of vacuum and solid of dielectric function $\varepsilon(\omega)$

The boundary conditions at $z = 0$ are continuity of $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{B}$. This gives 356

$$E_I + E_R = E_T, \quad -E_I + E_R = -\varepsilon^{1/2} E_T. \quad (8.82)$$

Solving these equations for $\frac{E_R}{E_I}$ gives 357

$$\frac{E_R}{E_I} = \frac{1 - \sqrt{\varepsilon(\omega)}}{1 + \sqrt{\varepsilon(\omega)}}. \quad (8.83) \quad 358$$

8.11.1 Optical Constants 359

The refractive index $n(\omega)$ and extinction coefficient $k(\omega)$ are real functions of frequency defined by 360
361

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = (n + ik)^2. \quad (8.84)$$

Therefore, the *reflection coefficient*, defined by $R = |E_R/E_I|^2$ is given by 362

$$R = \frac{(1 - n)^2 + k^2}{(1 + n)^2 + k^2}. \quad (8.85)$$

The power absorbed is given by $P = \Re(\mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{E})$. But $\mathbf{j} = \sigma \mathbf{E}$ and $\sigma = \frac{i\omega}{4\pi} (\varepsilon - 1)$. Therefore the power absorbed is proportional to $\frac{\omega}{4\pi} \varepsilon_2(\omega) |E|^2$. But the imaginary part of $\varepsilon(\omega)$ is just $2nk$, so that 363
364
365

$$\text{Power absorbed} \propto n(\omega) k(\omega). \quad (8.86)$$

8.11.2 Skin Effect 366

We have seen that for a metal $\varepsilon(\omega)$ is given by 367

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega(\omega - i/\tau)} = 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2 + 1/\tau^2} - i \frac{\omega_p^2/\omega\tau}{\omega^2 + 1/\tau^2}. \quad (8.87)$$

At optical frequencies ω is usually large compared to $\frac{1}{\tau}$. Therefore, the real part of $\varepsilon(\omega)$ is large compared to the imaginary part; however, it is negative. $\varepsilon_1(\omega) \simeq -\omega_p^2/\omega^2$, since ω_p is large compared to optical frequencies for most metals. The wave vector of the transmitted wave is

$$q = \frac{\omega}{c} \varepsilon^{1/2} \simeq \frac{\omega}{c} \sqrt{\frac{-\omega_p^2}{\omega^2}} = \pm i \frac{\omega_p}{c}$$

Thus, the wave

$$\mathbf{E}_T = E_T \hat{y} e^{i(\omega t - qz)}$$

decays with increasing z as $e^{-z/\lambda}$ where $\lambda = c/\omega_p$ is called the *skin depth*. For $\omega_p \simeq 10^{16} \text{sec}^{-1}$, $\lambda \approx 30 \text{ nm}$. In a metal, light only penetrates this distance. This analysis assumed that $\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}) = \sigma \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r})$, a local relationship between $\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{E}$. If the mean free path $l = v_F \tau$ is larger than λ , the skin depth, this assumption is not valid. Then one must use a more sophisticated analysis; this is referred to as the *anomalous skin effect*.

8.12 Surface Waves

In solving the equations describing the propagation of electromagnetic waves in an infinite medium, we considered the wave vector $\mathbf{q}$, which satisfied the relation

$$q^2 = \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \varepsilon(\omega) \quad (8.88)$$

to have components q_y and q_z which were real.

At a surface ($z = 0$) separating two different dielectrics it is possible to have solutions for which q_z^2 is negative in one or both of the media. If q_z^2 is negative in both media, implying that q_z itself is imaginary, such solutions describe *surface waves*.

Let us look at the system shown in Fig. 8.19. The wave equation can be written

$$q_{zi}^2 = \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \varepsilon_i - q_y^2, \quad (8.89)$$

where $i = \text{I or II}$. We think of ω and q_y as given and the same in each medium. Then the wave equation tells us the value of q_z^2 in each medium.

Let us assume a p-polarized wave (the s-polarization in which $\mathbf{E}$ is parallel to the surface does not usually give surface waves). We take

$$\mathbf{E} = (0, E_y, E_z) e^{i(\omega t - q_y y - q_z z)}. \quad (8.90)$$

Because there is no charge density except at the surface $z = 0$, we have $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = \mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{E} = 0$ everywhere except at the surface. This implies that

$$q_y E_y + q_z E_z = 0, \quad (8.91)$$

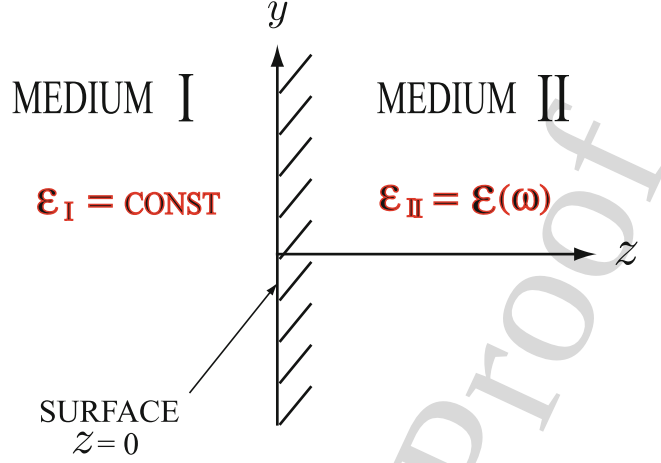


Fig. 8.19. The interface of two different media of dielectric functions ϵ_I and ϵ_{II}

giving the value of E_z in each medium in terms of q_y , q_{zi} , and E_y . We take

$$\begin{aligned} E_I &= (0, E_{yI}, E_{zI}) e^{i\omega t - iq_y y + \alpha_I z}, \quad \alpha_I^2 = -q_{zI}^2 \\ E_{II} &= (0, E_{yII}, E_{zII}) e^{i\omega t - iq_y y - \alpha_{II} z}, \quad \alpha_{II}^2 = -q_{zII}^2. \end{aligned} \quad (8.92)$$

Since

$$\begin{aligned} e^{-iq_{zI}z} &= e^{\alpha_I z}, \quad q_{zI} = i\alpha_I \\ e^{-iq_{zII}z} &= e^{-\alpha_{II} z}, \quad q_{zII} = -i\alpha_{II}. \end{aligned}$$

Here α_I and α_{II} are positive and the form of $E(z)$ has been chosen to vanish as $|z| \rightarrow \infty$.

Since $E_{z_i} = -\frac{q_y}{q_{z_i}} E_y$, we obtain

$$E_{zI} = -\frac{q_y}{i\alpha_I} E_{yI}, \quad E_{zII} = -\frac{q_y}{-i\alpha_{II}} E_{yII} \quad (8.93)$$

The boundary conditions are

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(i)} \quad & E_{yI}(0) = E_{yII}(0) = E_y(0) \\ \text{(ii)} \quad & \epsilon_I E_{zI}(0) = \epsilon_{II} E_{zII}(0) \end{aligned} \quad (8.94)$$

These conditions give us the dispersion relation of the surface wave. Substituting fields given by (8.93) into the second expression of (8.94), we have

$$\frac{\epsilon_I}{\alpha_I} + \frac{\epsilon_{II}}{\alpha_{II}} = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\epsilon_o}{\alpha_o} + \frac{\epsilon(\omega)}{\alpha} = 0. \quad (8.95)$$

where

$$\alpha_o = \sqrt{q_y^2 - \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \epsilon_o} \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha = \sqrt{q_y^2 - \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \epsilon(\omega)}. \quad (8.96)$$

Non-retarded Limit

406

This is the case where $cq_y \gg \omega$ or c may be taken as infinite. In this limit, we have $\alpha_I \simeq \alpha_{II} \simeq q_y$ and the dispersion relation becomes

407

408

$$\varepsilon_o + \varepsilon(\omega) = 0. \quad (8.97)$$

Surface Polaritons (with Retardation Effects)

409

We take the dispersion relation given by (8.95) and square both sides. This gives

410

411

$$\varepsilon_o^2 \alpha^2 = \varepsilon^2(\omega) \alpha_0^2,$$

or

412

$$\varepsilon_o^2 \left(q_y^2 - \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \varepsilon(\omega) \right) = \varepsilon^2(\omega) \left(q_y^2 - \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \varepsilon_o \right).$$

This can be simplified to

413

$$[\varepsilon_o + \varepsilon(\omega)] q_y^2 = \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \varepsilon_o \varepsilon(\omega)$$

or

414

$$c^2 q_y^2 = \frac{\omega^2 \varepsilon_o \varepsilon(\omega)}{\varepsilon_o + \varepsilon(\omega)} \quad (8.98)$$

8.12.1 Plasmon

415

For a system containing n_0 free electrons of mass m

416

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = \varepsilon_s - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2}, \quad (8.99)$$

where ε_s is the background dielectric constant and $\omega_p^2 = \frac{4\pi n_0 e^2}{m}$. In the non-retarded limit we find

417

418

$$\varepsilon_o + \left(\varepsilon_s - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} \right) = 0.$$

Solving for ω^2 gives the surface plasmon frequency

419

$$\omega_{SP} = \frac{\omega_p}{\sqrt{\varepsilon_o + \varepsilon_s}}. \quad (8.100)$$

420

Recall the bulk plasmon is given by $\varepsilon(\omega) = 0$

421

$$\omega_{BP} = \frac{\omega_p}{\sqrt{\varepsilon_s}} > \omega_{SP}. \quad (8.101)$$

422

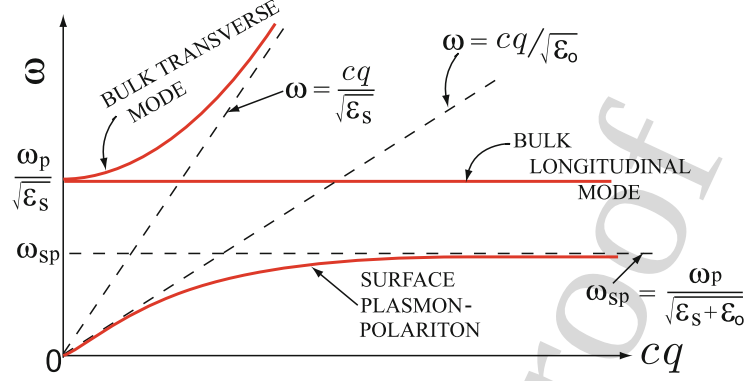


Fig. 8.20. Dispersion curves of the bulk and surface plasmon-polariton modes

So that we have $\omega_{SP} < \omega_{BP}$. For the surface plasmon-polariton we find 423

$$c^2 q_y^2 = \frac{\omega^2 \epsilon_o (\epsilon_s - \omega_p^2 / \omega^2)}{\epsilon_o + \epsilon_s - \omega_p^2 / \omega^2} \quad (8.102) \quad 424$$

It is easy to see that, for very small values of cq_y , $\omega \rightarrow 0$ and we can neglect ϵ_s and $(\epsilon_o + \epsilon_s)$ compared to $-\omega_p^2 / \omega^2$ on the right-hand side of (8.102). 425 426

$$\lim_{cq_y \rightarrow 0} \omega^2 \simeq \frac{c^2 q_y^2}{\epsilon_o}. \quad (8.103)$$

For very large cq_y , the only solution occurs when the denominator of the right hand side approaches zero. 427 428

$$\lim_{cq_y \rightarrow \infty} \omega^2 \simeq \frac{\omega_p^2}{\epsilon_o + \epsilon_s} = \omega_{SP}^2. \quad (8.104)$$

The dispersion curves of the bulk and surface plasmon-polariton modes are shown in Fig. 8.20. 429 430

8.12.2 Surface Phonon-Polariton 431

Here we take the dielectric function of a polar crystal 432

$$\epsilon(\omega) = \epsilon_\infty \frac{\omega^2 - \omega_L^2}{\omega^2 - \omega_T^2}. \quad (8.105)$$

At the interface of a dielectric ϵ_I and a polar material described by (8.105) 433 the surface mode is given by (8.95) 434

$$\frac{\epsilon_I}{\alpha_I} = -\frac{\epsilon(\omega)}{\alpha}. \quad (8.106) \quad 435$$

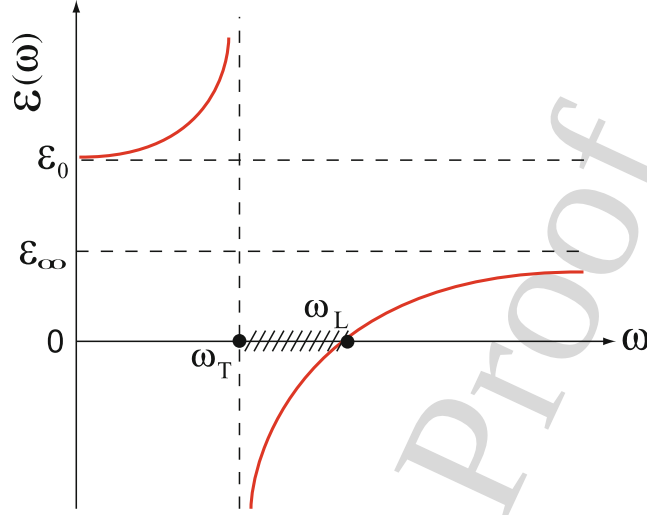


Fig. 8.21. Dielectric function $\varepsilon(\omega)$ of a polar crystal

Since ε_I , α_I , and α are all positive, this equation has a solution only in the region where $\varepsilon(\omega) < 0$. Recall that $\varepsilon(\omega)$ versus ω looks as shown in Fig. 8.21. $\varepsilon(\omega)$ is negative if $\omega_T < \omega < \omega_L$. The dispersion relation, (8.106), is written by

$$c^2 q_y^2 = \frac{\omega^2 \varepsilon_I \varepsilon(\omega)}{\varepsilon_I + \varepsilon(\omega)} = \frac{\varepsilon_I \varepsilon_\infty \omega^2 (\omega^2 - \omega_L^2)}{\varepsilon_I (\omega^2 - \omega_T^2) + \varepsilon_\infty (\omega^2 - \omega_L^2)}. \quad (8.107)$$

The denominator can be written as

$$D \equiv (\varepsilon_I + \varepsilon_\infty) \omega^2 - (\varepsilon_I \omega_T^2 + \varepsilon_\infty \omega_L^2) = (\varepsilon_I + \varepsilon_\infty) (\omega^2 - \omega_s^2), \quad (8.108)$$

where the surface phonon frequency ω_s is given by

$$\omega_s^2 = \frac{\varepsilon_I \omega_T^2 + \varepsilon_\infty \omega_L^2}{\varepsilon_I + \varepsilon_\infty}. \quad (8.109)$$

It is easy to show that $\omega_T^2 < \omega_s^2 < \omega_L^2$. The dispersion relation can be written

$$c^2 q_y^2 = \frac{\varepsilon_I \varepsilon_\infty \omega^2 (\omega^2 - \omega_L^2)}{(\varepsilon_I + \varepsilon_\infty) (\omega^2 - \omega_s^2)}. \quad (8.110)$$

Figure 8.22 shows the right-hand side of (8.110) as a function of frequency. Since surface modes can occur only where $q_y^2 > 0$ and $\varepsilon(\omega) < 0$, we see that the surface mode is restricted to the frequency region $\omega_T < \omega < \omega_s$. It is not difficult to see that as $c q_y \rightarrow \infty$, the surface polariton approaches the frequency ω_s . It is also apparent that at $\omega = \omega_T$, $c^2 q_y^2 = \varepsilon_I \omega_T^2$. This gives the dispersion curve sketched in Fig. 8.23.

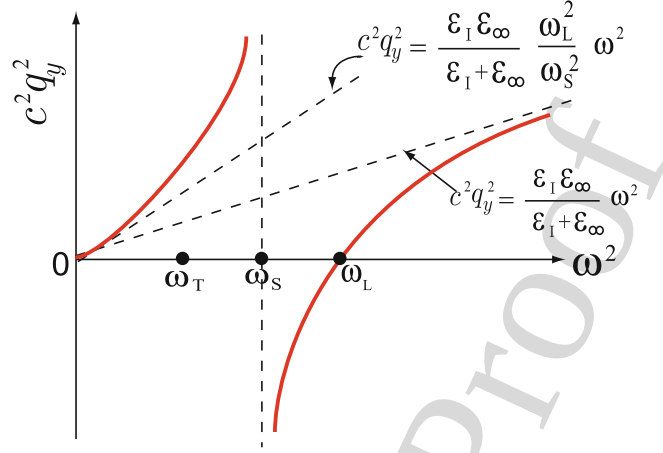


Fig. 8.22. Dispersion curves of phonon-polariton modes

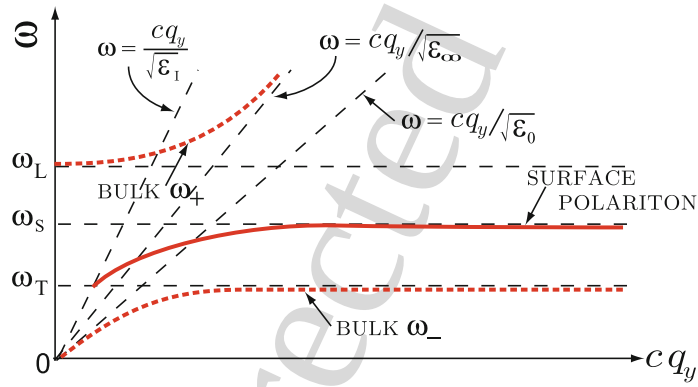


Fig. 8.23. Dispersion relation of surface phonon-polariton modes. Also shown are the bulk mode ω_+ and ω_- which can occur outside the region $\omega_T < \omega < \omega_L$

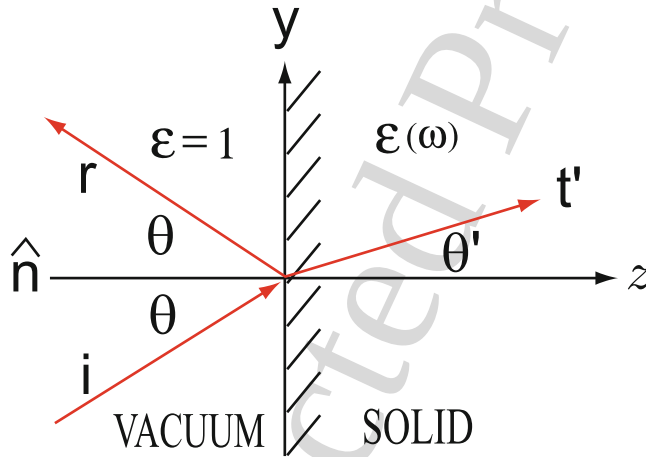
Problems

451

8.1. Use the eigenstates of the hydrogen atom to evaluate its atomic polarizability α . 452
453

8.2. If atomic hydrogen formed a cubic lattice, what would its static dielectric constant be? 454
455

8.3. Evaluate the reflectivity for an S-polarized and a P-polarized electromagnetic wave incident at an angle θ from vacuum on a material of dielectric function $\varepsilon(\omega)$ as illustrated in the figure below. 456
457
458



One can take $\mathbf{E} = (E_x, 0, 0)e^{i\omega t - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$ and $\mathbf{E} = (0, E_y, E_z)e^{i\omega t - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$ as the S- and P-polarized electric fields, respectively. Remember that $\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{E} = 0$ and $\mathbf{q} = (0, q_y, q_z)$. 459
460
461

8.4. A degenerate polar semiconductor contains n_0 free electrons per unit volume in the conduction band. Its dielectric function $\varepsilon(\omega)$ is given by 462
463

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = \varepsilon_\infty \frac{\omega^2 - \omega_L^2}{\omega^2 - \omega_T^2} - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2},$$

where ω_L and ω_T are the LO and TO phonon frequencies, and $\omega_p = \sqrt{\frac{4\pi n_0 e^2}{m}}$. 464

1. Show that $\varepsilon(\omega)$ can be written as 465

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = \varepsilon_\infty \frac{(\omega^2 - \omega_-^2)(\omega^2 - \omega_+^2)}{\omega^2(\omega^2 - \omega_T^2)}$$

and determine ω_-^2 and ω_+^2 . 466

244 8 Dielectric Properties of Solids

2. Make a sketch of $\varepsilon(\omega)$ versus ω ; be sure to indicate the locations of ω_T , ω_L , ω_- , ω_+ , ε_0 , and ε_∞ . 467
468
3. Determine the dispersion relation of the longitudinal and transverse modes, i.e. ω as a function of q . 469
470
4. In which regions of frequency are the transverse waves unable to propagate? 471
5. Consider a vacuum-degenerate polar semiconductor interface. Use the results obtained in the text to determine the dispersion relations of the surface modes. 472
473
474
6. Make a sketch of ω versus q_y (q_y is parallel to the interface) for these surface modes and for the bulk modes which have $q_z = 0$. 475
476

Summary

477

In this chapter, we studied dielectric properties of solids in the presence of an external electromagnetic disturbance. We first reviewed elementary electricity and magnetism, and introduced concept of local field inside a solid. Then dispersion relations of self-sustaining collective modes and reflectivity of a solid are studied for various situations. Finally, the collective modes localized near the surface of a solid are also described and dispersion relations of surface plasmon-polariton and surface phonon-polariton modes are discussed explicitly.

When an external electromagnetic disturbance is introduced into a solid, it will produce induced charge density and induced current density. These induced densities produce induced electric and magnetic fields. The *local field* $\mathbf{E}_{\text{LF}}(\mathbf{r})$ at the position of an atom in a solid is given by

$$\mathbf{E}_{\text{LF}} = \mathbf{E}_0 + \mathbf{E}_1 + \mathbf{E}_2 + \mathbf{E}_3,$$

where E_0 , E_1 , E_2 , E_3 are, respectively, the external field, *depolarization field* ($= -\lambda\mathbf{P}$), *Lorentz field* ($= \frac{4\pi\mathbf{P}}{3}$), and the field due to the dipoles within the Lorentz sphere ($= \sum_{i \in \text{L.S.}} \frac{3(\mathbf{p}_i \cdot \mathbf{r}_i)\mathbf{r}_i - r_i^2\mathbf{p}_i}{r_i^3}$). The local field at the center of a sphere of cubic crystal is simply given by

$$E_{\text{LF}}^{\text{sphere}} = E_0 - \frac{4\pi}{3}P + \frac{4\pi}{3}P + 0 = E_0.$$

The induced dipole moment of an atom is given by $\mathbf{p} = \alpha\mathbf{E}_{\text{LF}}$. The polarization $\mathbf{P}$ is given, for a cubic crystal, by $\mathbf{P} = \frac{N\alpha}{1 - \frac{4\pi N\alpha}{3}}\mathbf{E} \equiv \chi\mathbf{E}$, where N is the number of atoms per unit volume and χ is the electrical susceptibility. The electrical susceptibility and the dielectric function ($\varepsilon = 1 + 4\pi\chi$) of the solid are

$$\chi = \frac{N\alpha}{1 - \frac{4\pi N\alpha}{3}}; \quad \varepsilon = 1 + \frac{4\pi N\alpha}{1 - \frac{4\pi N\alpha}{3}}.$$

The relation between the macroscopic dielectric function ε and the atomic polarizability α is called the *Clausius–Mossotti relation*:

$$\frac{\varepsilon - 1}{\varepsilon + 2} = \frac{4\pi N\alpha}{3}$$

The total polarizability of the atoms or ions within a unit cell can usually be separated into three parts:

1. *Electronic polarizability* α_e : The displacement of the electrons relative to the nucleus
2. *Ionic polarizability* α_i : The displacement of an ion itself with respect to its equilibrium position
3. *Dipolar polarizability* α_{dipole} : The orientation of any permanent dipoles by the electric field in the presence of thermal disorder.

In the presence of a field $\mathbf{E}$, the average dipole moment per unit volume is 509
 given by $\bar{p}_z = p \mathcal{L}\left(\frac{pE}{k_B T}\right)$, where $\mathcal{L}(\xi)$ is the Langevin function. The dipolar 510
 polarizability α_{dipole} shows strong temperature dependence. The electronic 511
 polarizability α_e and the ionic polarizability α_{ion} are almost independent of 512
 temperature. 513

In a metal, the conduction electrons are free and the dielectric function 514
 becomes 515

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = 1 - \frac{4\pi N e^2 / m}{\omega^2 - i\omega/\tau} = 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2 - i\omega/\tau}.$$

In an ionic crystal, we have 516

$$\varepsilon(\omega) = \varepsilon_\infty \left[\frac{\omega^2 - \omega_L^2}{\omega^2 - \omega_T^2} \right].$$

Here, ω_L and ω_T are the TO and LO phonon frequencies, respectively. We 517
 note that $\omega_L > \omega_T$ since $\varepsilon_0 > \varepsilon_\infty$ in general. 518

For the propagation of light in a material characterized by $\varepsilon(\omega)$, the 519
 external sources $\mathbf{j}_0$ and ρ_0 vanishes. Therefore, we have 520

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} = -\frac{i\omega}{c} \mathbf{B}; \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \frac{i\omega\varepsilon(\omega)}{c} \mathbf{E}.$$

The two Maxwell equations for $\nabla \times \mathbf{E}$ and $\nabla \times \mathbf{B}$ can be combined to give a 521
 wave equation: 522

$$\left(\frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \varepsilon(\omega) - q^2 \right) \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{q}(\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{E}) = 0.$$

For an infinite homogeneous medium of dielectric function $\varepsilon(\omega)$, a general 523
 dispersion relation of the self-sustaining waves is written as 524

$$\varepsilon(\omega) \left[\frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \varepsilon(\omega) - q^2 \right]^2 = 0.$$

The two *transverse modes* and one *longitudinal mode* are characterized, 525
 respectively, by 526

$$\omega^2 = \frac{c^2 q^2}{\varepsilon(\omega)}; \quad \varepsilon(\omega) = 0.$$

For the interface ($z = 0$) of two different media of dielectric functions ε_I 527
 and ε_{II} , the boundary conditions give us the general dispersion of the surface 528
 wave: 529

$$\frac{\varepsilon_I}{\alpha_I} + \frac{\varepsilon_{II}}{\alpha_{II}} = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\varepsilon_o}{\alpha_o} + \frac{\varepsilon(\omega)}{\alpha} = 0.$$

where

$$\alpha_o = \sqrt{q_y^2 - \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \varepsilon_o} \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha = \sqrt{q_y^2 - \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \varepsilon(\omega)}.$$

530

Magnetism in Solids

9.1 Review of Some Electromagnetism

9.1.1 Magnetic Moment and Torque

We begin with a brief review of some elementary electromagnetism. A current distribution $\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r})$ produces a magnetic dipole moment at the origin that is given by

$$\mathbf{m} = \frac{1}{2c} \int \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}) d^3r. \quad (9.1)$$

If $\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r})$ is composed from particles of charge q_i at positions $\mathbf{r}_i$ moving with velocity $\mathbf{v}_i$, $\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_i q_i \mathbf{v}_i \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_i)$, and the magnetic moment $\mathbf{m}$ is

$$\mathbf{m} = \frac{1}{2c} \sum_i q_i \mathbf{r}_i \times \mathbf{v}_i. \quad (9.2)$$

For a single particle of charge q moving in a circle of radius r_0 at velocity v_0 , we have

$$m = \frac{1}{2c} q r_0 v_0 \quad (9.3)$$

and $\mathbf{m}$ is perpendicular to the plane of the circle. The current i in the loop is given by q divided by $t = \frac{2\pi r}{v_0}$, the time to complete one circuit. Thus

$$i = \frac{q v_0}{2\pi r_0}. \quad (9.4)$$

We can use this in our expression for m to get

$$m = \frac{q}{2c} r_0 v_0 = \frac{ia}{c}. \quad (9.5)$$

Here, $a = \pi r_0^2$ is the area of the loop. We can write $\mathbf{m} = \frac{i\mathbf{a}}{c}$ if we associate vector character with the $\mathbf{a}$ of the loop.

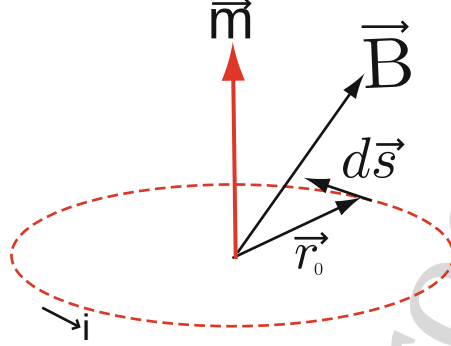


Fig. 9.1. A magnetic moment $\mathbf{m}$ due to a current loop of radius r_0 located in a magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$

If a magnetic field were imposed on a magnetic moment, the magnetic moment would experience a torque. To show this we begin with the Lorentz force

$$\mathbf{F} = \frac{q}{c} \mathbf{v}_0 \times \mathbf{B}. \quad (9.6)$$

For a charge dq the force $d\mathbf{F}$ is given by

$$d\mathbf{F} = \frac{dq}{c} \frac{ds}{dt} \times \mathbf{B} = \frac{i}{c} ds \times \mathbf{B}. \quad (9.7)$$

Here, ds is an infinitesimal element of path length (see, for example, Fig. 9.1).

The torque τ is given by $\int \mathbf{r} \times d\mathbf{F}$.

$$\tau = \int \mathbf{r} \times d\mathbf{F} = \frac{i}{c} \int \mathbf{r} \times ds \times \mathbf{B}. \quad (9.8)$$

But $\int \mathbf{r} \times ds = \mathbf{a}$, and hence we have

$$\tau = \frac{i}{c} \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{m} \times \mathbf{B}. \quad (9.9)$$

9.1.2 Vector Potential of a Magnetic Dipole

If a magnetic dipole $\mathbf{m}$ is located at the origin, it produces a vector potential at position $\mathbf{r}$ given by

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{\mathbf{m} \times \mathbf{r}}{r^3}. \quad (9.10)$$

Of course the magnetic field $\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}) = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$. If we have a magnetization (magnetic dipole moment per unit volume), then $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ is given by

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) = \int d^3r' \frac{\mathbf{M}(\mathbf{r}') \times (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|^3}. \quad (9.11)$$

9.1 Review of Some Electromagnetism 249

As we did with the electric polarization $\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r})$, we can transform this equation into two parts.

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) = \int_V d^3r' \frac{\nabla_{r'} \times \mathbf{M}(\mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|} + \oint_S dS' \frac{\mathbf{M}(\mathbf{r}') \times \hat{\mathbf{n}}'}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|}, \quad (9.12)$$

where $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ is a unit vector outward normal to the surface S . The volume integration is carried out over the volume V of the magnetized material. The surface integral is carried out over the surface bounding the magnetized object. Since $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ is related to a current density by

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{c} \int d^3r' \frac{\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|}, \quad (9.13)$$

the vector potential produced by a magnetization is equivalent to volume distribution of current

$$\mathbf{j}_M(\mathbf{r}) = c \nabla \times \mathbf{M}(\mathbf{r}) \quad (9.14)$$

and a surface distribution of current

$$\mathbf{j}_S(\mathbf{r}) = c \mathbf{M}(\mathbf{r}) \times \hat{\mathbf{n}}. \quad (9.15)$$

Recall that if $\mathbf{E} = 0$, Maxwell's equation for $\nabla \times \mathbf{B}$ is

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \frac{4\pi}{c} (\mathbf{j}_0 + \mathbf{j}_M) = \frac{4\pi}{c} \mathbf{j}_0 + 4\pi \nabla \times \mathbf{M}. \quad (9.16)$$

Defining $\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{B} - 4\pi \mathbf{M}$ gives

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{H} = \frac{4\pi}{c} \mathbf{j}_0 \quad (9.17)$$

which shows that $\mathbf{H}$ is that part of the field arising from the free current density $\mathbf{j}_0$. As we stated before the two Maxwell equations

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = 4\pi (\rho_0 + \rho_{\text{ind}}), \quad (9.18)$$

and

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \frac{1}{c} \dot{\mathbf{E}} + \frac{4\pi}{c} (\mathbf{j}_0 + \mathbf{j}_{\text{ind}}) + 4\pi \nabla \times \mathbf{M} \quad (9.19)$$

are sometimes written in terms of $\mathbf{D}$ and $\mathbf{H}$.

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = 4\pi \rho_0,$$

(where $\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{E} + 4\pi \mathbf{P}$ and $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{P} = -\rho_{\text{pol}}$ with bound charge density ρ_{pol}) and

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{H} = \frac{1}{c} \dot{\mathbf{D}} + \frac{4\pi}{c} \mathbf{j}_0.$$

9.2 Magnetic Moment of an Atom

48

9.2.1 Orbital Magnetic Moment

49

Let us consider the nucleus to be fixed and evaluate the orbital contribution of the electron currents to the magnetic moment of an atom.

51

$$\mathbf{m} = \frac{1}{2c} \sum_i q_i \mathbf{r}_i \times \mathbf{v}_i. \quad (9.20)$$

Since $q_i = -e$ for every electron, and every electron has mass m_e , we can write

53

$$\mathbf{m} = -\frac{e}{2m_e c} \sum_i \mathbf{r}_i \times m_e \mathbf{v}_i = -\frac{e}{2m_e c} \times \left(\begin{array}{c} \text{total angular momentum} \\ \text{of the electrons} \end{array} \right). \quad (9.21)$$

We know $\sum_i \mathbf{r}_i \times m_e \mathbf{v}_i$ is quantized and equal to $\hbar \mathbf{L}$, where $|\mathbf{L}| = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ and $L_z = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots, \pm L$. Thus, we have

55

$$\mathbf{m} = -\frac{e\hbar}{2m_e c} \mathbf{L} = -\mu_B \mathbf{L}. \quad (9.22)$$

Here, $\mu_B = \frac{e\hbar}{2m_e c} = 0.927 \times 10^{-20}$ (ergs/gauss) or 5.8×10^{-2} (meV/T) is called the **Bohr magneton**. The Bohr magneton corresponds to the magnetic moment of a 1s electron in H.

58

9.2.2 Spin Magnetic Moment

59

In addition to orbital angular momentum $\hbar \mathbf{L}$, each electron in an atom has an intrinsic spin angular momentum $\hbar \mathbf{s}$, giving a total spin angular momentum $\hbar \mathbf{S}$ where

61

$$\mathbf{S} = \sum_i \mathbf{s}_i. \quad (9.23)$$

62

The z-component of spin is $s_z = \pm \frac{1}{2}$, and the spin contribution to the magnetic moment is $\mp \mu_B$. Thus, for each electron, there is a contribution $-2\mu_B \mathbf{s}$ to the magnetic moment of an atom. If we sum over all spins, the total spin contribution to the magnetic moment is

66

$$\mathbf{m}_s = -2\mu_B \sum_i \mathbf{s}_i = -2\mu_B \mathbf{S}. \quad (9.24)$$

Note that the factor of 2 appearing in this expression is not exact. It is actually given by $g = 2(1 + \frac{\alpha}{2\pi} - 2.973 \frac{\alpha^2}{\pi^2} + \dots) \simeq 2 \times 1.0011454$. However, in our discussion here we will take the g -factor as 2.

69

9.2.3 Total Angular Momentum and Total Magnetic Moment 70

The total angular momentum of an atom is given by 71

$$\mathbf{J} = \mathbf{L} + \mathbf{S}. \quad (9.25)$$

The total magnetic moment is given by 72

$$\mathbf{m} = -\mu_B (\mathbf{L} + 2\mathbf{S}). \quad (9.26)$$

In quantum mechanics the components of $\mathbf{J}$, $\mathbf{L}$, and $\mathbf{S}$ are operators that satisfy commutation relations. As we learned in quantum mechanics, it is possible to diagonalize J^2 and J_z simultaneously. 73 74 75

$$J^2 |j, j_z\rangle = j(j+1) |j, j_z\rangle; \quad j = 0, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}, \dots \quad (9.27)$$

$$J_z |j, j_z\rangle = j_z |j, j_z\rangle; \quad -j \leq j_z \leq j \quad (9.28)$$

Note that $j_z = 0, \pm 1, \dots, \pm j$ or $j_z = \pm \frac{1}{2}, \pm \frac{3}{2}, \dots, \pm j$. We can write that 76

$$\mathbf{m} = -\hat{g}\mu_B \mathbf{J}. \quad (9.29)$$

This defines the operator $\hat{g}$ because we have $\mathbf{J} = \mathbf{L} + \mathbf{S}$ and 77

$$\hat{g}\mathbf{J} = \mathbf{L} + 2\mathbf{S}. \quad (9.30)$$

We can use these definitions to show that 78

$$\mathbf{J} \cdot \mathbf{J} = (\mathbf{L} + \mathbf{S}) \cdot (\mathbf{L} + \mathbf{S}) = \mathbf{L}^2 + \mathbf{S}^2 + 2\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{S} \quad (9.31)$$

and 79

$$\hat{g}\mathbf{J} \cdot \mathbf{J} = (\mathbf{L} + \mathbf{S}) \cdot (\mathbf{L} + 2\mathbf{S}) = \mathbf{L}^2 + 2\mathbf{S}^2 + 3\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{S}. \quad (9.32)$$

We can eliminate $\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{S}$ and obtain 80

$$g_L = \frac{3}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{s(s+1) - l(l+1)}{j(j+1)} \quad (9.33) \quad 81$$

This eigenvalue of $\hat{g}$ is called the **Landé g -factor**. 82

9.2.4 Hund's Rules 83

The ground state of an atom or ion with an incomplete shell is determined by Hund's rules: 84 85

1. The ground state has the maximum S consistent with the Pauli exclusion principle. 86 87
2. It has the maximum L consistent with the maximum spin multiplicity $2S + 1$ of Rule (1). 88 89
3. The J -value is given by $L - S$ when a shell is less than half filled and by $L + S$ when more than half filled. 90 91

t1.1 **Table 9.1.** Ground state electron configurations angular momentum quantum numbers for the elements of atomic numbers $20 \leq Z \leq 29$

t1.2	Z	Element	Configuration	Spectroscopic notation	S	L	J	g
t1.3	20	Ca	$(3p)^6(4s)^2$	$^1S_0$	0	0	0	—
t1.4	21	Sc	$(3d)^1(4s)^2$	$^2D_{\frac{3}{2}}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	2	$\frac{3}{2}$	$\frac{4}{5}$
t1.5	22	Ti	$(3d)^2(4s)^2$	$^3F_2$	1	3	2	$\frac{2}{3}$
t1.6	23	V	$(3d)^3(4s)^2$	$^4F_{\frac{3}{2}}$	$\frac{3}{2}$	3	$\frac{3}{2}$	$\frac{2}{5}$
t1.7	24	Cr	$(3d)^5(4s)^1$	$^7S_3$	3	0	3	2
t1.8	25	Mn	$(3d)^5(4s)^2$	$^6S_{\frac{5}{2}}$	$\frac{5}{2}$	0	$\frac{5}{2}$	2
t1.9	26	Fe	$(3d)^6(4s)^2$	$^5D_4$	2	2	4	$\frac{3}{2}$
t1.10	27	Co	$(3d)^7(4s)^2$	$^4F_{\frac{9}{2}}$	$\frac{3}{2}$	3	$\frac{9}{2}$	$\frac{4}{3}$
t1.11	28	Ni	$(3d)^8(4s)^2$	$^3F_4$	1	3	4	$\frac{5}{4}$
t1.12	29	Cu	$(3d)^{10}(4s)^1$	$^2S_{\frac{1}{2}}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	2

Example

92

Consider an ion of Fe^{2+} ; it has six electrons in the $3d$ level. We can put five of them in spin up states (since d means $l = 2$ and m_l can be $-2, -1, 0, 1, 2$) and to maximize S , hence,

94
95

$$\uparrow \uparrow \uparrow \uparrow \uparrow \downarrow \text{ gives } S = 2.$$

The maximum value of L -value is given by

96

$$L = -2 - 1 + 0 + 1 + 2 + 2 = 2.$$

The J -value (since it is over half-filled) is

97

$$J = L + S = 4.$$

Therefore, we have

98

$$g = \frac{3}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{2(3) - 2(3)}{4(5)} = \frac{3}{2}.$$

One can work out some examples listed in Table 9.1. The ground state notation is $^{2S+1}L_J$, where $L = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, \dots$ are denoted by the letters $S, P, D, F, G, \dots$, respectively.

100
101

9.3 Paramagnetism and Diamagnetism of an Atom

102

In the presence of a magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ the Hamiltonian describing the electrons in an atom can be written as

103
104

$$H = H_0 + \sum_i \frac{1}{2m} \left(\mathbf{p}_i + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}_i) \right)^2 + 2\mu_B \mathbf{B} \cdot \sum_i \mathbf{s}_i, \quad (9.34)$$

9.3 Paramagnetism and Diamagnetism of an Atom 253

where H_0 is the nonkinetic part of the atomic Hamiltonian, $\mathbf{p}_i = -i\hbar\nabla_i$, and the sum is over all electrons in an atom. For a homogeneous magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$, one can choose a vector potential of

$$\mathbf{A} = -\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{B}. \quad (9.35)$$

Here, we take the magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ in the z-direction.

$$\mathbf{B} = (0, 0, B_0). \quad (9.36)$$

Then, the vector potential is given by

$$\mathbf{A} = -\frac{1}{2}B_0(y\hat{i} - x\hat{j}). \quad (9.37)$$

Substituting the vector potential into (9.34), we have

$$H = H_0 + \sum_i \frac{p_i^2}{2m_e} + \frac{eB_0}{2m_e c} \sum_i (x_i p_{iy} - y_i p_{ix}) + \frac{e^2 B_0^2}{8m_e c^2} \sum_i (x_i^2 + y_i^2) + 2\mu_B B_0 S_z. \quad (9.38)$$

Here, we note that

$$x_i p_{iy} - y_i p_{ix} = (\mathbf{r}_i \times \mathbf{p}_i)_{iz} = \hbar l_{iz}.$$

Now, we can write the Hamiltonian as

$$H = H_0 + \sum_i \frac{p_i^2}{2m_e} + \mu_B (L_z + 2S_z) B_0 + \frac{e^2 B_0^2}{8m_e c^2} \sum_i (x_i^2 + y_i^2). \quad (9.39)$$

But $-\mu_B(L_z + 2S_z)$ is simply m_z , the z-component of the magnetic moment of the atom in the absence of the applied magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$. Therefore, we have

$$H = \mathcal{H} - m_z B_0 + \frac{e^2 B_0^2}{8m_e c^2} \sum_i (x_i^2 + y_i^2), \quad (9.40)$$

where $\mathcal{H} = H_0 + \sum_i \frac{p_i^2}{2m_e}$. In the presence of the magnetic field $\mathbf{B}_0$,

$$\begin{aligned} v_{ix} &= \frac{\partial H}{\partial p_{ix}} = \frac{1}{m} \left(p_{ix} - \frac{eB_0}{2c} y_i \right), \\ v_{iy} &= \frac{\partial H}{\partial p_{iy}} = \frac{1}{m} \left(p_{iy} + \frac{eB_0}{2c} x_i \right), \end{aligned} \quad (9.41)$$

and the magnetic moment in the presence of $\mathbf{B}_0$ is (see (9.20))

$$\boldsymbol{\mu} = \sum_i \left(-\frac{e}{2c} \mathbf{r}_i \times \mathbf{v}_i - \frac{e}{2m_e c} 2\hbar \mathbf{S}_i \right). \quad (9.42)$$

Using (9.41), the expression for v_{ix} and v_{iy} , one obtains

$$\mu_z = -\mu_B L_z - 2\mu_B S_z - \frac{e^2 B_0}{4m_e c^2} \sum_i (x_i^2 + y_i^2). \quad (9.43)$$

Note that one can also obtain this result from (9.40) using the relation

$$\mu_z = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial B_0}. \quad (9.44)$$

Thus, we have μ_z , the z-component of magnetic moment of the atom in the magnetic field B_0 is given by

$$\mu_z = m_z - \frac{e^2 B_0}{4m_e c^2} \sum_i (x_i^2 + y_i^2). \quad (9.45)$$

It differs from m_z , its value when $B_0 = 0$ by a term that is negative and proportional to B_0 .

If the atom is in its ground state, $\overline{m_z}$, the average value of m_z is $\overline{m_z} = -\mu_B(\overline{L_z} + 2\overline{S_z}) = -g\mu_B \overline{J_z} = -g\mu_B j_z$, where $j_z = -J, -J+1, \dots, J$. For a spherically symmetric atom, $\overline{x_i^2} = \overline{y_i^2} = \overline{z_i^2} = \frac{1}{3}\overline{r_i^2}$. Therefore, we obtain

$$\mu_z = -g\mu_B \overline{J_z} - \frac{e^2 B_0}{6m_e c^2} \sum_i \overline{r_i^2}. \quad (9.46)$$

The second term on the right-hand side is the origin of **diamagnetism**. If $J = 0$ (so that $\overline{J_z} = 0$), then a system containing N atoms per unit volume would produce a magnetization

$$M = -N \frac{e^2 B_0}{6m_e c^2} \sum_i \overline{r_i^2}, \quad (9.47)$$

and the **diamagnetic susceptibility**

$$\chi_{\text{DIA}} = \frac{M}{B_0} = -N \frac{e^2}{6m_e c^2} \sum_i \overline{r_i^2}. \quad (9.48)$$

Here, we have assumed $\chi_{\text{Dia}} \ll 1$ and set $\chi = \frac{M}{B}$ instead of $\frac{M}{H}$. This result was first derived by Langevin.

All substances exhibit diamagnetism. Paramagnetism occurs only in samples whose atoms possess permanent magnetic moments (i.e. $m \neq 0$ when $B_0 = 0$). All free atoms except those having complete electronic shells are paramagnetic. In solids, however, fewer substances exhibit paramagnetism because the electrons form energy bands and filled bands do not contribute to paramagnetism.

- Examples of paramagnetism in solids are 141
1. Pauli spin paramagnetism of metals. 142
 2. Paramagnetism due to incomplete shells. 143
 - (a) Transition elements: 144

Iron group elements with incomplete 3d shell, for example,
 $[\text{Ti}^{3+}(3d^1) \sim \text{Cu}^{2+}(3d^9)]$. 145

Palladium group elements with incomplete 4d shell, for example,
 $[\text{Zr}^{3+}(4d^1) \sim \text{Ag}^{2+}(4d^9)]$. 146

Platinum group elements with incomplete 5d shell, for example,
 $[\text{Hf}^{3+}(5d^1) \sim \text{Au}^{2+}(5d^9)]$. 147
 - (b) Rare earth elements: 147

Rare earth group elements (or Lanthanides) with incomplete 4f
 shell, for example, $[\text{Ce}^{3+}(4f^1) \sim \text{Yb}^{3+}(4f^{13})]$. 148

Transuranic group elements (or Actinides) with incomplete 5f or
 6d shells, for example, elements beyond Th. 154

9.4 Paramagnetism of Atoms 149

We have seen that the permanent magnetic dipole moment of an atom is 150
 given by 151

$$\mathbf{m} = -g_L \mu_B \mathbf{J}. \quad (9.49)$$

We will assume that the separations between atoms in the systems of interest 152
 are sufficiently large that the interactions between the atoms can be neglected. 153
 The energy of an atom in a magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ is 154

$$E = -\mathbf{m} \cdot \mathbf{B} = g_L \mu_B B m_J, \quad (9.50)$$

where $m_J = -J, -J+1, \dots, J-1, J$. The probability of finding an atom in 155
 state $|J, m_J\rangle$ at a temperature T is 156

$$p(m_J) = \frac{1}{Z} e^{-\beta E(m_J)}, \quad (9.51)$$

where $\beta = (k_B T)^{-1}$ and the normalization constant Z is chosen so that 157
 $\sum_{m_J} p(m_J) = 1$. This gives 158

$$Z = \sum_{m_J=-J}^J e^{-\beta g_L \mu_B B m_J}. \quad (9.52)$$

256 9 Magnetism in Solids

Let $\beta g_L \mu_B B = y$. Then, $Z = \sum_{m=-J}^J e^{-ym}$. This can be rewritten 159

$$\begin{aligned} Z &= e^{-yJ} (1 + e^y + e^{2y} + \dots + e^{2Jy}) \\ &= e^{-yJ} \left[\frac{(e^y)^{2J+1} - 1}{e^y - 1} \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (9.53)$$

The result for Z can be rewritten 160

$$Z(x) = \frac{\sinh \frac{2J+1}{2J} x}{\sinh \frac{x}{2J}}, \quad (9.54)$$

where $x = yJ = \beta g_L \mu_B B J$. The magnetization of a system containing N 161
atoms per unit volume will be 162

$$M = -N g_L \mu_B \frac{\sum_{m_J} m_J p(m_J)}{\sum_{m_J} p(m_J)} = N g_L \mu_B J \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \ln Z. \quad (9.55)$$

This is usually written as 163

$$M = N g_L \mu_B J B_J(\beta g_L \mu_B B J), \quad (9.56) \quad 164$$

where the function $B_J(x)$ is called the **Brillouin function**. It is not difficult 165
to see that 166

$$B_J(x) = \frac{2J+1}{2J} \coth \frac{2J+1}{2J} x - \frac{1}{2J} \coth \frac{x}{2J}. \quad (9.57)$$

The argument of the Brillouin function $\frac{2J+1}{2J} \beta g_L \mu_B B J$ is small compared 167
tounity if the magnetic field B is small compared to 500 T at room tem- 168
perature. Under these conditions (use $\coth z \simeq \frac{1}{z} + \frac{z}{3}$ for $z \ll 1$) one can 169
write 170

$$B_J(x) \simeq \frac{x}{3} \frac{J+1}{J}, \quad (9.58)$$

and 171

$$M \simeq \frac{N g_L^2 \mu_B^2 J(J+1)}{3k_B T} B. \quad (9.59)$$

Since $\langle \mathbf{m} \cdot \mathbf{m} \rangle = g_L^2 \mu_B^2 \langle \mathbf{J} \cdot \mathbf{J} \rangle = g_L^2 \mu_B^2 J(J+1)$ we can write 172

$$\chi_{\text{Para}} = \frac{M}{B} = \frac{N \langle \mathbf{m}^2 \rangle}{3k_B T} \quad (9.60) \quad 173$$

for the paramagnetic susceptibility of a system of atoms of magnetic moment 174
 $\mathbf{m}$ at high temperature ($g_L \mu_B B J \ll k_B T$). This is commonly known as 175
Curie's law. Notice that when J becomes very large 176

$$\lim_{J \rightarrow \infty} B_J(x) \Rightarrow \coth x - \frac{1}{x} = \mathcal{L}(x), \quad (9.61)$$

where $\mathcal{L}$ is the **Langevin function** that we encountered in studying elec- 177
tric dipole moments. Thus, the quantum mechanical result goes over to the 178

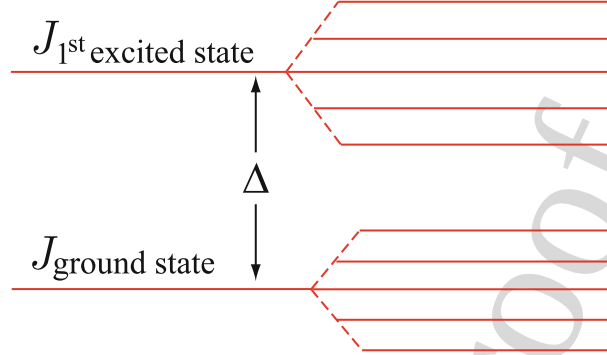


Fig. 9.2. Energy level splitting of the ground state and first excited multiplets for an atom of the total angular momentum quantum number J

classical result as $J \rightarrow \infty$, as expected. Curie's law is often written

179

$$M \simeq \frac{N \mu_B^2 p^2 B}{3k_B T}, \quad (9.62)$$

where $p = g_L \sqrt{J(J+1)}$ is called the **effective number of Bohr mag-** 180
netons. Knowing S , L , J and g_L from the application of Hund's rules 181
 immediately gives us p . For example, for a Dy^{3+} ion the atomic configuration is 182
 $(4f)^9(5s)^2(5p)^6$. This results from removing two $6s$ electrons and one $4f$ elec- 183
 tron from the neutral atom. The S -value will be $\frac{5}{2}$ (seven $4f$ -electrons in $\uparrow$ and 184
 two in $\downarrow$ states), $L = 5$ (the two $\downarrow$ electrons have $m_z = 3$ and 2 to maximize L), 185
 and $J = L + S = \frac{15}{2}$, and hence $g_L = \frac{4}{3}$ and $p = \frac{4}{3} \sqrt{\frac{15}{2} \cdot \frac{17}{2}} \simeq 10.63$. 186

Observed and calculated p -values agree fairly well. There are exceptions 187
 when excited state multiplets are not sufficiently high in energy (see, for 188
 example, Fig. 9.2). 189

Until now we have assumed $\Delta \gg k_B T$ and $\Delta \gg g_L \mu_B J B$. If this is not 190
 true, higher multiplets can be important in evaluation of χ or p . Typically, for 191
 an ion with partially filled shell with nonzero value of J , $\chi_{\text{Para}} \sim 10^{-2} - 10^{-3}$ 192
 at room temperature and $\chi_{\text{Dia}} \sim 10^{-5}$, which is independent of temperature. 193
 Therefore, we have $\chi_{\text{Para}} \sim 500 \chi_{\text{Dia}}$ at room temperature. 194

9.5 Pauli Spin Paramagnetism of Metals

195

If we used the classical theory of paramagnetism for a particle with magnetic 196
 moment $\mathbf{m}$, the magnetization at a temperature T (with $k_B T \gg |\mathbf{m} \cdot \mathbf{B}|$) 197
 would be given by Curie's law 198

$$M = \frac{N \langle \mathbf{m}^2 \rangle B}{3k_B T}. \quad (9.63)$$

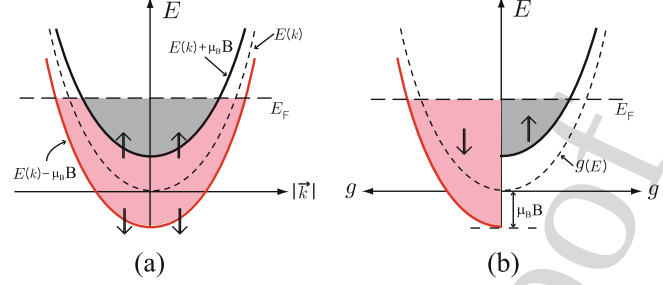


Fig. 9.3. Energy level splitting of the electron gas in the presence of the magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$. Energy parabolas $E(k)$ (a) and density of states $g(E)$ (b) of electrons in two different spin states in the presence of Zeeman splitting

For free electrons $\mathbf{m} = -2\mu_B \mathbf{s}$ and $\langle \mathbf{m}^2 \rangle = 4\mu^2 \langle \mathbf{s} \cdot \mathbf{s} \rangle = 4\mu^2 s(s+1)$. Since $s = \frac{1}{2}$ this gives $\langle \mathbf{m}^2 \rangle = 3\mu^2$ and¹

$$\chi_{\text{classical}} = \frac{M}{B} = \frac{n_0 \mu_B^2}{k_B T}. \quad (9.64)$$

As we discussed earlier, this is not what is observed experimentally. In metals the observed susceptibility is approximately independent of temperature and two orders of magnitude smaller than the value of $\chi_{\text{classical}}$ evaluated at room temperature.

The qualitative explanation is exactly the same as that by which the Sommerfeld model explained the electronic contribution to the specific heat. At a temperature T only electrons whose energy lies within a shell of width $k_B T$ about the Fermi energy are effectively free. Other electrons are inefficient because of the Pauli exclusion principle. If we replace n_0 by n_{eff} , where

$$n_{\text{eff}} \simeq n_0 \frac{k_B T}{\zeta}. \quad (9.65)$$

The spin susceptibility becomes $\chi_{\text{QM}} \simeq \frac{n_0 \mu_B^2}{\zeta} \simeq \frac{k_B T}{\zeta} \chi_{\text{classical}} = \frac{n_0 \mu_B^2}{\zeta}$.

To obtain χ_{QM} more rigorously, we simply assume that in the presence of the magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ the energy of an electron is changed by an amount

$$\delta E = \pm \mu_B B = -\mathbf{m} \cdot \mathbf{B}; \quad \mathbf{m} = -g_L \mu_B \mathbf{S}$$

depending on whether its spin is up or down relative to the direction of $\mathbf{B}$.

The number of particles of spin up (or down) per unit volume is

$$n_{\pm} = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^{\infty} dE f_0(E) g(E \mp \mu_B B), \quad (9.66)$$

where $+$ and $-$ in the subscript of $n_{\pm}$ correspond to the cases of spin up (+) and spin down (−) states, respectively. (See Fig. 9.3.) We evaluated many

¹ Here, n_0 is the number of free electrons per unit volume in a metal.

integrals over Fermi functions in Chap. 3. Remember that the total number of states per unit volume with energy less than ε is given by

$$G(\varepsilon) = \int_0^\varepsilon g(\varepsilon) d\varepsilon = n_0 \left(\frac{k}{k_F} \right)^3 = n_0 \left(\frac{\varepsilon}{\varepsilon_F} \right)^{3/2}.$$

Using these results we can obtain

$$n_{\pm} = \frac{1}{2} \left[G(\zeta \mp \mu_B B) + \frac{\pi^2}{6} (k_B T)^2 g'(\zeta \mp \mu_B B) \right]. \quad (9.67)$$

The magnetization M is equal to $\mu_B(n_- - n_+)$. Expanding for $\zeta \gg \mu_B B$ and $k_B T \ll \zeta$ leads to

$$M \simeq \mu_B^2 B \left[g(\zeta) + \frac{\pi^2}{6} (k_B T)^2 g''(\zeta) \right]. \quad (9.68)$$

The chemical potential is determined by requiring the number of particles to be $n_0 = n_- + n_+$. This gives

$$n_0 = G(\zeta) + \frac{\pi^2}{6} (k_B T)^2 g'(\zeta) + O(\mu_B^2 B^2). \quad (9.69)$$

To order $\mu_B^2 B^2$, we note that

$$\zeta = \zeta_0 - \frac{\pi^2}{6} (k_B T)^2 \frac{g'(\zeta_0)}{g(\zeta_0)}. \quad (9.70)$$

Using $g(\zeta) = \frac{3}{2} \frac{n_0}{\zeta_0} \left(\frac{\varepsilon}{\zeta_0} \right)^{1/2}$ gives

$$\chi_{\text{QM}} = \frac{3n_0\mu_B^2}{2\zeta_0} \left[1 - \frac{\pi^2}{12} \left(\frac{k_B T}{\zeta_0} \right)^2 + \dots \right] \quad (9.71)$$

for the Pauli spin (paramagnetic) susceptibility of a metal.

9.6 Diamagnetism of Metals

According to classical mechanics there should be no diamagnetism of a free electron gas. Consider the effect of a magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ on the motion of an electron. The force acting on the electron is

$$\mathbf{F} = -\frac{e}{c} \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}. \quad (9.72)$$

This force is always perpendicular to $\mathbf{v}$, therefore $\mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{l} = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v} dt = 0$. Thus, no work is done on the electrons by the field $\mathbf{B}$ and their energy is unchanged.

260 9 Magnetism in Solids

Further the distribution function depends only on E , T , N and will also be unchanged. Thus, there can be no induced currents and no diamagnetism.

Quantum mechanics gives a different answer. Landau was the first to derive the **diamagnetic susceptibility** of metals. We will not rederive his result in full, but simply show how the result comes about in a quantum mechanical calculation.

Let $\mathbf{A} = (0, xB, 0)$ be the vector potential of a dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$. The Hamiltonian for a single electron is (here we shall neglect the intrinsic magnetic moment of the electron)

$$H = \frac{1}{2m} \left[p_x^2 + \left(p_y + \frac{e}{c} Bx \right)^2 + p_z^2 \right]. \quad (9.73)$$

Recall that $\mathbf{p} = -i\hbar\nabla$. The Schrödinger equation is

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \left[\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial y} + i\frac{eB}{\hbar c} x \right)^2 + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2} \right] \Psi = E\Psi. \quad (9.74)$$

Since the Hamiltonian is independent of y and z , let us assume a solution of the form

$$\Psi(x, y, z) = e^{ik_y y + ik_z z} \phi(x). \quad (9.75)$$

The equation which $\phi(x)$ must satisfy is

$$\left[\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} - \left(k_y + \frac{eB}{\hbar c} x \right)^2 - k_z^2 + \frac{2mE}{\hbar^2} \right] \phi(x) = 0 \quad (9.76)$$

If we let $x' = x + \frac{\hbar k_y}{m\omega_c}$ this equation becomes

$$\left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x'^2} + \frac{1}{2} m \omega_c^2 x'^2 \right) \phi(x') = \left(E - \frac{\hbar^2 k_z^2}{2m} \right) \phi(x'). \quad (9.77)$$

This is just the equation for a simple harmonic oscillator of mass m and characteristic frequency ω_c . The energy levels are

$$E - \frac{\hbar^2 k_z^2}{2m} = \hbar\omega_c \left(n + \frac{1}{2} \right); \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots \quad (9.78)$$

Thus, the eigenfunctions and eigenvalues for an electron in the presence of a magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ are

$$|nk_y k_z\rangle = L^{-1} e^{ik_y y + ik_z z} \phi_n \left(x + \frac{\hbar k_y}{m\omega_c} \right). \quad (9.79)$$

$$E_n(k_y, k_z) = \frac{\hbar^2 k_z^2}{2m} + \hbar\omega_c \left(n + \frac{1}{2} \right). \quad (9.80)$$

We note that the eigenvalues $E_n(k_y, k_z)$ are independent of k_y . The allowed values of k_y and k_z are determined by imposing periodic boundary conditions. If we require the particles to be in a cube of length L , then because the center of each oscillator must be in the box, the range of possible k_y values must be

$$\text{Range of values of } k_y \leq \frac{m\omega_c L}{\hbar}. \quad (9.81)$$

The total number of allowed values of k_y , for a given k_z , is

$$\frac{L}{2\pi} \times \text{Range of values of } k_y = \frac{m\omega_c L^2}{2\pi\hbar} = \frac{BL^2}{hc/e}. \quad (9.82)$$

Thus for each value of n , k_z (and spin s) there are $\frac{m\omega_c L^2}{2\pi\hbar}$ energy states. Consider the following schematic plot of the energy levels for a given k_z shown in Fig. 9.4. In quantum mechanics, a dc magnetic field can alter the distribution of energy levels. Thus, there can be a change in the energy of the system and this can result in a diamagnetic current. The diamagnetic susceptibility turns out to be

$$\chi_L = -\frac{n_0}{2\zeta_0} \left(\frac{e\hbar}{2m^*c} \right)^2 = -\frac{n_0\mu_B^2}{2\zeta_0} \left(\frac{m}{m^*} \right)^2. \quad (9.83)$$

Notice that we expect m^* (not m) to appear because the diamagnetism is associated with the orbital motion of the electrons. This is justifiable only if the cyclotron radius is much larger than the interatomic spacing.

$$r_c = \frac{v_F}{\omega_c} = \frac{v_F}{eB_0/m^*c}. \quad (9.84)$$

Typically, $v_F \approx 10^8$ cm/s and $\omega_c \approx 1.76 \times 10^7 B_0$. Thus for $B_0 \sim 10^5$ gauss, $r_c \approx 10^{-4}$ cm $\sim 10^4$ Å $\gg$ lattice constant. The total magnetic susceptibility of a metal is

$$\chi_{QM} = \chi_P + \chi_L = \frac{3n_0\mu_B^2}{2\zeta_0} \left[1 - \frac{1}{3} \left(\frac{m}{m^*} \right)^2 \right] \quad (9.85)$$

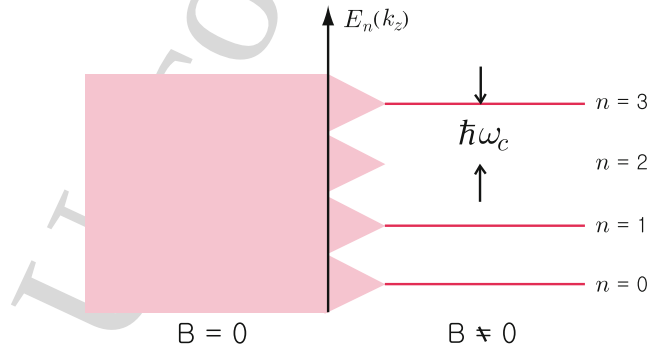


Fig. 9.4. Energy level splitting of the electron gas due to orbital quantizations in the presence of the magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$

9.7 de Haas–van Alphen Effect

272

We have seen that the energy levels for an electron in a magnetic field look like, as is shown in Fig. 9.5,

274

$$E_n(k_y, k_z) = \frac{\hbar^2 k_z^2}{2m} + \hbar\omega_c \left(n + \frac{1}{2} \right).$$

The Fermi energy ζ is a slowly varying function of $\mathbf{B}$. As we increase $\mathbf{B}$, the distance between Landau levels increases, and at $k_z = 0$ levels pass through the Fermi energy. As the Landau level at $k_z = 0$ passes through the Fermi level, the internal energy abruptly decreases.

278

Let us consider a simple situation, where the Fermi energy ζ is between two orbits. Let us assume that $T = 0$ so that we have a perfectly sharp Fermi surface. As we increase the field, the states are raised in energy so that the lowest occupied state approaches ζ in energy. Of course, all the energies in the presence of the field will be higher than those in the absence of the field by an amount $\frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega_c$. As the levels approach the Fermi energy, the free energy of the electron gas approaches a maximum. As the highest occupied level passes the Fermi surface, it begins to empty, thus decreasing the free energy of the electron gas. When the Fermi level lies below the cyclotron level the energy of the electron gas is again a minimum. Thus, we can see how the free energy is a periodic function of the magnetic field. Now, since many physically observable properties of the system are derived from the free energy (such as the magnetization), we see that they, too, are periodic functions of the magnetic field. The periodic oscillation of the diamagnetic susceptibility of a metal at low temperatures is known as the **de Haas–van Alphen effect**. The de Haas–van Alphen effect arises from the periodic variation of the total energy of an electron gas as a function of a static magnetic field. The energy variation is easily observed in experiments as a periodic variation in the magnetic moment of the metal.

297

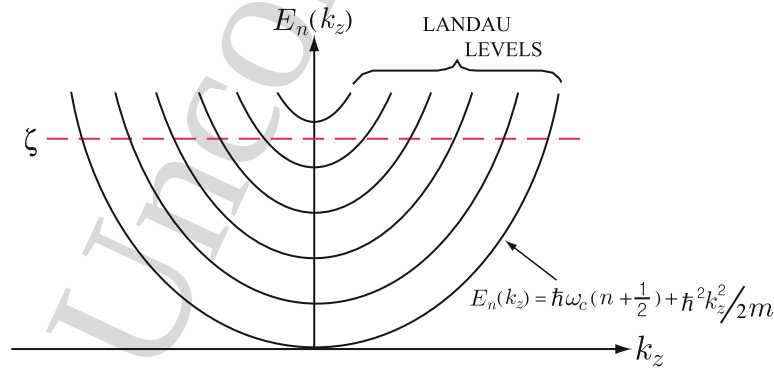


Fig. 9.5. Schematics of energy levels for an electron in a magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$

Density of States 298

Look at $G(E)$, the number of states per unit volume of energy less than E . 299

$$G(E) = \frac{1}{L^3} \sum_{\substack{n k_y k_z \\ E_{n k_z} < E}} 1 = \frac{1}{L^3} \left(\frac{L}{2\pi} \right)^2 2 \sum_{\substack{n \\ E_{n k_z} < E}} \int dk_y dk_z 1. \quad (9.86)$$

We added a factor 2 to take account of spin. Since $\int dk_y = \frac{m\omega_c L}{\hbar}$, we have 300

$$G(E) = \frac{1}{L^3} \left(\frac{L}{2\pi} \right)^2 2 \frac{m\omega_c L}{\hbar} \sum_{\substack{n \\ E_{n k_z} < E}} \int dk_z,$$

where $E_n(k_y, k_z) = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} + \hbar\omega_c(n + \frac{1}{2})$. Define $\kappa_n = \frac{\sqrt{2m}}{\hbar} (E - \hbar\omega_c(n + \frac{1}{2}))^{1/2}$. 301

For each value of n the k_z integration goes from $-\kappa_n$ to κ_n . This gives 302

$$G(E) = \frac{m\omega_c}{2\pi^2\hbar} \sum_{n=0}^{n_{\text{Max}}} 2 \frac{\sqrt{2m}}{\hbar} \left(E - \hbar\omega_c \left(n + \frac{1}{2} \right) \right)^{1/2}. \quad (9.87)$$

The density of states $g(E)$ is $\frac{dG}{dE}$. 303

$$g(E) = \frac{m\omega_c}{2\pi^2\hbar} \frac{\sqrt{2m}}{\hbar} \sum_{n=0}^{n_{\text{Max}}} \left(E - \hbar\omega_c \left(n + \frac{1}{2} \right) \right)^{-1/2}. \quad (9.88) \quad 304$$

We note that the $g(E)$ has square root singularities at $E = \hbar\omega_c(n + \frac{1}{2})$ as illustrated in Fig. 9.6. 305
306

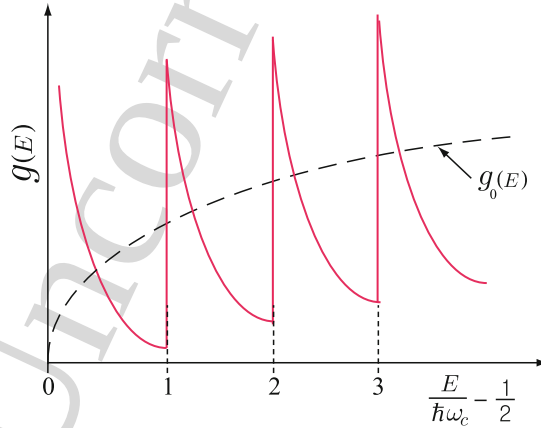


Fig. 9.6. Schematic plot of the density of states for an electron gas in a magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$

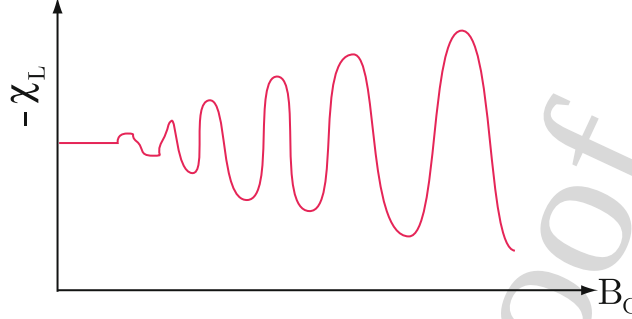


Fig. 9.7. Schematic plot of the magnetic field dependence of the diamagnetic susceptibility

In the limit as $\hbar\omega_c \rightarrow 0$, the sum on n can be replaced by an integral 307

$$\sum_{n=0}^{n_{\text{Max}}} \rightarrow \frac{1}{\hbar\omega_c} \int_0^E dx,$$

where $x = n\hbar\omega_c$. In this case the $g(E)$ reduces to the free particle density of 308 states for $\mathbf{B} = 0$, i.e. $g_0(E) = \frac{\sqrt{2}m^{3/2}}{\pi^2\hbar^3} E^{1/2}$. 309

Because $g(E)$ has square root singularities, the internal energy, the mag- 310 netic susceptibility, etc. show oscillations (see Fig. 9.7). As $\hbar\omega_c$ changes with 311 N fixed (or N changes with $\hbar\omega_c$ fixed), the Fermi level passes through the 312 bottoms of different Landau levels. Let $\zeta \gg \mu_B B$ or $\zeta \gg \hbar\omega_c$. Then the 313 electron gas occupies states in many different cyclotron levels. At low tem- 314 peratures all cyclotron levels are partially occupied up to a limiting energy 315 ζ , which might lie between the threshold energies of the n^{th} and $(n-1)^{\text{th}}$ 316 cyclotron levels. As B -field increases, the energy and the number of states 317 in each subband increase, and hence the threshold energy likewise increases. 318 Since the total number of electrons is given, there is a continuous rearrange- 319 ment of the electrons with increasing the field. When the threshold energy 320 $E_n = (n + \frac{1}{2})\hbar\omega_c$ grows from a value below ζ to a value above ζ , the electrons 321 in the n^{th} band fall back into states in the $(n-1)^{\text{th}}$ band, decreasing the total 322 energy. As the field increases, it rises again until the next threshold energy 323 E_{n-1} exceeds the ζ . As a result ζ itself becomes (weakly) periodic. The sepa- 324 ration between the individual threshold energy is $\hbar\omega_c$. Therefore, $\hbar\omega_c \gg k_B T$ 325 is an important condition; otherwise the electron distribution in the region of 326 ζ is so widely spread that oscillations are smoothed out. When the condition 327 $\zeta \gg \hbar\omega_c$ is no longer fulfilled, all the electrons are in the lowest subband and 328 the oscillations cease. This limit is called the **quantum limit**. 329

The oscillations in the magnetic susceptibility are observed in experiments 330 when $\hbar\omega_c \gg k_B T$ in high purity (low scattering) samples. Oscillations in elec- 331 trical conductivity are called the **Shubnikov-de Haas oscillations**. Both 332

9.8 Cooling by Adiabatic Demagnetization of a Paramagnetic Salt 265

the de Haas–van Alphen oscillations and Shubnikov–de Haas oscillations are 333
 useful in studying electronic properties of metals and semiconductor quantum 334
 structures. 335

9.8 Cooling by Adiabatic Demagnetization of a Paramagnetic Salt 336 337

The entropy of a paramagnetic salt is the sum of the entropy due to phonons 338
 and the entropy due to the magnetic moments. 339

$$S = S_p + S_m. \quad (9.89)$$

If the paramagnetic ion has angular momentum J , then the ground state in 340
 the absence of any applied magnetic field must be $2J+1$ fold degenerate. This 341
 is because m_J can have any value between $-J$ and $+J$ with equal probab- 342
 ity. For a system containing N paramagnetic ions (noninteracting), the total 343
 degeneracy is $(2J+1)^N$, and the magnetic contribution to the entropy is 344

$$S_m(B=0) = k_B \ln(2J+1)^N = Nk_B \ln(2J+1). \quad (9.90)$$

Introduce a magnetic field B (neglect local field corrections treating the ions 345
 as noninteracting magnetic ions). Then the magnetic entropy must be given by 346

$$S_m(B) = -Nk_B \sum_{m_J=-J}^J p(m_J) \ln p(m_J), \quad (9.91)$$

where

$$p(m_J) = Z^{-1} e^{-\frac{g_L \mu_B B}{k_B T} m_J}. \quad (9.92)$$

Here, we have used the relation $S(B, T) = k_B \frac{\partial}{\partial T} (T \ln Z)$ where the normal- 348
 ization constant Z is defined so that $\sum_{m_J} p(m_J) = 1$, giving 349

$$Z = \sum_{m_J} e^{-\frac{g_L \mu_B B}{k_B T} m_J}. \quad (9.93)$$

Substitute the expression for $p(m_J)$ into $S_m(B)$ to have 350

$$S_m(B) = Nk_B \ln Z + Nk_B \frac{g_L \mu_B B}{k_B T} \overline{m_J}. \quad (9.94)$$

We note that the magnetization is given by $M = -Ng_L \mu_B \overline{m_J}$ so that 351

$$S_m(B) = Nk_B \ln Z - \frac{MB}{T}. \quad (9.95)$$

352

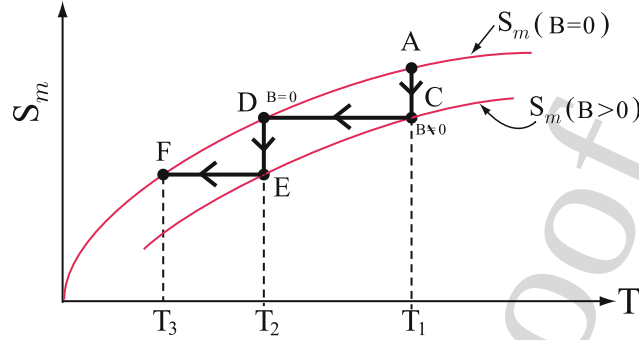


Fig. 9.8. Schematic plot of the process of cooling by adiabatic demagnetization of a paramagnetic salt

Notice that $S_m(B)$ depends only on the product $\beta B = \frac{B}{k_B T}$. Thus, we have

$$S_m(B) - S_m(0) = Nk_B \ln \frac{Z}{2J+1} - \frac{MB}{T}. \quad (9.96)$$

It is easy to see that this quantity is always negative. This agrees with the intuitive idea that the system is more disordered in the absence of the magnetic field. The phonon contribution to the entropy is essentially independent of magnetic field.

Now, consider the following process (see Fig. 9.8):

1. Apply a magnetic field B under isothermal conditions. This takes one from point A to point C in the S_m versus T plane.
2. Now, isolate the salt from the heat bath and adiabatically remove the magnetic field to arrive at D.

This process has lowered the temperature from T_1 to T_2 . The process can be repeated. In an ideal system $S_m(B=0)$ should approach zero as T approaches zero. In practice there is a lower limit in T that can be reached; it is due to the internal magnetic fields (i.e. coupling of magnetic moments to one another) in the paramagnetic salt.

9.9 Ferromagnetism

Some materials possess a spontaneous magnetic moment; that is, even in the absence of an applied magnetic field they have a magnetization M . The value of the spontaneous magnetic moment per unit volume is called the **spontaneous magnetization**, $M_s(T)$. The temperature T_c above which the spontaneous magnetization vanishes is called the **Curie temperature**.

The simplest way to account for the spontaneous alignment is by postulating the existence of an internal field H_E , called the **Weiss field**, which causes

the magnetic moments of the atoms to line up. The value of H_E is determined 377
from the Curie temperature T_c by the relation $g\mu_B J H_E \simeq k_B T_c$ to be 378

$$H_E = \frac{k_B T_c}{g\mu_B J}. \quad (9.97)$$

Typically, H_E has a value of about 500 Tesla. We shall see that effective field 379
is not of magnetic origin. If we take μ_B divided by the volume of a unit cell, 380
we obtain $\frac{\mu_B}{a^3} \simeq 10^3$ gauss $\ll H_E$. Weiss assumed that the effective field H_E 381
was proportional to the magnetization, i.e. 382

$$H_E = \lambda M. \quad (9.98)$$

For $T > T_c$, the magnetic susceptibility obeys Curie's law, but now $H + H_E$ 383
would replace H 384

$$M = \frac{C}{T} (H + H_E) = \frac{C}{T} (H + \lambda M)$$

Therefore, we have 385

$$M = \frac{C}{T - \lambda C} H = \frac{C}{T - T_c} H \quad (9.99) \quad 386$$

Since $C = \frac{Ng_L^2 \mu_B^2 J(J+1)}{3k_B}$, the molecular field parameter can be written 387

$$\lambda^{-1} = \frac{Ng_L^2 \mu_B^2 J(J+1)}{3k_B T_c}. \quad (9.100)$$

For Fe, we have $\lambda \simeq 5,000$. 388

Problems

389

9.1. Consider a volume V bounded by a surface S filled with a magnetization $\mathbf{M}(\mathbf{r}')$ that depends on the position $\mathbf{r}'$. The vector potential $\mathbf{A}$ produced by a magnetization $\mathbf{M}(\mathbf{r})$ is given by

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) = \int d^3r' \frac{\mathbf{M}(\mathbf{r}') \times (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|^3}.$$

- (a) Show that $\nabla' \left(\frac{1}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|} \right) = \frac{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|^3}$. 393
 (b) Use this result together with the divergence theorem to show that $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ can be written as 394 395

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) = \int_V d^3r' \frac{\nabla_{r'} \times \mathbf{M}(\mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|} + \oint_S dS' \frac{\mathbf{M}(\mathbf{r}') \times \hat{\mathbf{n}}'}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|},$$

where $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ is a unit vector outward normal to the surface S . The volume integration is carried out over the volume V of the magnetized material. The surface integral is carried out over the surface bounding the magnetized object. 396 397 398 399

9.2. Demonstrate for yourself that Table 9.1 is correct by placing $\uparrow$ or $\downarrow$ arrows according to Hund's rules as shown below for Cr of atomic configuration $(3d)^5(4s)^1$. 400 401 402

t1.2	l_z	2	1	0	-1	-2
t1.3	3d-shell	$\uparrow$	$\uparrow$	$\uparrow$	$\uparrow$	$\uparrow$
t1.4	4s-shell			$\uparrow$		

Clearly $S = \frac{1}{2} \times 6 = 3$, $L = 0$, $J = L + S = 3$, and 403

$$g = \frac{3}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{3(3+1) - 0(0+1)}{3(3+1)} = 2.$$

Therefore, the spectroscopic notation of Cr is ${}^7S_3$. 404

Use Hund's rules (even though they might not be appropriate for every case) to make a similar table for Y^{39} , Nb^{41} , Tc^{43} , La^{57} , Dy^{66} , W^{74} , and Am^{95} . 405 406

9.3. A system of N electrons is confined to move on the x - y plane. A magnetic field $\mathbf{B} = B\hat{z}$ is perpendicular to the plane. 407 408

- (a) Show that the eigenstates of an electron are written by 409

$$\varepsilon_{n\sigma}(k) = \hbar\omega_c \left(n + \frac{1}{2} \right) - \mu_B B \sigma_z,$$

410

$$\psi_{n\sigma}(k, x, y) = e^{iky} u_n\left(x + \frac{\hbar k}{m\omega_c}\right) \eta_\sigma.$$

Here, $k = \frac{2\pi}{L} \times j$, where $j = -\frac{N}{2}, -\frac{N}{2} + 1, \dots, \frac{N}{2} - 1$, and η_σ is a spin 411
eigenfunction. 412

- (b) Determine the density of states $g_\sigma(\varepsilon)$ for electrons of spin σ . Remember 413
that each cyclotron level can accomodate $N_L = \frac{BL^2}{hc/e}$ electrons of each 414
spin. 415
- (c) Determine $G_\sigma(\varepsilon)$, the total number of states per unit area. 416
- (d) Describe qualitatively how the chemical potential at $T = 0$ changes as 417
the magnetic field is increased from zero to a value larger than $(\frac{hc}{e})\frac{N_L}{L^2}$. 418

9.4. Show that $S_m(B, T) < S_m(0, T)$ by showing that $dS(B, T) = \partial_B S|_{T,V} + 419$
 $\partial_T S|_{B,V} dT$ and that $\partial_B S(B, T)|_{T,V} < 0$ for all values of $\frac{\mu_B B}{k_B T}$ if $J \neq 0$. Here, 420
 $\partial_T S|_{B,V}$ is just $\frac{c_v}{T}$. 421

Summary

422

The total angular momentum and magnetic moment of an atom are given by 423

$$\mathbf{J} = \mathbf{L} + \mathbf{S}; \quad \mathbf{m} = -\mu_B (\mathbf{L} + 2\mathbf{S}) = -\hat{g}\mu_B \mathbf{J}.$$

Here, the eigenvalue of the operator $\hat{g}$ is the **Landé g -factor** written as 424

$$g_L = \frac{3}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{s(s+1) - l(l+1)}{j(j+1)}.$$

The ground state of an atom or ion with an incomplete shell is determined 425
by Hund's rules: 426

1. The ground state has the maximum S consistent with the Pauli exclusion 427
principle. 428
2. It has the maximum L consistent with the maximum spin multiplicity 429
 $2S + 1$ of Rule (i). 430
3. The J -value is given by $L - S$ when a shell is less than half filled and by 431
 $L + S$ when more than half filled. 432

In the presence of a magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ the Hamiltonian describing the 433
electrons in an atom is written as 434

$$H = H_0 + \sum_i \frac{1}{2m} \left(\mathbf{p}_i + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}_i) \right)^2 + 2\mu_B \mathbf{B} \cdot \sum_i \mathbf{s}_i,$$

where H_0 is the nonkinetic part of the atomic Hamiltonian and the sum is 435
over all electrons in an atom. For a homogeneous magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ in the 436
 z -direction, we have $\mathbf{A} = -\frac{1}{2}B_0(\hat{y}\hat{i} - \hat{x}\hat{j})$. In this gauge, the Hamiltonian 437
becomes 438

$$H = \mathcal{H} - m_z B_0 + \frac{e^2 B_0^2}{8m_e c^2} \sum_i (x_i^2 + y_i^2),$$

where $\mathcal{H} = H_0 + \sum_i \frac{p_i^2}{2m_e}$ and $m_z = \mu_B(L_z + 2S_z)$. In the presence of $\mathbf{B}_0$, the 439
 z -component of magnetic moment of the atom becomes 440

$$\mu_z = m_z - \frac{e^2 B_0}{6m_e c^2} \sum_i \overline{r_i^2}.$$

The second term on the right-hand side is the origin of **diamagnetism**. If 441
 $J = 0$ (so that $\overline{J_z} = 0$), the (Langevin) diamagnetic susceptibility is given by 442

$$\chi_{\text{Dia}} = \frac{M}{B_0} = -N \frac{e^2}{6m_e c^2} \sum_i \overline{r_i^2}.$$

The energy of an atom in a magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ is $E = g_L \mu_B B m_J$, where 443
 $m_J = -J, -J + 1, \dots, J - 1, J$. The magnetization of a system containing N 444

atoms per unit volume is written as $M = N g_L \mu_B J B_J(\beta g_L \mu_B B J)$, where the 445
function $B_J(x)$ is called the **Brillouin function**. If the magnetic field B is 446
small compared to 500 T at room temperature, M becomes 447

$$M \simeq \frac{N g_L^2 \mu_B^2 J(J+1)}{3 k_B T} B,$$

and we obtain the **Curie's law** for the paramagnetic susceptibility: 448

$$\chi_{\text{Para}} = \frac{M}{B} = \frac{N \langle \mathbf{m}^2 \rangle}{3 k_B T}$$

at high temperature, $(g_L \mu_B B J \ll k_B T)$. 449

In the presence of the magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$, the number of electrons of spin 450
up (or down) per unit volume is 451

$$n_{\pm} = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^{\infty} dE f_0(E) g(E \mp \mu_B B).$$

For $\zeta \gg \mu_B B$ and $k_B T \ll \zeta$, the magnetization $M (= \mu_B (n_- - n_+))$ reduces 452
to 453

$$M \simeq \mu_B^2 B \left[g(\zeta) + \frac{\pi^2}{6} (k_B T)^2 g''(\zeta) \right],$$

with $\zeta = \zeta_0 - \frac{\pi^2}{6} (k_B T)^2 \frac{g'(\zeta_0)}{g(\zeta_0)}$. Since $g(\zeta) = \frac{3}{2} \frac{n_0}{\zeta_0} \left(\frac{\zeta}{\zeta_0} \right)^{1/2}$, we obtain the 454
(quantum mechanical) expression 455

$$\chi_{\text{QM}} = \frac{3 n_0 \mu_B^2}{2 \zeta_0} \left[1 - \frac{\pi^2}{12} \left(\frac{k_B T}{\zeta_0} \right)^2 + \dots \right]$$

for the Pauli spin (paramagnetic) susceptibility of a metal. 456

In quantum mechanics, a dc magnetic field can alter the distribution of 457
the electronic energy levels and the orbital states of an electron are described 458
by the eigenfunctions and eigenvalues given by 459

$$|n k_y k_z\rangle = L^{-1} e^{i k_y y + i k_z z} \phi_n \left(x + \frac{\hbar k_y}{m \omega_c} \right); \quad E_n(k_y, k_z) = \frac{\hbar^2 k_z^2}{2m} + \hbar \omega_c \left(n + \frac{1}{2} \right).$$

The quantum mechanical (Landau) diamagnetic susceptibility of a metal 460
becomes 461

$$\chi_L = -\frac{n_0}{2 \zeta_0} \left(\frac{e \hbar}{2 m^* c} \right)^2 = -\frac{n_0 \mu_B^2}{2 \zeta_0} \left(\frac{m}{m^*} \right)^2.$$

Appearance of m^* (not m) indicates that the diamagnetism is associated with 462
the orbital motion of the electrons. 463

In a metal, as we increase $\mathbf{B}$, the Landau level at $k_z = 0$ passes through the 464
Fermi energy ζ and the internal energy abruptly decreases. Many physically 465
observable properties of the system are periodic functions of the magnetic 466
field. The periodic oscillation of the diamagnetic susceptibility of a metal at 467
low temperatures is known as the **de Haas–van Alphen effect**. Oscillations 468
in electrical conductivity are called the **Shubnikov–de Haas oscillations**. 469

10	3
Magnetic Ordering and Spin Waves	4

10.1 Ferromagnetism	5

10.1.1 Heisenberg Exchange Interaction	6

The origin of the Weiss effective field is found in the *exchange field* between the interacting electrons on different atoms. For simplicity, assume that atoms A and B are neighbors and that each atom has one electron. Let Ψ_A and Ψ_B be the wave functions of the electron on atoms A and B, respectively. The Pauli principle requires that the wave function for the pair of electrons be antisymmetric. If we label the two indistinguishable electrons 1 and 2, this means

$$\Psi(1, 2) = -\Psi(2, 1). \quad (10.1)$$

The wave function for an electron has a spatial part and a spin part. Let $\eta_{i\uparrow}$ and $\eta_{i\downarrow}$ be the spin eigenfunctions for electron i in spin up and spin down states, respectively. There are two possible ways of obtaining an antisymmetric wave function for the pair (1,2).

$$\Psi_I = \Phi_S(r_1, r_2)\chi_A(1, 2) \quad (10.2)$$

$$\Psi_{II} = \Phi_A(r_1, r_2)\chi_S(1, 2). \quad (10.3)$$

The wave function Ψ_I has a symmetric space part and an antisymmetric spin part, and the wave function Ψ_{II} has an antisymmetric space part and a symmetric spin part. In (10.2) and (10.3), the space parts are

$$\Phi_S(r_1, r_2) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} [\Psi_a(1)\Psi_b(2) \pm \Psi_a(2)\Psi_b(1)], \quad (10.4)$$

and χ_A and χ_S are the spin wave functions for the singlet ($s = 0$) spin state (which is antisymmetric) and for the triplet ($s = 1$) spin state (which is symmetric).

276 10 Magnetic Ordering and Spin Waves

$$\chi_A(1, 2) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} [\eta_{1\uparrow}\eta_{2\downarrow} - \eta_{1\downarrow}\eta_{2\uparrow}]; \quad S_z = 0 \quad (10.5)$$

$$\chi_S(1, 2) = \begin{cases} \eta_{1\uparrow}\eta_{2\uparrow} & S_z = 1 \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} [\eta_{1\uparrow}\eta_{2\downarrow} + \eta_{1\downarrow}\eta_{2\uparrow}] & S_z = 0 \\ \eta_{1\downarrow}\eta_{2\downarrow} & S_z = -1 \end{cases} \quad (10.6)$$

If we consider the electron–electron interaction 24

$$V = \frac{e^2}{r_{12}}, \quad (10.7)$$

we can evaluate the expectation value of V in state Ψ_I or in state Ψ_{II} . Since V is independent of spin it is simple enough to see that 25
26

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \Psi_I | V | \Psi_I \rangle &= \langle \Phi_S | V | \Phi_S \rangle \\ &= \langle \Psi_a(1)\Psi_b(2) | V | \Psi_a(1)\Psi_b(2) \rangle + \langle \Psi_a(1)\Psi_b(2) | V | \Psi_a(2)\Psi_b(1) \rangle. \end{aligned} \quad (10.8)$$

When we do the same for Ψ_{II} , we obtain 27

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \Psi_{II} | V | \Psi_{II} \rangle &= \langle \Phi_A | V | \Phi_A \rangle \\ &= \langle \Psi_a(1)\Psi_b(2) | V | \Psi_a(1)\Psi_b(2) \rangle - \langle \Psi_a(1)\Psi_b(2) | V | \Psi_a(2)\Psi_b(1) \rangle. \end{aligned} \quad (10.9)$$

The two terms are called the *direct* and *exchange terms* and labeled V_d and $\mathcal{J}$, respectively. Thus, the expectation value of the Coulomb interaction between electrons is given by 28
29
30

$$\langle V \rangle = \begin{cases} V_d + \mathcal{J} & \text{for the singlet state } (S = 0) \\ V_d - \mathcal{J} & \text{for the triplet state } (S = 1) \end{cases} \quad (10.10) \quad 31$$

Now, $\mathbf{S} = \hat{\mathbf{s}}_1 + \hat{\mathbf{s}}_2$ and $\mathbf{S}^2 = (\hat{\mathbf{s}}_1 + \hat{\mathbf{s}}_2)^2 = \hat{\mathbf{s}}_1^2 + \hat{\mathbf{s}}_2^2 + 2\hat{\mathbf{s}}_1 \cdot \hat{\mathbf{s}}_2$. Therefore, $\hat{\mathbf{s}}_1 \cdot \hat{\mathbf{s}}_2 = \frac{1}{2}(\hat{\mathbf{s}}_1 + \hat{\mathbf{s}}_2)^2 - \frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{s}}_1^2 - \frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{s}}_2^2 = \frac{1}{2}S(S+1) - \frac{3}{4}$. Here, we have used the fact that the operator $\mathbf{S}^2$ has eigenvalues $S(S+1)$ and $\hat{\mathbf{s}}_1^2$ and $\hat{\mathbf{s}}_2^2$ have eigenvalues $\frac{1}{2}(\frac{1}{2}+1) = \frac{3}{4}$. Thus, one can write 32
33
34
35

$$\hat{\mathbf{s}}_1 \cdot \hat{\mathbf{s}}_2 = \begin{cases} -\frac{3}{4} & \text{if } S = 0 \\ \frac{1}{4} & \text{if } S = 1. \end{cases}$$

Then, we write 36

$$\langle V \rangle = V_d + \mathcal{J}(1 - \mathbf{S}^2) = V_d - \frac{1}{2}\mathcal{J} - 2\mathcal{J}\hat{\mathbf{s}}_1 \cdot \hat{\mathbf{s}}_2. \quad (10.11)$$

Here, $-2\mathcal{J}\hat{\mathbf{s}}_1 \cdot \hat{\mathbf{s}}_2$ denotes the contribution to the energy from a pair of atoms (or ions) located at sites 1 and 2. For a large number of atoms we need only sum over all pairs to get 37
38
39

$$E = \text{constant} - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i \neq j} 2\mathcal{J}_{ij} \hat{\mathbf{s}}_i \cdot \hat{\mathbf{s}}_j \quad (10.12)$$

Normally, one assumes that $\mathcal{J}_{ij}$ is nonzero only for nearest neighbors and perhaps next nearest neighbors. The factor $\frac{1}{2}$ is introduced in order to avoid double counting of the interaction. The introduction of the interaction term $-2\mathcal{J}\hat{\mathbf{s}}_1 \cdot \hat{\mathbf{s}}_2$ is the source of the Weiss internal field which produces ferromagnetism. If z is the number of nearest neighbors of each atom i , then for atom i we have

$$E_{\text{ex}} = -2\mathcal{J}z\overline{S^2} = -g_L\mu_B\overline{S}H_E \quad (10.13)$$

10.1.2 Spontaneous Magnetization

From our study of paramagnetism we know that

$$M = Ng_L\mu_B SB_S(x), \quad (10.14)$$

where $x = \frac{g_L\mu_B SB_{\text{Local}}}{k_B T}$. Here, B_{Local} is $B + \lambda M$, i.e. it includes the Weiss field. If we plot M vs. x , we get the behavior shown in Fig. 10.1. But for $B = 0$, $B_{\text{Local}} = \lambda M$. Therefore, $x = \frac{g_L\mu_B S\lambda M}{k_B T}$. If we plot this straight line x vs. M on the panel of Fig. 10.1 for different temperatures T we find the behavior shown in Fig. 10.2. Solutions (intersections) occur only at $(M = 0, x = 0)$ for $T > T_c$. For $T < T_c$ there is a solution at some nonzero value of M , i.e.

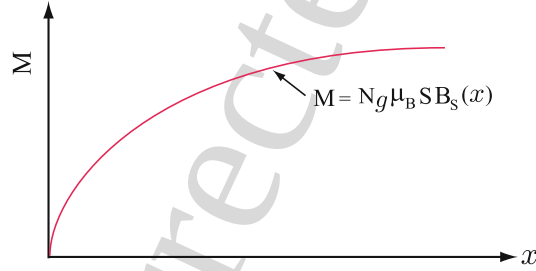


Fig. 10.1. Schematic plot of the magnetization M of a paramagnet as a function of the dimensionless parameter x defined by $x = \frac{g_L\mu_B SB_{\text{Local}}}{k_B T}$

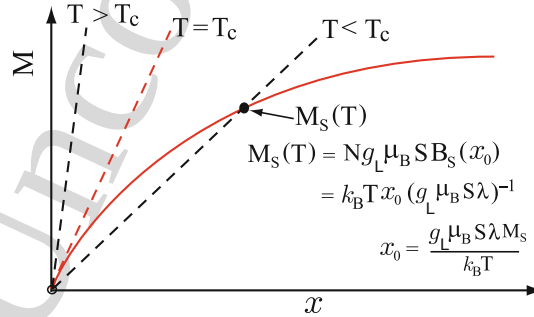


Fig. 10.2. Schematic plot of the magnetization M of a paramagnet for various different temperatures, in the absence of an external magnetic field, as a function of the dimensionless parameter x defined by $x = \frac{g_L\mu_B SB_{\text{Local}}}{k_B T}$

$$M_S(T) = N g_L \mu_B S B_S(x_0), x_0 = \frac{g_L \mu_B S \lambda M_S}{k_B T}.$$

The Curie temperature T_C is the temperature, at which the gradient of the line $M = \frac{k_B T x}{g_L \mu_B S \lambda}$ and the curve $M = N g_L \mu_B S B_S(x)$ are equal at the origin. Recall that, for small x , $B_S(x) = \frac{(S+1)x}{3S} + O(x^3)$. Then the T_C is given by

$$T_C = \frac{\lambda N \left[g_L \mu_B \sqrt{S(S+1)} \right]^2}{3 k_B}. \quad (10.15)$$

It is not difficult to see that $M_S(T)$ vs. T looks like Fig. 10.3.

If a finite external magnetic field B_0 is applied, then we have

$$M = \frac{k_B T x}{g_L \mu_B S \lambda} - \frac{B_0}{\lambda}. \quad (10.16)$$

Plotting this straight line on the M - x plane gives the behavior shown in Fig. 10.4.

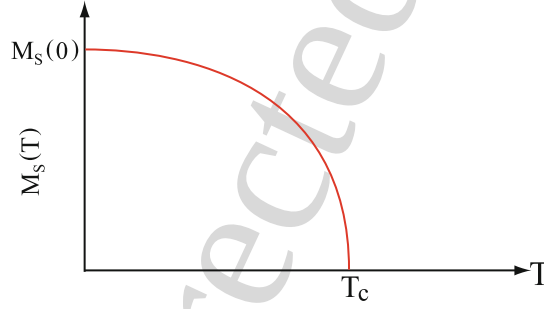


Fig. 10.3. Schematic plot of the spontaneous magnetization M_S as a function of temperature T

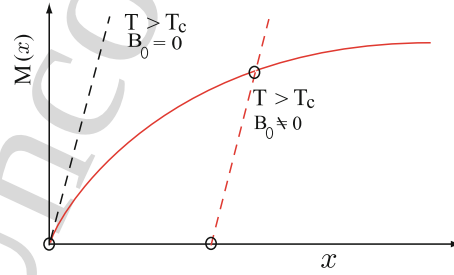


Fig. 10.4. Schematic plot of the magnetization M of a paramagnet, in the presence of an external magnetic field B_0 , as a function of the dimensionless parameter x defined by $x = \frac{g_L \mu_B S B_{\text{Local}}}{k_B T}$

10.1.3 Domain Structure

63

If all the magnetic moments in a finite sample are lined up, then there will be flux emerging from the sample as shown in Fig. 10.5. There is an energy density $\frac{1}{8\pi} \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r})$ associated with this flux emerging from the sample, and the total *emergence energy* is given by

$$U = \frac{1}{8\pi} \int d^3r \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}) \quad (10.17)$$

The emergence energy can be lowered by introducing a domain structures as shown in Fig. 10.6. To have more than a single domain, one must have a domain wall, and the domain wall has a positive energy per unit area.

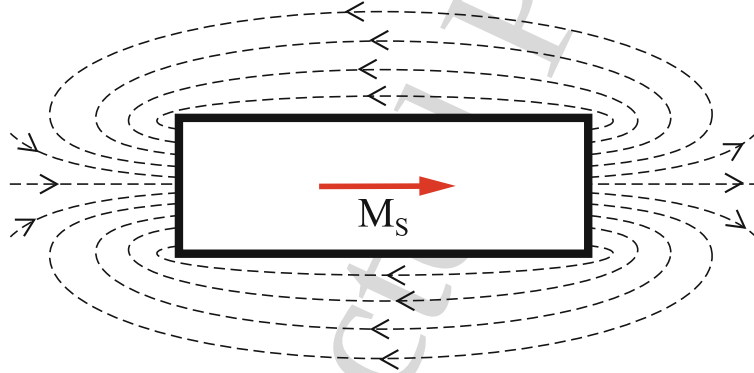


Fig. 10.5. Schematic plot of the magnetic flux around a sample with a single domain of finite spontaneous magnetization

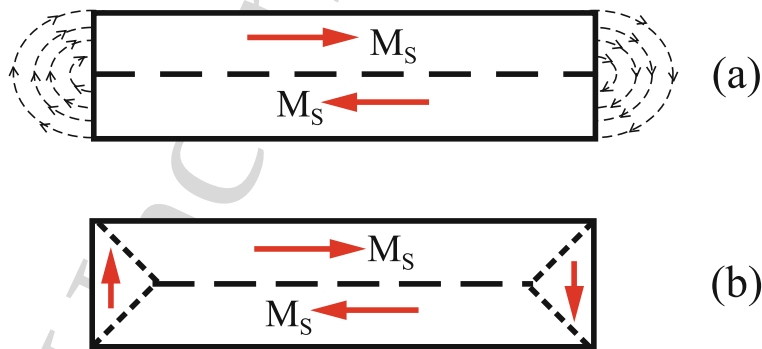


Fig. 10.6. Domain structures in a sample with finite spontaneous magnetization. (a) Pair of domains, (b) domains of closure

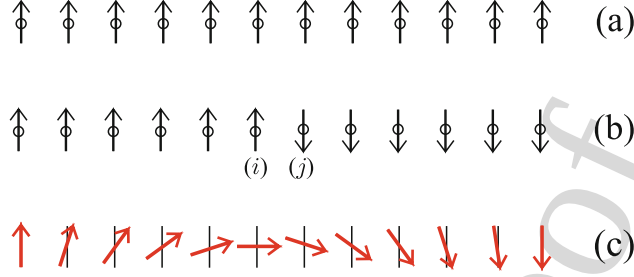


Fig. 10.7. A chain of magnetic spins interacting via Heisenberg exchange interaction. (a) Single domain, (b) a domain wall, (c) gradual spin flip

10.1.4 Domain Wall

71

Consider a chain of magnetic spins (Fig. 10.7a) interacting via Heisenberg exchange interaction

72

73

$$H_{\text{ex}} = -2\mathcal{J} \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \mathbf{s}_i \cdot \mathbf{s}_j,$$

where the sum is over all pairs of nearest neighbors. Compare the energy of this configuration with that having an abrupt domain wall as shown in Fig. 10.7b. Only spins (i) and (j) have a misalignment so that

74

75

76

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta E &= H_{\text{ex}}(i \uparrow, j \downarrow) - H_{\text{ex}}(i \uparrow, j \uparrow) \\ &= -2\mathcal{J}(\tfrac{1}{2})(-\tfrac{1}{2}) - [-2\mathcal{J}(\tfrac{1}{2})(\tfrac{1}{2})] = \mathcal{J}. \end{aligned} \quad (10.18)$$

Energetically it is more favorable to have the spin flip gradually as shown in Fig. 10.7c. If we assume the angle between each neighboring pair in the domain wall is Φ , we can write

77

78

79

$$(E_{\text{ex}})_{ij} = -2\mathcal{J} \mathbf{s}_i \cdot \mathbf{s}_j = -2\mathcal{J} s_i s_j \cos \Phi. \quad (10.19)$$

Now, if the spin turns through an angle Φ_0 ($\Phi_0 = \pi$ in the case shown in Fig. 10.7b) in N steps, where N is large, then $\Phi_{ij} \simeq \frac{\Phi_0}{N}$ within the domain wall, and we can approximate $\cos \Phi_{ij}$ by $\cos \Phi_{ij} \approx 1 - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Phi_0^2}{N^2}$. Therefore, the exchange energy for a neighboring spin pair will be

80

81

82

83

$$(E_{\text{ex}})_{ij} = -2\mathcal{J} S^2 \left(1 - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Phi_0^2}{N^2} \right) \quad (10.20)$$

The increase in exchange energy due to the domain wall will be

84

$$E_{\text{ex}} = N \left(\mathcal{J} S^2 \frac{\Phi_0^2}{N^2} \right) = \mathcal{J} S^2 \frac{\Phi_0^2}{N}. \quad (10.21)$$

85

Clearly, the exchange energy is lower if the domain wall is very wide. In fact, if no other energies were involved, the domain wall width Na (where a is the atomic spacing) would be infinite. However, there is another energy involved, the *anisotropy energy*. Let us consider it next.

86

87

88

89

10.1.5 Anisotropy Energy

90

We realize that crystals are not spherically symmetric, but have finite point group symmetry. In real crystals, certain directions are *easy* to magnetize and others are *hard*. For example, Co is a hexagonal crystal. It is easy to magnetize Co along the hexagonal axis, but hard to magnetize it along any axis perpendicular to the hexagonal axis. The excess energy needed to magnetize the crystal in a direction that makes an angle θ with the hexagonal axis can be written

$$\frac{E_A}{V} = K_1 \sin^2 \theta + K_2 \sin^4 \theta > 0. \quad (10.22)$$

For Fe, a cubic crystal, the $\langle 100 \rangle$ directions are easy axes and the $\langle 111 \rangle$ directions are hard. The anisotropy energy must reflect the cubic symmetry of the lattice. If we define $\alpha_i = \cos \theta_i$ as shown in Fig. 10.8, then an approximation to the anisotropy energy can be written

$$\frac{E_A}{V} \approx K_1 (\alpha_x^2 \alpha_y^2 + \alpha_y^2 \alpha_z^2 + \alpha_z^2 \alpha_x^2) + K_2 \alpha_x^2 \alpha_y^2 \alpha_z^2. \quad (10.23)$$

The constants K_1 and K_2 in (10.22) and (10.23) are called *anisotropy constants*. They are very roughly of the order of 10^5 erg/cm³.

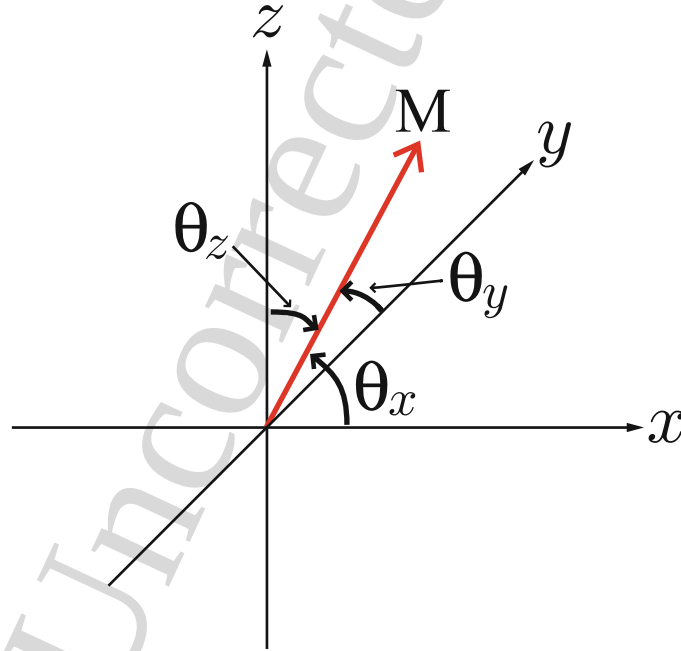


Fig. 10.8. Orientation of the magnetization with respect to the crystal axes in a cubic lattice

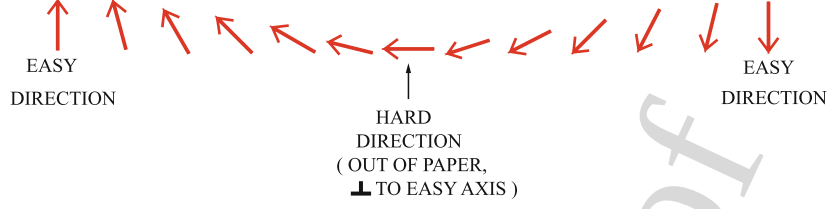


Fig. 10.9. Rotation of the magnetization in a domain wall

Clearly, if we make a domain wall, we must rotate the magnetization away from one easy direction and into another easy direction (see, for example, Fig. 10.9). To get an order of magnitude estimate of the domain wall thickness we can write the energy per unit surface area as the sum of the exchange contribution σ_{ex} and the anisotropy contribution σ_A

$$\sigma_{\text{ex}} = \frac{E_{\text{ex}}}{a^2} = \frac{\mathcal{J}S^2\pi^2}{Na^2}, \quad (10.24)$$

where a is the atomic spacing. The anisotropy energy will be proportional to the anisotropy constant (energy per unit volume) times the number of spins times a .

$$\sigma_A \approx KNa \simeq 10^2 - 10^7 \text{ J/m}^3. \quad (10.25)$$

Thus the total energy per unit area will be

$$\sigma = \frac{\pi^2 \mathcal{J}S^2}{Na^2} + KNa. \quad (10.26)$$

The σ has a minimum as a function of N , since the exchange part wants N to be very large and the anisotropy part wants it very small. At the minimum we have

$$N \simeq \left(\frac{\pi^2 \mathcal{J}S^2}{Ka^3} \right)^{1/2} \approx 300. \quad (10.27)$$

The width of the domain wall is $\delta = Na \simeq \pi S \left(\frac{\mathcal{J}}{Ka} \right)^{1/2}$, and the energy per unit area of the domain wall is $\sigma \simeq 2\pi S \left(\frac{\mathcal{J}K}{a} \right)^{1/2}$.

10.2 Antiferromagnetism

For a Heisenberg ferromagnet we had an interaction Hamiltonian given by

$$\mathcal{H} = -2\mathcal{J} \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \mathbf{s}_i \cdot \mathbf{s}_j, \quad (10.28)$$

and the exchange constant $\mathcal{J}$ was positive. This made $\mathbf{s}_i$ and $\mathbf{s}_j$ align parallel to one another so that the energy was minimized. It is not uncommon to have

10.4 Zero-Temperature Heisenberg Ferromagnet 283

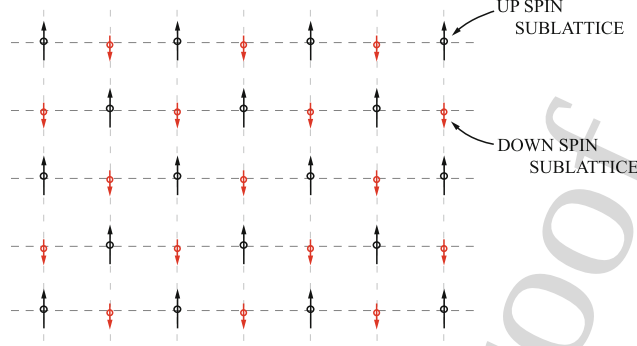


Fig. 10.10. Sublattice structure of spins in a ferrimagnet

spin systems in which $\mathcal{J}$ is negative. Then the Hamiltonian

123

$$\mathcal{H} = 2|\mathcal{J}| \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \mathbf{s}_i \cdot \mathbf{s}_j \quad (10.29)$$

will attempt to align the neighboring spins antiparallel. Materials with $\mathcal{J} < 0$ are called *antiferromagnets*.

125

For an antiferromagnet, the magnetic susceptibility increases as the temperature increases up to the transition temperature $T_N = \frac{|\mathcal{J}|}{k_B}$, known as the *Néel temperature*. Above T_N , the antiferromagnetic crystal is in the standard paramagnetic state.

129

10.3 Ferrimagnetism

130

In an antiferromagnet we can think of two different *sublattices* as shown in Fig. 10.10. If the two sublattices happened to have a different spin on each (e.g. up sublattice has $s = \frac{3}{2}$, down sublattice has $s = 1$), then instead of an antiferromagnet for $J < 0$, we have a *ferrimagnet*.

134

10.4 Zero-Temperature Heisenberg Ferromagnet

135

In the presence of an applied magnetic field B_0 oriented in the z -direction, the Hamiltonian of a Heisenberg ferromagnet can be written

137

$$\mathcal{H} = - \sum_{i,j} \mathcal{J}(\mathbf{R}_i - \mathbf{R}_j) \mathbf{S}_i \cdot \mathbf{S}_j - g\mu_B B_0 \sum_i S_{iz}. \quad (10.30)$$

Here, we take the usual practice that the symbol $\mathbf{S}_i$ represents the total angular momentum of the i th ion and is parallel to the magnetic moment of the

138

139

ion, rather than opposite to the moment as was given by (9.26). The exchange 140
integral $\mathcal{J}$ is defined as a half of the difference between the singlet and triplet 141
energies. Let us define the operators $S^\pm$ by 142

$$S^\pm = S_x \pm iS_y. \quad (10.31)$$

Remember that we can write $\mathbf{S}$ as 143

$$\mathbf{S} = \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\sigma}, \quad (10.32)$$

where $\sigma_x, \sigma_y, \sigma_z$ are the Pauli spin matrices given by 144

$$\sigma_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \sigma_y = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \sigma_z = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (10.33)$$

Let us choose units in which $\hbar = 1$. Then, S_x, S_y , and S_z satisfy the 145
commutation relations 146

$$\begin{aligned} [S_x, S_y]_- &= iS_z, \\ [S_y, S_z]_- &= iS_x, \\ [S_z, S_x]_- &= iS_y. \end{aligned} \quad (10.34)$$

We will be using the symbols S and S_z for quantum mechanical operators 147
and for numbers associated with eigenvalues. Where confusion might arise 148
we will write $\hat{\mathbf{S}}$ and $\hat{S}_z$ for the quantum mechanical operators. From quan- 149
tum mechanics we know that $\hat{\mathbf{S}}^2$ and $\hat{S}_z$ can be diagonalized in the same 150
representation since they commute. We usually write 151

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\mathbf{S}}^2 |S, S_z\rangle &= S(S+1) |S, S_z\rangle, \\ \hat{S}_z |S, S_z\rangle &= S_z |S, S_z\rangle. \end{aligned} \quad (10.35)$$

Let us look at $\hat{S}^+$ operating on the state $|S, S_z\rangle$. We recall that 152

$$\begin{aligned} [\hat{\mathbf{S}}^2, \hat{S}^+] &= 0, \\ [\hat{S}_z, \hat{S}^+] &= \hat{S}^+. \end{aligned} \quad (10.36)$$

We can write 153

$$\hat{\mathbf{S}}^2 \hat{S}^+ |S, S_z\rangle = \hat{S}^+ \hat{\mathbf{S}}^2 |S, S_z\rangle + [\hat{\mathbf{S}}^2, \hat{S}^+] |S, S_z\rangle. \quad (10.37)$$

The second term vanishes because the commutator is zero, and $\hat{\mathbf{S}}^2 |S, S_z\rangle = 154$
 $S(S+1) |S, S_z\rangle$ giving 155

$$\hat{\mathbf{S}}^2 \hat{S}^+ |S, S_z\rangle = S(S+1) \hat{S}^+ |S, S_z\rangle. \quad (10.38)$$

Perform the same operation for $\hat{S}_z$ operating on $\hat{S}^+ |S, S_z\rangle$ to have 156

$$\hat{S}_z \hat{S}^+ |S, S_z\rangle = \hat{S}^+ \hat{S}_z |S, S_z\rangle + [\hat{S}_z, \hat{S}^+] |S, S_z\rangle. \quad (10.39)$$

10.4 Zero-Temperature Heisenberg Ferromagnet 285

Use the fact that $[\hat{S}_z, \hat{S}^+] = \hat{S}^+$ and $\hat{S}_z|S, S_z\rangle = S_z|S, S_z\rangle$. This gives 157

$$\hat{S}_z \hat{S}^+|S, S_z\rangle = (S_z + 1)\hat{S}^+|S, S_z\rangle. \quad (10.40)$$

This means that $\hat{S}^+|S, S_z\rangle$ is proportional to $|S, S_z + 1\rangle$. To determine the 158
normalization constant we write 159

$$\hat{S}^+|S, S_z\rangle = N|S, S_z + 1\rangle,$$

and note that 160

$$\{N|S, S_z + 1\rangle\}^\dagger = N^* \langle S, S_z + 1|$$

and 161

$$\{\hat{S}_z|S, S_z\rangle^\dagger = \langle S, S_z|\hat{S}_z$$

Thus, we have 162

$$\begin{aligned} |N|^2 \langle S, S_z + 1|S, S_z + 1\rangle &= \langle S, S_z|\hat{S}^- \hat{S}^+|S, S_z\rangle \\ &= \langle S, S_z|(\hat{S}_x^2 + \hat{S}_y^2 - \hat{S}_z)|S, S_z\rangle = \langle S, S_z|(\hat{\mathbf{S}}^2 - \hat{S}_z^2 - \hat{S}_z)|S, S_z\rangle \end{aligned}$$

giving for N 163

$$N = [S(S + 1) - S_z^2 - S_z]^{1/2}.$$

We can then show that 164

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{S}^+|S, S_z\rangle &= \sqrt{(S - S_z)(S + 1 + S_z)}|S, S_z + 1\rangle \\ \hat{S}^-|S, S_z\rangle &= \sqrt{(S + S_z)(S + 1 - S_z)}|S, S_z - 1\rangle \end{aligned} \quad (10.41)$$

Now, note that 165

$$S_{ix}S_{jx} + S_{iy}S_{jy} = \frac{1}{2} (S_i^+ S_j^- + S_i^- S_j^+). \quad (10.42)$$

These are all operators, but we omit the $\hat{}$ over the S . The Heisenberg Hamil- 166
tonian, (10.30), becomes 167

$$\mathcal{H} = - \sum_{i,j} \mathcal{J}_{ij} S_{iz} S_{jz} - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i,j} \mathcal{J}_{ij} (S_i^+ S_j^- + S_i^- S_j^+) - g\mu_B B_0 \sum_i S_{iz}. \quad (10.43) \quad 168$$

It is rather clear that the ground state will be obtained when all the spins are 169
aligned parallel to one another and to the magnetic field $\mathbf{B}_0$. Let us define 170
this state as $|\text{GS}\rangle$ or $|0\rangle$. We can write 171

$$|0\rangle = \prod_i |S, S\rangle_i. \quad (10.44)$$

Here, $|S, S\rangle_i$ is the state of the i th spin in which $\hat{S}_{iz}$ has the eigenvalue $S_z = S$, 172
its maximum value. It is clear that $\hat{S}_i^+$ operating on $|0\rangle$ gives zero for every 173
position i in the crystal. Therefore, $\mathcal{H}$ operating on $|0\rangle$ gives 174

286 10 Magnetic Ordering and Spin Waves

$$\mathcal{H}|0\rangle = - \left(\sum_{i,j} \mathcal{J}_{ij} \hat{S}_{iz} \hat{S}_{jz} + g\mu_B B_0 \sum_i \hat{S}_{iz} \right) |0\rangle. \quad (10.45)$$

Equation (10.45) shows that the state, in which all the spins are parallel and aligned along $\mathbf{B}_0 = (0, 0, B_0)$, so that S_z takes its maximum value S , has the lowest energy. The ground state energy becomes

$$E_0 = -S^2 \sum_{i,j} \mathcal{J}_{ij} - Ng\mu_B B_0 S. \quad (10.46)$$

If $\mathcal{J}_{ij} = \mathcal{J}$ for nearest neighbor pairs and zero otherwise, then $\sum_{i,j} 1 = Nz$, where z is the number of nearest neighbors. Then E_0 reduces to

$$\begin{aligned} E_0 &= -S^2 Nz \mathcal{J} - Ng\mu_B B_0 S \\ &= -g\mu_B N S \left[B_0 + z \frac{\mathcal{J} S}{g^2 \mu_B^2} \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (10.47)$$

10.5 Zero-Temperature Heisenberg Antiferromagnet

If $\mathcal{J}$ is replaced by $-\mathcal{J}$ so that the exchange interaction tends to align neighboring spins in opposite directions, the ground state of the system is not quite simple. In fact, it has been solved exactly only for the special case of spin $\frac{1}{2}$ atoms in a one-dimensional chain by Hans Bethe. Let us set the applied magnetic field $B_0 = 0$. Then the Hamiltonian is given by

$$\mathcal{H} = \sum_{i,j} \mathcal{J}_{ij} \mathbf{S}_i \cdot \mathbf{S}_j. \quad (10.48)$$

If we assume that each sublattice acts as the ground state of the ferromagnet, but has S_z oriented in opposite directions on sublattices A and B, we would write a trial wave function

$$\Phi_{\text{Trial}} = \prod_{\substack{i \in \text{A} \\ j \in \text{B}}} |S, S\rangle_i |S, -S\rangle_j. \quad (10.49)$$

Remember that the Hamiltonian is

$$\mathcal{H} = \sum_{i,j} \mathcal{J}_{ij} \left(S_{iz} S_{jz} + \frac{1}{2} S_i^+ S_j^- + \frac{1}{2} S_i^- S_j^+ \right). \quad (10.50)$$

The $S_{iz} S_{jz}$ term would take its lowest possible value with this wave function, but unfortunately $S_i^- S_j^+$ operating on Φ_{Trial} would give a new wave function in which sublattice A has one atom with S_z having the value $S - 1$ and sublattice B has one with $S_z = -S + 1$. Thus, Φ_{Trial} is not an eigenfunction of $\mathcal{H}$.

10.6 Spin Waves in Ferromagnet

196

The Heisenberg Hamiltonian for a system (with unit volume) consisting of N spins with the nearest neighbor interaction can be written

197

198

$$\mathcal{H} = -2\mathcal{J} \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \hat{\mathbf{S}}_i \cdot \hat{\mathbf{S}}_j - g\mu_B B_0 \sum_i S_{iz}, \quad (10.51)$$

199

where the symbol $\langle i,j \rangle$ below the $\sum$ implies a sum over all distinct pairs of nearest neighbors. The constants of the motion are $\hat{\mathbf{S}}^2 = \sum_i \hat{\mathbf{S}}_i \cdot \sum_j \hat{\mathbf{S}}_j$ and $\hat{S}_z = \sum_j \hat{S}_{jz}$, where $\hat{\mathbf{S}} = \sum_j \hat{\mathbf{S}}_j$. The eigenvalues of $\hat{\mathbf{S}}^2$ and $\hat{S}_z$ are given by

200

201

202

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\mathbf{S}}^2 |0\rangle &= NS(NS+1)|0\rangle \\ \hat{S}_z |0\rangle &= NS|0\rangle. \end{aligned} \quad (10.52)$$

The ground state satisfies the equation

203

$$\mathcal{H}|0\rangle = -(g\mu_B B_0 NS + \mathcal{J}NzS^2) |0\rangle \quad (10.53)$$

10.6.1 Holstein–Primakoff Transformation

204

If we write $\hat{\mathbf{S}}_i \cdot \hat{\mathbf{S}}_j$ in terms of x , y , and z components of the spin operators, the Heisenberg Hamiltonian becomes

205

206

$$\mathcal{H} = -2\mathcal{J} \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} (\hat{S}_{ix}\hat{S}_{jx} + \hat{S}_{iy}\hat{S}_{jy} + \hat{S}_{iz}\hat{S}_{jz}) - g\mu_B B_0 \sum_i \hat{S}_{iz}. \quad (10.54)$$

We can write

207

$$\hat{S}_{ix}\hat{S}_{jx} + \hat{S}_{iy}\hat{S}_{jy} = \frac{1}{2}\hat{S}_i^+ \hat{S}_j^- + \frac{1}{2}\hat{S}_i^- \hat{S}_j^+. \quad (10.55)$$

Now, the Hamiltonian is rewritten

208

$$\mathcal{H} = -2\mathcal{J} \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \left(\frac{1}{2}\hat{S}_i^+ \hat{S}_j^- + \frac{1}{2}\hat{S}_i^- \hat{S}_j^+ + \hat{S}_{iz}\hat{S}_{jz} \right) - g\mu_B B_0 \sum_i \hat{S}_{iz}. \quad (10.56)$$

The spin state of each atom is characterized by the value of S_z , which can take on any value between $-S$ and S separated by a step of unity. Because we are interested in low lying states, we will consider excited states in which the value of S_{iz} does not differ too much from its ground state value S . It is convenient to introduce an operator $\hat{n}_j$ defined by

209

210

211

212

213

$$\hat{n}_j = S_j - \hat{S}_{jz} = S - \hat{S}_{jz}. \quad (10.57)$$

214

$\hat{n}_j$ is called the *spin deviation operator*; it takes on the eigenvalues 0, 1, 2, $\dots$, $2S$ telling us how much the value of S_z on site j differs from its ground

215

216

288 10 Magnetic Ordering and Spin Waves

state value S . We now define $a_j^\dagger$ and its Hermitian conjugate a_j by 217

$$\hat{n}_j = a_j^\dagger a_j. \quad (10.58)$$

$a_j^\dagger$ and a_j are creation and annihilation operators for the j^{th} atom. We will 218
require a_j and $a_j^\dagger$ to satisfy the commutation relation $[a_j, a_j^\dagger] = 1$, since a spin 219
deviation looks like a boson. Notice that $a_j^\dagger$, which creates one spin deviation 220
on site j , acts like the lowering operator S_j^- while a_j acts, by destroying one 221
spin deviation on site j , like S_j^+ . Therefore, we expect $a_j^\dagger$ to be proportional 222
to S_j^- and a_j to be proportional to S_j^+ . One can determine the coefficient by 223
noting that 224

$$[\hat{S}^+, \hat{S}^-] = 2\hat{S}_z = 2(S - \hat{n}). \quad (10.59)$$

If we introduce the Holstein–Primakoff transformation to boson creation and 225
annihilation operators $a_j^\dagger$ and a_j 226

$$\hat{S}_j^+ = (2S_j - \hat{n}_j)^{1/2} a_j \quad \text{and} \quad \hat{S}_j^- = a_j^\dagger (2S_j - \hat{n}_j)^{1/2} \quad (10.60)$$

and substitute into the expression for the commutator of $\hat{S}^+$ with $\hat{S}^-$, we 227
obtain 228

$$[\hat{S}^+, \hat{S}^-] = 2(S - \hat{n}) \quad (10.61)$$

if $[a, a^\dagger] = 1$. The proof of (10.61) is given below. We want to show that 229
 $[\hat{S}^+, \hat{S}^-] = 2(S - \hat{n})$ if $[a, a^\dagger] = 1$. We start by defining $\hat{G} = (2S - \hat{n})^{1/2}$. 230
Then, we can write 231

$$\begin{aligned} [\hat{S}^+, \hat{S}^-] &= [\hat{G}a, a^\dagger \hat{G}] = \hat{G}[a, a^\dagger \hat{G}] + [\hat{G}, a^\dagger \hat{G}]a \\ &= \hat{G}a^\dagger[a, \hat{G}] + \hat{G}^2 + [\hat{G}, a^\dagger]\hat{G}a \\ &= \hat{G}^2 + \hat{n}\hat{G}^2 - a^\dagger \hat{G}^2 a. \end{aligned}$$

But, we note that 232

$$\begin{aligned} -a^\dagger \hat{G}^2 a &= -a^\dagger (2S - \hat{n})a = -a^\dagger \{[2S - \hat{n}, a] + a(2S - \hat{n})\} \\ &= -a^\dagger \{-[\hat{n}, a] + a\hat{G}^2\} = -a^\dagger \{-[a^\dagger a, a] + a\hat{G}^2\} \\ &= -a^\dagger \{-[a^\dagger, a]a + a\hat{G}^2\} = -\hat{n} - \hat{n}\hat{G}^2. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, we have 233

$$\begin{aligned} [\hat{S}^+, \hat{S}^-] &= \hat{G}^2 + \hat{n}\hat{G}^2 - a^\dagger \hat{G}^2 a \\ &= \hat{G}^2 + \hat{n}\hat{G}^2 - \hat{n} - \hat{n}\hat{G}^2 \\ &= \hat{G}^2 - \hat{n} = 2(S - \hat{n}) = 2\hat{S}_z. \end{aligned}$$

To obtain this result we had to require $[a^\dagger, a] = -1$. If we substitute (10.59) 234
and (10.60) into the Hamiltonian, (10.56), we obtain 235

$$\mathcal{H} = -2\mathcal{J}S \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \left\{ \sqrt{1 - \frac{\hat{n}_i}{2S}} a_i a_j^\dagger \sqrt{1 - \frac{\hat{n}_j}{2S}} + a_i^\dagger \sqrt{1 - \frac{\hat{n}_i}{2S}} \sqrt{1 - \frac{\hat{n}_j}{2S}} a_j \right. \\ \left. + S \left(1 - \frac{\hat{n}_i}{S} \right) \left(1 - \frac{\hat{n}_j}{S} \right) \right\} - g\mu_B B_0 S \sum_i \left(1 - \frac{\hat{n}_i}{S} \right). \quad (10.62)$$

So far, we have made no approximation other than those inherent in the Heisenberg model. Now, we will make the approximation that $\langle \hat{n}_i \rangle \ll 2S$ for all states of interest. Therefore, in an expansion of the operator $\sqrt{1 - \frac{\hat{n}_i}{2S}}$ we will keep only terms up to those linear in $\hat{n}_i$, i.e.

$$\sqrt{1 - \frac{\hat{n}_i}{2S}} \simeq 1 - \frac{\hat{n}_i}{4S} + \dots \quad (10.63)$$

We make this substitution into the Heisenberg Hamiltonian and write $\mathcal{H}$ as

$$\mathcal{H} = E_0 + \mathcal{H}_0 + \mathcal{H}_1. \quad (10.64)$$

Here, E_0 is the ground state energy that we obtained by assuming that the ground state wave function was $|0\rangle = \prod_i |S, S_z = S\rangle_i$.

$$E_0 = -2S^2 \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \mathcal{J}_{ij} - Ng\mu_B B_0 \\ = -z\mathcal{J}NS^2 - g\mu_B B_0 NS. \quad (10.65)$$

$\mathcal{H}_0$ is the part of the Hamiltonian that is quadratic in the spin deviation creation and annihilation operators.

$$\mathcal{H}_0 = (g\mu_B B_0 + 2z\mathcal{J}S) \sum_i \hat{n}_i - 2\mathcal{J}S \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} (a_i a_j^\dagger + a_i^\dagger a_j). \quad (10.66)$$

$\mathcal{H}_1$ includes all higher terms. To fourth order in $a^\dagger$'s and a 's the expression for $\mathcal{H}_1$ is given explicitly by

$$\mathcal{H}_1 = -2\mathcal{J} \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \left(\hat{n}_i \hat{n}_j - \frac{1}{4} \hat{n}_i a_i a_j^\dagger - \frac{1}{4} a_i a_j^\dagger \hat{n}_j - \frac{1}{4} \hat{n}_j a_i^\dagger a_j - \frac{1}{4} a_i^\dagger a_j \hat{n}_i \right) \\ + \text{higher order terms.} \quad (10.67)$$

Let us concentrate on $\mathcal{H}_0$. It is apparent that $a_i^\dagger a_j$ transfers a spin deviation from the j^{th} atom to the i^{th} atom. Thus, a state with a spin deviation on the j^{th} atom is not an eigenstate of $\mathcal{H}$. This problem is similar to that which we encountered in studying lattice vibrations. By this, we mean that spin deviations on neighboring sites are coupled together in the same way that atomic displacements of neighboring atoms are coupled in lattice dynamics. As we did in studying phonons, we will introduce new variables that we call *magnon*

290 10 Magnetic Ordering and Spin Waves

or *spin wave* variables defined as follows:

$$b_{\mathbf{k}} = N^{-1/2} \sum_j e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}_j} a_j \quad \text{and} \quad b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger = N^{-1/2} \sum_j e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}_j} a_j^\dagger. \quad (10.68)$$

As usual the inverse can be written

$$a_j = N^{-1/2} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}_j} b_{\mathbf{k}} \quad \text{and} \quad a_j^\dagger = N^{-1/2} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}_j} b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger. \quad (10.69)$$

It is straightforward (but left as an exercise) to show, because $[a_j, a_{j'}] = [a_j^\dagger, a_{j'}^\dagger] = 0$ and $[a_j, a_{j'}^\dagger] = \delta_{jj'}$, that

$$[b_{\mathbf{k}}, b_{\mathbf{k}'}] = [b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger, b_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger] = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad [b_{\mathbf{k}}, b_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger] = \delta_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'}. \quad (10.70)$$

Substitute into $\mathcal{H}_0$ the expression for spin deviation operators in terms of the magnon operators; this gives

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{H}_0 = & (g\mu_B B_0 + 2z\mathcal{J}S) \sum_j N^{-1} \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} e^{i(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}') \cdot \mathbf{x}_j} b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger b_{\mathbf{k}'} \\ & - 2\mathcal{J}S N^{-1} \sum_{\langle j,l \rangle} \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} \left(e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}_l - i\mathbf{k}' \cdot \mathbf{x}_j} b_{\mathbf{k}'} b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger + e^{i\mathbf{k}' \cdot \mathbf{x}_j - i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}_l} b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger b_{\mathbf{k}'} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (10.71)$$

We introduce $\boldsymbol{\delta}$, one of the nearest neighbor vectors connecting neighboring sites and write $\mathbf{x}_l = \mathbf{x}_j + \boldsymbol{\delta}$ in the summation $\sum_{\langle j,l \rangle}$, so that it becomes $\frac{1}{2} \sum_j \sum_{\boldsymbol{\delta}} = \frac{1}{2} zN$. We also make use of the fact that

$$\sum_j e^{i(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}') \cdot \mathbf{x}_j} = \delta_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} N. \quad (10.72)$$

Then, $\mathcal{H}_0$ can be expressed as

$$\mathcal{H}_0 = (g\mu_B B_0 + 2z\mathcal{J}S) \sum_{\mathbf{k}} b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger b_{\mathbf{k}} - \mathcal{J}S \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \sum_{\boldsymbol{\delta}} \left(e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \boldsymbol{\delta}} b_{\mathbf{k}} b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger + e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \boldsymbol{\delta}} b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger b_{\mathbf{k}} \right). \quad (10.73)$$

We now define

$$\gamma_{\mathbf{k}} = z^{-1} \sum_{\boldsymbol{\delta}} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \boldsymbol{\delta}}. \quad (10.74)$$

If there is a center of symmetry about each atom then $\gamma_{-\mathbf{k}} = \gamma_{\mathbf{k}}$. Further, since $\sum_{\mathbf{k}} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{R}} = 0$ unless $\mathbf{R} = 0$, it is apparent that $\sum_{\mathbf{k}} \gamma_{\mathbf{k}} = 0$. Using these results in our expression for $\mathcal{H}_0$ gives

$$\mathcal{H}_0 = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}} b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger b_{\mathbf{k}}, \quad (10.75)$$

where

$$\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}} = 2z\mathcal{J}S(1 - \gamma_{\mathbf{k}}) + g\mu_B B_0. \quad (10.76)$$

10.6 Spin Waves in Ferromagnet 291

Thus, if we neglect $\mathcal{H}_1$, we have for the Hamiltonian of a state containing 271
magnons 272

$$\mathcal{H} = -(g\mu_B B_0 N S + z\mathcal{J}NS^2) + \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}} b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger b_{\mathbf{k}}. \quad (10.77) \quad 273$$

This tells us that the elementary excitations are waves (remember $b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger =$ 274
 $N^{-1/2} \sum_j e^{-i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{x}_j} a_j^\dagger$ is a linear combination of spin deviations shared equally 275
in amplitude by all sites) of energy $\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}}$. Provided that we stay at low enough 276
temperature so that $\langle \hat{n}_j \rangle \ll S$, this approximation is rather good. At higher 277
temperatures, where many spin waves are excited, the higher terms (spin 278
wave–spin wave interactions) become important. 279

10.6.2 Dispersion Relation for Magnons 280

For long wave lengths $|\mathbf{k}\cdot\boldsymbol{\delta}| \ll 1$. In this region, we can expand $e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\boldsymbol{\delta}}$ in powers 281
of $\mathbf{k}$ to get 282

$$\gamma_{\mathbf{k}} = z^{-1} \sum_{\boldsymbol{\delta}} \left(1 + i\mathbf{k}\cdot\boldsymbol{\delta} - \frac{(\mathbf{k}\cdot\boldsymbol{\delta})^2}{2} + \dots \right). \quad (10.78)$$

Using $\sum_{\boldsymbol{\delta}} 1 = z$, and $\sum_{\boldsymbol{\delta}} \boldsymbol{\delta} = 0$ gives 283

$$\gamma_{\mathbf{k}} \approx 1 - \frac{1}{2z} \sum_{\boldsymbol{\delta}} (\mathbf{k}\cdot\boldsymbol{\delta})^2. \quad (10.79)$$

Thus, $z(1 - \gamma_{\mathbf{k}}) \simeq \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\boldsymbol{\delta}} (\mathbf{k}\cdot\boldsymbol{\delta})^2$ and in this limit we have 284

$$\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}} = g\mu_B B_0 + \mathcal{J}S \sum_{\boldsymbol{\delta}} (\mathbf{k}\cdot\boldsymbol{\delta})^2. \quad (10.80)$$

For a simple cubic lattice $|\boldsymbol{\delta}| = a$ and $\sum_{\boldsymbol{\delta}} (\mathbf{k}\cdot\boldsymbol{\delta})^2 = 2k^2 a^2$ giving 285

$$\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}} = g\mu_B B_0 + 2\mathcal{J}S a^2 k^2. \quad (10.81) \quad 286$$

In a simple cubic lattice, the magnon energy is of the same form as the energy 287
of a free particle in a constant potential $\varepsilon = V_0 + \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m^*}$ where $V_0 = g\mu_B B_0$ and 288
 $\frac{1}{m^*} = \frac{4\mathcal{J}S a^2}{\hbar^2}$. 289

The dispersion relation we have been considering is appropriate for a Bra- 290
vais lattice. In reciprocal space the $\mathbf{k}$ values will, as is usual in crystalline 291
materials, be restricted to the first Brillouin zone. For a lattice with more 292
than one spin per unit cell, *optical magnons* as well as *acoustic magnons* are 293
found, as is shown in Fig. 10.11. 294

10.6.3 Magnon–Magnon Interactions 295

The terms in $\mathcal{H}_1$ that we have omitted involve more than two spin deviation 296
creation and annihilation operators. These terms are responsible for magnon– 297
magnon scattering just as cubic and quartic anharmonic terms are responsible 298

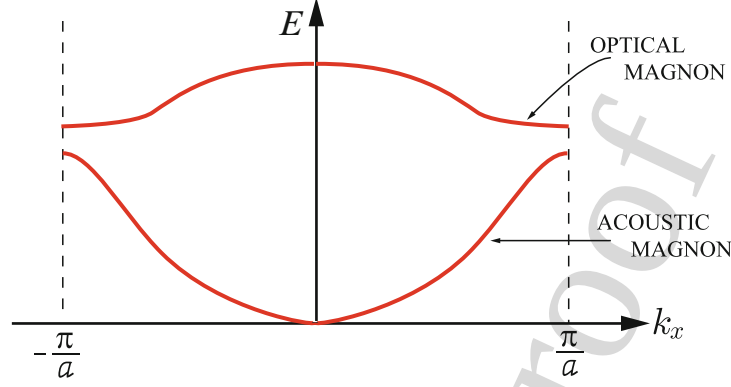


Fig. 10.11. Magnon dispersion curves

for phonon–phonon scattering. Freeman J. Dyson studied the leading terms 299
associated with magnon–magnon scattering.¹ Rigorous treatment of magnon– 300
magnon scattering is mathematically difficult. 301

10.6.4 Magnon Heat Capacity

If the external magnetic field is zero and if magnon–magnon interactions are 303
neglected, then we can write the magnon frequency as $\omega_{\mathbf{k}} = Dk^2$ for small 304
values of k . Here $D = 2\mathcal{J}Sa^2$. The internal energy per unit volume associated 305
with these excitations is given by (we put $\hbar = 1$ for convenience) 306

$$U = \frac{1}{V} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \omega_{\mathbf{k}} \langle n_{\mathbf{k}} \rangle \quad (10.82)$$

where $\langle n_{\mathbf{k}} \rangle = \frac{1}{e^{\omega_{\mathbf{k}}/\Theta} - 1}$ is the Bose–Einstein distribution function since mag- 307
nons are Bosons. Converting the sum to an integral over $\mathbf{k}$ gives 308

$$U = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \int_{\text{BZ}} d^3k \frac{Dk^2}{e^{Dk^2/\Theta} - 1}. \quad (10.83)$$

Let $Dk^2 = \Theta x^2$; then U becomes 309

$$U = \frac{D}{2\pi^2} \left(\frac{\Theta}{D} \right)^{5/2} \int dx \frac{x^4}{e^{x^2} - 1}. \quad (10.84)$$

Here, we have used $d^3k = 4\pi k^2 dk$. Let $x^2 = y$ and set the upper limit at 310
 $y_M = \left(\frac{Dk_M}{\Theta} \right)^2$. Then, we find 311

$$U = \frac{\Theta^{5/2}}{4\pi^2 D^{3/2}} \int_0^{y_M} dy \frac{y^{3/2}}{e^y - 1}. \quad (10.85)$$

¹ F.J. Dyson, Phys. Rev. **102**, 1217 (1956).

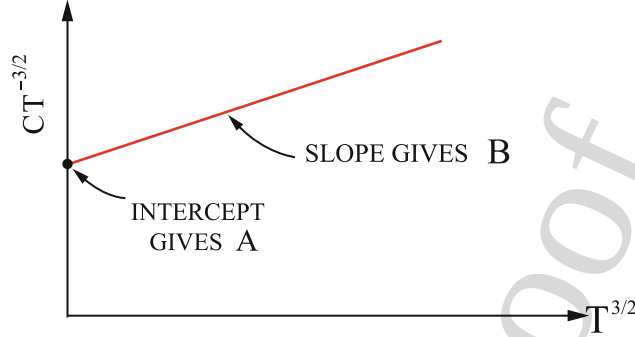


Fig. 10.12. Specific heat of an insulating ferromagnet

For very low temperatures $\Theta \ll \omega_M$ and no serious error is made by replacing y_M by ∞ . Then, the integral becomes

$$\int_0^\infty dy \frac{y^{3/2}}{e^y - 1} = \Gamma\left(\frac{5}{2}\right) \zeta\left(\frac{5}{2}, 1\right). \quad (10.86)$$

Here, $\Gamma(x)$ and $\zeta(a, b)$ are the Γ function and Riemann zeta function, respectively: $\Gamma(\frac{5}{2}) = \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \Gamma(\frac{1}{2}) = \frac{3}{4} \sqrt{\pi}$ and $\zeta(\frac{5}{2}, 1) \approx 1.341$. Thus for U we obtain

$$U \simeq \frac{0.45}{\pi^2} \frac{\Theta^{5/2}}{D^{3/2}} \quad (10.87)$$

and for the specific heat due to magnons

$$C = \frac{\partial U}{\partial T} = 0.113 k_B \left(\frac{\Theta}{D}\right)^{3/2} \quad (10.88)$$

For an insulating ferromagnet the specific heat contains contributions due to phonons and due to magnons. At low temperatures we have

$$C = AT^{3/2} + BT^3 \quad (10.89)$$

Plotting $CT^{-3/2}$ as a function of $T^{3/2}$ at low temperature should give a straight line. (See, for example, Fig. 10.12.) For the ideal Heisenberg ferromagnet YIG (yttrium iron garnet) D has a value approximately $0.8 \text{ erg} \cdot \text{cm}^2$ implying an effective mass $m^* \simeq 6 m_e$.

10.6.5 Magnetization

The thermal average of the magnetization at a temperature T is referred to as the *spontaneous magnetization* at temperature T . It is given by

$$M_s = \frac{g\mu_B}{V} \left(NS - \left\langle \sum_{\mathbf{k}} b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger b_{\mathbf{k}} \right\rangle \right). \quad (10.90)$$

294 10 Magnetic Ordering and Spin Waves

The first term is just the zero temperature value where $S_z = NS$ and $g\mu_B = 2\mu$. The second term results from the presence of spin deviations $\hat{n}_j$. Remember that

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_j \hat{n}_j &= \sum_j a_j^\dagger a_j = \sum_j \frac{1}{N} \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} e^{i(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}')\cdot\mathbf{x}_j} b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger b_{\mathbf{k}'} \\ &= \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger b_{\mathbf{k}'} \delta_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger b_{\mathbf{k}}.\end{aligned}\quad (10.91)$$

We can define

$$\Delta M = M_s(0) - M_s(T) = \frac{2\mu}{V} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \langle n_{\mathbf{k}} \rangle, \quad (10.92)$$

where $\langle n_{\mathbf{k}} \rangle = \frac{1}{e^{Dk^2/\Theta} - 1}$. Replacing the sum over the wave number k by an integral in the usual way gives

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta M &= \frac{2\mu}{(2\pi)^3} 4\pi \int \frac{dk k^2}{e^{Dk^2/\Theta} - 1} \\ &= \frac{\mu}{2\pi^2} \left(\frac{\Theta}{D} \right)^{3/2} \int_0^{y_M} \frac{dy y^{1/2}}{e^y - 1}.\end{aligned}\quad (10.92)$$

Again if $\Theta \ll \hbar\omega_M$, y_M can be replaced by ∞ . Then the definite integral has the value $\Gamma(\frac{3}{2})\zeta(\frac{3}{2}, 1)$, and we obtain for ΔM

$$\Delta M = 0.117\mu \left(\frac{\Theta}{D} \right)^{3/2} = 0.117\mu \left(\frac{\Theta}{2a^2 S \mathcal{J}} \right)^{3/2}. \quad (10.93)$$

For $M_s(T)$ we can write

$$M_s(T) = \frac{N}{V} 2\mu S - 0.117 \frac{\mu}{a^3} \left(\frac{\Theta}{2S \mathcal{J}} \right)^{3/2}. \quad (10.94)$$

For simple cubic, bcc, and fcc lattices, $\frac{N}{V}$ has the values $1/a^3$, $2/a^3$, and $4/a^3$, respectively. Thus, we can write

$$M_s(T) \simeq \frac{2\mu S}{a^3} \left[\alpha - 0.02 \frac{\Theta^{3/2}}{S^{5/2} \mathcal{J}^{3/2}} \right], \quad (10.95)$$

where $\alpha = 1, 2, 4$ for simple cubic, bcc, and fcc lattices, respectively. The $T^{3/2}$ dependence of the magnetization is a well-known result associated with the presence of noninteracting spin waves. Higher order terms in $\frac{\Theta}{\mathcal{J}}$ are obtained if the full expression for $\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}$ is used instead of just the long wave length expansion (correct up to k^2 term) and the k -integral is performed over the first Brillouin zone and not integrated to infinity. The first nonideal magnon term, resulting from magnon-magnon interactions, is a term of order $(\frac{\Theta}{\mathcal{J}})^4$. F.J. Dyson obtained this term correctly in a classic paper in the mid 1950s.²

² F.J. Dyson, Phys. Rev **102**, 1230 (1956).

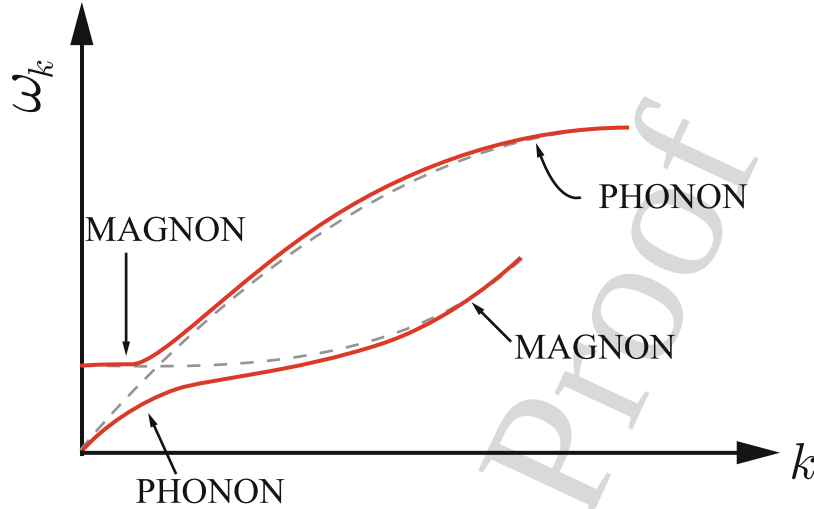


Fig. 10.13. Coupling of magnons-phonons

10.6.6 Experiments Revealing Magnons

348

Among the many experiments which demonstrate the existence of magnons, a few important ones are as follows:

1. The existence of side bands in ferromagnetic resonances. The uniform precession mode in a ferromagnetic resonance experiment excites a $k = 0$ spin wave. In a ferromagnetic film, it is possible to couple to modes with wave length λ satisfying $\frac{1}{2}\lambda = \frac{d}{n}$ where d is the thickness of the film. This gives resonances at magnon wave numbers $k_n = \frac{n\pi}{d}$.
2. The existence of inelastic neutron scattering peaks associated with magnons.
3. The coupling of magnons to phonons in ferromagnetic crystals (see Fig. 10.13).

10.6.7 Stability

360

We started with a Heisenberg Hamiltonian $\mathcal{H} = -\mathcal{J} \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \hat{\mathbf{S}}_i \cdot \hat{\mathbf{S}}_j$. In the ferromagnetic ground state the spins are aligned. However, the direction of the resulting magnetization is arbitrary (since $\mathcal{H}$ has complete rotational symmetry) so that the ground state is degenerate. If one selects a certain direction for $\mathbf{M}$ as the starting point of magnon theory, the system is found to be unstable. Infinitesimal amount of thermal energy excites a very large number of spin waves (remembering that when $B_0 = 0$ the $k = 0$ spin waves have zero energy). The difficulty of having an unstable ground state with $\mathbf{M}$ in a particular direction is removed by removing the degeneracy caused by spherical symmetry of the Hamiltonian. This is accomplished by either

296 10 Magnetic Ordering and Spin Waves

1. Applying a field $\mathbf{B}_0$ in a particular direction or 371
2. Introducing an effective anisotropy field B_A . 372

For $\Theta \ll \mu_B |\mathbf{B}|$ where $\mathbf{B}$ is either $\mathbf{B}_0$ or $\mathbf{B}_A$, only small deviations from the 373
ground state occur. The anisotropy field is a mathematical convenience which 374
accounts for anisotropic interaction in real crystals. It is not so important in 375
ferromagnets, but it is very important in antiferromagnets 376

10.7 Spin Waves in Antiferromagnets 377

The Heisenberg Hamiltonian of an antiferromagnet has $\mathcal{J} > 0$ so that 378

$$\mathcal{H} = +2\mathcal{J} \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \hat{\mathbf{S}}_i \cdot \hat{\mathbf{S}}_j - g\mu_B \mathbf{B}_0 \cdot \sum_i \hat{\mathbf{S}}_i, \quad (10.96)$$

where the sum is over all possible distinct nearest neighbor pairs. The state 379
in which all N spins on sublattice 1 are $\uparrow$ and all N spins on sublattice 2 are 380
 $\downarrow$ is a highly degenerate state because the direction for $\uparrow$ (or $\downarrow$) is completely 381
arbitrary. This degeneracy is not removed by introducing an external field 382
 $\mathbf{B}_0$. For $|\mathbf{B}_0|$ not too large, the spins align themselves antiferromagnetically 383
in the plane perpendicular to $\mathbf{B}_0$. However, the direction of a given sublattice 384
magnetization is still arbitrary in that plane. 385

Lack of stability can be overcome by introducing an anisotropy field B_A 386
with the following properties: 387

1. $\mathbf{B}_A$ is in the $+z$ -direction at sites in sublattice 1. 388
2. $\mathbf{B}_A$ is in the $-z$ -direction at sites in sublattice 2. 389
3. $\mu_B B_A$ is not too small (compared to $\frac{1}{N}\mathcal{J}$). 390

Then, the Heisenberg Hamiltonian for an antiferromagnet in the presence of 391
an applied field $\mathbf{B}_0 = B_0 \hat{z}$ and an anisotropy field $\mathbf{B}_A$ can be written 392

$$\mathcal{H} = +\mathcal{J} \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \hat{\mathbf{S}}_i \cdot \hat{\mathbf{S}}_j - g\mu_B (B_A + B_0) \sum_{l \in a} \hat{S}_{lz}^a + g\mu_B (B_A - B_0) \sum_{p \in b} \hat{S}_{pz}^b. \quad (10.97) \quad 393$$

The superscripts a and b refer to the two sublattices. In the limit where 394
 $B_A \rightarrow \infty$ while $\mathcal{J} \rightarrow 0$ and $B_0 \rightarrow 0$, the ground state will have 395

$$\begin{aligned} S_{lz}^a &= S & \text{for all } l \in a \\ S_{pz}^b &= -S & \text{for all } p \in b \end{aligned} \quad (10.98)$$

This state is not true ground state of the system when B_A and $\mathcal{J}$ are both 396
finite. The spin wave theory of an antiferromagnet can be carried out in anal- 397
ogy with the treatment for the ferromagnet. We introduce spin deviations 398
from the “ $B_A \rightarrow \infty$ ground state” by writing 399

$$\begin{aligned} S_{lz}^a &= S - a_l^\dagger a_l & \text{for all } l \in a \\ S_{pz}^b &= -(S - b_p^\dagger b_p) & \text{for all } p \in b, \end{aligned} \quad (10.99)$$

where the spin deviation operators satisfy commutation relations $[a_l, a_l^\dagger] = 1$ 400
and $[b_p, b_p^\dagger] = 1$. Once again it is easy to show that 401

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{S}_l^{a+} &= (2S - \hat{n}_l)^{1/2} a_l; & \hat{S}_l^{a-} &= a_l^\dagger (2S - \hat{n}_l)^{1/2} \\ \hat{S}_p^{b+} &= b_p^\dagger (2S - \hat{m}_p)^{1/2}; & \hat{S}_p^{b-} &= (2S - \hat{m}_p)^{1/2} b_p\end{aligned}\quad (10.100)$$

Here, $\hat{n}_l = a_l^\dagger a_l$ and $\hat{m}_p = b_p^\dagger b_p$. In spin wave theory, we assume $\langle \hat{n}_l \rangle \ll 2S$ 402
and $\langle \hat{m}_p \rangle \ll 2S$ and expand the square roots keeping only linear terms in $\hat{n}_l$ 403
and $\hat{m}_p$. The Hamiltonian can then be written 404

$$\mathcal{H} = E_0 + \mathcal{H}_0 + \mathcal{H}_1. \quad (10.101)$$

Here, E_0 is the ground state energy given by 405

$$E_0 = -2Nz\mathcal{J}S^2 - 2g\mu_B B_A N S, \quad (10.102)$$

and $\mathcal{H}_0$ is the part of the Hamiltonian that is quadratic in the spin deviation 406
creation and annihilation operators 407

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{H}_0 &= 2\mathcal{J}S \sum'_{\langle l,p \rangle} (a_l b_p + a_l^\dagger b_p^\dagger + \hat{n}_l + \hat{m}_p) \\ &+ g\mu_B (B_A + B_0) \sum_{l \in a} \hat{n}_l + g\mu_B (B_A - B_0) \sum_{p \in b} \hat{m}_p.\end{aligned}\quad (10.103)$$

The sum of products of a 's and b 's is over nearest neighbor pairs. $\mathcal{H}_1$ is a sum 408
of an infinite number of terms each containing at least four a or b operators 409
or their Hermitian conjugates. We can again introduce spin wave variables 410

$$\begin{aligned}c_{\mathbf{k}} &= N^{-1/2} \sum_l e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}_l} a_l, & c_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger &= N^{-1/2} \sum_l e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}_l} a_l^\dagger, \\ d_{\mathbf{k}} &= N^{-1/2} \sum_p e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}_p} b_p, & d_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger &= N^{-1/2} \sum_p e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}_p} b_p^\dagger.\end{aligned}\quad (10.104)$$

In terms of the spin wave variables we can rewrite $\mathcal{H}_0$ as 411

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{H}_0 &= 2z\mathcal{J}S \sum_{\mathbf{k}} (\gamma_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger d_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger + \gamma_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}} d_{\mathbf{k}} + c_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}} + d_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger d_{\mathbf{k}}) \\ &+ g\mu_B (B_A + B_0) \sum_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}} + g\mu_B (B_A - B_0) \sum_{\mathbf{k}} d_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger d_{\mathbf{k}}.\end{aligned}\quad (10.105)$$

Here, we have introduced 412

$$\gamma_{\mathbf{k}} = z^{-1} \sum_{\delta} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \delta} = \gamma_{-\mathbf{k}}$$

once again. We are going to forget all about $\mathcal{H}_1$, and consider for the moment 413
that the entire Hamiltonian is given by $\mathcal{H}_0 + E_0$. $\mathcal{H}_0$ is still not in a trivial 414
form. We can easily put it into normal form as follows: 415

1. Define new operators $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}$ and $\beta_{\mathbf{k}}$ 416

$$\alpha_{\mathbf{k}} = u_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}} - v_{\mathbf{k}} d_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger; \quad \beta_{\mathbf{k}} = u_{\mathbf{k}} d_{\mathbf{k}} - v_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger, \quad (10.106)$$

where $u_{\mathbf{k}}$ and $v_{\mathbf{k}}$ are real and satisfy $u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 - v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 = 1$. 417

298 10 Magnetic Ordering and Spin Waves

2. Solve these equations (and their Hermitian conjugates) for the c 's and d 's in terms of α and β . We can write

$$c_{\mathbf{k}} = u_{\mathbf{k}}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}} + v_{\mathbf{k}}\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} ; \quad c_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} = u_{\mathbf{k}}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} + v_{\mathbf{k}}\beta_{\mathbf{k}} \quad (10.107)$$

and

$$d_{\mathbf{k}} = v_{\mathbf{k}}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} + u_{\mathbf{k}}\beta_{\mathbf{k}} ; \quad d_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} = v_{\mathbf{k}}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}} + u_{\mathbf{k}}\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}. \quad (10.108)$$

3. Substitute (10.107) and (10.108) in $\mathcal{H}_0$ to have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{H}_0 = 2zS\mathcal{J} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \Big\{ & \gamma_{\mathbf{k}} \left[u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}}(\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}} + \beta_{\mathbf{k}}\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} + \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} + \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}\beta_{\mathbf{k}}) \right. \\ & + u_{\mathbf{k}}^2(\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} + \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}\beta_{\mathbf{k}}) + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2(\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} + \beta_{\mathbf{k}}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}) \\ & + u_{\mathbf{k}}^2\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}} + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2\beta_{\mathbf{k}}\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} + u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}}(\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} + \beta_{\mathbf{k}}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}) \\ & + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} + u_{\mathbf{k}}^2\beta_{\mathbf{k}}\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} + u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}}(\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}\beta_{\mathbf{k}} + \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}) \Big\} \\ & + g\mu_{\text{B}}(B_{\text{A}} + B_0) \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \left[u_{\mathbf{k}}^2\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}} + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2\beta_{\mathbf{k}}\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} + u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}}(\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} + \beta_{\mathbf{k}}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}) \right] \\ & + g\mu_{\text{B}}(B_{\text{A}} - B_0) \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \left[v_{\mathbf{k}}^2\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} + u_{\mathbf{k}}^2\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}\beta_{\mathbf{k}} + u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}}(\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}\beta_{\mathbf{k}} + \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}) \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (10.109)$$

We can regroup these terms as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{H}_0 = 2 \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \Big[& 2zS\mathcal{J} (\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}} + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2) + g\mu_{\text{B}}B_{\text{A}}v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \Big] \\ & + \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \left[2zS\mathcal{J} (2\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}} + u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2) + g\mu_{\text{B}}B_{\text{A}}(u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2) + g\mu_{\text{B}}B_0 \right] \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}} \\ & + \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \left[2zS\mathcal{J} (2\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}} + u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2) + g\mu_{\text{B}}B_{\text{A}}(u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2) - g\mu_{\text{B}}B_0 \right] \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}\beta_{\mathbf{k}} \\ & + \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \left\{ 2zS\mathcal{J} [\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}(u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2) + 2u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}}] + 2g\mu_{\text{B}}B_{\text{A}}u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}} \right\} (\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} + \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}\beta_{\mathbf{k}}). \end{aligned} \quad (10.110)$$

4. We put the Hamiltonian in diagonal form by requiring the coefficient of the last term to vanish. We define ω_{e} and ω_{A} by

$$\omega_{\text{e}} = 2\mathcal{J}zS \quad \text{and} \quad \omega_{\text{A}} = g\mu_{\text{B}}B_{\text{A}}. \quad (10.111)$$

We must solve

$$\omega_{\text{e}} [\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}(u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2) + 2u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}}] + 2\omega_{\text{A}}u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}} = 0, \quad (10.112)$$

remembering that $u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 = 1 + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2$. Then, (10.112) reduces to

$$\frac{1 + 2v_{\mathbf{k}}^2}{2v_{\mathbf{k}}\sqrt{1 + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2}} = -\frac{1}{\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}} \left(\frac{\omega_{\text{A}}}{\omega_{\text{e}}} + 1 \right).$$

Solving for $v_{\mathbf{k}}^2$ gives

$$v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 = -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\omega_{\text{A}} + \omega_{\text{e}}}{\sqrt{(\omega_{\text{A}} + \omega_{\text{e}})^2 - \gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^2\omega_{\text{e}}^2}}. \quad (10.113)$$

Thus, we have

$$u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\omega_{\text{A}} + \omega_{\text{e}}}{\sqrt{(\omega_{\text{A}} + \omega_{\text{e}})^2 - \gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^2\omega_{\text{e}}^2}}, \quad (10.114)$$

and since

$$u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}} = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}\omega_e}{\omega_A + \omega_e} (u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2),$$

we have

$$u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}} = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}\omega_e}{\sqrt{(\omega_A + \omega_e)^2 - \gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^2\omega_e^2}}. \quad (10.115)$$

Now, let us write the Hamiltonian in a diagonal form

$$\mathcal{H}_0 = C + \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \left[(\omega_{\mathbf{k}} + g\mu_B B_0) \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} + (\omega_{\mathbf{k}} - g\mu_B B_0) \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}} \right] \quad (10.116)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \omega_{\mathbf{k}} &= 2zS\mathcal{J} (2\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}} + u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2) + g\mu_B B_A (u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2) \\ &= \sqrt{(\omega_A + \omega_e)^2 - \gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^2\omega_e^2}. \end{aligned} \quad (10.117)$$

The constant C is given by

$$\begin{aligned} C &= 2 \sum_{\mathbf{k}} [2zS\mathcal{J} (\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}} + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2) + g\mu_B B_A v_{\mathbf{k}}^2] \\ &= \sum_{\mathbf{k}} [\omega_{\mathbf{k}} - (\omega_A + \omega_e)]. \end{aligned} \quad (10.118)$$

Thus, to this order of approximation we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{H} &= -2Nz\mathcal{J}S^2 - 2g\mu_B B_A NS + \sum_{\mathbf{k}} [\omega_{\mathbf{k}} - (\omega_A + \omega_e)] \\ &\quad + \sum_{\mathbf{k}} (\omega_{\mathbf{k}} + \omega_B) \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} + \sum_{\mathbf{k}} (\omega_{\mathbf{k}} - \omega_B) \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}}, \end{aligned} \quad (10.119)$$

where

$$\omega_B = g\mu_B B_0. \quad (10.120)$$

10.7.1 Ground State Energy

In the ground state

$$\langle 0 | \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} | 0 \rangle = \langle 0 | \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}} | 0 \rangle = 0.$$

Thus the ground state energy is given by

$$E_{\text{GS}} = -2Nz\mathcal{J}S^2 - 2g\mu_B B_A NS + \sum_{\mathbf{k}} [\omega_{\mathbf{k}} - (\omega_A + \omega_e)]. \quad (10.121)$$

Let us consider the case $B_0 = B_A = 0$; thus $\omega_A \rightarrow 0$ and $\omega_{\mathbf{k}} \rightarrow \omega_e(1 - \gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^2)^{1/2}$. But ω_e is simply $2\mathcal{J}zS$. Hence for $B_0 = B_A = 0$ the ground state energy is given by

$$E_{\text{GS}} = -2Nz\mathcal{J}S^2 - N\omega_e + \omega_e \sum_{\mathbf{k}} (1 - \gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^2)^{1/2}. \quad (10.122)$$

300 10 Magnetic Ordering and Spin Waves

By using $\omega_e = 2\mathcal{J}zS$, this can be rewritten by

$$E_{GS} = -2Nz\mathcal{J}S \left[S + 1 - N^{-1} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \sqrt{1 - \gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^2} \right]. \quad (10.123)$$

Let us define $\beta = z \left(1 - N^{-1} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \sqrt{1 - \gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^2} \right)$; then E_{GS} can be written as

$$E_{GS} = -2Nz\mathcal{J}S(S + z^{-1}\beta). \quad (10.124)$$

For a simple cubic lattice $\beta \simeq 0.58$. For other crystal structures β has slightly different values.

10.7.2 Zero Point Sublattice Magnetization

For very large anisotropy field B_A , the magnetization of sublattice a is $g\mu_B NS$ while that of sublattice b is equal in magnitude and opposite in direction. When $B_A \rightarrow 0$, the resulting antiferromagnetic state will have a sublattice magnetization that differs from the value of $B_A \rightarrow \infty$. Then magnetization is given by

$$M(T) = \frac{g\mu_B}{V} \langle 0 | \hat{S}_z | 0 \rangle, \quad (10.125)$$

where the total spin operator $\hat{S}_z$ is given, for sublattice a, by

$$\hat{S}_z = \sum_{l \in a} S_{lz}^a = NS - \sum_l a_l^\dagger a_l. \quad (10.126)$$

But $\sum_l a_l^\dagger a_l = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}}$, and the $c_{\mathbf{k}}$ and $c_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger$ can be written in terms of the operators $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}$, $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger$, $\beta_{\mathbf{k}}$, and $\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger$ to get

$$\hat{S}_z = NS - \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \left(u_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger + v_{\mathbf{k}} \beta_{\mathbf{k}} \right) \left(u_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} + v_{\mathbf{k}} \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \right). \quad (10.127)$$

Multiplying out the product appearing in the sum we can write

$$\Delta \hat{S} \equiv NS - \hat{S}_z = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \left\{ v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}} + u_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}} \left(\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger + \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} \beta_{\mathbf{k}} \right) \right\}. \quad (10.128)$$

At zero temperature the ground state $|0\rangle$ contains no excitations so that $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}|0\rangle = \beta_{\mathbf{k}}|0\rangle = 0$. Thus, at $T = 0$, $\Delta S(T) = \langle 0 | \Delta \hat{S} | 0 \rangle$ has a value ΔS_0 given by

$$\Delta S_0 = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \left[1 - \frac{\omega_A + \omega_e}{\sqrt{(\omega_A + \omega_e)^2 - \gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \omega_e^2}} \right]. \quad (10.129)$$

Let us put $\omega_A = 0$ corresponding to $B_A \rightarrow 0$. This gives 461

$$\Delta S_0 = -\frac{N}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^2}}. \quad (10.130)$$

If we define $\beta' = zN^{-1} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \left(1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^2}}\right)$, then we have 462

$$\Delta S_0 = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{\beta' N}{z}. \quad (10.131) \quad 463$$

For a simple cubic lattice $z = 6$ and β' has the value 0.94 giving for ΔS_0 the 464
value $-0.078N$. 465

10.7.3 Finite Temperature Sublattice Magnetization 466

At a finite temperature it is apparent from Eqs.(10.128) and (10.129) that 467

$$\Delta S(T) = \Delta S_0 + \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \left[u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \langle \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} \rangle + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \langle \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}} \rangle \right]. \quad (10.132)$$

But the excitations described by the creation operators $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger$ and $\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger$ have 468
energies $\omega_{\mathbf{k}} \pm \omega_B$ (the sign $-$ goes with $\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger$), so that 469

$$\langle \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} \rangle = \frac{1}{e^{\beta(\omega_{\mathbf{k}} + \omega_B)} - 1} \quad \text{and} \quad \langle \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}} \rangle = \frac{1}{e^{\beta(\omega_{\mathbf{k}} - \omega_B)} - 1}. \quad (10.133)$$

In these equations $\beta = \frac{1}{k_B T}$, $\omega_B = 2\mu_B B_0$, and $\omega_{\mathbf{k}} = \sqrt{(\omega_A + \omega_e)^2 - \gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \omega_e^2}$. 470
At low temperature only very low frequency or small wave number modes will 471
be excited. Remember that 472

$$\gamma_{\mathbf{k}} = z^{-1} \sum_{\boldsymbol{\delta}} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \boldsymbol{\delta}}$$

where $\boldsymbol{\delta}$ indicates the nearest neighbors of the atom at the origin. To order 473
 k^2 for a simple cubic lattice 474

$$\gamma_{\mathbf{k}} = z^{-1} \sum_{\boldsymbol{\delta}} \left(1 - \frac{(\mathbf{k} \cdot \boldsymbol{\delta})^2}{2} \right) = 1 - \frac{k^2 a^2}{z}.$$

Thus, the excitation energies $\varepsilon_k \equiv \omega_{\mathbf{k}} \pm \omega_B$ are approximated, in the long 475
wave length limit ($k^2 a^2 \ll \frac{z\omega_A}{\omega_e} \ll 1$), by 476

$$\begin{aligned} \varepsilon_k &\simeq [\omega_A(\omega_A + 2\omega_e)]^{1/2} \sqrt{1 + \frac{\omega_e^2}{\omega_A(2\omega_e + \omega_A)} \frac{k^2 a^2}{z}} \pm \omega_B \\ &\approx [\omega_A(\omega_A + 2\omega_e)]^{1/2} + \frac{1}{2z} \frac{\omega_e^2}{\sqrt{\omega_A(\omega_A + 2\omega_e)}} k^2 a^2 \pm \omega_B. \end{aligned} \quad (10.134)$$

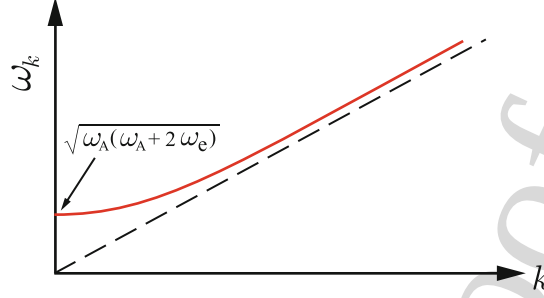


Fig. 10.14. Antiferromagnetic spin wave excitation energies in the long wave length limit

Thus, the *uniform mode* of antiferromagnetic resonance is given, in the presence of an applied field, by

$$\varepsilon_{k=0} = \sqrt{\omega_A(\omega_A + 2\omega_e)} \pm \omega_B. \quad (10.135)$$

In the long wave length limit, but in the region of $1 \gg k^2 a^2 \gg z \frac{\omega_A}{\omega_e} \left(2 + \frac{\omega_A}{\omega_e}\right)$, we expect the behavior given by

$$\varepsilon_k \simeq \frac{\omega_e k a}{\sqrt{z}} \pm \omega_B \approx 2\sqrt{z} \mathcal{J} S a k \pm \omega_B. \quad (10.136)$$

Figure 10.14 shows the excitation energies ω_k as a function of wave number k in the long wave length limit.

Let us make an approximation like the Debye approximation of lattice dynamics in the absence of an applied field. Replace the first Brillouin zone by a sphere of radius k_M , where

$$\frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{4}{3} \pi k_M^3 = \frac{N}{V}$$

to have

$$\varepsilon_k \simeq \frac{\Theta_N}{k_M} k. \quad (10.137)$$

Here Θ_N is the value of ε_k at $k = k_M$. With a use of this approximation for ε_k of both the + and - (or α_k and β_k) modes one can evaluate the spin fluctuation

$$\Delta \mathcal{S}(T) = \Delta \mathcal{S}_0 + \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2}{e^{\varepsilon_k/\Theta} - 1}. \quad (10.138)$$

Using our expressions for $v_{\mathbf{k}}^2$ (and $u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 = 1 + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2$), replacing the k -summation by an integral, and evaluation for $\Theta \ll \Theta_N$ we have

$$\Delta \mathcal{S}(T) = \Delta \mathcal{S}_0 + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{12} (6\pi^2)^{2/3} N \left(\frac{\Theta}{\Theta_N} \right)^2. \quad (10.139)$$

10.7.4 Heat Capacity due to Antiferromagnetic Magnons 493

For $\Theta < \omega_0$ ($\equiv \sqrt{\omega_A(\omega_A + 2\omega_e)}$), the heat capacity will vary with temperature 494
 as $e^{-\text{const}/T}$, since the probability of exciting a magnon will be exponentially 495
 small. For somewhat higher temperatures (but not too high since we are 496
 assuming small $|k|$) where modes with $\omega_{\mathbf{k}} \simeq \frac{\Theta_N}{k_M} k$ are excited, the specific 497
 heat is very much like the low temperature Debye specific heat (the tempera- 498
 ture region in question is defined by $\omega_0 \ll \Theta \ll \Theta_N$). The internal energy will 499
 be given by 500

$$U = 2 \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{\omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{e^{\omega_{\mathbf{k}}/\Theta} - 1}. \quad (10.140)$$

Here, we have two antiferromagnetic magnons for every value of $\mathbf{k}$, instead 501
 of three as for phonons, and the factor of 2 results from counting two types 502
 of spin excitations, $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger$ and $\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger$ type modes. Replacing the sum by an integral 503
 and replacing the upper limit k_M by infinity, as in the low temperature Debye 504
 specific heat, gives 505

$$U = N \frac{(k_M a)^3}{15} \frac{\Theta^4}{\Theta_N^3} \pi^2 = N \frac{2\pi^4}{5} \frac{\Theta^4}{\Theta_N^3}. \quad (10.141)$$

For the specific heat per particle one obtains 506

$$C = \frac{8\pi^4}{5} \left(\frac{\Theta}{\Theta_N} \right)^3. \quad (10.142) \quad 507$$

10.8 Exchange Interactions 508

Here, we briefly describe various kinds of exchange interactions which are the 509
 underlying sources of the long range magnetic ordering. 510

1. *Direct exchange* is the kind of exchange we discussed when we investigate 511
 the simple Heisenberg exchange interaction. The magnetic ions interact 512
 through the direct Coulomb interaction among the electrons on the two 513
 ions as a result of their wave function overlap. 514
2. *Superexchange* is the underlying mechanism of a number of ionic solids, 515
 such as MnO and MnF₂, showing magnetic ground states. Even in the 516
 absence of direct overlap between the electrons on different magnetic ions 517
 sharing a nonmagnetic ion (one with closed electronic shells and located 518
 in between the magnetic ions), the two magnetic ions can have exchange 519
 interaction mediated by the nonmagnetic ion. (See, for example, Fig. 10.15.) 520
3. *Indirect exchange* is the magnetic interaction between magnetic moments 521
 localized in a metal (such as rare earth metals) through the media- 522
 tion of conduction electrons in the metal. It is a metallic analogue of 523

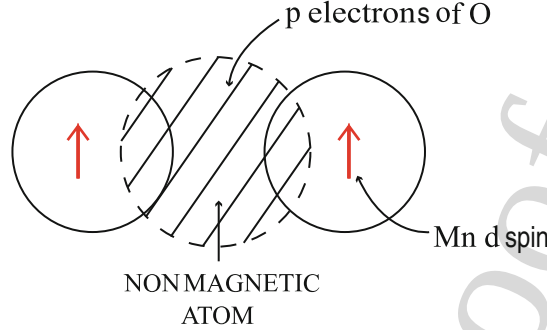


Fig. 10.15. Schematic illustration of superexchange coupling in a magnetic oxide. Two Mn ions (each having unpaired electron in a d orbital) are separated by an oxygen ion having two p electrons

- superexchange in ionic insulators and is also called as the *Ruderman-Kittel-Kasuya-Yosida (RKKY) interaction*. For example, the unpaired f electrons in the rare earths are magnetic and they can be coupled to f electrons in a neighboring rare earth ion through the exchange interaction via nonmagnetic conduction electrons.
4. *Double exchange* coupling is the ferromagnetic superexchange in an extended system. The double exchange explains the ferromagnetic coupling between magnetic ions of mixed valency. For example, $\text{La}_{1-x}\text{Sr}_x\text{MnO}_3$ ($0 \leq x \leq 0.175$) shows ferromagnetic metallic behavior below room temperature. In this material, a fraction x of the Mn ions are Mn^{4+} and $1-x$ are Mn^{3+} , because La exists as La^{3+} and Sr exists as Sr^{2+} .
 5. *Itinerant ferromagnetism* occurs in solids (such as Fe, Co, Ni, ...) containing the magnetic moments associated with the delocalized electrons, known as *itinerant electrons*, wandering through the sample.

10.9 Itinerant Ferromagnetism

Most of our discussion up to now has simply assumed a Heisenberg $\mathcal{J}_{ij}\mathbf{S}_i \cdot \mathbf{S}_j$ type interaction of localized spins. The atomic configurations of some of the atoms in the $3d$ transition metal series are Sc $(3d)^1(4s)^2$, Ti $(3d)^2(4s)^2$, V $(3d)^3(4s)^2$, Cr $(3d)^5(4s)^1$, Mn $(3d)^5(4s)^2$, Fe $(3d)^6(4s)^2$, Co $(3d)^7(4s)^2$, Ni $(3d)^8(4s)^2$, Cu $(3d)^{10}(4s)^1$. If we simply calculate the band structure of these materials, completely ignoring the possibility of magnetic order, we find that the density of states of the solid has a large and relatively narrow set of peaks associated with the $3d$ bands, and a broad but low peak associated with the $4s$ bands as is sketched in Fig. 10.16. The position of the Fermi level determines whether the d bands are partially filled or completely filled. For transition metals with partially filled d bands, the electrons participating in the magnetic states are itinerant.

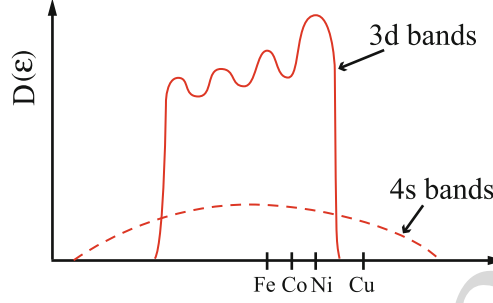


Fig. 10.16. Schematic illustration of the density of states of the transition metals

10.9.1 Stoner Model

551

In order to account for itinerant ferromagnetism, Stoner introduced a very simple model with the following properties:

1. The Bloch bands obtained in a band structure calculation are maintained.
2. By adding an exchange energy to the Bloch bands a spin splitting, described by an internal mean field, can be obtained.
3. States with spin antiparallel (−) to the internal field are lowered in energy relative to those with parallel (+) spin.

We can write for spin up (+) and spin down (−) electrons

$$E_{-}(k) \simeq \frac{\hbar k^2}{2m^*} \quad \text{and} \quad E_{+}(k) \simeq \frac{\hbar k^2}{2m^*} + \Delta, \quad (10.143)$$

where Δ is the spin splitting. The spin split Bloch bands and Fermi surfaces for spin up and spin down electrons are illustrated in Fig. 10.17 in the presence of spin splitting Δ .

10.9.2 Stoner Excitations

563

A single particle excitation in which an electron with wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ and spin down (−) is excited to an empty state with wave vector $\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q}$ and spin up (+) has energy

$$\begin{aligned} E &= E_{+}(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q}) - E_{-}(\mathbf{k}) \\ &= \frac{\hbar^2(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q})^2}{2m^*} + \Delta - \frac{\hbar k^2}{2m^*} \\ &= \frac{\hbar^2}{m^*} \mathbf{q} \cdot \left(\mathbf{k} + \frac{\mathbf{q}}{2} \right) + \Delta. \end{aligned} \quad (10.144)$$

These Stoner single particle excitations define the single particle continuum shown in Fig. 10.18. The single particle continuum of possible values of $|\mathbf{k}|$ for different values of $|\mathbf{q}|$ are hatched. Clearly when $q = 0$, the excitations all have energy Δ . These are single particle excitations. In addition Stoner found

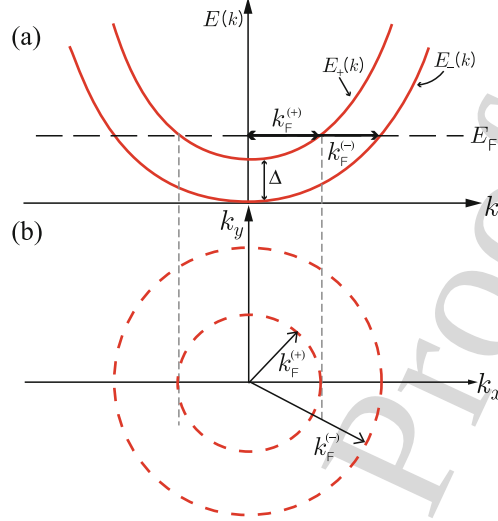


Fig. 10.17. Schematic illustration of the spin split Bloch bands in the Stoner model. (a) Energy dispersion of the Bloch bands in the presence of spin splitting Δ (b) The Fermi surfaces for spin up and spin down electrons

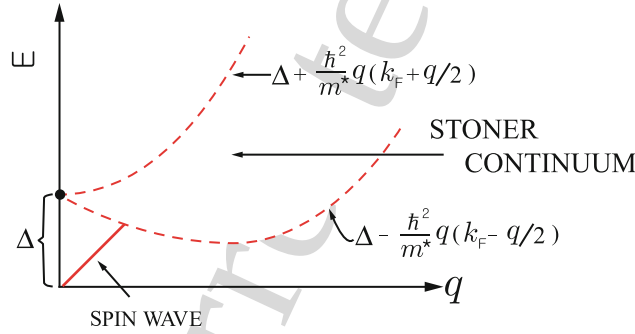


Fig. 10.18. Schematic illustration of the energy dispersion of the Stoner excitations and spin wave modes. The hatched area shows the single particle continuum of possible values of $|\mathbf{k}|$ for different values of $|\mathbf{q}|$

spin waves of an itinerant ferromagnet that started at the origin ($E = 0$ at $q = 0$) and intersected the single particle continuum at q_c , a finite value of q . The spin wave excitation is also indicated in Fig. 10.18.

10.10 Phase Transition

Near T_c , the ferromagnet is close to a phase transition. Many observable properties should display interesting behavior as a function of $T - T_c$ (see, for example, Fig. 10.19).

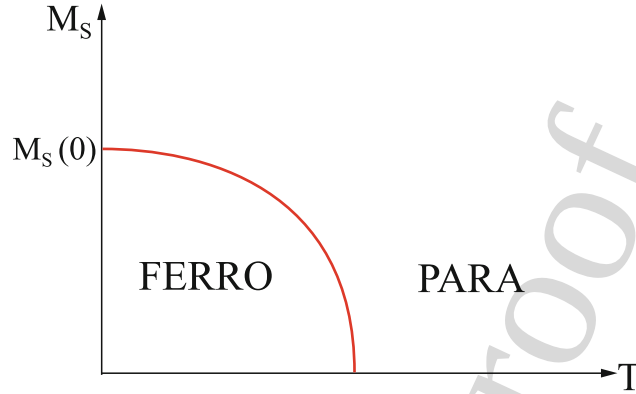


Fig. 10.19. Schematic illustration of the temperature dependence of the spontaneous magnetization

Here, we list only a few of the interesting examples.

1. *Magnetization:* As T increases toward T_c the spontaneous magnetization must vanish as

$$M(T) \approx (T_c - T)^\beta \text{ with } \beta > 0.$$

2. *Susceptibility:* As T decreases toward T_c in the paramagnetic state, the magnetic susceptibility $\chi(T)$ must diverge as

$$\chi(T) \approx (T - T_c)^{-\gamma} \text{ with } \gamma > 0.$$

3. *Specific heat:* As T decreases toward T_c in the paramagnetic state, the specific heat has a characteristic singularity given by

$$C(T) \approx (T - T_c)^{-\alpha} \text{ with } \alpha > 0.$$

In the *mean field theory*, where the interactions are replaced by their values in the presence of a self-consistently determined average magnetization, we find $\beta = \frac{1}{2}$ and $\gamma = 1$ for all dimensions. The mean field values do not agree with experiments or with several exactly solvable theoretical models for T very close to T_c . For example,

1. $\beta = \frac{1}{8}$ in the 2 dimensional Ising model.
2. $\beta \simeq \frac{1}{3}$ in the 3 dimensional Heisenberg model.
3. $\gamma \simeq 1.25$ for most 3 dimensional phase transitions instead of the mean field predictions of $\gamma = 1$.

In the early 1970's K. G. Wilson developed the *renormalization group theory* of phase transitions to describe the behavior of systems in the region $T \simeq T_c$.

Problems

597

10.1. Show that spin operators satisfy $[\hat{S}^2, \hat{S}^+] = 0$ and $[\hat{S}_z, \hat{S}^+] = \hat{S}^+$. Evaluate the commutator $[S^+, S^-]$ and $[S^\pm, S_z]$, and show that $S^\pm$ act as raising and lowering operators. 598 599 600

10.2. If $b_{\mathbf{k}} = N^{-1/2} \sum_j e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}_j} a_j$ and $b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger = N^{-1/2} \sum_j e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}_j} a_j^\dagger$ are spin wave operators in terms of spin deviation operators, show that $[a_j, a_{j'}] = [a_j^\dagger, a_{j'}^\dagger] = 0$ and $[a_j, a_{j'}^\dagger] = \delta_{jj'}$ implies $[b_{\mathbf{k}}, b_{\mathbf{k}'}] = [b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger, b_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger] = 0$ and $[b_{\mathbf{k}}, b_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger] = \delta_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'}$. 601 602 603

10.3. In the text the Heisenberg Hamiltonian was written as 604

$$\mathcal{H} = -2\mathcal{J}S \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \left\{ \sqrt{1 - \frac{\hat{n}_i}{2S}} a_i a_j^\dagger \sqrt{1 - \frac{\hat{n}_j}{2S}} + a_i^\dagger \sqrt{1 - \frac{\hat{n}_i}{2S}} \sqrt{1 - \frac{\hat{n}_j}{2S}} a_j \right. \\ \left. + S \left(1 - \frac{\hat{n}_i}{S} \right) \left(1 - \frac{\hat{n}_j}{S} \right) \right\} - g\mu_B B_0 S \sum_i \left(1 - \frac{\hat{n}_i}{S} \right),$$

where $\hat{n}_j = a_j^\dagger a_j$ and $a_j^\dagger$ (a_j) creates (annihilates) a spin deviation on site j . Expand the square roots for small $\hat{n}$ and show that the results for $\mathcal{H}_0$ and $\mathcal{H}_1$ agree with the expressions shown in (10.66) and (10.67), respectively. 605 606 607

10.4. Evaluate $\omega_{\mathbf{k}}$, the spin wave frequency, for arbitrary $\mathbf{k}$ within the first Brillouin zone of a simple cubic lattice. Expand the result for small k and compare it with the result given by (10.81). 608 609 610

10.5. An antiferromagnet can be described by $H = \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \mathcal{J}_{ij} \mathbf{S}_i \cdot \mathbf{S}_j$, where $\mathcal{J}_{ij} > 0$. Show that the ground state energy E_0 of the Heisenberg antiferromagnet must satisfy 611 612 613

$$-S(S+1) \sum_{i,j} \mathcal{J}_{ij} \leq E_0 \leq -S^2 \sum_{i,j} \mathcal{J}_{ij}.$$

Hint: for the upper bound one can use the trial wave function 614

$$\Phi_{\text{TRIAL}} = \prod_{\substack{i \in \text{A} \\ j \in \text{B}}} |S, S\rangle_i |S, -S\rangle_j,$$

where $|S, \pm S\rangle_k$ is the state with $S_z = \pm S$ on site k . 615

10.6. Prove that operators α_k 's and β_k 's defined in terms of spin wave operators 616 617

$$\alpha_{\mathbf{k}} = u_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}} - v_{\mathbf{k}} d_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \quad \text{and} \quad \beta_{\mathbf{k}} = u_{\mathbf{k}} d_{\mathbf{k}} - v_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger$$

satisfy the standard commutation rules. Here, $u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 - v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 = 1$. (See (10.106)) 618

10.7. Discuss spin wave excitations in a two-dimensional square lattice. 619

Summary

620

In this chapter, we studied magnetic ordering and spin wave excitations of magnetic solids. We first reviewed Heisenberg exchange interactions of atoms and then discussed spontaneous magnetization and domain wall properties of ferromagnets. The zero-temperature properties of Heisenberg ferromagnets and antiferromagnets are described. Spin wave excitations and magnon heat capacities of ferromagnets and antiferromagnets are also discussed. Finally, Stoner model is introduced as an illustration of itinerant ferromagnetism.

The Heisenberg interaction Hamiltonian is given by

628

$$\mathcal{H} = -2\mathcal{J} \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \mathbf{s}_i \cdot \mathbf{s}_j,$$

where the sum is over all pairs of nearest neighbors. The exchange constant $\mathcal{J}$ is positive (negative) for ferromagnets (antiferromagnets). For a chain of magnetic spins, it is more favorable energetically to have the spin flip gradually. If the spin turns through an angle Φ_0 in N steps, where N is large, the increase in exchange energy due to the domain wall is $E_{\text{ex}} = \mathcal{J} S^2 \frac{\Phi_0^2}{N}$. The exchange energy is lower if the domain wall is very wide.

In the presence of an applied magnetic field B_0 oriented in the z -direction, the Hamiltonian of a Heisenberg ferromagnet becomes

636

$$\mathcal{H} = - \sum_{i,j} \mathcal{J}_{ij} S_{iz} S_{jz} - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i,j} \mathcal{J}_{ij} (S_i^+ S_j^- + S_i^- S_j^+) - g\mu_B B_0 \sum_i S_{iz}.$$

In the ground state all the spins are aligned parallel to one another and to the magnetic field $\mathbf{B}_0$: $|0\rangle = \prod_i |S, S\rangle_i$. The ground state energy becomes

638

$$E_0 = -S^2 \sum_{i,j} \mathcal{J}_{ij} - N g\mu_B B_0 S.$$

For Heisenberg antiferromagnets, $\mathcal{J}$ is replaced by $-\mathcal{J}$ but a trial wave function $\Phi_{\text{Trial}} = \prod_{\substack{i \in \text{A} \\ j \in \text{B}}} |S, S\rangle_i |S, -S\rangle_j$ is not an eigenfunction of $\mathcal{H}$.

640

Low lying excitations of ferromagnet can be studied by introducing *spin deviation operator* $\hat{n}_j$ defined by

642

$$\hat{n}_j = S_j - \hat{S}_{jz} = S - \hat{S}_{jz} \equiv a_j^\dagger a_j.$$

With a use of the Holstein–Primakoff transformation to operators $a_j^\dagger$ and a_j

643

$$\hat{S}_j^+ = (2S_j - \hat{n}_j)^{1/2} a_j \quad \text{and} \quad \hat{S}_j^- = a_j^\dagger (2S_j - \hat{n}_j)^{1/2},$$

the Heisenberg Hamiltonian can be written, in the limit of $\langle \hat{n}_i \rangle \ll 2S$, as

644

$$\mathcal{H} = E_0 + \mathcal{H}_0 + \mathcal{H}_1.$$

310 10 Magnetic Ordering and Spin Waves

Here, E_0 , $\mathcal{H}_0$, and $\mathcal{H}_1$ are given, respectively, by

$$\begin{aligned} E_0 &= -z\mathcal{J}NS^2 - g\mu_B B_0 NS, \\ \mathcal{H}_0 &= (g\mu_B B_0 + 2z\mathcal{J}S) \sum_i \hat{n}_i - 2\mathcal{J}S \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} (a_i a_j^\dagger + a_i^\dagger a_j), \\ \mathcal{H}_1 &= -2\mathcal{J} \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \left(\hat{n}_i \hat{n}_j - \frac{1}{4} \hat{n}_i a_i a_j^\dagger - \frac{1}{4} a_i a_j^\dagger \hat{n}_j - \frac{1}{4} \hat{n}_j a_i^\dagger a_j - \frac{1}{4} a_i^\dagger a_j \hat{n}_i \right) \\ &\quad + \text{higher order terms.} \end{aligned}$$

Introducing *spin wave variables* defined by

$$b_{\mathbf{k}} = N^{-1/2} \sum_j e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}_j} a_j \quad \text{and} \quad b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger = N^{-1/2} \sum_j e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}_j} a_j^\dagger,$$

$\mathcal{H}_0$ becomes $\mathcal{H}_0 = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}} b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger b_{\mathbf{k}}$, where $\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}} = 2z\mathcal{J}S(1 - \gamma_{\mathbf{k}}) + g\mu_B B_0$. Thus, if we neglect $\mathcal{H}_1$, we have for the Hamiltonian of a state containing magnons

$$\mathcal{H} = - (g\mu_B B_0 NS + z\mathcal{J}NS^2) + \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}} b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger b_{\mathbf{k}}.$$

We note that, at low enough temperature, the elementary excitations are waves of energy $\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{k}}$.

At low temperature, the internal energy and magnon specific heat are given by

$$U \simeq \frac{0.45}{\pi^2} \frac{\Theta^{5/2}}{D^{3/2}} \quad \text{and} \quad C = \frac{\partial U}{\partial T} = 0.113 k_B \left(\frac{\Theta}{D} \right)^{3/2}.$$

The *spontaneous magnetization* at temperature T is given by

$$M_s = \frac{g\mu_B}{V} \left(NS - \left\langle \sum_{\mathbf{k}} b_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger b_{\mathbf{k}} \right\rangle \right).$$

At low temperature, $M_s(T)$ becomes $M_s(T) = \frac{N}{V} 2\mu_S - 0.117 \frac{\mu}{a^3} \left(\frac{\Theta}{2S\mathcal{J}} \right)^{3/2}$.

In the presence of an applied field $\mathbf{B}_0 = B_0 \hat{z}$ and an anisotropy field $\mathbf{B}_A$, the Heisenberg Hamiltonian of an antiferromagnet can be written

$$\mathcal{H} = +\mathcal{J} \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \hat{\mathbf{S}}_i \cdot \hat{\mathbf{S}}_j - g\mu_B (B_A + B_0) \sum_{l \in a} \hat{S}_{lz} + g\mu_B (B_A - B_0) \sum_{p \in b} \hat{S}_{pz}.$$

In the absence of magnon-magnon interaction, the ground-state energy is given by

$$E_{\text{GS}} = -2Nz\mathcal{J}S^2 - 2g\mu_B B_A NS + \sum_{\mathbf{k}} [\omega_{\mathbf{k}} - (\omega_A + \omega_e)].$$

The internal energy due to antiferromagnetic magnons is given by

$$U = 2 \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{\omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{e^{\omega_{\mathbf{k}}/\Theta} - 1}.$$

The low temperature specific heat per particle becomes

$$C = \frac{8\pi^4}{5} \left(\frac{\Theta}{\Theta_N} \right)^3.$$

11 1

Many Body Interactions – Introduction 2

11.1 Second Quantization 3

The Hamiltonian of a many particle system is usually of the form 4

$$H = \sum_i H_0(i) + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i \neq j} V_{ij}. \quad (11.1)$$

Here, $H_0(i)$ is the single particle Hamiltonian describing the i th particle, and V_{ij} is the interaction between the i th and j th particles. Suppose we know the single particle eigenfunctions and eigenvalues 5
6
7

$$H_0|k\rangle = \varepsilon_k|k\rangle.$$

We can construct a basis set for the many particle wave functions by taking products of single particle wave functions. We actually did this for bosons when we discussed phonon modes of a crystalline lattice. We wrote 8
9
10

$$|n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k, \dots\rangle = (n_1!n_2!\dots n_k!)^{-1/2} (a_1^\dagger)^{n_1} (a_2^\dagger)^{n_2} \dots (a_k^\dagger)^{n_k} \dots |0\rangle. \quad (11.2)$$

This represents a state in which the mode 1 contains n_1 excitations, ..., the mode k contains n_k excitations. Another way of saying it is that there are n_1 phonons of wave vector k_1 , n_2 phonons of wave vector k_2 , ... The creation and annihilation operators $a^\dagger$ and a satisfy 11
12
13
14

$$[a_k, a_{k'}^\dagger]_- = \delta_{kk'}; [a_k, a_{k'}]_- = [a_k^\dagger, a_{k'}^\dagger]_- = 0.$$

The commutation relations assure the symmetry of the state vector under interchange of a pair of particles since 15
16

$$a_k^\dagger a_{k'}^\dagger = a_{k'}^\dagger a_k^\dagger.$$

312 11 Many Body Interactions – Introduction

The single particle part is given by 17

$$\sum_i H_0(i) = \sum_k \varepsilon_k n_k, \quad (11.3)$$

where $\varepsilon_k = \langle k | H_0 | k \rangle$ and $n_k = a_k^\dagger a_k$. 18

For Fermions, the single particle states can be singly occupied or empty. 19
This means that n_k can take only two possible values, 0 or 1. It is convenient 20
to introduce operators $c_k^\dagger$ and its Hermitian conjugate c_k and to require them 21
to satisfy anticommutation relations 22

$$\begin{aligned} [c_k, c_{k'}^\dagger]_+ &\equiv c_k c_{k'}^\dagger + c_{k'}^\dagger c_k = \delta_{kk'}, \\ [c_k, c_{k'}]_+ &= [c_k^\dagger, c_{k'}^\dagger]_+ = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (11.4)$$

These relations assure occupancy of 0 or 1 since $(c_k^\dagger)^2 = 0$ and $(c_k)^2 = 0$: 23

$$\begin{aligned} [c_k^\dagger, c_k^\dagger]_+ &= 2c_k^\dagger c_k^\dagger = 0 \\ [c_k, c_k]_+ &= 2c_k c_k = 0 \end{aligned}$$

from the anticommutation relations given by (11.4). It is convenient to order 24
the possible values of the quantum number k (e.g. the smallest k 's first). Then, 25
an eigenfunction can be written 26

$$|0_1, 1_2, 0_3, 0_4, 1_5, 1_6, \dots, 1_k, \dots\rangle = \dots c_k^\dagger \dots c_6^\dagger c_5^\dagger c_2^\dagger |0_1, 0_2, \dots, 0_k, \dots, 0_n, \dots\rangle.$$

The order is important, because interchanging $c_6^\dagger$ and $c_5^\dagger$ leads to 27

$$|0_1, 1_2, 0_3, 0_4, 1_6, 1_5, \dots, 1_k, \dots\rangle = -|0_1, 1_2, 0_3, 0_4, 1_5, 1_6, \dots, 1_k, \dots\rangle.$$

The kinetic (or single particle) energy part is given by 28

$$\sum_{\substack{k \\ \text{occupied}}} \langle k | H_0 | k \rangle c_k^\dagger c_k = \sum_k \varepsilon_k c_k^\dagger c_k = \sum_k \varepsilon_k n_k. \quad (11.5)$$

The more difficult question is “How do we represent the interaction term in 29
the second quantization or *occupation number representation*?” 30

In the coordinate representation the many particle product functions must 31
be either symmetric for Bosons or antisymmetric for Fermions. Let us write 32
out the case for Fermions 33

$$\Phi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \sum_P (-)^P P \{ \phi_\alpha(1) \phi_\beta(2) \dots \phi_\omega(N) \} \quad (11.6)$$

Here, $\sum_P$ means sum over all permutations and $(-)^P$ is -1 for odd permu- 34
tations and $+1$ for even permutations. For example, for a three particle state 35

11.1 Second Quantization 313

the wave function $\Phi_{\alpha\beta\gamma}(1, 2, 3)$ can be written 36

$$\Phi_{\alpha\beta\gamma} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3!}} [\phi_\alpha(1)\phi_\beta(2)\phi_\gamma(3) - \phi_\alpha(1)\phi_\beta(3)\phi_\gamma(2) + \phi_\alpha(2)\phi_\beta(3)\phi_\gamma(1) - \phi_\alpha(2)\phi_\beta(1)\phi_\gamma(3) + \phi_\alpha(3)\phi_\beta(1)\phi_\gamma(2) - \phi_\alpha(3)\phi_\beta(2)\phi_\gamma(1)]. \quad (11.7)$$

Such antisymmetrized product functions are often written as Slater determi- 37
nants 38

$$\Phi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \begin{vmatrix} \phi_\alpha(1) & \phi_\alpha(2) & \cdots & \phi_\alpha(N) \\ \phi_\beta(1) & \phi_\beta(2) & \cdots & \phi_\beta(N) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \phi_\omega(1) & \phi_\omega(2) & \cdots & \phi_\omega(N) \end{vmatrix} \quad (11.8)$$

Look at V_{12} operating on a two particle wave function $\Phi_{\alpha\beta}(1, 2)$. We assume 39
that $V_{12} = V(|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2|) = V(r_{12}) = V_{21}$. Then 40

$$V_{12}\Phi_{\alpha\beta}(1, 2) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} V_{12} [\phi_\alpha(1)\phi_\beta(2) - \phi_\beta(1)\phi_\alpha(2)].$$

The matrix element $\langle \Phi_{\gamma\delta} | V_{12} | \Phi_{\alpha\beta} \rangle$ becomes 41

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \Phi_{\gamma\delta} | V_{12} | \Phi_{\alpha\beta} \rangle &= \frac{1}{2} \langle \gamma\delta | V_{12} | \alpha\beta \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \langle \delta\gamma | V_{12} | \beta\alpha \rangle \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2} \langle \gamma\delta | V_{12} | \beta\alpha \rangle - \frac{1}{2} \langle \delta\gamma | V_{12} | \alpha\beta \rangle. \end{aligned} \quad (11.9)$$

Since $\langle \gamma\delta | V_{12} | \alpha\beta \rangle = \int d^3r_1 d^3r_2 \phi_\gamma^*(1)\phi_\delta^*(2)V(r_{12})\phi_\alpha(1)\phi_\beta(2)$, we can see that 42
it must be equal to $\langle \delta\gamma | V_{12} | \beta\alpha \rangle$ by simple interchange of the dummy variables 43
 r_1 and r_2 . Thus, we find, for two-particle wave function, that 44

$$\langle \Phi_{\gamma\delta} | V_{12} | \Phi_{\alpha\beta} \rangle = \langle \gamma\delta | V_{12} | \alpha\beta \rangle - \langle \gamma\delta | V_{12} | \beta\alpha \rangle. \quad (11.10) \quad 45$$

Just as we found in discussing the Heisenberg exchange interaction, we find 46
that the antisymmetry leads to a direct term and an exchange term. Had we 47
been considering Bosons instead of Fermions, a plus sign would have appeared 48
in $\Phi_{\alpha\beta}(1, 2)$ and in the expression for the matrix element. 49

Exactly the same result can be obtained by writing 50

$$V_{12} = \sum_{\lambda\lambda'\mu\mu'} \langle \lambda'\mu' | V_{12} | \lambda\mu \rangle c_{\lambda'}^\dagger c_{\mu'}^\dagger c_\mu c_\lambda, \quad (11.11)$$

and 51

$$|\Phi_{\alpha\beta}\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} c_\beta^\dagger c_\alpha^\dagger |0\rangle, \quad (11.12)$$

where $|0\rangle$ is the *vacuum state*, which contains no particles. It is clear that 52

$$V_{12}|\Phi_{\alpha\beta}\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \sum_{\lambda\lambda'\mu\mu'} \langle \lambda'\mu' | V_{12} | \lambda\mu \rangle c_{\lambda'}^\dagger c_{\mu'}^\dagger c_\mu c_\lambda c_\beta^\dagger c_\alpha^\dagger |0\rangle$$

314 11 Many Body Interactions – Introduction

will vanish unless (1) $\lambda = \beta$ and $\mu = \alpha$ or (2) $\lambda = \alpha$ and $\mu = \beta$. From this, we see that

$$V_{12}|\Phi_{\alpha\beta}\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \sum_{\lambda'\mu'} [\langle\lambda'\mu'|V_{12}|\beta\alpha\rangle - \langle\lambda'\mu'|V_{12}|\alpha\beta\rangle] c_{\lambda'}^{\dagger} c_{\mu'}^{\dagger} |0\rangle.$$

Taking the scalar product with $\langle\Phi_{\gamma\delta}| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\langle 0|c_{\gamma}c_{\delta}$ gives

$$\langle\Phi_{\gamma\delta}|V_{12}|\Phi_{\alpha\beta}\rangle = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\lambda'\mu'} [\langle\lambda'\mu'|V_{12}|\beta\alpha\rangle - \langle\lambda'\mu'|V_{12}|\alpha\beta\rangle] \langle 0|c_{\gamma}c_{\delta}c_{\lambda'}^{\dagger}c_{\mu'}^{\dagger}|0\rangle. \quad (11.13)$$

The matrix element $\langle 0|c_{\gamma}c_{\delta}c_{\lambda'}^{\dagger}c_{\mu'}^{\dagger}|0\rangle$ will vanish unless (1) $\delta = \lambda'$ and $\gamma = \mu'$ or (2) $\gamma = \lambda'$ and $\delta = \mu'$. The final result can be seen to be

$$\langle\Phi_{\gamma\delta}|V_{12}|\Phi_{\alpha\beta}\rangle = \langle\gamma\delta|V_{12}|\alpha\beta\rangle - \langle\gamma\delta|V_{12}|\beta\alpha\rangle. \quad (11.14)$$

If we consider the operator $\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i \neq j} V_{ij}$ we need only note that we can consider a particular pair i, j first. Then, when V_{ij} operates on a many particle wave function

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \sum_P (-)^P P \{ \phi_{\alpha}(1) \phi_{\beta}(2) \cdots \phi_{\omega}(N) \} = c_{\alpha}^{\dagger} c_{\beta}^{\dagger} \cdots c_{\omega}^{\dagger} |0\rangle \quad (11.15)$$

only particles i and j can change their single particle states. All the rest of the particles must remain in the same single particle states.

The final result is that the Hamiltonian of a many particle system with two body interactions can be written

$$H = \sum_{kk'} \langle k'|H_0|k \rangle c_{k'}^{\dagger} c_k + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{kk' ll'} \langle k'l'|V|kl \rangle c_{k'}^{\dagger} c_l^{\dagger} c_l c_k. \quad (11.16)$$

The operators c_k and $c_k^{\dagger}$ satisfy either commutation relations for Bosons

$$[c_k, c_{k'}^{\dagger}]_- = \delta_{kk'}, \quad \text{and} \quad [c_k, c_{k'}]_- = [c_k^{\dagger}, c_{k'}^{\dagger}]_- = 0. \quad (11.17)$$

or anticommutation relations for Fermions

$$[c_k, c_{k'}^{\dagger}]_+ = \delta_{kk'}, \quad \text{and} \quad [c_k, c_{k'}]_+ = [c_k^{\dagger}, c_{k'}^{\dagger}]_+ = 0. \quad (11.18)$$

11.2 Hartree–Fock Approximation 68

Now, we are all familiar with the second quantized notation for a system of interacting particles. We can write

$$H = \sum_i \varepsilon_i c_i^{\dagger} c_i + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{ijkl} \langle ij|V|kl \rangle c_i^{\dagger} c_j^{\dagger} c_l c_k. \quad (11.19)$$

Here, $c_i^\dagger$ creates a particle in the state ϕ_i , and 71

$$\langle ij|V|kl\rangle = \int d\mathbf{x}d\mathbf{x}' \phi_i^*(\mathbf{x})\phi_j^*(\mathbf{x}')V(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}')\phi_k(\mathbf{x})\phi_l(\mathbf{x}'). \quad (11.20)$$

Remember that 72

$$\langle ij|V|kl\rangle = \langle ji|V|lk\rangle \quad (11.21)$$

if V is a symmetric function of $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{x}'$. In this notation, $H_0 = \sum_i \varepsilon_i c_i^\dagger c_i$ 73
is the Hamiltonian for a noninteracting system. It is simply the sum of the 74
product of the energy ε_i of the state ϕ_i and the number operator $n_i = c_i^\dagger c_i$. 75
The *Hartree–Fock approximation* is obtained by replacing the product of the 76
four operators $c_i^\dagger c_j^\dagger c_l c_k$ by a c -number (actually a ground state expectation 77
value of a $c^\dagger c$ product) multiplying a $c^\dagger c$; that is 78

$$\begin{aligned} c_i^\dagger c_j^\dagger c_l c_k &\approx c_i^\dagger \langle c_j^\dagger c_l \rangle c_k + c_j^\dagger c_l \langle c_i^\dagger c_k \rangle \\ &\quad - c_i^\dagger c_l \langle c_j^\dagger c_k \rangle - c_j^\dagger c_k \langle c_i^\dagger c_l \rangle. \end{aligned} \quad (11.22) \quad 79$$

By $\langle \hat{\Omega} \rangle$ we mean the expectation value of $\hat{\Omega}$ in the Hartree–Fock ground state, 80
which we are trying to determine. Because this is a diagonal matrix element, 81
we see that 82

$$\langle c_j^\dagger c_l \rangle = \delta_{jl} \bar{n}_j. \quad (11.23)$$

Furthermore, momentum conservation requires 83

$$\langle ij|V|jk\rangle = \langle ij|V|ji\rangle \delta_{ik}, \text{ etc.}$$

Then, one obtains for the Hartree–Fock Hamiltonian 84

$$H = \sum_i E_i c_i^\dagger c_i, \quad (11.24)$$

where 85

$$E_i = \varepsilon_i + \sum_j \bar{n}_j [\langle ij|V|ij\rangle - \langle ij|V|ji\rangle]. \quad (11.25) \quad 86$$

One can think of E_i as the eigenvalue of a one particle Schrödinger equation 87

$$\begin{aligned} H_{\text{HF}} \phi_i(\mathbf{x}) &\equiv \left\{ \frac{p^2}{2m} + \int d^3x' V(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') \sum_j \bar{n}_j \phi_j^*(\mathbf{x}') \phi_j(\mathbf{x}') \right\} \phi_i(\mathbf{x}) \\ &\quad - \int d^3x' V(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') \sum_j \bar{n}_j \phi_j^*(\mathbf{x}') \phi_i(\mathbf{x}') \phi_j(\mathbf{x}) = E_i \phi_i \end{aligned} \quad (11.26) \quad 88$$

Do not think the Hartree–Fock approximation is trivial. One must assume a 89
ground state configuration to compute $\langle c_j^\dagger c_l \rangle$. One then solves the “one parti- 90
cle” problem and hopes that the solution is such that the ground state of the 91
 N particle system, determined by filling the N lowest energy single particle 92
states just solved for, is identical to the ground state assumed in computing 93
 $\langle c_j^\dagger c_l \rangle$. If it is not, the problem has not been solved. 94

11.2.1 Ferromagnetism of a degenerate electron gas in Hartree–Fock Approximation 95 96

One can easily verify that plane wave eigenfunctions 97

$$\phi_{\mathbf{k}s}(\mathbf{x}) = \Omega^{-1/2} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{x}} \eta_s,$$

with single particle energy 98

$$\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}s} = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m}$$

form a set of solutions of the single particle Hartree–Fock Hamiltonian. 99

If the ground state is assumed to be the *paramagnetic state*, in which the N lowest energy levels are occupied (each $\mathbf{k}$ state is occupied by one electron of spin $\uparrow$ and one of spin $\downarrow$) then one obtains 100
101
102

$$E_{\mathbf{k}s} = \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}s} + E_{Xs}(\mathbf{k}) \quad (11.27)$$

where 103

$$E_{Xs}(\mathbf{k}) = - \sum_{\mathbf{k}'} n_{\mathbf{k}'} \langle \mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}' | V | \mathbf{k}'\mathbf{k} \rangle. \quad (11.28)$$

Here, we assumed that the nuclei are fixed in a given configuration and pictured as a fixed source of a static potential. The matrix element $\langle \mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}' | V | \mathbf{k}'\mathbf{k} \rangle = \frac{4\pi e^2}{|\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}'|^2}$, and the sum over $\mathbf{k}'$ can be performed to obtain 104
105
106

$$E_{\mathbf{k}s} = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} - \frac{e^2 k_F}{2\pi} \left[2 + \frac{k_F^2 - k^2}{kk_F} \ln \left(\frac{k_F + k}{k_F - k} \right) \right]. \quad (11.29)$$

The total energy of the paramagnetic state is 107

$$E_P = \sum_{\mathbf{k}s} n_{\mathbf{k}s} \left[\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}s} + \frac{1}{2} E_{Xs}(\mathbf{k}) \right]. \quad (11.30)$$

The $\frac{1}{2}$ in front of E_{Xs} prevents double counting. This sum gives 108

$$E_P = N \left[\frac{3}{5} \frac{\hbar^2 k_F^2}{2m} - \frac{3}{4\pi} e^2 k_F \right] \simeq N \left[\frac{2.21}{r_s^2} - \frac{0.916}{r_s} \right] \text{ Ryd.} \quad (11.31) \quad 109$$

One can easily see that $E_{\mathbf{k}s}$ is a monotonically increasing function of k , so that the assumption about the ground state, viz. that all $\mathbf{k}$ state for which $k < k_F$ are occupied, is in agreement with the procedure of filling the N lowest energy eigenstates of the single particle Hartree–Fock Hamiltonian. 110
111
112
113

Instead of assuming the paramagnetic ground state, we could assume that only states of spin $\uparrow$ are occupied, and that they are singly occupied for all $k < 2^{1/3} k_F$. Then one finds that 114
115
116

11.2 Hartree–Fock Approximation 317

$$E_{k\uparrow} = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} - \frac{2^{1/3} e^2 k_F}{2\pi} \left[2 + \frac{2^{2/3} k_F^2 - k^2}{2^{1/3} k_F k} \ln \left(\frac{2^{1/3} k_F + k}{2^{1/3} k_F - k} \right) \right] \quad (11.32)$$

$$E_{k\downarrow} = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m}.$$

This state is a solution to the Hartree–Fock problem only if 117

$$E_{k\uparrow}|_{k=2^{1/3}k_F} < 0, \quad (11.33)$$

otherwise some of the spin down states would be occupied in the ground state. 118
This condition is satisfied if 119

$$\frac{1}{a_0 k_F} > \frac{\pi}{2^{2/3}} \simeq \frac{3.142}{1.588} = 1.98 \quad (11.34)$$

It is convenient to introduce the parameter r_s defined by 120

$$\frac{4\pi}{3} (a_0 r_s)^3 = \frac{V}{N} = \frac{3\pi^2}{k_F^3}.$$

Then, we have 121

$$\left(\frac{4}{9\pi} \right)^{1/3} r_s = (a_0 k_F)^{-1},$$

or 122

$$r_s = \left(\frac{9\pi}{4} \right)^{1/3} a_0^{-1} k_F^{-1} \simeq \frac{1.92}{a_0 k_F}. \quad (11.35)$$

If we sum over k to get the energy of the ferromagnetic state 123

$$E_F = \sum E_{k\uparrow} = N \left[2^{2/3} \frac{3}{5} \frac{\hbar^2 k_F^2}{2m} - 2^{1/3} \frac{3}{4\pi} e^2 k_F \right]. \quad (11.36) \quad 124$$

Comparing E_F with E_P , we see that 125

$$E_F < E_P \quad \text{if} \quad a_0 k_F < \frac{5}{2\pi} \frac{1}{2^{1/3} + 1},$$

which corresponds to 126

$$r_s > 5.45, \quad (11.37)$$

though the Hartree–Fock solution exists if $r_s \geq 3.8$. The present, Hartree– 127
Fock, treatment neglects *correlation effects* and cannot be expected to describe 128
accurately the behavior of metals. The present treatment does however point 129
up the fact that the exchange energy prefers parallel spin orientation, but the 130
cost in kinetic energy is high for a ferromagnetic spin arrangement. Actually 131
Cs has $r_s \simeq 5.6$ and does not show ferromagnetic behavior; this is not too 132
surprising. 133

11.3 Spin Density Waves

134

We have seen that the exchange energy favors parallel spin alignment, but that the cost in kinetic energy is high. Overhauser¹ proposed a solution of the Hartree–Fock problem in which the spins are locally parallel, but the spin polarization rotates as one moves through the crystal. This type of state enhances the (negative) exchange energy but does not cost as much in kinetic energy.

For example, an Overhauser *spiral spin density wave* could exist with a net fractional spin polarization given by

$$\mathbf{P}_\perp(\mathbf{r}) = P_{\perp 0}(\hat{\mathbf{x}} \cos Qz + \hat{\mathbf{y}} \sin Qz). \quad (11.38)$$

Overhauser showed that such a spin polarization $\mathbf{P}_\perp(\mathbf{r})$ can result from taking basis functions of the form

$$|\phi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle = a_k|\mathbf{k} \uparrow\rangle + b_k|\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q} \downarrow\rangle.$$

In order that $\langle\phi_{\mathbf{k}}|\phi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle = 1$, it is necessary that $a_k^2 + b_k^2 = 1$. This condition assures that there is no fluctuation in the charge density associated with the wave. Thus, without loss of generality we can take $a_k = \cos \theta_k$ and $b_k = \sin \theta_k$ and write

$$|\phi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle = \cos \theta_k|\mathbf{k} \uparrow\rangle + \sin \theta_k|\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q} \downarrow\rangle. \quad (11.39)$$

The fractional spin polarization at a point $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}_0$ is given by

$$\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}_0) = \frac{\Omega}{N} \sum_{k \text{ occupied}} \langle\phi_{\mathbf{k}}|\underline{\sigma} \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0)|\phi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle. \quad (11.40)$$

Here, $\underline{\sigma} = \sigma_x \hat{x} + \sigma_y \hat{y} + \sigma_z \hat{z}$, where $\sigma_x, \sigma_y, \sigma_z$ are Pauli spin matrices, so that

$$\underline{\sigma} = \begin{pmatrix} \hat{z} & \hat{x} - i\hat{y} \\ \hat{x} + i\hat{y} & -\hat{z} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (11.41)$$

We can write

$$|\mathbf{k} \uparrow\rangle = |\mathbf{k}\rangle |\uparrow\rangle = \Omega^{-1/2} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$|\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q} \downarrow\rangle = |\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q}\rangle |\downarrow\rangle = \Omega^{-1/2} e^{i(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q}) \cdot \mathbf{r}} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} \langle\uparrow|\underline{\sigma}|\uparrow\rangle &= \hat{z} \\ \langle\uparrow|\underline{\sigma}|\downarrow\rangle &= \hat{x} - i\hat{y} \\ \langle\downarrow|\underline{\sigma}|\uparrow\rangle &= \hat{x} + i\hat{y} \\ \langle\downarrow|\underline{\sigma}|\downarrow\rangle &= -\hat{z}. \end{aligned} \quad (11.42)$$

¹ A.W. Overhauser, Phys. Rev. **128**, 1437 (1962).

Evaluating $\langle \phi_{\mathbf{k}} | \underline{\sigma} \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) | \phi_{\mathbf{k}} \rangle$ gives 155

$$\begin{aligned} & \langle \phi_{\mathbf{k}} | \underline{\sigma} \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) | \phi_{\mathbf{k}} \rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{\Omega} \left\{ \cos^2 \theta_k \langle \uparrow | \underline{\sigma} | \uparrow \rangle + \sin^2 \theta_k \langle \downarrow | \underline{\sigma} | \downarrow \rangle \right. \\ & \quad \left. + \cos \theta_k \sin \theta_k [e^{i\mathbf{Q} \cdot \mathbf{r}_0} \langle \uparrow | \underline{\sigma} | \downarrow \rangle + e^{-i\mathbf{Q} \cdot \mathbf{r}_0} \langle \downarrow | \underline{\sigma} | \uparrow \rangle] \right\}. \end{aligned} \quad (11.43)$$

Gathering together the terms allows us to express $\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}_0)$ as 156

$$\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}_0) = P_{\parallel} \hat{\mathbf{z}} + P_{\perp} (\hat{\mathbf{x}} \cos \mathbf{Q} \cdot \mathbf{r}_0 + \hat{\mathbf{y}} \sin \mathbf{Q} \cdot \mathbf{r}_0), \quad (11.44)$$

where 157

$$P_{\parallel} = \frac{1}{8\pi^3 n} \int_{\text{occupied}} \cos 2\theta_k d^3k, \quad (11.45)$$

and 158

$$P_{\perp} = \frac{1}{8\pi^3 n} \int_{\text{occupied}} \sin 2\theta_k d^3k. \quad (11.46)$$

Here, $n = \frac{N}{\Omega}$ and the integral is over all occupied states $|\phi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle$. We will not 159
worry about $P_{\parallel}$ because ultimately we will consider a linear combination of 160
two spiral spin density waves (called a *linear spin density wave*) for which the 161
 $P_{\parallel}$'s cancel. 162

It is worth noting that the density at point $\mathbf{r}_0$ is given by 163

$$\begin{aligned} n(\mathbf{r}_0) &= \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \langle \phi_{\mathbf{k}} | \underline{\mathbf{1}} \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) | \phi_{\mathbf{k}} \rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{\Omega} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} (\cos^2 \theta_k + \sin^2 \theta_k) = \frac{N}{\Omega}. \end{aligned} \quad (11.47)$$

When the unit matrix $\underline{\mathbf{1}}$ is replaced by $\underline{\sigma}$, it is reasonable to expect the spin 164
density. 165

One can form a wave function orthogonal to $|\phi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle$: 166

$$|\psi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle = -\sin \theta_k |\mathbf{k} \uparrow\rangle + \cos \theta_k |\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q} \downarrow\rangle. \quad (11.48)$$

So far, we have ignored these states (i.e. assumed they were unoccupied). We 167
shall see that this turns out to be correct for the Hartree–Fock spin density 168
wave ground state. 169

Recall that the Hartree–Fock wave functions $\phi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{x})$ satisfy (11.26) 170

$$\begin{aligned} H_{\text{HF}} \phi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{x}) &\equiv \left\{ \frac{p^2}{2m} + \int d\mathbf{x}' V(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') \sum_{\mathbf{q}} \bar{n}_{\mathbf{q}} \phi_{\mathbf{q}}^*(\mathbf{x}') \phi_{\mathbf{q}}(\mathbf{x}') \right\} \phi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{x}) \\ &\quad - \int d\mathbf{x}' V(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') \sum_{\mathbf{q}} \bar{n}_{\mathbf{q}} \phi_{\mathbf{q}}^*(\mathbf{x}') \phi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{x}') \phi_{\mathbf{q}}(\mathbf{x}) = E_{\mathbf{k}} \phi_{\mathbf{k}}. \end{aligned} \quad (11.49)$$

We can write H_{HF} as 171

$$H_{\text{HF}} = \frac{p^2}{2m} + U + A, \quad (11.50)$$

where 172

$$U(\mathbf{x}) = \int d\mathbf{x}' V(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') \sum_{\mathbf{q} \text{ occupied}} \phi_{\mathbf{q}}^*(\mathbf{x}') \phi_{\mathbf{q}}(\mathbf{x}') \quad (11.51)$$

320 11 Many Body Interactions – Introduction

and

$$A\psi(\mathbf{x}) = - \int d\mathbf{x}' V(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') \sum_{q \text{ occupied}} \phi_{\mathbf{q}}^*(\mathbf{x}') \psi(\mathbf{x}') \phi_{\mathbf{q}}(\mathbf{x}). \quad (11.52) \quad 173$$

$V(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}')$ can be written as

$$V(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = \sum_{\mathbf{q} \neq 0} V_{\mathbf{q}} e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}')}. \quad (11.53) \quad 174$$

Now, consider the matrix elements of A (with the Hartree–Fock ground state assumed to be made up of the lowest energy $\phi_{\mathbf{k}}$ states) between plane wave states. 175
176
177

$$\langle \ell \underline{\sigma} | A | \ell' \underline{\sigma}' \rangle = - \sum_{\mathbf{k}}' \sum_{q \neq 0} V_{\mathbf{q}} \langle \phi_{\mathbf{k}} | e^{-i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x}'} | \ell' \underline{\sigma}' \rangle \langle \ell \underline{\sigma} | e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x}} | \phi_{\mathbf{k}} \rangle, \quad (11.54)$$

where $\sum_{\mathbf{k}}'$ means sum over all occupied states $|\phi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle$. Now use the expressions 178

$$\begin{aligned} |\phi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle &= \cos \theta_k |\mathbf{k} \uparrow\rangle + \sin \theta_k |\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q} \downarrow\rangle \\ \langle \phi_{\mathbf{k}}| &= \langle \mathbf{k} \uparrow| \cos \theta_k + \langle \mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q} \downarrow| \sin \theta_k \end{aligned} \quad (11.55) \quad 179$$

to obtain 180

$$\begin{aligned} &\langle \ell \underline{\sigma} | A | \ell' \underline{\sigma}' \rangle \\ &= - \sum_{\mathbf{k}}' \sum_{q \neq 0} V_{\mathbf{q}} \left\{ \langle \mathbf{k} \uparrow | e^{-i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x}'} | \ell' \underline{\sigma}' \rangle \cos \theta_k + \langle \mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q} \downarrow | e^{-i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x}'} | \ell' \underline{\sigma}' \rangle \sin \theta_k \right\} \\ &\quad \times \left\{ \langle \ell \underline{\sigma} | e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x}} | \mathbf{k} \uparrow \rangle \cos \theta_k + \langle \ell \underline{\sigma} | e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x}} | \mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q} \downarrow \rangle \sin \theta_k \right\}. \end{aligned} \quad (11.56)$$

Because $e^{\pm i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x}}$ is spin independent, we can use $\langle \sigma | \uparrow \rangle = \delta_{\sigma \uparrow}$, $\langle \sigma | \downarrow \rangle = \delta_{\sigma \downarrow}$, etc. 181
182

$$\begin{aligned} &\langle \ell \underline{\sigma} | A | \ell' \underline{\sigma}' \rangle \\ &= - \sum_{\mathbf{k}}' \sum_{q \neq 0} V_{\mathbf{q}} \left(\langle \mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q} | \ell' \rangle \delta_{\sigma' \uparrow} \cos \theta_k + \langle \mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q} + \mathbf{q} | \ell' \rangle \delta_{\sigma' \downarrow} \sin \theta_k \right) \\ &\quad \times \left(\langle \ell | \mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q} \rangle \delta_{\sigma \uparrow} \cos \theta_k + \langle \ell | \mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q} + \mathbf{q} \rangle \delta_{\sigma \downarrow} \sin \theta_k \right). \end{aligned} \quad (11.57)$$

For $\sigma = \uparrow$ and $\sigma' = \downarrow$ we find 183

$$\langle \ell \uparrow | A | \ell' \downarrow \rangle = - \sum_{\mathbf{k}}' \sum_{q \neq 0} V_{\mathbf{q}} \delta_{\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q} + \mathbf{q}, \ell'} \sin \theta_k \delta_{\ell, \mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q}} \cos \theta_k, \quad (11.58)$$

which can be rewritten 184

$$\langle \ell \uparrow | A | \ell' \downarrow \rangle = - \sum_{\mathbf{k}}' V_{\ell - \mathbf{k}} \sin \theta_k \cos \theta_k \delta_{\ell', \ell + \mathbf{Q}}. \quad (11.59)$$

Thus, the Hartree–Fock exchange term A has off diagonal elements mixing the simple plane wave states $|\ell \uparrow\rangle$ and $|\ell + \mathbf{Q} \downarrow\rangle$. It is straightforward to see that 185
186
187

$$\langle \ell \downarrow | A | \ell' \uparrow \rangle = - \sum_{\mathbf{k}} V_{\ell' - \mathbf{k}} \sin \theta_{\mathbf{k}} \cos \theta_{\mathbf{k}} \delta_{\ell', \ell - \mathbf{Q}}, \quad (11.60)$$

so that A also couples $|\ell \downarrow\rangle$ to $|\ell - \mathbf{Q} \uparrow\rangle$. The spin diagonal terms are 188

$$\langle \ell \uparrow | A | \ell \uparrow \rangle = - \sum_{\mathbf{k}} V_{\ell - \mathbf{k}} \cos^2 \theta_{\mathbf{k}} \quad (11.61)$$

and 189

$$\langle \ell + \mathbf{Q} \downarrow | A | \ell + \mathbf{Q} \downarrow \rangle = - \sum_{\mathbf{k}} V_{\ell - \mathbf{k}} \sin^2 \theta_{\mathbf{k}}. \quad (11.62)$$

Then, we need to solve the problem given by 190

$$\left(\frac{p^2}{2m} + A_D + A_{OD} - E_{\mathbf{k}} \right) \Psi_{\mathbf{k}} = 0, \quad (11.63)$$

where 191

$$A_D = - \begin{pmatrix} \sum_{\mathbf{k}'} V_{\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}'} \cos^2 \theta_{\mathbf{k}'} & 0 \\ 0 & \sum_{\mathbf{k}'} V_{\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}'} \sin^2 \theta_{\mathbf{k}'} \end{pmatrix} \quad (11.64)$$

and 192

$$A_{OD} = -g_{\mathbf{k}} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (11.65)$$

We can simply take $|\Psi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle = \cos \theta_{\mathbf{k}} |\mathbf{k} \uparrow\rangle + \sin \theta_{\mathbf{k}} |\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q} \downarrow\rangle$ and observe that 193
(11.63) becomes 194

$$\begin{pmatrix} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} - E_{\mathbf{k}} & -g_{\mathbf{k}} \\ -g_{\mathbf{k}} & \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{Q}\downarrow} - E_{\mathbf{k}} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_{\mathbf{k}} \\ \sin \theta_{\mathbf{k}} \end{pmatrix} = 0. \quad (11.66)$$

In this matrix equation, $g_{\mathbf{k}}$ denotes the amplitude of the off-diagonal contri- 195
bution of the exchange term A 196

$$g_{\mathbf{k}} = \langle \mathbf{k} \uparrow | A | \mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q} \downarrow \rangle = \sum_{\mathbf{k}'} V_{\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}'} \sin \theta_{\mathbf{k}'} \cos \theta_{\mathbf{k}'}, \quad (11.67)$$

and $\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow}$ and $\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{Q}\downarrow}$ are the free electron energies plus the diagonal parts (A_D) 197
of the one electron exchange energy 198

$$\begin{aligned} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} &= \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} - \sum_{\mathbf{k}'} V_{|\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}'|} \cos^2 \theta_{\mathbf{k}'} \\ \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{Q}\downarrow} &= \frac{\hbar^2 (\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q})^2}{2m} - \sum_{\mathbf{k}'} V_{|\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}'|} \sin^2 \theta_{\mathbf{k}'}. \end{aligned} \quad (11.68)$$

322 11 Many Body Interactions – Introduction

The eigenvalues $E_{\mathbf{k}}$ are determined from (11.66) by setting the determinant of the 2×2 matrix equal to zero. This gives

$$E_{\mathbf{k}\pm} = \frac{1}{2}(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} + \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{Q}\downarrow}) \pm \left[\frac{1}{4}(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} - \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{Q}\downarrow})^2 + g_k^2 \right]^{1/2}. \quad (11.69)$$

The eigenfunctions corresponding to $E_{\mathbf{k}\pm}$ are given by (11.48) and (11.55), respectively. The values of $\cos \theta_k$ are determined from (11.66) using the eigenvalues $E_{\mathbf{k}-}$ given above. This gives

$$\cos \theta_k = \frac{g_k}{[g_k^2 + (\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} - E_{\mathbf{k}-})^2]^{1/2}}. \quad (11.70)$$

We note that the square modulus of the eigenfunction is a constant, and thus a charge density wave does not accompany a spin density wave.

Solution of the Integral Equation

We have to solve the integral equation (11.67), which is rewritten as

$$g_l = \int V_{l-\mathbf{k}} \cos \theta_k \sin \theta_k \frac{d^3 k}{(2\pi)^3}. \quad (11.71)$$

Here, $\cos \theta_k$ is given by (11.70), and the ground state eigenvalue $E_{\mathbf{k}}$ is itself a function of θ_k and hence of g_k . This equation is extremely complicated, and no solution is known for the general case. To obtain some feeling for what is happening we study the simple case where $V_{\ell-\mathbf{k}}$ is constant instead of being given by $\frac{4\pi e^2}{|\ell-\mathbf{k}|^2}$. We take $V_{\ell-\mathbf{k}} = \gamma$; this corresponds to replacing the Coulomb interaction by a δ -function interaction. Obviously g_k will be independent of k in this case, and the integral equation becomes

$$g = \gamma \int \frac{d^3 k}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{g(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} - E_{\mathbf{k}})}{g^2 + (\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} - E_{\mathbf{k}})^2} \quad (11.72)$$

where

$$\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} - E_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{1}{2}(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} - \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{Q}\downarrow}) + \left[\frac{1}{4}(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} - \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{Q}\downarrow})^2 + g^2 \right]^{1/2}. \quad (11.73)$$

By direct substitution we have

$$\frac{g(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} - E_{\mathbf{k}})}{g^2 + (\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} - E_{\mathbf{k}})^2} = \frac{g}{2 \left[\frac{1}{4}(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} - E_{\mathbf{k}})^2 + g^2 \right]^{1/2}}, \quad (11.74)$$

and the integral equation becomes

$$g = \gamma \int \frac{d^3 k}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{g}{2 \left[\frac{1}{4}(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} - E_{\mathbf{k}})^2 + g^2 \right]^{1/2}}. \quad (11.75)$$

We replace $\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} - E_{\mathbf{k}}$ in (11.75) by

$$\begin{aligned}\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} - E_{\mathbf{k}} &\approx -\frac{\hbar^2}{m}Q(k_z + \frac{Q}{2}) \\ &= 2\left(\frac{\partial\varepsilon}{\partial k_z}\right)_{k_z=-\frac{Q}{2}}\left(k_z + \frac{Q}{2}\right).\end{aligned}\quad (11.76)$$

Here, we note that we left out a term $-\gamma \int \frac{d^3k}{(2\pi)^3} \cos^2 \theta_k$. This is the same term which appeared in $P_{\parallel}$, and it had better vanish when we evaluate it using the solution to the integral equation for θ_k . Now let us introduce

$$\mu = \left(-\frac{\partial\varepsilon}{\partial k_z}\right)_{k_z=-Q/2}.\quad (11.77)$$

Then, we have

$$1 = \frac{\gamma}{(2\pi)^3} \int \frac{d^3k}{2\sqrt{g^2 + \mu^2\left(k_z + \frac{Q}{2}\right)^2}}.\quad (11.78)$$

Take the region of integration to be a circular cylinder of radius $\kappa_{\perp}$ and of length $\kappa_{\parallel}$, centered at $k_z = -\frac{Q}{2}$ as shown in Fig. 11.1. Then (11.78) becomes

$$1 = \frac{\gamma}{(2\pi)^3} \int_{-\kappa_{\parallel}/2}^{\kappa_{\parallel}/2} \frac{\pi\kappa_{\perp}^2 d(k_z + Q/2)}{2\sqrt{g^2 + \mu^2\left(k_z + \frac{Q}{2}\right)^2}} = \frac{\gamma\kappa_{\perp}^2}{16\pi^2\mu} 2\sinh^{-1}\left(\frac{\kappa_{\parallel}\mu}{2g}\right).\quad (11.79)$$

Thus, we obtain

$$g = \frac{\kappa_{\parallel}\mu}{2\sinh\left(\frac{8\pi^2\mu}{\gamma\kappa_{\perp}^2}\right)}\quad (11.80)$$

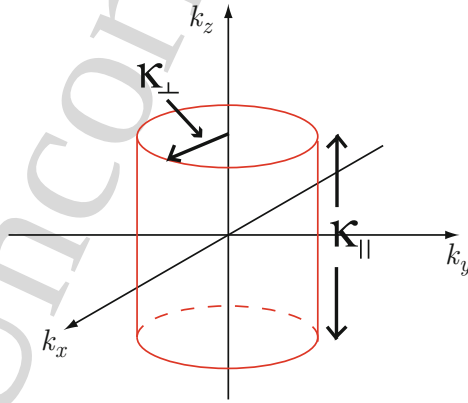


Fig. 11.1. Region of integration for (11.78). The cylinder axis is parallel to the z axis

One can now return to the equation for the ground state energy W 228

$$W_{\text{GS}} = \frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \int \frac{d^3k}{(2\pi)^3} [k^2 \cos^2 \theta_k + (\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q})^2 \sin^2 \theta_k] - \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{d^3k d^3k'}{(2\pi)^6} V_{k-k'} \cos^2(\theta_k - \theta'_k) \quad (11.81) \quad 229$$

and replace $V_{k-k'}$ by the constant γ and substitute 230

1. $g = 0$ for the trivial solution corresponding to the usual paramagnetic state 231
and 232
2. $g = \frac{\kappa_{\parallel} \mu}{2 \sinh\left(\frac{8\pi^2 \mu}{\gamma \kappa_{\perp}^2}\right)}$ for the spin density wave state 233

If we again take the occupied region in k space to be a cylinder of radius $\kappa_{\perp}$ 234
and length $\kappa_{\parallel}$ centered at $k_z = -\frac{Q}{2}$, we obtain the deformation energy of the 235
spin density wave state 236

$$W_{\text{SDW}} - W_{\text{P}} = -\frac{\mu \kappa_{\parallel}^2 \kappa_{\perp}^2}{32\pi^2} \left[\coth\left(\frac{8\pi^2 \mu}{\gamma \kappa_{\perp}^2}\right) - 1 \right] < 0. \quad (11.82) \quad 237$$

This quantity is negative definite, so that the spin density wave state always 238
has the lower energy than the paramagnetic state, i.e. 239

$$W_{\text{P}} > W_{\text{SDW}}.$$

Note that in evaluation of W_{P} as well as of W_{SDW} , the occupied region of 240
 k space was taken to be a cylinder of radius $\kappa_{\perp}$ and length $\kappa_{\parallel}$ centered at 241
 $k_z = -\frac{Q}{2}$. The result does not prove that the spin density wave has lower 242
energy than the actual paramagnetic ground state (which will be a sphere 243
in k space instead of a cylinder, and hence have a smaller kinetic energy 244
than the cylinder. Overhauser gave a general (but somewhat difficult) proof 245
that a spin density wave state always exists which has lower energy than the 246
paramagnetic state in the Hartree–Fock approximation. 247

The proof involves taking the wave vector of the spin density wave $\mathbf{Q}$ to 248
be slightly smaller than $2k_{\text{F}}$. Then, the spin up states at k_z are coupled by the 249
exchange interaction to the spin down states at $k_z + Q$ as shown in Fig. 11.2. 250
The gap (at $|k_z| = Q/2$) of the strongly coupled states causes a repopulation of 251
 k -space as indicated schematically (for the states that were spin $\downarrow$ without the 252
spin density wave coupling) in Fig. 11.3. The flattened areas occur, of course, 253
at the energy gap centered at $k_z = -\frac{Q}{2}$. The *repopulation energy* depends on 254
 $\kappa_{\perp}$, which is given by $\kappa_{\perp} = \sqrt{k_{\text{F}}^2 - Q^2/4}$ and is much smaller than k_{F} . The 255
dependence of the energy on the value of $\kappa_{\perp}$ can be used to demonstrate that 256
the kinetic energy increase due to repopulation is small for $\kappa_{\perp} \ll k_{\text{F}}$ and that 257
in the Hartree–Fock approximation a spin density wave state always exists 258
with energy lower than that of the paramagnetic state. 259

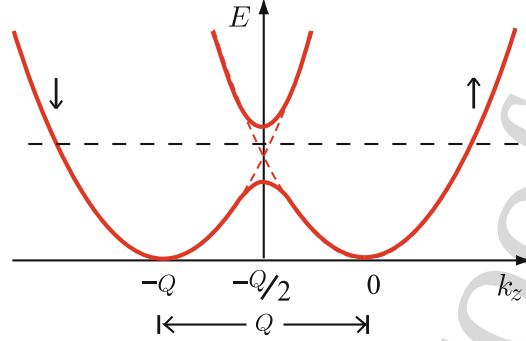


Fig. 11.2. Energies of $\uparrow$ and $\downarrow$ spin electrons as a function of k_z . The spin $\uparrow$ and spin $\downarrow$ minima have been separated by Q the wave number of the spin density wave. The thin solid lines omit the spin density wave exchange energy. The thick solid lines include it and give rise to the spin density wave gap. Near the gap, the eigenstates are linear combinations of $|k_z \uparrow\rangle$ and $|k_z + Q \downarrow\rangle$

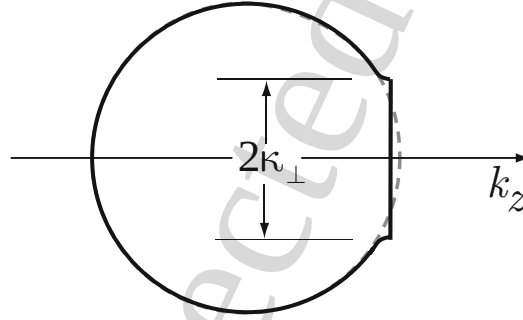


Fig. 11.3. Schematics of repopulation in k -space from originally occupied $k \downarrow$ states (inside sphere of radius k_F denoted by dashed circle) to inside of solid curve terminated plane $k_z = Q/2$ at which spin density wave gas occurs. The size of $\kappa_\perp$ is exaggerated for sake of clarity

For a spiral spin density wave the flat surface at $|k_z| = Q/2$ occur at opposite sides of the Fermi surface for spin $\uparrow$ and spin $\downarrow$ electrons. Near these positions in k -space, one cannot really speak of spin $\uparrow$ and spin $\downarrow$ electrons since the eigenstates are linear combinations of the two spins with comparable amplitudes. Far away from these regions (on the opposite sides of the Fermi surface) the spin states are essentially unmixed. The total energy can be lowered by introducing a left-handed spiral spin density wave in addition to the right-handed one. The resulting spiral spin density waves form a *linear spin density wave* which has flat surfaces separated by the wave vector $\mathbf{Q}$ of the spin density wave at both sides of the Fermi surface for each of the spins.

11.3.1 Comparison with Reality

270

It is not at all clear what correlation effects will do to the balance which gave $W_P > W_{SDW}$. So far no one has performed correlation calculations using the spin density wave state as a starting point. Experiment seems to show that at low temperatures the ground state of some metals, for example chromium, is a spin density wave state. Shortly after introducing spin density wave states, Overhauser.² introduced the idea of charge density wave states. In a charge density wave state the spin magnetization vanishes everywhere, but the electron charge density has an oscillating position dependence. For a spin density wave distortion, exchange favors the distortion but correlation does not. For a charge density wave distortion, both exchange and correlation favor the distortion. However, the electrostatic (Hartree) energy associated with the charge density wave is large and unfavorable unless some other charge distortion cancels it. For soft metals like Na, K, and Pb, Overhauser claims the ground state is a charge density wave state. Some other people believe it is not. There is absolutely no doubt (from experiment) that the layered compounds like TaS₂ (and many others) have charge density wave ground states. There are many experimental results for Na, K, and Pb that do not fit the nearly free electron paramagnetic ground state, which Overhauser can explain with the charge density wave model. At the moment, the question is not completely settled. In the charge density wave materials, the large electrostatic energy (due to the Hartree field produced by the electronic charge density distortion) must be compensated by an equal and opposite distortion associated with the lattice.

11.4 Correlation Effects—Divergence of Perturbation Theory

293

294

Correlation effects are those electron–electron interaction effects which come beyond the exchange term. Picturesquely we can represent the exchange term as shown in Fig. 11.4. The diagrams corresponding to the next order in perturbation theory are the second-order terms shown in Fig. 11.5 for (a) *direct* and (b) *exchange* interactions, respectively. The second-order perturbation to

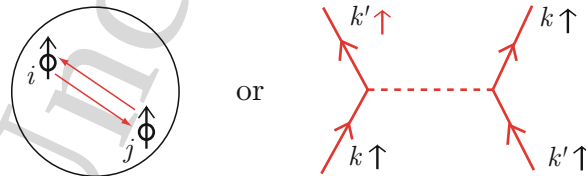


Fig. 11.4. Diagrammatic representation of the exchange interaction in the lowest order

² A.W. Overhauser, Phys. Rev. **167**, 691 (1968)

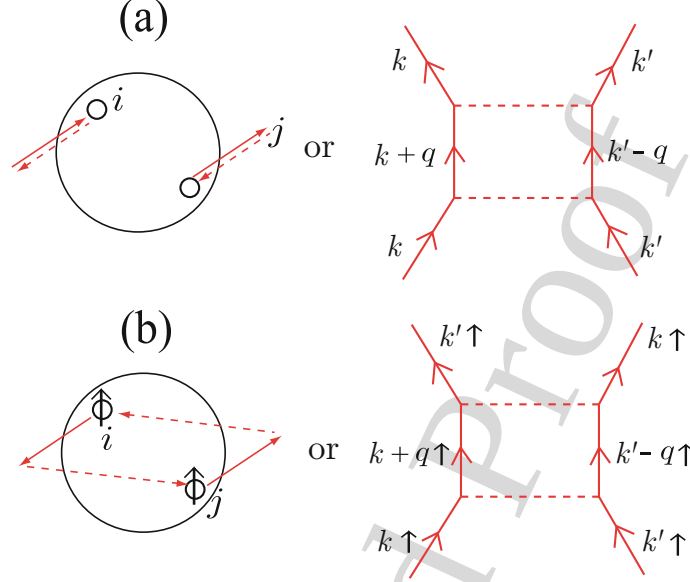


Fig. 11.5. Diagrammatic representation of the (a) direct and (b) exchange interactions in the second-order perturbation calculation

the energy is

$$E_2 = \sum_m \frac{\langle \Phi_0 | H' | \Phi_m \rangle \langle \Phi_m | H' | \Phi_0 \rangle}{E_0 - E_m} \quad (11.83)$$

Look at one term H_{ij} of $H' = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i \neq j} V_{ij}$. 301

$$E_{2D}(\mathbf{k}_i, \mathbf{k}_j) = \sum_{q \neq 0} \frac{\left| \left\langle e^{i\mathbf{k}_i \cdot \mathbf{x}} e^{i\mathbf{k}_j \cdot \mathbf{x}'} \left| \sum_{q_1} \frac{4\pi e^2}{q_1^2} e^{i\mathbf{q}_1 \cdot (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}')} \right| e^{i(\mathbf{k}_i + \mathbf{q}) \cdot \mathbf{x}} e^{i(\mathbf{k}_j - \mathbf{q}) \cdot \mathbf{x}'} \right\rangle \right|^2}{E_{\mathbf{k}_i} + E_{\mathbf{k}_j} - (E_{\mathbf{k}_i + \mathbf{q}} + E_{\mathbf{k}_j - \mathbf{q}})}, \quad (11.84)$$

where the subscript D denotes the contribution of the direct interaction. 302
Equation (11.84) can be reduced to 303

$$E_{2D}(k_i, k_j) = -m(4\pi e^2)^2 \sum_{q \neq 0} \frac{1}{q^4} \frac{1}{q^2 + \mathbf{q} \cdot (\mathbf{k}_i - \mathbf{k}_j)}, \quad (11.85)$$

where we have set $\hbar = 1$. Thus, we have 304

$$E_{2D}^{\text{TOTAL}} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\substack{\mathbf{k}_i \neq \mathbf{k}_j; k_i, k_j < k_F \\ |\mathbf{k}_i + \mathbf{q}|, |\mathbf{k}_j - \mathbf{q}| > k_F}} E_{2D}(k_i, k_j). \quad (11.86)$$

Summing over spins and converting sums to integrals we have³ 305

³ M. Gell-Mann, K.A. Brueckner, Phys. Rev. **106**, 364 (1957).

$$E_{2D}^{\text{Total}} = -\frac{e^4 m}{16\pi^7} \int \frac{d^3 q}{q^4} \int_{\substack{k_i < k_F \\ |\mathbf{k}_i + \mathbf{q}| > k_F}} d^3 k_i \int_{\substack{k_j < k_F \\ |\mathbf{k}_j + \mathbf{q}| > k_F}} d^3 k_j \frac{1}{q^2 + \mathbf{q} \cdot (\mathbf{k}_i + \mathbf{k}_j)}. \quad (11.87) \quad 306$$

It is not difficult to see that E_{2D}^{Total} diverges because of the presence of the factor q^{-4} . In a similar way, one can show that

$$E_{2X}^{\text{Total}} = \frac{e^4 m}{32\pi^7} \int \frac{d^3 q}{q^2} \int_{\substack{k_i < k_F \\ |\mathbf{k}_i + \mathbf{q}| > k_F}} d^3 k_i \int_{\substack{k_j < k_F \\ |\mathbf{k}_j + \mathbf{q}| > k_F}} d^3 k_j \frac{1}{q^2 + \mathbf{q} \cdot (\mathbf{k}_i + \mathbf{k}_j)} \times \frac{1}{(\mathbf{q} + \mathbf{k}_i + \mathbf{k}_j)^2}. \quad (11.88) \quad 309$$

This number is finite and has been evaluated numerically (a very complicated numerical job) with the result

$$E_{2X}^{\text{Total}} = N \cdot \frac{e^2}{2a_0} \times 0.046 \pm 0.002. \quad (11.89)$$

All terms beyond second-order diverge because of the factor $(\frac{1}{q^2})^m$ coming from the matrix elements of the Coulomb interaction.

The divergence results from the long range of the Coulomb interaction. Gell-Mann and Brueckner overcame the divergence difficulty by formally summing the divergent perturbation expansion to infinite order.

What they were actually accomplishing was, essentially, taking account of screening. For the present, we will concentrate on understanding something about screening in an electron gas. Later, we will discuss the diagrammatic type expansions and the ground state energy.

11.5 Linear Response Theory

We will investigate the self-consistent (Hartree) field set up by some external disturbance in an electron gas. In order to accomplish this it is very useful to introduce the single particle density matrix.

11.5.1 Density Matrix

Suppose that we have a statistical ensemble of N systems labelled $k = 1, 2, 3, \dots, N$. Let the normalized wave function for the k th system in the ensemble be given by Ψ_k . Expand Ψ_k in terms of a complete orthonormal set of basis functions ϕ_n

$$\Psi_k = \sum_n c_{nk} \phi_n; \quad \sum_n |c_{nk}|^2 = 1. \quad (11.90)$$

11.5 Linear Response Theory 329

The expectation value of some quantum mechanical operator $\hat{A}$ in the k^{th} system of the ensemble is 330
331

$$A_k = \int d\tau \Psi_k^* \hat{A} \Psi_k. \quad (11.91)$$

The statistical average (over all systems in the ensemble) is given by 332

$$\begin{aligned} \langle A \rangle &= \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=1}^N A_k, \\ &= \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=1}^N \int d^3\tau \Psi_k^* \hat{A} \Psi_k. \end{aligned} \quad (11.92)$$

Substitute for Ψ_k in terms of the basis functions ϕ_n . This gives 333

$$\langle A \rangle = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=1}^N \sum_{m,n} c_{mk}^* c_{nk} \langle \phi_m | \hat{A} | \phi_n \rangle. \quad (11.93)$$

But $\langle \phi_m | \hat{A} | \phi_n \rangle = A_{mn}$, the (m, n) matrix element of $\hat{A}$ in the representation $\{\phi_n\}$. Now define a density matrix $\hat{\rho}$ as follows 334
335

$$\rho_{nm} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=1}^N c_{mk}^* c_{nk}. \quad (11.94)$$

Then, $\langle A \rangle$ can be written 336

$$\langle A \rangle = \sum_{m,n} \rho_{nm} A_{mn} = \sum_n (\hat{\rho} \hat{A})_{nn} = \text{Tr} (\hat{\rho} \hat{A}). \quad (11.95) \quad 337$$

This states that the ensemble average of a quantum mechanical operator $\hat{A}$ 338
is simply the trace of the product of the density operator (or *density matrix*) 339
and the operator $\hat{A}$. 340

11.5.2 Properties of Density Matrix 341

From the definition (11.94), it is clear that $\rho_{nm}^* = \rho_{mn}$. Because the unit operator $\mathbf{1}$ must have an ensemble average of unity, we have that 342
343

$$\text{Tr} \hat{\rho} = 1. \quad (11.96)$$

Because $\text{Tr} \hat{\rho} = \sum \rho_{nn} = 1$, it is clear that $0 \leq \rho_{nn} \leq 1$ for every n . ρ_{nn} is simply the probability that the state ϕ_n is realized in the ensemble. 344
345

11.5.3 Change of Representation 346

Let S be a unitary matrix that transforms the orthonormal basis set $\{\phi_n\}$ 347
into a new orthonormal basis set $\{\tilde{\phi}_n\}$. If we write 348

330 11 Many Body Interactions – Introduction

$$\tilde{\phi}_l = \sum_n \phi_n S_{nl}, \quad (11.97)$$

then we have

$$\phi_m = \sum_l S_{ml}^* \tilde{\phi}_l. \quad (11.98) \quad 349$$

It can be proved by remembering that, because S is unitary, $S^{-1} = S^\dagger = \tilde{S}^*$ 350
or $S_{ml}^* = (S^{-1})_{lm}$. Now, write the wave function for the k^{th} system in the 351
ensemble, in terms of new basis functions, as 352

$$\Psi_k = \sum_l \tilde{c}_{lk} \tilde{\phi}_l. \quad (11.99)$$

Remember that

$$\Psi_k = \sum_n c_{nk} \phi_n. \quad (11.100) \quad 353$$

By substituting (11.98) in (11.100), we find

$$\Psi_k = \sum_n c_{nk} \sum_l S_{nl}^* \tilde{\phi}_l = \sum_l \left(\sum_n c_{nk} S_{nl}^* \right) \tilde{\phi}_l. \quad (11.101) \quad 354$$

By comparing (11.101) with (11.99), we find

$$\tilde{c}_{lk} = \sum_n c_{nk} S_{nl}^*. \quad (11.102) \quad 355$$

The expression for the density matrix in the new representation is

$$\tilde{\rho}_{lp} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=1}^N \tilde{c}_{pk}^* \tilde{c}_{lk}. \quad (11.103) \quad 356$$

Now, use (11.102) and its complex conjugate in (11.103) to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{\rho}_{lp} &= \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=1}^N \sum_m c_{mk}^* S_{mp} \sum_n c_{nk} S_{nl}^* \\ &= \sum_{mn} S_{mp} \rho_{nm} S_{nl}^*, \end{aligned} \quad (11.104) \quad 357$$

since $\rho_{nm} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=1}^N c_{mk}^* c_{nk}$. But (11.104) can be rewritten

$$\tilde{\rho}_{lp} = \sum_{mn} (S^{-1})_{ln} \rho_{nm} S_{mp}$$

or

$$\tilde{\rho} = S^{-1} \hat{\rho} S = S^\dagger \hat{\rho} S. \quad (11.105) \quad 359$$

The average (over the ensemble) of an operator $\hat{A}$ is given in the new 360
representation by 361

$$\begin{aligned}\langle \tilde{A} \rangle &= \text{Tr}(\tilde{\rho} \tilde{A}) = \text{Tr}(S^{-1} \rho S S^{-1} A S) \\ &= \text{Tr}(S^{-1} \rho A S).\end{aligned}$$

But the trace of a product of two matrices is independent of the order, i.e. $\text{Tr} AB = \text{Tr} BA$. Therefore, we have

$$\langle \tilde{A} \rangle = \text{Tr} \rho \hat{A} = \langle A \rangle. \quad (11.106)$$

This means that the ensemble average of a quantum mechanical operator $\hat{A}$ is independent of the representation chosen for the density matrix.

11.5.4 Equation of Motion of Density Matrix

The Schrödinger equation for the k^{th} system in the ensemble can be written

$$i\hbar \dot{\Psi}_k = \hat{H} \Psi_k. \quad (11.107)$$

Expressing Ψ_k in terms of the basis functions ϕ_m gives

$$i\hbar \sum_m \dot{c}_{mk} \phi_m = \hat{H} \sum_m c_{mk} \phi_m. \quad (11.108)$$

Taking the scalar product with ϕ_n gives

$$i\hbar \dot{c}_{nk} = \sum_l \langle n | \hat{H} | l \rangle c_{lk} = \sum_l H_{nl} c_{lk}. \quad (11.109)$$

The complex conjugate of (11.107) can be written

$$-i\hbar \dot{\Psi}_k^* = \hat{H}^\dagger \Psi_k^*. \quad (11.110)$$

Expressing Ψ_k^* in terms of the basis functions ϕ_l gives

$$-i\hbar \sum_l \dot{c}_{lk}^* \phi_l^* = \sum_l \hat{H}^\dagger c_{lk}^* \phi_l^*. \quad (11.111)$$

Now, multiply by ϕ_n and integrate using

$$\int d^3\tau \phi_l^* \phi_n = \delta_{ln}$$

and

$$\int d^3\tau \phi_l^* \hat{H}^\dagger \phi_n = H_{ln}^\dagger = H_{ln},$$

since the Hamiltonian is a Hermitian operator. This gives

$$i\hbar \dot{c}_{nk}^* = - \sum_l c_{lk}^* H_{ln}. \quad (11.112)$$

332 11 Many Body Interactions – Introduction

Now, look at the time rate of change of ρ_{mn} .

376

$$i\hbar\dot{\rho}_{mn} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=1}^N i\hbar [\dot{c}_{nk}^* c_{mk} + c_{nk}^* \dot{c}_{mk}]. \quad (11.113)$$

Now, use (11.109) and (11.112) for $\dot{c}_{nk}$ and $\dot{c}_{nk}^*$ to have

377

$$\begin{aligned} i\hbar\dot{\rho}_{mn} &= \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=1}^N [-\sum_l H_{ln} c_{lk}^* c_{mk} + \sum_l c_{nk}^* H_{ml} c_{lk}], \\ &= \sum_l [-H_{ln} \rho_{ml} + \rho_{ln} H_{ml}]. \end{aligned} \quad (11.114)$$

We can reorder the terms as follows:

378

$$\begin{aligned} i\hbar\dot{\rho}_{mn} &= \sum_l [H_{ml} \rho_{ln} - \rho_{ml} H_{ln}], \\ &= (H\rho - \rho H)_{mn}. \end{aligned} \quad (11.115)$$

This is the equation of motion of the density matrix

379

$$i\hbar\dot{\rho} = [H, \rho]_- . \quad (11.116) \quad 380$$

11.5.5 Single Particle Density Matrix of a Fermi Gas

381

Suppose that the single particle Hamiltonian H_0 has eigenvalues ε_n and eigenfunctions $|n\rangle$.

382

$$H_0|n\rangle = \varepsilon_n|n\rangle. \quad (11.117)$$

Corresponding to H_0 , there is a single particle density matrix ρ_0 which is time independent and represents the equilibrium distribution of particles among the single particle states at temperature T . Because $\dot{\rho}_0 = 0$, H_0 and ρ_0 must commute. Thus, ρ_0 can be diagonalized by the eigenfunctions of H_0 . We can write

384

385

386

387

$$\rho_0|n\rangle = f_0(\varepsilon_n)|n\rangle. \quad (11.118) \quad 388$$

For $f_0(\varepsilon_n) = \left[\exp\left(\frac{\varepsilon_n - \zeta}{\Theta}\right) + 1 \right]^{-1}$, ρ_0 is the single particle density matrix for the grand ensemble with $\Theta = k_B T$ and the chemical potential ζ .

389

390

11.5.6 Linear Response Theory

391

We consider a degenerate electron gas and ask what happens when some external disturbance is introduced. For example, we might think of adding an external charge density (like a proton) to the electron gas. The electrons will respond to the disturbance, and ultimately set up a self-consistent field. We want to know what the self-consistent field is, how the external charge density is screened etc.⁴

392

393

394

395

396

397

⁴ See, for example, M.P. Greene, H.J. Lee, J.J. Quinn, S. Rodriguez, Phys. Rev. **177**, 1019 (1969).

Let the Hamiltonian in the absence of the self-consistent field be simply
given by $\mathcal{H}_0 = \frac{p^2}{2m}$

$$\mathcal{H}_0|k\rangle = \varepsilon_k|k\rangle. \quad (11.119)$$

H_0 is time independent, thus the equilibrium density matrix ρ_0 must be
independent of time. This means

$$[\mathcal{H}_0, \rho_0] = 0, \quad (11.120)$$

and therefore

$$\rho_0|k\rangle = f_0(\varepsilon_k)|k\rangle, \quad (11.121)$$

where

$$f_0(\varepsilon_k) = \frac{1}{e^{\frac{\varepsilon_k - \zeta}{\Theta}} + 1} \quad (11.122)$$

is the Fermi–Dirac distribution function. Now, let us introduce some external
disturbance. It will set up a self-consistent electromagnetic fields $[\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}, t),$
 $\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}, t)]$. We can describe these fields in terms of a scalar potential ϕ and a
vector potential $\mathbf{A}$

$$\mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}, \quad (11.123)$$

and

$$\mathbf{E} = -\frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial t} - \nabla \phi. \quad (11.124)$$

The Hamiltonian in the presence of the self-consistent field is written as

$$\mathcal{H} = \frac{1}{2m} \left(\mathbf{p} + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A} \right)^2 - e\phi. \quad (11.125)$$

This can be written as $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H}_0 + \mathcal{H}_1$, where up to terms linear in the
self-consistent field

$$\mathcal{H}_1 = \frac{e}{2c} (\mathbf{v}_0 \cdot \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{v}_0) - e\phi. \quad (11.126)$$

Here, $\mathbf{v}_0 = \frac{\mathbf{p}}{m}$. Now, let $\rho = \rho_0 + \rho_1$, where ρ_1 is a small deviation from ρ_0
caused by the self-consistent field. The equation of motion of ρ is

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \frac{i}{\hbar} [H, \rho]_- = 0. \quad (11.127)$$

Linearizing with respect to the self-consistent field gives

$$\frac{\partial \rho_1}{\partial t} + \frac{i}{\hbar} [H_0, \rho_1]_- + \frac{i}{\hbar} [H_1, \rho_0]_- = 0. \quad (11.128)$$

We shall investigate the situation in which $\mathbf{A}$, ϕ , ρ_1 are of the form $e^{i\omega t - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$.
Taking matrix elements gives

$$\langle k | \rho_1 | k' \rangle = \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{k'}) - f_0(\varepsilon_k)}{\varepsilon_{k'} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega} \langle k | \mathcal{H}_1 | k' \rangle. \quad (11.129)$$

334 11 Many Body Interactions – Introduction

Let us consider a most general component of $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}, t)$ and $\phi(\mathbf{r}, t)$ 420

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}, t) &= \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) e^{i\omega t - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}}, \\ \phi(\mathbf{r}, t) &= \phi(\mathbf{q}, \omega) e^{i\omega t - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}}.\end{aligned}\quad (11.130)$$

Thus, we have 421

$$\mathcal{H}_1 = \left[\frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{v}_0 e^{-i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}} + e^{-i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \mathbf{v}_0) - e\phi(\mathbf{q}, \omega) e^{-i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \right] e^{i\omega t}. \quad (11.131)$$

Define the operator $\mathbf{V}_q$ by 422

$$\mathbf{V}_q = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{v}_0 e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}} + \frac{1}{2} e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \mathbf{v}_0. \quad (11.132)$$

Then, the matrix element of $\mathcal{H}_1$ can be written 423

$$\langle k | \mathcal{H}_1 | k' \rangle = \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \langle k | \mathbf{V}_{-q} | k' \rangle - e\phi(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \langle k | e^{-i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}} | k' \rangle. \quad (11.133)$$

We want to know the charge and current densities at a position $\mathbf{r}_0$ at time t . 424

We can write 425

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}_0, t) &= \text{Tr} \left[-e \left(\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{v} \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) + \frac{1}{2} \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) \mathbf{v} \right) \hat{\rho} \right], \\ n(\mathbf{r}_0, t) &= \text{Tr} [-e \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) \hat{\rho}].\end{aligned}\quad (11.134) \quad 426$$

Here, $-e \left[\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{v} \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) + \frac{1}{2} \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) \mathbf{v} \right]$ is the operator for the current density 427
at position $\mathbf{r}_0$, while $-e \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0)$ is the charge density operator. The velocity 428
operator $\mathbf{v} = \frac{1}{m} (\mathbf{p} + \frac{e}{mc} \mathbf{A}) = \mathbf{v}_0 + \frac{e}{mc} \mathbf{A}$ is the velocity operator in the presence 429
of the self-consistent field. Because $\mathbf{v}_0 = \frac{\mathbf{p}}{m}$ contains the differential operator 430
 $-\frac{i\hbar}{m} \nabla$, it is important to express operator like $\mathbf{v}_0 e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$ and $\mathbf{v}_0 \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0)$ in the 431
symmetric form to make them Hermitian operators. 432

It is easy to see that 433

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}_0, t) &= -\frac{e^2}{mc} \sum_k \langle k | \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}, t) \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) \hat{\rho}_0 | k \rangle \\ &\quad - e \sum_k \langle k | \left[\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{v}_0 \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) + \frac{1}{2} \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) \mathbf{v}_0 \right] \hat{\rho}_1 | k \rangle.\end{aligned}\quad (11.135)$$

$\delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0)$ can be written as 434

$$\delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) = \Omega^{-1} \sum_{\mathbf{q}} e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0)}. \quad (11.136)$$

It is clear that $\langle k | \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}, t) \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) \rho_0 | k \rangle = \Omega^{-1} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}_0, t) f_0(\varepsilon_k)$. Here, of course, 435
 Ω is the volume of the system. For $\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}_0, t)$ we obtain 436

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}_0, t) = -\frac{e^2 n_0}{mc} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}_0, t) - \frac{e}{\Omega} \sum_{\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}', \mathbf{q}} \langle k' | \mathbf{V}_q | k \rangle e^{-i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}_0} \langle k | \hat{\rho}_1 | k' \rangle. \quad (11.137)$$

But we know the matrix element $\langle k|\rho_1|k'\rangle$ from (11.129). Taking the Fourier transform of $\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}_0, t)$ gives

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{j}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = & -\frac{e^2 n_0}{mc} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) - \frac{e^2}{\Omega c} \sum_{k, k'} \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{k'}) - f_0(\varepsilon_k)}{\varepsilon_{k'} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega} \langle k' | \mathbf{V}_q | k \rangle \langle k | \mathbf{V}_q | k' \rangle \cdot \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \\ & + \frac{e^2}{\Omega} \sum_{k, k'} \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{k'}) - f_0(\varepsilon_k)}{\varepsilon_{k'} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega} \langle k' | \mathbf{V}_q | k \rangle \langle k' | e^{i\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{r}} | k \rangle. \end{aligned} \quad (11.138)$$

This equation can be written as

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = -\frac{\omega_p^2}{4\pi c} [(\mathbf{1} + \mathbf{I}) \cdot \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) + \mathbf{K}\phi(\mathbf{q}, \omega)]. \quad (11.139)$$

Here, $\omega_p^2 = \frac{4\pi n_0 e^2}{m}$ is the plasma frequency of the electron gas whose density is $n_0 = \frac{N}{\Omega}$, and $\mathbf{1}$ is the unit tensor. The tensor $\mathbf{I}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ and the vector $\mathbf{K}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{I}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) &= \frac{m}{N} \sum_{k, k'} \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{k'}) - f_0(\varepsilon_k)}{\varepsilon_{k'} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega} \langle k' | \mathbf{V}_q | k \rangle \langle k' | \mathbf{V}_q | k \rangle^*, \\ \mathbf{K}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) &= \frac{mc}{N} \sum_{k, k'} \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{k'}) - f_0(\varepsilon_k)}{\varepsilon_{k'} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega} \langle k' | \mathbf{V}_q | k \rangle \langle k' | e^{i\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{r}} | k \rangle. \end{aligned} \quad (11.140)$$

For the plane wave wave functions $|k\rangle = \Omega^{-1/2} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}$ the matrix elements are easily evaluated

$$\begin{aligned} \langle k' | e^{i\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{r}} | k \rangle &= \delta_{k', k+q}, \\ \langle k' | \mathbf{V}_q | k \rangle &= \frac{\hbar}{m} \left(\mathbf{k} + \frac{\mathbf{q}}{2} \right) \delta_{k', k+q}. \end{aligned} \quad (11.141)$$

11.5.7 Gauge Invariance

The transformations

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{A}' &= \mathbf{A} + \nabla\chi = \mathbf{A} - i\mathbf{q}\chi \\ \phi' &= \phi - \frac{1}{c}\dot{\chi} = \phi - i\frac{\omega}{c}\chi \end{aligned} \quad (11.142)$$

leave the fields $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ unchanged. Therefore, such a change of gauge must leave $\mathbf{j}$ unchanged. Substitution into the expression for $\mathbf{j}$ gives the condition

$$(\mathbf{1} + \mathbf{I}) \cdot (-i\mathbf{q}) + \mathbf{K}(-i\frac{\omega}{c}) = 0, \text{ or } \mathbf{q} + \mathbf{I} \cdot \mathbf{q} + \frac{\omega}{c}\mathbf{K} = 0. \quad (11.143)$$

Clearly no generality is lost by choosing the z -axis parallel to $\mathbf{q}$. Then, because the summand is an odd function of k_x or k_y we have

$$I_{xx} = I_{zx} = I_{yz} = I_{zy} = I_{xy} = I_{yx} = K_x = K_y = 0. \quad (11.144)$$

336 11 Many Body Interactions – Introduction

Thus, two of the three components of the relation

453

$$\mathbf{q} + \mathbf{I} \cdot \mathbf{q} + \frac{\omega}{c} \mathbf{K} = 0$$

hold automatically. It remains to be proven that

454

$$q + I_{zz}q + \frac{\omega}{c} K_z = 0 \quad (11.145)$$

We demonstrate this by writing I_{zz} and K_z in the following form

455

$$I_{zz} = \frac{\hbar^2}{mN} \left\{ \sum_k -\frac{f_0(\varepsilon_k)}{\varepsilon_{k+q} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega} \left(k_z + \frac{q}{2}\right)^2 + \sum_k \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{k+q})}{\varepsilon_{k+q} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega} \left(k_z + \frac{q}{2}\right)^2 \right\} \quad (11.146)$$

In the second term, let $k + q = \tilde{k}$ so that $k = \tilde{k} - q$; then let the dummy variable $\tilde{k}$ equal $-k$ to have

457

$$\frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{k+q})}{\varepsilon_{k+q} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega} \left(k_z + \frac{q}{2}\right)^2 \rightarrow \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_k)}{\varepsilon_k - \varepsilon_{k+q} - \hbar\omega} \left(-k_z - \frac{q}{2}\right)^2.$$

With this replacement qI_{zz} can be written

458

$$qI_{zz} = -\frac{\hbar^2}{mN} \sum_k f_0(\varepsilon_k) \left(k_z + \frac{q}{2}\right)^2 \left[\frac{q}{\varepsilon_{k+q} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega} + \frac{q}{\varepsilon_{k+q} - \varepsilon_k + \hbar\omega} \right]. \quad (11.147)$$

Do exactly the same for K_z to get

459

$$\frac{\omega}{c} K_z = \frac{1}{N} \sum_k f_0(\varepsilon_k) \left(k_z + \frac{q}{2}\right) \left[\frac{\hbar\omega}{\varepsilon_{k+q} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega} - \frac{\hbar\omega}{\varepsilon_{k+q} - \varepsilon_k + \hbar\omega} \right]. \quad (11.148)$$

Adding qI_{zz} to $\frac{\omega}{c} K_z$ gives

460

$$qI_{zz} + \frac{\omega}{c} K_z = -\frac{1}{N} \sum_k f_0(\varepsilon_k) \left(k_z + \frac{q}{2}\right) \left[\frac{\frac{\hbar^2}{m} q (k_z + q/2) - \hbar\omega}{\varepsilon_{k+q} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega} + \frac{\frac{\hbar^2}{m} q (k_z + q/2) + \hbar\omega}{\varepsilon_{k+q} - \varepsilon_k + \hbar\omega} \right] \quad (11.149)$$

But $\varepsilon_{k+q} - \varepsilon_k = \frac{\hbar^2}{m} q (k_z + q/2)$, therefore the term in square brackets is equal to 2, and hence we have

462

$$qI_{zz} + \frac{\omega}{c} K_z = -\frac{1}{N} \sum_k f_0(\varepsilon_k) \left(k_z + \frac{q}{2}\right) \times 2. \quad (11.150)$$

The first term $\sum_k f_0(\varepsilon_k) k_z = 0$ since it is an odd function of k_z . The second term is $-\frac{q}{N} \sum_k f_0(\varepsilon_k) = -q$. This gives $qI_{zz} + \frac{\omega}{c} K_z = -q$, meaning that

463

464

(11.145) is satisfied and our result is gauge invariant. Because we have established gauge invariance, we may now choose any gauge. Let us take $\phi = 0$; then we have

$$\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = -\frac{i\omega}{c} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \quad (11.151)$$

for the fields having time dependence of $e^{i\omega t}$. Substitute this for $\mathbf{A}$ and obtain

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = -\frac{n_0 e^2}{mc} \frac{i}{\omega} [\mathbf{1} + \underline{\mathbf{I}}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)] \cdot \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{q}, \omega). \quad (11.152)$$

We can write this equation as $\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$, where $\underline{\sigma}$, the conductivity tensor is given by

$$\underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{\omega_p^2}{4\pi i \omega} [\mathbf{1} + \underline{\mathbf{I}}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)]. \quad (11.153)$$

Recall that

$$\underline{\mathbf{I}}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{m}{N} \sum_{\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}'} \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{k'}) - f_0(\varepsilon_k)}{\varepsilon_{k'} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega} \langle k' | \mathbf{V}_q | k \rangle \langle k' | \mathbf{V}_q | k \rangle^*. \quad (11.154)$$

The gauge invariant result⁵

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \quad (11.155)$$

corresponds to a nonlocal relationship between current density and electric field

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \int d^3 r' \underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}', t) \cdot \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}', t). \quad (11.156)$$

This can be seen by simply writing

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{j}(\mathbf{q}) &= \int d^3 r \mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}) e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}}, \\ \underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}) &= \int d^3 (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}') \underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}') e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}')}, \\ \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{q}) &= \int d^3 r' \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}') e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}'}, \end{aligned} \quad (11.157)$$

and substituting into (11.155). Ohm's law $\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}) = \underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r})$, which is the local relation between $\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r})$ and $\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r})$, occurs when $\underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q})$ is independent of $\mathbf{q}$ or, in other words, when

$$\underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}') = \underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{r}) \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}').$$

Evaluation of $\underline{\mathbf{I}}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$

We can see by symmetry that $I_{xx} = I_{yy}$ and I_{zz} are the only non-vanishing components of $\underline{\mathbf{I}}$. The integration over $\mathbf{k}$ can be performed to obtain explicit expressions for I_{xx} and I_{zz} . We demonstrate this for I_{zz}

⁵ See, for example, M.P. Greene, H.J. Lee, J.J. Quinn, S. Rodriguez, Phys. Rev. **177**, 1019 (1969) for three-dimensional case and K.S. Yi, J.J. Quinn, Phys. Rev. B **27**, 1184 (1983) for quasi two-dimensional case.

338 11 Many Body Interactions – Introduction

$$I_{zz}(q, \omega) = \frac{m}{N} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{k+q}) - f_0(\varepsilon_k)}{\varepsilon_{k+q} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega} \frac{\hbar^2}{m^2} \left(k_z + \frac{q}{2}\right)^2. \quad (11.158)$$

We can actually return to (11.147) and convert the sum over $\mathbf{k}$ to an integral 486
to obtain 487

$$I_{zz}(q, \omega) = -\frac{\hbar^2}{mN} \left(\frac{L}{2\pi}\right)^3 \int d^3k f_0(\varepsilon_k) \left[\frac{(k_z + \frac{q}{2})^2}{\frac{\hbar^2}{m}q(k_z + \frac{q}{2}) - \hbar\omega} + \frac{(k_z + \frac{q}{2})^2}{\frac{\hbar^2}{m}q(k_z + \frac{q}{2}) + \hbar\omega} \right]. \quad (11.159)$$

For zero temperature, $f_0(\varepsilon_k) = 1$ if $k < k_F$ and zero otherwise. This gives 488

$$I_{zz}(q, \omega) = -\frac{1}{4\pi^2 n_0 q} \int_{-k_F}^{k_F} dk_z (k_F^2 - k_z^2) \left(k_z + \frac{q}{2}\right)^2 \left[\frac{1}{k_z + \frac{q}{2} - \frac{m\omega}{\hbar q}} + \frac{1}{k_z + \frac{q}{2} + \frac{m\omega}{\hbar q}} \right]. \quad (11.160)$$

It is convenient to introduce dimensionless variables z , x , and u defined by 489

$$z = \frac{q}{2k_F}, \quad x = \frac{k_z}{k_F}, \quad \text{and} \quad u = \frac{\omega}{qv_F}. \quad (11.161)$$

Then, I_{zz} can be written 490

$$I_{zz}(z, u) = -\frac{3}{8z} \int_{-1}^1 dx (1 - x^2)(x + z)^2 \left[\frac{1}{x + z - u} + \frac{1}{x + z + u} \right]. \quad (11.162)$$

If we define $\mathcal{I}_n$ by 491

$$\mathcal{I}_n = \int_{-1}^1 dx x^n \left[\frac{1}{x + z - u} + \frac{1}{x + z + u} \right], \quad (11.163)$$

then I_{zz} can be written 492

$$I_{zz}(z, u) = -\frac{3}{8z} [-\mathcal{I}_4 - 2z\mathcal{I}_3 + (1 - z^2)\mathcal{I}_2 + 2z\mathcal{I}_1 + z^2\mathcal{I}_0]. \quad (11.164)$$

From standard integral tables one can find 493

$$\int dx \frac{x^n}{x + a} = \frac{1}{n} x^n - \frac{a}{n-1} x^{n-1} + \frac{a^2}{n-2} x^{n-2} - \cdots + (-a)^n \ln(x + a). \quad (11.165)$$

Using this result to evaluate $\mathcal{I}_n$ and substituting the results into (11.164) we 494
find 495

$$I_{zz}(z, u) = -\left(1 + \frac{3}{2}u^2\right) - \frac{3u^2}{8z} \left\{ [1 - (z - u)^2] \ln\left(\frac{z - u + 1}{z - u - 1}\right) + [1 - (z + u)^2] \ln\left(\frac{z + u + 1}{z + u - 1}\right) \right\}. \quad (11.166)$$

In exactly the same way, one can evaluate $I_{xx}(=I_{yy})$ to obtain 497

$$I_{xx}(z, u) = \frac{3}{8} \left(z^2 + 3u^2 - \frac{5}{3} \right) - \frac{3}{32z} \left\{ [1 - (z - u)^2] \ln \left(\frac{z - u + 1}{z - u - 1} \right) \right. \\ \left. + [1 - (z + u)^2] \ln \left(\frac{z + u + 1}{z + u - 1} \right) \right\}. \quad (11.167) \quad 498$$

11.6 Lindhard Dielectric Function 499

In general the electromagnetic properties of a material can be described by 500
two tensors $\underline{\varepsilon}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ and $\underline{\mu}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$, where 501

$$\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \underline{\varepsilon}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \underline{\mu}^{-1}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{q}, \omega). \quad (11.168)$$

For a degenerate electron gas in the absence of a dc magnetic field $\underline{\varepsilon}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ and 502
 $\underline{\mu}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ will be scalars. In his now classic paper “On the properties of a gas of 503
charged particles”, Jens Lindhard⁶ used, instead of $\underline{\varepsilon}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ and $\underline{\mu}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$, the 504
longitudinal and *transverse* dielectric functions defined by 505

$$\varepsilon^{(l)} = \varepsilon \quad \text{and} \quad \varepsilon^{(\text{tr})} = \varepsilon^{(l)} + \frac{c^2 q^2}{\omega^2} (1 - \mu^{-1}). \quad (11.169)$$

Lindhard found this notation to be convenient because he always worked in 506
the particular gauge in which $\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{A} = 0$. In this gauge the Maxwell equation 507
for $\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \frac{1}{c} \dot{\mathbf{E}} + \frac{4\pi}{c} (\mathbf{j}_{\text{ind}} + \mathbf{j}_0)$ can be written, for the fields of the form 508
 $e^{i\omega t - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$, 509

$$-i\mathbf{q} \times (-i\mathbf{q} \times \mathbf{A}) = \frac{i\omega}{c} \mathbf{E} + \frac{4\pi}{c} \underline{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{E} + \frac{4\pi}{c} \mathbf{j}_0. \quad (11.170)$$

But defining 510

$$\underline{\varepsilon} = 1 - \frac{4\pi i}{\omega} \underline{\sigma},$$

and using $\mathbf{E} = i\mathbf{q}\phi - \frac{i\omega}{c} \mathbf{A}$ allows us to rewrite (11.170) as 511

$$q^2 \left(1 - \frac{\omega^2}{c^2 q^2} \varepsilon^{(\text{tr})} \right) \mathbf{A} = -\frac{\omega}{c} \varepsilon^{(l)} \mathbf{q}\phi + \frac{4\pi}{c} \mathbf{j}_0. \quad (11.171)$$

Here, we have made use of the fact that $\underline{\varepsilon} \cdot \mathbf{q}$ involves only $\varepsilon^{(l)}$, while $\underline{\varepsilon} \cdot \mathbf{A}$ 512
involves only $\varepsilon^{(\text{tr})}$ since $\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{A} = 0$. If we compare (11.171) with the similar 513
equation obtained from $\nabla \times \mathbf{H} = \frac{1}{c} \dot{\mathbf{D}} + \frac{4\pi}{c} \mathbf{j}_0$ when $\mathbf{H}$ is set equal to $\mu^{-1} \mathbf{B}$ 514
and $\mathbf{D} = \varepsilon \mathbf{E}$, viz. 515

⁶ J. Lindhard, Kgl. Danske Videnskab. Selskab, Mat.-Fys. Medd. **28**, 8 (1954); *ibid.*,
27, 15 (1953).

340 11 Many Body Interactions – Introduction

$$q^2 \left(\mu^{-1} - \frac{\omega^2}{c^2 q^2} \varepsilon \right) \mathbf{A} = -\frac{\omega}{c} \varepsilon \mathbf{q} \phi + \frac{4\pi}{c} \mathbf{j}_0, \quad (11.172)$$

we see that

$$\varepsilon = \varepsilon^{(l)} \text{ and } \mu^{-1} - \frac{\omega^2}{c^2 q^2} \varepsilon^{(l)} = 1 - \frac{\omega^2}{c^2 q^2} \varepsilon^{(\text{tr})}. \quad (11.173)$$

This last equation is simply rewritten

$$\varepsilon^{(\text{tr})} = \varepsilon^{(l)} + \frac{c^2 q^2}{\omega^2} (1 - \mu^{-1}). \quad (11.174)$$

We have chosen $\mathbf{q}$ to be in the z -direction, hence

$$\varepsilon^{(l)} = 1 - \frac{4\pi i}{\omega} \sigma_{zz} \text{ and } \varepsilon^{(\text{tr})} = 1 - \frac{4\pi i}{\omega} \sigma_{xx}. \quad (11.175)$$

Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \varepsilon^{(l)}(q, \omega) &= 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} [1 + I_{zz}(q, \omega)] \\ \varepsilon^{(\text{tr})}(q, \omega) &= 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} [1 + I_{xx}(q, \omega)]. \end{aligned} \quad (11.176)$$

11.6.1 Longitudinal Dielectric Constant

It is quite apparent from the expression for I_{zz} that $\varepsilon^{(l)}$ has an imaginary part, because for certain values of z and u , the arguments appearing in the logarithmic functions in I_{zz} are negative. Recall that

$$\ln(x + iy) = \frac{1}{2} \ln(x^2 + y^2) + i \arctan \frac{y}{x}. \quad (11.177)$$

One can write $\varepsilon^{(l)} = \varepsilon_1^{(l)} + i\varepsilon_2^{(l)}$. It is not difficult to show that

$$\varepsilon_2^{(l)} = 3u^2 \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} \times \begin{cases} \frac{\pi}{2} u & \text{for } z + u < 1 \\ \frac{\pi}{8z} [1 - (z - u)^2] & \text{for } |z - u| < 1 < z + u \\ 0 & \text{for } |z - u| > 1 \end{cases} \quad (11.178)$$

The correct sign of $\varepsilon_2^{(l)}$ can be obtained by giving ω a small positive imaginary part (then $e^{i\omega t} \rightarrow 0$ as $t \rightarrow \infty$) which allows one to go to zero after evaluation of $\varepsilon_2^{(l)}$. The meaning of $\varepsilon_2^{(l)}$ is not difficult to understand. Suppose that an effective electric field of the form

$$\mathbf{E} = \mathbf{E}_0 e^{-i\omega t + i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}} + \text{c.c.} \quad (11.179)$$

perturbs the electron gas. We can write $\mathbf{E} = -\nabla \phi$ and then $\phi_0 = \frac{iE_0}{q}$. The perturbation acting on the electrons is $H' = -e\phi$. The power (dissipated in the system of unit volume) involving absorption or emission processes of

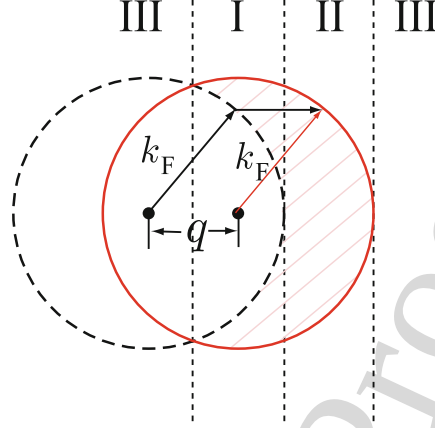


Fig. 11.6. Region of the integration indicated in (11.184)

energy $\hbar\omega$ is given by $\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \hbar\omega W(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$. Here, $W(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ is the transition 533
rate per unit volume, which is given by the standard Fermi golden rule. Then, 534
we can write the absorption power by 535

$$\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} \frac{1}{\Omega} \sum_{\substack{k < k_F \\ k' > k_F}} |\langle k' | -e\phi_0 e^{i\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{r}} | k \rangle|^2 \hbar\omega \delta(\varepsilon_{k'} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega). \quad (11.180)$$

This results in 536

$$\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} \frac{1}{\Omega} \sum_{\substack{k < k_F \\ |\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q}| > k_F}} e^2 |\phi_0|^2 \hbar\omega \delta(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega). \quad (11.181)$$

Now, convert the sums to integrals to obtain 537

$$\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} \frac{e^2}{\Omega} \left(\frac{E_0}{q} \right)^2 \hbar\omega 2 \left(\frac{L}{2\pi} \right)^3 \int' d^3k \delta(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega). \quad (11.182)$$

The prime in the integral denotes the conditions $k < k_F$ and $|\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q}| > k_F$ (see 538
Fig. 11.6). Now, write $\int d^3k = \int dk_z d^2k_\perp$. Thus 539

$$\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{e^2 \omega E_0^2}{2\pi^2 q^2} \int_{\substack{k < k_F \\ |\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q}| > k_F}} dk_z d^2k_\perp \delta\left(\frac{\hbar^2 q}{m} \left(k_z + \frac{q}{2}\right) - \hbar\omega\right). \quad (11.183)$$

Integrating over k_z and using $\delta(ax) = \frac{1}{a}\delta(x)$ gives $k_z = \frac{m\omega}{\hbar q} - \frac{q}{2}$ so that 540

$$\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{me^2 \omega E_0^2}{2\pi \hbar^2 q^3} \int'_{k_z = \frac{m\omega}{\hbar q} - \frac{q}{2}} d^2k_\perp. \quad (11.184)$$

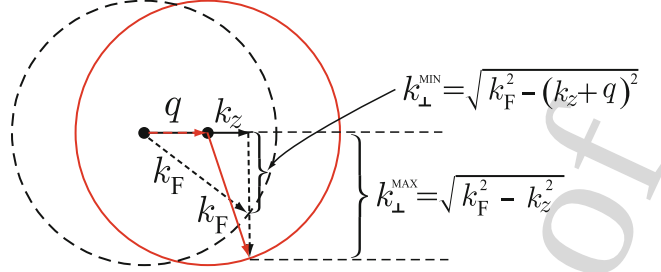


Fig. 11.7. Range of the values of $k_{\perp}$ appearing in (11.184)

The solid sphere in Fig. 11.6 represents $|\mathbf{k}| = k_F$. The dashed sphere has $|\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{q}| = k_F$. Only electrons in the hatched region can be excited to unoccupied states by adding wave vector $\mathbf{q}$ to the initial value of $\mathbf{k}$. We divide the hatched region into part I and part II. In region I, $-\frac{q}{2} < k_z < k_F - q$, where $k_z = \frac{m\omega}{\hbar q} - \frac{q}{2}$. Thus

$$-\frac{q}{2} < \frac{m\omega}{\hbar q} - \frac{q}{2} < k_F - q. \quad (11.185)$$

Divide (11.185) by k_F to obtain

$$-z < u - z < 1 - 2z,$$

where $z = \frac{q}{2k_F}$, $x = \frac{k_z}{k_F}$, and $u = \frac{\omega}{qv_F}$. Now, add $2z$ to each term to have

$$z < u + z < 1 \text{ or } u + z < 1. \quad (11.186)$$

In this region, the values of $k_{\perp}$ must be located between the following limits (see Fig. 11.7):

$$k_F^2 - \left(\frac{m\omega}{\hbar q} + \frac{q}{2} \right)^2 < k_{\perp}^2 < k_F^2 - \left(\frac{m\omega}{\hbar q} - \frac{q}{2} \right)^2.$$

Therefore, we have

$$\int d^2 k_{\perp} = \left[k_F^2 - \left(\frac{m\omega}{\hbar q} - \frac{q}{2} \right)^2 \right] - \left[k_F^2 - \left(\frac{m\omega}{\hbar q} + \frac{q}{2} \right)^2 \right] = \frac{2m\omega}{\hbar}. \quad (11.187)$$

Substituting into (11.184) gives

$$\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{\omega}{2\pi} |E_0|^2 \frac{me^2}{\hbar^2 q^3} \frac{2m\omega}{\hbar}. \quad (11.188)$$

Here, we recall that energy dissipated per unit time in the system of volume Ω is also given by $\mathcal{E} = \int_{\Omega} \mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{E} d^3 r = 2\sigma_1(\mathbf{q}, \omega) |E_0|^2 \Omega$ and we have that $\varepsilon(q, \omega) = 1 + \frac{4\pi i}{\omega} \sigma(q, \omega)$ following the form $e^{-i\omega t}$ for the time dependence of

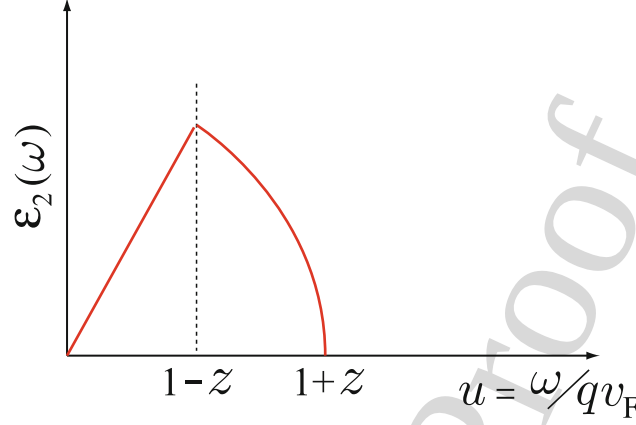


Fig. 11.8. Frequency dependence of $\varepsilon_2^{(l)}(\omega)$ the imaginary part of the dielectric function

the fields. The power dissipation per unit volume is then written

$$\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{\omega}{2\pi} \varepsilon_2(q, \omega) |E_0|^2. \quad (11.189)$$

We note that $\varepsilon_2(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$, the imaginary part of the dielectric function determines the energy dissipation in the matter due to a field $\mathbf{E}$ of wave vector $\mathbf{q}$ and frequency ω . By comparing (11.188) and (11.189), we see that, for region I,

$$\varepsilon_2^{(l)}(q, \omega) = \frac{3\omega_p^2}{q^2 v_F^2} \frac{\pi}{2} u \quad \text{if } u + z < 1. \quad (11.190)$$

In region II, $k_F - q < k_z < k_F$. But $k_z = \frac{m\omega}{\hbar q} - \frac{q}{2} = k_F(u - z)$. Combining these and dividing by k_F we have $1 - 2z < u - z < 1$. Because $z < 1$ in region II, the conditions can be expressed as $|z - u| < 1 < z + u$. In this case $0 < k_\perp^2 < k_F^2 - k_z^2$, and, of course, $k_z = k_F(u - z)$. Carrying out the algebra gives for region II

$$\varepsilon_2^{(l)}(q, \omega) = \frac{3\omega_p^2}{q^2 v_F^2} \frac{\pi}{8z} [1 - (z - u)^2] \quad \text{if } |z - u| < 1 < z + u. \quad (11.191)$$

For region III, it is easy to see that $\varepsilon_2^{(l)}(\omega) = 0$. Figure 11.8 shows the frequency dependence of $\varepsilon_2^{(l)}(\omega)$. Thus, we see that the imaginary part of the dielectric function $\varepsilon_2^{(l)}(q, \omega)$ is proportional to the rate of energy dissipation due to an electric field of the form $E_0 e^{-i\omega t + i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}} + \text{c.c.}$

11.6.2 Kramers–Kronig Relation

Let $\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{x}, t)$ be an electric field acting on some polarizable material. The polarization field $\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{x}, t)$ will, in general, be related to $\mathbf{E}$ by an integral relationship of the form

$$\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{x}, t) = \int d^3x' dt' \chi(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}', t - t') \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{x}', t'). \quad (11.192)$$

Causality requires that $\chi(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}', t - t') = 0$ for all $t < t'$. That is, the polarizable material can not respond to the field until it is turned on. A well-known theorem from the theory of complex variables tells us that the Fourier transform of $\chi(t - t')$ is analytic in the upper half plane since $e^{i(\omega_1 + i\omega_2)t}$ becomes $e^{i\omega_1 t} e^{-\omega_2 t}$.

Theorem 1. *Given a function $f(z)$ such that $f(z) = 0$ for all $z < 0$, then the Fourier transform of $f(z)$ is analytic in the upper half plane.*

Take the Fourier transform of the equation for $\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{x}, t)$

$$\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \int d^3x dt \mathbf{P}(\mathbf{x}, t) e^{i\omega t - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x}}. \quad (11.193)$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{P}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) &= \int d^3x dt \int d^3x' dt' \chi(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}', t - t') \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{x}', t') e^{i\omega t - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x}} \\ &= \int d(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}') d(t - t') \chi(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}', t - t') e^{i\omega(t - t') - i\mathbf{q} \cdot (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}')} \\ &\quad \times \int d^3x' dt' \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{x}', t') e^{i\omega t' - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x}'} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, we have

$$\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \chi(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{q}, \omega). \quad (11.194)$$

Here, $\chi(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ is the electrical polarizability (see (8.14)). The dielectric constant $\varepsilon(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ is related to the polarizability χ by

$$\varepsilon(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = 1 + 4\pi\chi(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \quad (11.195)$$

The theorem quoted above tells us that $\chi(\omega)$ is analytic in the upper half ω -plane. From here on we shall be interested only in the frequency dependence of $\chi(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$, so for brevity we shall omit the $\mathbf{q}$ in $\chi(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$. *Cauchy's theorem* states that

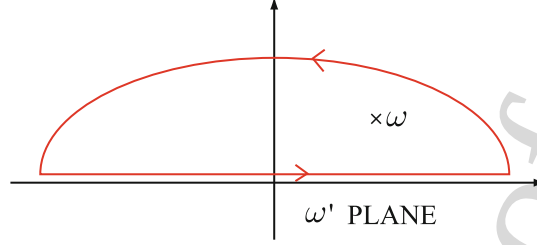
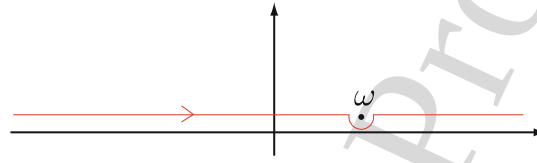
$$\chi(\omega) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C \frac{\chi(\omega')}{\omega' - \omega} d\omega', \quad (11.196)$$

where the contour C must enclose the point ω and must lie completely in the region of analyticity of the complex function $\chi(\omega')$. We choose the contour lying in the upper half plane as indicated in Fig. 11.9.

As $|\omega| \rightarrow \infty$, $\chi(\omega) \rightarrow 0$ since the medium can not follow an infinitely rapidly oscillating disturbance. This allows us to discard the integral over the semicircle when its radius approaches infinity. Thus, we have

$$\chi(\omega) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\chi(\omega')}{\omega' - \omega} d\omega'. \quad (11.197)$$

We are interested in real frequencies ω , so we allow ω to approach the real axis. In doing so we must be careful to make sure that ω is enclosed by the

**Fig. 11.9.** The contour C appearing in (11.196)**Fig. 11.10.** Relevant contour C when ω approaches the real axis

original contour. One can satisfy all the conditions by deforming the contour 598
as shown in Fig. 11.10. 599

Then, we have 600

$$\chi(\omega) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \mathcal{P} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\chi(\omega')}{\omega' - \omega} d\omega' + \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\text{small semicircle}} \frac{\chi(\omega')}{\omega' - \omega} d\omega', \quad (11.198)$$

where $\mathcal{P}$ denotes the principal part of the integral. We integrate the second 601
term in (11.198) by setting $\omega' - \omega = \rho e^{i\phi}$ and letting $\rho \rightarrow 0$ 602

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\text{small semicircle}} \frac{\chi(\omega')}{\omega' - \omega} d\omega' &= \lim_{\rho \rightarrow 0} \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} \frac{\chi(\omega + \rho e^{i\phi}) \rho e^{i\phi} i d\phi}{\rho e^{i\phi}} \\ &= i\pi \chi(\omega). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have 603

$$\chi(\omega) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \mathcal{P} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\chi(\omega')}{\omega' - \omega} d\omega' + \frac{1}{2\pi i} i\pi \chi(\omega) \quad 604$$

or 605

$$\chi(\omega) = \frac{1}{\pi i} \mathcal{P} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\chi(\omega')}{\omega' - \omega} d\omega'. \quad (11.199) \quad 606$$

This is the *Kramers–Kronig relation*. By writing $\chi(\omega) = \chi_1(\omega) + i\chi_2(\omega)$, we 607
can use the Kramers–Kronig relation to obtain 608

$$\begin{aligned} \chi_1(\omega) &= \frac{1}{\pi} \mathcal{P} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\chi_2(\omega')}{\omega' - \omega} d\omega' \\ \chi_2(\omega) &= -\frac{1}{\pi} \mathcal{P} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\chi_1(\omega')}{\omega' - \omega} d\omega', \end{aligned} \quad (11.200)$$

or in terms of $\underline{\varepsilon}$

$$\begin{aligned}\varepsilon_1(\omega) &= 1 + \frac{1}{\pi} \mathcal{P} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\varepsilon_2(\omega')}{\omega' - \omega} d\omega' \\ \varepsilon_2(\omega) &= -\frac{1}{\pi} \mathcal{P} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\varepsilon_1(\omega') - 1}{\omega' - \omega} d\omega',\end{aligned}\quad (11.201)$$

where $\varepsilon_2 = 4\pi\chi_2$. Here, we note that the reality requirement on the fields $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{P}$ imposes the conditions $\chi_1(\omega) = \chi_1(-\omega)$ and $\chi_2(\omega) = -\chi_2(-\omega)$. This allows us to write

$$\varepsilon_1(\omega) = 1 + \frac{2}{\pi} \mathcal{P} \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\omega' \varepsilon_2(\omega')}{\omega'^2 - \omega^2} d\omega'. \quad (11.202)$$

11.7 Effect of Collisions

In actual experiments, the conductivity of a metal (normal metal) is not infinite at zero frequency because the electrons collide with lattice imperfections (phonons, defects, impurities). Experimenters find it convenient to account for collisions by use of a phenomenological relaxation time τ . When collisions are included, the equation of motion of the density matrix becomes

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \frac{i}{\hbar} [H, \rho]_- = \left(\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \right)_c. \quad (11.203)$$

The assumption of a relaxation time is equivalent to saying that

$$\left(\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \right)_c = -\frac{\rho - \tilde{\rho}_0}{\tau}. \quad (11.204)$$

Here, $\tilde{\rho}_0$ is a *local equilibrium density matrix*. We shall see that $\tilde{\rho}_0$ must be chosen with care or the treatment will be incorrect.⁷ There are two requirements that $\tilde{\rho}_0$ must satisfy

1. $\tilde{\rho}_0$ must transform properly under change of gauge
2. Because collisions cannot alter the density at any point in space, $\tilde{\rho}_0$ must be chosen such that ρ and $\tilde{\rho}_0$ correspond to the same density at every point $\mathbf{r}_0$

It turns out that the correct choice for $\tilde{\rho}_0$ which satisfies gauge invariance and conserve particle number in collisions is

$$\tilde{\rho}_0(H, \eta) = \frac{1}{e^{\frac{H-\eta}{\Theta}} + 1}. \quad (11.205)$$

Here, H is the full Hamiltonian including the self-consistent field and η is the *local chemical potential*. We can determine η by requiring that

⁷ See, for example, M.P. Greene, H.J. Lee, J.J. Quinn, S. Rodriguez, Phys. Rev. **177**, 1019 (1969).

$$\text{Tr } \{[\rho - \tilde{\rho}_0(H, \eta)] \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0)\} = 0. \quad (11.206) \quad 634$$

This condition implies that the local equilibrium distribution function $\tilde{\rho}_0$ 635
toward which the nonequilibrium distribution function ρ is relaxing has 636
exactly the same density at every position $\mathbf{r}_0$ as the nonequilibrium dis- 637
tribution function does at $\mathbf{r}_0$. Of course, the local chemical potential is 638
 $\eta(\mathbf{r}, t) = \zeta_0 + \zeta_1(\mathbf{r}, t)$, and the value of ζ_1 is obtained by solving (11.206). 639

To understand this, think of the gauge in which the scalar potential $\phi(\mathbf{r})$ 640
vanishes. Then, the Hamiltonian, including the self-consistent field can be 641
written as 642

$$H_{\text{Kinetic}} = \frac{1}{2m} \left(\mathbf{p} + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A} \right)^2 = \frac{1}{2} m v^2.$$

For any gauge transformation $\mathbf{A}' = \mathbf{A} + \nabla \chi$ and $\phi' = \phi - \frac{1}{c} \dot{\chi}$, we can define 643
 $H'_{\text{Kinetic}} = H' - \frac{e}{c} \dot{\chi}$. Here H' is the sum of H'_{Kinetic} and $-e\phi'$ with 644

$$H'_{\text{Kinetic}} = e^{-\frac{ie\chi}{\hbar c}} H_{\text{Kinetic}} e^{\frac{ie\chi}{\hbar c}}. \quad (11.207)$$

By choosing $\tilde{\rho}_0$ to depend on H_{Kinetic} we guarantee that 645

$$\tilde{\rho}'_0 = e^{-\frac{ie\chi}{\hbar c}} \tilde{\rho}_0 e^{\frac{ie\chi}{\hbar c}}$$

transforms exactly as ρ itself transforms. There are two extreme cases: 646

1. $H = H_{\text{Kinetic}} - e\phi$, $\eta = \text{constant} = \zeta_0$ (see Fig. 11.11a) 647
2. $H = H_{\text{Kinetic}}$, $\eta = \zeta_0 + e\phi$ (see Fig. 11.11b) 648

Neither H nor η is gauge invariant, but their difference $H - \eta$ is. This is the 649
quantity that appears in $\tilde{\rho}_0$. If we let $\eta(\mathbf{r}, t) = \zeta_0 + \zeta_1(\mathbf{r}, t)$ where ζ_0 is the 650
actual overall equilibrium chemical potential and $\zeta_1(\mathbf{r}, t)$ is the local deviation 651
of η from ζ_0 , then we can write 652

$$\tilde{\rho}_0(H, \eta) = \rho_0(H_0, \zeta_0) + \rho_2. \quad (11.208)$$

The equation of motion of the density matrix is 653

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \frac{i}{\hbar} [H, \rho]_- = -\frac{\rho - \tilde{\rho}_0}{\tau} \quad (11.209)$$

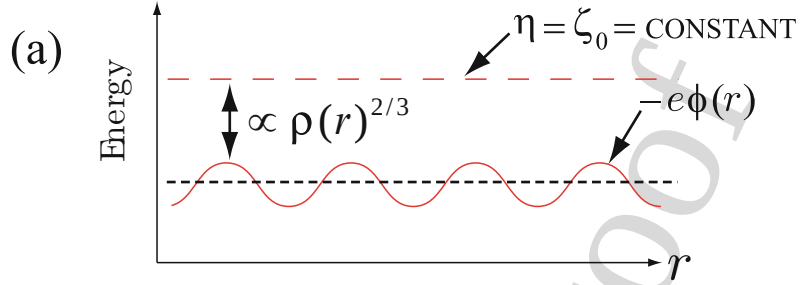
where $\tilde{\rho}_0 = \rho_0(H_0, \zeta_0) + \rho_2$. We can write $\rho = \tilde{\rho}_0 + \rho_1$, where ρ_1 is the deviation 654
from the local thermal equilibrium value $\tilde{\rho}_0$. Then (11.209) becomes 655

$$i\omega(\rho_1 + \rho_2) + \frac{i}{\hbar} [H_0, \rho_1 + \rho_2]_- + \frac{i}{\hbar} [H_1, \rho_0]_- = -\frac{\rho_1}{\tau}. \quad (11.210)$$

Take matrix elements as before and solve for $\langle k | \rho_1 | k' \rangle$; this gives 656

$$\begin{aligned} \langle k | \rho_1 | k' \rangle = & \left[\frac{i\hbar/\tau}{\varepsilon_{k'} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega + i\hbar/\tau} - 1 \right] \langle k | \rho_2 | k' \rangle \\ & + \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{k'}) - f_0(\varepsilon_k)}{\varepsilon_{k'} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega + i\hbar/\tau} \langle k | H_1 | k' \rangle. \end{aligned} \quad (11.211)$$

$$1. H = H_K - e\phi(r), \quad \eta = \text{CONSTANT} = \zeta_0$$



$$2. H = H_K, \quad \eta = \zeta_0 + e\phi(r)$$

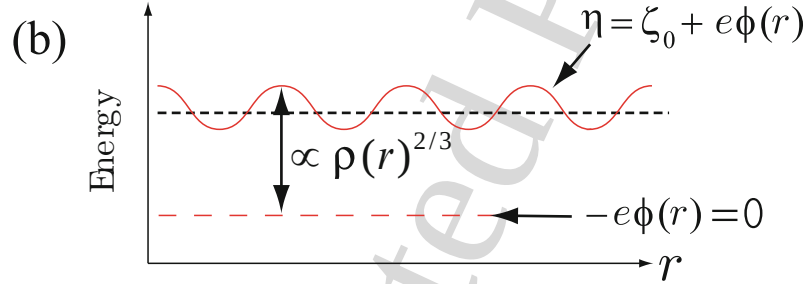


Fig. 11.11. Local chemical potential η and local density matrix $\rho(\mathbf{r})$. (a) $\eta = \text{constant}(= \zeta_0)$, (b) $\eta(\mathbf{r}) = \zeta_0 + e\phi(\mathbf{r})$

Using the result of Problem in this chapter for $\langle k|\rho_2|k'\rangle$ in this equation gives 657

$$\begin{aligned} \langle k|\rho_1|k'\rangle = & \left[-1 + \frac{i\hbar/\tau}{\varepsilon_{k'} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega + i\hbar/\tau} \right] \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{k'}) - f_0(\varepsilon_k)}{\varepsilon_{k'} - \varepsilon_k} \langle k|H_1 - \zeta_1|k'\rangle \\ & + \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{k'}) - f_0(\varepsilon_k)}{\varepsilon_{k'} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega + i\hbar/\tau} \langle k|H_1|k'\rangle. \end{aligned} \quad (11.212)$$

The parameter ζ_1 appearing in (11.212) is determined by requiring that 658

$$\text{Tr} \{ \rho_1 \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) \} = 0. \quad (11.213)$$

The final result (after a lot of calculation) is 659

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{\omega_p^2}{4\pi i \omega} \left\{ \mathbf{1} + \mathbf{I} - \frac{i\omega\tau}{1 + i\omega\tau} \frac{(\mathbf{K}_1 - \mathbf{K}_2)(\mathbf{K}'_1 - \mathbf{K}'_2)}{L_1 + i\omega\tau L_2} \right\} \cdot \mathbf{E}, \quad (11.214) \quad 660$$

where we used the notations 661

$$\mathbf{I} = \frac{i\omega\tau \mathbf{I}_1 + \mathbf{I}_2}{1 + i\omega\tau}, \quad (11.215)$$

$$\mathbf{K} = \frac{i\omega\tau\mathbf{K}_1 + \mathbf{K}_2}{1 + i\omega\tau}, \quad (11.216)$$

662

$$L_i = \frac{mc^2}{N} \sum_{kk'} \Lambda_{k'k}^{(i)} |\langle k' | e^{i\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{r}} | k \rangle|^2, \quad (11.217)$$

$$\mathbf{K}_i = \frac{mc}{N} \sum_{kk'} \Lambda_{k'k}^{(i)} \langle k' | \mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{q}} | k \rangle \langle k' | e^{i\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{r}} | k \rangle^*, \quad (11.218)$$

$$\mathbf{K}'_i = \frac{mc}{N} \sum_{kk'} \Lambda_{k'k}^{(i)} \langle k' | e^{i\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{r}} | k \rangle \langle k' | \mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{q}} | k \rangle^*, \quad (11.219)$$

and

$$\mathbf{I}_i = \frac{m}{N} \sum_{kk'} \Lambda_{k'k}^{(i)} \langle k' | \mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{q}} | k \rangle \langle k' | \mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{q}} | k \rangle^*. \quad (11.220)$$

663

The subscript (or superscript) i takes on the values 1 and 2, and

664

$$\Lambda_{k'k}^{(1)} = \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{k'}) - f_0(\varepsilon_k)}{\varepsilon_{k'} - \varepsilon_k - \hbar\omega + i\hbar/\tau} \quad (11.221)$$

and

$$\Lambda_{k'k}^{(2)} = \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{k'}) - f_0(\varepsilon_k)}{\varepsilon_{k'} - \varepsilon_k}. \quad (11.222)$$

665

In the limit as $\tau \rightarrow \infty$, $\mathbf{I} \rightarrow \mathbf{I}_1$ and $\mathbf{K} \rightarrow \mathbf{K}_1$, hence

666

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \rightarrow \frac{\omega_p^2}{4\pi i\omega} [\mathbf{1} + \mathbf{I}_1] \cdot \mathbf{E}, \quad (11.223)$$

exactly as we had before. For $\omega\tau$ finite, there are corrections to this collisionless result that depend on $\frac{1}{\omega\tau}$.

667

668

11.8 Screening

669

Our original objective in considering linear response theory was to learn more about screening since we found that the long range of the Coulomb interaction was responsible for the divergence of perturbation theory beyond the first order exchange. Later on, when we mention Green's functions and the electron self energy, we will discuss some further details on *dynamic screening*, but for now, let us look at *static screening* effects.

670

671

672

673

674

675

If we set $\omega \rightarrow 0$ in (11.166), we can write

676

$$1 + I_{zz}(z, u) = -\frac{3}{2}u^2 \left[1 + \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{1}{z} - z \right) \ln \left(\frac{1+z}{1-z} \right) \right]. \quad (11.224)$$

Here, $z = q/2k_F$ and $u = \omega/qv_F$. Substituting this result into $\varepsilon^{(l)} = 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2}(1 + I_{zz})$ gives

677

678

$$\varepsilon^{(l)}(q, 0) = 1 + \frac{3\omega_p^2}{q^2 v_F^2} F(z), \quad (11.225)$$

where

$$F(z) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} \left(\frac{1}{z} - z \right) \ln \left(\frac{1+z}{1-z} \right). \quad (11.226)$$

Since $\ln \left(\frac{1+z}{1-z} \right) \simeq 2z \left(1 + \frac{z^2}{3} + \dots \right)$, $F(z) \xrightarrow{z \rightarrow 0} 1 - \frac{z^2}{3}$. For $z \gg 1$, $F(z) \simeq \frac{1}{3z^2}$ (see Fig. 11.12). For very long wave lengths, we have

$$\varepsilon^{(l)}(q) \simeq \left(1 - \frac{1}{3\pi a_0 k_F} \right) + \frac{k_s^2}{q^2}, \quad (11.227)$$

where $k_s = \sqrt{\frac{4k_F}{\pi a_0}}$ is called the *Thomas–Fermi screening wave number*. At high density $3\pi a_0 k_F \gg 1$ so the constant term is usually approximated by unity. $\varepsilon_{TF}(q) = 1 + \frac{k_s^2}{q^2}$ is called the *Thomas–Fermi dielectric constant*. One can certainly see that screening eliminates the divergence in perturbation theory that resulted from the $\phi_0(q) = \frac{4\pi e}{q^2}$ potential. We would write for the self-consistent screened potential by

$$\phi(q) = \frac{\phi_0(q)}{\varepsilon_{TF}(q)} = \frac{4\pi e}{q^2 + k_s^2}. \quad (11.228)$$

This potential does not diverge as $q \rightarrow 0$.

11.8.1 Friedel Oscillations

If $F(z)$ were identically equal to unity, then a point charge would give rise to the screened potential given by (11.228), which is the Yukawa potential $\phi(r) = \frac{e}{r} e^{-k_s r}$ in coordinate space. However, at $z = 1$ (or $q = 2k_F$) $F(z)$

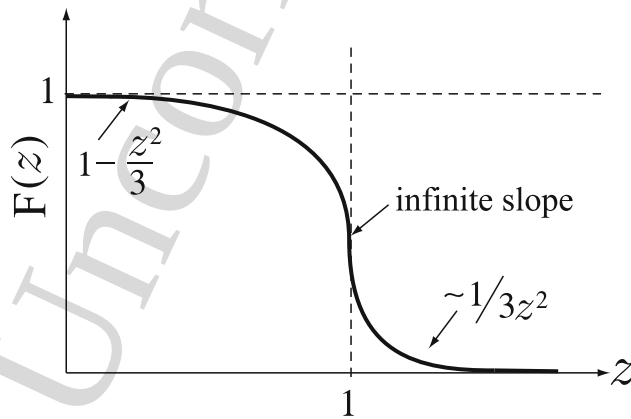


Fig. 11.12. Function $F(z)$ appearing in (11.225)

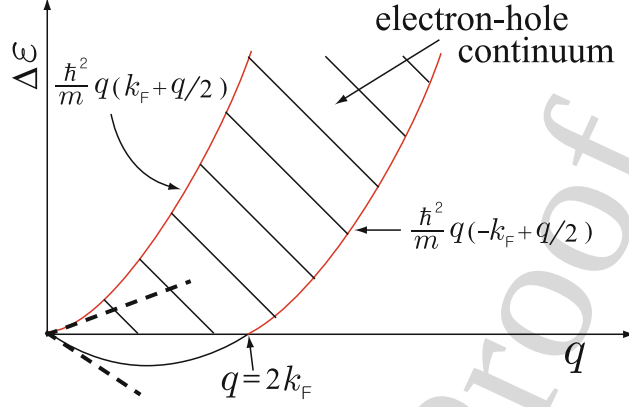


Fig. 11.13. Electron-hole pair excitation energies as a function of wave number q

drops very abruptly. In fact, $\frac{dF}{dz}$ has infinite slope at $z = 1$ (see, for example, 694 Fig. 11.12). The ability of the electron gas to screen disturbances of wave 695 vector $\mathbf{q}$ drops abruptly at $q = 2k_F$. This is the result of the fact that pair 696 excitations of zero energy can be created if $q < 2k_F$, but every pair excitation 697 must have finite energy if $q > 2k_F$. This is apparent from a plot of $\Delta\varepsilon =$ 698 $\varepsilon_{k+q} - \varepsilon_k = \frac{\hbar^2}{m}q(k_z + \frac{q}{2})$ versus q for $k_z = \pm k_F$ (see Fig. 11.13). The hatched 699 area is called the *electron-hole continuum*. If $F(z)$ were replaced by unity, 700 the self-consistent potential $\phi(q)$ would be written as 701

$$\phi(q) = \frac{4\pi e}{q^2} \frac{1}{\varepsilon^{(l)}(q)} \simeq \frac{4\pi e}{q^2 + k_s^2}.$$

The Fourier transform $\phi(\mathbf{r})$ is given by

$$\phi(\mathbf{r}) = \int \frac{d^3q}{(2\pi)^3} e^{i\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{r}} \phi(q) \quad (11.229)$$

and one can show that this is equal to $\phi(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{e}{r} e^{-k_s r}$, a Yukawa potential. 703 Because $F(z)$ is not equal to unity, but decreases rapidly around $z = 1$, the 704 potential $\phi(r)$ and the induced electron density $n_1(\mathbf{r})$ are different from the 705 results of the simple Thomas-Fermi model. In the equation for $\phi(\mathbf{r})$ we must 706 replace k_s^2 by $k_s^2 F(z)$ so that 707

$$\phi(\mathbf{r}) = \int \frac{d^3q}{(2\pi)^3} e^{i\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{r}} \frac{4\pi e}{q^2 + k_s^2 F(q/2k_F)}. \quad (11.230)$$

The induced electron density is given by

$$n_1(q) = \frac{k_s^2}{4\pi} F(z) \phi(q). \quad (11.231)$$

352 11 Many Body Interactions – Introduction

This can be obtained from $\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{j} = 0$, where $\mathbf{j} = \underline{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{E} = (\varepsilon^{(l)} - 1) \frac{i\omega}{4\pi} (+i\mathbf{q}\phi)$ 710
 and $\varepsilon^{(l)} = 1 + \frac{k_s^2}{q^2} F(z)$. After a little algebra one can show that the Fourier 711
 transform of $n_1(q)$ is given by 712

$$n_1(r) = \frac{12n_0}{\pi a_0 k_F} \int_0^\infty \frac{\sin 2k_F r z}{2k_F r z} \frac{F(z)}{1 + F(z)/(\pi a_0 k_F z^2)} dz. \quad (11.232)$$

This can be written in a simpler form using 713

$$\frac{F(z)}{1 + F(z)/(\pi a_0 k_F z^2)} = F(z) - \frac{F^2(z)}{\pi a_0 k_F z^2 + F(z)}. \quad (11.233)$$

Then, $n_1(r)$ becomes 714

$$n_1(r) = \frac{12n_0}{\pi a_0 k_F} \left[\int_0^\infty \frac{\sin 2k_F r z}{2k_F r z} F(z) dz - \int_0^\infty \frac{\sin 2k_F r z}{2k_F r z} \frac{F^2(z)}{\pi a_0 k_F z^2 + F(z)} dz \right]. \quad (11.234)$$

In the high density limit $\pi a_0 k_F \gg 1$. Therefore in the region where $F(z)$ 715
 deviates appreciably from unity, i.e. for $z \geq 1$, $\pi a_0 k_F z^2 \gg F(z)$, and we make 716
 a small error by replacing $F(z)$ in the second term of (11.234) by unity. This 717
 high-density approximation gives 718

$$n_1(r) = \frac{12n_0}{\pi a_0 k_F} \left[\int_0^\infty \frac{\sin 2k_F r z}{2k_F r z} F(z) dz - \int_0^\infty \frac{\sin 2k_F r z}{2k_F r z} \frac{dz}{\pi a_0 k_F z^2 + 1} \right]. \quad (11.235)$$

The first integral can be evaluated exactly in terms of known functions 719

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_0^\infty \frac{\sin 2k_F r z}{2k_F r z} F(z) dz \\ &= \frac{\pi}{2} \left\{ \frac{1}{2k_F r} - \frac{1}{4k_F r} \left[\frac{\sin 2k_F r}{2k_F r} + \cos 2k_F r \right] + \frac{1}{2} \left[\frac{\pi}{2} - \text{Si}(2k_F r) \right] \right\} \equiv \frac{\pi}{2} f(2k_F r), \end{aligned} \quad (11.236)$$

where $\text{Si}(x) = \int_0^x \frac{\sin t}{t} dt$ is the *sine integral function*. For very large values of 720
 x , the function $f(x)$ in (11.236) behaves 721

$$f(x) \simeq \frac{1}{x} + \frac{\cos x}{x^3} + O\left(\text{higher orders of } \frac{1}{x}\right). \quad (11.237)$$

The second integral in (11.235) becomes 722

$$\int_0^\infty \frac{\sin 2k_F r z}{2k_F r z} \frac{dz}{\pi a_0 k_F z^2 + 1} = \frac{\pi}{4k_F r} \left(1 - e^{-\frac{r}{\sqrt{\pi a_0 k_F}}} \right). \quad (11.238)$$

Therefore, for high density limit ($\pi a_0 k_F \gg 1$) and large distances from the 723
 point charge impurity, the induced electron density is given by 724

$$n_1(r) = \frac{6n_0}{a_0 k_F} \frac{\cos 2k_F r}{(2k_F r)^3}. \quad (11.239) \quad 725$$

The oscillating behavior of the induced electron density at a wave vector $q = 2k_F$ is known as a *Friedel oscillation*. Notice that the electron density induced by the presence of the point charge impurity falls off in amplitude as $\frac{1}{r^3}$. For a Yukawa potential ($\phi = \frac{e}{r} e^{-k_s r}$), the fall in the induced electron density is exponential. 726
727
728
729
730

11.8.2 Kohn Effect 731

When we discussed the Sommerfeld model we found a result for s_l the velocity of a longitudinal sound wave that could be written 732
733

$$\omega^2 = s_l^2 q^2 \simeq \left(\sqrt{\frac{zm}{3M}} v_F \right)^2 q^2. \quad (11.240)$$

In other words the longitudinal sound velocity was given by 734

$$s_l = \sqrt{\frac{zm}{3M}} v_F, \quad (11.241)$$

where z is the valence (charge on the positive ions), M is the ionic mass, and v_F the Fermi velocity. 735
736

This result can easily be obtained by saying that the positive ions have a *bare plasma frequency* 737
738

$$\Omega_p = \sqrt{\frac{4\pi N_I (ze)^2}{M}}, \quad (11.242)$$

where N_I is the number of ions per unit volume. However, the electrons will screen the charge fluctuations in the ion density, so that the actual frequency of a longitudinal sound wave of wave vector q will be 739
740
741

$$\omega = \frac{\Omega_p}{\sqrt{\varepsilon(q, \omega)}}, \quad (11.243)$$

where $\varepsilon(q, \omega)$ is the dielectric function of the electron gas. Because the acoustic frequency is much smaller than the electron plasma frequency and $\omega \simeq s_l q \ll qv_F$, we can approximate $\varepsilon(q, \omega)$ by $\varepsilon(q, 0)$ in the first approximation 742
743
744

$$\omega^2 = \frac{\Omega_p^2}{1 + \frac{k_s^2}{q^2} F(z)} \simeq \frac{q^2 \Omega_p^2}{q^2 + k_s^2 F(z)}. \quad (11.244)$$

Let us assume $k_s^2 \gg q^2$. If we take $F(z) \simeq 1$, we obtain 745

$$\omega^2 \simeq \frac{q^2}{k_s^2} \Omega_p^2. \quad (11.245)$$

354 11 Many Body Interactions – Introduction

But recall that $\Omega_p^2 = 4\pi \left(\frac{n_0}{z}\right) \frac{(ze)^2}{M}$ and $k_s^2 = \frac{4k_F}{\pi a_0}$. Substituting into (11.245) gives the result given by (11.240). However, q need not be small compared to k_F , even though $\omega \simeq s_l q$ will still be small compared to qv_F and ω_p . Then, we must keep $F(z)$ and write

$$\omega^2 \simeq \frac{s_l^2 q^2}{F(z) + \frac{\pi a_0}{4k_F} q^2}. \quad (11.246)$$

Because $F(z)$ has an infinite first derivative at $q = 2k_F$ (or $z = 1$), the phonon dispersion relation will show a small anomaly at $q = 2k_F$ that is called the *Kohn anomaly*⁸.

⁸ W. Kohn, Phys. Rev. Lett. **2**, 393 (1959).

Problems

754

11.1. Let us consider the paramagnetic state of a degenerate electron gas, in which $\bar{n}_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} = 1$ for $\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} < \varepsilon_F$ and zero otherwise.

755

756

- (a) Show that the exchange contribution to the energy of wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ and spin σ is

757

758

$$\Sigma_{X\sigma}(\mathbf{k}) = -\frac{1}{\Omega} \sum_{\mathbf{k}'} \bar{n}_{\mathbf{k}'\sigma} \frac{4\pi e^2}{|\mathbf{k}^2 - \mathbf{k}'^2|}.$$

- (b) Convert the sum over $\mathbf{k}'$ to an integral and perform the integral to obtain

759

760

$$\Sigma_{X\sigma}(\mathbf{k}) = -\frac{e^2 k_F}{\pi} \left[1 + \frac{1-x^2}{2x} \ln \left| \frac{1+x}{1-x} \right| \right],$$

where $x = k/k_F$.

761

- (c) Plot $\Sigma_{X\sigma}(k)$ as a function of $\frac{k}{k_F}$.

762

- (d) Show that the total energy (kinetic plus exchange) for the N particle paramagnetic state in the Hartree–Fock approximation is

763

764

$$\begin{aligned} E_P &= \sum_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} \bar{n}_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} \left[\frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} + \Sigma_{X\sigma}(\mathbf{k}) \right] \\ &= N \left(\frac{3}{5} \frac{\hbar^2 k_F^2}{2m} - \frac{3e^2 k_F}{4\pi} \right). \end{aligned}$$

11.2. Consider the ferromagnetic state of a degenerate electron gas, in which $\bar{n}_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} = 1$ for $k < k_{F\uparrow}$ and $\bar{n}_{\mathbf{k}\downarrow} = 0$ for all k .

765

766

- (a) Determine the Hartree–Fock energy $\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} + \Sigma_{X\sigma}(\mathbf{k})$.
 (b) Determine the value of k_F (Fermi wave vector of the nonmagnetic state) for which the ferromagnetic state is a valid Hartree–Fock solution.
 (c) Determine the value of k_F for which $E_F = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow}$ has lower energy than E_P obtained in Problem 11.1.

767

768

769

770

771

11.3. Evaluate $I_{xx}(q, \omega)$ in the same way as we evaluated $I_{zz}(q, \omega)$, which is given by (11.166).

772

773

11.4. The longitudinal dielectric function is written as

774

$$\varepsilon^{(l)}(q, \omega) = 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} [1 + I_{zz}(q, \omega)].$$

Use $\ln(x + iy) = \frac{1}{2} \ln(x^2 + y^2) + i \arctan \frac{y}{x}$ to evaluate $\varepsilon_2^{(l)}(z, u)$, the imaginary part of $\varepsilon^{(l)}(q, \omega)$, where $z = q/2k_F$ and $u = \omega/qv_F$.

775

776

356 11 Many Body Interactions – Introduction

11.5. Let us consider the static dielectric function written as

777

$$\varepsilon^{(l)}(q, 0) = 1 + \frac{3\omega_p^2}{q^2 v_F^2} F(z),$$

where $z = q/2k_F$ and $F(z) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} \left(\frac{1}{z} - z \right) \ln \left(\frac{1+z}{1-z} \right)$.

778

- (a) Expand $F(z)$ in power of z for $z \ll 1$. Repeat it in power of $1/z$ for $z \gg 1$. 779
- (b) Determine the expressions of the static dielectric function $\varepsilon^{(l)}(q, 0)$ in the corresponding limits. 780

11.6. In the absence of a dc magnetic field, we see that $|\nu\rangle = |k_x, k_y, k_z\rangle \equiv |\mathbf{k}\rangle$, the free electron states. 781

- (a) Show that $\langle \mathbf{k}' | \mathbf{V}_q | \mathbf{k} \rangle = \frac{\hbar}{m} (\mathbf{k} + \frac{\mathbf{q}}{2}) \delta_{\mathbf{k}', \mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}}$, where $\mathbf{V}_q = \mathbf{v}_0 e^{i\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{r}} + e^{i\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{r}} \mathbf{v}_0$. 782
- (b) Derive the Lindhard form of the conductivity tensor given by 783

$$\underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{\omega_p^2}{4\pi i \omega} \left[\underline{1} + \frac{m}{N} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{f_0(E_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}}) - f_0(E_{\mathbf{k}})}{E_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}} - E_{\mathbf{k}} - \hbar\omega} \left(\frac{\hbar}{m} \right)^2 \left(\mathbf{k} + \frac{\mathbf{q}}{2} \right) \left(\mathbf{k} + \frac{\mathbf{q}}{2} \right) \right].$$

- (c) Show that the Lindhard form of the dielectric tensor is written by 784

$$\underline{\varepsilon}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \left(1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} \right) \underline{1} - \frac{m\omega_p^2}{N\omega^2} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{f_0(E_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}}) - f_0(E_{\mathbf{k}})}{E_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}} - E_{\mathbf{k}} - \hbar\omega} \left(\frac{\hbar}{m} \right)^2 \left(\mathbf{k} + \frac{\mathbf{q}}{2} \right) \left(\mathbf{k} + \frac{\mathbf{q}}{2} \right).$$

11.7. Suppose that a system has a strong and sharp absorption line at a frequency ω_A and that $\varepsilon_2(\omega)$ can be approximated by 785

$$\varepsilon_2(\omega) = A\delta(\omega - \omega_A) \quad \text{for } \omega > 0.$$

- (a) Evaluate $\varepsilon_1(\omega)$ by using the Kronig–Kramers relation. 786
- (b) Sketch $\varepsilon_1(\omega)$ as a function of ω . 787

11.8. The equation of motion of a charge $(-e)$ of mass m harmonically bound to a lattice point R_n is given by 788

$$m(\ddot{\mathbf{x}} + \gamma\dot{\mathbf{x}} + \omega_0^2\mathbf{x}) = -e\mathbf{E}e^{i\omega t}.$$

Here, $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R}$, ω_0 is the oscillator frequency, and the electric field $\mathbf{E} = E\hat{x}$. 789

- (a) Solve the equation of motion for $\mathbf{x}(t) = \mathbf{X}(\omega)e^{i\omega t}$. 790
- (b) Let us consider the polarization $P(\omega) = -en_0X(\omega)$, where n_0 is the number of oscillators per unit volume. Write $P(\omega) = \alpha(\omega)E(\omega)$ and determine $\alpha(\omega)$. 791
- (c) Plot $\alpha_1(\omega)$ and $\alpha_2(\omega)$ vs. ω , where $\alpha = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2$. 792
- (d) Show that $\alpha(\omega)$ satisfies the Kronig–Kramers relation. 793

11.9. Take $H = \frac{1}{2m} (\mathbf{p} + \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A})^2 - e\phi$ and $H' = \frac{1}{2m} (\mathbf{p} + \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}')^2 - e\phi'$ where $\mathbf{A}' = \mathbf{A} + \nabla\chi$ and $\phi' = \phi - \frac{1}{c}\dot{\chi}$. 794

802

- (a) Show that $H' - \frac{e}{c}\dot{\chi} = e^{-\frac{ie\chi}{\hbar c}} H e^{\frac{ie\chi}{\hbar c}}$. 803
- (b) Show that $\rho' = e^{-\frac{ie\chi}{\hbar c}} \rho e^{\frac{ie\chi}{\hbar c}}$ satisfies the same equation of motion, viz. 804
- (c) $\frac{\partial \rho'}{\partial t} + \frac{i}{\hbar} [H', \rho']_- = 0$ as ρ does. 805

11.10. Let us take $\tilde{\rho}_0(H, \eta) = \left[\exp\left(\frac{H - \eta}{\Theta}\right) + 1 \right]^{-1}$ as the local thermal equilibrium distribution function (or local equilibrium density matrix). Here $\eta(\mathbf{r}, t) = \zeta + \zeta_1(\mathbf{r}, t)$ is the local value of the chemical potential at position $\mathbf{r}$ and time t , while ζ is the overall equilibrium chemical potential. Remember that the total Hamiltonian H is written as $H = H_0 + H_1$. Write $\tilde{\rho}_0(H, \eta) = \rho_0(H_0, \zeta) + \rho_2$ and show that, to terms linear in the self-consistent field,

$$\langle \mathbf{k} | \rho_2 | \mathbf{k}' \rangle = \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}'}) - f_0(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}})}{\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}'} - \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}} \langle \mathbf{k} | H_1 - \zeta_1 | \mathbf{k}' \rangle.$$

11.11. Longitudinal sound waves in a simple metal like Na or K can be represented by the relation $\omega^2 = \frac{\Omega_p^2}{\varepsilon^{(l)}(q, \omega)}$, where $\varepsilon^{(l)}(q, \omega)$ is the Lindhard dielectric function. We know that, for finite ω , $\varepsilon^{(l)}(q, \omega)$ can be written as $\varepsilon^{(l)}(q, \omega) = \varepsilon_1(q, \omega) + i\varepsilon_2(q, \omega)$. This gives rise to $\omega = \omega_1 + i\omega_2$, and ω_2 is proportional to the attenuation of the sound wave via excitation of conduction electrons. Estimate $\omega_2(q)$ for the case $\omega_1^2 \simeq \frac{q^2 \Omega_p^2}{k_s^2} \gg \omega_2^2$.

Summary

819

In this chapter, we briefly introduced method of second quantization and Hartree–Fock approximation to describe the ferromagnetism of a degenerate electron gas and spin density wave states in solids. Equation of motion method is considered for density matrix to describe gauge invariant theory of linear responses in the presence of the most general electromagnetic disturbance. Behavior of Lindhard dielectric functions and static screening effects are examined in detail. Oscillatory behavior of the induced electron density in the presence of point charge impurity and an anomaly in the phonon dispersion relation are also discussed.

In the second quantization or occupation number representation, the Hamiltonian of a many particle system with two body interactions can be written as

$$H = \sum_k \varepsilon_k c_k^\dagger c_k + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{kk' ll'} \langle k' l' | V | k l \rangle c_{k'}^\dagger c_l^\dagger c_l c_k,$$

where c_k and $c_{k'}^\dagger$ satisfy commutation (anticommutation) relation for Bosons (Fermions).

The Hartree–Fock Hamiltonian is given by $H = \sum_i E_i c_i^\dagger c_i$, where

$$E_i = \varepsilon_i + \sum_j \bar{n}_j [\langle ij | V | ij \rangle - \langle ij | V | ji \rangle].$$

The Hartree–Fock ground state energy of a degenerate electron gas in the paramagnetic phase is given by $E_{\text{ks}} = \frac{\hbar^2 k_F^2}{2m} - \frac{e^2 k_F}{2\pi} \left[2 + \frac{k_F^2 - k^2}{k k_F} \ln \left(\frac{k_F + k}{k_F - k} \right) \right]$. The total energy of the paramagnetic state is

$$E_P = N \left[\frac{3}{5} \frac{\hbar^2 k_F^2}{2m} - \frac{3}{4\pi} e^2 k_F \right].$$

If only states of spin $\uparrow$ are occupied, we have

$$E_{k\uparrow} = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} - \frac{2^{1/3} e^2 k_F}{2\pi} \left[2 + \frac{2^{2/3} k_F^2 - k^2}{2^{1/3} k_F k} \ln \left(\frac{2^{1/3} k_F + k}{2^{1/3} k_F - k} \right) \right]; \quad E_{k\downarrow} = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m}.$$

The total energy in the ferromagnetic phase is

$$E_F = \sum E_{k\uparrow} = N \left[2^{2/3} \frac{3}{5} \frac{\hbar^2 k_F^2}{2m} - 2^{1/3} \frac{3}{4\pi} e^2 k_F \right].$$

The exchange energy prefers parallel spin orientation, but the cost in kinetic energy is high for a ferromagnetic spin arrangement. In a spin density wave state, the (negative) exchange energy is enhanced with no costing as much in kinetic energy. The Hartree–Fock ground state of a spiral spin density wave can be written as $|\phi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle = \cos \theta_k |\mathbf{k} \uparrow\rangle + \sin \theta_k |\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{Q} \downarrow\rangle$.

In the presence of the self-consistent (Hartree) field $\{\phi, \mathbf{A}\}$, the Hamiltonian is written as $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H}_0 + \mathcal{H}_1$, where $\mathcal{H}_0$ is the Hamiltonian in the absence of the self-consistent field and $\mathcal{H}_1 = \frac{e}{2c} (\mathbf{v}_0 \cdot \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{v}_0) - e\phi$, up to terms linear in $\{\phi, \mathbf{A}\}$. Here, $\mathbf{v}_0 = \frac{\mathbf{p}}{m}$ and the equation of motion of ρ is $\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \frac{i}{\hbar} [H, \rho]_- = 0$.

The current and charge densities at $(\mathbf{r}_0, t)$ are given, respectively, by

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}_0, t) = \text{Tr} \left[-e \left(\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{v} \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) + \frac{1}{2} \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) \mathbf{v} \right) \hat{\rho} \right]; \quad n(\mathbf{r}_0, t) = \text{Tr} [-e \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) \hat{\rho}].$$

Here $-e \left[\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{v} \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) + \frac{1}{2} \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) \mathbf{v} \right]$ is the operator for the current density at position $\mathbf{r}_0$, while $-e \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0)$ is the charge density operator. Fourier transform of $\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}_0, t)$ gives

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \underline{\alpha}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$$

where the conductivity tensor is given by $\underline{\alpha}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{\omega_p^2}{4\pi i \omega} [\mathbf{1} + \mathbf{I}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)]$. Here

$$\mathbf{I}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{m}{N} \sum_{\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}'} \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}'}) - f_0(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}})}{\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}'} - \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} - \hbar \omega} \langle \mathbf{k}' | \mathbf{V}_q | \mathbf{k} \rangle \langle \mathbf{k}' | \mathbf{V}_q | \mathbf{k} \rangle^*$$

and the operator $\mathbf{V}_q$ is defined by $\mathbf{V}_q = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{v}_0 e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}} + \frac{1}{2} e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \mathbf{v}_0$.

The *longitudinal* and *transverse* dielectric functions are written as

$$\varepsilon^{(l)}(q, \omega) = 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} [1 + I_{zz}(q, \omega)]; \quad \varepsilon^{(tr)}(q, \omega) = 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} [1 + I_{xx}(q, \omega)].$$

Real part (ε_1) and imaginary part (ε_2) of the dielectric function satisfy the relation

$$\varepsilon_1(\omega) = 1 + \frac{2}{\pi} \mathcal{P} \int_0^\infty \frac{\omega' \varepsilon_2(\omega')}{\omega'^2 - \omega^2} d\omega'.$$

The power dissipation per unit volume is then written $\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{\omega}{2\pi} \varepsilon_2(q, \omega) |E_0|^2$.

Due to collisions of electrons with lattice imperfections, the conductivity of a normal metal is not infinite at zero frequency. In the presence of collisions, the equation of motion of the density matrix becomes, in a relaxation time approximation,

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \frac{i}{\hbar} [H, \rho]_- = -\frac{\rho - \tilde{\rho}_0}{\tau}.$$

Here, $\tilde{\rho}_0$ is a *local equilibrium density matrix*. Including the effect of collisions, the induced current density becomes

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{\omega_p^2}{4\pi i \omega} \left\{ \mathbf{1} + \mathbf{I} - \frac{i\omega\tau}{1 + i\omega\tau} \frac{(\mathbf{K}_1 - \mathbf{K}_2)(\mathbf{K}'_1 - \mathbf{K}'_2)}{L_1 + i\omega\tau L_2} \right\} \cdot \mathbf{E}.$$

In the static limit, the dielectric function reduces to

$$\varepsilon^{(l)}(q, 0) = 1 + \frac{3\omega_p^2}{q^2 v_F^2} F(z),$$

360 11 Many Body Interactions – Introduction

where $F(z) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} \left(\frac{1}{z} - z \right) \ln \left(\frac{1+z}{1-z} \right)$ and $z = q/2k_F$. The self-consistent screened potential is written as

$$\phi(q) = \frac{4\pi e}{q^2 + k_s^2 F(q/2k_F)}.$$

where $k_s = \sqrt{\frac{4k_F}{\pi a_0}}$. For high density limit ($\pi a_0 k_F \gg 1$) and large distances from the point charge impurity, the induced electron density is given by

$$n_1(r) = \frac{6n_0}{a_0 k_F} \frac{\cos 2k_F r}{(2k_F r)^3}.$$

Electronic screening of the charge fluctuations in the ion density modifies the dispersion relation of phonons, for example,

$$\omega^2 \simeq \frac{s_l^2 q^2}{F(z) + \frac{\pi a_0}{4k_F} q^2}$$

showing a small anomaly at $q = 2k_F$.

12

Many Body Interactions: Green's Function Method

12.1 Formulation

Let us assume that there is a complete orthogonal set of single particle states $\phi_i(\xi)$, where $\xi = \mathbf{r}, \sigma$. By this we mean that

$$\langle \phi_i | \phi_j \rangle = \delta_{ij} \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_i |\phi_i\rangle \langle \phi_i| = \underline{1}. \quad (12.1)$$

We can define particle field operators ψ and $\psi^\dagger$ by

$$\psi(\xi) = \sum_i \phi_i(\xi) a_i \quad \text{and} \quad \psi^\dagger(\xi) = \sum_i \phi_i^*(\xi) a_i^\dagger, \quad (12.2)$$

where a_i ($a_i^\dagger$) is an annihilation (creation) operator for a particle in state i . From the commutation relations (or anticommutation relations) satisfied by a_i and $a_j^\dagger$, we can easily show that

$$\begin{aligned} [\psi(\xi), \psi(\xi')] &= [\psi^\dagger(\xi), \psi^\dagger(\xi')] = 0, \\ [\psi(\xi), \psi^\dagger(\xi')] &= \delta(\xi - \xi'). \end{aligned} \quad (12.3)$$

The Hamiltonian of a many particle system can be written. (Here we set $\hbar = 1$.)

$$\begin{aligned} H = \int d^3r \left\{ \frac{1}{2m} \nabla \psi_\alpha^\dagger(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \nabla \psi_\alpha(\mathbf{r}) + U^{(1)}(\mathbf{r}) \psi_\alpha^\dagger(\mathbf{r}) \psi_\alpha(\mathbf{r}) \right\} \\ + \frac{1}{2} \int d^3r d^3r' \psi_\alpha^\dagger(\mathbf{r}) \psi_\beta^\dagger(\mathbf{r}') U^{(2)}(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}') \psi_\beta(\mathbf{r}') \psi_\alpha(\mathbf{r}). \end{aligned} \quad (12.4)$$

Summation over spin indices α and β is understood in (12.4). For the moment, let us omit spin to simplify the notation. Then

$$\psi(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_i \phi_i(\mathbf{r}) a_i. \quad (12.5)$$

We can write the density at a position $\mathbf{r}_0$ as

$$n(\mathbf{r}_0) = \int d^3r \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r})\psi(\mathbf{r})\delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) = \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}_0)\psi(\mathbf{r}_0). \quad (12.6)$$

The total particle number N is simply the integral of the density

$$N = \int d^3r n(\mathbf{r}) = \int d^3r \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r})\psi(\mathbf{r}). \quad (12.7)$$

If we substitute (12.5) in (12.7), we obtain

$$N = \int d^3r \left(\sum_i \phi_i^*(\mathbf{r})a_i \right) \left(\sum_j \phi_j(\mathbf{r})a_j \right) = \sum_{ij} \langle \phi_i | \phi_j \rangle a_i^\dagger a_j. \quad (12.8)$$

By $\langle \phi_i | \phi_j \rangle = \delta_{ij}$, this reduces to

$$N = \sum_i a_i^\dagger a_i, \quad (12.9)$$

so that $\hat{n}_i = a_i^\dagger a_i$ is the number operator for the state i and $\hat{N} = \sum_i \hat{n}_i$ is the total number operator. It simply counts the number of particles.

12.1.1 Schrödinger Equation

The Schrödinger equation of the many particle wave function $\Psi(1, 2, \dots, N)$ is ($\hbar \equiv 1$)

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi = H\Psi. \quad (12.10)$$

We can write the time dependent solution $\Psi(t)$ as

$$\Psi(t) = e^{-iHt} \Psi_H, \quad (12.11)$$

where Ψ_H is time independent. If F is some operator whose matrix element between two states $\Psi_n(t)$ and $\Psi_m(t)$ is defined as

$$F_{nm}(t) = \langle \Psi_n(t) | F | \Psi_m(t) \rangle, \quad (12.12)$$

we can write $|\Psi_m(t)\rangle = e^{-iHt} |\Psi_{Hm}\rangle$ and $\langle \Psi_n(t) | = \langle \Psi_{Hn} | e^{iHt}$. Then $F_{nm}(t)$ can be rewritten

$$F_{nm}(t) = \langle \Psi_{Hn} | F(t) | \Psi_{Hm} \rangle, \quad (12.13)$$

where $F_H(t) = e^{iHt} F e^{-iHt}$. The process of going from (12.12) to (12.13) is a transformation from the *Schrödinger picture* (where the state vector $\Psi(t)$ depends on time but the operator F does not) to the *Heisenberg picture* (where Ψ_H is a time-independent state vector but $F_H(t)$ is a time-dependent operator). The transformation from (to) Schrödinger picture to (from) Heisenberg picture can be summarized by

$$\Psi_S(t) = e^{-iHt}\Psi_H \text{ and } F_H(t) = e^{iHt}F_S e^{-iHt}. \quad (12.14)$$

From these equations and (12.10), it is clear that 38

$$\frac{\partial F_H(t)}{\partial t} = i[H, F_H]. \quad (12.15) \quad 39$$

12.1.2 Interaction Representation 40

Suppose that the Hamiltonian H can be divided into two parts H_0 and H' , 41
where H' represents the interparticle interactions. We can define the state 42
vector $\Psi_I(t)$ in the *interaction representation* as 43
$$\Psi_I(t) = e^{iH_0 t}\Psi_S(t). \quad (12.16)$$

Operate $i\partial/\partial t$ on $\Psi_I(t)$ and make use of the fact that $\Psi_S(t)$ satisfies the 44
Schrödinger equation. This gives 45

$$i\frac{\partial \Psi_I(t)}{\partial t} = H_I(t)\Psi_I(t), \quad (12.17)$$

where 46

$$H_I(t) = e^{iH_0 t}H'e^{-iH_0 t}. \quad (12.18)$$

From (12.12) and the fact that $\Psi_S(t) = e^{-iH_0 t}\Psi_I(t)$ it is apparent that 47

$$F_I(t) = e^{iH_0 t}F_S e^{-iH_0 t}. \quad (12.19)$$

By explicit evaluation of $\frac{\partial F_I}{\partial t}$ from (12.19), it is clear that 48

$$\frac{\partial F_I}{\partial t} = i[H_0, F_I(t)]. \quad (12.20) \quad 49$$

The interaction representation has a number of advantages for interacting 50
systems; among them are: 51

1. All operators have the form of Heisenberg operators of the noninteracting 52
system, i.e., (12.19). 53
2. Wave functions satisfy the Schrödinger equation with Hamiltonian $H_I(t)$, 54
i.e., (12.17). 55

Because operators satisfy commutation relations only for equal times, $H_I(t_1)$ 56
and $H_I(t_2)$ do not commute if $t_1 \neq t_2$. Because of this, we cannot simply 57
integrate the Schrödinger equation, (12.17), to obtain 58

$$\Psi_I(t) \propto e^{-i \int^t H_I(t') dt'}. \quad (12.21)$$

Instead, we do the following: 59

1. Assume that $\Psi(t)$ is known at $t = t_0$. 60
2. Integrate the differential equation from t_0 to t . 61

This gives that

62

$$\Psi_I(t) - \Psi_I(t_0) = -i \int_{t_0}^t dt' H_I(t') \Psi_I(t'). \quad (12.22)$$

This is an integral equation for $\Psi_I(t)$ that we can try to solve by iteration. Let us write

64

$$\Psi_I(t) \equiv \Psi_I^{(0)}(t) + \Psi_I^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + \Psi_I^{(n)}(t) + \cdots \quad (12.23)$$

Here

65

$$\begin{aligned} \Psi_I^{(0)}(t) &= \Psi_I(t_0), \\ \Psi_I^{(1)}(t) &= -i \int_{t_0}^t dt' H_I(t') \Psi_I^{(0)}(t'), \\ \Psi_I^{(2)}(t) &= -i \int_{t_0}^t dt' H_I(t') \Psi_I^{(1)}(t'), \\ &\vdots \\ \Psi_I^{(n)}(t) &= -i \int_{t_0}^t dt' H_I(t') \Psi_I^{(n-1)}(t'). \end{aligned} \quad (12.24)$$

This result can be expressed as

66

$$\Psi_I(t) = S(t, t_0) \Psi_I(t_0), \quad (12.25)$$

where $S(t, t_0)$ is the so-called *S matrix* is given by

68

$$\begin{aligned} S(t, t_0) &= 1 - i \int_{t_0}^t dt_1 H_I(t_1) + (-i)^2 \int_{t_0}^t dt_1 \int_{t_0}^{t_1} dt_2 H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2) + \cdots \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-i)^n \int_{t_0}^t dt_1 \int_{t_0}^{t_1} dt_2 \cdots \int_{t_0}^{t_{n-1}} dt_n \left[H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2) \cdots H_I(t_n) \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (12.26)$$

Let us look at the third term involving integration over t_1 and t_2

69

$$I_2 = \int_{t_0}^t dt_1 \int_{t_0}^{t_1} dt_2 H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2) = \frac{1}{2} I_2 + \frac{1}{2} I_2. \quad (12.27)$$

In the second $\frac{1}{2} I_2$, let us reverse the order of integration (see Fig. 12.1). We first integrated over t_2 from t_0 to t_1 , then over t_1 from t_0 to t . Inverting the order gives

72

$$\int_{t_0}^t dt_1 \int_{t_0}^{t_1} dt_2 \Rightarrow \int_{t_0}^t dt_2 \int_{t_2}^t dt_1,$$

Therefore, we have

73

$$\frac{1}{2} I_2 = \frac{1}{2} \int_{t_0}^t dt_1 \int_{t_0}^{t_1} dt_2 H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{t_0}^t dt_2 \int_{t_2}^t dt_1 H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2). \quad (12.28)$$

But t_1 and t_2 are dummy integration variables and we can interchange the names to get

75

$$\frac{1}{2} I_2 = \frac{1}{2} \int_{t_0}^t dt_1 \int_{t_1}^t dt_2 H_I(t_2) H_I(t_1). \quad (12.29)$$

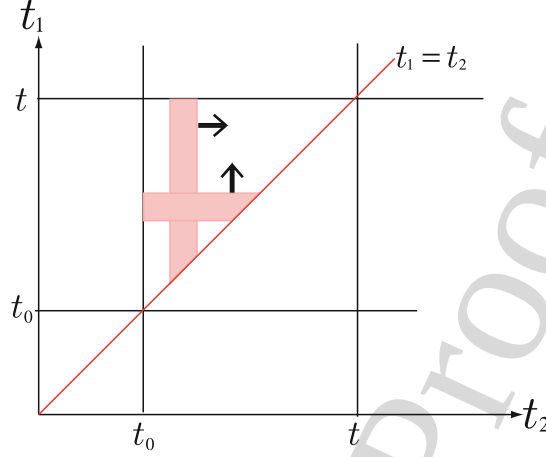


Fig. 12.1. Order of integration I_2 appearing in (12.27)

Adding this term to the $\frac{1}{2}I_2$ that was left in its original form gives 76

$$I_2 = \frac{1}{2} \int_{t_0}^t dt_1 \int_{t_0}^{t_1} dt_2 H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2) + \frac{1}{2} \int_{t_0}^t dt_1 \int_{t_1}^t dt_2 H_I(t_2) H_I(t_1). \quad (12.30)$$

We are integrating over a square of edge $\Delta t = t - t_0$ in the $t_1 t_2$ -plane. The 77
second term, with $t_2 > t_1$, is just an integral on the lower triangle shown 78
in Fig.12.1. The first term, where $t_1 > t_2$, is an integral on the upper tri- 79
angle. Therefore, we can combine the time integrals and write the limits of 80
integration from t_0 to t . 81

$$I_2 = \frac{1}{2} \int_{t_0}^t dt_1 \int_{t_0}^t dt_2 [H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2) \theta(t_1 - t_2) + H_I(t_2) H_I(t_1) \theta(t_2 - t_1)]. \quad (12.31)$$

The thing we have to be careful about here, however, is that $H_I(t_1)$ and $H_I(t_2)$ 82
do not necessarily commute. We can get around this difficulty by using the 83
time ordering operator T . The product of functions $H_I(t_j)$ that follows the 84
operator T must have the largest t values on the left. In the first term of 85
(12.31), $t_1 > t_2$, so we can write the integrand as 86

$$H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2) = T\{H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2)\}.$$

In the second term, with $t_2 > t_1$, we may write 87

$$H_I(t_2) H_I(t_1) = T\{H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2)\}.$$

Equation (12.31) can, thus, be rewritten as 88

$$I_2 = \frac{1}{2} \int_{t_0}^t dt_1 \int_{t_0}^t dt_2 T\{H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2)\}. \quad (12.32)$$

For the general term we have

89

$$I_n = \int_{t_0}^t dt_1 \int_{t_0}^{t_1} dt_2 \cdots \int_{t_0}^{t_{n-1}} dt_n H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2) \cdots H_I(t_n) \\ = \int dt_1 dt_2 \cdots dt_n H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2) \cdots H_I(t_n) \text{ with } t \geq t_1 \geq t_2 \geq \cdots \geq t_n,$$

and it is not difficult to see that the same technique can be applied to give

90

$$I_n = \frac{1}{n!} \int_{t_0}^t dt_1 \int_{t_0}^{t_1} dt_2 \cdots \int_{t_0}^{t_{n-1}} dt_n T\{H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2) \cdots H_I(t_n)\}. \quad (12.33)$$

Note that

91

$$T\{H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2) \cdots H_I(t_n)\} = H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2) \cdots H_I(t_n) \text{ if } t_1 \geq t_2 \geq \cdots \geq t_n.$$

Making use of (12.33), the S matrix can be written in the compact form

92

$$S(t, t_0) = T \left\{ e^{-i \int_{t_0}^t H_I(t') dt'} \right\}, \quad (12.34)$$

93

where it is understood that in the n th term in the expansion of the exponential, (12.33) holds. We note that, at $t = 0$, the wave functions Ψ_S, Ψ_I coincide,

95

$$\Psi_S(0) = \Psi_I(0) = S(0, t_0) \Psi_I(t_0) = S(0, t_0) e^{i H_0 t_0} \Psi_S(t_0),$$

where we have used $\Psi_I(t) = e^{i H_0 t} \Psi_S(t)$ and $\Psi_I(t) = S(t, t_0) \Psi_I(t_0)$.

96

12.2 Adiabatic Approximation

97

Suppose that we multiply H_I by $e^{-\beta|t|}$ where $\beta \geq 0$, and treat the resulting interaction as one that vanishes at $t = \pm\infty$. Then, the interaction is slowly turned on from $t = -\infty$ up to $t = 0$ and slowly turned off from $t = 0$ till $t = +\infty$. We can write $H(t = -\infty) = H_0$, the noninteracting Hamiltonian, and

102

$$\Psi_I(t = -\infty) = \Psi_H(t = -\infty) = \Phi_H. \quad (12.35)$$

102

Here, Φ_H is the Heisenberg state vector of the noninteracting system. We know that eigenstates of the interacting system in the Heisenberg, Schrödinger, and interaction representation are related by

103

104

105

$$\Psi_H(t) = e^{i H t} \Psi_S(t) \quad \text{and} \quad \Psi_I(t) = e^{i H_0 t} \Psi_S(t). \quad (12.36)$$

106

Therefore, at time $t = 0$,

106

$$\Psi_I(t = 0) = \Psi_H(t = 0) = \Psi_H. \quad (12.37)$$

107

Henceforth, we will use Ψ_H to denote the state vector of the fully interacting system in the Heisenberg representation. We can express Ψ_H as

108

$$\Psi_H = S(0, -\infty)\Phi_H, \quad (12.38)$$

where S is the S matrix defined in (12.34). Because $\Psi_I(t=0) = \Psi_H$ we can write

$$\Psi_I(t) = S(t, 0)\Psi_H = S(t, -\infty)\Phi_H. \quad (12.39)$$

In the last step, we have used $S(t_2, -\infty) = S(t_2, t_1)S(t_1, -\infty)$. If we write $|\Psi_I(t)\rangle = S(t, 0)|\Psi_H\rangle$ and $\langle\Psi_I(t)| = \langle\Psi_H|S^{-1}(t, 0)$, then for some operator F

$$\langle\Psi_I(t)|F_I|\Psi_I(t)\rangle = \langle\Psi_H|S^{-1}(t, 0)F_I S(t, 0)|\Psi_H\rangle = \langle\Psi_H(t)|F_H|\Psi_H(t)\rangle. \quad (12.40)$$

But this must equal $\langle\Psi_H|F_H|\Psi_H\rangle$. Therefore, we have

$$F_H = S^{-1}(t, 0)F_I S(t, 0). \quad (12.41)$$

Now, look at the expectation value in the exact Heisenberg interacting state Ψ_H of the time ordered product of Heisenberg operators

$$\langle\Psi_H|T\{A_H(t_1)B_H(t_2)\cdots Z_H(t_n)\}|\Psi_H\rangle.$$

If we assume that the t_i 's have been arranged in the order $t_1 \geq t_2 \geq t_3 \geq \cdots \geq t_n$, then we can write

$$\frac{\langle\Psi_H|T\{A_H(t_1)B_H(t_2)\cdots Z_H(t_n)\}|\Psi_H\rangle}{\langle\Psi_H|\Psi_H\rangle} = \frac{\langle\Phi_H|S(\infty, 0)S^{-1}(t_1, 0)A_I(t_1)S(t_1, 0)S^{-1}(t_2, 0)B_I(t_2)S(t_2, 0)S^{-1}(t_3, 0)\cdots S^{-1}(t_n, 0)Z_I(t_n)S(t_n, 0)S(0, -\infty)|\Phi_H\rangle}{\langle\Phi_H|S(\infty, 0)S(0, -\infty)|\Phi_H\rangle}. \quad (12.42)$$

But from $S(t_1, 0) = S(t_1, t_2)S(t_2, 0)$ we can see that

$$S(t_1, 0)S^{-1}(t_2, 0) = S(t_1, t_2). \quad (12.43)$$

Using this in (12.42) gives

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{\langle\Psi_H|T\{A_H(t_1)B_H(t_2)\cdots Z_H(t_n)\}|\Psi_H\rangle}{\langle\Psi_H|\Psi_H\rangle} \\ &= \frac{\langle\Phi_H|S(\infty, t_1)A_I(t_1)S(t_1, t_2)B_I(t_2)S(t_2, t_3)\cdots Z_I(t_n)S(t_n, -\infty)|\Phi_H\rangle}{\langle\Phi_H|S(\infty, -\infty)|\Phi_H\rangle}. \end{aligned} \quad (12.44)$$

We note that, in (12.44), the operators are in time-ordered form, i.e. $t_n \geq -\infty$, $t_1 \geq t_2$, $\infty \geq t_1$, so the operators

$$S(\infty, t_1)A_I(t_1)S(t_1, t_2)B_I(t_2)S(t_2, t_3)\cdots Z_I(t_n)S(t_n, -\infty)$$

are chronologically ordered, and hence we can rewrite (12.44) as

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{\langle\Psi_H|T\{A_H(t_1)B_H(t_2)\cdots Z_H(t_n)\}|\Psi_H\rangle}{\langle\Psi_H|\Psi_H\rangle} \\ &= \frac{\langle\Phi_H|T\{S(\infty, -\infty)A_I(t_1)B_I(t_2)\cdots Z_I(t_n)\}|\Phi_H\rangle}{\langle\Phi_H|S(\infty, -\infty)|\Phi_H\rangle}. \end{aligned} \quad (12.45)$$

12.3 Green's Function

126

We define the Green's function $G_{\alpha\beta}(x, x')$, where $x = \{\mathbf{r}, t\}$ and α, β are spin indices, by

$$G_{\alpha\beta}(x, x') = -i \frac{\langle \Psi_H | T \{ \psi_\alpha^H(x) \psi_\beta^{H\dagger}(x') \} | \Psi_H \rangle}{\langle \Psi_H | \Psi_H \rangle}. \quad (12.46)$$

Here, $\psi_\alpha^H(x)$ is an operator (particle field operator) in the Heisenberg representation.

By using Eq.(12.45) in Eq.(12.46), we obtain

$$G_{\alpha\beta}(x, x') = -i \frac{\langle \Phi_H | T \{ S(\infty, -\infty) \psi_\alpha^I(x) \psi_\beta^{I\dagger}(x') \} | \Phi_H \rangle}{\langle \Phi_H | S(\infty, -\infty) | \Phi_H \rangle}. \quad (12.47)$$

The operator $\psi_\alpha^I(x)$ is now in the interaction representation. If we write out the expansion for $S(\infty, -\infty)$ in the numerator and are careful to keep the time ordering, we obtain

$$G_{\alpha\beta}(\mathbf{r}, t, \mathbf{r}', t') = -\frac{i}{\langle S(\infty, -\infty) \rangle} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-i)^n}{n!} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dt_1 dt_2 \cdots dt_n \times \langle \Phi_H | T \{ \psi_\alpha^I(\mathbf{r}, t) \psi_\beta^{I\dagger}(\mathbf{r}', t') H_I(t_1) \cdots H_I(t_n) \} | \Phi_H \rangle. \quad (12.48)$$

12.3.1 Averages of Time-Ordered Products of Operators

136

If $F_1(t)$ and $F_2(t')$ are Fermion operators, then by $T\{F_1(t)F_2(t')\}$ we mean

$$\begin{aligned} T\{F_1(t)F_2(t')\} &= F_1(t)F_2(t') \quad \text{if } t > t' \\ &= -F_2(t')F_1(t) \quad \text{if } t < t'. \end{aligned} \quad (12.49)$$

In other words, we need a minus sign for every permutation of one Fermion operator past another. For Bosons no minus sign is needed.

In $G_{\alpha\beta}$ we find the ground state average of products of time-ordered operators like $T\{ABC \cdots\}$. Here, $A, B, \dots$ are field operators (or products of field operators). When the entire time ordered product is expressed as a product of $\psi^\dagger$'s and ψ 's, it is useful to put the product in what is called *normal* form, in which all annihilation operators appear to the right of all creation operators. For example, the normal product of $\psi^\dagger(1)\psi(2)$ can be written

$$N\{\psi^\dagger(1)\psi(2)\} = \psi^\dagger(1)\psi(2) \quad \text{while} \quad N\{\psi(1)\psi^\dagger(2)\} = -\psi^\dagger(2)\psi(1). \quad (12.50)$$

The difference between a T product and an N product is called a *pairing* or a *contraction*. For example, the difference in the T ordered product and the N product of AB is given by

$$T(AB) - N(AB) = A^c B^c. \quad (12.51)$$

We note that the contraction of a pair of operators is the anticommutator we omit when we formally reorder a T product of a pair of operators to get an N product. The contractions are c -numbers for the operators we are interested in.

12.3.2 Wick's Theorem

The Wick's theorem states that T product of operators $ABC \dots$ can be expressed as the sum of all possible N products with all possible pairings. By this we mean that

$$\begin{aligned}
 & T(ABCD \dots XYZ) \\
 = & N(ABCD \dots XYZ) \\
 & + N(A^c B^c CD \dots XYZ) + N(A^c B C^c D \dots XYZ) + N(A^c B C D^c \dots XYZ) \\
 & + \dots + N(ABCD \dots XY^c Z^c) \\
 & + N(A^c B^c C^a D^a \dots XYZ) + \dots + N(ABCD \dots W^c X^c Y^a Z^a) \\
 & \vdots \\
 & + N(A^c B^c C^a D^a \dots Y^b Z^b) + N(A^c B^a C^c D^a \dots Y^b Z^b) + \text{all other pairings.}
 \end{aligned} \tag{12.52}$$

In evaluating the ground state expectation value of (12.52) only the term in which every operator is paired with some other operator is nonvanishing since the normal products that contain unpaired operators must vanish (they annihilate excitations that are not present in the ground state). In the second and third lines on the right, in each term we bring two operators together by anticommuting, but neglecting the anticommutators, then replace the pair by its contraction, and finally take the N product of the remaining $n - 2$ operators. We do this with all possible pairings so we obtain $\frac{n(n-1)}{2}$ terms, each term containing an N product of the $n - 2$ remaining operators. In the fourth line on the right, we choose two pairs in all possible ways, replace them by their contractions, and leave in each term an N products of the $n - 4$ remaining operators. We repeat the same procedure, and in the last line on the right, every operator is paired with some other operator in all possible ways leaving no unpaired operators. Only the completely contracted terms (last line on the right of (12.52)) give finite contributions in the ground-state expectation value. That is, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \langle T(ABCD \dots XYZ) \rangle_0 \\
 = & \langle T(AB) \rangle \langle T(CD) \rangle \dots \langle T(YZ) \rangle \pm \langle T(AC) \rangle \langle T(BD) \rangle \dots \langle T(YZ) \rangle \\
 & \pm \text{All other pairings.}
 \end{aligned} \tag{12.53}$$

Here, we have used $A^c B^c = T(AB) - N(AB)$ and noted that $\langle N(AB) \rangle = 0$, so the ground state expectation value of $\langle A^c B^c \rangle = \langle T(AB) \rangle$. Now let us return to the expansion of the Green's function. The first term in the sum over n in (12.48) is

$$G^{(0)}(\mathbf{r}, t, \mathbf{r}', t') = -\frac{i}{\langle S(\infty, -\infty) \rangle} \langle \Phi_H^* | T\{\psi_I(\mathbf{r}, t)\psi_I^\dagger(\mathbf{r}', t')\} | \Phi_H \rangle_0, \quad (12.54)$$

where, now, the operators $\psi(\mathbf{r}, t)$ and $\psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}, t)$ are in the interaction representation. $G^{(0)}$ is the noninteracting Green's function (i.e., it is the Green function when $H' = 0$). Here we shall take the interaction to be given, in second-quantized form, by

$$H' = \frac{1}{2} \int d^3r_1 d^3r_2 \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}_1) \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}_2) U(\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2) \psi(\mathbf{r}_2) \psi(\mathbf{r}_1). \quad (12.55)$$

Now, introduce a function $V(x_1 - x_2) \equiv U(\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2) \delta(t_1 - t_2)$ to write the first correction due to interaction as (let $x = \mathbf{r}, t$)

$$\begin{aligned} \delta G^{(1)}(x, x') &= -\frac{i}{2\langle S(\infty, -\infty) \rangle} \int d^4x_1 d^4x_2 V(x_1 - x_2) \\ &\times \langle T\{\psi(x)\psi(x')\psi^\dagger(x_1)\psi^\dagger(x_2)\psi(x_2)\psi(x_1)\} \rangle_0. \end{aligned} \quad (12.56)$$

The time-ordered product of the six operators (3 ψ 's and 3 $\psi^\dagger$'s) can be written out by using (12.53)

$$\begin{aligned} &\langle T\{\psi(x)\psi^\dagger(x')\psi^\dagger(x_1)\psi^\dagger(x_2)\psi(x_2)\psi(x_1)\} \rangle_0 \\ &= \langle T(\psi(x)\psi^\dagger(x_1)) \rangle \langle T(\psi^\dagger(x_2)\psi(x_2)) \rangle \langle T(\psi(x_1)\psi^\dagger(x')) \rangle \\ &\quad - \langle T(\psi(x)\psi^\dagger(x_1)) \rangle \langle T(\psi^\dagger(x_2)\psi(x_1)) \rangle \langle T(\psi(x_2)\psi^\dagger(x')) \rangle \pm \text{all other pairings}. \end{aligned} \quad (12.57)$$

But $\langle T(\psi(x_i)\psi^\dagger(x_j)) \rangle$ is proportional to $G^{(0)}(x_i, x_j)$. Therefore, the first term on the right hand side of (12.57) is proportional to

$$G^{(0)}(x, x_1) G^{(0)}(x_2, x_2) G^{(0)}(x_1, x'). \quad (12.58)$$

It is simpler to draw Feynman diagram for each of the possible pairings. There are six of them in $\delta G^{(1)}(x, x')$ because there are six ways to pair one $\psi^\dagger$ with one ψ . The diagrams are shown in Fig. 12.2. Note that x_1 and x_2 are always connected by an interaction line $V(x_1 - x_2)$. An electron propagates in from x and out to x' . At each x_1 and x_2 there must be one $G^{(0)}$ entering and one leaving.

In a standard book on many body theory, such as Fetter–Walecka(1971), Mahan(1990), and Abrikosov–Gorkov–Dzyaloshinskii(1963), one can find

1. Rules for constructing the Feynman diagrams for the n^{th} order correction and
2. Rules for writing down the analytic expression for $\delta G^{(n)}$ associated with each diagram.

Let us give one simple example of constructing diagrams. For the n^{th} order corrections, there are n interaction lines and $(2n + 1)$ directed Green's functions, $G^{(0)}$'s. The rules for the n th-order corrections are as follows:

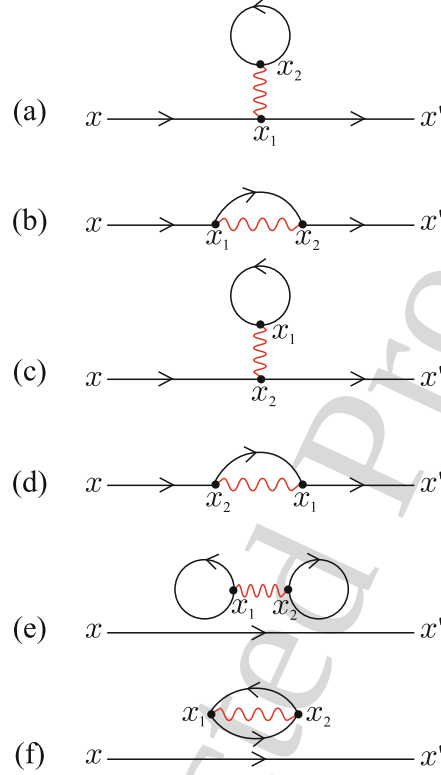


Fig. 12.2. Feynman diagrams in the first-order perturbation calculation

1. Form all *connected, topologically nonequivalent* diagrams containing $2n$ ver- 204
tices and two external points. Two solid lines and one wavy line meet at 205
each vertex. 206
2. With each solid line associate a Green's function $G^{(0)}(x, x')$ where x and 207
 x' are the coordinates of the initial and final points of the line. 208
3. With each wavy line associate $V(x - x') = U(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}')\delta(t - t')$ for a wavy 209
line connecting x and x' . 210
4. Integrate over the internal variables $d^4x_i = d^3r_i dt_i$ for all vertex coordi- 211
nates (and sum over all internal spin variables if spin is included). 212
5. Multiply by $i^n(-)^F$, where F is the number of closed Fermion loops. 213
6. Understand equal time $G^{(0)}$'s to mean, as $\delta \rightarrow 0^+$, 214

$$G^{(0)}(\mathbf{r}_1 t, \mathbf{r}_2 t) \rightarrow G^{(0)}(\mathbf{r}_1 t, \mathbf{r}_2 t + \delta).$$

The allowed diagrams contributing to $\delta G^{(2)}(x, x')$ are shown in Fig. 12.3. 215

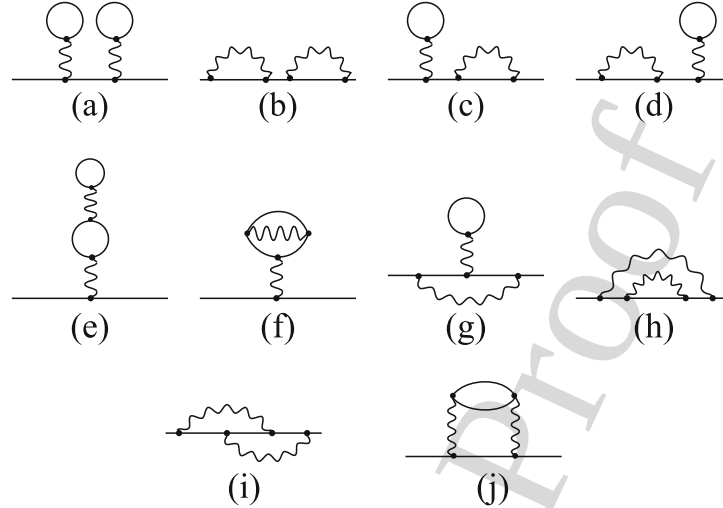


Fig. 12.3. Feynman diagrams in the second order perturbation calculation

12.3.3 Linked Clusters

216

In writing down the rules, we have only considered *linked* (or *connected*) diagrams, but diagrams (e) and (f) in Fig. 12.2 are unlinked diagrams. By this we mean that they fall into two separate pieces, one of which contains the coordinates x and x' of $G(x, x')$. It can be shown (see a standard many body text like Abrikosov–Gorkov–Dzyaloshinskii (1963).) that when the contributions from unlinked diagrams are included, they simply multiply the contribution from linked diagrams by a factor $\langle S(\infty, -\infty) \rangle$. Since this factor appears in denominator of $G_{\alpha\beta}(x, x')$ in (12.48), it simply cancels out. Furthermore, diagrams (a) and (c) in Fig. 12.2 are identical except for interchange of the dummy variables x_1 and x_2 , and so too are (b) and (d). The rules for constructing diagrams for $\delta G^{(n)}(x, x')$ take this into account correctly and one can find the proof in standard many body texts mentioned above.

12.4 Dyson's Equations

229

If we look at the corrections to $G^{(0)}(x, x')$ we notice that for our linked cluster diagrams the corrections always begin with a $G^{(0)}(x, x_1)$, and this is followed by something called a *self energy* part. Look, for example, at the figures labeled (a) or (b) in Fig. 12.2 or (j) in Fig. 12.3. The final part of the diagram has another $G^{(0)}(x_n, x')$. Suppose we represent the general self energy by Σ . Then we can write

$$G = G^{(0)} + G^{(0)} \Sigma G. \quad (12.59)$$

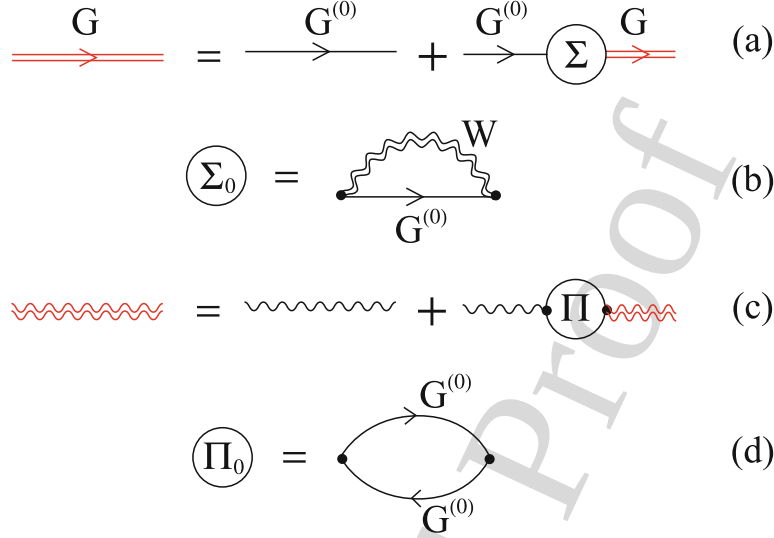


Fig. 12.4. Diagrammatic expressions of (a) Dyson equation $G = G^{(0)} + G^{(0)}\Sigma G$, (b) self energy Σ_0 , (c) Dyson equation $W = V + V\Pi W$, (d) polarization part $\Pi_0 = G^{(0)}G^{(0)}$

This equation says that G is the sum of $G^{(0)}$ and $G^{(0)}$ followed by Σ which in turn can be followed by the exact G we are trying to determine. We can express (12.59) in diagrammatic terms as is shown in Fig. 12.4a. The simplest self-energy part that is of importance in the problem of electron interactions in a degenerate electron gas is Σ_0 , where

$$\Sigma_0 = G^{(0)}W. \quad (12.60)$$

In diagrammatic terms this is expressed as shown in Fig. 12.4b, where the double wavy line is a screened interaction and we can write a Dyson equation for it by

$$W = V + V\Pi W. \quad (12.61)$$

The Π is called a *polarization part*; the simplest polarization part is

$$\Pi_0 = G^{(0)}G^{(0)}, \quad (12.62)$$

the diagrammatic expression of which is given in Fig. 12.4d. Of course, in (12.60) and (12.62) we could replace $G^{(0)}$ by the exact G to have a result that includes many terms of higher order. Approximating the self energy by the product of a Green's function G and an effective interaction W is often referred to as the **GW approximation** to the self-energy. The simplest **GW** approximation is the *random phase approximation* (RPA). In the RPA, the G is replaced by $G^{(0)}$ and W is the solution to (12.61) with (12.62) used for

the polarization part. This RPA approximation for W is exactly equivalent to $\frac{V(q)}{\varepsilon(q, \omega)}$, where $\varepsilon(q, \omega)$ is the Lindhard dielectric function. The key role of the electron self-energy in studying *electron-electron interactions* in a degenerate electron gas was initially emphasized by Quinn and Ferrell.¹ In their paper, the simplest GW approximation to Σ was used. $G^{(0)}$ was used for the Green's function and $\frac{V(q)}{\varepsilon(q, \omega)}$, the RPA screened interaction (equivalent to Lindhard screened interaction) was used for W .

12.5 Green's Function Approach to the Electron-Phonon Interaction

In this section we apply the Green's function formalism to the electron-phonon interaction. The Hamiltonian H is divided into three parts:

$$H = H_e + H_N + H_I, \quad (12.63)$$

where

$$H_e = \sum_i \left[\frac{p_i^2}{2m} + \sum_l U(\mathbf{r}_i - \mathbf{R}_l^0) \right], \quad (12.64)$$

$$H_N = \sum_l \left[\frac{P_l^2}{2M} + \sum_{l>m} V(\mathbf{R}_l - \mathbf{R}_m) \right], \quad (12.65)$$

and

$$H_I = \sum_{i>j} \frac{e^2}{r_{ij}} - \sum_{i,l} \mathbf{u}_l \cdot \nabla U(\mathbf{r}_i - \mathbf{R}_l^0). \quad (12.66)$$

Here, $U(\mathbf{r}_i - \mathbf{R}_l)$ and $V(\mathbf{R}_l - \mathbf{R}_m)$ represent the interaction between an electron at $\mathbf{r}_i$ and an ion at $\mathbf{R}_l$ and the interaction potential of the ions with each other, respectively. Let us write $\mathbf{R}_l = \mathbf{R}_l^0 + \mathbf{u}_l$ for an ion where $\mathbf{R}_l^0$ is the equilibrium position of the ion and $\mathbf{u}_l$ is its atomic displacement. The electronic Hamiltonian H_e is simply a sum of one-electron operators, whose eigenfunctions and eigenvalues are the object of considerable investigation for energy band theorists. To keep the calculations simple, we shall assume that the effect of periodic potential can be approximated to sufficient accuracy for our purpose by the introduction of an effective mass. The nuclear or ionic Hamiltonian H_N has already been analyzed in normal modes in earlier chapters. It should be pointed out that the normal modes of (12.65) are not the usual sound waves. The reason for this is that $V(\mathbf{R}_l - \mathbf{R}_m)$ is a "bare" ion-ion interaction, for a pair of ions sitting in a uniform background of negative charge, not the true interaction which is screened by the conduction electrons. We can express (12.64)–(12.66) in the usual second quantized notation as

¹ J.J. Quinn, R.A. Ferrell, Phys. Rev **112**, 812 (1958).

12.5 Green's Function Approach to the Electron-Phonon Interaction 375

$$H_e = \sum_k \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m^*} c_k^\dagger c_k, \quad (12.67)$$

$$H_N = \sum_\alpha \hbar \omega_\alpha \left(b_\alpha^\dagger b_\alpha + \frac{1}{2} \right), \quad (12.68)$$

and

$$H_I = \sum_{k,k',q} \frac{4\pi e^2}{\Omega q^2} c_{k+q}^\dagger c_{k'-q}^\dagger c_{k'} c_k + \sum_{k,\alpha,\mathbf{G}} \gamma(\alpha, \mathbf{G}) (b_\alpha - b_{-\alpha}^\dagger) c_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}+\mathbf{G}}^\dagger c_k. \quad (12.69)$$

The c_k and b_α are the destruction operators for an electron in state $\mathbf{k}$ and a phonon in state $\alpha = (\mathbf{q}, \mu)$, respectively.² The creation and annihilation operators satisfy the usual commutation (phonon operators) or anticommutation (electron operators) rules. The coupling constant $\frac{4\pi e^2}{\Omega q^2}$ is simply the Fourier transform of the Coulomb interaction, and $\gamma(\alpha, \mathbf{G})$ is given by

$$\gamma(\alpha, \mathbf{G}) = -i(\mathbf{q} + \mathbf{G}) \cdot \hat{\mathbf{e}}_\alpha \left(\frac{\hbar N}{2M\omega_\alpha} \right)^{1/2} U(\mathbf{q} + \mathbf{G}), \quad (12.70)$$

where $U(\mathbf{q} + \mathbf{G})$ is the Fourier transform of $U(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R})$. For simplicity we shall limit ourselves to normal processes (*i.e.*, $\mathbf{G} = 0$), and take $U(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R})$ as the Coulomb interaction $-\frac{Ze^2}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R}|}$ between an electron of charge $-e$ and an ion of charge Ze . With these simplifications $\gamma(\alpha, \mathbf{G})$ reduces to

$$\gamma(q) = i \frac{4\pi Ze^2}{q} \left(\frac{\hbar N}{2M\omega_q} \right)^{1/2} \quad (12.71)$$

for the interaction of electrons with a longitudinal wave, and zero for interaction with a transverse wave. Furthermore, when we make these assumptions, the longitudinal modes of the “bare” ions all have the frequency

$$\omega_{\mathbf{q}} = \Omega_p, \quad (12.72)$$

where $\Omega_p = \left(\frac{4\pi Z^2 e^2 N}{M} \right)^{1/2}$ is the plasma frequency of the ions.

We want to treat H_I as a perturbation. The brute-force application of perturbation theory is plagued by divergence difficulties. The divergence arise from the long range of the Coulomb interaction, and are reflected in the behavior of the coupling constants as q tends to zero. We know that in the solid, the Coulomb field of a given electron is screened because of the response of all the other electrons in the medium. This screening can be taken into account by

² We should really be careful to include the spin state in describing the electrons. We will omit the spin index for simplicity of notation, but the state k should actually be understood to represent a given wave vector and spin: $k \equiv (\mathbf{k}, \sigma)$.

376 12 Many Body Interactions: Green's Function Method

perturbation theory, but it requires summing certain classes of terms to infinite order. This is not very difficult to do if one makes use of Green's functions and Feynman diagrams. Before we discuss these, we would like to give a very quantitative sketch of why a straightforward perturbation approach must be summed to infinite order.

Suppose we introduce a static positive point charge in a degenerate electron gas. In vacuum the point charge would set up a potential Φ_0 . In the electron gas the point charge attracts electrons, and the electron cloud around it contributes to the potential set up in the medium. Suppose that we can define a *polarizability factor* α such that a potential Φ acting on the electron gas will distort the electron distribution in such a way that the potential set up by the distortion is $\alpha\Phi$. We can then apply a perturbation approach to the potential Φ_0 . Φ_0 distorts the electron gas: the distortion sets up a potential $\Phi_1 = \alpha\Phi_0$. But Φ_1 further distorts the medium and this further distortion sets up a potential $\Phi_2 = \alpha\Phi_1$, etc. such that $\Phi_{n+1} = \alpha\Phi_n$. The total potential Φ set up by the point charge in the electron gas is

$$\begin{aligned}\Phi &= \Phi_0 + \Phi_1 + \Phi_2 + \cdots = \Phi_0(1 + \alpha + \alpha^2 + \cdots) \\ &= \Phi_0(1 - \alpha)^{-1}.\end{aligned}\quad (12.73)$$

We see that we must sum the straightforward perturbation theory to infinite order. It is usually much simpler to apply "self-consistent" perturbation theory. In this approach one simply says that Φ_0 will ultimately set up some self-consistent field Φ . Now, the field acting on the electron gas and polarizing it is not Φ_0 but the full self-consistent field Φ . Therefore, the polarization contribution to the full potential should be $\alpha\Phi$: this gives

$$\Phi = \Phi_0 + \alpha\Phi, \quad (12.74)$$

which is the same result obtained by summing the infinite set of perturbation contributions in (12.73).

We want to use some simple Feynman propagation functions or Green's functions, so we will give a very quick definition of what we must know to use them. If we have the Schrödinger equation

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial t} = H\Psi, \quad (12.75)$$

and we know $\Psi(t_1)$, we can determine Ψ at a later time from the equation

$$\Psi(x_2, t_2) = \int d^3x_1 G_0(x_2, t_2; x_1, t_1) \Psi(x_1, t_1). \quad (12.76)$$

By substitution, one can show that G_0 satisfies the differential equation

$$\left[i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t_2} - H(x_2) \right] G_0(2, 1) = i\hbar \delta(t_2 - t_1) \delta(x_2 - x_1), \quad (12.77)$$

12.5 Green's Function Approach to the Electron-Phonon Interaction 377

where $(2, 1)$ denotes $(x_2, t_2; x_1, t_1)$. One can easily show that $G_0(2, 1)$ can be 335
expressed in terms of the stationary states of H . That is, if 336

$$Hu_n = E_n u_n, \quad (12.78)$$

then $G_0(2, 1)$ can be shown to be 337

$$\begin{aligned} G_0(2, 1) &= \sum_n u_n(x_2) u_n^*(x_1) e^{-iE_n t_{21}/\hbar}, \text{ if } t_{21} > 0, \\ &= 0 \quad \text{otherwise.} \end{aligned} \quad (12.79)$$

If we are considering a system of many Fermions, we can take into account 338
the exclusion principle in a very simple way. We simply subtract from (12.79) 339
the summation over all states of energy less than the Fermi energy E_F . 340

$$\begin{aligned} G_0(2, 1) &= \sum_{E_n > E_F} u_n(x_2) u_n^*(x_1) e^{-iE_n t_{21}/\hbar}, \text{ if } t_{21} > 0, \\ &= - \sum_{E_n < E_F} u_n(x_2) u_n^*(x_1) e^{-iE_n t_{21}/\hbar}, \text{ if } t_{21} < 0. \end{aligned} \quad (12.80)$$

We always represent a Fermion propagator by a directed solid line. A negative 341
(relative to the last filled state E_F) energy Fermion propagates backward in 342
time. This corresponds to the propagation of a hole in a normally filled state. 343
For free electrons the functions $u_n(x)$ are plane waves. We are often interested 344
in $G_0(q, \omega)$, the Fourier transform of $G_0(2, 1)$: 345

$$G_0(2, 1) = \int \frac{d^3 q d\omega}{(2\pi)^4} G_0(q, \omega) e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x}_{21} - i\omega t_{21}}. \quad (12.81)$$

The single particle propagator $G_0(q, \omega)$ for a system of free electrons is 346

$$G_0(q, \omega) = \frac{i}{\omega - E(q)(1 - i\delta)}, \quad (12.82)$$

where $E(q) = \frac{\hbar^2}{2m}(q^2 - k_F^2)$ is the energy measured relative to the Fermi energy 347
and takes on both positive and negative values. k_F is the Fermi wave number, 348
and δ is a positive infinitesimal. 349

In the language of second quantization $G_0(2, 1)$ can also be expressed as 350
the ground state expectation value of the time ordered product of two electron 351
field operators 352

$$G_0(2, 1) = \langle \text{GS} | T \{ \Psi(2) \Psi^\dagger(1) \} | \text{GS} \rangle. \quad (12.83) \quad 353$$

In this expression, $\Psi(2) = \Psi(x_2, t_2)$ is the electron field operator and $\Psi^\dagger(2)$ 354
is its conjugate. These operators satisfy the usual Fermion anticommutation 355
relations. T is the chronological operator. It should be pointed out that people 356
often define $G_0(2, 1)$ with an additional factor of i on the right hand side of 357

(12.83). This arbitrariness in defining the propagation functions is compensated for by slight differences in the rules for calculating the amplitudes of the Feynman diagrams which appear in perturbation theory.

We can also define a propagation function for the instantaneous Coulomb interaction $\frac{e^2}{r_{21}}\delta(t_{21})$ between electrons at two points in space time. We shall use i times the Fourier transform of $\frac{e^2}{r_{21}}\delta(t_{21})$ as the bare Coulomb propagator $V(q, \omega)$

$$V(q, \omega) = \frac{4\pi e^2 i}{\Omega q^2}. \quad (12.84)$$

If we define the phonon field operator $\Phi(x)$ by the equation

$$\Phi(x) = \sum_{\mathbf{q}} \gamma(\mathbf{q}) e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x}} (b_{\mathbf{q}}^\dagger - b_{-\mathbf{q}}) \quad (12.85)$$

then we can define the space time representation for the phonon propagator in the usual way

$$P_0(2, 1) = i \langle \text{GS} | T \{ \Phi(x_2, t_2) \Phi^\dagger(x_1, t_1) \} | \text{GS} \rangle \quad (12.86)$$

where $\Phi(x_2, t_2) = e^{-iHt_2} \Phi(x_2) e^{iHt_2}$. The Fourier transform of (12.86) is $P_0(q, \omega)$, the wave vector frequency space representation of P_0 . For the phonon system of (12.71) and (12.72), $P_0(q, \omega)$ is given by

$$P_0(q, \omega) = \frac{2i\Omega_p \gamma^2(q)}{\omega^2 - \Omega_p^2}. \quad (12.87)$$

It is quite convenient to use Feynman diagrams to keep track of the various terms in perturbation theory. The rules for constructing diagrams are quite simple. Each electron in an excited state is represented by a solid line directed upward. Each hole in a normally filled state is represented by a solid line directed downward. The instantaneous Coulomb interaction is represented by a horizontal dotted line connecting the two particles undergoing a virtual scattering, and propagation of a phonon is represented by a wavy line.

Consider the scattering of two electrons. In vacuum they can scatter by the exchange of one virtual photon (Coulomb line) in only one way, which is shown in Fig. 12.5. Now consider the Coulomb interaction in the medium. The set of

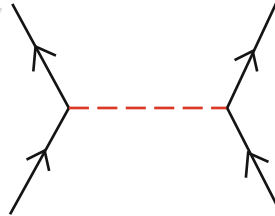


Fig. 12.5. Diagrammatic expression of the exchange of virtual photon

12.5 Green's Function Approach to the Electron-Phonon Interaction 379

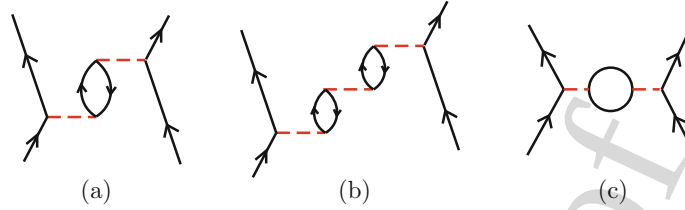


Fig. 12.6. Diagrammatic expressions of representative polarization parts in pair approximation

diagrams, of which Fig. 12.6a and b are representative, are additional processes which can not occur in the absence of the polarizable medium. In Fig. 12.6c, the circle represents any possible part of a diagram which is connected to the remainder by two Coulomb interaction lines only. All such parts of a general diagram are called *polarizable parts*, because they obviously represent the response or screening of the polarizable medium. The effective Coulomb interaction between two particles should be the sum of all the possible polarization parts (the bare interaction can be thought of as the zeroth order polarization part). Actually we can not sum all the possible polarization parts, but we can sum the class of which Fig. 12.6a and b are representative, that is, the chain of bubbles. The approximation of replacing the effective interaction by the sum of all bubble graph is called the *pair approximation*. Before looking at the sum we will write down the rules for calculating the amplitude associated with a given Feynman diagram which appears in perturbation theory. The amplitude for a given diagram contains a product of

- (i) a propagation function $G_0(k, \omega)$ for each internal electron-hole line of wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ and frequency ω .
- (ii) a propagation function $P_0(k, \omega)$ for each phonon line of wave vector $\mathbf{q}$ and frequency ω .
- (iii) a propagation function $V(q, \omega)$ for each Coulomb line of wave vector $\mathbf{q}$.
- (iv) a factor (-1) for each closed loop.
- (v) $(-i/\hbar)^n$ for the n th-order term in perturbation theory.
- (vi) delta functions conserving energy, momentum, and spin at each vertex.
- (vii) Finally, we must integrate over the wave vectors and frequencies of all internal lines.

The set of diagrams we would like to sum in order to obtain the effective Coulomb propagator $W(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ can easily be seen to be the solution of the equation given pictorially by Fig. 12.7. This equation can be written

$$W(q, \omega) = V(q, \omega) - V(q, \omega)Q_0(q, \omega)W(q, \omega), \quad (12.88)$$



Fig. 12.7. Diagrammatic expression of Dyson equation for the effective Coulomb propagator $W = V + V\Pi W$

where

$$Q_0(q, \omega) = 2(-1) \int \frac{d^3 k_1 d\omega_1 d^3 k_2 d\omega_2}{(2\pi)^8} G_0(k_1, \omega_1) G_0(k_2, \omega_2) \delta(\omega_1 - \omega_2 + \omega) \times \delta(\mathbf{k}_1 - \mathbf{k}_2 + \mathbf{q}) \quad (12.89)$$

is the propagation function for the electron-hole pair. The factor of two is introduced to account for the two possible spin orientations. Using the electron propagation functions defined by (12.82) and integrating gives

$$Q_0(q, \omega) = \frac{-2i}{(2\pi)^3} \int_{k < k_F} d^3 k \left[\frac{1}{E(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q}) - E(\mathbf{k}) + \omega} + \frac{1}{E(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q}) - E(\mathbf{k}) - \omega} \right]. \quad (12.90)$$

The solution of (12.88) is simply

$$W = \frac{V}{1 + VQ_0} \quad (12.91)$$

and using (12.90) one can easily see that $1 + VQ_0$ is just the Lindhard dielectric function $\varepsilon(q, \omega)$. This dielectric function is discussed at some length in the previous chapter, and the reader is referred to Lindhard's paper³ for a complete treatment. For our purposes we must note two things: first $\varepsilon(q, \omega)$ is complex, the imaginary part being proportional to the number of electrons which can be excited to an unoccupied state by addition of a momentum $\hbar\mathbf{q}$ whose energy change is equal to $\hbar\omega$. The second point is that for zero frequency $\varepsilon(q, 0)$ is given by

$$\varepsilon(q) = 1 + F\left(\frac{q}{2k_F}\right) \frac{k_s^2}{q^2}, \quad (12.92)$$

where k_s is the Fermi-Thomas screening parameter and k_F is the Fermi wave number. The function $F\left(\frac{q}{2k_F}\right)$ is the function sketched in Fig. 11.12. $F(x)$ is equal to unity for x equal to zero, approaches zero as x approaches infinity, and has logarithmic singularity in slope at $x = 1$.

Now, let us return to our "model solid" which contains longitudinal phonons as well as electrons. Two electrons can scatter via the virtual exchange of phonons. In fact, anywhere a Coulomb interaction line has

³ J. Lindhard, Kgl. Danske Videnskab. Selskab, Mat.-Fys. Medd. **28**, No. 8 (1954); *ibid.*, **27**, No. 15 (1953).

12.5 Green's Function Approach to the Electron-Phonon Interaction 381

appeared previously, a phonon line may equally well appear. If we call $D_0(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ the sum of $P_0(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ and $V(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ we can just replace V and W by D_0 and D in Eq.(12.88). $D(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ then represents the propagation function for the total interaction, i.e., the sum of the Coulomb interaction and the interaction due to virtual exchange of phonons. It is apparent that

$$D(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{D_0(\mathbf{q}, \omega)}{1 + D_0(\mathbf{q}, \omega)Q_0(\mathbf{q}, \omega)}. \quad (12.93)$$

By substituting into (12.92) the expressions for the propagation functions and using the fact that $1 + VQ_0 = \varepsilon(q, \omega)$, one can obtain

$$D(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{4\pi e^2 i}{q^2 [\varepsilon(q, \omega) - \Omega_p^2/\omega^2]}. \quad (12.94)$$

The propagation function D as a pole at

$$\omega^2 = \frac{\Omega_p^2}{\varepsilon(q, \omega)}. \quad (12.95)$$

The solutions of this equation are our “renormalized” phonons. From the long wavelength, zero frequency dielectric constant we get the approximate solution

$$\omega_q = \frac{\Omega_p}{k_s} q. \quad (12.96)$$

For most metals, $\frac{\Omega_p}{k_s}$ is within about 15–20% of the velocity of longitudinal sound waves. If we look at the derivative of ω_q^2 with respect to q we see a logarithmic singularity at $q = 2k_F$. This is responsible for the Kohn effect, which has been observed by neutron scattering. If we take account of the imaginary as well as the real part of the dielectric constant, the solution of (12.95) has both real and imaginary part. If we write $\omega = \omega_1 + i\omega_2$, then ω_2 turns out to be

$$\omega_2 \approx \frac{\pi}{4} \frac{k_s^2}{k_s^2 + q^2} \frac{c_s}{v_F} \omega_1, \quad (12.97)$$

where c_s is the velocity of sound and v_F the Fermi velocity. The coefficient of attenuation of the sound wave (due to excitation of conduction electrons) is simply $\frac{\omega_2}{\omega_1}$. This result agrees with the more standard calculations of the attenuation coefficient.

Finally, if we wish to define the effective interaction between electrons due to virtual exchange of phonons, or the *effective phonon propagator*, we can simply subtract from $D(q, \omega)$ that part which contains no phonons, namely $W(q, \omega)$. If we call the resultant effective phonon propagator $P(q, \omega)$, we obtain

$$P(q, \omega) = \frac{2i\omega_q |\gamma_q^{\text{eff}}|^2}{\omega^2 - \omega_q^2}, \quad (12.98)$$

382 12 Many Body Interactions: Green's Function Method

where ω_q is given by (12.96) and

460

$$|\gamma_q^{\text{eff}}| = \frac{4\pi Ze^2}{q\varepsilon(q, \omega_q)} \left(\frac{N}{2M\omega_q} \right)^{1/2}. \quad (12.99)$$

Replacing $\varepsilon(q, \omega_q)$ by its long wavelength, zero frequency limit $\left[1 + \frac{k_s^2}{q^2}\right]$,
reduces (12.99) to the result of Bardeen and Pines⁴ for the effective electron–
electron interaction.

463

12.6 Electron Self Energy

464

The Dyson equation for the Green's function can be written

465

$$G(k, \omega) = G^{(0)}(k, \omega) + G^{(0)}(k, \omega) \Sigma(k, \omega) G(k, \omega). \quad (12.100)$$

Dividing by $GG^{(0)}$ gives

466

$$\Sigma(k, \omega) = [G^{(0)}(k, \omega)]^{-1} - [G(k, \omega)]^{-1}. \quad (12.101)$$

The energy of a quasiparticle can be written

467

$$E_p = \varepsilon_p + \Sigma(p, \omega) \big|_{\omega=E_p}. \quad (12.102)$$

468

E_p and ε_p , the kinetic energy, are usually measured relative to E_F , the Fermi
energy. Knowing how $\Sigma(p, \omega)$ depends on p , ω , and r_s allows one to calculate
almost all the properties of an electron gas that are of interest. Some results
of interest are worth mentioning.

472

(1) $\Sigma(p, E_p)$ has both a real and an imaginary part.

473

$$\Sigma(p, E_p) = \Sigma_1(p, E_p) + i\Sigma_2(p, E_p). \quad (12.103)$$

474

The imaginary part is related to the lifetime of the quasiparticle excitation.

475

476

(2) The spectral function $A(p, \omega)$ is defined by

477

$$A(p, \omega) = \frac{-2\Sigma_2(p, \omega)}{[\omega - \varepsilon_p - \Sigma_1(p, \omega)]^2 + [\Sigma_2(p, \omega)]^2}. \quad (12.104)$$

For noninteracting electrons $A(p, \omega)$ has a δ function singularity at $\omega = \varepsilon_p$,
the energy of the excitation. The δ function is broadened by $\Sigma_2(p, \omega)$. If
 $A(p, \omega)$ has a pole in a region where $\Sigma_2(p, \omega)$ is zero, the strength of the
pole is decreased by a *renormalization factor* $Z(p)$.

481

$$A(p, \omega) = 2\pi Z(p) \delta(\omega - \varepsilon_p - \Sigma_1(p, \omega)) \quad (12.105)$$

⁴ John Bardeen and David Pines, Phys. Rev. **99**, 1140 (1955).

12.7 Quasiparticle Interactions and Fermi Liquid Theory 383

and 482

$$Z(p) = \left[\frac{1}{1 - \frac{\partial}{\partial \omega} \Sigma_1(p, \omega)} \right]_{\omega=E_p}. \quad (12.106)$$

- (3) The quasiparticle excitations at the Fermi surface have an effective mass 483
 m^* given by 484

$$\frac{m}{m^*} = \left[\frac{1 + \frac{\partial \Sigma_1(k, \omega)}{\partial \varepsilon_k}}{1 - \frac{\partial \Sigma_1(k, \omega)}{\partial \omega}} \right]_{\substack{k=k_F \\ \omega=0}}. \quad (12.107)$$

- (4) Properties like the spin susceptibility, the specific heat, the compressibil- 485
 ity, and the ground state energy can be evaluated from a knowledge of 486
 $\Sigma(k, \omega)$. But, we do not have time to go through these in any detail. 487
 (5) The self-energy approach leads very naturally to an understanding of the 488
 Landau theory of a Fermi liquid. We will describe a very brief and intuitive 489
 explanation of the theory. 490

12.7 Quasiparticle Interactions and Fermi Liquid Theory 491

Instead of describing the interacting ground state and excited states of an 492
 electron gas, we can think of simply describing how many quasiparticles are 493
 present in some excited state. Let us start by noting that if we begin with a 494
 filled Fermi sphere of noninteracting electrons (i.e., the Sommerfeld model) 495
 and adiabatically turn on the electron–electron interaction, we will generate at 496
 $t = 0$ the exact interacting ground state. Now consider the noninteracting state 497
 described by a filled Fermi sphere plus one electron of momentum p outside 498
 the Fermi sphere (or one hole of momentum p inside the Fermi sphere). When 499
 interactions are adiabatically turned on, this is a single quasiparticle state. 500
 The energy of this *quasielectron* (or *quasihole*) is written by 501

$$E_{\mathbf{p}} = \varepsilon_{\mathbf{p}} + \Sigma(\mathbf{p}, E_{\mathbf{p}}). \quad (12.108)$$

If $E_{\mathbf{p}}$ is much larger than $\Sigma_2(\mathbf{p}, E_{\mathbf{p}})$, then the quasiparticles have long life- 502
 times. It is much simpler to describe a state by saying how many quasielectrons 503
 and quasiholes are present. Then, the energy of the state can be written as 504

$$E = E_0 + \sum_{\mathbf{p}\sigma} \delta n_{\mathbf{p}\sigma} E_{\mathbf{p}\sigma} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\substack{\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}' \\ \sigma, \sigma'}} f_{\sigma\sigma'}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}') \delta n_{\mathbf{p}\sigma} \delta n_{\mathbf{p}'\sigma'}. \quad (12.109) \quad 505$$

The first term on the right is the ground state energy, the second is the quasi- 506
 particle energy $E_{\mathbf{p}\sigma}$ multiplied by the quasiparticle distribution function, and 507
 the third represents the interactions of the quasiparticles with one another. 508
 $\Sigma(\mathbf{p}, E_{\mathbf{p}})$ represents the interaction of a quasiparticle of momentum $\mathbf{p}$ with 509
 the ground state of the interacting electron gas. But if the electron gas is 510

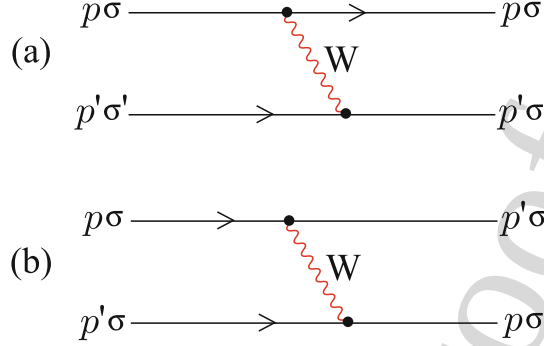


Fig. 12.8. Diagrammatic representation of quasiparticle scattering of (a) zero momentum transfer and (b) of finite momentum transfer

not in its ground state, there are quasielectrons and quasiholes present that change the energy of the quasiparticle of momentum $\mathbf{p}$. We can get a simple picture of the *Fermi liquid* interaction between quasiparticles by considering the Feynman diagrams that describe the scattering processes that take a pair of quasiparticles in states $(\mathbf{p}, \sigma)$ and $(\mathbf{p}', \sigma')$ from this initial state to an equivalent final state. These processes are represented in diagrammatic terms in Fig. 12.8a and b. Here, the interaction W (denoted by wavy lines) will be taken as the RPA screened interaction. In the first term (a) $W(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ corresponds to zero momentum transfer since $\mathbf{p} \rightarrow \mathbf{p}$ and $\mathbf{p}' \rightarrow \mathbf{p}'$. This term is exactly zero since the Coulomb interaction is cancelled by the interaction with the uniform background of positive charge at $\mathbf{q} = 0$. The second term (b) gives the same final state as the initial state only if $\sigma = \sigma'$. Then $W(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ is $W(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{p}', 0)$ since the momentum transfer is $\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{p}'$ and there is no change in energy.

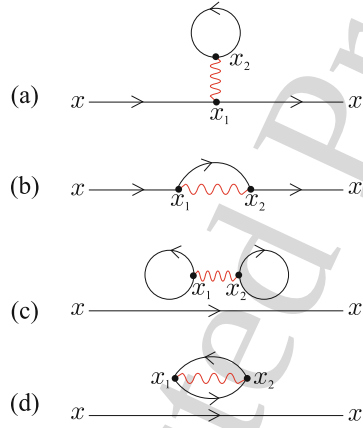
Of course, higher order processes in the effective interaction could be important, but we will ignore them to get the simplified picture. We take Landau's $f_{\sigma\sigma'}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}')$ to be equal to

$$f_{\sigma\sigma'}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}') = \begin{cases} \frac{4\pi e^2}{(\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{p}')^2 \epsilon(\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{p}', 0)} & \text{if } \sigma = \sigma' \\ 0 & \text{if } \sigma \neq \sigma'. \end{cases} \quad (12.110)$$

With this simple approximation a rather good estimate of m^* (and hence of the electronic specific heat) can be obtained. Results for the spin susceptibility are not quite as good, and the estimate of the interaction contribution to the compressibility is poor. One important effect that is omitted is the effect of spin fluctuations (in addition to charge density fluctuations) and another is the local field corrections to the RPA. In order to get a more thorough understanding of these ideas, one needs to read advanced texts on many body theory.

Problems**12.1.** Show explicitly that

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{t_0}^t dt_1 \int_{t_0}^{t_1} dt_2 \int_{t_0}^{t_3} dt_3 H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2) H_I(t_3) \\ &= \frac{1}{3!} \int_{t_0}^t dt_1 \int_{t_0}^t dt_2 \int_{t_0}^t dt_3 T \{ H_I(t_1) H_I(t_2) H_I(t_3) \}. \end{aligned}$$

12.2. The complete first-order contributions to $G(x, x')$ are shown in the figure.

- (a) Write each term $\delta G^{(1)}(x, y)$ out in terms of noninteraction two particle Green's function $G^{(0)}(x, y)$ and the interaction $V(x_1 - x_2) \equiv U(\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2)\delta(t_1 - t_2)$. Here, $x = (\mathbf{r}, t)$ and one may omit the spin to simplify the notation.
- (b) Let us introduce the Fourier transform $G_{\alpha\beta}(k)$ of the $G_{\alpha\beta}(x, y)$ as follows:

$$G_{\alpha\beta}(x, y) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^4} \int d^4k e^{ik \cdot (x-y)} G_{\alpha\beta}(k)$$

$$G_{\alpha\beta}^{(0)}(x, y) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^4} \int d^4k e^{ik \cdot (x-y)} G_{\alpha\beta}^{(0)}(k),$$

where $k = (\mathbf{k}, \omega)$, $d^4k \equiv d^3k d\omega$, and $k \cdot x \equiv \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x} - \omega t$. In addition, for the interaction given by $V(x_1 - x_2) \equiv U(\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2)\delta(t_1 - t_2)$ we can write

$$\begin{aligned} V(x, x')_{\alpha\alpha', \beta\beta'} &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^4} \int d^4k e^{ik \cdot (x-x')} V(k)_{\alpha\alpha', \beta\beta'} \\ &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \int d^3x e^{i \cdot (\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}')} U(\mathbf{k})_{\alpha\alpha', \beta\beta'} \delta(t - t'), \end{aligned}$$

where $V(k)_{\alpha\alpha', \beta\beta'} = U(\mathbf{k})_{\alpha\alpha', \beta\beta'} = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \int d^3x e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}} U(\mathbf{k})_{\alpha\alpha', \beta\beta'}$ is the spatial Fourier transform of the interparticle potential. Express each

386 12 Many Body Interactions: Green's Function Method

term obtained in part (a) in terms of $G_{\alpha\beta}^{(0)}(k)$ and $V(k)$ in the momen- 551
tum space. 552

12.3. By definition the noninteracting fermion Green's function is given by 553

$$G_{\alpha\beta}^{(0)}(\mathbf{x}t, \mathbf{x}'t') = -i\langle\Phi|T\{\psi_{I\alpha}(\mathbf{x}t)\psi_{I\beta}^\dagger(\mathbf{x}'t')\}\Phi\rangle,$$

the noninteracting ground state vector is taken to be normalized. Show that 554

$$G_{\alpha\beta}^{(0)}(\mathbf{k}, \omega) = \delta_{\alpha\beta} \left[\frac{\theta(k - k_F)}{\omega - \hbar^{-1}\varepsilon_k + i\eta} + \frac{\theta(k_F - k)}{\omega - \hbar^{-1}\varepsilon_k - i\eta} \right].$$

12.4. Let us define the phonon field operator $\Phi(x)$ by 555

$$\Phi(x) = \sum_{\mathbf{q}} \gamma(\mathbf{q}) e^{i\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{x}} (b_{\mathbf{q}}^\dagger - b_{-\mathbf{q}}),$$

where $\gamma(q) = i \frac{4\pi Ze^2}{q} \left(\frac{\hbar N}{2M\omega_q} \right)^{1/2}$. Then we can define the phonon propaga- 556
tor by $P_0(2, 1) = i\langle\text{GS} | T\{\Phi(x_2, t_2)\Phi^\dagger(x_1, t_1)\} | \text{GS}\rangle$ where $\Phi(x_2, t_2) =$ 557
 $e^{-iHt_2}\Phi(x_2)e^{iHt_2}$. 558

(a) Take the Fourier transform of $P_0(2, 1)$ to obtain $P_0(q, \omega)$, the wavevec- 559
tor frequency space representation of $P_0(2, 1)$. 560

(b) Show that $P_0(q, \omega)$ can be written as 561

$$P_0(q, \omega) = \frac{2i\Omega_p\gamma^2(q)}{\omega^2 - \Omega_p^2},$$

where $\Omega_p = \left(\frac{4\pi Z^2 e^2 N}{M} \right)^{1/2}$ is the plasma frequency of the ions. 562

12.5. Let us consider a Dyson equation given by 563

$$W(q, \omega) = V(q, \omega) - V(q, \omega)Q_0(q, \omega)W(q, \omega),$$

where 564

$$Q_0(q, \omega) = 2(-1) \int \frac{d^3k_1 d\omega_1 d^3k_2 d\omega_2}{(2\pi)^8} \\ G_0(k_1, \omega_1)G_0(k_2, \omega_2)\delta(\omega_1 - \omega_2 + \omega)\delta(\mathbf{k}_1 - \mathbf{k}_2 + \mathbf{q})$$

is the propagation function for the electron-hole pair. 565

(a) Show that $Q_0(q, \omega)$ can be written as 566

$$Q_0(q, \omega) = \frac{-2i}{(2\pi)^3} \int_{k < k_F} d^3k \\ \left[\frac{1}{E(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q}) - E(\mathbf{k}) + \omega} + \frac{1}{E(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q}) - E(\mathbf{k}) - \omega} \right].$$

Note that the single particle propagator $G_0(q, \omega)$ is given by 567

$$G_0(q, \omega) = \frac{i}{\omega - E(q)(1 - i\delta)}.$$

12.7 Quasiparticle Interactions and Fermi Liquid Theory 387

- (b) Show that the solution of the Dyson equation given above is simply 568
 $W = \frac{V}{1+VQ_0}$. 569
- (c) Show that $1 + VQ_0$ is the same as the Lindhard dielectric function 570
 $\varepsilon(q, \omega)$. 571

Uncorrected Proof

Summary

572

In this chapter, we study Green's function method – a formal theory of many
body interactions. Green's function is defined in terms of a matrix element
of time ordered Heisenberg operators in the exact interacting ground state.
We then introduce the interaction representation of the state functions of
many particle states and write the Green's function in terms of time ordered
products of interaction operators. Wick's theorem is introduced to write the
exact Green's function as a perturbation expansion involving only pairings of
field operators in the interaction representation. Dyson equations for Green's
function and the screened interaction are illustrated and Fermi liquid picture
of quasiparticle interactions is also discussed.

The Hamiltonian H of a many particle system can be divided into two
parts H_0 and H' , where H' represents the interparticle interactions given, in
second quantized form, by

$$H' = \frac{1}{2} \int d^3r_1 d^3r_2 \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}_1) \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}_2) U(\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2) \psi(\mathbf{r}_2) \psi(\mathbf{r}_1).$$

Particle density at a position $\mathbf{r}_0$ and the total particle number N are written,
respectively, as $n(\mathbf{r}_0) = \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}_0) \psi(\mathbf{r}_0)$; $N = \int d^3r \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}) \psi(\mathbf{r})$.

The Schrödinger equation of the many particle wave function $\Psi(1, 2, \dots, N)$
is ($\hbar \equiv 1$) $i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi = H\Psi$, where $\Psi(t) = e^{-iHt} \Psi_H$. Here, Ψ_H is time independent.
The state vector $\Psi_I(t)$ and operator $F_I(t)$ in the *interaction representation* are
written as

$$\Psi_I(t) = e^{iH_0 t} \Psi_S(t); \quad F_I(t) = e^{iH_0 t} F_S e^{-iH_0 t}.$$

The equation of motion for $F_I(t)$ is $\frac{\partial F_I}{\partial t} = i[H_0, F_I(t)]$ and the solution for
 $F_I(t)$ can be expressed as $\Psi_I(t) = S(t, t_0) \Psi_I(t_0)$, where $S(t, t_0)$ is the S *matrix*
given by

$$S(t, t_0) = T \left\{ e^{-i \int_{t_0}^t H_I(t') dt'} \right\}.$$

The eigenstates of the interacting system in the Heisenberg, Schrödinger, and
interaction representation are related by

$$\Psi_H(t) = e^{iHt} \Psi_S(t) \quad \text{and} \quad \Psi_I(t) = e^{iH_0 t} \Psi_S(t).$$

At time $t=0$, $\Psi_I(t=0) = \Psi_H(t=0) = \Psi_H$. Ψ_H is the state vector of the fully
interacting system in the Heisenberg representation: $\Psi_H = S(0, -\infty) \Phi_H$.

The Green's function $G_{\alpha\beta}(x, x')$ is defined, in terms of ψ_α^H and $\psi_\beta^{H\dagger}$, by

$$G_{\alpha\beta}(x, x') = -i \frac{\langle \Psi_H | T \{ \psi_\alpha^H(x) \psi_\beta^{H\dagger}(x') \} | \Psi_H \rangle}{\langle \Psi_H | \Psi_H \rangle},$$

where $x = \{\mathbf{r}, t\}$ and α, β are spin indices.

In *normal product* of operators, all annihilation operators appear to the
right of all creation operators: for example,

12.7 Quasiparticle Interactions and Fermi Liquid Theory 389

$$N\{\psi^\dagger(1)\psi(2)\} = \psi^\dagger(1)\psi(2) \text{ while } N\{\psi(1)\psi^\dagger(2)\} = -\psi^\dagger(2)\psi(1).$$

Pairing or a *contraction* is the difference between a T product and an N product: $T(AB) - N(AB) = A^c B^c$. The Wick's theorem states that T product of operators $ABC \cdots$ can be expressed as the sum of all possible N products with all possible pairings.

Dyson's equations for the interacting Green's function G and the screened interaction W are written as $G = G^{(0)} + G^{(0)}\Sigma G$; $W = V + V\Pi W$. Here, Σ and Π denote the self energy and polarization part, and the simplest of which are given, respectively, by $\Sigma_0 = G^{(0)}W$; $\Pi_0 = G^{(0)}G^{(0)}$. In the RPA, the G is replaced by $G^{(0)}$ and W is exactly equivalent to $\frac{V(q)}{\varepsilon(q, \omega)}$, where $\varepsilon(q, \omega)$ is the Lindhard dielectric function.

The Hamiltonian H of a system with the electron-phonon interaction is divided into three parts: $H = H_e + H_N + H_I$, where

$$H_e = \sum_k \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m^*} c_k^\dagger c_k, \quad H_N = \sum_\alpha \hbar\omega_\alpha (b_\alpha^\dagger b_\alpha + \frac{1}{2}),$$

and $H_I = \sum_{k, k', q} \frac{4\pi e^2}{\Omega q^2} c_{k+q}^\dagger c_{k'-q}^\dagger c_{k'} c_k + \sum_{k, \alpha, \mathbf{G}} \gamma(\alpha, \mathbf{G}) (b_\alpha - b_{-\alpha}^\dagger) c_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}+\mathbf{G}}^\dagger c_k$. Once we know $\Psi(t_1)$ of the Schrödinger equation, $i\hbar \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial t} = H\Psi$, we have

$$\Psi(x_2, t_2) = \int d^3x_1 G_0(x_2, t_2; x_1, t_1) \Psi(x_1, t_1).$$

For free electrons, $G_0(q, \omega)$ is the Fourier transform of $G_0(2, 1)$:

$$G_0(q, \omega) = \frac{i}{\omega - E(q)(1 - i\delta)}.$$

For a "model solid" containing longitudinal phonons as well as electrons, two electrons can scatter via the virtual exchange of phonons and the total interaction, i.e. the sum of the Coulomb interaction and the interaction due to virtual exchange of phonons, is given, in terms of bare interaction D_0 and polarization Q_0 , by $D(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{D_0(\mathbf{q}, \omega)}{1 + D_0(\mathbf{q}, \omega)Q_0(\mathbf{q}, \omega)}$.

The Dyson equation for the Green's function can be written

$$G(k, \omega) = G^{(0)}(k, \omega) + G^{(0)}(k, \omega)\Sigma(k, \omega)G(k, \omega).$$

The electron self energy is $\Sigma(k, \omega) = [G^{(0)}(k, \omega)]^{-1} - [G(k, \omega)]^{-1}$ and the energy of a quasiparticle is written as $E_p = \varepsilon_p + \Sigma(p, \omega)|_{\omega=E_p}$. $\Sigma(\mathbf{p}, E_p)$ represents the interaction of a quasiparticle of momentum $\mathbf{p}$ with the ground state of the interacting electron gas. The energy of the state is written as

$$E = E_0 + \sum_{\mathbf{p}\sigma} \delta n_{\mathbf{p}\sigma} E_{\mathbf{p}\sigma} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\substack{\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}' \\ \sigma, \sigma'}} f_{\sigma\sigma'}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}') \delta n_{n\sigma} \delta n_{\mathbf{p}'\sigma'}.$$

The first term on the right is the ground-state energy, the second is the quasiparticle energy $E_{\mathbf{p}\sigma}$ multiplied by the quasiparticle distribution function, and the third represents the interactions of the quasiparticles with one another.

13

1

Semiclassical Theory of Electrons

2

13.1 Bloch Electrons in a dc Magnetic Field

3

In the presence of an electric field $\mathbf{E}$ and a dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$, the equation 4
of motion of a Bloch electron in k -space takes the form 5

$$\hbar \dot{\mathbf{k}} = -e\mathbf{E} - \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}. \quad (13.1)$$

Here, $\mathbf{v} = \frac{1}{\hbar} \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon(\mathbf{k})$ is the velocity of the Bloch electron whose energy $\varepsilon(\mathbf{k})$ 6
is an arbitrary function of wave vector $\mathbf{k}$. In deriving (13.1), we noted that 7
no interband transitions were allowed, and that when $\mathbf{k}$ became equal to a 8
value on the boundary of the Brillouin zone this value of $\mathbf{k}$ was identical to 9
the value on the opposite side of the Brillouin zone separated from it by a 10
reciprocal lattice vector $\mathbf{K}$. 11

Equation (13.1) can be obtained from an effective Hamiltonian 12

$$\mathcal{H} = \varepsilon\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}}{\hbar} + \frac{e}{\hbar c} \mathbf{A}\right) - e\phi, \quad (13.2)$$

where $\varepsilon(\mathbf{k})$ is the energy as a function of $\mathbf{k}$ in the absence of the magnetic 13
field and $\mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}$. Hamilton's equations give, since $\mathbf{p} = \hbar \mathbf{k} - \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}$, 14

$$v_x = \frac{\partial \mathcal{H}}{\partial p_x} = \frac{1}{\hbar} \frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial k_x}, \quad (13.3)$$

$$-\dot{p}_x = \frac{\partial \mathcal{H}}{\partial x} = \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{e}{\hbar c} \mathbf{A} \right) - e \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x} = \frac{e}{c} \left(\mathbf{v} \cdot \frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial x} \right) - e \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x}. \quad (13.4)$$

But we also know that $\dot{p}_x = \hbar \dot{k}_x - \frac{e}{c} \dot{A}_x$, or 15

$$\dot{p}_x = \hbar \dot{k}_x - \frac{e}{c} \frac{\partial A_x}{\partial t} - \frac{e}{c} \left(v_x \frac{\partial A_x}{\partial x} + v_y \frac{\partial A_x}{\partial y} + v_z \frac{\partial A_x}{\partial z} \right). \quad (13.5)$$

Equating the $\dot{p}_x$ from (13.4) with that from (13.5) gives

17

$$\hbar \dot{k}_x = -eE_x - \frac{e}{c} (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B})_x. \quad (13.6)$$

Since the equation of motion, (13.1) or (13.6), is derived from Hamilton's equations, (13.3) and (13.4), using the effective Hamiltonian (13.2), $\mathbf{p}$ and $\mathbf{r}$ must be canonically conjugate coordinates.

20

13.1.1 Energy Levels of Bloch Electrons in a Magnetic Field

21

Onsager determined the energy levels of electrons in a dc magnetic field by noting that

22

$$\hbar \dot{\mathbf{k}} = -\frac{e}{c} \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B} \quad (13.7)$$

could be written as

24

$$\dot{\mathbf{k}}_{\perp} = -\frac{e}{\hbar c} |\mathbf{v}_{\perp}| B. \quad (13.8)$$

Here, $\mathbf{v}_{\perp}$ is the component of $\mathbf{v}$ perpendicular to $\mathbf{B}$ and $\mathbf{k}_{\perp}$ is perpendicular to both $\mathbf{B}$ and $\mathbf{v}$. Integrating (13.7) gives

26

$$\mathbf{k}_{\perp} = \frac{e\mathbf{B}}{\hbar c} \times \mathbf{r}_{\perp} + \text{constant}. \quad (13.9)$$

27

We can choose the origin of $\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{r}$ space such that the constant vanishes for the electron of interest. Thus, the orbit in real space (by this we mean the periodic part of the motion in $\mathbf{r}$ -space that is perpendicular to $\mathbf{B}$) will be exactly the same shape as the orbit in k -space except that it is rotated by 90° and scaled by a factor $\frac{eB}{\hbar c}$. This factor $\frac{eB}{\hbar c}$ is called l_0^{-2} , where l_0 is the magnetic length.

32

Let us choose $\mathbf{B}$ to define the z -direction. Then $\dot{k}_z = 0$ and k_z is a constant of the motion. Now, look at the time rate of change of the energy

34

$$\frac{d\varepsilon}{dt} = \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{k}}{dt} = \hbar \mathbf{v} \cdot \left(-\frac{e}{\hbar c} \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B} \right). \quad (13.10)$$

35

This is clearly zero since $\mathbf{v}$ is perpendicular to $\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}$, meaning that ε is a constant of the motion also. Thus, the orbit of a particle in $\mathbf{k}$ -space is the intersection of a constant energy surface $\varepsilon(\mathbf{k}) = \varepsilon$ and a plane of constant k_z (see Fig. 13.1).

39

Let us look at the different kinds of orbits that are possible by considering the intersections of a plane $k_z = 0$ with a number of different energy surfaces for a simple model $\varepsilon(\mathbf{k})$ (see, for example, Fig. 13.2). The orbits can be classified as

43

- Closed electron orbits like A and B
- Closed hole orbits like C
- Open orbits like D

44

45

46

Often one simply repeats the Brillouin zone a number of times to show how the pieces of hole orbits or the open orbits look as illustrated in Fig. 13.3.

48

13.1 Bloch Electrons in a dc Magnetic Field 393

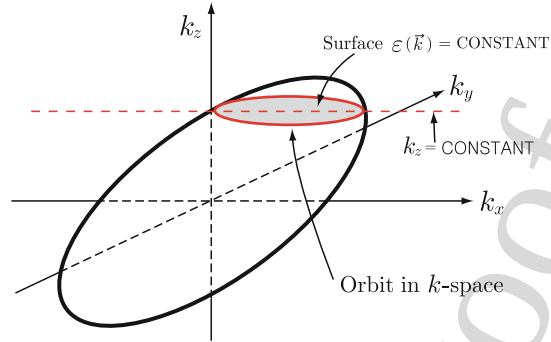


Fig. 13.1. A constant energy surface $\varepsilon(\mathbf{k}) = \varepsilon$ and the orbit of a particle in k -space

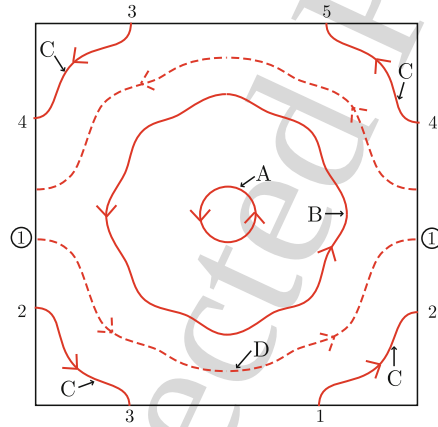


Fig. 13.2. Different kinds of orbits of a particle in k -space

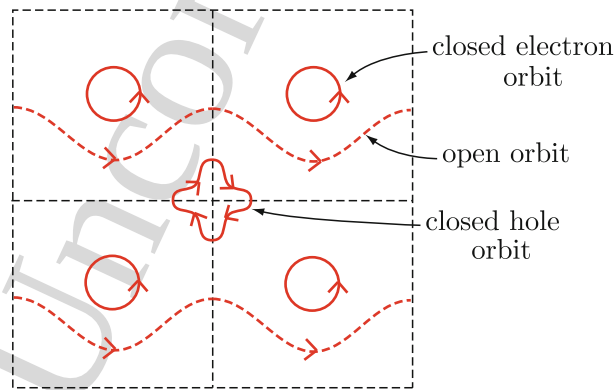


Fig. 13.3. Repeated zone scheme of the orbits in k -space

13.1.2 Quantization of Energy

49

For closed orbits in $\mathbf{k}$ -space, the motion is periodic. The real space orbits in the direction perpendicular to $\mathbf{B}$ will also be periodic. Because $\mathbf{p}$ and $\mathbf{r}$ are canonically conjugate coordinates we can apply the *Bohr-Sommerfeld quantization condition*

$$\oint \mathbf{p}_\perp \cdot d\mathbf{r}_\perp = 2\pi\hbar(n + \gamma), \quad (13.11)$$

where γ is a constant satisfying $0 \leq \gamma \leq 1$, and $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$. We can use $\mathbf{p}_\perp = \hbar\mathbf{k}_\perp - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}_\perp$ and the fact that $\mathbf{k}_\perp(t) = \frac{e\mathbf{B}}{\hbar c} \times \mathbf{r}_\perp(t)$. Then

$$\oint \mathbf{p}_\perp \cdot d\mathbf{r}_\perp = \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{B} \cdot \oint \mathbf{r}_\perp \times d\mathbf{r}_\perp - \frac{e}{c} \oint \mathbf{A} \cdot d\mathbf{r}_\perp.$$

But $\oint \mathbf{r}_\perp \times d\mathbf{r}_\perp$ is just twice the area of the orbit as is illustrated in Fig. 13.4. Furthermore, $\oint \mathbf{A} \cdot d\mathbf{r}_\perp = \int_{\text{Surface}} \nabla \times \mathbf{A} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = B \times (\text{area of orbit})$. Therefore, we obtain

$$\oint \mathbf{p}_\perp \cdot d\mathbf{r}_\perp = \frac{e}{c}B\mathcal{A} = 2\pi\hbar(n + \gamma), \quad (13.12)$$

where $\mathcal{A}$ is the area of the orbit. $\mathcal{A}$ depends on energy ε and on k_z . We know that $\mathcal{A}(\varepsilon, k_z)$ is proportional to the area $\mathcal{S}(\varepsilon, k_z)$ of the orbit in $\mathbf{k}$ -space, from (13.9), with $\mathcal{S}(\varepsilon, k_z) = \left(\frac{eB}{\hbar c}\right)^2 \mathcal{A}(\varepsilon, k_z)$. Thus, the quantization condition can be written

$$\mathcal{S}(\varepsilon, k_z) = \frac{2\pi eB}{\hbar c}(n + \gamma). \quad (13.13)$$

Example For free electrons $\varepsilon = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m}$. The area $\mathcal{S}(\varepsilon, k_z)$ is equal to $\pi k_\perp^2$, where $k_\perp^2 + k_z^2 = k^2$. Therefore,

$$\mathcal{S}(\varepsilon, k_z) = \pi \left(\frac{2m\varepsilon}{\hbar^2} - k_z^2 \right). \quad (13.14)$$

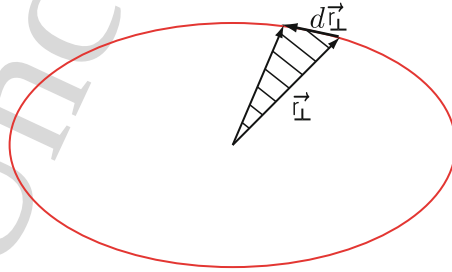


Fig. 13.4. $\mathbf{r}_\perp \times d\mathbf{r}_\perp$ is twice the area of the triangle within the orbit

13.1 Bloch Electrons in a dc Magnetic Field 395

Setting this result equal to $\frac{2\pi eB}{\hbar c}(n + \gamma)$ and solving for energy ε gives 67

$$\varepsilon = \frac{\hbar^2 k_z^2}{2m} + \hbar\omega_c(n + \gamma), \quad (13.15)$$

where $\omega_c = \frac{eB}{mc}$ is the *cyclotron frequency*. 68

13.1.3 Cyclotron Effective Mass 69

In the absorption of radiation direct transitions between energy levels (Landau 70 levels) occur. If we make a transition from $\varepsilon_n(k_z)$ to $\varepsilon_{n+1}(k_z)$, we can write 71

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{S}(\varepsilon_n(k_z), k_z) &= \frac{2\pi eB}{\hbar c}(n + \gamma), \\ \mathcal{S}(\varepsilon_{n+1}(k_z), k_z) &= \frac{2\pi eB}{\hbar c}(n + 1 + \gamma). \end{aligned} \quad (13.16)$$

We define the energy difference $\varepsilon_{n+1}(k_z) - \varepsilon_n(k_z)$ as $\hbar\omega_c$, where $\omega_c(\varepsilon, k_z)$ is 72 the cyclotron frequency associated with the orbit $\{\varepsilon, k_z\}$. By subtracting the 73 first equation of (13.16) from the second we can obtain 74

$$[\varepsilon_{n+1}(k_z) - \varepsilon_n(k_z)] \frac{\partial \mathcal{S}(\varepsilon, k_z)}{\partial \varepsilon} = \frac{2\pi eB}{\hbar c}$$

and from this, we obtain 75

$$\omega_c(\varepsilon, k_z) = \frac{2\pi eB}{\hbar^2 c} \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{S}(\varepsilon, k_z)}{\partial \varepsilon} \right]^{-1} = \frac{eB}{m^* c} \quad (13.17)$$

or 76

$$m^*(\varepsilon, k_z) = \frac{\hbar^2}{2\pi} \frac{\partial \mathcal{S}(\varepsilon, k_z)}{\partial \varepsilon}. \quad (13.18) \quad 77$$

13.1.4 Velocity Parallel to B 78

Consider two orbits that have different values of k_z separated by Δk_z . Then, 79 for the same ε_n we have 80

$$\mathcal{S}[\varepsilon_n(k_z + \Delta k_z), k_z + \Delta k_z] - \mathcal{S}[\varepsilon_n(k_z), k_z] = 0 \quad (13.19)$$

because both orbits have cross-sectional area equal to $\frac{2\pi eB}{\hbar c}(n + \gamma)$. We can 81 write (13.19) as 82

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{S}}{\partial \varepsilon} \frac{\partial \varepsilon_n(k_z)}{\partial k_z} + \frac{\partial \mathcal{S}}{\partial k_z} = 0. \quad (13.20)$$

But $\frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial k_z} = \hbar v_z$ and $\frac{\partial \mathcal{S}}{\partial \varepsilon} = \frac{2\pi m^*}{\hbar^2}$ giving 83

$$v_z(\varepsilon, k_z) = -\frac{\hbar}{2\pi m^*(\varepsilon, k_z)} \frac{\partial \mathcal{S}(\varepsilon, k_z)}{\partial k_z}. \quad (13.21) \quad 84$$

Example For the free electron gas model, we have $S = \pi \left(\frac{2m^*\varepsilon}{\hbar^2} - k_z^2 \right)$. 85
 Therefore, $\frac{\partial S}{\partial k_z} = -2\pi k_z$ and, hence, 86

$$v_z(\varepsilon, k_z) = -\frac{\hbar}{2\pi m^*}(-2\pi k_z) = \frac{\hbar k_z}{m^*}.$$

13.2 Magnetoresistance 87

The study of the change in resistivity of a metal as a function of the strength 88
 of an applied magnetic field is very useful in understanding certain properties 89
 of the Fermi surface of a metal or semiconductor. The standard geome- 90
 try for *magnetoresistance* measurements is shown in Fig. 13.5. Current flows 91
 only in the x direction. Usually $\mathbf{B}$ is in the z direction and the *transverse* 92
magnetoresistance is defined as 93

$$\frac{R(B_z) - R(0)}{R(0)} = \Delta R(B_z). \quad (13.22)$$

Sometimes people also study the case where $\mathbf{B}$ is parallel to $\mathbf{E}$ and measure 94
 the *longitudinal magnetoresistance*. 95

It might seem surprising that anything of interest arises from studying 96
 the magnetoresistance, because, as we described, for the simple free electron 97
 model $\Delta R(B_z) = 0$. This resulted from the equation 98

$$\begin{aligned} j_x &= \sigma_{xx}E_x + \sigma_{xy}E_y \\ j_y &= -\sigma_{xy}E_x + \sigma_{xx}E_y = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (13.23)$$

Combining these gives 99

$$j_x = \frac{\sigma_{xx}^2 + \sigma_{xy}^2}{\sigma_{xx}} E_x. \quad (13.24)$$

But for free electrons 100

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_{xx} &= \frac{\sigma_0}{1 + \omega_c^2 \tau^2}, \\ \sigma_{xy} &= -\frac{\omega_c \tau \sigma_0}{1 + \omega_c^2 \tau^2}, \end{aligned} \quad (13.25)$$

where $\sigma_0 = \frac{n_0 e^2 \tau}{m}$ is the dc conductivity. Using (13.25) in (13.24) gives 101
 $j_x = \sigma_0 E_x$, independent of $\mathbf{B}$ so that the magnetoresistance vanishes. 102

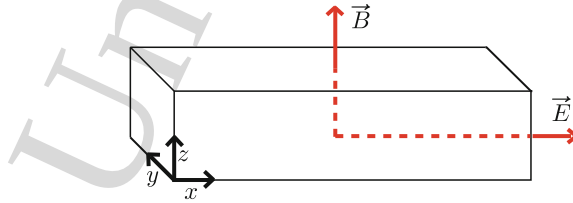


Fig. 13.5. Standard geometry for magnetoresistance measurements

13.3 Two-Band Model and Magnetoresistance 397

Experimental Results 103

Before discussing other models than the simple one band free electron model, let us discuss briefly the experimental results. The following types of behaviors are common:

1. The magnetoresistance is nonzero, but it saturates at very high magnetic fields at a value that is several times larger than the zero field resistance.
2. The magnetoresistance does not saturate, but continues to increase with increasing B in all directions.
3. The magnetoresistance saturates in some crystal directions but does not saturate in other directions.

Simple metals like Na, Li, In, and Al belong to the type (1). Semimetals like Bi and Sb belong to type (2). The noble metals (Cu, Ag, and Au), Mn, Zn, Cd, Ga, Sn, and Pb belong to type (3). One can obtain some understanding of magnetoresistance by using a two-band model.

13.3 Two-Band Model and Magnetoresistance 117

Let us consider two simple parabolic bands with mass, cyclotron frequency, charge, concentration, and collision time given by m_i , ω_{ci} , e_i , n_i , and τ_i , respectively, where $i = 1$ or 2 . Each band has a conductivity $\underline{\sigma}_i$, and the total current is simply the sum of $\mathbf{j}_1$ and $\mathbf{j}_2$

$$\mathbf{j}_T = (\underline{\sigma}_1 + \underline{\sigma}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}. \quad (13.26)$$

But

$$\underline{\sigma}_i = \frac{n_i e_i^2 \tau_i / m_i}{1 + \omega_{ci}^2 \tau_i^2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \omega_{ci} \tau_i & 0 \\ -\omega_{ci} \tau_i & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 + \omega_{ci}^2 \tau_i^2 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (13.27)$$

Note that we are taking $\omega_{ci} = \frac{e_i B}{m_i c}$ which is negative for an electron; this is why the σ_{xy} has a plus sign. At very high magnetic fields $|\omega_{ci} \tau_i| \gg 1$ for both types of carriers. Therefore, we can drop the 1 in $1 + \omega_{ci}^2 \tau_i^2$:

$$\underline{\sigma}_i \simeq \frac{n_i e_i c}{B} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\omega_{ci} \tau_i} & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & \frac{1}{\omega_{ci} \tau_i} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \omega_{ci} \tau_i \end{pmatrix}, \quad (13.28)$$

and

$$\underline{\sigma}_T \simeq \frac{c}{B} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{n_1 e_1}{\omega_{c1} \tau_1} + \frac{n_2 e_2}{\omega_{c2} \tau_2} & n_1 e_1 + n_2 e_2 & 0 \\ -(n_1 e_1 + n_2 e_2) & \frac{n_1 e_1}{\omega_{c1} \tau_1} + \frac{n_2 e_2}{\omega_{c2} \tau_2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & n_1 e_1 \omega_{c1} \tau_1 + n_2 e_2 \omega_{c2} \tau_2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (13.29)$$

398 13 Semiclassical Theory of Electrons

Now, suppose that $n_1 = n_2 = n$ and $e_1 = -e_2 = e$. This corresponds to
a semimetal with an equal number of electrons and holes. Then, (13.29)
reduces to

$$\underline{\sigma} \simeq \frac{nec}{B} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{|\omega_{c1}\tau_1|} + \frac{1}{|\omega_{c2}\tau_2|} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{|\omega_{c1}\tau_1|} + \frac{1}{|\omega_{c2}\tau_2|} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & |\omega_{c1}\tau_1| + |\omega_{c2}\tau_2| \end{pmatrix},$$

The Hall field vanishes since $\sigma_{xy} = 0$ and

$$j_x = \sigma_{xx} E_x = \frac{nec}{B} \left[\frac{1}{\frac{eB}{m_1 c \tau_1}} + \frac{1}{\frac{eB}{m_2 c \tau_2}} \right] E_x. \quad (13.30)$$

The resistivity is the ratio of E_x to j_x giving

$$\rho = \frac{B^2}{nec^2} \left(\frac{|\mu_1||\mu_2|}{|\mu_1| + |\mu_2|} \right), \quad (13.31)$$

where $\mu_i = \frac{e_i \tau_i}{m_i}$ is the mobility of the i th type. Thus, we find for equal numbers
of electrons and holes the magnetoresistance does not saturate, but continues
to increase as B^2 . The arguments can be generalized to two bands described
by energy surfaces $\varepsilon_i(\mathbf{k})$, but we will not bother with that much detail. If
 $n_e \neq n_h$, $\sigma_{xy} \simeq -\frac{(n_e - n_h)ec}{B}$ while $\sigma_{xx} = \left(\frac{n_e}{|\omega_{ce}\tau_e|} + \frac{n_h}{|\omega_{ch}\tau_h|} \right) \frac{ec}{B}$. For $|\omega_{ci}\tau_i| \gg 1$,
 $\sigma_{xy} \gg \sigma_{xx}$ and $\rho = \left[\frac{\sigma_{xx}^2 + \sigma_{xy}^2}{\sigma_{xx}} \right]^{-1} \simeq \left[\frac{\sigma_{xy}^2}{\sigma_{xx}} \right]^{-1}$. This saturates to a constant
because $\sigma_{xy} \propto B^{-1}$ while $\sigma_{xx} \propto B^{-2}$.

Influence of Open Orbits

For the sake of concreteness we will first consider a model which is extremely
simple and has open orbits to see what happens. Suppose there is a section
of the Fermi surface with energy given by

$$\varepsilon(\mathbf{k}) = \frac{\hbar^2}{2m} (k_x^2 + k_z^2), \quad (13.32)$$

i.e. $\varepsilon(\mathbf{k})$ is independent of k_y as is shown in Fig. 13.6. Again take the magnetic
field in the z -direction. Then the orbits are all open orbits, and run parallel
to the cylinder axis. Note that

$$v_x = \frac{\hbar k_x}{m}, \quad v_y = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad v_z = \frac{\hbar k_z}{m}. \quad (13.33)$$

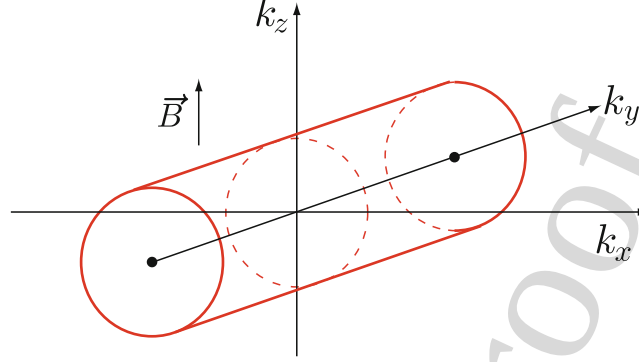


Fig. 13.6. A model energy surface with open orbits

Look at equations of motion in the presence of B_z and $\mathbf{E} = (E_x, E_y, 0)$: 148

$$\begin{aligned}\hbar \dot{k}_x &= -e(E_x + \frac{1}{c}v_y B_z) = -eE_x, \\ \hbar \dot{k}_y &= -e(E_y - \frac{1}{c}v_x B_z), \\ \hbar \dot{k}_z &= 0.\end{aligned}\tag{13.34}$$

The equation of motion for $\hbar \dot{k}_x$ can be written as 149

$$\dot{v}_x = -\frac{eE_x}{m}.\tag{13.35}$$

We have completely neglected collisions so far; they can be added by simply 150
writing 151

$$\dot{v}_x + \frac{v_x}{\tau} = -\frac{eE_x}{m}.\tag{13.36}$$

Then in the steady-state we have 152

$$v_x = -\frac{eE_x\tau}{m}.\tag{13.37}$$

If n_o is the number of open orbit states per unit volume, then 153

$$\underline{\sigma}_{\text{Open}} = \frac{n_o e^2 \tau}{m} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.\tag{13.38}$$

Here, we have used $\sigma_{yy} = \sigma_{xy} = \sigma_{yx} = 0$; this is correct because j_x depends 154
only on E_x and v_y must be zero since the mass in the y direction is infinite. 155

Now, suppose there is another piece of Fermi surface that contains n_c 156
electrons per unit volume all in closed orbit states. We can approximate the 157
contribution of these electrons to the conductivity by 158

$$\underline{\sigma}_{\text{Closed}} = \frac{n_c e^2 \tau}{m} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\omega_c^2 \tau^2} & \frac{1}{\omega_c \tau} \\ -\frac{1}{\omega_c \tau} & \frac{1}{\omega_c^2 \tau^2} \end{pmatrix}.\tag{13.39}$$

The total conductivity is simply the sum of $\underline{\sigma}_{\text{Open}}$ and $\underline{\sigma}_{\text{Closed}}$: 159

$$\underline{\sigma}_T = \frac{e^2\tau}{m} \begin{pmatrix} n_o + \frac{n_c}{\omega_c^2\tau^2} & \frac{n_c}{\omega_c\tau} \\ -\frac{n_c}{\omega_c\tau} & \frac{n_c}{\omega_c^2\tau^2} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (13.40)$$

Let n_o , the concentration of open orbit electrons, be equal to a number S 160
times n_c , the concentration of closed orbit electrons. Then 161

$$\begin{aligned} j_x &= \frac{n_c e^2 \tau}{m} \left\{ \left(S + \frac{1}{\omega_c^2 \tau^2} \right) E_x + \frac{1}{\omega_c \tau} E_y \right\}, \\ j_y &= \frac{n_c e^2 \tau}{m} \left\{ -\frac{1}{\omega_c \tau} E_x + \frac{1}{\omega_c^2 \tau^2} E_y \right\}. \end{aligned} \quad (13.41)$$

We can investigate two different cases: 162

1. In the standard geometry j_x is nonzero but j_y is zero. 163
2. In the standard geometry j_y is nonzero but j_x is zero. 164

Case 1: 165

$j_y = 0$ implies that 166

$$E_y = \omega_c \tau E_x. \quad (13.42)$$

Therefore, j_x is given by 167

$$j_x = \frac{n_c e^2 \tau}{m} \left(S + \frac{1}{\omega_c^2 \tau^2} + 1 \right) E_x. \quad (13.43)$$

The magnetoresistivity is $\frac{E_x}{j_x}$ giving 168

$$\rho = \frac{m/(n_c e^2 \tau)}{S + \frac{1}{\omega_c^2 \tau^2} + 1} \rightarrow \frac{m/(n_c e^2 \tau)}{S + 1} \text{ as } B \rightarrow \infty. \quad (13.44)$$

Thus, in this geometry the magnetoresistance saturates as B tends to infinity. 169

Case 2: 170

$j_x = 0$ implies that 171

$$E_x = -\frac{1}{\omega_c \tau (S + \frac{1}{\omega_c^2 \tau^2})} E_y. \quad (13.45)$$

This means that 172

$$j_y = \frac{n_c e^2 \tau}{m} \left[\frac{1}{\omega_c^2 \tau^2 S + 1} + \frac{1}{\omega_c^2 \tau^2} \right] E_y. \quad (13.46)$$

13.4 Magnetoconductivity of Metals 401

But the magnetoresistivity is $\frac{E_y}{j_y}$ and it is given by 173

$$\rho = \frac{m}{n_c e^2 \tau} \frac{\omega_c^2 \tau^2 (\omega_c^2 \tau^2 S + 1)}{\omega_c^2 \tau^2 (S + 1) + 1} \longrightarrow \frac{m}{n_c e^2 \tau} \frac{S}{S + 1} \omega_c^2 \tau^2 \text{ as } B \rightarrow \infty. \quad (13.47)$$

Since ρ is proportional to ω_c^2 , the magnetoresistance does not saturate but 174
increases as B^2 as long as S is finite. 175

13.4 Magnetoconductivity of Metals 176

We consider an electron gas for which the energy is an arbitrary function of 177
 $\mathbf{k}$. We introduce a uniform dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}_0$, and an ac electric field $\mathbf{E}$ of 178
the form 179

$$\mathbf{E} \propto e^{i\omega t - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}}. \quad (13.48)$$

The Boltzmann equation is 180

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla f - \frac{e}{\hbar} \left(\mathbf{E} + \frac{\mathbf{v}}{c} \times \mathbf{B}_0 \right) \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} f = -\frac{f - \bar{f}_0}{\tau}. \quad (13.49) \quad 181$$

As we shall see later, some care must be taken in the collision term $-\frac{f - \bar{f}_0}{\tau}$, 182
to choose $\bar{f}_0$ to be the proper local equilibrium distribution toward which the 183
electrons relax.¹ For now, we shall just put $\bar{f}_0 = f_0$, the actual thermal equi- 184
librium function for the system. This gives the *conduction current* correctly, 185
but omits a *diffusion current* which is actually present. We put $f = f_0 + f_1$ 186
and then the Boltzmann equation becomes 187

$$i\omega f_1 - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v} f_1 - e\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v} \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} - \frac{e}{\hbar c} (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}_0) \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} f_1 + \frac{f_1}{\tau} = 0. \quad (13.50)$$

Here, we have used the fact that 188

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{k}} f_0 = \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon = \hbar \mathbf{v} \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon}, \quad (13.51)$$

and have linearized with respect to the ac field. We can write the Boltzmann 189
equation as 190

$$(1 + i\omega\tau - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}\tau) f_1 - \frac{e\tau}{\hbar c} (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}_0) \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} f_1 = e\tau \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v} \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon}. \quad (13.52)$$

From the equation of motion, we remember, when the ac fields are $\mathbf{E} = 0 = \mathbf{B}$, 191
that 192

$$\hbar \dot{\mathbf{k}} = -\frac{e}{c} \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}_0, \quad (13.53)$$

¹ See, for example, M.P. Greene, H.J. Lee, J.J. Quinn, S. Rodriguez, Phys. Rev. **177**, 1019 (1969).

and we were able to show that

193

1. The orbit of an electron in $\mathbf{k}$ space is along the intersection of a surface of constant energy and a plane of constant k_z .
2. The motion in $\mathbf{k}$ space is periodic either because the orbit is closed, or because an open orbit is actually periodic in $\mathbf{k}$ space also.

We introduce a parameter s with the dimension of time which describes the position of an electron on its orbit of constant energy and constant k_z . By this, we mean that if $s = 0$ is a point on the orbit, $s = T$ corresponds to the same point, where T is the period. The equation of motion can be written

$$\hbar \frac{d\mathbf{k}}{ds} = -\frac{e}{c} \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}_0, \quad (13.54)$$

and the rate of change of ε is

202

$$\frac{d\varepsilon}{ds} = \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{k}}{ds} = \hbar \mathbf{v} \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{k}}{ds} = 0.$$

Now, consider $\frac{\partial f_1}{\partial s}$ as

203

$$\frac{\partial f_1}{\partial s} = \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} f_1 \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{k}}{ds} = -\frac{e}{\hbar c} (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}_0) \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} f_1. \quad (13.55)$$

This is exactly one of the terms in our Boltzmann equation which can be written

205

$$\frac{\partial f_1}{\partial s} + \left(\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v} \right) f_1 = e \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v} \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon}. \quad (13.56)$$

Closed Orbits:

207

Let us consider closed orbits first. We can write

208

$$\hbar \frac{d\mathbf{k}_{\perp}}{ds} = -\frac{e}{c} \mathbf{v}_{\perp} \times \mathbf{B}_0, \quad (13.57)$$

where $\mathbf{v}_{\perp}$ is the component of $\mathbf{v}$ perpendicular to $\mathbf{B}_0$. Let k_N and k_T be the normal and tangential components of $\mathbf{k}_{\perp}$ as shown in Fig. 13.7. Then

210

$$\hbar \frac{dk_T}{ds} = \frac{e}{c} v_{\perp} B_0, \quad (13.58)$$

because $\mathbf{v}_{\perp}$ is in the direction of $\mathbf{k}_N$. Solving for ds gives

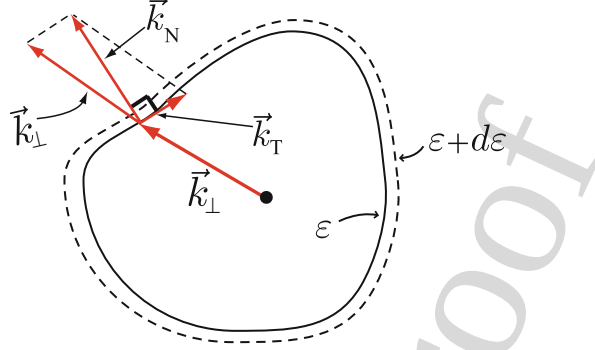
211

$$ds = \frac{\hbar c}{e B_0} \frac{dk_T}{v_{\perp}}. \quad (13.59)$$

Thus, the period is given by

212

$$T(\varepsilon, k_z) = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_c(\varepsilon, k_z)} = \frac{\hbar c}{e B_0} \oint \frac{dk_T}{v_{\perp}}. \quad (13.60)$$

Fig. 13.7. A closed orbit in $\mathbf{k}$ space

From now on, we shall use the independent variables ε , k_z , and s to describe the location of an electron in $\mathbf{k}$ space.

$$d\varepsilon = \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon \cdot d\mathbf{k}_N = \hbar v_{\perp} dk_N, \quad (13.61)$$

and hence

$$dk_N = \frac{d\varepsilon}{\hbar v_{\perp}}. \quad (13.62)$$

Now, the volume element in $\mathbf{k}$ space is given by

$$d^3k = dk_z dk_N dk_T = dk_z \frac{d\varepsilon}{\hbar v_{\perp}} \frac{ev_{\perp}}{\hbar c} B_0 ds,$$

hence

$$d^3k = \frac{eB_0}{\hbar^2 c} dk_z d\varepsilon ds. \quad (13.63)$$

Now, let us return to the differential equation given by (13.56)

$$\frac{\partial f_1}{\partial s} + \left(\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v} \right) f_1 = e\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v} \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon}. \quad (13.64)$$

Multiply by

$$e^{\int_0^s dt' \left[\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}(t') \right]}. \quad (13.65)$$

Then, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & e^{\int_0^s dt' \left[\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}(t') \right]} \left\{ \frac{\partial f_1(s)}{\partial s} + \left[\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}(s) \right] f_1(s) \right\} \\ &= e\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v}(s) \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} e^{\int_0^s dt' \left[\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}(t') \right]}. \end{aligned} \quad (13.66)$$

Notice that the left-hand side can be simplified to write

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial s} \left[f_1 e^{\int_0^s dt' \left(\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}(t') \right)} \right] = e\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v}(s) \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} e^{\int_0^s dt' \left(\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}(t') \right)}. \quad (13.67)$$

Integrate and get

222

$$f_1(s) e^{\int_0^s dt' (\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}(t'))} = \int_{-\infty}^s dt e\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v}(t) \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} e^{\int_0^t dt' (\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}(t'))}, \quad (13.68)$$

or

223

$$f_1(s) = \int_{-\infty}^s dt e\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v}(t) \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} e^{-\int_t^s dt' (\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}(t'))}. \quad (13.69)$$

Note that the lower limit $t = -\infty$ is chosen in the integration over t for a very important reason. $f_1(k_z, \varepsilon, s)$ must be a periodic function of s with period T . Consider the function $f_1(s + T)$ for an arbitrary lower limit (LL)

226

$$f_1(s + T) = \int_{\text{LL}}^{s+T} dt e\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v}(t) \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} e^{-\int_t^{s+T} dt' (\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}(t'))}. \quad (13.70)$$

Now, let $w = t - T$, so that $t = s + T \longrightarrow w = s$ and $t = \text{LL} \longrightarrow w = \text{LL} - T$. We know $v(t)$ is a periodic function of t with period T . Likewise, if we let $t' = w' + T$, we can get

229

$$f_1(s + T) = \int_{\text{LL}-T}^s dw e\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v}(w) \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} e^{-\int_w^s dw' [\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}(w')]}.$$

It is obvious $f_1(s + T) = f_1(s)$ if $\text{LL} - T = \text{LL}$. This is valid for $\text{LL} = -\infty$ as we have chosen. Now, look at the exponential

231

$$\int_t^s dt' \left(\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}(t') \right) = \left(\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega \right) (s - t) - d\mathbf{q} \cdot [\mathbf{R}(\varepsilon, k_z, s) - \mathbf{R}(\varepsilon, k_z, t)], \quad (13.71)$$

so that

232

$$f_1(\varepsilon, k_z, s) = \int_{-\infty}^s ds' e\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v}(s') \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} e^{-(\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega)(s - s') + i\mathbf{q} \cdot [\mathbf{R}(\varepsilon, k_z, s) - \mathbf{R}(\varepsilon, k_z, s')]}.$$

(13.72)

The current density is given by

233

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \frac{2}{(2\pi)^3} \int (-e)\mathbf{v} f_1 d^3k. \quad (13.73)$$

Or, substituting the result of (13.63) for d^3k , we have

235

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}, t) = -\frac{2e}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{eB_0}{\hbar^2 c} \int d\varepsilon dk_z ds \mathbf{v} f_1(\varepsilon, k_z, s). \quad (13.74)$$

Now, substitute the solution $f_1(\varepsilon, k_z, s)$ given by (13.72) to obtain

236

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}, t) = & -\frac{2e^2 B_0}{(2\pi)^3 \hbar^2 c} \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon \int_{-\infty}^\infty dk_z \int_0^{T(\varepsilon, k_z)} ds \mathbf{v} \\ & \times \int_{-\infty}^s ds' e\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v}(s') \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} e^{-(\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega)(s - s') + i\mathbf{q} \cdot [\mathbf{R}(\varepsilon, k_z, s) - \mathbf{R}(\varepsilon, k_z, s')]} \end{aligned} \quad (13.75)$$

We define the conductivity tensor by $\mathbf{j} = \underline{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{E}$. Then, it is apparent that 237

$$\underline{\sigma} = \frac{2e^3 B_0}{(2\pi)^3 \hbar^2 c} \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon \left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \right) \int_{-\infty}^\infty dk_z \int_0^{T(\varepsilon, k_z)} ds \mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, s) e^{-(\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega)s + i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{R}(\varepsilon, k_z, s)} \\ \times \int_{-\infty}^s ds' \mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, s') e^{(\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega)s' - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{R}(\varepsilon, k_z, s')}. \quad (13.76)$$

We assume that τ depends only on ε . Now, look at the function $\mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, s)$ 238
 $e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{R}(\varepsilon, k_z, s)}$. The position vector $\mathbf{R}(\varepsilon, k_z, s)$ consists of two parts: 239

1. A periodic part $\mathbf{R}_p(\varepsilon, k_z, s)$: 240

$$\mathbf{R}_p[\varepsilon, k_z, s + T(\varepsilon, k_z)] = \mathbf{R}_p(\varepsilon, k_z, s). \quad (13.77)$$

2. A nonperiodic part or secular part $\mathbf{R}_s(\varepsilon, k_z, s)$: 241

$$\mathbf{R}_s(\varepsilon, k_z, s) = \mathbf{v}_s(\varepsilon, k_z) s. \quad (13.78)$$

Remember that the variable s is time. The $\mathbf{v}_s$ is the average value of $\mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, s)$ 242
over one period, and written as 243

$$\mathbf{v}_s(\varepsilon, k_z) = \frac{1}{T(\varepsilon, k_z)} \int_t^{t+T} \mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, t') dt'. \quad (13.79)$$

Then, we have, since $\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R}_p + \mathbf{v}_s s$, 244

$$\mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, s) e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{R}(\varepsilon, k_z, s)} = \mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, s) e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}_s(\varepsilon, k_z) s} e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{R}_p(\varepsilon, k_z, s)}. \quad (13.80)$$

Thus, for $\underline{\sigma}$ we can write 245

$$\underline{\sigma} = \frac{2e^3 B_0}{(2\pi)^3 \hbar^2 c} \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon \left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \right) \int_{-\infty}^\infty dk_z \int_0^{T(\varepsilon, k_z)} ds \mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, s) e^{-[\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega + i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}_s(\varepsilon, k_z)]s} \\ \times e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{R}_p(\varepsilon, k_z, s)} \int_{-\infty}^s ds' \mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, s') e^{[\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}_s(\varepsilon, k_z)]s'} e^{-i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{R}_p(\varepsilon, k_z, s')}. \quad (13.81)$$

We now expand the periodic function $\mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, s) e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{R}_p(\varepsilon, k_z, s)}$ in Fourier series 246
in s . Let $\omega_c(\varepsilon, k_z) = \frac{2\pi}{T(\varepsilon, k_z)}$. Then 247

$$\mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, s) e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{R}_p(\varepsilon, k_z, s)} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon, k_z) e^{in\omega_c s}. \quad (13.82)$$

Obviously, the Fourier coefficients $\mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon, k_z)$ are given by 248

$$\mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon, k_z) = \frac{\omega_c(\varepsilon, k_z)}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi/\omega_c} ds \mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, s) e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{R}_p(\varepsilon, k_z, s) - in\omega_c s}. \quad (13.83)$$

We substitute the Fourier expansions, (13.82), into the expression for $\underline{\sigma}$ to 249
obtain 250

$$\underline{\sigma} = \frac{2e^3 B_0}{(2\pi)^3 \hbar^2 c} \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon \left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \right) \int_{-\infty}^\infty dk_z \int_0^{2\pi/\omega_c} ds e^{-[\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega + i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}_s(\varepsilon, k_z)]s} \\ \times \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon, k_z) e^{in\omega_c s} \int_{-\infty}^s ds' e^{[\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}_s(\varepsilon, k_z)]s'} \\ \times \sum_{n'=-\infty}^{\infty} \mathbf{v}_{n'}^*(\varepsilon, k_z) e^{-in'\omega_c s'}. \quad (13.84)$$

First perform the integration over s' to obtain

$$\int_{-\infty}^s ds' e^{[\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}_s(\varepsilon, k_z) - i\omega_c n']s'} = \frac{e^{[\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}_s - in'\omega_c]s}}{\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}_s - in'\omega_c}. \quad (13.85)$$

Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{\sigma} &= \frac{2e^3 B_0}{(2\pi)^3 \hbar^2 c} \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon \left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \right) \int_{-\infty}^\infty dk_z \\ &\quad \times \int_0^{\frac{2\pi}{\omega_c}} ds \sum_{n, n'=-\infty}^\infty \frac{\mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon, k_z) \mathbf{v}_{n'}^*(\varepsilon, k_z) e^{i(n-n')\omega_c s}}{\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}_s - in'\omega_c}. \end{aligned} \quad (13.86)$$

However, $\int_0^{2\pi/\omega_c} ds e^{i(n-n')\omega_c s} = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_c} \delta_{nn'}$. Thus, we have

$$\underline{\sigma} = \frac{2e^3 B_0}{(2\pi)^3 \hbar^2 c} \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon \left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \right) \int_{-\infty}^\infty dk_z \frac{2\pi}{\omega_c(\varepsilon, k_z)} \sum_{n=-\infty}^\infty \frac{\mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon, k_z) \mathbf{v}_n^*(\varepsilon, k_z)}{\frac{1}{\tau} + i\omega - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}_s - in\omega_c}. \quad (13.87)$$

This can be rewritten

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{\sigma} &= \frac{2e^3 B_0}{(2\pi)^3 \hbar^2 c} \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon \left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \right) \tau \int_{-\infty}^\infty dk_z T(\varepsilon, k_z) \\ &\quad \times \sum_{n=-\infty}^\infty \frac{\mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon, k_z) \mathbf{v}_n^*(\varepsilon, k_z)}{1 + i\tau[\omega - \mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}_s - \frac{2\pi n}{T(\varepsilon, k_z)}]}. \end{aligned} \quad (13.88)$$

This expression is valid even for the case of open orbits. For closed orbits it is customary to define

$$\omega_c(\varepsilon, k_z) = \frac{eB_0}{m^*(\varepsilon, k_z)c} = \frac{2\pi}{T(\varepsilon, k_z)}$$

where m^* is the *cyclotron effective mass*. Then, $\underline{\sigma}$ can be written

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{\sigma} &= \frac{e^2}{2\pi^2 \hbar^2} \int_0^\infty d\varepsilon \left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \right) \tau(\varepsilon) \int_{-\infty}^\infty dk_z m^*(\varepsilon, k_z) \\ &\quad \times \sum_{n=-\infty}^\infty \frac{\mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon, k_z) \mathbf{v}_n^*(\varepsilon, k_z)}{1 + i\tau(\varepsilon)[\omega - \mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}_s - n\omega_c(\varepsilon, k_z)]}. \end{aligned} \quad (13.89)$$

At very low temperatures the integration over energy just picks out the Fermi energy because $-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon}$ acts just like a δ function, and we have

$$\underline{\sigma} = \frac{e^2}{2\pi^2 \hbar^2} \tau(\varepsilon_F) \int_{\text{F.S.}} dk_z m^*(k_z) \sum_{n=-\infty}^\infty \frac{\mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon_F, k_z) \mathbf{v}_n^*(\varepsilon_F, k_z)}{1 + i\tau(\varepsilon_F)[\omega - \mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}_s - n\omega_c(\varepsilon_F, k_z)]}, \quad (13.90)$$

where all quantities are evaluated on the Fermi surface.

13.4.1 Free Electron Model

262

For the free electron model $m^*(k_z) = m$ is a constant independent of k_z .
 We shall assume that τ is also constant. The energy $\varepsilon(\mathbf{k})$ and velocity $\mathbf{v}$ are,
 respectively, given by

$$\begin{aligned}\varepsilon(\mathbf{k}) &= \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m}, \\ \mathbf{v} &= \frac{\hbar \mathbf{k}}{m},\end{aligned}\quad (13.91)$$

and hence,

266

$$\begin{aligned}v_z &= \frac{\hbar k_z}{m}, \\ v_\perp = |\mathbf{v}_\perp| &= \sqrt{v^2 - v_z^2} = \frac{\hbar}{m} \left(\frac{2m\varepsilon}{\hbar^2} - k_z^2 \right)^{1/2}.\end{aligned}$$

We shall choose s , the time along the orbit, such that

267

$$\begin{aligned}v_x &= v_\perp \cos \omega_c s, \\ v_y &= v_\perp \sin \omega_c s.\end{aligned}\quad (13.92)$$

Thus, for $\mathbf{v}(\varepsilon_F, k_z, s)$ we have

268

$$\mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, s) = \frac{\hbar}{m} \left(\sqrt{\frac{2m\varepsilon}{\hbar^2} - k_z^2} \cos \omega_c s, \sqrt{\frac{2m\varepsilon}{\hbar^2} - k_z^2} \sin \omega_c s, k_z \right). \quad (13.93)$$

The periodic part of the position vector is given by

269

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{R}_p(\varepsilon, k_z, s) &= \int \mathbf{v}_\perp(\varepsilon, k_z, s) ds, \\ &= \frac{v_\perp}{\omega_c} (\sin \omega_c s, -\cos \omega_c s, 0).\end{aligned}\quad (13.94)$$

Thus, we have

270

$$\mathbf{iq} \cdot \mathbf{R}_p(\varepsilon, k_z, s) = \frac{iv_\perp(\varepsilon, k_z)}{\omega_c} (q_x \sin \omega_c s - q_y \cos \omega_c s). \quad (13.95)$$

There is no loss in generality incurred by choosing the vector $\mathbf{q}$ to lie in the
 $y - z$ plane, i.e. $q_x = 0$. Thus

272

$$\mathbf{iq} \cdot \mathbf{R}_p(\varepsilon, k_z, s) = -\frac{iv_\perp(\varepsilon, k_z)}{\omega_c} q_y \cos \omega_c s. \quad (13.96)$$

Now, let us evaluate the Fourier coefficients $\mathbf{v}_n$ in (13.83)

273

$$\mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon, k_z) = \frac{\omega_c(\varepsilon, k_z)}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi/\omega_c} ds \mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, s) e^{-\frac{iv_\perp(\varepsilon, k_z)q_y}{\omega_c} \cos \omega_c s - in\omega_c s}. \quad (13.97)$$

408 13 Semiclassical Theory of Electrons

Let $w' = \frac{q_y v_\perp}{\omega_c}$ and $x = \omega_c s$ to have 274

$$\mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon, k_z) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} dx \mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, x) e^{-iw' \cos x - inx}. \quad (13.98)$$

Now, we use the relation 275

$$e^{iw' \sin x} = \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} J_l(w') e^{ilx}. \quad (13.99)$$

One can easily see that 276

$$e^{-iw' \cos x} = e^{iw' \sin(x + \frac{3\pi}{2})} = \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} J_l(w') e^{ilx} e^{il\frac{3\pi}{2}} = \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} (-i)^l J_l(w') e^{ilx}. \quad (13.100)$$

Thus, we have 277

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon, k_z) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} dx \mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, x) e^{-inx} \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} (-i)^l J_l(w') e^{ilx}, \\ &= \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} (-i)^l J_l(w') \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} dx \mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, x) e^{i(l-n)x}. \end{aligned} \quad (13.101)$$

Now, let us investigate the individual components of $\mathbf{v}_n$. 278

$$\begin{aligned} v_{n_x}(\varepsilon, k_z) &= \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} (-i)^l J_l(w') \frac{1}{2\pi} v_\perp \int_0^{2\pi} dx \cos x e^{i(l-n)x}, \\ &= \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} (-i)^l J_l(w') \frac{v_\perp}{2} \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} dx \left[e^{i(l-n+1)x} + e^{i(l-n-1)x} \right], \\ &= \frac{v_\perp}{2} \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} (-i)^l J_l(w') [\delta_{l,n-1} + \delta_{l,n+1}], \\ &= \frac{(-i)^{n-1}}{2} v_\perp [J_{n-1}(w') - J_{n+1}(w')]. \end{aligned} \quad (13.102)$$

In an analogous way, we can obtain 279

$$v_{n_y}(\varepsilon, k_z) = \frac{(-i)^{n-1}}{2i} v_\perp [J_{n-1}(w') + J_{n+1}(w')], \quad (13.103)$$

and 280

$$v_{n_z}(\varepsilon, k_z) = (-i)^n v_z J_n(w'). \quad (13.104)$$

Here, we recall some properties of Bessel functions: 281

$$J_n(z) = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} (-1)^m \left(\frac{z}{2}\right)^{2m+n} \frac{1}{m!(m+n)!}, \quad (13.105)$$

$$J_{-n}(z) = (-1)^n J_n(z), \quad (13.106)$$

$$\lim_{z \rightarrow 0} J_n(z) = \frac{1}{n!} \left(\frac{z}{2}\right)^n, \quad (13.107)$$

$$J'_n(z) = \frac{d}{dz} J_n(z) = \frac{1}{2} [J_{n-1}(z) - J_{n+1}(z)], \quad (13.108)$$

and 282

$$\frac{n}{z} J_n(z) = \frac{1}{2} [J_{n-1}(z) + J_{n+1}(z)]. \quad (13.109)$$

Using some of these equations we can write the vector $\mathbf{v}_n$ as 283

$$\mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon, k_z) = (-i)^n \begin{pmatrix} i v_{\perp} J'_n(w') \\ (n \omega_c / q_y) J_n(w') \\ v_z J_n(w') \end{pmatrix}. \quad (13.110) \quad 284$$

If we take the zero temperature limit, we have $\left(-\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon}\right) = \delta(\varepsilon - \zeta)$ and, hence, 285
we have 286

$$\underline{\sigma} = \frac{e^2 \tau m}{2\pi^2 \hbar^2} \int_{-k_F}^{k_F} dk_z \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon_F, k_z) \mathbf{v}_n^*(\varepsilon_F, k_z)}{1 - i\tau[n\omega_c(\varepsilon_F, k_z) + \mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}_n - \omega]}. \quad (13.111) \quad 287$$

For free electrons, the secular part of the velocity is simply v_z , thus 288

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}_n &= q_z v_z = q_z v_F \cos \theta, \\ dk_z &= \frac{m}{\hbar} dv_z = \frac{m v_F}{\hbar} d(\cos \theta), \\ v_{\perp} &= \sqrt{v_F^2 - v_z^2} = v_F \sin \theta, \\ w' &= \frac{q_y v_{\perp}}{\omega_c} = \frac{q_y v_F}{\omega_c} \sin \theta = w \sin \theta. \end{aligned} \quad (13.112)$$

By substituting these in (13.111), we obtain 289

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{\sigma} &= \frac{3\sigma_0}{2} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-1}^1 d(\cos \theta) \\ &\quad \times \frac{\begin{pmatrix} i \sin \theta J'_n(w \sin \theta) \\ \frac{n}{w} J_n(w \sin \theta) \\ \cos \theta J_n(w \sin \theta) \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -i \sin \theta J'_n(w \sin \theta), \frac{n}{w} J_n(w \sin \theta), \cos \theta J_n(w \sin \theta) \end{pmatrix}}{1 - i\tau[n\omega_c(\varepsilon_F, k_z) - \omega + q_z v_F \cos \theta]}, \end{aligned} \quad (13.113)$$

where $J'_n(x) = dJ_n(x)/dx$ and σ_0 is the dc conductivity given by $\sigma_0 = 290$
 $\frac{n_0 e^2 \tau}{m}$. In addition, $\sin \theta J'_n(w \sin \theta) = \frac{\partial}{\partial w} J_n(w \sin \theta)$. Hence, we can rewrite 291

(13.113) as

292

$$\underline{\sigma} = \frac{3\sigma_0}{2} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-1}^1 d(\cos \theta) \left(\begin{array}{c} i \frac{\partial}{\partial w} J_n(w \sin \theta) \\ \frac{n}{w} J_n(w \sin \theta) \\ \cos \theta J_n(w \sin \theta) \end{array} \right) \left(-i \frac{\partial}{\partial w} J_n(w \sin \theta), \frac{n}{w} J_n(w \sin \theta), \cos \theta J_n(w \sin \theta) \right) \quad (13.114)$$

$$\times \frac{1}{1 - i\tau [n\omega_c(\varepsilon_F, k_z) - \omega + q_z v_F \cos \theta]}.$$

293

This result was first obtained by Cohen, Harrison, and Harrison.²

294

13.4.2 Propagation Parallel to B_0

295

To acquaint ourselves with the properties of $\underline{\sigma}$, let us first evaluate it for the case $\mathbf{q} \parallel \mathbf{B}_0$, i.e. $\mathbf{q} = (0, 0, q)$. In the limit $q_y \rightarrow 0$, $w \rightarrow 0$ and, hence, we have

296

297

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{n}{w} J_n(w \sin \theta) &\rightarrow \frac{1}{2} \sin \theta (\delta_{n,1} + \delta_{n,-1}), \\ i \frac{\partial}{\partial w} J_n(w \sin \theta) &\rightarrow \frac{i}{2} \sin \theta (\delta_{n,1} - \delta_{n,-1}), \\ \cos \theta J_n(w \sin \theta) &\rightarrow \cos \theta \delta_{n,0}. \end{aligned} \quad (13.115)$$

It is easy to see that $\sigma_{xz} = \sigma_{zx} = \sigma_{yz} = \sigma_{zy} = 0$ because of the δ functions involved. The nonvanishing components of $\underline{\sigma}$ are $\sigma_{xx} = \sigma_{yy}$, $\sigma_{xy} = -\sigma_{yx}$ and σ_{zz} . They can easily be evaluated to be written

298

299

300

$$\sigma_{zz} = \frac{3}{2} \sigma_0 \int_{-1}^1 \frac{d(\cos \theta) \cos^2 \theta}{1 + i\omega\tau - iq_z v_F \tau \cos \theta}, \quad (13.116)$$

and

301

$$\sigma_{\pm} = \sigma_{xx} \mp i\sigma_{xy} = \frac{3}{4} \sigma_0 \int_{-1}^1 \frac{d(\cos \theta) \sin^2 \theta}{1 + i(\omega \mp \omega_c)\tau - iq_z v_F \tau \cos \theta}. \quad (13.117)$$

Notice that when $q_z \rightarrow 0$ the integral in (13.116) becomes $\int_{-1}^1 d(\cos \theta) \cos^2 \theta = \frac{2}{3}$ so that, in that case, we have

302

303

$$\sigma_{zz} = \frac{\sigma_0}{1 + i\omega\tau}. \quad (13.118)$$

The $q_z \rightarrow 0$ limit of the integral in (13.117) becomes $\int_{-1}^1 d(\cos \theta) \sin^2 \theta = \frac{4}{3}$ so that

304

305

$$\sigma_{\pm} = \frac{\sigma_0}{1 + i(\omega \mp \omega_c)\tau}. \quad (13.119)$$

² M.H. Cohen, M.J. Harrison, W.A. Harrison, Phys. Rev. **117**, 937 (1960).

13.4.3 Propagation Perpendicular to B_0 306

We consider the case $\mathbf{q} \perp \mathbf{B}_0$, i.e. $\mathbf{q} = (0, q, 0)$ to write (13.114) as 307

$$\underline{\sigma} = \frac{3\sigma_0}{2} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-1}^1 d(\cos \theta) \times \frac{\begin{pmatrix} i \frac{\partial}{\partial w} J_n(w \sin \theta) \\ \frac{n}{w} J_n(w \sin \theta) \\ \cos \theta J_n(w \sin \theta) \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -i \frac{\partial}{\partial w} J_n(w \sin \theta), \frac{n}{w} J_n(w \sin \theta), \cos \theta J_n(w \sin \theta) \end{pmatrix}}{1 - i\tau[n\omega_c(\varepsilon_F, k_z) - \omega]}. \quad (13.120)$$

We define the following functions 308

$$\begin{aligned} c_n(w) &= \frac{1}{2} \int_{-1}^1 d(\cos \theta) \cos^2 \theta J_n^2(w \sin \theta), \\ s_n(w) &= \frac{1}{2} \int_{-1}^1 d(\cos \theta) \sin^2 \theta [J'_n(w \sin \theta)]^2, \\ g_n(w) &= \frac{1}{2} \int_{-1}^1 d(\cos \theta) J_n^2(w \sin \theta). \end{aligned} \quad (13.121)$$

It is obvious that the angular integrations appearing in σ_{xz} , σ_{zx} , σ_{yz} , and σ_{zy} 309
vanish because the integrands are odd functions of $\cos \theta$. For the nonvanishing 310
components we obtain 311

$$\sigma_{xx} = 3\sigma_0 \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{s_n(w)}{1 - i\tau(n\omega_c - \omega)}, \quad (13.122)$$

$$\sigma_{yy} = \frac{3\sigma_0}{w^2} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{n^2 g_n(w)}{1 - i\tau(n\omega_c - \omega)}, \quad (13.123)$$

$$\sigma_{xy} = -\sigma_{yx} = \frac{3\sigma_0 i}{2w} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{n g'_n(w)}{1 - i\tau(n\omega_c - \omega)}, \quad (13.124)$$

and 312

$$\sigma_{zz} = 3\sigma_0 \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{c_n(w)}{1 - i\tau(n\omega_c - \omega)}. \quad (13.125)$$

13.4.4 Local vs. Nonlocal Conduction 313

What we have been studying is the nonlocal theory of the electrical conduc- 314
tivity of a solid. It is worth emphasizing once again what is meant by nonlocal 315
conduction, and in which case the nonlocal theory reduces to a local theory. 316
The result we have obtained is 317

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{q}, \omega). \quad (13.126) \quad 318$$

It is easy to show that this expression corresponds to the relation 319

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \int \underline{K}(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}', t - t') \cdot \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}', t') d^3 r' dt'. \quad (13.127) \quad 320$$

Let us take the Fourier transforms of each side by multiplying by $e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r} - i\omega t}$ and 321
integrating 322

$$\begin{aligned} \int \mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}, t) e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r} - i\omega t} d^3 r dt \\ = \int \underline{K}(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}', t - t') \cdot \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}', t') e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}' - i\omega t'} e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}') - i\omega(t - t')} d^3 r' dt' d^3 r dt. \end{aligned}$$

The left-hand side is simply $\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$. The right-hand side can be simplified by 323
letting $\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}' = \mathbf{x}$ and $t - t' = s$ 324

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \underbrace{\int \underline{K}(\mathbf{x}, s) e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x} - i\omega s} d^3 x ds}_{\underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)} \cdot \underbrace{\int \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}', t') e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}' - i\omega t'} d^3 r' dt'}_{\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)}. \quad (13.128)$$

This is just the relation we gave in (13.126) if 325

$$\underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \int \underline{K}(\mathbf{x}, s) e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x} - i\omega s} d^3 x ds$$

or 326

$$\underline{K}(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}', t - t') = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^4} \int \underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) e^{i\omega(t - t') - i\mathbf{q} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}')} d^3 q d\omega. \quad (13.129)$$

Consider for a moment what would happen if $\underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ were independent of $\mathbf{q}$. 327
In that case, we have 328

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{K}(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}', \omega) &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \int \underline{\sigma}(\omega) e^{-i\mathbf{q} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}')} d^3 q, \\ &= \underline{\sigma}(\omega) \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'). \end{aligned} \quad (13.130)$$

Thus, we have 329

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}, \omega) = \underline{\sigma}(\omega) \cdot \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}, \omega). \quad (13.131)$$

This is just Ohm's law in the local theory, in which $\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r})$ depends only on the 330
electric field at the same point $\mathbf{r}$. Thus, the local theory is the special case of 331
the general nonlocal theory, in which the $\mathbf{q}$ dependence of $\underline{\sigma}$ is unimportant. 332
By looking at the expressions we derived one can see that $\underline{\sigma}$ is essentially 333
independent of $\mathbf{q}$ if 334

1. $ql \ll 1$, in the absence of a magnetic field, where $l = v_F \tau$ is the electron 335
mean free path. 336
2. $q_\perp r_c \ll 1$ or $q_\perp l_0 \ll 1$, and $q_z l_0 \ll 1$, in the presence of a magnetic field. 337
Here r_c is the radius of the cyclotron orbit. 338

13.5 Quantum Theory of Magnetoconductivity of an Electron Gas

The evaluation of $\underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega, B_0)$ for a quantum mechanical system is very similar to our evaluation of the wave vector and frequency dependent conductivity in the absence of the field B_0 . We will give a very brief summary of the technique here.³

The zero-order Hamiltonian for an electron in the presence of a vector potential $\mathbf{A}_0 = (0, xB_0, 0)$ is given by

$$H_0 = \frac{1}{2m} \left[p_x^2 + (p_y + \frac{e}{c} B_0 x)^2 + p_z^2 \right]. \quad (13.132)$$

The eigenfunctions and eigenvalues of H_0 can be written as

$$|\nu\rangle = |nk_y k_z\rangle = \frac{1}{L} e^{ik_y y + ik_z z} u_n \left(x + \frac{\hbar k_y}{m\omega_c} \right),$$

$$\varepsilon_\nu = \varepsilon_{n, k_y, k_z} = \frac{\hbar^2 k_z^2}{2m} + \hbar\omega_c \left(n + \frac{1}{2} \right). \quad (13.133)$$

Perturbing self-consistent electromagnetic fields $\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}, t)$ and $\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}, t)$ are assumed to be of the form $e^{i\omega t - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$. These fields can be derived from the potentials $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}, t)$ and $\phi(\mathbf{r}, t)$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{E} &= -\frac{1}{c} \dot{\mathbf{A}} - \nabla \phi = -\frac{i\omega}{c} \mathbf{A} + i\mathbf{q}\phi, \\ \mathbf{B} &= \nabla \times \mathbf{A} = -i\mathbf{q} \times \mathbf{A}. \end{aligned} \quad (13.134)$$

As in the Lindhard case, the theory can be shown to be gauge invariant (we will not prove it here but it is done in the references listed earlier). Therefore, we can take a gauge in which the scalar potential $\phi = 0$. Then, we write the linearized (in $\mathbf{A}$) Hamiltonian as

$$H = H_0 + H_1, \quad (13.135)$$

where H_0 is given by (13.132) and H_1 is the perturbing part

$$H_1 = \frac{e}{2c} (\mathbf{v}_0 \cdot \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{v}_0). \quad (13.136)$$

Here, $\mathbf{v}_0 = \frac{1}{m} (\mathbf{p} + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}_0)$ is the velocity operator in the presence of the field $\mathbf{A}_0$. From here on, one can simply follow the steps we carried out in evaluating $\underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega, B_0 = 0)$. We use

$$\begin{aligned} H_0 |\nu\rangle &= \varepsilon_\nu |\nu\rangle, \\ \rho_0 |\nu\rangle &= f_0(\varepsilon_\nu) |\nu\rangle. \end{aligned} \quad (13.137)$$

³ For details one is referred to the references by J.J. Quinn, S. Rodriguez, Phys. Rev. **128**, 2480 (1962) and M.P. Greene, H.J. Lee, J.J. Quinn, S. Rodriguez, Phys. Rev. **177**, 1019 (1969).

414 13 Semiclassical Theory of Electrons

The perturbation is given by (13.136) and use that

359

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) e^{i\omega t - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}}.$$

The resulting expression for $\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ can be written (for the collisionless limit where $\tau \rightarrow \infty$)

360

361

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = -\frac{\omega_p^2}{4\pi c} [\mathbf{1} + \mathbf{I}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)] \cdot \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{q}, \omega). \quad (13.138) \quad 362$$

Here, $\omega_p^2 = \frac{4\pi n_0 e^2}{m}$ and $n_0 = \frac{N}{V}$. The symbol $\mathbf{1}$ stands for the unit tensor and

363

$$\mathbf{I}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{m}{N} \sum_{\nu\nu'} \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{\nu'}) - f_0(\varepsilon_{\nu})}{\varepsilon_{\nu'} - \varepsilon_{\nu} - \hbar\omega} \langle \nu' | \mathbf{V}(q) | \nu \rangle \langle \nu' | \mathbf{V}(q) | \nu \rangle^*. \quad (13.139) \quad 364$$

The operator $\mathbf{V}(q)$ is given by

365

$$\mathbf{V}(q) = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{v}_0 e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}} + \frac{1}{2} e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \mathbf{v}_0, \quad (13.140)$$

and $\mathbf{v}_0 = \frac{1}{m} \{ \mathbf{p} + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}_0 \}$. The matrix elements of $\mathbf{V}(q)$ are given by

366

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \nu' | V_z(q) | \nu \rangle &= \delta(k'_y, k_y + q_y) \delta(k'_z, k_z + q_z) \frac{\hbar}{m} \left(k_z + \frac{q_z}{2} \right) f_{n'n}(q_y), \\ \langle \nu' | V_y(q) | \nu \rangle &= \delta(k'_y, k_y + q_y) \delta(k'_z, k_z + q_z) \left\{ \frac{\hbar q_y}{2m} f_{n'n}(q_y) + \left(\frac{\hbar \omega_c}{2m} \right)^{1/2} X_{n'n}^{(+)}(q_y) \right\}, \\ \langle \nu' | V_x(q) | \nu \rangle &= \delta(k'_y, k_y + q_y) \delta(k'_z, k_z + q_z) \left\{ i \left(\frac{\hbar \omega_c}{2m} \right)^{1/2} X_{n'n}^{(-)}(q_y) \right\} \end{aligned} \quad (13.141)$$

In these equations, we have taken $q_x = 0$; this can be done without loss of generality. The function $f_{n'n}(q_y)$ is the two-center harmonic oscillator integral:

367

368

$$f_{n'n}(q_y) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} u_{n'} \left(x + \frac{\hbar q_y}{m \omega_c} \right) u_n(x) dx, \quad (13.142)$$

and

369

$$X_{n'n}^{(\pm)}(q_y) = (n+1)^{1/2} f_{n',n+1}(q_y) \pm n^{1/2} f_{n',n-1}(q_y). \quad (13.143)$$

The function $f_{n'n}$ also appears in another useful matrix element

370

$$\langle \nu' | e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}} | \nu \rangle = \delta(k'_y, k_y + q_y) \delta(k'_z, k_z + q_z) f_{n'n}(q_y). \quad (13.144)$$

The function $f_{n'n}$ can be evaluated in terms of associated Laguerre polynomials. For $n' \geq n$, we have

371

372

$$f_{n'n}(q) = \left(\frac{n!}{n'!} \right)^{1/2} \xi^{(n'-n)/2} e^{-\xi/2} L_n^{n'-n}(\xi), \quad (13.145)$$

13.5 Quantum Theory of Magnetoconductivity of an Electron Gas 415

where $\xi = \frac{\hbar q^2}{2m\omega_c}$ and $L_n^\alpha(\xi)$ is the associated Laguerre polynomial of order n . 373
 For $n' < n$ we have $f_{n'n}(q) = (-1)^{n-n'} f_{nn'}(q)$. Some useful facts about the 374
 functions $f_{n'n}$ are 375

$$\begin{aligned} f_{n'n}(q) &= i^{n-n'} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx e^{iqx} u_{n'}(x) u_n(x), \\ f_{n'n}(-q) &= f_{nn'}(q) = (-1)^{n'-n} f_{n'n}(q), \\ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} f_{n'n}^2(q) &= 1, \\ \sum_{n'=0}^{\infty} (n' - n) f_{n'n}^2(q) &= \xi, \\ \frac{\partial f_{n'n}}{\partial q} &= \left(\frac{\hbar}{2m\omega_c} \right)^{1/2} X_{n'n}^{(-)}(q), \\ (n' - n - \xi) f_{n'n}(q) &= \xi^{1/2} X_{n'n}^{(+)}(q). \end{aligned} \quad (13.146)$$

13.5.1 Propagation Perpendicular to B_0 376

For the case of $\mathbf{q} = (0, q, 0)$ we find that 377

$$\begin{aligned} j_x(q, \omega) &= \sigma_{xx} E_x(q, \omega) + \sigma_{xy} E_y(q, \omega), \\ j_y(q, \omega) &= \sigma_{yx} E_x(q, \omega) + \sigma_{yy} E_y(q, \omega), \\ j_z(q, \omega) &= \sigma_{zz} E_z(q, \omega). \end{aligned} \quad (13.147)$$

The nonvanishing components of $\underline{\sigma}$ can be evaluated and they are written as 378

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_{xx} &= \frac{\omega_p^2}{4\pi i \omega} \left[1 - \frac{2m\omega_c}{\hbar} \frac{1}{N} \sum'_{nk_y k_z \alpha} f_0(\varepsilon_{nk_z}) \left(\frac{\partial f_{n+\alpha, n}}{\partial q} \right)^2 \frac{\alpha}{\alpha^2 - (\omega/\omega_c)^2} \right], \\ \sigma_{yy} &= \frac{im\omega_p^2 \omega}{2\pi \hbar \omega_c} \frac{1}{N} \sum'_{nk_y k_z \alpha} f_0(\varepsilon_{nk_z}) f_{n+\alpha, n}^2 \frac{\alpha}{\alpha^2 - (\omega/\omega_c)^2}, \\ \sigma_{xy} &= -\sigma_{yx} = \frac{i\omega_c}{2\omega q} \frac{\partial(q^2 \sigma_{yy})}{\partial q}, \\ \sigma_{zz} &= \frac{\omega_p^2}{4\pi i \omega} \left[1 - \frac{2\hbar}{m\omega_c} \frac{1}{N} \sum'_{nk_y k_z \alpha} f_0(\varepsilon_{nk_z}) k_z^2 f_{n+\alpha, n}^2 \frac{\alpha}{\alpha^2 - (\omega/\omega_c)^2} \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (13.148)$$

In these equations, the sum on α is to be performed from $-n$ to ∞ (because 379
 $0 \leq n' = n + \alpha \leq \infty$). The summations over n, k_y, k_z extend over all values of 380
 the quantum numbers for which $\varepsilon_{nk_z} \leq \zeta$, where ζ is the chemical potential 381
 of the electron gas in the field B_0 . This restriction is indicated by a prime 382
 following the summation sign. 383

416 13 Semiclassical Theory of Electrons

The semiclassical limit can be obtained by replacing the sum over n by an integral. Remember that in general we can write

$$\sum_{nk_y k_z} \Rightarrow 2 \left(\frac{L}{2\pi} \right)^2 \sum_n \int_0^{\frac{m\omega_c L}{\hbar}} dk_y \int dk_z = \frac{m\omega_c}{\hbar} \frac{\Omega}{2\pi^2} \int dk_z \sum_n, \quad (13.149)$$

where Ω is the volume of the sample $\Omega = L^3$. We define $n_0 = \frac{\rho}{\hbar\omega_c} - \frac{1}{2}$ and let $n = n_0 \sin^2 \theta$. For zero temperature, we can integrate over θ from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ instead of summing over n . For $n_0 \gg 1$ it is not hard to see that the main contribution to the integrals comes from rather large values of n . For large n , we can approximate

$$f_{n+\alpha, n} \simeq J_\alpha \left[(4n + 2\alpha + 2)^{1/2} \xi^{1/2} \right] \simeq J_\alpha(w \sin \theta), \quad (13.150)$$

where $w = \frac{qv_F}{\omega_c}$. By substituting into the expressions for the components of $\underline{\sigma}$ we obtain

$$\sigma_{xx} = \frac{3\alpha}{4\pi i \omega} \sum_{\alpha=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{s_\alpha(w)}{1 + \alpha\omega_c/\omega}, \quad (13.151)$$

where

$$s_\alpha(w) = \int_0^{\pi/2} d\theta \sin^3 \theta [J'_\alpha(w \sin \theta)]^2. \quad (13.152)$$

Equation (13.151) is the semiclassical expression we already obtained in (13.122) in the collisionless limit.

The quantum mechanical conductivity tensor can be written as the sum of a semiclassical term and a quantum oscillatory part

$$\underline{\sigma}(q, \omega) = \underline{\sigma}^{\text{SC}}(q, \omega) + \underline{\sigma}^{\text{QO}}(q, \omega), \quad (13.153)$$

where the semiclassical part $\underline{\sigma}^{\text{SC}}$ has been given earlier. As an example of the quantum oscillatory part we give, without derivation, one example

$$\sigma_{zz}^{\text{QO}} = \frac{3}{2} \delta_2 \frac{\omega_p^2}{4\pi i \omega} \left[1 + 3 \frac{\omega^2}{\omega_c^2} \sum_{\alpha=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\alpha^2 - (\omega/\omega_c)^2} \left(1 + w \frac{\partial}{\partial w} \right) c_\alpha(w) \right]. \quad (13.154)$$

Here, δ_2 is a quantum oscillatory function of the *de Haas-van Alphen* type and is given by

$$\delta_2 = \pi \left(\frac{k_B T}{\zeta_0} \right) \sqrt{\frac{\hbar\omega_c}{2\zeta_0}} \sum_{\nu=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^\nu \nu^{-1/2} \sin\left(\frac{2\pi\nu\zeta_0}{\hbar\omega_c} - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)}{\sinh\left(\frac{2\pi^2\nu k_B T}{\hbar\omega_c}\right)}. \quad (13.155)$$

The function $c_\alpha(w)$, with $w = \frac{qv_F}{\omega_c}$, was defined by (13.122) in the discussion of the semiclassical conductivity. If $k_B T$ becomes large compared to $\hbar\omega_c$, the amplitude of the quantum oscillations becomes negligibly small and $\underline{\sigma}$ reduces

13.5 Quantum Theory of Magnetoconductivity of an Electron Gas 417

to the semiclassical result $\underline{\sigma}^{\text{SC}}$ given previously. What the quantum mechanical 406
conductivity tensor contains but what the semiclassical one does not is the 407
quantum structure of the energy levels. This, of course, determines all the 408
quantum effects like 409

1. *de Haas–van Alphen oscillations* in the magnetism 410
2. *Shubnikov–de Haas oscillations* in the resistivity 411
3. Quantum oscillations in acoustic attenuation, etc. 412

Uncorrected Proof

Problems

413

13.1. Take direction of current flow to make an angle θ with x axis as is shown in Fig. 13.8. First, transform to $x' - y'$ frame. Then, put $j_{y'} = 0$, and check for what angles θ the magnetoresistance fails to saturate.

13.2. Consider a band for a simple cubic structure given by $E(\mathbf{k}) = E_0[\cos(k_x a) + \cos(k_y a) + \cos(k_z a)]$, where a is the lattice constant. Let an electron at rest ($k = 0$) at $t = 0$ feel a uniform external electric field $\mathbf{E}$ which is constant in time.

- (a) Find the real space trajectory $[x(t), y(t), z(t)]$.
- (b) Sketch the trajectory for $\mathbf{E}$ in a $[120]$ direction.

13.3. Consider an electron in a state with a linear energy dispersion given by $E = \pm \hbar v_F |\mathbf{k}|$, where $\mathbf{k}$ is a two-dimensional wave vector. (It occurs in the low-energy states in a graphene – a single layer of graphite.)

- (a) When a dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ is applied perpendicular to the graphene layer, write down the area $\mathcal{S}(\varepsilon)$ and sketch $\mathcal{S}(\varepsilon_n)$ for various values of n .
- (b) Solve for the quantized energies ε_n and plot the resulting ε_n for $-5\hbar\omega_c \leq \varepsilon_n \leq 5\hbar\omega_c$.
- (c) What can you say about the effective mass of the particle in a graphene subject to the magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$?

13.4. The energy of an electron in a particular band of a solid is given by

$$\varepsilon(k_x, k_y, k_z) = \frac{\hbar^2 k_x^2}{2m_x} + \frac{\hbar^2 k_y^2}{2m_y},$$

where $-\frac{\pi}{a} < k_i < \frac{\pi}{a}$ is the first Brillouin zone of a simple cubic lattice.

- (a) Determine $v_i(\mathbf{k})$ for $i = x, y$, and z .
- (b) Show that $\hbar k_i(t) = \sqrt{2m_i \varepsilon} \cos \omega_c t$ where $i = x$ and y for a dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}_0$ in the z -direction.
- (c) Determine ω_c in terms of m_i , B_0 , etc.

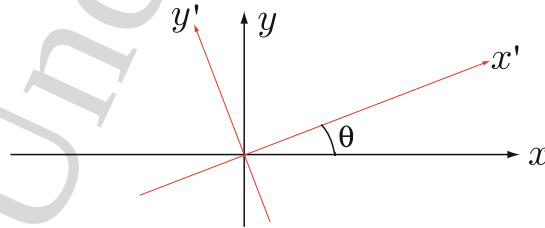


Fig. 13.8. A simple geometry of current flow

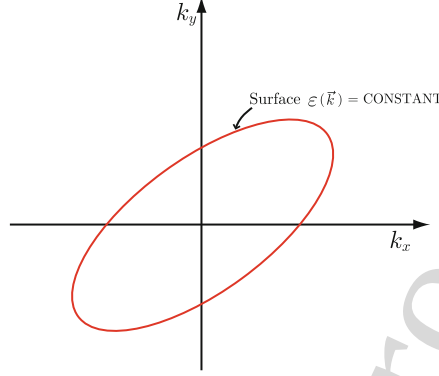


Fig. 13.9. A constant energy surface $\varepsilon(\mathbf{k})$ in a two-dimensional system

13.5. Consider two-dimensional electrons with a linear dispersion given by $E = \hbar v_F |\mathbf{k}|$, where $\mathbf{k}$ is a two-dimensional wave vector. Now apply a dc magnetic field B perpendicular to the system. We shall assume that τ is constant.

1. Write down the $\mathbf{v}(\varepsilon_F, s)$ and the periodic part of the position vector $\mathbf{R}_p(\varepsilon, s)$.
2. Evaluate the Fourier coefficients $\mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon)$, and discuss the conductivity tensor $\underline{\sigma}$ defined by $\mathbf{j} = \underline{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{E}$.

13.6. Consider an electron in a two-dimensional system subject to a dc magnetic field B perpendicular to the system. The constant energy surface of the particle is shown in in Fig. 13.9.

- (a) Sketch the orbit of the particle in real space.
- (b) Sketch the velocity $v_y(t)$ as a function of t .

Summary

452

In this chapter, we study behaviors of Bloch electrons in the presence of a dc magnetic field. Energy levels and possible trajectories of electrons are discussed, and simple two band model of magnetoresistance is illustrated including the effect of collisions. General expression of semiclassical magnetoconductivity tensor is derived by solving the Boltzmann equation of the distribution function, and the results are applied to the case of free electrons. The relationship between the local and nonlocal descriptions are discussed. Finally, quantum mechanical theory of magnetoconductivity tensor is described and quantum oscillatory behavior in magnetoconductivity of Bloch electrons is compared with its semiclassical counterpart.

In the presence of an electric field $\mathbf{E}$ and a dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}(=\nabla \times \mathbf{A})$, an effective Hamiltonian is given by $\mathcal{H} = \varepsilon(\frac{\mathbf{p}}{\hbar} + \frac{e}{\hbar c}\mathbf{A}) - e\phi$, where $\varepsilon(\mathbf{k})$ is the energy as a function of $\mathbf{k}$ in the absence of $\mathbf{B}$. The equation of motion of a Bloch electron in k -space takes the form

$$\hbar \dot{\mathbf{k}} = -e\mathbf{E} - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}.$$

Here, $\mathbf{v} = \frac{1}{\hbar}\nabla_{\mathbf{k}}\varepsilon(\mathbf{k})$ is the velocity of the Bloch electron whose energy $\varepsilon(\mathbf{k})$ is an arbitrary function of wave vector $\mathbf{k}$. The orbit in real space will be exactly the same shape as the orbit in k -space except that it is rotated by 90° and scaled by a factor $\frac{eB}{\hbar c}$: $\mathbf{k}_\perp = \frac{eB}{\hbar c} \times \mathbf{r}_\perp$. The factor $\frac{eB}{\hbar c}$ is l_0^{-2} , where l_0 is the magnetic length. The orbit of a particle in k -space is the intersection of a constant energy surface $\varepsilon(\mathbf{k}) = \varepsilon$ and a plane of constant k_z :

$$\frac{d\varepsilon}{dt} = \nabla_{\mathbf{k}}\varepsilon \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{k}}{dt} = \hbar \mathbf{v} \cdot \left(-\frac{e}{\hbar c}\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}\right) = 0.$$

The area of the orbit $\mathcal{A}(\varepsilon, k_z)$ in real space is proportional to the area $\mathcal{S}(\varepsilon, k_z)$ of the orbit in k -space: $\mathcal{S}(\varepsilon, k_z) = \left(\frac{eB}{\hbar c}\right)^2 \mathcal{A}(\varepsilon, k_z)$. The area $\mathcal{S}(\varepsilon, k_z)$ is quantized by $\mathcal{S}(\varepsilon, k_z) = \frac{2\pi eB}{\hbar c}(n + \gamma)$ and the cyclotron effective mass is given by $m^*(\varepsilon, k_z) = \frac{\hbar^2}{2\pi} \frac{\partial \mathcal{S}(\varepsilon, k_z)}{\partial \varepsilon}$. The Bloch electron velocity parallel to the magnetic field becomes

$$v_z(\varepsilon, k_z) = -\frac{\hbar}{2\pi m^*(\varepsilon, k_z)} \frac{\partial \mathcal{S}(\varepsilon, k_z)}{\partial k_z}.$$

The transverse magnetoresistance is defined by $\frac{R(B_z) - R(0)}{R(0)} = \Delta R(B_z)$. The simple free electron model gives $\Delta R(B_z) = 0$, which is different from the experimental results.

The current density is given by $\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \frac{2}{(2\pi)^3} \int (-e)\mathbf{v} f_1 d^3k$. In the presence of a uniform dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}_0$, the semiclassical magnetoconductivity of an electron gas is written as

$$\underline{\sigma} = \frac{e^2}{2\pi^2 \hbar^2} \tau(\varepsilon_F) \int_{\text{F.S.}} dk_z m^*(k_z) \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon_F, k_z) \mathbf{v}_n^*(\varepsilon_F, k_z)}{1 + i\tau(\varepsilon_F)[\omega - \mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{v}_s - n\omega_c(\varepsilon_F, k_z)]},$$

13.5 Quantum Theory of Magnetoconductivity of an Electron Gas 421

where $\mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon, k_z)$ is defined by

$$\mathbf{v}_n(\varepsilon, k_z) = \frac{\omega_c(\varepsilon, k_z)}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi/\omega_c} ds \mathbf{v}(\varepsilon, k_z, s) e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{R}_p(\varepsilon, k_z, s) - in\omega_c s}.$$

Here, $R_p(\varepsilon, k_z, s)$ denotes the periodic part of the position vector in real space.

For the free electron model $m^*(k_z) = m$ is a constant independent of k_z and the periodic part of the position vector is given by $\mathbf{R}_p(\varepsilon, k_z, s) = \frac{v}{\omega_c} (\sin \omega_c s, -\cos \omega_c s, 0)$. For the propagation $\mathbf{q} \perp \mathbf{B}_0$, i.e. $\mathbf{q} = (0, q, 0)$, the nonvanishing components of semiclassical conductivity $\underline{\sigma}$ are

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_{xx} &= 3\sigma_0 \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{s_n(w)}{1 - i\tau(n\omega_c - \omega)}; \quad \sigma_{yy} = \frac{3\sigma_0}{w^2} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{n^2 g_n(w)}{1 - i\tau(n\omega_c - \omega)}; \\ \sigma_{xy} &= -\sigma_{yx} = \frac{3\sigma_0 i}{2w} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{ng'_n(w)}{1 - i\tau(n\omega_c - \omega)}; \quad \sigma_{zz} = 3\sigma_0 \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{c_n(w)}{1 - i\tau(n\omega_c - \omega)}. \end{aligned}$$

Here, $c_n(w) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{-1}^1 d(\cos \theta) \cos^2 \theta J_n^2(w \sin \theta)$, $s_n(w) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{-1}^1 d(\cos \theta) \sin^2 \theta [J'_n(w \sin \theta)]^2$, and $g_n(w) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{-1}^1 d(\cos \theta) J_n^2(w \sin \theta)$.

In the presence of a vector potential $\mathbf{A}_0 = (0, xB_0, 0)$, the electronic states are described by $H_0 = \frac{1}{2m} [p_x^2 + (p_y + \frac{e}{c} B_0 x)^2 + p_z^2]$. The eigenfunctions and eigenvalues of H_0 can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} |\nu\rangle &= |nk_y k_z\rangle = \frac{1}{L} e^{ik_y y + ik_z z} u_n \left(x + \frac{\hbar k_y}{m\omega_c} \right), \\ \varepsilon_\nu &= \varepsilon_{n, k_y, k_z} = \frac{\hbar^2 k_z^2}{2m} + \hbar\omega_c \left(n + \frac{1}{2} \right). \end{aligned}$$

The quantum mechanical version of the nonvanishing components of $\underline{\sigma}$ are given, for the case of $\mathbf{q} = (0, q, 0)$, by

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_{xx} &= \frac{\omega_p^2}{4\pi i \omega} \left[1 - \frac{2m\omega_c}{\hbar} \frac{1}{N} \sum'_{nk_y k_z \alpha} f_0(\varepsilon_{nk_z}) \left(\frac{\partial f_{n+\alpha, n}}{\partial q} \right)^2 \frac{\alpha}{\alpha^2 - (\omega/\omega_c)^2} \right], \\ \sigma_{yy} &= \frac{im\omega_p^2 \omega}{2\pi \hbar \omega_c} \frac{1}{N} \sum'_{nk_y k_z \alpha} f_0(\varepsilon_{nk_z}) f_{n+\alpha, n}^2 \frac{\alpha}{\alpha^2 - (\omega/\omega_c)^2}, \\ \sigma_{xy} &= -\sigma_{yx} = \frac{i\omega_c}{2\omega q} \frac{\partial(q^2 \sigma_{yy})}{\partial q}, \\ \sigma_{zz} &= \frac{\omega_p^2}{4\pi i \omega} \left[1 - \frac{2\hbar}{m\omega_c} \frac{1}{N} \sum'_{nk_y k_z \alpha} f_0(\varepsilon_{nk_z}) k_z^2 f_{n+\alpha, n}^2 \frac{\alpha}{\alpha^2 - (\omega/\omega_c)^2} \right], \end{aligned}$$

422 13 Semiclassical Theory of Electrons

where $f_{n'n}(q_y)$ is the two-center harmonic oscillator integral:

498

$$f_{n'n}(q_y) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} u_{n'}(x + \frac{\hbar q_y}{m\omega_c}) u_n(x) dx$$

and

499

$$X_{n'n}^{(\pm)}(q_y) = (n+1)^{1/2} f_{n',n+1}(q_y) \pm n^{1/2} f_{n',n-1}(q_y).$$

The quantum mechanical conductivity tensor is the sum of a semiclassical 500
term and a quantum oscillatory part: 501

$$\underline{\sigma}(q, \omega) = \underline{\sigma}^{\text{SC}}(q, \omega) + \underline{\sigma}^{\text{QO}}(q, \omega).$$

14

1

Electrodynamics of Metals

2

14.1 Maxwell's Equations

3

There are two aspects of the electrodynamics of metals. The first is linear 4
response theory and the second is the problem of boundary conditions. We 5
have already discussed linear response theory in some detail. Its application to 6
waves in an infinite medium is fairly straightforward. The problem of boundary 7
conditions is usually much more involved. We shall cover some examples of 8
each type in the rest of this chapter. 9

We consider an electromagnetic disturbance with space-time dependence 10
of the form $e^{i\omega t - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$. Maxwell's equations can be written 11

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} = -\frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t}, \quad (14.1)$$

and

12

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} + \frac{4\pi}{c} \mathbf{j}_T + 4\pi \nabla \times \mathbf{M}_s. \quad (14.2)$$

In (14.2) $\mathbf{j}_T$ is the total current in the system; it includes any external currents 13
and the diamagnetic response currents in the medium. The term M_s is the 14
spin magnetization in the case of a system containing spins. Equation (14.1) 15
can be written 16

$$\mathbf{B} = \boldsymbol{\xi} \times \mathbf{E}, \quad (14.3)$$

where $\boldsymbol{\xi} = \frac{c\mathbf{q}}{\omega}$. Therefore, the magnetic induction $\mathbf{B}$ can be eliminated from 17
(14.2): 18

$$\boldsymbol{\xi} \times (\boldsymbol{\xi} \times \mathbf{E}) + \mathbf{E} = \frac{4\pi i}{\omega} \mathbf{j}_T + \frac{4\pi}{c} \boldsymbol{\xi} \times \mathbf{M}_s,$$

or

19

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}(\boldsymbol{\xi} \cdot \mathbf{E}) - \xi^2 \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{E} = \frac{4\pi i}{\omega} \mathbf{j}_T + \frac{4\pi}{c} \boldsymbol{\xi} \times \mathbf{M}_s. \quad (14.4)$$

Normally, the total current $\mathbf{j}_T$ can be written as 20

$$\mathbf{j}_T = \mathbf{j}_0 + \mathbf{j}_{\text{ind}}, \quad (14.5)$$

where $\mathbf{j}_0$ is some external current and $\mathbf{j}_{\text{ind}}$ is the current induced (in the electron gas) by the self-consistent field. The spin magnetization $\mathbf{M}_s$ and the induced current $\mathbf{j}_{\text{ind}}$ are found in terms of the self-consistent fields $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ from linear response theory. For example $\mathbf{j}_{\text{ind}}$ might simply be the electron current density

$$\mathbf{j}_e = \underline{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{E}, \quad (14.6)$$

and the spin magnetization $\mathbf{M}_s$ will be some similar function of $\mathbf{B}$

$$\mathbf{M}_s = \underline{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{B}. \quad (14.7)$$

For the moment, let us ignore the effect of spin to drop the term $\mathbf{M}_s$. Then, (14.4) can be solved for $\mathbf{j}_T$.

$$\mathbf{j}_T = \underline{\Gamma} \cdot \mathbf{E}, \quad (14.8)$$

where

$$\underline{\Gamma} = \frac{i\omega}{4\pi} \{ (\xi^2 - 1) \underline{\mathbf{1}} - \underline{\xi} \underline{\xi} \}. \quad (14.9)$$

If we choose $q_x = 0$ (as we did in linear response theory) $\underline{\Gamma}$ can be written

$$\underline{\Gamma} = \frac{ic^2}{4\pi\omega} \begin{pmatrix} q_y^2 + q_z^2 - \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & q_z^2 - \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} & -q_y q_z \\ 0 & -q_y q_z & q_y^2 - \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (14.10)$$

Notice that $\underline{\Gamma}$ is diagonal for propagation parallel or perpendicular to the dc magnetic field (which we take to be in the z -direction).

14.2 Skin Effect in the Absence of a dc Magnetic Field 35

Consider a semi-infinite metal to fill the space $z > 0$ and vacuum the space $z < 0$. Let us consider the propagation of an electromagnetic wave parallel to the z -axis. Electromagnetic radiation is a self-sustaining oscillation of any medium in which it propagates. Therefore, we need no external “driving” current $\mathbf{j}_0$, and the total current is simply the electronic current

$$\mathbf{j}_e(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{q}, \omega). \quad (14.11)$$

But Maxwell’s equations require that $\mathbf{j}_T = \underline{\Gamma} \cdot \mathbf{E}$, and we have just seen that $\mathbf{j}_T = \mathbf{j}_e$. Therefore, the electromagnetic waves must be solutions of the secular equation

$$|\underline{\Gamma} - \underline{\sigma}| = 0, \quad (14.12)$$

14.2 Skin Effect in the Absence of a dc Magnetic Field 425

which can be written 44

$$\begin{vmatrix} -\frac{c^2 q^2}{\omega^2} + \varepsilon(\mathbf{q}, \omega) & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -\frac{c^2 q^2}{\omega^2} + \varepsilon(\mathbf{q}, \omega) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \varepsilon(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (14.13)$$

Here, we have introduced the dielectric function 45

$$\underline{\varepsilon}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \underline{1} - \frac{4\pi i}{\omega} \underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega), \quad (14.14)$$

and we have assumed that $\underline{\varepsilon}$ is diagonal (this is true for an electron gas in the 46
absence of a dc magnetic field). The transverse electromagnetic waves which 47
can propagate in the medium are solutions of the equation 48

$$c^2 q^2 = \omega^2 \varepsilon(\mathbf{q}, \omega). \quad (14.15)$$

In addition, there is a longitudinal wave which is the solution of the equation 49

$$\varepsilon(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = 0. \quad (14.16)$$

Normal Skin Effect 50

In the absence of a dc magnetic field, the local theory of conduction gives 51

$$\sigma = \frac{\sigma_0}{1 + i\omega\tau} = \frac{\omega_p^2 \tau / 4\pi}{1 + i\omega\tau}. \quad (14.17)$$

Therefore, we have 52

$$\varepsilon(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = 1 - \frac{i\omega_p^2 \tau / \omega}{1 + i\omega\tau} \quad (14.18)$$

or 53

$$\varepsilon(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \frac{1 + (\omega^2 - \omega_p^2)\tau^2}{1 + \omega^2 \tau^2} - i \frac{\omega_p^2 \tau^2}{\omega \tau (1 + \omega^2 \tau^2)} \quad (14.19)$$

Usually in a good metal $\omega_p \simeq 10^{16}/\text{s}$, a frequency in the ultraviolet. Therefore, 54
in the optical or infrared range $\omega_p \gg \omega$. The parameter τ can be as small as 55
 10^{-14}sec or as large as 10^{-9}s in very pure metals at very low temperatures. 56
Let us first consider the case $\omega\tau \gg 1$. Then, since $\omega_p \gg \omega$, we have 57

$$\varepsilon(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \simeq -\frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2}. \quad (14.20)$$

Substituting this result into the wave equation $c^2 q^2 = \omega^2 \varepsilon(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ gives 58

$$q = \pm i \frac{\omega_p}{c} = \pm \frac{i}{\delta}. \quad (14.21)$$

We choose the well-behaved solution $q = -\frac{i}{\delta}$ so that the field in the metal is 59
of the form 60

$$E(z, t) = E_0 e^{i\omega t - z/\delta}. \quad (14.22) \quad 61$$

What we find is that electromagnetic waves do not propagate in the metal (for frequencies lower than ω_p), and that the electric field in the solid drops off exponentially with distance from the surface. The distance $\delta = \frac{c}{\omega_p}$ is called the *normal skin depth*. 62 63 64 65

If $\omega\tau \ll 1$, (this is usually true at rf frequencies, even at low temperatures with pure materials) we have 66 67

$$\varepsilon(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \simeq 1 - i \frac{\omega_p^2 \tau}{\omega} \sim -i \frac{\omega_p^2 \omega \tau}{\omega^2} \text{ when } \omega_p \gg \omega. \quad (14.23)$$

The solution of the wave equation is given by 68

$$q = \pm \frac{\omega_p}{c} \left(\frac{\omega\tau}{2} \right)^{1/2} (1 - i), \quad (14.24)$$

so that the field E is of the form 69

$$E(z, t) = E_0 e^{i\omega t} e^{-(i+1) \frac{\omega_p}{c} \left(\frac{\omega\tau}{2} \right)^{1/2} z}. \quad (14.25)$$

Thus, the skin depth is given by 70

$$\delta = \frac{c}{\omega_p} \left(\frac{2}{\omega\tau} \right)^{1/2}. \quad (14.26)$$

If the mean free path l is much greater than the skin depth, $l \gg \delta$, then the local theory is not valid. In good metals at low temperatures, it turns out that $l \simeq v_F \tau \simeq 10^7 \text{ nm}$ and $\delta \simeq 10 \text{ nm}$, so that $l \gg \delta$, and we must use the nonlocal theory. 71 72 73 74

Anomalous Skin Effect 75

The normal skin effect was derived under the assumption that the $\mathbf{q}$ dependence of $\underline{\sigma}$ was unimportant. Remember that this assumption is valid if $ql = qv_F \tau \ll 1$. We have found that the electric field varies like $e^{-z/\delta}$. If δ turns out to be smaller than $l = v_F \tau$, our initial assumption was certainly incorrect. The skin depth δ is of the order of 76 77 78 79 80

$$\delta \simeq \frac{c}{\omega_p}. \quad (14.27)$$

Therefore, if 81

$$\frac{\omega c}{\omega_p v_F} < \omega\tau, \quad (14.28)$$

the theory is inconsistent because the field $E(z)$ changes appreciably over a mean free path l contradicting the assumption that the $\mathbf{q}$ dependence of $\underline{\sigma}$ can be neglected. The theory for this case in which the $\mathbf{q}$ dependence of $\underline{\sigma}$ must 82 83 84

14.3 Azbel–Kaner Cyclotron Resonance 427

be included is called the theory of the *anomalous skin effect*. In the nonlocal theory, we can write, (we take the y -axis to be perpendicular to the metal's surface),

$$\mathbf{j}_e(y) = \int dy' \underline{\sigma}(y, y') \cdot \mathbf{E}(y'), \quad (14.29)$$

which is true for an infinite medium. However, we have to take into account the surface of the metal here. We shall do this by using the formalism for the infinite medium, and imposing appropriate boundary conditions, namely, the method of images.

14.3 Azbel–Kaner Cyclotron Resonance

The theory of the anomalous skin effect in the presence of a dc magnetic field aligned parallel to the surface is the theory of *Azbel–Kaner cyclotron resonance* in metals. We shall present a brief treatment of this effect, and leave the problem of the anomalous skin effect in the absence of a dc magnetic field as an exercise.

Let us choose a Cartesian coordinate system with the y -axis normal to the surface, and the z -axis parallel to the dc magnetic field (see Fig. 14.1). For a polarization in which $\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}, t)$ is parallel to the z -axis, the wave equation can be written, since $\mathbf{q}$ is along the y -direction,

$$\left(-q^2 + \frac{\omega^2}{c^2}\right)\mathbf{E}(q, \omega) = \frac{4\pi i\omega}{c^2}\mathbf{j}_T(q, \omega). \quad (14.30)$$

This comes from the Fourier transform of the wave equation. For the case of self-sustaining oscillations of an infinite medium, we would set $\mathbf{j}_T$ equal to

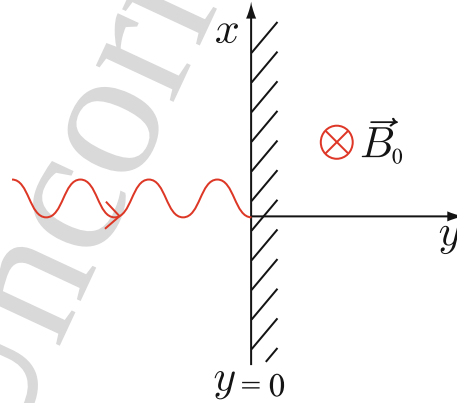


Fig. 14.1. The coordinate system for an electromagnetic wave propagating parallel to the y -axis with the surface at $y = 0$. A dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}_0$ is parallel to the z -axis

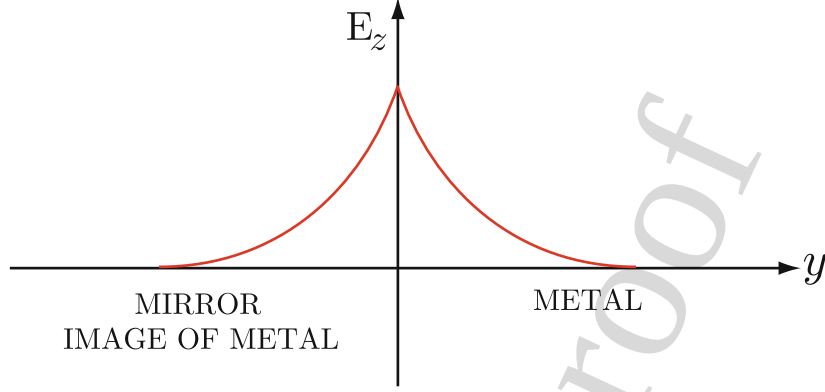


Fig. 14.2. A semi-infinite medium in terms of infinite medium picture. An electric field $E_z(y)$ in the metal is shown near the surface $y = 0$

the induced electron current given by $\sigma_{zz}(q, \omega)E(q, \omega)$. For the semi-infinite medium, however, one must exercise some care to account for the boundary conditions. The electric field in the metal will decay in amplitude with distance from the surface $y = 0$. There is a discontinuity in the first derivative of $\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}, t)$ at $y = 0$. Actually the term $-q^2\mathbf{E}$ in the wave equation came from making the assumption that $\mathbf{E}(y)$ was of the form e^{-iqy} . One can use this “infinite medium” picture by replacing the vacuum by the mirror image of the metal as shown in Fig. 14.2. The fictitious surface current $\mathbf{j}_0 \propto \delta(y)$ must be introduced to properly take account of the boundary conditions. By putting $\mathbf{j}_e(q, \omega) = \sigma_{zz}(q, \omega)\mathbf{E}(q, \omega)$, we can solve the wave equation for $\mathbf{E}(q, \omega)$. The fictitious surface current sheet of density $\mathbf{j}_0$ is very simply related to the magnetic field at the surface

$$j_0(y) = \frac{c}{2\pi} H(0) \delta(y) \text{ or } j_0(q) = \frac{cH(0)}{2\pi}. \quad (14.31)$$

Solving (14.30) for $E(q, \omega)$ gives

$$E(q, \omega) = \frac{2i\omega H(0)/c}{-q^2 + \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} - \frac{4\pi i\omega}{c^2} \sigma_{zz}(q, \omega)}. \quad (14.32)$$

By substituting this result into the Fourier transform

$$E(y) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dq e^{-iqy} E(q, \omega), \quad (14.33)$$

and the definition of the surface impedance $\mathcal{Z}$

$$\mathcal{Z} = \frac{4\pi}{c} \frac{E(0)}{H(0)}, \quad (14.34)$$

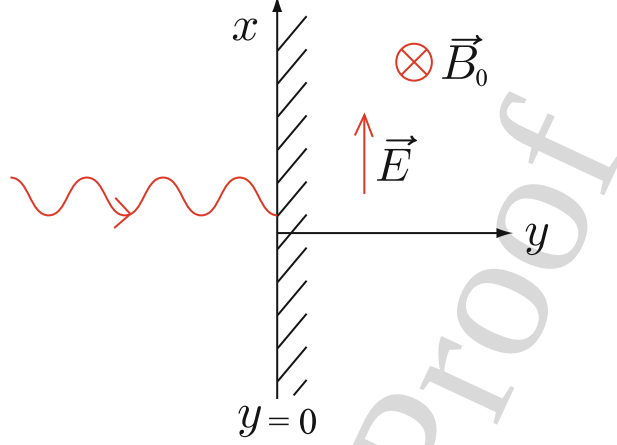


Fig. 14.3. The coordinate system for an electromagnetic wave propagating parallel to the y -axis to the metal surface ($y = 0$) for the case of polarization in the x -direction. A dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}_0$ is parallel to the z -axis

we can easily obtain the electric field as a function of position and the surface 121
impedance of the metal. In (14.34), $E(0)$ and $H(0)$ are the electric field and 122
the magnetic field at the surface, respectively. 123

For the case of a wave polarized in the x -direction instead of the 124
 z -direction, σ_{zz} is replaced by 125

$$\sigma_T = \sigma_{xx} + \frac{\sigma_{xy}^2}{\sigma_{yy}}. \quad (14.35)$$

This is equivalent to assuming that electrons are specularly reflected at the 126
boundary $y = 0$. Figure 14.3 shows the coordinate system for a wave prop- 127
agating perpendicular to the boundary of the metal with polarization in the 128
 x -direction normal to the dc magnetic field. One can see that although $\mathbf{E}(y)$ 129
is continuous, its first derivative is not. Therefore, in defining the Fourier 130
transform of $\frac{\partial^2 \mathbf{E}(y)}{\partial y^2}$ we must add terms to take account of these continuities. 131

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dy e^{iqy} \frac{\partial^2 \mathbf{E}(y)}{\partial y^2} = \Delta \mathbf{E}'_0 - iq \Delta \mathbf{E}_0 - q^2 \mathbf{E}(q), \quad (14.36)$$

where

$$\Delta \mathbf{E}'_0 = \left(\frac{\partial \mathbf{E}(y)}{\partial y} \right)_{y=0^+} - \left(\frac{\partial \mathbf{E}(y)}{\partial y} \right)_{y=0^-}, \quad (14.37)$$

and

$$\Delta \mathbf{E}_0 = \mathbf{E}(0^+) - \mathbf{E}(0^-). \quad (14.38)$$

For the case of specular reflection we take $\Delta \mathbf{E}_0 = 0$ and $\Delta \mathbf{E}'_0 = 2\mathbf{E}'(0^+)$. This 134
adds a constant term to the wave equation 135

430 14 Electrodynamics of Metals

$$\left(-q^2 + \frac{\omega^2}{c^2}\right) \mathbf{E}(q, \omega) = -\Delta \mathbf{E}'_0 + \frac{4\pi i \omega}{c^2} \mathbf{j}_e(q, \omega). \quad (14.39)$$

This added term can equally well be thought of as a fictitious surface current $\mathbf{j}_0(y)$ given by

$$\mathbf{j}_0(y) = -\frac{c^2 \Delta \mathbf{E}'_0}{4\pi i \omega} \delta(y). \quad (14.40)$$

So that the infinite medium result (or infinite medium wave equation) can be used if we take for $\mathbf{j}_T(q, \omega)$

$$\mathbf{j}_T(q, \omega) = \mathbf{j}_e(q, \omega) + \mathbf{j}_0(q). \quad (14.41)$$

Actually, the results just derived are valid in the absence of a magnetic field as well as in the presence of a dc magnetic field. In the absence of a magnetic field the conductivity tensor is given by

$$\underline{\sigma}(q, \omega) = \frac{\omega_p^2}{4\pi i \omega} \{ \mathbf{1} + \mathbf{I}(q, \omega) \}, \quad (14.42)$$

where

$$\mathbf{I}(q, \omega) = \frac{m}{N} \sum_{\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}'} \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}'}) - f_0(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}})}{\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}'} - \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} - \hbar \omega} \langle \mathbf{k}' | \mathbf{V}_q | \mathbf{k} \rangle \langle \mathbf{k}' | \mathbf{V}_q | \mathbf{k} \rangle^*. \quad (14.43)$$

14.4 Azbel–Kaner Effect

If we use the Cohen–Harrison–Harrison expression for $\sigma_{zz}(q, \omega)$, (13.125), we have

$$\sigma_{zz} = 3\sigma_0 \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{c_n(w)}{1 - i\tau(n\omega_c - \omega)}, \quad (14.44)$$

where

$$c_n(w) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{-1}^1 d(\cos \theta) \cos^2 \theta J_n^2(w \sin \theta). \quad (14.45)$$

Since $w \gg 1$ (i.e., we assume $w \equiv \frac{qv_F}{\omega_c} \gg 1$ for the values of q of interest in this problem) we can replace $J_n(w \sin \theta)$ by its asymptotic value for large argument.

$$\lim_{z \rightarrow \infty} J_n(z) \approx \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi z}} \cos\left[z - \left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right) \frac{\pi}{2}\right]. \quad (14.46)$$

Substituting (14.46) into the expression for $c_n(w)$ (14.45) gives

$$c_n(w) \approx \frac{1}{4w}. \quad (14.47)$$

Therefore, we have 153

$$\sigma_{zz} \approx \frac{3\omega_p^2}{4\pi i \tilde{\omega}} \frac{1}{4w} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{1 + n\omega_c/\tilde{\omega}}. \quad (14.48)$$

Making use of the fact that 154

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{1 + n\omega_c/\omega} = \frac{\pi\omega}{\omega_c} \cot \frac{\pi\omega}{\omega_c} \quad (14.49)$$

and $-i \cot x = \coth ix$, one can easily see that 155

$$\sigma_{zz} \approx \frac{3\omega_p^2}{16qv_F} \coth \left[\frac{\pi(1 + i\omega\tau)}{\omega_c\tau} \right]. \quad (14.50)$$

This can be rewritten 156

$$\sigma_{zz} \approx -\frac{3i\omega_p^2}{16qv_F} \cot \left[\frac{\pi(\omega - i/\tau)}{\omega_c} \right]. \quad (14.51) \quad 157$$

In the limit $\omega\tau \gg 1$, this function has sharp peaks at $\omega \simeq n\omega_c$. In this last 158
expression, we have substituted $\omega - i/\tau$ for ω . In the limit $\omega\tau \gg 1$, σ_{zz} shows 159
periodic oscillations as a function of ω_c . These oscillations also show up in the 160
surface impedance. 161

In using the Cohen–Harrison–Harrison expression for σ_{zz} , we have obvi- 162
ously omitted *quantum oscillations*. By using the quantum mechanical expres- 163
sion for $\underline{\sigma}$, for example $\underline{\sigma}^{QO}(q, \omega)$ given by (13.154), one can easily obtain the 164
quantum oscillations of the surface impedance. 165

14.5 Magnetoplasma Waves 166

We have seen that if we omit spin magnetization, the Maxwell equations for 167
a wave of the form $e^{i\omega t - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$ can be written 168

$$\mathbf{j}_T = \underline{\Gamma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \mathbf{E}. \quad (14.52)$$

The total current is usually the sum of some external current and the induced 169
electron current. If one is interested in the self-sustaining oscillations of the 170
system, one wants the external driving current to be equal to zero. Then the 171
electron current is given by $\mathbf{j}_e = \underline{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{E}$, and this is the only current. Thus, 172
 $\mathbf{j}_T = \underline{\Gamma} \cdot \mathbf{E} = \underline{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{E}$, so that we have 173

$$|\underline{\Gamma} - \underline{\sigma}| = 0 \quad (14.53)$$

gives the dispersion relation for the normal modes of the system. 174

In the absence of a dc magnetic field (14.53) reduces to 175

$$(\omega^2 \varepsilon - c^2 q^2)^2 \varepsilon = 0. \quad (14.54)$$

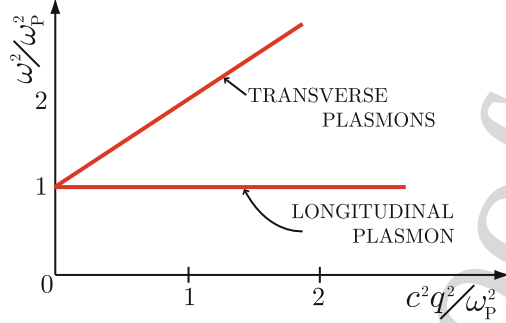


Fig. 14.4. The dispersion curves of transverse and longitudinal plasmon modes in the absence of a dc magnetic field

In the local (collisionless) theory, the dielectric function is given by 176

$$\varepsilon \approx 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2}, \quad (14.55)$$

so the normal modes are two degenerate transverse modes of frequency 177

$$\omega^2 = \omega_p^2 + c^2 q^2, \quad (14.56)$$

and a longitudinal mode of frequency 178

$$\omega = \omega_p. \quad (14.57)$$

Figure 14.4 shows the dispersion curves of transverse and longitudinal plasmon 179 modes in the absence of a dc magnetic field. There are no propagating modes 180 for frequencies ω smaller than the plasma frequency ω_p . 181

Now, consider the normal modes of the system in the presence of a dc 182 magnetic field. We choose the z -axis parallel to the magnetic field, and let the 183 wave vector $\mathbf{q}$ lie in the $y-z$ plane. The secular equation can be written 184

$$\begin{vmatrix} \varepsilon_{xx} - \xi^2 & \varepsilon_{xy} & 0 \\ -\varepsilon_{xy} & \varepsilon_{xx} - \xi_z^2 & \xi_y \xi_z \\ 0 & \xi_y \xi_z & \varepsilon_{zz} - \xi_y^2 \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (14.58)$$

In writing down (14.58) we have introduced $\xi = \frac{c\mathbf{q}}{\omega}$, and now assume a local 185 theory of conductivity in which the nonvanishing elements of $\underline{\varepsilon}$ are 186

$$\begin{aligned} \varepsilon_{xx}(\omega) = \varepsilon_{yy}(\omega) &= 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2 - \omega_c^2}, \\ \varepsilon_{xy}(\omega) = -\varepsilon_{yx}(\omega) &= -i \frac{\omega_p^2 \omega_c / \omega}{\omega^2 - \omega_c^2}, \\ \varepsilon_{zz}(\omega) &= 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2}. \end{aligned} \quad (14.59)$$

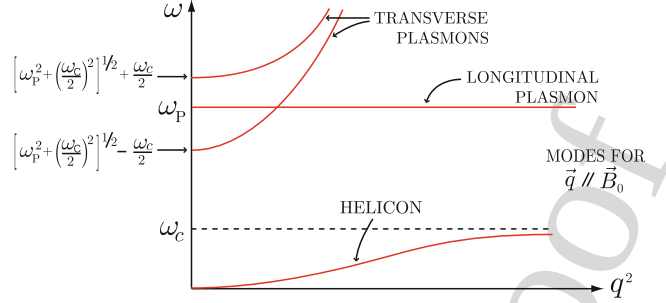


Fig. 14.5. The dispersion curves of magnetoplasma modes in a metal when the wave propagates in the z -direction parallel to the dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}_0$

Because the dielectric constant is independent of $\mathbf{q}$, the secular equation turns out to be rather simple. It is a quadratic equation in q^2

$$\alpha q^4 + \beta q^2 + \gamma = 0, \quad (14.60)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha &= \varepsilon_{xx}(\omega) \sin^2 \theta + \varepsilon_{zz}(\omega) \cos^2 \theta, \\ \beta &= -\omega^2 \{ \varepsilon_{xx}(\omega) \varepsilon_{zz}(\omega) (1 + \cos^2 \theta) + [\varepsilon_{xy}^2(\omega) + \varepsilon_{xx}^2(\omega)] \sin^2 \theta \}, \\ \gamma &= \omega^4 [\varepsilon_{xx}^2(\omega) + \varepsilon_{xy}^2(\omega)] \varepsilon_{zz}. \end{aligned} \quad (14.61)$$

Here, θ is the angle between the direction of propagation and the direction of the dc magnetic field. For $\theta = 0$ (14.60) reduces to

$$\varepsilon_{zz}(\omega) \{ [q^2 - \omega^2 \varepsilon_{xx}(\omega)]^2 + \omega^4 \varepsilon_{xy}^2(\omega) \} = 0. \quad (14.62)$$

The roots can easily be plotted; there are four roots as are shown in Fig. 14.5. The longitudinal plasmon $\omega = \omega_p$ is the solution of $\varepsilon_{zz}(\omega) = 0$. The two transverse plasmons start out at $q = 0$ as $\omega = [\omega_p^2 + (\omega_c/2)^2]^{1/2} \pm \frac{\omega_c}{2}$. At very large q they are just light waves, but there is a difference in the phase velocity for the two different (circular) polarizations. Their difference in phase velocity is responsible for the Faraday effect—the rotation of the plane of polarization in a plane polarized wave. The low frequency mode is the well-known *helicon*. For small values of q it begins as

$$\omega = \frac{\omega_c c^2 q^2}{\omega_p^2}, \quad (14.63)$$

and it asymptotically approaches $\omega = \omega_c$ for large q .

For $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ (14.60) reduces to

$$[q^2 - \omega^2 \varepsilon_{zz}(\omega)] \{ q^2 \varepsilon_{xx}(\omega) - \omega^2 [\varepsilon_{xx}^2(\omega) + \varepsilon_{xy}^2(\omega)] \} = 0. \quad (14.64)$$

The mode corresponding to $q^2 = \omega^2 \varepsilon_{zz}(\omega)$ is a transverse plasmon of frequency $\omega = [\omega_p^2 + c^2 q^2]^{1/2}$. The helicon mode appears no longer. The other

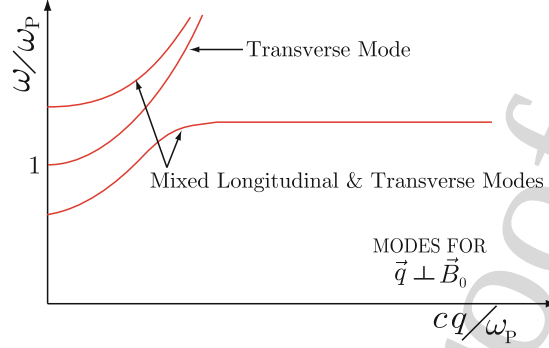


Fig. 14.6. The dispersion curves of magnetoplasma modes in a metal when the wave propagates in the z -direction normal to the dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}_0$

two modes have mixed longitudinal and transverse character. They start at 205

$$\omega = \left[\omega_p^2 + \left(\frac{\omega_c}{2} \right)^2 \right]^{1/2} \pm \frac{\omega_c}{2} \quad (14.65)$$

for $q = 0$. For very large q one mode is nearly transverse and varies as 206
 $\omega \approx cq$ while the other approaches the finite asymptotic limit $\omega = \sqrt{\omega_p^2 + \omega_c^2}$. 207
 The roots of (14.64) are sketched in Fig.14.6. For an arbitrary angle of 208
 propagation¹ the helicon mode has a frequency (we assume $\omega_p \gg \omega_c$) 209

$$\omega \simeq \frac{\omega_c c^2 q^2 \cos \theta}{\omega_p^2 + c^2 q^2} \left(1 + \frac{i}{\omega_c \tau \cos \theta} \right). \quad (14.66)$$

Here, we have included the damping due to collisions. For very large values 210
 of $\frac{cq}{\omega}$, the two finite frequency modes are sometimes referred to as the *hybrid-* 211
magnetoplasma modes. Their frequencies are 212

$$\omega_{\pm}^2 = \frac{1}{2} (\omega_p^2 + \omega_c^2) + \left[\frac{1}{4} (\omega_p^2 + \omega_c^2)^2 - \omega_p^2 \omega_c^2 \cos^2 \theta \right]^{1/2}. \quad (14.67)$$

For propagation at an arbitrary angle we can think of the four modes as 214
 coupled magnetoplasma modes. The $\omega_{\pm}$ modes described above for very large 215
 values of q are obviously the coupled helicon and longitudinal plasmon. 216

14.6 Discussion of the Nonlocal Theory 217

By considering the $\mathbf{q}$ dependence of the conductivity one can find a number 218
 of interesting effects that have been omitted from the local theory (as well as 219
 the quantitative changes in the dispersion relation which are to be expected). 220
 Among them are: 221

¹ M.A. Lampert, J.J. Quinn, S. Tosima, Phys. Rev. **152**, 661 (1966).

1. *Landau Damping and Doppler Shifted Cyclotron Resonance* 222
 Suppose an electromagnetic wave of frequency ω and wave number q prop- 223
 agates inside a metal. To absorb energy from the electromagnetic wave, 224
 the component of the velocity of an electron along the applied dc mag- 225
 netic field must satisfy $n\omega_c + q_z v_z = \omega$ for some integral values of n . 226
 When $n\omega_c - q_z v_F < \omega < n\omega_c + q_z v_F$, there are electrons capable of direct 227
 absorption of energy from the electromagnetic field and we have cyclotron 228
 damping even in the absence of collisions. However, if this condition is 229
 not satisfied, then, for example, when $|\omega - \omega_c| > q_z v_F$, there does not 230
 exist any electron with $v_z = (\omega_c - \omega)/q_z$, which would resonantly absorb 231
 energy from the wave. For $n = 0$, this effect is usually known as *Landau* 232
damping. Then, we have $-q_z v_F < \omega < q_z v_F$ or $-v_F < v_{\text{phase}} < v_F$. It 233
 corresponds to having a phase velocity v_{phase} parallel to $\mathbf{B}_0$ equal to the 234
 velocity of some electrons in the solid, i.e., $-v_F < v_z < v_F$. These electrons 235
 will ride the wave and thus absorb power from it resulting in collision- 236
 less damping of the wave. For $n \neq 0$, the effect is usually called *Doppler* 237
shifted cyclotron resonance, because the effective frequency seen by the 238
 moving electron is $\omega_{\text{eff}} = \omega - q_z v_z$ and it is equal to n times the cyclotron 239
 resonance frequency ω_c . 240
2. *Bernstein Modes or Cyclotron Modes* 241
 These are the modes of vibration in an electron plasma, which occur 242
 only when $\underline{\sigma}$ has a $\mathbf{q}$ -dependence. They are important in plasma physics, 243
 where they are known as *Bernstein modes*. In solid-state physics, they are 244
 known as *nonlocal waves* or *cyclotron waves*. These modes start out at 245
 $\omega = n\omega_c$ for $q = 0$. They propagate perpendicular to the dc magnetic field, 246
 and depend for their existence (even at very long wavelengths) on the $\mathbf{q}$ 247
 dependence of $\underline{\sigma}$. 248
3. *Quantum Waves* 249
 These are waves which arise from the gigantic quantum oscillations in $\underline{\sigma}$. 250
 These quantum effects depend, of course, on the $\mathbf{q}$ dependence of $\underline{\sigma}$. 251

14.7 Cyclotron Waves 252

We will give only one example of the new kind of wave that can occur when 253
the $\mathbf{q}$ dependence of $\underline{\sigma}$ is taken into account. We consider the magnetic field in 254
the z -direction and the wave vector $\mathbf{q}$ in the y -direction. The secular equation 255
for wave propagation is the familiar 256

$$\begin{vmatrix} \varepsilon_{xx} - \xi^2 & \varepsilon_{xy} & 0 \\ -\varepsilon_{xy} & \varepsilon_{yy} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \varepsilon_{zz} - \xi^2 \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (14.68)$$

This secular equation reduces to a 2×2 matrix and a 1×1 matrix. For the polarization with $\mathbf{E}$ parallel to the z -axis we are interested in the 1×1 matrix. The Lorentz force couples the x - y motions giving the 2×2 matrix for the other polarization. For the simple case of the 1×1 matrix we have

$$\frac{c^2 q^2}{\omega^2} = 1 - \frac{4\pi i}{\omega} \sigma_{zz}, \quad (14.69)$$

where, in the collisionless limit (i.e. $\tau \rightarrow \infty$),

$$\sigma_{zz} = \frac{3i\omega_p^2}{4\pi} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{c_n(w)}{1 + \delta_{n0}} \frac{2\omega}{(n\omega_c)^2 - \omega^2} \quad (14.70)$$

with

$$c_n(w) = \int_0^1 d(\cos \theta) \cos^2 \theta J_n^2(w \sin \theta). \quad (14.71)$$

If we let $\frac{\omega}{\omega_c} = a$, we can write

$$\frac{4\pi i}{\omega} \sigma_{zz} = -\frac{6\omega_p^2}{\omega_c^2} \left[\frac{c_0/2}{-a^2} + \frac{c_1}{1-a^2} + \cdots + \frac{c_n}{n^2-a^2} + \cdots \right]. \quad (14.72)$$

Let us look at the long wavelength limit where $\frac{qv_F}{\omega_c} \ll 1$. Remember that for small x

$$J_n(x) = \frac{1}{n!} \left(\frac{x}{2} \right)^n \left[1 - \frac{(x/2)^2}{1 \cdot (n+1)} + \cdots \right]. \quad (14.73)$$

We keep terms to order w^2 . Because $c_n \propto J_n^2$, $c_n \propto w^{2n}$. Therefore, if we retain only terms of order w^2 , we can drop all terms but the first two. Then, we have

$$J_0^2(x) \approx 1 - \frac{x^2}{2} \text{ and } J_1^2(x) \approx \frac{x^2}{4}. \quad (14.74)$$

Substituting (14.74) in c_0 and c_1 yields

$$c_0(w) \approx \int_0^1 d(\cos \theta) \cos^2 \theta \left[1 - \frac{1}{2} w^2 \sin^2 \theta \right] = \frac{1}{3} - \frac{w^2}{15}, \quad (14.75)$$

and for c_1 we find

$$c_1(w) \approx \int_0^1 d(\cos \theta) \cos^2 \theta \frac{w^2}{4} \sin^2 \theta = \frac{w^2}{30}. \quad (14.76)$$

Substituting these results into the secular equation, (14.69), gives

$$\frac{c^2 q^2}{\omega_c^2 a^2} \simeq 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega_c^2 a^2} \left[1 - \frac{w^2/5}{1-a^2} \right]. \quad (14.77)$$

This is a simple quadratic equation in a^2 , where $a = \frac{\omega}{\omega_c}$. The general solution is

$$\omega^2 = \frac{1}{2} (\omega_p^2 + \omega_c^2 + c^2 q^2) \pm \sqrt{\frac{1}{4} (\omega_p^2 + \omega_c^2 + c^2 q^2)^2 - \omega_c^2 \left(\omega_p^2 + c^2 q^2 - \frac{\omega_p^2 w^2}{5} \right)}. \quad (14.78) \quad 275$$

For $q \rightarrow 0$, the two roots are 276

$$\omega^2 = \frac{1}{2} (\omega_p^2 + \omega_c^2) \pm \frac{1}{2} (\omega_p^2 - \omega_c^2) = \begin{cases} \omega_p^2, \\ \omega_c^2. \end{cases} \quad (14.79)$$

If $\omega_p \gg \omega_c$, the lower root can be obtained quite well by setting 277

$$\left[1 - \frac{w^2/5}{1 - a^2} \right] = 0,$$

which gives 278

$$\left(\frac{\omega}{\omega_c} \right)^2 = 1 - \frac{w^2}{5}. \quad (14.80)$$

Actually going back to (14.72) 279

$$\frac{4\pi i}{\omega} \sigma_{zz} = -\frac{6\omega_p^2}{\omega_c^2} \left[\frac{c_0/2}{-a^2} + \frac{c_1}{1 - a^2} + \cdots + \frac{c_n}{n^2 - a^2} + \cdots \right],$$

it is not difficult to see that, for $\omega_p \gg n\omega_c$, there must be a solution at $\omega^2 = n^2\omega_c^2 + O(q^{2n})$. We do this by setting $c_n = \alpha_n w^{2n}$ for $n \geq 1$. If $\omega_p \gg n\omega_c$, then the solutions are given, approximately, by 280
281
282

$$\left[\frac{-c_0/2}{a^2} + \frac{c_1}{1 - a^2} + \cdots + \frac{c_n}{n^2 - a^2} + \cdots \right] \simeq 0.$$

Let us assume a solution of the form $a^2 = n^2 + \Delta$, where $\Delta \ll n$. Then the above equation can be written 283
284

$$\left[\frac{-\frac{1}{3}(1 - \frac{w^2}{5})}{n^2} + \frac{\alpha_1 w^2}{1^2 - n^2} + \cdots + \frac{\alpha_{n-1} w^{2(n-1)}}{(n-1)^2 - n^2} + \frac{\alpha_n w^{2n}}{\Delta} + \cdots \right] \simeq 0.$$

Solving for Δ gives $\Delta \simeq 3n^2 \alpha_n w^{2n}$. Thus, we have a solution of the form 285

$$\left(\frac{\omega}{\omega_c} \right)^2 = n^2 + O(q^{2n}). \quad (14.81) \quad 286$$

14.8 Surface Waves 287

There are many kinds of surface waves in solids—plasmons, magnetoplasma waves, magnons, acoustic phonons, optical phonons etc. In fact, we believe that every bulk wave has associated with it a surface wave. To give some 288
289
290

438 14 Electrodynamics of Metals

feeling for surface waves, we shall consider one simple case; surface plasmons 291
in the absence of a dc magnetic field. 292

We consider a metal of dielectric function ε_1 to fill the space $z > 0$, and an 293
insulator of dielectric constant ε_0 the space $z < 0$. The wave equation which 294
describes propagation in the $y - z$ plane is given by 295

$$\begin{pmatrix} \varepsilon - \xi^2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \varepsilon - \xi_z^2 & \xi_y \xi_z \\ 0 & \xi_y \xi_z & \varepsilon - \xi_y^2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} E_x \\ E_y \\ E_z \end{pmatrix} = 0. \quad (14.82)$$

Here, $\xi = \frac{c\mathbf{q}}{\omega}$ and $\xi^2 = \xi_y^2 + \xi_z^2$. For the dielectric $\varepsilon = \varepsilon_0$, a constant, and we find 296
only two transverse waves of frequency $\omega = \frac{cq}{\sqrt{\varepsilon_0}}$ for the bulk modes. For the 297
metal (to be referred to as medium 1) there are one longitudinal plasmon of 298
frequency $\omega = \omega_p$ and two transverse plasmons of frequency $\omega = \sqrt{\omega_p^2 + c^2 q^2}$ 299

as the bulk modes. Here we are assuming that $\varepsilon_1 = 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2}$ is the dielectric 300
function of the metal. 301

To study the surface waves, we consider ω and q_y to be given real numbers 302
and solve the wave equation for q_z . For the transverse waves in the metal, we 303
have 304

$$q_z^2 = \frac{\omega^2 - \omega_p^2}{c^2} - q_y^2. \quad (14.83)$$

In the insulator, we have 305

$$q_z^2 = \varepsilon_0 \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} - q_y^2. \quad (14.84)$$

The $q_z = 0$ lines are indicated in Fig. 14.7 as solid lines. Notice that in region 306
III of Fig. 14.7, $q_z^2 < 0$ in both the metal and the insulator. This is the region 307
of interest for surface waves excitations, because negative q_z^2 implies that q_z 308
itself is imaginary. Solving for $q_z^{(1)}$ (value of q_z in the metal) and $q_z^{(2)}$ (value of 309
 q_z in the insulator), when ω and q_y are such that we are considering region III, 310
gives 311

$$\begin{aligned} q_z^{(1)} &= \pm i(\omega_p^2 + q_y^2 - \omega^2)^{1/2} = \pm i\alpha_1, \\ q_z^{(0)} &= \pm i(q_y^2 - \varepsilon_0 \omega^2)^{1/2} = \pm i\alpha_0. \end{aligned} \quad (14.85)$$

This defines α_0 and α_1 , which are real and positive. The wave in the metal 312
must be of the form $e^{\pm\alpha_1 z}$ and in the insulator of the form $e^{\pm\alpha_0 z}$. To have 313
solutions well behaved at $z \rightarrow +\infty$ in the metal and $z \rightarrow -\infty$ in the insulator 314
we must choose the wave of the proper sign. Doing so gives 315

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{E}^{(1)}(\mathbf{r}, t) &= \mathbf{E}^{(1)} e^{i\omega t - i q_y y - \alpha_1 z}, \\ \mathbf{E}^{(0)}(\mathbf{r}, t) &= \mathbf{E}^{(0)} e^{i\omega t - i q_y y + \alpha_0 z}. \end{aligned} \quad (14.86)$$

The superscripts 1 and 0 refer, respectively, to the metal and dielectric. The 316
boundary conditions at the plane $z = 0$ are the standard ones of continuity 317

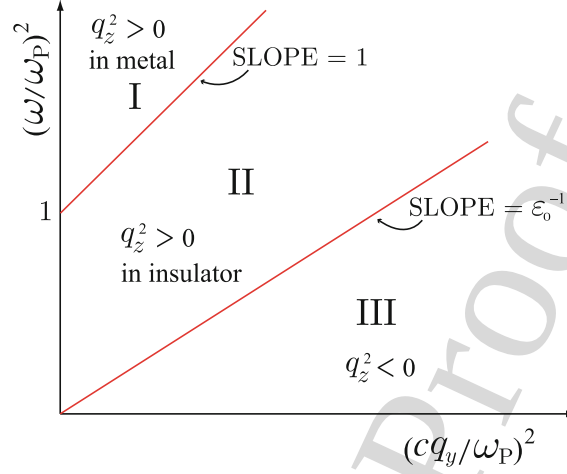


Fig. 14.7. The $\omega^2 - q_y^2$ plane for the waves near the interface of a metal and an insulator at $z = 0$. The solid lines show the region where $q_z = 0$ in the solid (line separating regions I and II) and in the dielectric (line separating II and III). In region III $q_z^2 < 0$ in both media, therefore excitations in this region are localized at the surface

of the tangential components of $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{H}$, and of the normal components of $\mathbf{D}$ and $\mathbf{B}$. By applying the boundary conditions (remembering that $\mathbf{B} = i\frac{c}{\omega}\nabla \times \mathbf{E} = \frac{c}{\omega}(q_y E_z - q_z E_y, q_z E_x, -q_y E_x)$ we find that

1. For the independent polarization with $E_y = E_z = 0$, but $E_x \neq 0$ there are no solutions in region III.
2. For the polarization with $E_x = 0$, but $E_y \neq 0 \neq E_z$, there is a dispersion relation

$$\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\alpha_1} + \frac{\varepsilon_0}{\alpha_0} = 0. \quad (14.87)$$

If we substitute for α_0 and α_1 , (14.87) becomes

$$c^2 q_y^2 = \frac{\omega^2 \varepsilon_0 \varepsilon_1(\omega)}{\varepsilon_0 + \varepsilon_1(\omega)} = \frac{\varepsilon_0 \omega^2 (\omega_p^2 - \omega^2) [\omega^2 (\varepsilon_0 - 1) + \omega_p^2]}{(\omega_p^2 - \omega^2)^2 - \omega^4 \varepsilon_0^2}. \quad (14.88)$$

For very large q_y the root is approximately given by the zero of the denominator, viz $\omega = \frac{\omega_p}{\sqrt{1 + \varepsilon_0}}$. For small values of q_y it goes as $\omega = \frac{c}{\sqrt{\varepsilon_0}} q_y$. Figure 14.8 shows the dispersion curve of the surface plasmon.

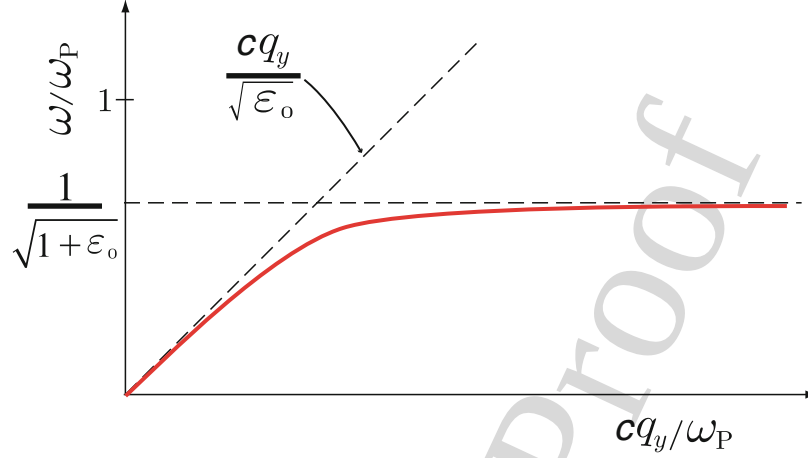


Fig. 14.8. Dispersion relation of surface plasmon

14.9 Magnetoplasma Surface Waves

331

In the presence of a dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}_0$ oriented at an arbitrary angle to the surface, the problem of surface plasma waves becomes much more complicated.² We will discuss only the nonretarded limit of $cq \gg \omega$.

Let the metal or semiconductor be described by a dielectric function

332
333
334
335

$$\varepsilon_{ij}(\omega) = \varepsilon_L \delta_{ij} - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2(\omega^2 - \omega_c^2)} [\omega^2 \delta_{ij} - \omega_{c_i} \omega_{c_j} - i \omega \omega_{c_k} \epsilon_{ijk}], \quad (14.89)$$

where ε_L is the background dielectric constant, $\omega_c = \frac{eB_0}{mc}$, $\omega_{c_x} = \frac{eB_0 x}{mc}$, and $\epsilon_{ijk} = +1(-1)$ if ijk is an even (odd) permutation of 123, and zero otherwise. Let the insulator have dielectric constant ε' . The wave equation is given by

336

337

338

$$\begin{pmatrix} \varepsilon_{xx} - q^2/\omega^2 & \varepsilon_{xy} & \varepsilon_{xz} \\ \varepsilon_{yx} & \varepsilon_{yy} - q_z^2/\omega^2 & \varepsilon_{yz} + q_y q_z/\omega^2 \\ \varepsilon_{zx} & \varepsilon_{zy} + q_y q_z/\omega^2 & \varepsilon_{zz} - q_y^2/\omega^2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} E_x \\ E_y \\ E_z \end{pmatrix} = 0. \quad (14.90)$$

In the nonretarded limit ($cq \gg \omega$) the off-diagonal elements ε_{xy} , ε_{yx} , ε_{xz} , ε_{zx} can be neglected and (14.90) can be approximated (we put $c = 1$) by

339

340

$$(q^2 - \omega^2 \varepsilon_{xx}) [\varepsilon_{zz} q_z^2 + \varepsilon_{yy} q_y^2 + (\varepsilon_{yz} + \varepsilon_{zy}) q_y q_z] \approx 0. \quad (14.91)$$

The surface magneto-plasmon solution arises from the second factor. Solving for q_z in the metal we find

341

342

² A summary of magnetoplasma surface wave results in semiconductors is reviewed by Quinn and Chiu in *Polaritons*, edited by E. Bernstein, F. DeMartini, Pergamon, New York (1971), p. 259.

$$\frac{q_z^{(1)}}{q_y} = -i\sqrt{\frac{\varepsilon_{yy}}{\varepsilon_{zz}} - \left(\frac{\varepsilon_{yz} + \varepsilon_{zy}}{2\varepsilon_{zz}}\right)^2} - \frac{\varepsilon_{yz} + \varepsilon_{zy}}{2\varepsilon_{zz}}. \quad (14.92) \quad 343$$

The superscript 1 refers to the metal. In the dielectric (superscript 0) $q_z^{(0)} = 344$
 $+iq_y$. The eigenvectors are 345

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{E}^{(1)}(\mathbf{r}, t) &\simeq \left(0, E_y^{(1)}, -\frac{E_y^{(1)} q_z^{(1)}}{q_y}\right) e^{i\omega t - iq_y y - iq_z^{(1)} z}, \\ \mathbf{B}^{(1)}(\mathbf{r}, t) &\simeq \frac{c}{\omega} \left(q_y E_z^{(1)} - q_z^{(1)} E_y^{(1)}, 0, 0\right) e^{i\omega t - iq_y y - iq_z^{(1)} z} \approx 0, \quad (14.93) \\ \mathbf{E}^{(0)}(\mathbf{r}, t) &\simeq \left(0, E_y^{(0)}, -\frac{E_y^{(0)} q_z^{(0)}}{q_y}\right) e^{i\omega t - iq_y y - iq_z^{(0)} z}, \\ \mathbf{B}^{(0)}(\mathbf{r}, t) &\simeq \frac{c}{\omega} \left(q_y E_z^{(0)} - q_z^{(0)} E_y^{(0)}, 0, 0\right) e^{i\omega t - iq_y y - iq_z^{(0)} z} \approx 0. \end{aligned}$$

The dispersion relation obtained from the standard boundary conditions is 346

$$+i\varepsilon' = \frac{q_z^{(1)}}{q_y} \varepsilon_{zz} + \varepsilon_{zy}. \quad (14.94)$$

With $\varepsilon_L = \varepsilon'$, (14.94) simplifies to 347

$$\omega^2 - \omega_c^2 + (\omega \pm \omega_{cx})^2 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\varepsilon_L} = 0, \quad (14.95)$$

where the $\pm$ signs correspond to propagation in the $\pm y$ -directions, respec- 348
 tively. For the case $\mathbf{B}_0 = 0$, this gives $\omega = \frac{\omega_p}{\sqrt{2\varepsilon_L}}$. For $\mathbf{B}_0 \perp \mathbf{x}$, we 349
 have 350

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{\omega_c^2 + \omega_p^2/\varepsilon_L}{2}},$$

and with $\mathbf{B}_0 \parallel \mathbf{x}$ we obtain 351

$$\omega = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\omega_c^2 + \frac{2\omega_p^2}{\varepsilon_L}} \mp \frac{\omega_c}{2},$$

where the two roots correspond to propagations in the $\pm y$ -directions, respec- 352
 tively. 353

14.10 Propagation of Acoustic Waves 354

Now, we will try to give a very brief summary of propagation of acoustic waves 355
 in metals. Our discussion will be based on a very simple model introduced by 356
 Quinn and Rodriguez.³ The model treats the ions completely classically. The 357
 metal is considered to consist of 358

³ J.J. Quinn, S. Rodriguez, Phys. Rev. **128**, 2487 (1962).

1. A lattice (Bravais lattice for simplicity) of positive ions of mass M and charge ze . 359 360
2. An electron gas with n_0 electrons per unit volume. 361
3. In addition to electromagnetic forces, there are short range forces between the ions which we represent by two ‘unrenormalized’ elastic constants C_ℓ and C_t . 362 363 364
4. The electrons encounter impurities and defects, and have a collision time τ associated with their motion. 365 366

First, let us investigate the classical equation of motion of the lattice. Let $\xi(\mathbf{r}, t)$ be the displacement field of the ions. Then we have 367 368

$$M \frac{\partial^2 \xi}{\partial t^2} = C_\ell \nabla(\nabla \cdot \xi) - C_t \nabla \times (\nabla \times \xi) + ze\mathbf{E} + \frac{ze}{c} \dot{\xi} \times (\mathbf{B}_0 + \mathbf{B}) + \mathbf{F}. \quad (14.96)$$

The forces appearing on the right hand side of (14.96) are 369

1. The short range “elastic” forces (the first two terms). 370
2. The Coulomb interaction of the charge ze with the self-consistent electric field produced by the ionic motion (the third term). 371 372
3. The Lorentz force on the moving ion in the presence of the dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B}_0$ and the self-consistent ac field $\mathbf{B}$. The term $\frac{ze}{c} \dot{\xi} \times \mathbf{B}$ is always very small compared to $ze\mathbf{E}$, and we shall neglect it (the fourth term). 373 374 375
4. The *collision drag* force $\mathbf{F}$ exerted by the electrons on the ions (the last term). 376 377

The force $\mathbf{F}$ results from the fact that in a collision with the lattice, the electron motion is randomized, not in the laboratory frame of reference, but in a frame of reference moving with the local ionic velocity. Picture the collisions as shown in Fig. 14.9. Here, $\langle \mathbf{v} \rangle$ is the average electron velocity (at point $\mathbf{r}$ where the impurity is located) just before collision. Just after collision $\langle \mathbf{v} \rangle_{\text{final}} \approx 0$ in the moving system, or $\langle \mathbf{v} \rangle_{\text{final}} \approx \dot{\xi}$ in the laboratory. Thus the momentum 378 379 380 381 382 383

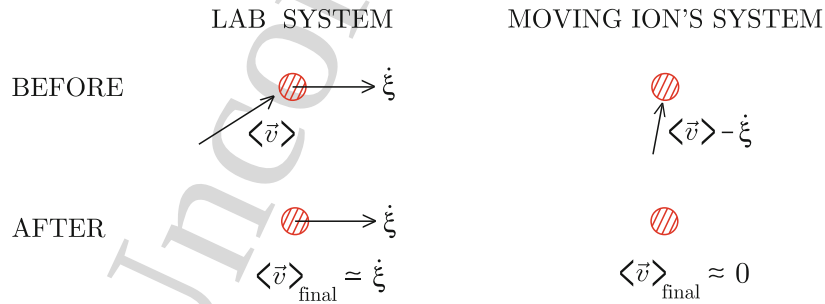


Fig. 14.9. Schematic of electron–impurity collision in the laboratory frame and in the coordinate system moving with the local ionic velocity. In the latter system a typical electron has velocity $\langle v \rangle - \dot{\xi}$ before collision and zero afterward. In the lab system, the corresponding velocities are $\langle v \rangle$ before collision and $\dot{\xi}$ afterwards

14.10 Propagation of Acoustic Waves 443

imparted to the positive ion must be $\Delta \mathbf{p} = m(\langle \mathbf{v} \rangle - \dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}})$. This momentum is 384
 imparted to the lattice per electron collision; since there are z electrons per 385
 atom and $\frac{1}{\tau}$ collisions per second for each electron, it is apparent that 386

$$\mathbf{F} = \frac{z}{\tau} m(\langle \mathbf{v} \rangle - \dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}}). \quad (14.97)$$

We can use the fact that the electronic current $\mathbf{j}_e(\mathbf{r}) = -n_0 e \langle \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \rangle$ to write 387

$$\mathbf{F} = -\frac{zm}{n_0 e \tau} (\mathbf{j}_e + n_0 e \dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}}). \quad (14.98)$$

But the ionic current density is $\mathbf{j}_I = n_0 e \dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}}$ so that 388

$$\mathbf{F} = -\frac{zm}{n_0 e \tau} (\mathbf{j}_e + \mathbf{j}_I). \quad (14.99)$$

The self-consistent electric field $\mathbf{E}$ appearing in the equation of motion, 389
 (14.96), is determined from the Maxwell equations, which can be written 390

$$\mathbf{j}_T = \Gamma(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \mathbf{E}. \quad (14.100)$$

Let us consider $\mathbf{j}_T$. It consists of the ionic current $\mathbf{j}_I$, the electronic current $\mathbf{j}_e$, 391
 and any external driving current $\mathbf{j}_0$. For considering the normal modes of the 392
 system (and the acoustic waves are normal modes) we set the external driving 393
 current $\mathbf{j}_0$ equal to zero and look for self-sustaining modes. Perhaps, if we have 394
 time, we can discuss the theory of direct electromagnetic generation of acoustic 395
 waves; in that case $\mathbf{j}_0$ is a “fictitious surface current” introduced to satisfy the 396
 boundary conditions in a finite solid (quite similar to the discussion given in 397
 our treatment of the Azbel–Kaner effect.). For the present, we consider the 398
 normal modes of an infinite medium. In that case, $\mathbf{j}_0 = 0$ so that $\mathbf{j}_T = \mathbf{j}_I + \mathbf{j}_e$. 399
 The electronic current would be simply $\mathbf{j}_e = \sigma \cdot \mathbf{E}$ except for the effect of 400
 “collision drag” and diffusion. These two currents arise from the fact that the 401
 correct collision term in the Boltzmann equation must be 402

$$\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} \right)_c = -\frac{f - \bar{f}_0}{\tau}, \quad (14.101)$$

where $\bar{f}_0$ differs from the overall equilibrium distribution function f_0 in two 403
 respects: 404

1. $\bar{f}_0$ depends on the electron kinetic energy measured in the coordinates 405
 system of the moving lattice. 406
2. The chemical potential ζ appearing in $\bar{f}_0$ is not ζ_0 , the actual chemi- 407
 cal potential of the solid, but a local chemical potential $\zeta(\mathbf{r}, t)$ which is 408
 determined by the condition 409

$$\int d^3k [f - \bar{f}_0] = 0, \quad (14.102)$$

i.e., the local equilibrium density at point $\mathbf{r}$ must be the same as the 410
 nonequilibrium density. 411

444 14 Electrodynamics of Metals

We can expand $\bar{f}_0$ as follows:

412

$$\bar{f}_0(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{r}, t) = f_0(\mathbf{k}) + \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial \varepsilon} \left\{ -m\mathbf{v}_k \cdot \dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}} + \zeta_1(\mathbf{r}, t) \right\}, \quad (14.103)$$

where $\zeta_1(\mathbf{r}, t) = \zeta(\mathbf{r}, t) - \zeta_0$. Because of these two changes, instead of $\mathbf{j}_e = \underline{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{E}$,
we have

413
414

$$\mathbf{j}_e(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \left[\mathbf{E} - \frac{m\dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}}}{e\tau} \right] + e\underline{\mathbf{D}} \cdot \nabla n, \quad (14.104)$$

where

415

$$\underline{\mathbf{D}} = \frac{\underline{\sigma}}{e^2 g(\zeta_0)(1 + i\omega\tau)} \quad (14.105)$$

is the *diffusion tensor*. In (14.105), $g(\zeta_0)$ is the density of states at the Fermi
surface and $n(\mathbf{r}, t) = n_0 + n_1(\mathbf{r}, t)$ is the electron density at point $(\mathbf{r}, t)$. The
electron density is determined from the distribution function f , which must be
solved for. However, at all but the very highest ultrasonic frequencies, $n(\mathbf{r}, t)$
can be determined accurately from the condition of charge neutrality.

420

$$\rho_e(\mathbf{r}, t) + \rho_I(\mathbf{r}, t) = 0, \quad (14.106)$$

where $\rho_e(\mathbf{r}, t) = -en_1(\mathbf{r}, t)$ and ρ_I can be determined from the equation of
continuity $i\omega\rho_I - i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{j}_I = 0$. Using these results, we find

421
422

$$\mathbf{j}_e(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \left[\mathbf{E} - \frac{i\omega m}{e\tau} \boldsymbol{\xi} + \frac{n_0}{eg(\zeta_0)(1 + i\omega\tau)} \mathbf{q}(\mathbf{q} \cdot \boldsymbol{\xi}) \right]. \quad (14.107)$$

If we define a tensor $\underline{\Delta}$ by

423

$$\underline{\Delta} = \frac{n_0 e i \omega}{\sigma_0} \left\{ \underline{\mathbf{1}} - \frac{1}{3} \frac{q^2 l^2}{i\omega\tau(1 + i\omega\tau)} \hat{\mathbf{q}}\hat{\mathbf{q}} \right\}, \quad (14.108)$$

where $\hat{\mathbf{q}} = \frac{\mathbf{q}}{|\mathbf{q}|}$, we can write

424

$$\mathbf{j}_e(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = \underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) - \underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \underline{\Delta}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \boldsymbol{\xi}(\mathbf{q}, \omega). \quad (14.109)$$

We can substitute (14.109) into the relation $\mathbf{j}_e + \mathbf{j}_I = \underline{\Gamma} \cdot \mathbf{E}$, and solve for the
self-consistent field $\mathbf{E}$ to obtain

425
426

$$\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = [\underline{\Gamma} - \underline{\sigma}]^{-1} (i\omega n e \underline{\mathbf{1}} - \underline{\sigma} \cdot \underline{\Delta}) \cdot \boldsymbol{\xi}. \quad (14.110)$$

Knowing $\mathbf{E}$, we also know $\mathbf{j}_e$ and hence $\mathbf{F}$, (14.98) in terms of the ionic dis-
placement $\boldsymbol{\xi}$. Thus, every term on the right-hand side of (14.96), the equation
of motion of the ions can be expressed in terms of $\boldsymbol{\xi}$. The equation of motion
is thus of the form

427
428
429
430

$$\underline{\mathbf{T}}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \boldsymbol{\xi}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = 0, \quad (14.111) \quad 431$$

where $\underline{\mathbf{T}}$ is a very complicated tensor. The nontrivial solutions are determined from the secular equation

$$\det |\underline{\mathbf{T}}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)| = 0. \quad (14.112)$$

The roots of this secular equation give the frequencies of the sound waves (two transverse and one longitudinal modes) as a function of $\mathbf{q}$, $\mathbf{B}_0$, τ , etc. Actually the solutions $\omega(\mathbf{q})$ have both a real and imaginary parts; the real part determines the velocity of sound and the imaginary part the attenuation of the wave.

Here, we do not go through the details of the calculation outlined earlier. We will discuss special cases and attempt to give a qualitative feeling for the kinds of effects one can observe.

14.10.1 Propagation Parallel to $\mathbf{B}_0$

For propagation parallel to the dc magnetic field, it is convenient to introduce circularly polarized transverse waves with

$$\begin{aligned} \xi_{\pm} &= \xi_x \pm i\xi_y, \\ \sigma_{\pm} &= \sigma_{xx} \mp i\sigma_{xy}. \end{aligned} \quad (14.113)$$

We also introduce the parameter $\beta = \frac{e^2 q^2}{4\pi\omega\sigma_0} = \frac{c^2 q^2}{\omega_p^2 \omega \tau}$. Then the nonvanishing components of $\underline{\mathbf{T}}$ are $\Gamma_{xx} = \Gamma_{yy} = i\beta\sigma_0$ and $\Gamma_{zz} = -\frac{i\omega}{4\pi}$. Define the resistivity tensor $\underline{\mathbf{R}}$ by

$$\underline{\mathbf{R}} = \underline{\sigma}^{-1}. \quad (14.114)$$

Then $R_{\pm} = \sigma_{\pm}^{-1}$ and $R_{zz} = \sigma_{zz}^{-1}$. The secular equation $|\underline{\mathbf{T}}| = 0$ reduces to two simple equations:

$$\omega_{\pm}^2 = s_t^2 q^2 \mp \frac{ze\omega B_0}{Mc} + \frac{zmi\omega}{M\tau} \frac{(1 - i\beta)(\sigma_0 R_{\pm} - 1)}{1 - i\beta\sigma_0 R_{\pm}} \quad (14.115)$$

for the circularly polarized transverse waves, and

$$\omega^2 = s_l^2 q^2 + \frac{zmi\omega}{M\tau} \left(\sigma_0 R_{xx} - 1 - \frac{q^2 l^2 / 3}{1 + \omega^2 \tau^2} \right). \quad (14.116)$$

for the longitudinal waves. In (14.115) and (14.116), s_t and s_l are the speeds of transverse and longitudinal acoustic waves given, respectively, by

$$s_t = \sqrt{\frac{C_t}{M}} \text{ and } s_l = \sqrt{\frac{zm}{3M} \frac{v_F^2}{1 + \omega^2 \tau^2} + \frac{C_l}{M}}. \quad (14.117)$$

From these results, we observe that

1. ω has both real and imaginary parts. The real part gives the frequency and hence velocity as a function of B_0 . The imaginary part gives the acoustic attenuation as a function of ql , $\omega_c \tau$, B_0 , etc.

2. For longitudinal waves, if we use the semiclassical result for σ_{zz} , ω is completely independent of B_0 .
3. In the case where the quantum mechanical result for σ_{zz} is used, both the velocity and attenuation display quantum oscillations of the de Haas van Alphen type.
4. For shear waves, the right and left circular polarizations have slightly different velocity and attenuation. This leads to a rotation of the plane of polarization of a linearly polarized wave. This is the *acoustic analogue of the Faraday effect*.
5. $R_{\pm}$ does depend on the magnetic field, and the acoustic wave shows a fairly abrupt increase in attenuation as the magnetic field is lowered below $\omega_c = qv_F$. This effect is called *Doppler shifted cyclotron resonances; DSCR*.
6. The helicon wave solution actually appears in (14.115), so that the equation for $\omega_{\pm}$ actually describes *helicon-phonon coupling*.

14.10.2 Helicon-Phonon Interaction

Look at (14.115), the dispersion relation of the circularly polarized shear waves propagating parallel to $\mathbf{B}_0$:

$$\omega_{\pm}^2 = s_t^2 q^2 \mp \frac{ze\omega B_0}{Mc} + \frac{zmi\omega}{M\tau} \frac{(1-i\beta)(\sigma_0 R_{\pm} - 1)}{1-i\beta\sigma_0 R_{\pm}}. \quad (14.118)$$

In the local limit, where $\underline{\sigma}$ is shown in (13.116) and (13.117), we have

$$\sigma_0 R_{\pm} \simeq 1 + i\omega\tau \mp i\omega_c\tau. \quad (14.119)$$

Remember that $\beta \simeq \frac{c^2 q^2}{\omega\tau\omega_p^2}$. Therefore, $1 - i\beta\sigma_0 R_{\pm}$ can be written

$$1 - i\beta\sigma_0 R_{\pm} \simeq 1 - i\frac{c^2 q^2}{\omega\tau\omega_p^2} [1 + i\omega\tau \mp i\omega_c\tau]. \quad (14.120)$$

Let us assume $\omega_c\tau \gg 1$, $\omega_c \gg \omega$, and $\beta \ll 1$. Then, we can write that

$$1 - i\beta\sigma_0 R_{\pm} \approx 1 \mp \frac{\omega_H}{\omega}, \quad (14.121)$$

where $\omega_H = \frac{\omega_c c^2 q^2}{\omega_p^2} \left(1 - \frac{i}{\omega_c\tau}\right)$ is the *helicon frequency*. Substituting this in (14.118) gives

$$\omega_{\pm}^2 - s_t^2 q^2 \simeq \mp \omega\Omega_c \pm \frac{\Omega_c \omega^2}{\omega \mp \omega_H}, \quad (14.122)$$

where $\Omega_c = \frac{zeB_0}{Mc}$ is the ionic cyclotron frequency. Equation (14.122) can be rewritten as

$$(\omega - s_t q)(\omega + s_t q)(\omega \mp \omega_H) \simeq \omega\omega_H\Omega_c. \quad (14.123)$$

The dispersion curves are illustrated in Fig. 14.10. The helicon and transverse sound wave of the same polarization are strongly coupled by the term on the right-hand side of (14.123), when their phase velocities are almost equal. The solid lines depict the coupled helicon-phonon modes.

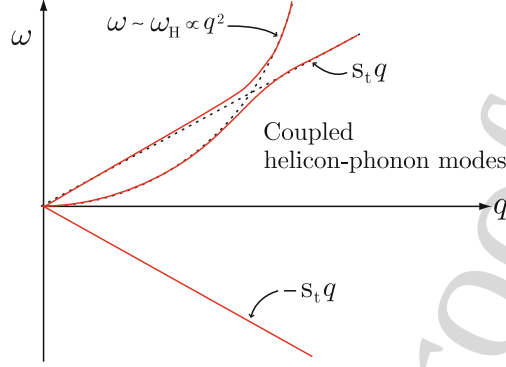


Fig. 14.10. Schematic of the roots of Eq.(14.123). The region of strongly coupled helicon-phonon modes for circularly polarized acoustic shear waves

14.10.3 Propagation Perpendicular to B_0

486

For propagation to the dc magnetic field, the resistivity tensor has the following nonvanishing elements:

488

$$\begin{aligned} R_{xx} &= \frac{\sigma_{yy}}{\sigma_{xx}\sigma_{yy} + \sigma_{xy}^2}, R_{yy} = \frac{\sigma_{xx}}{\sigma_{xx}\sigma_{yy} + \sigma_{xy}^2}, \\ R_{xy} &= -R_{yx} = \frac{\sigma_{xy}}{\sigma_{xx}\sigma_{yy} + \sigma_{xy}^2}, R_{zz} = \sigma_{zz}^{-1}. \end{aligned} \quad (14.124)$$

The secular equation $|\underline{\mathbf{T}}| = 0$ again reduces to a 2×2 matrix and a 1×1 matrix, which can be written

490

$$\begin{pmatrix} \omega^2 - A_{xx} & -A_{xy} \\ -A_{yx} & \omega^2 - A_{yy} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \xi_x \\ \xi_y \end{pmatrix} = 0 \quad (14.125)$$

and

491

$$(\omega^2 - A_{zz}) \xi_z = 0, \quad (14.126)$$

where

492

$$\begin{aligned} A_{xx} &= \frac{C_t}{M} q^2 + \frac{zmi\omega}{M\tau} \frac{(1-i\beta)(\sigma_0 R_{xx} - 1)}{1-i\beta\sigma_0 R_{xx}}, \\ A_{yy} &= \frac{C_\ell}{M} q^2 + \frac{zmq^2 v_F^2}{3M(1+\omega^2\tau^2)} \\ &\quad + \frac{zmi\omega}{M\tau} \left\{ \sigma_0 R_{yy} - 1 - \frac{i\beta\sigma_0^2 R_{xy}^2}{1-i\beta\sigma_0 R_{xx}} - \frac{q^2 l^2}{3(1+\omega^2\tau^2)} \right\}, \\ A_{xy} &= -A_{yx} = \frac{zmi\omega}{M\tau} \left\{ \frac{(1-i\beta)\sigma_0 R_{xy}}{1-i\beta\sigma_0 R_{xx}} - \omega_c \tau \right\}, \\ A_{zz} &= \frac{C_t}{M} q^2 + \frac{zmi\omega}{M\tau} \frac{(1-i\beta)(\sigma_0 R_{zz} - 1)}{1-i\beta\sigma_0 R_{zz}}. \end{aligned} \quad (14.127)$$

The velocity and attenuation of sound can display several different types of oscillatory behavior as a function of applied magnetic field. Here we mention very briefly each of them.

1. *Cyclotron resonances* When $\omega = n\omega_c$, for propagation perpendicular to $\mathbf{B}_0$, the components of the conductivity tensor become very large. This gives rise to absorption peaks.
2. *de Haas-van Alphen type oscillations* Because the conductivity involves sums $\sum_{n,k_y,s}$ over quantum mechanical energy levels, as is shown in (13.81), the components of the conductivity tensor display de Haas-van Alphen type oscillations exactly as the magnetization, free energy, etc. One small difference is that instead of being associated with extremal orbits $\bar{v}_z = 0$, these oscillations in acoustic attenuation are associated with orbits for which $\bar{v}_z = s$.
3. *Geometric resonances* Due to the matrix elements $\langle \nu' | e^{i\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{r}} | \nu \rangle$ which behave like Bessel function in the semiclassical limit, we find oscillations associated with $J_{n'-n}(q_\perp v_F / \omega_c)$ for propagation perpendicular to $\mathbf{B}_0$. The physical origin is associated with matching the cyclotron orbit diameter to multiples of the acoustic wavelength. Figure 14.11 shows the schematic of geometric resonances.
4. *Giant quantum oscillations* These result from the quantum nature of the energy levels together with “resonance” due to vanishing of the energy denominator in $\underline{\sigma}$. The physical picture and feeling for the “giant” nature of the oscillations can easily be obtained from consideration of
 - (a) Energy conservation and momentum conservation in the transition $E_n(k_z) + \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}} \longrightarrow E_{n'}(k_z + q_z)$.
 - (b) The Pauli exclusion principle.

Suppose that we had a uniform field $\mathbf{B}_0$ parallel to the z -axis. Then, with usual choice of gauge, our states are $|nk_y k_z\rangle$, with energies given by

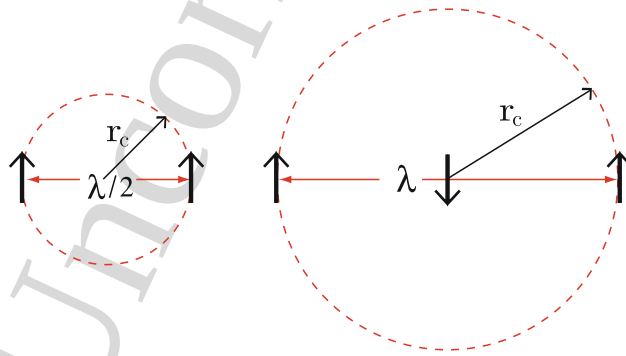


Fig. 14.11. Schematic of the origin of the geometric resonances in ultrasonic attenuation

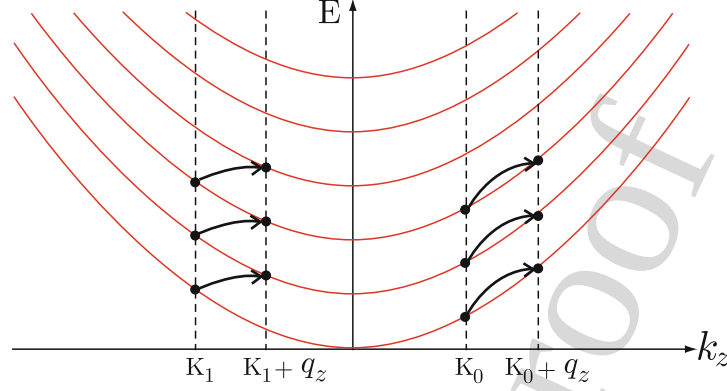


Fig. 14.12. Schematic of the transitions giving rise to giant quantum oscillations

$$E_n(k_z) = \hbar\omega_c \left(n + \frac{1}{2} \right) + \frac{\hbar^2 k_z^2}{2m}. \quad (14.128)$$

Now, we can do spectroscopy with these electrons, and have them absorb 521
radiation. Thus, suppose that an electron absorbs a phonon of energy $\hbar\omega$ and 522
momentum $\hbar q_z$. Then, energy conservation gives 523

$$E_{n'}(k_z + q_z) - E_n(k_z) = \hbar\omega_{q_z}. \quad (14.129)$$

Thus, only electrons with k_z given, with $\alpha = n' - n$, by 524

$$k_z = \frac{m}{\hbar q_z} (\omega \mp \alpha\omega_c) + \frac{q_z}{2} \quad (14.130)$$

will undergo transitions between different Landau levels. Let us call this value 525
of k_z the parameter K_α . Then only electrons with $k_z = K_\alpha$ can make the 526
transition $(n, k_z) \rightarrow (n + \alpha, k_z + q_z)$ and absorb energy $\hbar\omega$. Figure 14.12 527
shows a schematic picture of the transitions giving rise to giant quantum 528
oscillations. 529

To satisfy the exclusion principle $E_n(k_z) < \zeta$ and $E_{n+\alpha}(k_z + q_z) = 530$
 $E_n(k_z) + \hbar\omega > \zeta$. For $\omega_c \gg \omega$ this occurs only when the initial and final states 531
are right at the Fermi surface. Then the absorption is “gigantic”; otherwise it 532
is zero. The velocity as well as the attenuation displays these quantum oscil- 533
lations. The oscillations, in principle, are infinitely sharp, but actually they 534
are broadened out due to the fact that the Landau levels themselves are not 535
perfectly sharp, and various other things. However, the oscillations are actu- 536
ally quite sharp, and so the amplitudes are much larger than the widths of 537
absorption peaks. 538

Problems

539

14.1. Evaluate $\underline{\sigma}$ given, for zero temperature, by

540

$$\underline{\sigma}(q, \omega) = \frac{\omega_p^2}{4\pi i \omega} \{ \underline{1} + \underline{I}(q, \omega) \},$$

where

541

$$\underline{I}(q, \omega) = \frac{m}{N} \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} \frac{f_0(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}'}) - f_0(\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}})}{\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}'} - \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} - \hbar\omega} \langle \mathbf{k}' | \mathbf{V}_q | \mathbf{k} \rangle \langle \mathbf{k}' | \mathbf{V}_q | \mathbf{k} \rangle^*,$$

and use it to determine $E(y)$ and $\mathcal{Z}$. This is the problem of the anomalous skin effect, with the specular reflection boundary condition, in the absence of a dc magnetic field.

544

14.2. Derive the result for a helicon wave in a metal propagating at an angle θ to the direction of the applied magnetic field along the z -axis.

545

546

$$\omega \simeq \frac{\omega_c c^2 q^2 \cos \theta}{\omega_p^2 + c^2 q^2} \left(1 + \frac{i}{\omega_c \tau \cos \theta} \right).$$

One may assume that $\omega_p \gg \omega_c$.

547

14.3. Investigate the case of helicon–plasmon coupling in a degenerate semiconductor in which ω_p and ω_c are of the same order-of-magnitude. Take $\omega_c \tau \gg 1$, but let the angle θ and $\omega \tau$ be arbitrary. Study ω as a function of B_0 , the applied magnetic field.

548

549

550

551

14.4. Evaluate σ_{xx} , σ_{xy} , and σ_{yy} from the Cohen–Harrison–Harrison result for propagatin perpendicular to $\mathbf{B}_0$ in the limit that $w = qv_F/\omega_c \ll 1$. Calculate to order w^2 . See if any modes exist (at cyclotron harmonics) for the wave equation $\xi^2 = \varepsilon_{xx} + \frac{\varepsilon_{xy}^2}{\varepsilon_{yy}}$ where $\xi = cq/\omega$.

552

553

554

555

14.5. Consider a semi-infinite metal of dielectric function ε_1 to fill the space $z > 0$, and an insulator of dielectric constant ε_0 in the space $z < 0$.

556

557

1. Show that the dispersion relation of the surface plasmon for the polarization with $E_x = 0$ and $E_y \neq 0 \neq E_z$ is written by

558

559

$$\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\alpha_1} + \frac{\varepsilon_0}{\alpha_0} = 0,$$

where α_0 and α_1 are the decay constants in the insulator and metal, respectively.

560

561

2. Sketch $\frac{\omega}{\omega_p}$ as a function of $\frac{cq_y}{\omega_p}$ for the surface plasmon excitation.

562

14.6. Assume a vacuum–metal interface at $z = 0$ ($z < 0$ is vacuum), and let the electric charge density ρ appearing in Maxwell’s equations vanish both inside and outside the metal. (This does not preclude a surface charge density concentrated in the plane $z = 0$.)

563

564

565

566

14.10 Propagation of Acoustic Waves 451

1. Solve the wave equation in both vacuum and solid by assuming 567

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{E}_v(\mathbf{r}, t) &= \mathbf{E}_v e^{i\omega t - i q_y y + \alpha_v z}, \\ \mathbf{E}_m(\mathbf{r}, t) &= \mathbf{E}_m e^{i\omega t - i q_y y - \alpha_m z},\end{aligned}$$

where q and ω are given and α_v and α_m must be determined. 568

2. Apply the usual boundary conditions at $z = 0$ to determine the dispersion 569
relation (ω vs. q) for surface waves. 570

3. Sketch ω^2 as a function of $q^2 c^2$ assuming $\omega \tau \gg 1$. 571

Summary

572

In this chapter, we study electromagnetic behavior of waves in metals. The linear response theory and Maxwell's equations are combined to obtain the condition of self-sustaining oscillations in metals. Both normal skin effect and Azbel–Kaner cyclotron resonance are discussed, and dispersion relations of plasmon modes and magnetoplasma modes are illustrated. Nonlocal effects in the wave dispersions are also pointed out, and behavior of cyclotron waves is considered as an example of the nonlocal behavior of the modes. General dispersion relation of the surface waves in the metal–insulator interface is derived by imposing standard boundary conditions, and the magnetoplasma surface waves are illustrated. Finally, we briefly discussed propagation of acoustic waves in metals.

The wave equation in metals, in the present of the total current $\mathbf{j}_T$ ($= \mathbf{j}_0 + \mathbf{j}_{\text{ind}}$), is written as

$$\mathbf{j}_T = \underline{\Gamma} \cdot \mathbf{E},$$

where $\underline{\Gamma} = \frac{i\omega}{4\pi} \{(\xi^2 - 1)\mathbf{1} - \xi\xi\}$. Here, the spin magnetization is neglected and $\xi = \frac{c\mathbf{q}}{\omega}$. The $\mathbf{j}_0$ and $\mathbf{j}_{\text{ind}}$ denote, respectively, some external current and the induced current $\mathbf{j}_e = \underline{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{E}$ by the self-consistent field $\mathbf{E}$.

For a system consisting of a semi-infinite metal filling the space $z > 0$ and vacuum in the space $z < 0$ and in the absence of $\mathbf{j}_0$, the wave equation reduces to $[\underline{\sigma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) - \underline{\Gamma}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)] \cdot \mathbf{E} = 0$, and the electromagnetic waves are solutions of the secular equation $|\underline{\Gamma} - \underline{\sigma}| = 0$. The dispersion relations of the transverse and longitudinal electromagnetic waves propagating in the medium are given, respectively, by

$$c^2 q^2 = \omega^2 \varepsilon(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \text{ and } \varepsilon(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = 0.$$

In the range $\omega_p \gg \omega$ and for $\omega\tau \gg 1$, the local theory of conduction ($ql \ll 1$) gives a well-behaved field, inside the metal, of the form

$$E(z, t) = E_0 e^{i\omega t - z/\delta},$$

where $q = -i\frac{\omega_p}{c} = -\frac{i}{\delta}$. The distance $\delta = \frac{c}{\omega_p}$ is called the *normal skin depth*. If $l \gg \delta$, the local theory is not valid. The theory for this case, in which the $\mathbf{q}$ dependence of $\underline{\sigma}$ must be included, explains the *anomalous skin effect*.

In the absence of a dc magnetic field, the condition of the collective modes reduces to

$$(\omega^2 \varepsilon - c^2 q^2)^2 \varepsilon = 0.$$

Using the local (collisionless) theory of the dielectric function $\varepsilon \approx 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2}$, we have two degenerate transverse modes of frequency $\omega^2 = \omega_p^2 + c^2 q^2$, and a longitudinal mode of frequency $\omega = \omega_p$.

In the presence of a dc magnetic field along the z -axis and $\mathbf{q}$ in the y -direction, the secular equation for wave propagation is given by

14.10 Propagation of Acoustic Waves 453

$$\begin{vmatrix} \varepsilon_{xx} - \xi^2 & \varepsilon_{xy} & 0 \\ -\varepsilon_{xy} & \varepsilon_{yy} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \varepsilon_{zz} - \xi^2 \end{vmatrix} = 0.$$

For the polarization with $\mathbf{E}$ parallel to the z -axis we have

$$\frac{c^2 q^2}{\omega^2} = 1 - \frac{4\pi i}{\omega} \sigma_{zz}(\mathbf{q}, \omega),$$

where $\sigma_{zz}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)$ is the nonlocal conductivity. For $\omega_p \gg n\omega_c$ and in the limit $q \rightarrow 0$, we obtain the cyclotron waves given by $\omega^2 = n^2 \omega_c^2 + O(q^{2n})$. They propagate perpendicular to the dc magnetic field, and depend for their existence on the $\mathbf{q}$ dependence of $\underline{\sigma}$.

For a system consisting of a metal of dielectric function ε_1 filling the space $z > 0$ and an insulator of dielectric constant ε_0 in the space $z < 0$, the waves localized near the interface ($z = 0$) are written as

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{E}^{(1)}(\mathbf{r}, t) &= \mathbf{E}^{(1)} e^{i\omega t - i q_y y - \alpha_1 z}, \\ \mathbf{E}^{(0)}(\mathbf{r}, t) &= \mathbf{E}^{(0)} e^{i\omega t - i q_y y + \alpha_0 z}. \end{aligned}$$

The superscripts 1 and 0 refer, respectively, to the metal and dielectric. The boundary conditions at the plane $z = 0$ are the standard ones of continuity of the tangential components of $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{H}$, and of the normal components of $\mathbf{D}$ and $\mathbf{B}$. For the polarization with $E_x = 0$, but $E_y \neq 0 \neq E_z$, the dispersion relation of the surface plasmon is written as

$$\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\alpha_1} + \frac{\varepsilon_0}{\alpha_0} = 0,$$

where $\alpha_1 = (\omega_p^2 + q_y^2 - \omega^2)^{1/2}$ and $\alpha_0 = (q_y^2 - \varepsilon_0 \omega^2)^{1/2}$.

The classical equation of motion of the ionic displacement field $\boldsymbol{\xi}(\mathbf{r}, t)$ in a metal is written as

$$M \frac{\partial^2 \boldsymbol{\xi}}{\partial t^2} = C_\ell \nabla (\nabla \cdot \boldsymbol{\xi}) - C_t \nabla \times (\nabla \times \boldsymbol{\xi}) + ze\mathbf{E} + \frac{ze}{c} \dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}} \times (\mathbf{B}_0 + \mathbf{B}) + \mathbf{F}.$$

Here, C_ℓ and C_t are elastic constants, and the *collision drag* force $\mathbf{F}$ is $\mathbf{F} = -\frac{zm}{n_0 e \tau} (\mathbf{j}_e + \mathbf{j}_I)$, where the ionic current density is $\mathbf{j}_I = n_0 e \dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}}$. The self-consistent electric field $\mathbf{E}$ is determined from the Maxwell equations $\mathbf{j}_T = \Gamma(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \mathbf{E}$:

$$\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = [\underline{\mathbf{I}} - \underline{\sigma}]^{-1} (i\omega n e \underline{\mathbf{1}} - \underline{\sigma} \cdot \underline{\Delta}) \cdot \boldsymbol{\xi}.$$

Here, a tensor $\underline{\Delta}$ is defined by $\underline{\Delta} = \frac{n_0 e i \omega}{\sigma_0} \left\{ \underline{\mathbf{1}} - \frac{1}{3} \frac{q^2 t^2}{i\omega \tau (1 + i\omega \tau)} \hat{\mathbf{q}} \hat{\mathbf{q}} \right\}$, where $\hat{\mathbf{q}} = \frac{\mathbf{q}}{|\mathbf{q}|}$. The equation of motion is thus of the form $\underline{\mathbf{T}}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) \cdot \boldsymbol{\xi}(\mathbf{q}, \omega) = 0$, where $\underline{\mathbf{T}}$ is a very complicated tensor. The normal modes of an infinite medium are determined from the secular equation

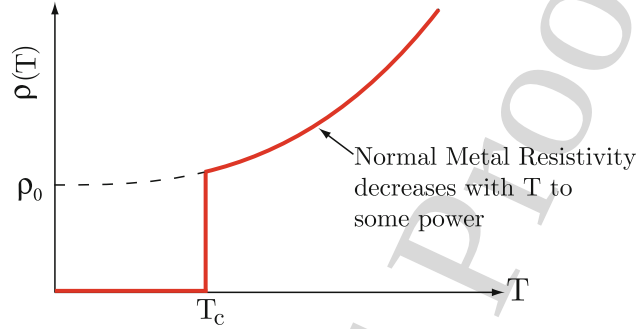
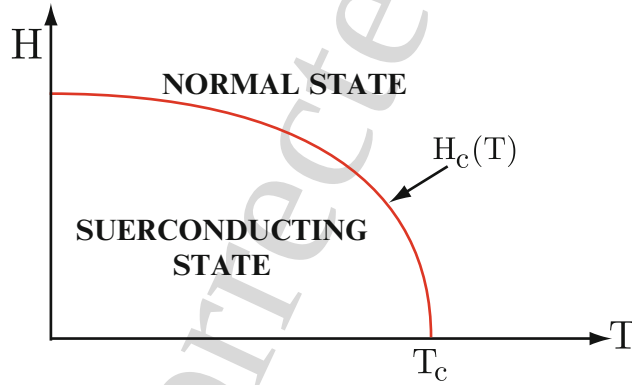
$$\det |\underline{\mathbf{T}}(\mathbf{q}, \omega)| = 0.$$

The solutions $\omega(\mathbf{q})$ have both a real and imaginary parts; the real part determines the velocity of sound and the imaginary part the attenuation of the wave.

15	1
Superconductivity	2
15.1 Some Phenomenological Observations of Superconductors	3
Superconductors are materials that behave as normal metals at high temperatures ($T > T_c$; however, below T_c they have the following properties:	5
1. The dc resistivity vanishes.	7
2. They are perfect diamagnets; by this we mean that any magnetic field that is present in the bulk of the sample when $T > T_c$ is expelled when T is lowered through the transition temperature. This is called the <i>Meissner effect</i> .	8
3. The electronic properties can be understood by assuming that an energy gap 2Δ exists in the electronic spectrum at the Fermi energy.	10
Some common superconducting elements and their transition temperatures are given in Table 15.1.	11
<i>Resistivity</i>	13
A plot of $\rho(T)$, the resistivity versus temperature T , looks like the diagram shown in Fig. 15.1. Current flows in superconductor without dissipation. Persistent currents in superconducting rings have been observed to circulate without decaying for years. There is a critical current density j_c which, if exceeded, will cause the superconductor to go into the normal state. The ac current response is also dissipationless if the frequency ω satisfies $\omega < \frac{\Delta}{\hbar}$, where Δ is an energy of the order of $k_B T_c$.	14
<i>Thermoelectric Properties</i>	15
Superconducting materials are usually poor thermal conductors. In normal metals an electric current is accompanied by a <i>thermal current</i> that is associated with the <i>Peltier effect</i> . No Peltier effect occurs in superconductors; the current carrying electrons appear to carry no entropy.	16

t1.1 **Table 15.1.** Transition temperatures of some selected superconducting elements

t1.2	Elements	Al	Sn	Hg	In	FCC La	HCP La	Nb	Pb
t1.3	T_c (K)	1.2	3.7	4.2	3.4	6.6	4.9	9.3	7.2

**Fig. 15.1.** Temperature dependence of the resistivity of typical superconducting metals**Fig. 15.2.** Temperature dependence of the critical magnetic field of a typical superconducting material*Magnetic Properties*

29

There is a critical magnetic field $H_c(T)$, which depends on temperature. When H is above $H_c(T)$, the material is in the normal state; when $H < H_c(T)$ it is superconducting. A plot of $H_c(T)$ versus T is sketched in Fig. 15.2.

In a *type I superconductor*, the magnetic induction B must vanish in the bulk of the superconductor for $H < H_c(T)$. But we have

$$B = H + 4\pi M = 0 \quad \text{for } H < H_c(T), \quad (15.1)$$

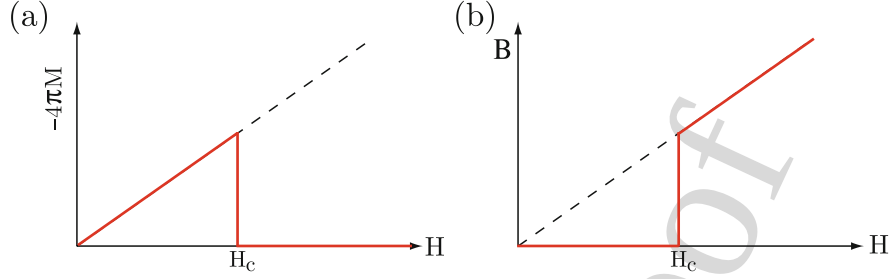


Fig. 15.3. Magnetic field dependence of the magnetization M and magnetic induction B of a type I superconducting material

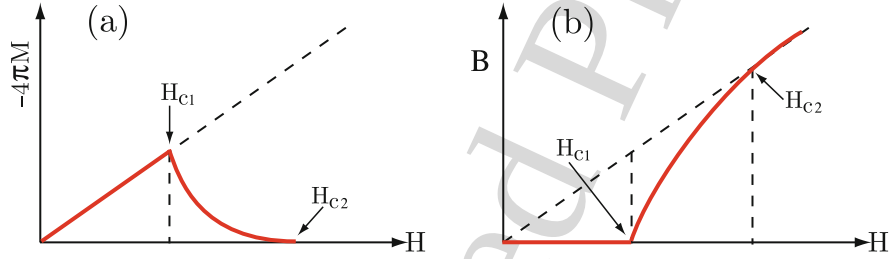


Fig. 15.4. Magnetic field dependence of the magnetization M and magnetic induction B of a type II superconducting material

which implies that

$$M = -\frac{H}{4\pi} \text{ for } H < H_c(T). \quad (15.2)$$

This behavior is illustrated in Fig. 15.3.

In a *type II superconductor*, the magnetic field starts to penetrate the sample at an applied field H_{c1} lower than the H_c . The Meissner effect is incomplete yet until at H_{c2} . The B approaches H only at an upper critical field H_{c2} . Figure 15.4 shows the magnetic field dependence of the magnetization, $-4\pi M$, and the magnetic induction B in a type II superconducting material. Between H_{c2} and H_{c1} flux penetrates the superconductor giving a *mixed state* consisting of superconductor penetrated by threads of the material in its normal state or flux lines. Abrikosov showed that the mixed state consists of vortices each carrying a single flux $\Phi = \frac{hc}{2e}$. These vortices are arranged in a regular two-dimensional array.

Specific Heat

The specific heat shows a jump at T_c and decays exponentially with an energy Δ of the order of $k_B T_c$ as $e^{-\Delta/k_B T_c}$ below T_c , as is shown in Fig. 15.5. There is

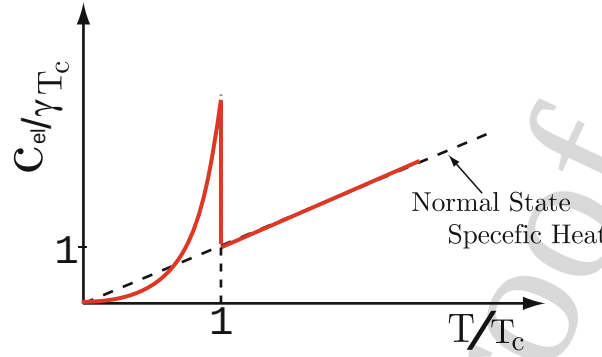


Fig. 15.5. Temperature dependence of the specific heat of a typical superconducting material

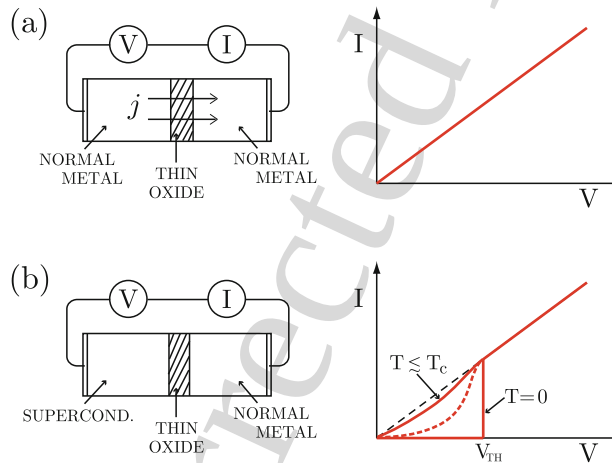


Fig. 15.6. Tunneling current behavior for (a) a normal metal–oxide–normal metal structure and (b) a superconductor–oxide–normal metal structure

a second order phase transition (constant entropy, constant volume, no latent heat) with discontinuity in the specific heat. 50 51

Tunneling Behavior 52

If one investigates tunneling through a thin oxide, in the case of two normal metals, one obtains a linear current–potential difference curve, as is sketched in Fig. 15.6a. For a superconductor–oxide–normal metal structure, a very different behavior of the tunneling current versus potential difference is obtained. Fig. 15.6b shows the tunneling current–potential difference curve of a superconductor–oxide–normal metal structure. 53 54 55 56 57 58

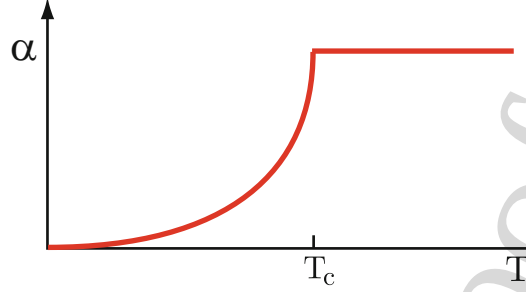


Fig. 15.7. Temperature dependence of the damping constant of low frequency sound waves in a superconducting material

Acoustic Attenuation

59

For $T < T_c$ and $\omega < 2\Delta$, there is no attenuation of sound due to electron excitation. In Fig. 15.7, the damping constant α of low frequency sound waves in a superconductor is sketched as a function of temperature.

62

15.2 London Theory

63

Knowing the experimental properties of superconductors, London introduced a phenomenological theory that can be described as follows:

65

1. The superconducting material contains two fluids below T_c . $\frac{n_S(T)}{n}$ is the fraction of the electron fluid that is in the *super fluid state*. $\frac{n_N(T)}{n} = \left[1 - \frac{n_S(T)}{n}\right]$ is the fraction in the *normal state*. The total density of electrons in the superconducting material is $n = n_N + n_S$.
2. Both the normal fluid and super fluid respond to external fields, but the superfluid is dissipationless while the normal fluid is not. We can write the electrical conductivities for the normal and super fluids as follows:

66

67

68

69

70

71

72

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_N &= \frac{n_N e^2 \tau_N}{m}, \\ \sigma_S &= \frac{n_S e^2 \tau_S}{m},\end{aligned}\tag{15.3}$$

but $\tau_S \rightarrow \infty$ giving $\sigma_S \rightarrow \infty$.

73

3.

$$\begin{aligned}n_S(T) &\rightarrow n \text{ as } T \rightarrow 0, \\ n_S(T) &\rightarrow 0 \text{ as } T \rightarrow T_c.\end{aligned}$$

4. To explain the Meissner effect, London proposed the *London equation*

74

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{j} + \frac{n_S e^2}{mc} \mathbf{B} = 0.\tag{15.4}$$

75

460 15 Superconductivity

How does the London equation arise? Let us consider the equation of motion 76
of a super fluid electron, which is dissipationless, in an electric field $\mathbf{E}$ that is 77
momentarily present in the superconductor: 78

$$m \frac{dv_S}{dt} = -eE$$

where v_S is the mean velocity of the super fluid electron caused by the field 79
 $\mathbf{E}$. But the current density $\mathbf{j}$ is simply 80

$$\mathbf{j} = -n_S e v_S. \quad (15.5)$$

Notice that this gives the relation 81

$$\frac{d\mathbf{j}}{dt} = -n_S e \frac{dv_S}{dt} = \frac{n_S e^2}{m} \mathbf{E}. \quad (15.6)$$

Equation (15.6) describes the dynamics of collisionless electrons in a perfect 82
conductor, which cannot sustain an electric field in stationary conditions. 83
Now, from Faraday's induction law, we have 84

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} = -\frac{1}{c} \frac{d\mathbf{B}}{dt}. \quad (15.7)$$

Combining this with (15.6) gives us 85

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left[\nabla \times \mathbf{j} + \frac{n_S e^2}{mc} \mathbf{B} \right] = 0. \quad (15.8)$$

The solution of (15.8) is that 86

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{j} + \frac{n_S e^2}{mc} \mathbf{B} = \text{constant}.$$

Because in the bulk of a superconductor the magnetic induction $\mathbf{B}$ must be 87
zero, London proposed that for superconductors, the "constant" had to be 88
zero and $\mathbf{j} = -\frac{n_S e^2}{mc} \mathbf{A}$ [called the London gauge] giving (15.4). The London 89
equation implies that, in stationary conditions, a superconductor cannot sus- 90
tain a magnetic field in its interior, but only within a narrow surface layer. If 91
we use the relation 92

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \frac{4\pi}{c} \mathbf{j}, \quad (15.9)$$

(This is the Maxwell equation for $\nabla \times \mathbf{B}$ in stationary conditions without the 93
displacement current $\frac{1}{c} \frac{d\mathbf{E}}{dt}$.), we can obtain 94

$$\nabla \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{B}) = \frac{4\pi}{c} \nabla \times \mathbf{j} = -\frac{4\pi}{c} \frac{n_S e^2}{mc} \mathbf{B}. \quad (15.10)$$

But, $\nabla \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{B}) = \nabla(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B}) - \nabla^2 \mathbf{B}$ giving 95

$$\nabla^2 \mathbf{B} = \frac{4\pi n_s e^2}{mc^2} \mathbf{B} \equiv \frac{1}{\Lambda_L^2} \mathbf{B}. \quad (15.11) \quad 96$$

The solutions of (15.11) show a magnetic field decaying exponentially with a 97 characteristic length Λ . One can also obtain the relation $\nabla^2 \mathbf{j} = \frac{4\pi n_s e^2}{mc^2} \mathbf{j}$. The 98 quantity $\Lambda_L = \sqrt{\frac{mc^2}{4\pi n_s e^2}}$ is called the *London penetration depth*. For typical 99 semiconducting materials, $\Lambda_L \sim 10 - 10^2 \text{ nm}$. If we have a thin supercon- 100 ducting film filling the space $-a < z < 0$ as shown in Fig. 15.8a, then the 101 magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ parallel to the superconductor surface has to fall off inside 102 the superconductor from B_0 , the value outside, as 103

$$B(z) = B_0 e^{-|z|/\Lambda_L} \text{ near the surface } z = 0$$

and 104

$$B(z) = B_0 e^{-|z+a|/\Lambda_L} \text{ near the surface } z = -a.$$

Figure 15.8b shows the schematic of the flux penetration in the supercon- 105 ducting film. The flux penetrates only a distance $\Lambda_L \leq 10^2 \text{ nm}$. One can show 106 that it is impossible to have a magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ normal to the superconductor 107 surface but homogeneous in the $x - y$ plane. 108

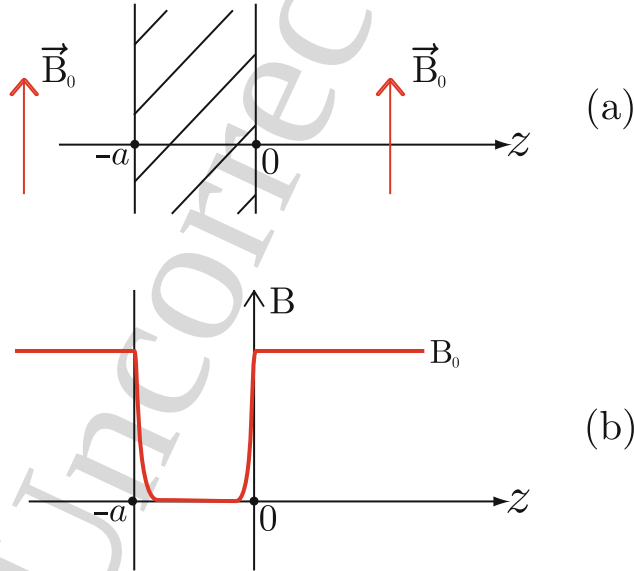


Fig. 15.8. A superconducting thin film (a) and the magnetic field penetration (b)

15.3 Microscopic Theory—An Introduction

109

In the early 1950s Frölich suggested that the attractive part of the electron–phonon interaction was responsible for superconductivity predicting the isotopic effect. The *isotope effect*, the dependence of T_c on the mass of the elements making up the lattice was discovered experimentally independent of Frölich’s work, but it was in complete agreement with it. Both Frölich, and later Bardeen, attempted to describe superconductivity in terms of an electron self-energy associated with virtual exchange of phonons. Both attempts failed. In 1957, Bardeen, Cooper, and Schrieffer (BCS) produced the first correct microscopic theory of superconductivity.¹ The critical idea turned out to be the *pair correlations* that became manifest in a simple little paper by L.N. Cooper.²

Let us consider electrons in a simple metal described by the Hamiltonian $H = H_0 + H_{ep}$, where H_0 and H_{ep} are, respectively the unperturbed Hamiltonian for a Bravais lattice and the interaction Hamiltonian of the electrons with the screened ions. Here we neglect the effect of the periodic part of the stationary lattice to write H_0 by

$$H_0 = \sum_{\mathbf{k}, \sigma} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} + \sum_{\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{s}} \hbar \omega_{\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{s}} a_{\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{s}}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{s}},$$

where σ and $\mathbf{s}$ denote, respectively, the spin of the electrons and the three dimensional polarization vector of the phonons, and $a_{\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{s}}$ annihilates a phonon of wave vector $\mathbf{q}$ and polarization $\mathbf{s}$, and $c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}$ annihilates an electron of wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ and spin σ . We will show the basic ideas leading to the microscopic theory of superconductivity.

15.3.1 Electron–Phonon Interaction

131

The electron–phonon interaction can be expressed as

132

$$H_{ep} = \sum_{\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{q}, \sigma} M_{\mathbf{q}} \left(a_{-\mathbf{q}}^\dagger + a_{\mathbf{q}} \right) c_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}\sigma}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}, \quad (15.12)$$

where $M_{\mathbf{q}}$ is the electron–phonon matrix element defined, in a simple model discussed earlier, by

135

$$M_{\mathbf{q}} = i \sqrt{\frac{N\hbar}{2M\omega_{\mathbf{q}}}} |\mathbf{q}| V_{\mathbf{q}}.$$

Here $V_{\mathbf{q}}$ is the Fourier transform of the potential due to a single ion at the origin, and the phonon spectrum is assumed isotropic for simplicity. (In this case, only the longitudinal modes of $\mathbf{s}$ parallel to $\mathbf{q}$ give finite contribution

¹ J. Bardeen, L.N. Cooper, J.R. Schrieffer, Phys. Rev. **108**, 1175 (1957)

² L.N. Cooper, Phys. Rev. **104**, 1189 (1956).

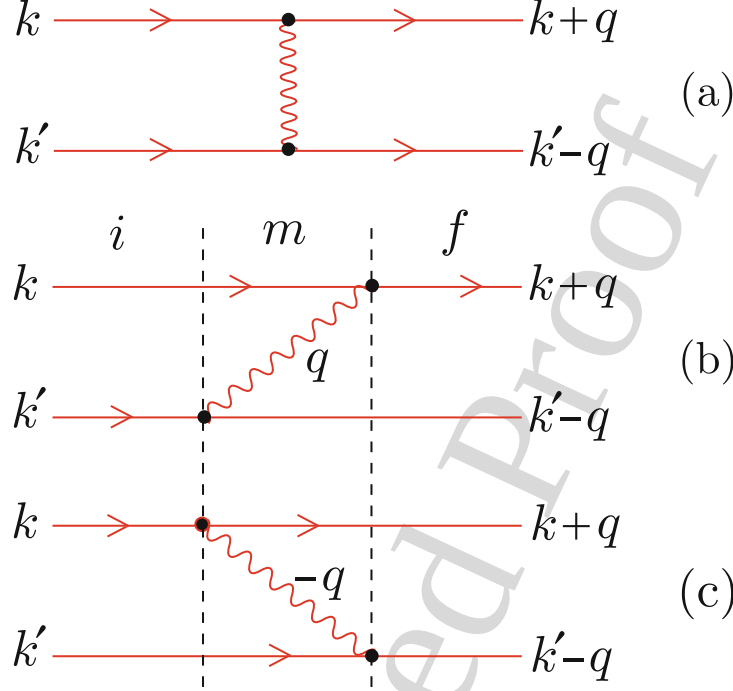


Fig. 15.9. Electron–phonon interaction (a) Effective electron–electron interaction through virtual exchange of phonons (b) and (c): Two possible intermediate states in the effective electron–electron interaction

to H_{ep} .) This H_{ep} can give rise to an *effective electron–electron interaction* 139 associated with virtual exchange of phonons as denoted in Fig. 15.9a. The 140 figure shows that an electron polarizes the lattice and another electron interacts with the polarized lattice. There are two possible intermediate states in 142 this process as shown in Fig. 15.9b and c. In Fig. 15.9b the initial energy is 143 $E_i = \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} + \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}'}$ and the intermediate state energy is $E_m = \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} + \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}'-\mathbf{q}} + \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}}$. In 144 Fig. 15.9c the initial energy is the same, but the intermediate state energy is 145 $E_m = \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}} + \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}'} + \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}}$. We can write this interaction in the second order as 146

$$\sum_m \frac{\langle f | H_{\text{ep}} | m \rangle \langle m | H_{\text{ep}} | i \rangle}{E_i - E_m}. \quad (15.13)$$

This gives us the interaction part of the Hamiltonian as follows: 147

$$H' = \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'\mathbf{q}} |M_{\mathbf{q}}|^2 \left\{ \frac{\langle f | c_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}\sigma}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} a_{\mathbf{q}} | m \rangle \langle m | c_{\mathbf{k}'-\mathbf{q}\sigma'}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}'\sigma'} a_{\mathbf{q}}^\dagger | i \rangle}{\varepsilon(\mathbf{k}') - [\varepsilon(\mathbf{k}'-\mathbf{q}) + \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}}]} + \frac{\langle f | c_{\mathbf{k}'-\mathbf{q}\sigma'}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}'\sigma'} a_{-\mathbf{q}} | m \rangle \langle m | c_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}\sigma}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} a_{-\mathbf{q}}^\dagger | i \rangle}{\varepsilon(\mathbf{k}) - [\varepsilon(\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}) + \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}}]} \right\}. \quad (15.14)$$

464 15 Superconductivity

One can take the Hamiltonian

148

$$\begin{aligned}
 H &= H_0 + H' \\
 &= \sum_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} + \sum_{\mathbf{q}} \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}} a_{\mathbf{q}}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{q}} + \sum_{\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{q}, \sigma} M_{\mathbf{q}} (a_{-\mathbf{q}}^\dagger + a_{\mathbf{q}}) c_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}\sigma}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}
 \end{aligned} \quad (15.15)$$

and make a canonical transformation

149

$$H_S = e^{-S} H e^S \quad (15.16)$$

where the operator S is defined by

150

$$S = \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{q}\sigma} M_{\mathbf{q}} (\alpha a_{-\mathbf{q}}^\dagger + \beta a_{\mathbf{q}}) c_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}\sigma}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} \quad (15.17)$$

to eliminate the $a_{\mathbf{q}}$ and $a_{-\mathbf{q}}^\dagger$ operators to lowest order. To do so, α and β in (15.17) must be chosen, respectively, as

152

$$\begin{aligned}
 \alpha &= [\varepsilon(\mathbf{k}) - \varepsilon(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q}) - \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}}]^{-1} \\
 \beta &= [\varepsilon(\mathbf{k}) - \varepsilon(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q}) + \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}}]^{-1}.
 \end{aligned} \quad (15.18)$$

Then, the transformed Hamiltonian is

153

$$H_S = \sum_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} + \sum_{\mathbf{k}\sigma, \mathbf{k}'\sigma', \mathbf{q}} W(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{q}) c_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}\sigma}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}'-\mathbf{q}\sigma'}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}'\sigma'} c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}, \quad (15.19)$$

154

where $W_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{q}}$ is defined by

155

$$W_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{q}} = \frac{|M_{\mathbf{q}}|^2 \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}}}{[\varepsilon(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q}) - \varepsilon(\mathbf{k})]^2 - (\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}})^2}. \quad (15.20)$$

156

Note that when $\Delta E = \varepsilon(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q}) - \varepsilon(\mathbf{k})$ is smaller than $\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}}$, $W_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{q}}$ is negative. This results in an effective electron-electron attraction.

157

158

15.3.2 Cooper Pair

159

Leon Cooper investigated the simple problem of a pair of electrons interacting in the presence of a Fermi sea of “spectator electrons”. He took the pair to have total momentum $\mathbf{P} = 0$ and spin $S = 0$. The Hamiltonian is written as

160

161

162

$$H = \sum_{\ell, \sigma} \varepsilon_{\ell} c_{\ell\sigma}^\dagger c_{\ell\sigma} - \frac{1}{2} V \sum_{\ell\ell'\sigma} c_{\ell'\sigma}^\dagger c_{-\ell'\bar{\sigma}}^\dagger c_{-\ell\bar{\sigma}} c_{\ell\sigma}, \quad (15.21)$$

163

where $\varepsilon_{\ell} = \frac{\hbar^2 \ell^2}{2m}$, $\{c_{\ell\sigma}, c_{\ell'\sigma'}^\dagger\} = \delta_{\ell\ell'} \delta_{\sigma\sigma'}$, and the strength of the interaction, V , is taken as a constant for a small region of $\mathbf{k}$ -space close to the Fermi surface. The interaction term allows for pairscattering from $(\ell\sigma, -\ell\bar{\sigma})$ to $(\ell'\sigma, -\ell'\bar{\sigma})$.

164

165

166

15.3 Microscopic Theory—An Introduction 465

Cooper took a variational trial function 167

$$\Psi = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} a_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{-\mathbf{k}\bar{\sigma}}^{\dagger} | G \rangle, \quad (15.22)$$

where $| G \rangle$ is the Fermi sea of spectator electrons, $| G \rangle = \prod_{|\mathbf{k}| < k_F} c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{-\mathbf{k}\bar{\sigma}}^{\dagger} | 0 \rangle$. 168
If we evaluate 169

$$\langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle = E, \quad (15.23)$$

we get 170

$$E = 2 \sum_{\ell} \varepsilon_{\ell} a_{\ell}^* a_{\ell} - V \sum_{\ell\ell'} a_{\ell'}^* a_{\ell}. \quad (15.24)$$

The coefficient a_{ℓ} is determined by requiring $E\{a_{\ell}\}$ to be minimum subject 171
to the constraint $\sum_{\ell} a_{\ell}^* a_{\ell} = 1$. This can be carried out using a Lagrange 172
multiplier λ as follows: 173

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial a_{\mathbf{k}}^*} \left\{ 2 \sum_{\ell} \varepsilon_{\ell} a_{\ell}^* a_{\ell} - V \sum_{\ell\ell'} a_{\ell'}^* a_{\ell} - \lambda \sum_{\ell} a_{\ell}^* a_{\ell} \right\} = 0. \quad (15.25)$$

This gives 174

$$2\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} a_{\mathbf{k}} - V \sum_{\ell} a_{\ell} - \lambda a_{\mathbf{k}} = 0. \quad (15.26)$$

This can be written 175

$$a_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{V \sum_{\ell} a_{\ell}}{2\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} - \lambda}. \quad (15.27)$$

Define a constant $C = \sum_{\ell} a_{\ell}$. Then, we have 176

$$a_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{VC}{2\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} - \lambda}. \quad (15.28)$$

Summing over $\mathbf{k}$ and using the fact $C = \sum_{\ell} a_{\ell}$ we have 177

$$C = VC \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{1}{2\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} - \lambda}, \quad (15.29)$$

or 178

$$f(\lambda) = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{1}{2\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} - \lambda} = \frac{1}{V}. \quad (15.30)$$

The values of $\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}$ form a closely spaced quasi continuum extending from the 179
energy E_F to roughly $E_F + \hbar\omega_D$ where ω_D is the Debye frequency. In Fig. 15.10 180

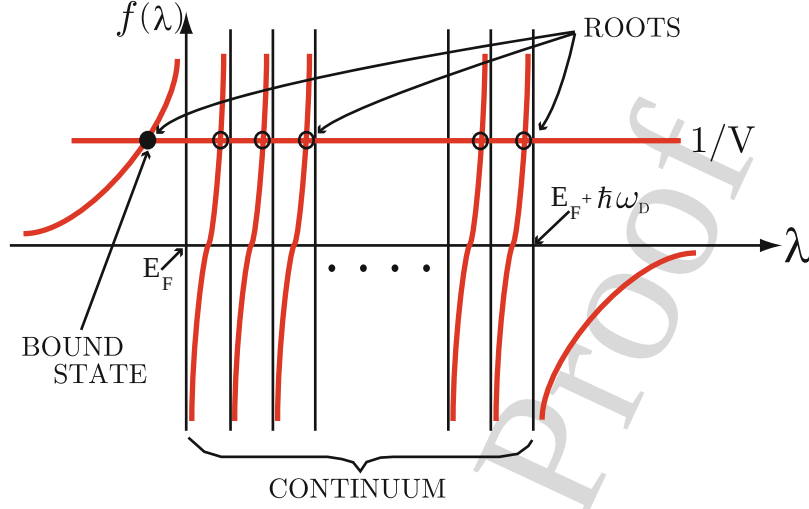


Fig. 15.10. Graphical solution of (15.30)

the function $f(\lambda)$ is displayed as a function of λ , and it shows the graphical 181
solution of (15.30). Note that $f(\lambda)$ goes from $-\infty$ to ∞ every time λ crosses 182
a value of $2\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}$ in the quasi continuum. If we take (15.26) 183

$$(2\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} - \lambda) a_{\mathbf{k}} - V \sum_{\ell} a_{\ell} = 0, \quad (15.31)$$

multiply by $a_{\mathbf{k}}^*$ and sum over $\mathbf{k}$, we obtain 184

$$\sum_{\mathbf{k}} (2\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} - \lambda) a_{\mathbf{k}}^* a_{\mathbf{k}} - V \sum_{\mathbf{k}\ell} a_{\mathbf{k}}^* a_{\ell} = 0. \quad (15.32)$$

This is exactly the same equation we obtained from writing 185

$$\langle \Psi | H - E | \Psi \rangle = 0, \quad (15.33)$$

if we take $\lambda = E$, the energy of the variational state Ψ . Thus, our equation 186
for $f(\lambda) = \frac{1}{V}$ could be rewritten 187

$$\frac{1}{V} = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{1}{2\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} - E}. \quad (15.34) \quad 188$$

Approximate the sum in (15.34) by an integral over the energy ε and write 189

$$\frac{1}{V} = \int_{E_F}^{E_F + \hbar\omega_D} \frac{g(\varepsilon) d\varepsilon}{2\varepsilon - E}. \quad (15.35)$$

Now, let us take $g(\varepsilon) \simeq g(E_F) \equiv g$ in the region of integration to obtain 190

$$\frac{1}{V} = \frac{g}{2} \int_{E_F}^{E_F + \hbar\omega_D} \frac{dx}{x - E/2}. \quad (15.36)$$

Integrating (15.36) out gives 191

$$\frac{2}{gV} = \ln \left(\frac{E_F + \hbar\omega_D - \frac{E}{2}}{E_F - \frac{E}{2}} \right), \quad (15.37)$$

or 192

$$\frac{E_F + \hbar\omega_D - \frac{E}{2}}{E_F - \frac{E}{2}} = e^{2/gV}.$$

For the case of weak coupling regime $\frac{2}{gV} \gg 1$ and $e^{-2/gV} \ll 1$. This gives 193

$$E \simeq 2E_F - 2\hbar\omega_D e^{-2/gV}. \quad (15.38) \quad 194$$

The quantity $2\hbar\omega_D e^{-2/gV}$ is the *binding energy* of the Cooper pair. Notice 195
that 196

1. One can get a bound state no matter how weakly attractive V is. The free 197
electron gas is unstable with respect to the paired bound state. 198
2. This variational result, which predicts the binding energy proportional to 199
 $e^{-2/gV}$, could not be obtained in perturbation theory. 200
3. The material with higher value of V would likely show higher T_c . 201

The BCS theory uses the idea of pairing to account of the most important 202
correlations. 203

15.4 The BCS Ground State 204

Let us write the model Hamiltonian, (15.21) by 205

$$H = H_0 + H_1, \quad (15.39)$$

where 206

$$H_0 = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} \left(c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} + c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow}^\dagger c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow} \right) \quad (15.40)$$

and 207

$$H_1 = -V \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} c_{\mathbf{k}'\uparrow}^\dagger c_{-\mathbf{k}'\downarrow}^\dagger c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow} c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow}. \quad (15.41)$$

Note that we have included in the interaction only the interaction of $\mathbf{k} \uparrow$ with $-\mathbf{k} \downarrow$. In our discussion of the totally noninteracting electron gas, we found it convenient to use a description in terms of quasielectrons and quasiholes, where a quasielectron was an electron with $|\mathbf{k}| > k_F$ and a quasihole was the absence of an electron with $|\mathbf{k}| < k_F$. We could define

$$\begin{aligned} d_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger &= c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} & \text{for } \mathbf{k} < \mathbf{k}_F, \\ d_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} &= c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger & \text{for } \mathbf{k} < \mathbf{k}_F. \end{aligned} \quad (15.42)$$

Then $d_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger$ creates a “hole” and $d_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}$ annihilates a “hole”. If we measure all energies $\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}$ relative to the Fermi energy, then H_0 can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} H_0 &= \sum_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} \\ &= E_0 + \sum_{|\mathbf{k}| > k_F, \sigma} \tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}} n_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} + \sum_{|\mathbf{k}| < k_F} |\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}}| (1 - n_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}), \end{aligned} \quad (15.43)$$

where $n_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} = c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}$, $\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}} = \varepsilon(\mathbf{k}) - E_F$, and $E_0 (= \sum_{|\mathbf{k}| < k_F} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}})$ is the energy of the filled Fermi sphere. Because $c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger$ adds a momentum $\mathbf{k}$ and spin σ to the system while $d_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger$ subtract $\mathbf{k}$ and σ (or adds $-\mathbf{k}$ and $\bar{\sigma}$), it is useful to introduce

$$\alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger = u_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger + v_{-\mathbf{k}} c_{-\mathbf{k}\bar{\sigma}} \quad (15.44)$$

and its Hermitian conjugate

$$\alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} = u_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} + v_{-\mathbf{k}} c_{-\mathbf{k}\bar{\sigma}}^\dagger. \quad (15.45)$$

The operator $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger$ adds momentum $\mathbf{k}$ and spin σ to the system. If $u_{\mathbf{k}} = 1$, $v_{\mathbf{k}} = 0$ for $|\mathbf{k}| > k_F$ and $u_{\mathbf{k}} = 0$, $v_{\mathbf{k}} = 1$ for $|\mathbf{k}| < k_F$, we have simply the noninteracting electron gas described in terms of $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}$ and $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger$. We must have $u_{\mathbf{k}} = u_{-\mathbf{k}}$ and $v_{\mathbf{k}} = -v_{-\mathbf{k}}$. Also $u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 = 1$ in order to satisfy the anticommutation relations $[\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}, \alpha_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger]_+ = \delta_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'}$.

From (15.44) and (15.45) we have that

$$c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} = u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \alpha_{-\mathbf{k}\bar{\sigma}}^\dagger \alpha_{-\mathbf{k}\bar{\sigma}} + u_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}} (\alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger \alpha_{-\mathbf{k}\bar{\sigma}}^\dagger + \alpha_{-\mathbf{k}\bar{\sigma}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}).$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} &= \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} \left[u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \alpha_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 (1 - \alpha_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow}^\dagger \alpha_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow}) \right] \\ &= \sum_{|\mathbf{k}| < k_F} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} + \sum_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} |\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}| \alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, in terms of the $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}$ and $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger$, the noninteracting Hamiltonian is written as

$$H_0 = E_0 + \sum_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} |\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}| \alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}. \quad (15.46)$$

The ground state of the noninteracting electron gas (filled Fermi sphere) can be constructed by annihilating quasiholes in all states with $|\mathbf{k}| < k_F$ and is given by

$$|\text{GS}\rangle = \prod_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} \alpha_{-\mathbf{k}\sigma} |\text{VAC}\rangle, \quad (15.47)$$

where $|\text{VAC}\rangle$ is the true vacuum state. Using (15.44) and (15.45) gives

$$|\text{GS}\rangle = \prod_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 c_{-\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger |\text{VAC}\rangle. \quad (15.48)$$

But, for the noninteracting system $v_{\mathbf{k}} = 1$ if $|\mathbf{k}| < k_F$ and zero otherwise so that

$$|\text{GS}\rangle = \prod_{|\mathbf{k}| < k_F, \sigma} c_{-\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger |\text{VAC}\rangle. \quad (15.49)$$

For the interacting system we will use a slight generalization of the notation used above.

15.4.1 Bogoliubov–Valatin Transformation

For the Hamiltonian given in (15.40) and (15.41), we make the transformation (called Bogoliubov–Valatin transformation) defined by

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} &= u_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} - v_{\mathbf{k}} c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow}^\dagger \\ \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger &= u_{\mathbf{k}} c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow}^\dagger + v_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow}, \end{aligned} \quad (15.50)$$

with Hermitian conjugates $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger = u_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow}^\dagger + v_{\mathbf{k}} c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow}$ and $\beta_{\mathbf{k}} = u_{\mathbf{k}} c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow} + v_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow}^\dagger$.

Note that the up spin $\uparrow$ is associated with the index $\mathbf{k}$ and the down spin $\downarrow$ is associated with the index $-\mathbf{k}$. The operators $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger$ and $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}$ create or destroy an excited state of the system, which is a correlated electron–hole pair. We take $u_{\mathbf{k}} = u_{-\mathbf{k}}$ and $v_{\mathbf{k}} = -v_{-\mathbf{k}}$; in addition $u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2$ must be equal unity in order to satisfy the anticommutation relations:

$$[\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}, \alpha_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger]_+ = [\beta_{\mathbf{k}}, \beta_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger]_+ = \delta_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'}; \quad [\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}, \alpha_{\mathbf{k}'}]_+ = [\beta_{\mathbf{k}}, \beta_{\mathbf{k}'}]_+ = 0.$$

We can solve (15.50) for $c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow}$ and $c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow}$ and their Hermitian conjugates

$$\begin{aligned} c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} &= u_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} + v_{\mathbf{k}} \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger; & c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow}^\dagger &= u_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger + v_{\mathbf{k}} \beta_{\mathbf{k}} \\ c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow}^\dagger &= u_{\mathbf{k}} \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger - v_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}; & c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow} &= u_{\mathbf{k}} \beta_{\mathbf{k}} - v_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger. \end{aligned} \quad (15.51)$$

Note that $u_{\mathbf{k}}^2$ is the probability that a pair of states with opposite $\mathbf{k}$ and σ is unoccupied and $v_{\mathbf{k}}^2$ is the probability that it is occupied. Substituting (15.51) in (15.40) gives

470 15 Superconductivity

$$H_0 = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}} \left[u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \beta_{\mathbf{k}} \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger + u_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}} (\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger + \beta_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}) + u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}} + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger - u_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}} (\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger + \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} \beta_{\mathbf{k}}) \right]. \quad (15.52)$$

Let us put the operators in normal form using $\beta_{\mathbf{k}} \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger = 1 - \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}}$. This gives 253

$$H_0 = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}} \left[2v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + (u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 - v_{\mathbf{k}}^2)(\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} + \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}}) + 2u_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}} (\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger + \beta_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}) \right]. \quad (15.53)$$

If we do the same thing for the interaction part H_1 given by (15.41) 254

$$H_1 = -V \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} c_{\mathbf{k}'\uparrow}^\dagger c_{-\mathbf{k}'\downarrow}^\dagger c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow} c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow}, \quad (15.54)$$

we obtain 255

$$\begin{aligned} H_1 &= -V \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} (u_{\mathbf{k}'} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger + v_{\mathbf{k}'} \beta_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger) (u_{\mathbf{k}'} \beta_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger - v_{\mathbf{k}'} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger) (u_{\mathbf{k}} \beta_{\mathbf{k}} - v_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger) (u_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} + v_{\mathbf{k}} \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger) \\ &= -V \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} [u_{\mathbf{k}'} v_{\mathbf{k}'} u_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}} (1 - \alpha_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}'} - \beta_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}'})(1 - \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} - \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}}) \\ &\quad + u_{\mathbf{k}'} v_{\mathbf{k}'} (1 - \alpha_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}'} - \beta_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}'})(u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 - v_{\mathbf{k}}^2)(\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger + \beta_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}) \\ &\quad + 4^{\text{th}} \text{ order off-diagonal terms}]. \end{aligned} \quad (15.55)$$

When this expression is multiplied out and then put in normal form (with all annihilation operators on the right of all creation operators), the result can be written 256
257
258

$$H = H(0) + H(2) + H(4). \quad (15.56)$$

Here, $H(2n)$ contains terms involving products of $2n$ Fermion operators ($\alpha, \alpha^\dagger, \beta$, and $\beta^\dagger$). It is simple to evaluate $H(0)$: 259
260

$$H(0) = 2 \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 - V \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} u_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}} u_{\mathbf{k}'} v_{\mathbf{k}'}. \quad (15.57)$$

The terms in $H(2)$ can be written 261

$$\begin{aligned} H(2) &= \sum_{\mathbf{k}} [\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}(u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 - v_{\mathbf{k}}^2) + V(\sum_{\mathbf{k}'} 2u_{\mathbf{k}'} v_{\mathbf{k}'} u_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}})] (\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} + \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}}) \\ &\quad + \sum_{\mathbf{k}} [2u_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}} \tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}} - (u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 - v_{\mathbf{k}}^2) V \sum_{\mathbf{k}'} u_{\mathbf{k}'} v_{\mathbf{k}'}] (\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger + \beta_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}). \end{aligned} \quad (15.58)$$

We will neglect the terms in $H(4)$; they contain interactions between the elementary excitations. $H(0) + H(2)$ is not exactly in the form we desire because of the term proportional to $(\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger + \beta_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}})$. We are still at liberty to choose $u_{\mathbf{k}}$ and $v_{\mathbf{k}}$; we do this by requiring the coefficient of $(\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger + \beta_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}})$ to vanish. This gives us 262
263
264
265
266

$$2u_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}} \tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}} = (u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 - v_{\mathbf{k}}^2) V \sum_{\mathbf{k}'} u_{\mathbf{k}'} v_{\mathbf{k}'}. \quad (15.59) \quad 267$$

Let us define Δ by

$$\Delta = V \sum_{\mathbf{k}'} u_{\mathbf{k}'} v_{\mathbf{k}'} \quad (15.60)$$

and use it in (15.59) after squaring both sides. This gives

$$4u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}}^2 = \Delta^2 (u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 - v_{\mathbf{k}}^2)^2. \quad (15.61)$$

We can eliminate $u_{\mathbf{k}}^2$ since we already know that $u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 = 1$. Doing so gives the quadratic equation in $v_{\mathbf{k}}^2$.

$$v_{\mathbf{k}}^4 [\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + \Delta^2] - v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 [\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + \Delta^2] + \frac{\Delta^2}{4} = 0. \quad (15.62)$$

We choose the solution of the form

$$v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 = \frac{1}{2}(1 - \xi_{\mathbf{k}}). \quad (15.63)$$

Here, $\xi_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}}}{\sqrt{\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + \Delta^2}}$. Furthermore since $u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 = 1 - v_{\mathbf{k}}^2$, we find that

$$u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \xi_{\mathbf{k}}). \quad (15.64)$$

But (15.60), the definition of Δ , can now be written

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{2} V \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \sqrt{1 - \xi_{\mathbf{k}}^2}. \quad (15.65)$$

With a little algebra, (15.65) becomes

$$\Delta = \frac{V}{2} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{\Delta}{\sqrt{\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + \Delta^2}}. \quad (15.66)$$

Thus, the equation for the energy gap Δ is given by

$$1 = \frac{V}{2} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + \Delta^2}}. \quad (15.67)$$

Now, replace the sum by an integral taking for the density of states $\frac{1}{2}g(E_F)$ of the pair. The $\frac{1}{2}$ results from the fact that only $\mathbf{k} \uparrow$ and $-\mathbf{k} \downarrow$ are coupled by the interaction. Then, (15.67) becomes

$$1 = \frac{V}{2} \frac{g(E_F)}{2} \int_{-\hbar\omega_q}^{\hbar\omega_q} \frac{d\varepsilon}{\sqrt{\varepsilon^2 + \Delta^2}}. \quad (15.68)$$

Using $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 + \Delta^2}} = \ln(x + \sqrt{x^2 + \Delta^2}) = \sinh^{-1}(x/\Delta)$, the result for Δ becomes

$$\Delta = 2\hbar\omega_q e^{-\frac{2}{g(E_F)V}}. \quad (15.69)$$

472 15 Superconductivity

If the interaction V is zero, the one-particle states of the system would be occupied up to $|\mathbf{k}| = k_F$, and Δ agrees with the binding energy of a Cooper pair.

15.4.2 Condensation Energy

The condensation energy $\Delta E (\equiv E_S^0 - E_N^0)$ defined by the difference between the ground state energy in the normal state and the state with finite Δ is approximately given by

$$\Delta E \simeq -g(E_F) \frac{\Delta}{2} \times \frac{\Delta}{2} = -g(E_F) \frac{\Delta^2}{4}. \quad (15.70)$$

The ground-state wave function Ψ_0 of the superconducting system is the eigenfunction of the diagonalized BCS Hamiltonian, so that

$$\alpha_{\mathbf{k}} |\Psi_0\rangle = \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger |\Psi_0\rangle = 0. \quad (15.71)$$

One can obtain Ψ_0 by writing

$$|\Psi_0\rangle = \prod_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} \beta_{\mathbf{k}} |\text{VAC}\rangle. \quad (15.72)$$

This gives the normalized wave function

$$|\Psi_0\rangle = \prod_{\mathbf{k}} (u_{\mathbf{k}} + v_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger c_{-\mathbf{k}}^\dagger) |\text{VAC}\rangle, \quad (15.73)$$

which is the BCS variational wave function normalized so that $\langle \Psi_0 | \Psi_0 \rangle = 1$.

15.5 Excited States

From (15.58) we can see that

$$H(2) = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} E_{\mathbf{k}} (\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} + \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}}), \quad (15.74)$$

where

$$E_{\mathbf{k}} = \tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}} (u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 - v_{\mathbf{k}}^2) + 2\Delta u_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}}. \quad (15.75)$$

Knowing that $u_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \sqrt{1 + \xi_{\mathbf{k}}}$ and $v_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \sqrt{1 - \xi_{\mathbf{k}}}$ allows us to obtain the energy of an individual quasiparticle

$$E_{\mathbf{k}} = \sqrt{\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + \Delta^2}, \quad (15.76)$$

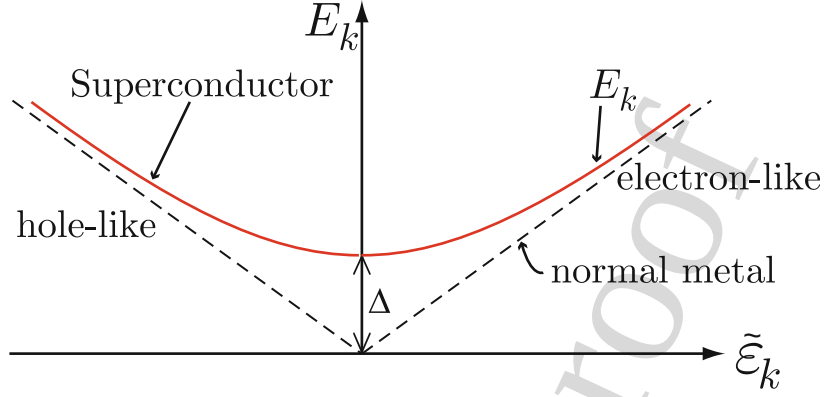


Fig. 15.11. Elementary excitations in a normal metal and in a superconductor

where $\tilde{\epsilon}_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{\hbar^2 \mathbf{k}^2}{2m} - E_F$, i.e., the energy is measured relative to the Fermi energy E_F . Thus, there is a gap Δ for the creation of elementary excitations $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger | \Psi_0 \rangle$ or $\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger | \Psi_0 \rangle$. The state $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger | \Psi_0 \rangle$ is a quasiparticle state of wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ involving a superposition of an electron of wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ and a hole of wave vector $-\mathbf{k}$. In Fig. 15.11 quasiparticle energy spectra for a normal metal and for a superconductor are illustrated. The excitation spectrum has a gap Δ , which is known as the *gap parameter*. We notice that, since $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger$ and $\beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger$ are linear combinations of single Fermion operators and always appear in pairs in the interaction Hamiltonian. Therefore, quasiparticles can be excited in pairs with the minimum excitation energy of 2Δ . The experimental gap should be 2Δ in experiments on absorption of electromagnetic radiation.

The density of quasiparticle states in the superconductor can be obtained using the quasiparticle dispersion relation $E_{\mathbf{k}}$.

$$g_S(E) = \frac{1}{\Omega} \frac{dN}{dE} = \frac{2}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{d}{dk} \left(\frac{4\pi k^3}{3} \right) \frac{dk}{dE} = \frac{k^2}{\pi^2} \frac{1}{dE/dk}, \quad (15.77)$$

where $\frac{dE}{dk}$ is written, from (15.76), by

$$\frac{dE}{dk} = \frac{dE}{d\tilde{\epsilon}} \frac{d\tilde{\epsilon}}{dk} = \frac{\sqrt{E^2 - \Delta^2}}{E} \frac{\hbar^2 k}{m}. \quad (15.78)$$

Substituting (15.78) in (15.79) gives

$$g_S(E) = \frac{mk_F}{\pi^2 \hbar^2} \frac{E}{\sqrt{E^2 - \Delta^2}} = g_N(E_F) \frac{E}{\sqrt{E^2 - \Delta^2}}, \quad (15.79)$$

where $g_N(E) = \frac{mk}{\pi^2 \hbar^2}$ is the density of states of the normal metal. Since we consider the quasiparticle energies close to the Fermi surface, we replaced $g_N(E)$ by its value at the Fermi energy E_F . Notice that the density of quasiparticles

474 15 Superconductivity

in the superconducting states shows a singularity at the energies $E = \pm\Delta$ 321
measured with respect to the Fermi energy. 322

Essentially, all the other properties of a BCS superconductor can be 323
evaluated knowing that 324

1. The ground-state energy given by $H(0)$, (15.57), is lower than the normal 325
state energy ($E_N^0 = \sum_{|\mathbf{k}| < k_F} \tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}}$) by $-\frac{\Delta^2}{4}g(E_F)$, (15.70). 326
2. The energy of elementary excitations is given by $E_{\mathbf{k}} = \sqrt{\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + \Delta^2}$, (15.76). 327
3. The Fermi distribution function $n_{\mathbf{k}}$ is given by 328

$$f(E_{\mathbf{k}}) = n_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{1}{e^{E_{\mathbf{k}}/\Theta} + 1}.$$

Here, of course, $\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}}$ appearing in $E_{\mathbf{k}}$ is measured relative to E_F . 329

4. The BCS wave function is given by (15.73) 330

$$|\Psi_0\rangle = \prod_{\mathbf{k}} (u_{\mathbf{k}} + v_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} c_{-\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger}) |\text{VAC}\rangle.$$

One final example shows how to calculate the energy gap Δ as a function of 331
temperature. We note that states $\mathbf{k} \uparrow$ and $-\mathbf{k} \downarrow$ are occupied statistically at 332
finite temperatures. The Δ given in (15.69) was obtained under the assump- 333
tion that $n_{\mathbf{k}} = 0$ at $T = 0$. But, at finite temperatures the Fermi distribution 334
function should be understood as the occupation probability, and we expect 335
 $n_{\mathbf{k}} \neq 0$ and $\Delta = \Delta(T)$. To evaluate $\Delta(T)$ we need to extend (15.59) by writing 336

$$2u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}}\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}} = (u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 - v_{\mathbf{k}}^2)V \sum_{\mathbf{k}'} u_{\mathbf{k}'}v_{\mathbf{k}'} (1 - 2f(E_{\mathbf{k}'})). \quad (15.80) \quad 337$$

This comes from keeping a term $-(\alpha_{\mathbf{k}'}^{\dagger}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}'} + \beta_{\mathbf{k}'}^{\dagger}\beta_{\mathbf{k}'})$ averaged at $T \neq 0$ in 338

$$\langle 1 - (\alpha_{\mathbf{k}'}^{\dagger}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}'} + \beta_{\mathbf{k}'}^{\dagger}\beta_{\mathbf{k}'}) \rangle = 1 - n_{\mathbf{k}'} - n_{\mathbf{k}'} = 1 - 2f(E_{\mathbf{k}'}),$$

instead of just unity as was done in writing (15.58). Now, we define 339

$$\Delta(T) = V \sum_{\mathbf{k}} u_{\mathbf{k}}v_{\mathbf{k}} [1 - 2f(E_{\mathbf{k}})]. \quad (15.81)$$

Substituting (15.64) and (15.63) for $u_{\mathbf{k}}$ and $v_{\mathbf{k}}$ gives $1 = \frac{V}{2} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{1-2f(E_{\mathbf{k}})}{\sqrt{\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + \Delta^2(T)}}$, 340
which reduces to 341

$$1 = \frac{V}{2} \frac{g(E_F)}{2} \int_{-\hbar\omega_D}^{\hbar\omega_D} \frac{d\varepsilon}{\sqrt{\varepsilon^2 + \Delta^2(T)}} [1 - 2f(\sqrt{\varepsilon^2 + \Delta^2(T)})]. \quad (15.82)$$

At $T = 0$ this is the $T = 0$ gap equation, (15.68). As T increases from $T = 0$, 342
 $\Delta(T)$ would decrease from Δ_0 , the zero temperature value. $\Delta(T)$ vanishes 343
for $T \geq T_c$, where $\Delta = 0$ is the only stable solution. The superconductivity 344
disappears above T_c . Now, (15.82) can be written 345

15.6 Type I and Type II Superconductors 475

$$\frac{4}{g(E_F)V} = \int_{-\hbar\omega_D}^{\hbar\omega_D} \frac{d\varepsilon}{\sqrt{\varepsilon^2 + \Delta^2(T)}} - 2 \int_{-\hbar\omega_D}^{\hbar\omega_D} \frac{d\varepsilon}{\sqrt{\varepsilon^2 + \Delta^2(T)}} f(\sqrt{\varepsilon^2 + \Delta^2(T)}). \quad (15.83)$$

Since Δ becomes zero at $T = T_c$, we can determine T_c by setting $\Delta = 0$ in (15.83). This gives

$$\frac{2}{g(E_F)V} = \int_0^{\hbar\omega_D} \frac{d\varepsilon}{\varepsilon} \tanh \frac{\varepsilon}{2\Theta_c}, \quad (15.84)$$

where $\Theta_c = k_B T_c$. Introducing the dimensionless variable $x = \frac{\varepsilon}{2\Theta_c}$ we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{2}{g(E_F)V} &= \int_0^{\hbar\omega_D/2\Theta_c} \frac{dx}{x} \tanh x \\ &= \ln \frac{\hbar\omega_D}{2\Theta_c} \tanh \frac{\hbar\omega_D}{2\Theta_c} - \int_0^{\hbar\omega_D/2\Theta_c} \ln x \operatorname{sech}^2 x \, dx. \end{aligned} \quad (15.85)$$

Since $\eta \equiv \hbar\omega_D/2\Theta_c \gg 1$, in general for weak coupling superconductors, we may extend the upper limit of the integral to ∞ to have

$$\frac{2}{g(E_F)V} = \ln \frac{\hbar\omega_D}{2\Theta_c} \tanh \frac{\hbar\omega_D}{2\Theta_c} + \ln C, \quad (15.86)$$

where the constant $\ln C$ is given, in terms of Euler's constant γ :

$$\ln C = - \int_0^\infty \ln x \operatorname{sech}^2 x \, dx = \gamma + \ln \frac{4}{\pi} \approx 0.81876.$$

Then, one can write

$$\Theta_c \simeq 1.13 \hbar\omega_D e^{-\frac{2}{\eta}} \approx 0.57 \Delta(0), \quad (15.87)$$

where ω is replaced by the Debye frequency ω_D . The Debye temperature Θ_D is much larger than the superconducting transition temperature Θ_c . Figure 15.12 sketches the $\Delta(T)$ obtained by numerical integration of (15.82).

15.6 Type I and Type II Superconductors 358

Correlations in superconductors involve electrons in a very limited range of values in momentum space. The range δp about the Fermi momentum p_F must be restricted to

$$\frac{p_F^2}{2m} - \Delta \leq \frac{(p_F + \delta p)^2}{2m} \leq \frac{p_F^2}{2m} + \Delta. \quad (15.88)$$

This gives $|\delta p| \leq \frac{\Delta}{v_F}$. The spread of momentum δp leads to a *coherence length* in coordinate space $\xi_0 = \frac{\hbar}{\delta p} \sim \frac{\hbar v_F}{\Delta}$. ξ_0 indicates the spatial range of the pair wave function. We distinguish *type I* and *type II* superconductors by whether

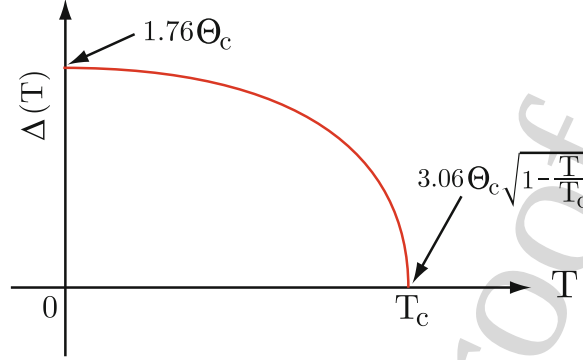


Fig. 15.12. Temperature dependence of the superconducting energy gap parameter $\Delta(T)$ in the weak coupling limit

the ratio of $\frac{\hbar v_F}{\pi \Delta} (\simeq \xi_0)$ to $\Lambda_L = \sqrt{\frac{mc^2}{4\pi n_s e^2}}$, the London penetration depth, 365
is large or small compared to unity. For example, we have $v_F \simeq 10^8$ cm/s 366
and $T_c \approx 0.57\Delta_0 \simeq 1.2$ K for Al, and thus $\xi_0 \simeq 3.4 \times 10^3$ nm and $\Lambda_L \simeq$ 367
30 nm resulting $\frac{\xi_0}{\Lambda_L} \sim 100$. But, for the case of Nb₃Sn we have $v_F \simeq 10^6$ cm/s 368
and $T_c \approx 0.57\Delta_0 \simeq 20$ K, and thus $\xi_0 \simeq 2$ nm and $\Lambda_L \simeq 200$ nm resulting 369
 $\frac{\xi_0}{\Lambda_L} \sim 10^{-2}$. 370

The London equation, (15.4), is written as 371

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{j} + \frac{ns e^2}{mc} \mathbf{B} = 0. \quad (15.89)$$

Using $\mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}$ allows us to write 372

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}) = -\frac{ns e^2}{mc} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}). \quad (15.90)$$

This local relation between $\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{A}$ is valid only for type II materials where 373
 Λ_L is much larger than ξ_0 and $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ varies slowly on the scale of ξ_0 . For type 374
I materials, Pippard suggested a nonlocal relation between $\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{A}$. Pippard 375
equation is written as 376

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}) = C \int \frac{\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}') \cdot \mathbf{R}}{R^4} \mathbf{R} e^{-|\mathbf{R}|/\xi_0} d^3 r', \quad (15.91) \quad 377$$

where $\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'$. C is determined by requiring that slowly varying $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ yields 378
the London equation. Then $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ comes outside the integral (and taking $\mathbf{A} \parallel \hat{z}$) 379
and Eq.(15.91) reduces to 380

$$j_z(\mathbf{r}) = CA(\mathbf{r}) \int_0^\infty \int_{-1}^1 \frac{R \cos \theta}{R^4} R \cos \theta e^{-R/\xi_0} 2\pi d(\cos \theta) R^2 dR = C \frac{4\pi}{3} \xi_0 A(\mathbf{r}). \quad (15.92)$$

15.6 Type I and Type II Superconductors 477

We note that, by comparing (15.90) and (15.92), $C = -\frac{ns e^2}{mc} \frac{3}{4\pi\xi_0}$, and picking $\xi_0 = \frac{\hbar v_F}{\pi\Delta_0}$ (at $T = 0$) gives excellent agreement with the microscopic theory. For the case $\Lambda_{\text{eff}} \ll \xi_0$, the vector potential $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ is finite only in a surface layer and we can write

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}) = -\frac{ns e^2}{mc} \frac{\Lambda_{\text{eff}}}{\xi_0} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) \quad (15.93)$$

leading us to $\Lambda_{\text{eff}} \approx \Lambda_L (\frac{\xi_0}{\Lambda_L})^{1/3}$.

Flux Penetration

When a disc shaped type I superconductor is aligned perpendicular to an applied magnetic field $\mathbf{H}_0$, the magnetic field at the boundary of the sample (where the applied field is partially excluded) would become much greater than the magnitude of $\mathbf{H}_0$ (see Fig. 15.13). Then the sample starts to lose superconductivity at an applied field much below the critical field H_c forming a large number of normal and superconducting regions side by side, and the magnetic field energy gain is reduced significantly. The specimen is known to be in the *intermediate state*. It is a mixture of normal and superconducting regions due to geometric factors. The intermediate state has a domain structure that depends on competition between (1) superconducting condensation energy $\frac{1}{4}g(E_F)\Delta^2$, (2) magnetic field energy $\frac{H^2}{8\pi}$, iii) surface energy of N-S boundary (positive for type I material). In type II materials the surface energy turns out to be negative, and flux penetrates in single vortices each carrying one flux quantum (see Fig. 15.14). In alloys, if impurity scattering

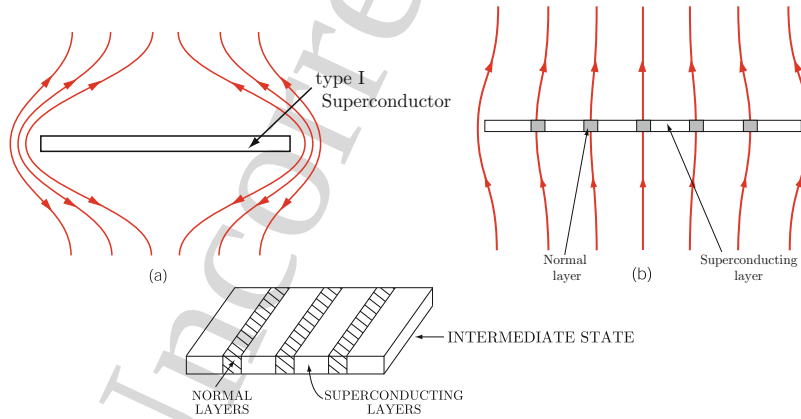


Fig. 15.13. Schematics of the intermediate state in a planar type I superconductor. It occurs when a planar sample is held perpendicular to an applied magnetic field as indicated in (a). Domain structure of normal and superconducting regions is formed as sketched in (b) and (c) by the magnified magnetic field due to geometric factors

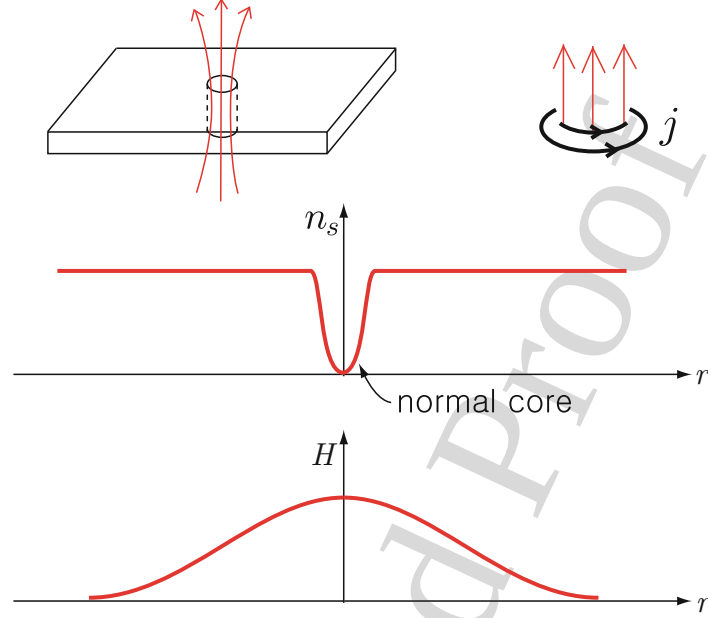


Fig. 15.14. Schematic representation of flux and field penetration in a type II superconductor

leads mean free path l , the Pippard relation replaces e^{-R/ξ_0} by $e^{-R(\frac{1}{\xi_0} + \frac{1}{l})}$. In 401
the extreme dirty limit of $\xi_0 \gg l$, relation between $\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r})$ and $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ becomes 402

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}) = -\frac{n_s e^2}{mc} \frac{l}{\xi_0} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}),$$

and the corresponding penetration depth $\Lambda_{\text{eff}} = \Lambda_L \sqrt{\xi_0/l}$ is increased greatly. 403

Problems

404

15.1. Demonstrate that the electronic contribution to the heat capacity of common intrinsic semiconductors shows the exponential temperature behavior at low temperatures.

406
407

15.2. Let's consider the equation of motion of a super fluid electron, which is dissipationless, in an electric field $\mathbf{E}$ that is momentarily present in the superconductor. That is, $m \frac{dv_s}{dt} = -eE$, where v_s is the mean velocity of the super fluid electron caused by the field $\mathbf{E}$. In order to explain the Meissner effect, London proposed the London equation written as $\nabla \times \mathbf{j} + \frac{n_s e^2}{mc} \mathbf{B} = 0$. Show that $\nabla^2 \mathbf{j} = \frac{1}{\Lambda_L^2} \mathbf{j}$ where $\Lambda_L = \sqrt{\frac{mc^2}{4\pi n_s e^2}}$ is the so-called the London penetration depth.

408
409
410
411
412
413
414

15.3. Assume $c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}$ and $c_{\mathbf{k}'\sigma'}^\dagger$ satisfy standard Fermion anticommutation relations. Show that $[\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}, \alpha_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger]_+$ and $[\beta_{\mathbf{k}}, \beta_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger]_+$ each equal $\delta_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'}$ for $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}$ and $\beta_{\mathbf{k}}'$ defined by the Bogoliubov–Valatin transformation

415
416
417

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha_{\mathbf{k}} &= u_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} - v_{\mathbf{k}} c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow}^\dagger \\ \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger &= u_{\mathbf{k}} c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow}^\dagger + v_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow}.\end{aligned}$$

15.4. Let us consider the interaction Hamiltonian H_1 given by

418

$$H_1 = -V \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} c_{\mathbf{k}'\uparrow}^\dagger c_{-\mathbf{k}'\downarrow}^\dagger c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow} c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow}.$$

Use the Bogoliubov–Valatin transformation to show that H_1 can be written as

419
420

$$\begin{aligned}H_1 &= -V \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} (u_{\mathbf{k}'} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger + v_{\mathbf{k}'} \beta_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger) (u_{\mathbf{k}'} \beta_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger - v_{\mathbf{k}'} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger) (u_{\mathbf{k}} \beta_{\mathbf{k}} - v_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger) (u_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} + v_{\mathbf{k}} \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger) \\ &= -V \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} [u_{\mathbf{k}'} v_{\mathbf{k}'} u_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}} (1 - \alpha_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}'} - \beta_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}'})(1 - \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} - \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}}) \\ &\quad + u_{\mathbf{k}'} v_{\mathbf{k}'} (1 - \alpha_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}'} - \beta_{\mathbf{k}'}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}'})(u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 - v_{\mathbf{k}}^2)(\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger + \beta_{\mathbf{k}} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}) \\ &\quad + 4^{\text{th}} \text{ order off-diagonal terms }].\end{aligned}$$

421

15.5. Consider the condition given by

422

$$2u_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}} \tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}} = (u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 - v_{\mathbf{k}}^2) V \sum_{\mathbf{k}'} u_{\mathbf{k}'} v_{\mathbf{k}'}.$$

(a) Determine $u_{\mathbf{k}}$ and $v_{\mathbf{k}}$ satisfying the condition given above. Note that $u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 = 1$.

423
424

(b) Obtain the expression Δ defined by $\Delta = V \sum_{\mathbf{k}'} u_{\mathbf{k}'} v_{\mathbf{k}'}$.

425

Summary

426

In this chapter, we first briefly review some phenomenological observations of 427
superconductivity and discuss a phenomenological theory by London. Then we 428
introduce ideas of electron–phonon interaction and Cooper pairing to discuss 429
microscopic theory by Bardeen, Cooper, and Schrieffer. The BCS ground state 430
and excited states are discussed through Bogoliubov–Valatin transformation, 431
and condensation energy and thermodynamic behavior of the superconduct- 432
ing energy gap are analyzed. Finally type I and type II superconductors are 433
compared in terms of coherence length and London penetration depth. 434

The *Meissner effect* indicates that any magnetic field that is present in a 435
bulk superconductor when $T > T_c$ is expelled when T is lowered through the 436
transition temperature T_c . In a *type I superconductor*, the magnetic induction 437
 B vanishes in the bulk of the superconductor for $H < H_c(T)$. In a *type* 438
II superconductor, the magnetic field starts to penetrate the sample at an 439
applied field H_{c1} lower than the H_c . Between H_{c2} and H_{c1} flux penetrates the 440
superconductor giving a *mixed state* consisting of superconductor penetrated 441
by threads of the material in its normal state or flux lines. The mixed state 442
consists of vortices each carrying a single flux $\Phi = \frac{hc}{2e}$. 443

The *London equation* is written as $\nabla \times \mathbf{j} + \frac{ns_e e^2}{mc} \mathbf{B} = 0$, which implies that, 444
in stationary conditions, a superconductor cannot sustain a magnetic field in 445
its interior, but only within a narrow surface layer: $\nabla^2 \mathbf{B} = \frac{4\pi ns_e e^2}{mc^2} \mathbf{B} \equiv \frac{1}{\Lambda_L^2} \mathbf{B}$. 446

Here, the quantity $\Lambda_L = \sqrt{\frac{mc^2}{4\pi ns_e e^2}}$ is called the *London penetration depth*. 447

The Hamiltonian of the electrons in a metal is written as 448

$$H = \sum_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} + \sum_{\mathbf{k}\sigma, \mathbf{k}'\sigma', \mathbf{q}} W(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{q}) c_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}\sigma}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}'-\mathbf{q}\sigma'}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}'\sigma'} c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma},$$

where $W_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{q}}$ is defined by $W_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{q}} = \frac{|M_{\mathbf{q}}|^2 \hbar \omega_{\mathbf{q}}}{[\varepsilon(\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}) - \varepsilon(\mathbf{k})]^2 - (\hbar \omega_{\mathbf{q}})^2}$. Here, $M_{\mathbf{q}}$ is the 449
electron–phonon matrix element. 450

A pair of electrons interacting in the presence of a Fermi sea of “spectator 451
electrons” is described by $H = \sum_{\ell, \sigma} \varepsilon_{\ell} c_{\ell\sigma}^\dagger c_{\ell\sigma} - \frac{1}{2} V \sum_{\ell\ell'\sigma} c_{\ell'\sigma}^\dagger c_{-\ell'\sigma}^\dagger c_{-\ell\sigma} c_{\ell\sigma}$, 452
where $\varepsilon_{\ell} = \frac{\hbar^2 \ell^2}{2m}$ and the strength of the interaction, V , is taken as a constant 453
for a small region of $\mathbf{k}$ -space close to the Fermi surface. A variational trial 454
function $\Psi = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} a_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger c_{-\mathbf{k}\bar{\sigma}}^\dagger |G\rangle$ gives us $\frac{1}{V} = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{1}{2\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} - E}$. Here, $|G\rangle$ is the 455
Fermi sea of spectator electrons, $|G\rangle = \prod_{|\mathbf{k}| < k_F} c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger c_{-\mathbf{k}\bar{\sigma}}^\dagger |0\rangle$. Approximating 456
the sum by an integral over the energy ε , we have $E \simeq 2E_F - 2\hbar\omega_D e^{-2/gV}$. 457
The quantity $2\hbar\omega_D e^{-2/gV}$ is the *binding energy* of the Cooper pair. 458

In the BCS theory, H is rewritten as $H = H_0 + H_1$, where 459

$$H_0 = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} \left(c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow}^\dagger c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} + c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow}^\dagger c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow} \right) \text{ and } H_1 = -V \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} c_{\mathbf{k}'\uparrow}^\dagger c_{-\mathbf{k}'\downarrow}^\dagger c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow} c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow}.$$

15.6 Type I and Type II Superconductors 481

Introducing $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger = u_{\mathbf{k}}c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger + v_{-\mathbf{k}}c_{-\mathbf{k}\bar{\sigma}}$ and $\alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} = u_{\mathbf{k}}c_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} + v_{-\mathbf{k}}c_{-\mathbf{k}\bar{\sigma}}^\dagger$ the nonin- 460
 teracting Hamiltonian becomes $H_0 = E_0 + \sum_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} \tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}} |\alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma}|$. The ground 461
 state of the noninteracting electron gas (filled Fermi sphere) is given by 462
 $|\text{GS}\rangle = \prod_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}\sigma} \alpha_{-\mathbf{k}\bar{\sigma}} |\text{VAC}\rangle$, where $|\text{VAC}\rangle$ is the true vacuum state. 463

The Bogoliubov–Valatin transformation defined by 464

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} &= u_{\mathbf{k}}c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} - v_{\mathbf{k}}c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow}^\dagger; \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger = u_{\mathbf{k}}c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow}^\dagger + v_{\mathbf{k}}c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow} \\ \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger &= u_{\mathbf{k}}c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow}^\dagger + v_{\mathbf{k}}c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow}; \beta_{\mathbf{k}} = u_{\mathbf{k}}c_{-\mathbf{k}\downarrow} + v_{\mathbf{k}}c_{\mathbf{k}\uparrow}^\dagger \end{aligned}$$

gives 465

$$H = H(0) + H(2) + H(4),$$

where 466

$$H(0) = 2 \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}}^2 - V \sum_{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}'} u_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}} u_{\mathbf{k}'} v_{\mathbf{k}'}; H(2) = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} E_{\mathbf{k}} (\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \alpha_{\mathbf{k}} + \beta_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \beta_{\mathbf{k}}).$$

Here $E_{\mathbf{k}} = \tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}}(u_{\mathbf{k}}^2 - v_{\mathbf{k}}^2) + 2\Delta u_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}}$ and $H(4)$ contains interactions between the 467
 elementary excitations. The equation for the energy gap Δ is given by 468

$$1 = \frac{V}{2} \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + \Delta^2}} \text{ and } \Delta = 2\hbar\omega_q e^{-\frac{2}{g(E_F)V}}.$$

The ground-state wave function Ψ_0 of the superconducting system is 469

$$|\Psi_0\rangle = \prod_{\mathbf{k}} (u_{\mathbf{k}} + v_{\mathbf{k}} c_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger c_{-\mathbf{k}}^\dagger) |\text{VAC}\rangle.$$

The energy of a quasiparticle is $E_{\mathbf{k}} = \sqrt{\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}}^2 + \Delta^2}$, where $\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{\hbar^2 \mathbf{k}^2}{2m} - E_F$. The 470
 density of quasiparticle states in the superconductor is given by 471

$$g_S(E) = \frac{mk_F}{\pi^2 \hbar^2} \frac{E}{\sqrt{E^2 - \Delta^2}}.$$

The *type I* and *type II* superconductors are distinguished by whether the 472
 ratio of the coherence length ξ_0 to the London penetration depth Λ_L is large 473
 or small compared to unity. The local relation $\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}) = -\frac{ns e^2}{mc} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ is valid only 474
 for type II materials where $\Lambda_L \gg \xi_0$ and $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ varies slowly on the scale of 475
 ξ_0 . For the case $\Lambda_{\text{eff}} \ll \xi_0$, the vector potential $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ is finite only in a surface 476
 layer and we have 477

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}) = -\frac{ns e^2}{mc} \frac{\Lambda_{\text{eff}}}{\xi_0} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$$

leading to $\Lambda_{\text{eff}} \approx \Lambda_L \left(\frac{\xi_0}{\Lambda_L}\right)^{1/3}$. The *intermediate state* is a mixture of normal 478
 and superconducting regions due to geometric factors and it has a domain 479
 structure. In the extreme dirty limit of $\xi_0 \gg l$, we have 480

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r}) = -\frac{ns e^2}{mc} \frac{l}{\xi_0} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}),$$

and the effective penetration depth $\Lambda_{\text{eff}} = \Lambda_L \sqrt{\xi_0/l}$ is increased greatly. 481

The Fractional Quantum Hall Effect: The Paradigm for Strongly Interacting Systems

16.1 Electrons Confined to a Two-Dimensional Surface in a Perpendicular Magnetic Field

The study of the electronic properties of quasi two-dimensional systems has been a very exciting area of condensed matter physics during the last quarter of the twentieth century. Among the most interesting discoveries in this area are the incompressible states showing integral and fractional quantum Hall effects. Incompressible quantum liquid states of the integral quantum Hall effect result from an energy gap in the single particle spectrum. The incompressibility of the fractional quantum Hall effect is completely the result of electron–electron interactions in a highly degenerate fractionally filled Landau level. Since the quantum Hall effect involves electrons moving on a two-dimensional surface in the presence of a perpendicular magnetic field, we begin with a description of this problem.

The application of a large dc magnetic field perpendicular to the two-dimensional layer results in some notable novel physics. The Hamiltonian describing the motion of a single electron (of mass μ) confined to the x – y plane, in the presence of a dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B} = B\hat{z}$, is simply

$$H = (2\mu)^{-1} \left[\mathbf{p} + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) \right]^2. \quad (16.1)$$

The vector potential $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ is given by $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{2}B(-y\hat{x} + x\hat{y})$ in a symmetric gauge. We use $\hat{x}$, $\hat{y}$, and $\hat{z}$ as unit vectors along the Cartesian axes. The Schrödinger equation $(H - E)\Psi(\mathbf{r}) = 0$ has eigenstates¹

$$\Psi_{nm}(r, \phi) = e^{im\phi} u_{nm}(r), \quad (16.2)$$

$$E_{nm} = \frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega_c(2n + 1 + m + |m|), \quad (16.3)$$

¹ See, for example, L.D. Landau, E.M. Lifshitz, *Quantum Mechanics* (Pergamon, Oxford, 1977), p. 458; S. Gasiorowicz *Quantum Mechanics* (Wiley, New York, 1996), ch. 13.

484 16 The Fractional Quantum Hall Effect

where n and m are principal and angular momentum quantum numbers, 25
 respectively, and $\omega_c (= eB/\mu c)$ is the cyclotron angular frequency. The radial 26
 function $u(r)$ in (16.2) satisfies the differential equation 27

$$\frac{d^2 u}{d\eta^2} + \eta^{-1} \frac{du}{d\eta} - (m^2 \eta^{-1} + \eta^2 - \epsilon)u = 0, \quad (16.4)$$

where η and ϵ are, respectively, defined by $\eta = \sqrt{eB/2\hbar c} r = \frac{r}{\sqrt{2}l_0}$ and 28
 $\epsilon = 4E/\hbar\omega_c - 2m$. Here, $l_0 = \sqrt{\hbar c/eB}$ is the magnetic length. The radial wave- 29
 functions $u_{nm}(r)$ can be expressed in terms of associated Laguerre polynomials 30
 L_n^m as 31

$$u_{nm}(\eta) = \eta^{|m|} e^{-\eta^2/2} L_n^{|m|}(\eta^2). \quad (16.5)$$

Here, $L_0^{|m|}(\eta^2)$ is independent of η and $L_1^{|m|}(\eta^2) \propto (|m| + 1 - \eta^2)$. The lowest 32
 energy level has $n = 0$ and $m = 0, -1, -2, \dots$. The first excited level has $n = 1$ 33
 and $m = 0, -1, -2, \dots$, or $n = 0$ and $m = 1$, etc. These highly degenerate 34
 levels are separated from neighboring levels by $\hbar\omega_c$. These quantized energy 35
 levels are called *Landau levels*; the lowest Landau level wavefunction can be 36
 written as 37

$$\Psi_{0m} = \mathcal{N}_m z^{|m|} e^{-|z|^2/4l_0^2}, \quad (16.6) \quad 38$$

where $\mathcal{N}_m$ is the normalization constant and z stands for $z(=x - iy) = re^{-i\phi}$. 39
 The maximum value of $|\Psi_{0m}(z)|^2$ occurs at $r_m \propto m^{1/2}$. 40

For a finite size sample of area $\mathcal{S} = \pi R^2$, the number of single particle 41
 states in the lowest Landau level is given by $N_\phi = B\mathcal{S}/\phi_0$, where $\phi_0 = 42$
 $\hbar c/e$ is the quantum of magnetic flux. The filling factor ν of a given Landau 43
 level is defined by N/N_ϕ , so that ν^{-1} is simply equal to the number of flux 44
 quanta of the dc magnetic field per electron. For a sample of radius R , the 45
 number of allowed values of $|m|$ is simply N_ϕ . For the lowest Landau level, 46
 degeneracy of the level is N_ϕ because the allowed values of $|m|$ are given by 47
 $|m| = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N_\phi - 1$. 48

16.2 Integral Quantum Hall Effect 49

The integral quantum Hall effect occurs when N electrons exactly fill an inte- 50
 gral number of Landau levels resulting in an integral value of the filling factor 51
 ν . When ν is equal to an integer, there is an energy gap (equal to $\hbar\omega_c$) between 52
 the filled states and the empty states. This makes the noninteracting electron 53
 system incompressible, because an infinitesimal decrease in the area $\mathcal{A}$, which 54
 decreases N_ϕ , requires a finite energy $\hbar\omega_c$ to promote an electron across the 55
 energy gap into the first unoccupied Landau level. This incompressibility is 56
 responsible for the *integral quantum Hall effect*.² To understand the minima 57

² K. von Klitzing, G. Dorda, M. Pepper, Phys. Rev. Lett. **45**, 494 (1980).

in the diagonal resistivity ρ_{xx} and the plateaus in the Hall resistivity ρ_{xy} , it is necessary to notice that each Landau level, broadened by collisions with defects and phonons, must contain both extended states and localized states. The extended states lie in the central portion of the broadened Landau level, and the localized states in the wings. As the chemical potential ζ sweeps through the Landau level (by varying either B or the particle number N), zeros of ρ_{xx} (at $T = 0\text{K}$) and flat plateaus of ρ_{xy} occur when ζ lies within the localized states.

A many particle wavefunction of N electrons at filling factor $\nu = 1$ can be constructed by antisymmetrizing the product function which places one electron in each of the N states with $0 \leq |m| \leq N_\phi - 1$. Here, the product function should be antisymmetric under exchange of any two electrons, and the many particle wavefunction is written, for $\nu = 1$, as

$$\Psi_1(z_1, \dots, z_N) = \mathcal{A}\{u_0(z_1)u_1(z_2) \cdots u_{N-1}(z_N)\} \quad (16.7)$$

where $\mathcal{A}$ denotes the antisymmetrizing operator. Since $u_{|m|}(z) \propto z^{|m|}e^{-|z|^2/4l_0^2}$, as given by (16.6), (16.7) can be written out as follows:

$$\Psi_1(z_1, \dots, z_N) \propto \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ z_1 & z_2 & \dots & z_N \\ z_1^2 & z_2^2 & \dots & z_N^2 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \dots & \vdots \\ z_1^{N-1} & z_2^{N-1} & \dots & z_N^{N-1} \end{vmatrix} e^{-\frac{1}{4l_0^2} \sum_{i=1, N} |z_i|^2}. \quad (16.8)$$

The determinant in (16.8) is the well-known Van der Monde determinant written, simply, as $\prod_{N \geq i > j \geq 1} (z_i - z_j)$. This is easily demonstrated by subtracting column j from column i and noting $z_{ij} = z_i - z_j$ is a common factor. Since it is true for every $i \neq j$, the result is apparent. Then the N -particle wavefunction corresponding to a filled Landau level becomes

$$\Psi_1(z_1, \dots, z_N) \propto \prod_{N \geq i > j \geq 1} z_{ij} e^{-\frac{1}{4l_0^2} \sum_{k=1, N} |z_k|^2}. \quad (16.9)$$

In (16.9), the highest power of z_j is $N - 1$. This means that the allowed values of $|m|$ are equal to $0, 1, 2, \dots, N - 1$ or that the Landau level degeneracy is given by $N_\phi = N$ and hence $\nu = N/N_\phi = 1$. We could obtain (16.9) by the requirement of antisymmetry imposed on the product of single particle eigenfunctions.

16.3 Fractional Quantum Hall Effect

When the filling factor ν is smaller than unity, the standard approach of placing N particles in the lowest energy single particle states is not applicable, because more degenerate states than the number of particles are present

in the lowest Landau level. For example, for the case of $\nu = 1/3$, it is not apparent how to construct antisymmetric product function for N electrons in $3N$ states to describe *fractional quantum Hall states*. In this case, no gap occurs in the absence of electron–electron interaction, and it is not easy to understand why fractional quantum Hall states are incompressible. At very high values of the applied magnetic field, there is only one relevant energy scale in the problem, the Coulomb scale e^2/ℓ_0 . In that case, standard many body perturbation theory is not applicable. Laughlin used remarkable physical insight to propose a ground state wavefunction, for filling factor $\nu = 1/n$,³

$$\Psi_{1/n}(1, 2, \dots, N) = \prod_{i>j} z_{ij}^n e^{-\sum_i |z_i|^2/4\ell_0^2}, \quad (16.10)$$

where n is an odd integer.

The Laughlin wavefunction has the properties that (1) it is antisymmetric under interchange of any pair of particles as long as n is odd, (2) particles stay farther apart and have lower Coulomb repulsion for $n > 1$, and (3) because the wavefunction contains terms with z_i^m for $0 \leq m \leq n(N-1)$, $N_\phi - 1$, the largest value of m in the Landau level, is equal to $n(N-1)$ giving $\nu = N/N_\phi \rightarrow 1/n$ for large systems in agreement with experiment.⁴

16.4 Numerical Studies

Remarkable confirmation of Laughlin's hypothesis was obtained by exact diagonalization carried out for relatively small systems. Exact diagonalization of the interaction Hamiltonian within the Hilbert subspace of the lowest Landau level is a very good approximation at large values of B , where $\hbar\omega_c \gg e^2/\ell_0$. Although real experiments are performed on a two-dimensional plane, it is more convenient to use a spherical two dimensional surface for numerical diagonalization studies. Haldane introduced the idea of putting a small number of electrons on a spherical surface at the center of which is located a magnetic monopole. We consider the case that the N electrons are confined to a Haldane surface of radius R . At the center of the sphere, a magnetic monopole of strength $2Q\phi_0$, where $2Q$ is an integer, is located, as illustrated in Fig. 16.1. The radial magnetic field is written as

$$\mathbf{B} = \frac{2Q\phi_0}{4\pi R^2} \hat{R}, \quad (16.11)$$

where $\hat{R}$ is a unit vector in the radial direction. The single particle Hamiltonian can be expressed as

$$H_0 = \frac{1}{2mR^2} (l - \hbar Q \hat{R})^2. \quad (16.12)$$

³ R.B. Laughlin, Phys. Rev. Lett. **50**, 1395 (1983)

⁴ D.C. Tsui, H.L. Stormer, and A.C. Gossard, Phys. Rev. Lett. **48**, 1559 (1982).

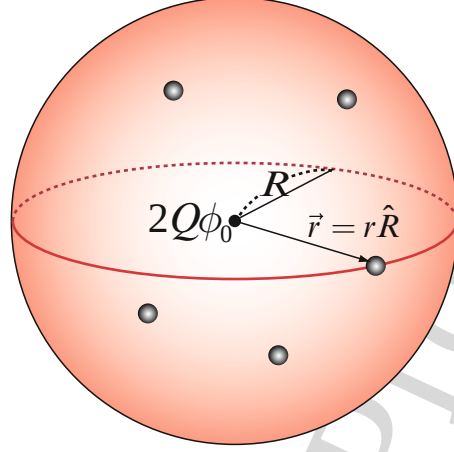


Fig. 16.1. Haldane sphere of radius R with magnetic monopoles of strength $2Q$ located at the center of the sphere

Here, $\mathbf{l}$ is the orbital angular momentum operator. The components of $\mathbf{l}$ satisfy the usual commutation rules $[l_\alpha, l_\beta] = i\hbar\epsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma}l_\gamma$, where the eigenvalues of l^2 and l_z are, respectively, $\hbar^2 l(l+1)$ and $\hbar m$.⁵ The single particle eigenstates of (16.12) denoted by $|Q, l, m\rangle$ are called *monopole harmonics*. The states $|Q, l, m\rangle$ are eigenfunctions of l^2 and l_z as well as of H_0 , the single particle Hamiltonian, with eigenvalues

$$\varepsilon(Q, l, m) = \frac{\hbar\omega_c}{2Q} [l(l+1) - Q^2]. \quad (16.13)$$

In writing (16.13), we noted that $\mathbf{A} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{R}} = \hat{\mathbf{R}} \cdot \mathbf{A} = 0$ and, hence, $\mathbf{l} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{R}} = \hat{\mathbf{R}} \cdot \mathbf{l} = \hbar Q$. Because this energy must be positive, the allowed values of l are given by $l_n = Q + n$, where $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$. The lowest Landau level (or angular momentum shell) occurs for $l_0 = Q$ and has the energy $\varepsilon_0 = \hbar\omega_c/2$, which is independent of m as long as m is a nonpositive integer. Therefore, the lowest Landau level has $(2Q+1)$ -fold degeneracy. The n th excited Landau level occurs for $l_n = Q + n$ with energy

$$\varepsilon_n = \frac{\hbar\omega_c}{2Q} [(Q+n)(Q+n+1) - Q^2]. \quad (16.14)$$

An N -particle eigenfunction of the lowest Landau level can be written, in general, as

$$|m_1, m_2, \dots, m_N\rangle = c_{m_N}^\dagger \cdots c_{m_2}^\dagger c_{m_1}^\dagger |0\rangle. \quad (16.15)$$

⁵ We note that, in the presence of the magnetic field, the total angular momentum is given by $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{r} \times [-i\hbar\nabla + e\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})]$ and that the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{A}^2$ are not equal to $l(l+1)\hbar^2$. Here, $\mathbf{A}$ is the vector potential and $[A_i, \hat{R}_j] = i\hbar\varepsilon_{ijk}\hat{R}_k$.

Here, $|m_i| \leq Q$ and $c_{m_i}^\dagger$ creates an electron in state $|l_0, m_i\rangle$. Since we are concentrating on a partially filled lowest Landau level we have only $2Q + 1$ degenerate single particle states. The number of possible way of constructing N -electron antisymmetric states from $2Q + 1$ single particle states or choosing N distinct values of m out of the $2Q + 1$ allowed values is given by

$$G_{NQ} = \binom{2Q+1}{N} = \frac{(2Q+1)!}{N!(2Q+1-N)!}. \quad (16.16)$$

Then, there are G_{NQ} N -electron states in the Hilbert subspace of the lowest Landau level. For the Laughlin $\nu = 1/m$ state, we have $2Q_{\nu=1/m} = m(N-1)$. For example, for the case of $2Q = 9$ and $N = 4$ ($\nu = 1/3$ state for 4 electrons in the lowest Landau level of degeneracy $2Q + 1 = 10$), we have $l = 4.5$ and there are $G_{NQ} = 10!/[4!(10-4)!] = 210$ of four-electron states in the Hilbert space of the lowest Landau level.

Table 16.1 lists the values of the electron angular momentum ℓ_e , $2Q + 1$ (the Landau level degeneracy), G_{NQ} (the number of antisymmetric N -electron states), L_{MAX} (the largest possible angular momentum of the system), and

Table 16.1. The angular momentum ℓ_e of an electron in the lowest Landau level; $2Q+1$ the Landau level degeneracy; G_{NQ} the dimension of N -electron Hilbert space; L_{MAX} the maximum value of the total angular momentum L ; the allowed L -values for a system consisting of N electrons on the surface of a Haldane sphere. The exponent of the allowed L -values indicates the number of times an L -multiplet appears and the number in parenthesis denotes the total number of L -multiplets

N	ℓ_e	$2Q + 1$	G_{NQ}	L_{MAX}	Allowed L -values
3	3.0	7	35	6	$6 \oplus 4 \oplus 3 \oplus 2 \oplus 0$ (5)
4	4.5	10	210	12	$12 \oplus 10 \oplus 9 \oplus 8^2 \oplus 7 \oplus 6^3 \oplus 5 \oplus 4^3 \oplus 3 \oplus 2^2 \oplus 0^2$ (18)
5	6.0	13	1,287	20	$20 \oplus 18 \oplus 17 \oplus 16^2 \oplus 15^2 \oplus 14^3 \oplus 13^3 \oplus 12^5 \oplus 11^4 \oplus 10^6 \oplus 9^5 \oplus 8^7 \oplus 6^7 \oplus 5^5 \oplus 4^6 \oplus 3^3 \oplus 2^4 \oplus 1 \oplus 0^2$ (73)
6	7.5	16	8,008	30	$30 \oplus 28 \oplus \dots$ (338)
7	9.0	19	50,382	42	$42 \oplus 40 \oplus \dots$ (1,656)
8	10.5	22	319,770	56	$56 \oplus 54 \oplus \dots$ (8,512)
9	12.0	25	2,042,975	72	$72 \oplus 70 \oplus \dots$ (45,207)
10	13.5	28	13,123,110	90	$90 \oplus 88 \oplus \dots$ (246,448)

the allowed values of L (the total angular momentum) with a superscript indicating how many times they appear. The number in parenthesis in the allowed L -value column is the total number of different L -multiplets that appear. For three electrons there are five such states, all with different L values. For four electrons there are 18 states; $L = 12, 10, 9, 7, 5$, and 3 each appearing once, $L = 8, 2$, and 0 each appearing twice, and $L = 6$ and 4 each three times. For $N = 10$ and $Q = 13.5$ ($\nu = 1/3$ state of 10 electrons) $G_{NQ} = 13, 123, 110$ and there are 246,448 distinct L multiplets with $0 \leq L \leq 90$.

The numerical problem is to diagonalize the interaction Hamiltonian

$$H_{\text{int}} = \sum_{i < j} V(|\mathbf{r}_i - \mathbf{r}_j|) \quad (16.17)$$

in the G_{NQ} dimensional space. The problem is facilitated by first determining the eigenfunctions $|LM\alpha\rangle$ of the total angular momentum. Here, $\hat{L} = \sum_i \hat{l}_i$, $M = \sum_i m_i$, and α is an additional label that accounts for distinct multiplets with the same total angular momentum L (for example, for the five electron system the seven $L = 6$ states correspond to seven different values of α). The 210 four-electron states of four electrons give us 18×18 matrix that is block diagonal with two 3×3 blocks, three 2×2 blocks, and six 1×1 blocks. For small numbers of electrons these finite matrices can easily be diagonalized to obtain the many-body eigenvalues and eigenfunctions.⁶

In a plane geometry, the allowed values of m , the z -component of the single particle angular momentum, are $0, 1, \dots, N_\phi - 1$. $M = \sum_i m_i$ is the total z -component of angular momentum, where the sum is over all occupied states. It can be divided into the center-of-mass (CM) and relative (R) contributions $M_{\text{CM}} + M_{\text{R}}$. The connection between the planar and spherical geometries is as follows:

$$M = Nl + L_z, \quad M_{\text{R}} = Nl - L, \quad M_{\text{CM}} = L + L_z \quad (16.18)$$

The interactions depend only on M_{R} , so $|M_{\text{R}}, M_{\text{CM}}\rangle$ acts just like $|L, L_z\rangle$. The absence of boundary conditions and the complete rotational symmetry make the spherical geometry attractive to theorists. Many experimentalists prefer using the $|M_{\text{R}}, M_{\text{CM}}\rangle$ states of the planar geometry. The calculations give the eigenenergies E as a function of the total angular momentum L .

⁶ Because H_{int} is a scalar, the Wigner-Eckart theorem

$$\langle L'M'\alpha' | H_{\text{int}} | LM\alpha \rangle = \delta_{LL'} \delta_{MM'} \langle L'\alpha' | H_{\text{int}} | L\alpha \rangle$$

tells us that matrix elements of H_{int} are independent of M and vanish unless $L' = L$. This reduces the size of the matrix to be diagonalized enormously. For example, for $N = 10$ and $Q = 27/2$ ($\nu = 1/3$ state of ten electrons) $G_{NQ} = 13, 123, 110$ and there are 246,448 distinct L multiplets with $0 \leq L \leq 90$. However, the largest matrix diagonalized is only 7069 by 7069.

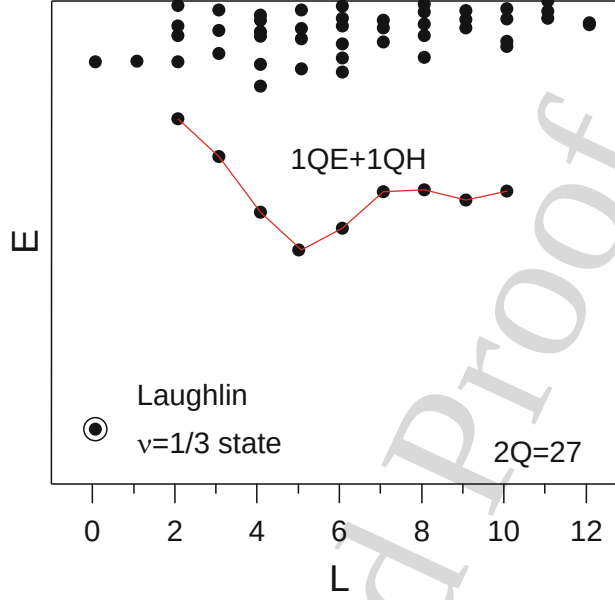


Fig. 16.2. The energy spectrum of 10 electrons in the lowest Landau level calculated on a Haldane sphere with $2Q = 27$. The *open circle* denotes the $L = 0$ ground state

The numerical results for the lowest Landau level always show one or more L 181 multiplets forming a low energy band. As an example, the numerical results 182 (E vs L) are shown in Figs. 16.2 and 16.3 for a system of 10 electrons with 183 values of $2Q$ between 25 and 29. It is clear that the states fall into a well 184 defined low energy sector and slightly less well defined excited sectors. The 185 Laughlin $\nu = 1/3$ state occurs at $2Q = 3(N - 1) = 27$ and the low energy 186 sector consists of a singlet $L = 0$ state as illustrated in Fig. 16.2. States with 187 larger values of Q contain one, two, or three quasiholes ($2Q = 28, 29, 30$), and 188 states with smaller values of Q , such as $2Q = 25$ or 26 , contain quasielectrons 189 in the ground states. For $2Q = 26$ the system is one single-particle state shy 190 of having the Laughlin $\nu = 1/3$ filling. In this case the low energy sector 191 corresponds to having a single Laughlin quasielectron of angular momentum 192 $L = 5$. 193

16.5 Statistics of Identical Particles in Two Dimension 194

Let us consider a system consisting of two particles each of charge $-e$ and mass 195 μ , confined to a plane, in the presence of a perpendicular dc magnetic field 196 $\mathbf{B} = (0, 0B) = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$. Since $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ is linear in the coordinate $\mathbf{r} = (x, y)$, (for 197 example, $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{2}B(-y, x)$ in a symmetric gauge), the Hamiltonian separates 198 into the center-of-mass and relative coordinate pieces $\mathbf{R} = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{r}_1 + \mathbf{r}_2)$ and 199

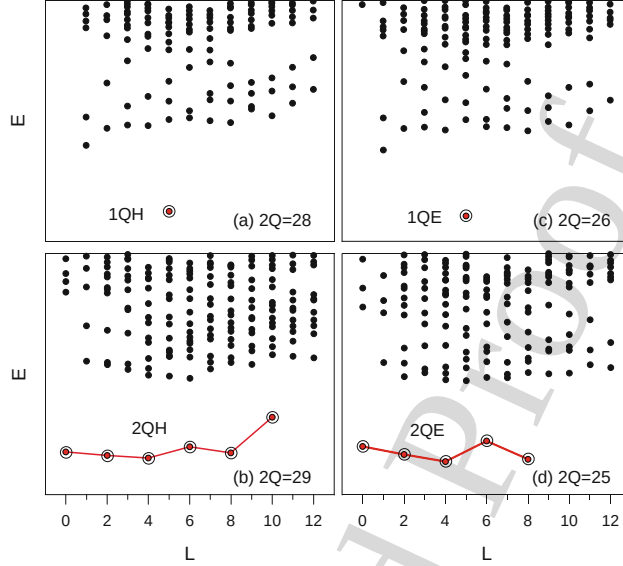


Fig. 16.3. The energy spectra of 10 electrons in the lowest Landau level calculated on a Haldane sphere with $2Q = 28, 29, 26, 25$. The *open circles* and *solid lines* mark the lowest energy bands with the fewest composite fermion quasiparticles of $n_{\text{QH}} = 1$ for $2Q = 28$ in (a), $n_{\text{QH}} = 2$ for $2Q = 29$ in (b), $n_{\text{QE}} = 1$ for $2Q = 26$ in (c), and $n_{\text{QE}} = 2$ for $2Q = 25$ in (d)

$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1$ being the center-of-mass and relative coordinates, respectively. 200
The energy spectra for the center-of-mass and relative motion of the particles 201
are identical to that of a single particle of mass μ and charge $-e$. We have 202
seen that, as given by (16.6), for the lowest Landau level, the single particle 203
wavefunction is 204

$$\Psi_{0m}(\mathbf{r}_1) = \mathcal{N}_m r_1^m e^{-im\phi} e^{-r_1^2/4l_0^2}.$$

For the relative motion ϕ is equal to $\phi_1 - \phi_2$, and the interchange of the pair, 205
denoted by $P\Psi(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2) = \Psi(\mathbf{r}_2, \mathbf{r}_1)$, is accomplished by replacing ϕ by $\phi + \pi$. 206

For two identical particles initially at positions $\mathbf{r}_1$ and $\mathbf{r}_2$ in a three dimen- 207
sional space, the amplitude for the path that takes the system from the initial 208
state $(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2)$ to the same final state $(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2)$ depends on the angle of rotation 209
 ϕ of the vector $\mathbf{r}_{12}(=\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2)$. The end points represented by $\phi = \pi$ or 0 corre- 210
spond to exchange or non-exchange processes, and the angle ϕ is only defined 211
modulo 2π . The angle of rotation ϕ is not a well-defined quantity in three 212
dimension, but the statistics can not be arbitrary. Under the exchange of two 213
particles, the wavefunction picks up either a plus sign named bosonic statistics 214
or a minus sign named fermionic statistics with no other possibilities. Since 215
two consecutive interchanges must result in the original wavefunction, $e^{im\pi}$ 216
must be equal to either $+1$ (m is even; bosons) or -1 (m is odd; fermions). 217

In two dimensions the angle ϕ is perfectly well-defined for a given trajectory. It is possible to keep track of how many times the angle ϕ winds around the origin. Any two trajectories can not be deformed continuously into one another since any two particles can not go through each other. The space of particle trajectories falls into disconnected pieces that cannot be deformed into one another if $|\mathbf{r}_{ij}|$ is not allowed to vanish. Each piece has a definite winding number. Therefore, it is not enough to specify the initial and final configurations to characterize a given system completely. In constructing path integrals, the weighting of trajectories can depend on a new parameter θ (defined modulo 2π) through a factor $e^{i\theta\phi/\pi}$. For $\theta = 0$ or $\theta = \pi$ we have the conventional boson or fermion statistics. For the most general case, we have

$$P_{12}\Psi(1, 2) = e^{i\theta}\Psi(1, 2). \quad (16.19)$$

For arbitrary values of θ the particles are called *anyons* and satisfy a new form of quantum statistics.⁷

Let us consider a simple Lagrangian describing the relative motion of two interacting particles, the relative position and reduced mass of which are denoted by $\mathbf{r} [= (r, \phi)]$ and μ , respectively. A simple way to realize anyon statistics is to add a term $\hbar\beta\dot{\phi}$ called Chern–Simons term to the Lagrangian, where $\beta (\equiv \theta/\pi) = q\Phi/hc$ is the anyon parameter with $0 \leq \beta \leq 1$. While q and Φ are a fictitious charge and flux, θ is the numerical parameter of $0 \leq \theta \leq 1$. For example, if

$$\mathcal{L} = \frac{1}{2}\mu(\dot{r}^2 + r^2\dot{\phi}^2) - V(r) + \hbar\beta\dot{\phi} \quad (16.20)$$

the added (fictitious charge–flux) Chern–Simons term does not affect the classical equations of motions because q and Φ are time independent. However, the canonical angular momentum is given by $p_\phi (= \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{\phi}}) = \mu r^2 \dot{\phi} + \hbar\beta$. Because $e^{2\pi i p_\phi / \hbar}$ generates rotations of 2π , $\hbar^{-1}p_\phi$ must have integral eigenvalues ℓ . However, the gauge invariant kinetic angular momentum, given by $p_\phi - \hbar\beta$, can take on fractional values, which will result in fractional quantum statistics for the particles.

16.6 Chern–Simons Gauge Field

Let us consider a two-dimensional system of particles satisfying some particular statistics and described by a Hamiltonian

$$H = \frac{1}{2\mu} \sum_i \left[\mathbf{p}_i + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}_i) \right]^2 + \sum_{i>j} V(r_{ij}). \quad (16.21)$$

⁷ A. Lerda, *Anyons: Quantum Mechanics of Particles with Fractional Statistics*, Lecture Notes in Physics (Springer, Berlin, 1992) and F. Wilczek, *Fractional Statistics and Anyon Superconductivity* (World Scientific, Singapore, 1990).

Then, we can change the statistics by attaching to each particle a fictitious charge q and flux tube carrying magnetic flux Φ . The fictitious vector potential $\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}_i)$ at the position of the i th particle caused by flux tubes, each carrying flux of Φ , on all the other particles at $\mathbf{r}_j (\neq \mathbf{r}_i)$ is written as

$$\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}_i) = \Phi \sum_{j \neq i} \frac{\hat{\mathbf{z}} \times \mathbf{r}_{ij}}{r_{ij}^2}. \quad (16.22)$$

The *Chern–Simons gauge field* due to the gauge potential $\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}_i)$ becomes

$$\mathbf{b}(\mathbf{r}) = \Phi \sum_i \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_i) \hat{\mathbf{z}}, \quad (16.23)$$

where $\mathbf{r}_i$ is the position of the i th particle carrying gauge potential $\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}_i)$. Since no two electrons can occupy the same position and a given electron can never sense the δ -function type gauge field due to other electrons, $\mathbf{b}(\mathbf{r})$ has no effect on the classical equations of motion.

In a quantum mechanical system, we rewrite the vector potential $\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r})$ as follows:

$$\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}_i) = \Phi \int d^2 r_1 \frac{\hat{\mathbf{z}} \times (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_1)}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_1|^2} \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}_1) \psi(\mathbf{r}_1). \quad (16.24)$$

Here, $\psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}_1) \psi(\mathbf{r}_1)$ denotes the density operator $\rho(r_1)$ for the electron liquid and the gauge potential $\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r})$ introduces a phase factor into the quantum mechanical wavefunction.

Chern–Simons transformation is a singular gauge transformation which transforms an electron creation operator $\psi_e^\dagger(\mathbf{r})$ into a composite particle creation operator $\psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r})$ as follows:

$$\psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}) = \psi_e^\dagger(\mathbf{r}) e^{i\alpha \int d^2 r' \arg(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}') \psi_e^\dagger(\mathbf{r}') \psi_e(\mathbf{r}')}. \quad (16.25)$$

Here, $\arg(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}')$ denotes the angle that the vector $\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'$ makes with the x -axis and α is a gauge parameter. Then, the kinetic energy operator K_e of an electron is transformed into

$$K_{CS} = \frac{1}{2\mu} \int d^2 r \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}) \left[-i\hbar \nabla + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}) \right]^2 \psi(\mathbf{r}), \quad (16.26)$$

where $\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r})$ is the total gauge potential formed at the position $\mathbf{r}$ due to the Chern–Simons flux attached to other particles.

$$\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}) = \alpha \phi_0 \int d^2 r' \frac{\hat{\mathbf{z}} \times (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|^2} \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}') \psi(\mathbf{r}').$$

Hence, the Chern–Simons transformation corresponds to a transformation attaching to each particle a flux tube of fictitious magnetic flux $\Phi (= \alpha \phi_0)$

and a fictitious charge $-e$ so that the particle could couple to the flux tube attached to other particles.

The new Hamiltonian, through Chern–Simons gauge transformation, is obtained by simply replacing $\frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}_i)$ in (16.21) by $\frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}_i) + \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}_i)$.

$$H_{\text{CS}} = \frac{1}{2\mu} \int d^2r \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}) \left[\mathbf{p} + \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) + \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}) \right]^2 \psi(\mathbf{r}) + \sum_{i>j} V(r_{ij}). \quad (16.27)$$

The *composite fermions* obtained in this way carry both electric charge and magnetic flux. The Chern–Simons transformation is a gauge transformation and hence the composite fermion energy spectrum is identical with the original electron spectrum. Since attached fluxes are localized on electrons and the magnetic field acting on each electron is unchanged, the classical Hamiltonian of the system is also unchanged. However, the quantum mechanical Hamiltonian includes additional terms describing an additional charge–flux interaction, which arises from the Aharonov–Bohm phase attained when one electron’s path encircles the flux tube attached to another electron.

The net effect of the additional Chern–Simons term is to replace the statistics parameter θ describing the particle statistics in (16.19) with $\theta + \pi\Phi\frac{q}{hc}$. If $\Phi = p\frac{hc}{e}$ when p is an integer, then $\theta \rightarrow \theta + \pi pq/e$. For the case of $q = e$ and $p = 1$, $\theta = 0 \rightarrow \theta = \pi$ converting bosons to fermions and $\theta = \pi \rightarrow \theta = 2\pi$ converting fermions to bosons. For $p = 2$, the statistics would be unchanged by the Chern–Simons terms.

The Hamiltonian H_{CS} contains terms proportional to $\mathbf{a}^n(\mathbf{r})$ ($n = 0, 1, 2$). The $\mathbf{a}^1(\mathbf{r})$ term gives rise to a standard two-body interaction. The $\mathbf{a}^2(\mathbf{r})$ term gives three-body interactions containing the operator

$$\Psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r})\Psi(\mathbf{r})\Psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}_1)\Psi(\mathbf{r}_1)\Psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}_2)\Psi(\mathbf{r}_2).$$

The three-body terms are complicated, and they are frequently neglected. The Chern–Simons Hamiltonian introduced via a gauge transformation is considerably more complicated than the original Hamiltonian given by (16.21). Simplification results only when the mean-field approximation is made. This is accomplished by replacing the operator $\rho(\mathbf{r})$ in the Chern–Simons vector potential (16.24) by its mean-field value n_S , the uniform equilibrium electron density. The resulting mean-field Hamiltonian is a sum of single particle Hamiltonians in which, instead of the external field B , an *effective* magnetic field $B^* = B + \alpha\phi_0 n_S$ appears.

16.7 Composite Fermion Picture

The difficulty in trying to understand the fractionally filled Landau level in two dimensional systems comes from the enormous degeneracy that is present in the noninteracting many body states. The lowest Landau level contains N_ϕ

states and $N_\phi = BS/\phi_0$, the number of flux quanta threading the sample of area $\mathcal{S}$. Therefore, $N_\phi/N = \nu^{-1}$ is equal to the number of flux quanta per electron. Let us think of the $\nu = 1/3$ state as an example; it has three flux quanta per electron. If we attach to each electron a fictitious charge $q(= -e)$ the electron charge) and a fictitious flux tube (carrying flux $\Phi = 2p\phi_0$ directed opposite to B , where p is an integer and ϕ_0 the flux quantum), the net effect is to give us the Hamiltonian described by Eqs.(16.21) and (16.22) and to leave the statistical parameter θ unchanged. The electrons are converted into composite fermions which interact through the gauge field term as well as through the Coulomb interaction.

Why does one want to make this transformation, which results in a much more complicated Hamiltonian? The answer is simple if the gauge field $\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}_i)$ is replaced by its mean value, which simply introduces an effective magnetic field $B^* = B + \langle b \rangle$. Here, $\langle b \rangle$ is the average magnetic field associated with the fictitious flux. In the mean field approach, the magnetic field due to attached flux tubes is evenly spread over the occupied area $\mathcal{S}$. The mean field composite fermions obtained in this way move in an effective magnetic field B^* . Since, for $\nu = 1/3$ state, B corresponds to three flux quanta per electron and $\langle b \rangle$ corresponds to two flux quanta per electron directed opposite to the original magnetic field B , we see that $B^* = \frac{1}{3}B$. The effective magnetic field B^* acting on the composite fermions gives a composite fermion Landau level containing $\frac{1}{3}N_\phi$ states, or exactly enough states to accommodate our N particles. Therefore, the $\nu = 1/3$ electron Landau level is converted, by the composite fermion transformation, to a $\nu^* = 1$ composite fermion Landau level. Now, the ground state is the antisymmetric product of single particle states containing N composite fermions in exactly N states. The properties of a filled (composite fermion) Landau level is well investigated in two dimension. The fluctuations about the mean field can be treated by standard many body perturbation theory. The vector potential associated with fluctuation beyond the mean field level is given by $\delta\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}) - \langle \mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}) \rangle$. The perturbation to the mean field Hamiltonian contains both linear and quadratic terms in $\delta\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r})$, resulting in both two body and three body interaction terms.

The idea of a composite fermion was introduced initially to represent an electron with an attached flux tube which carries an even number $\alpha (= 2p)$ of flux quanta. In the mean field approximation the composite fermion filling factor ν^* is given by the number of flux quanta per electron of the dc field less the composite fermion flux per electron, i.e.

$$\nu^{*-1} = \nu^{-1} - \alpha. \quad (16.28)$$

We remember that ν^{-1} is equal to the number of flux quanta of the applied magnetic field B per electron, and α is the (even) number of Chern–Simons flux quanta (oriented oppositely to the applied magnetic field B) attached to each electron in the Chern–Simons transformation. Negative ν^* means the effective magnetic field B^* seen by the composite fermions is oriented opposite to the original magnetic field B . Equation (16.28) implies that when

496 16 The Fractional Quantum Hall Effect

$\nu^* = \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$ and a nondegenerate mean field composite fermion ground state occurs, then

$$\nu = \frac{\nu^*}{1 + \alpha\nu^*} \quad (16.29)$$

generates, for $\alpha = 2$, condensed states at $\nu = 1/3, 2/5, 3/7, \dots$ and $\nu = 1, 2/3, 3/5, \dots$. These are the most pronounced fractional quantum Hall states observed in experiment. The $\nu^* = 1$ states correspond to Laughlin $\nu = \frac{1}{1+\alpha}$ states. If ν^* is not an integer, the low lying states contain a number of quasiparticles ($N_{QP} \leq N$) in the neighboring incompressible state with integral ν^* . The mean field Hamiltonian of noninteracting composite fermions is known to give a good description of the low lying states of interacting electrons in the lowest Landau level.

It is quite remarkable to note that the mean field picture predicts not only the *Jain sequence* of incompressible ground states, given by $\nu = \frac{\nu^*}{1+2p\nu^*}$ (with integer p), but also the correct band of low energy states for any value of the applied magnetic field. This is illustrated very nicely for the case of N electrons on a Haldane sphere. In the spherical geometry, one can introduce an effective monopole strength $2Q^*$ seen by one composite fermion. When the monopole strength seen by an electron has the value $2Q$, $2Q^*$ is given, since the α flux quanta attached to every other composite fermion must be subtracted from the original monopole strength $2Q$, by

$$2Q^* = 2Q - \alpha(N - 1). \quad (16.30)$$

This equation reflects the fact that a given composite fermion senses the vector potential produced by the Chern–Simons flux on all other particles, but not its own Chern–Simons flux.

Now, $|Q^*| = l_0^*$ plays the role of the angular momentum of the lowest composite fermion shell just as $Q = l_0$ was the angular momentum of the lowest electron shell. When $2Q$ is equal to an odd integer $(1+\alpha)$ times $(N-1)$, the composite fermion shell l_0^* is completely filled ($\nu^* = 1$), and an $L = 0$ incompressible Laughlin state at filling factor $\nu = (1+\alpha)^{-1}$ results. When $2|Q^*| + 1$ is smaller than N , quasielectrons appear in the shell $l_{QE} = l_0^* + 1$. Similarly, when $2|Q^*| + 1$ is larger than N , quasiholes appear in the shell $l_{QH} = l_0^*$. The low-energy sector of the energy spectrum consists of the states with the minimum number of quasiparticle excitations required by the value of $2Q^*$ and N . The first excited band of states will contain one additional quasielectron – quasihole pair. The total angular momentum of these states in the lowest energy sector can be predicted by addition of the angular momenta (l_{QH} or l_{QE}) of the n_{QH} or n_{QE} quasiparticles treated as identical fermions. In Table 16.2 we demonstrate how these allowed L values are found for a ten electron system with $2Q$ in the range $29 \geq 2Q \geq 15$. By comparing with numerical results presented in Fig. 16.1, one can readily observe that the total angular momentum multiplets appearing in the lowest energy sector are correctly predicted by this simple mean field Chern–Simons picture.

Table 16.2. The effective CF monopole strength $2Q^*$, the number of CF quasiparticles (quasiholes n_{QH} and quasielectrons n_{QE}), the quasiparticle angular momenta l_{QE} and l_{QH} , the composite fermion and electron filling factors ν^* and ν , and the angular momenta L of the lowest lying band of multiplets for a ten electron system at $2Q$ between 29 and 15

$2Q$	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	15
$2Q^*$	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	-3
n_{QH}	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
n_{QE}	0	0	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	6
l_{QH}	5.5	5	4.5	4	3.5	3	2.5	2	1.5	1.5
l_{QE}	6.5	6	5.5	5	4.5	4	3.5	3	2.5	2.5
ν^*			1						2	-2
ν			1/3						2/5	2/3
L	10,8,6,	5	0	5	8,6,4,	9,7,6,5,	8,6,5,	5,3,1	0	0
	4,2,0				2,0	4,3 ² ,1	4 ² ,2 ² ,0			

For example, the Laughlin $L = 0$ ground state at $\nu = 1/3$ occurs when $2l_0^* = N - 1$, so that the N composite fermions fill the lowest shell with angular momentum $l_0^* (= \frac{N-1}{2})$. The composite fermion quasielectron and quasihole states occur at $2l_0^* = N - 1 \pm 1$ and have one too many (for quasielectron) or one too few (for quasihole) quasiparticles to give integral filling. The single quasiparticle states ($n_{QP} = 1$) occur at angular momentum $N/2$, for example, at $l_{QE} = 5$ with $2Q^* = 8$ and $l_{QH} = 5$ with $2Q^* = 10$ for $N = 10$ as indicated in Table 16.2. The two quasielectron or two quasihole states ($n_{QP} = 2$) occur at $2l_0^* = N - 1 \mp 2$, and they have $2l_{QE} = N - 1$ and $2l_{QH} = N + 1$. For example, we expect that, for $N = 10$, $l_{QE} = 4.5$ with $2Q^* = 7$ and $l_{QH} = 5.5$ with $2Q^* = 11$ as indicated in Table 16.2, leading to low energy bands with $L = 0 \oplus +2 \oplus +4 \oplus +6 \oplus +8$ for two quasielectrons and $L = 0 \oplus +2 \oplus +4 \oplus +6 \oplus +8 \oplus 10$ for two quasiholes. In the mean field picture, which neglects quasiparticle-quasiparticle interactions, these bands are degenerate.

We emphasize that the low lying excitations can be described in terms of the number of quasiparticles n_{QE} and n_{QH} . The total angular momentum can be obtained by addition of the individual quasiparticle angular momenta, being careful to treat the quasielectron excitations as a set of fermions and quasihole excitations as a set of fermions distinguishable from the quasielectron excitations. The energy of the excited state would simply be the sum of the individual quasiparticle energies if interactions between quasiparticles were neglected. However, interactions partially remove the degeneracy of different states having the same values of n_{QE} and n_{QH} . Numerical results in Fig. 16.3b and d illustrate that two quasiparticles with different L have different energies. From this numerical data one can obtain the residual interaction $V_{QP}(L')$ of a quasiparticle pair as a function of the pair angular momentum L' . In Fig. 16.2, in addition to the lowest energy band of multiplets,

the first excited band containing one additional quasielectron-quasihole pair 421
can be observed. The “magnetoroton” band can be observed lying between 422
the $L = 0$ Laughlin ground state of incompressible quantum liquid and a 423
continuum of higher energy states. The band contains one quasihole with 424
 $l_{\text{QH}} = 9/2$ and one quasielectron with $l_{\text{QE}} = 11/2$. By adding the angu- 425
lar momenta of these two distinguishable particles, a band comprising L of 426
 $1(=l_{\text{QE}} - l_{\text{QH}}) \leq L \leq 10(=l_{\text{QE}} + l_{\text{QH}})$ would be predicted. But, from Fig. 16.2 427
we conjecture that the state with $L = 1$ is either forbidden or pushed up by 428
interactions into the higher energy continuum above the magnetoroton band. 429
Furthermore, the states in the band are not degenerate indicating residual 430
interactions that depend on the angular momentum of the pair L' . Other 431
bands that are not quite so clearly defined can also be observed in Fig. 16.3. 432

Although fluctuations beyond the mean field interact via both Coulomb 433
and Chern–Simons gauge interactions, the mean field composite fermion pic- 434
ture is remarkably successful in predicting the low-energy multiplets in the 435
spectrum of N electrons on a Haldane sphere. It was suggested originally 436
that this success of the mean field picture results from the cancellation of the 437
Coulomb and Chern–Simons gauge interactions among fluctuations beyond 438
the mean field level. It was conjectured that the composite fermion transfor- 439
mation converts a system of strongly interaction electrons into one of weakly 440
interacting composite fermions. The mean field Chern–Simons picture intro- 441
duces a new energy scale $\hbar\omega_c^*$ proportional to the effective magnetic field B^* , 442
in addition to the energy scale e^2/l_0 ($\propto \sqrt{B}$) associated with the electron– 443
electron Coulomb interaction. The Chern–Simons gauge interactions convert 444
the electron system to the composite fermion system. The Coulomb interac- 445
tion lifts the degeneracy of the noninteracting electron bands. The low lying 446
multiplets of interacting electrons will be contained in a band of width e^2/l_0 447
about the lowest electron Landau level. The noninteracting composite fermion 448
spectrum contains a number of bands separated by $\hbar\omega_c^*$. However, for large 449
values of the applied magnetic field B , the Coulomb energy can be made 450
arbitrarily small compared to the Chern–Simons energy $\hbar\omega_c^*$, resulting in the 451
former being too small to reproduce the separation of levels present in the 452
mean field composite fermion spectrum. The new energy scale is very large 453
compared with the Coulomb scale, and it is totally irrelevant to the deter- 454
mination of the low energy spectrum. Despite the satisfactory description of 455
the allowed angular momentum multiplets, the magnitude of the mean field 456
composite fermion energies is completely wrong. The structure of the low- 457
energy states is quite similar to that of the fully interacting electron system 458
but completely different from that of the noninteracting system. The magne- 459
toroton energy does not occur at the effective cyclotron energy $\hbar\omega_c^*$. What 460
is clear is that the success of the composite fermion picture does not result 461
from a cancellation between Chern–Simons gauge interactions and Coulomb 462
interactions. 463

16.8 Fermi Liquid Picture

464

The numerical result of the type displayed in Fig. 16.2 could be understood in a very simple way within the composite fermion picture. For the 10 particle system, the Laughlin $\nu = 1/3$ incompressible ground state at $L = 0$ occurs for $2Q = 3(N - 1) = 27$. The low lying excited states consist of a single quasiparticle pair, with the quasielectron and quasihole having angular momentum $l_{QE} = 11/2$ and $l_{QH} = 9/2$. The mean field composite fermion picture does not account for quasiparticle interactions and would give a magnetoroton band of degenerate states with $1 \leq L \leq 10$ at $2Q = 27$. It also predicts the degeneracies of the bands of two identical quasielectron states at $2Q = 25$ and of two identical quasihole states at $2Q = 29$.

The energy spectra of states containing more than one composite fermion quasiparticle can be described in the following phenomenological *Fermi liquid model*. The creation of an elementary excitation, quasielectron or quasihole, in a Laughlin incompressible ground state requires a finite energy, ε_{QE} or ε_{QH} , respectively. In a state containing more than one Laughlin quasiparticles, quasiparticles interact with one another through appropriate quasiparticle-quasiparticle *pseudopotentials*, $V_{QP-QP'}$. Here, $V_{QP-QP'}(L')$ is defined as the interaction energy of a pair of electrons as a function of the total angular momentum L' of the pair.

An estimate of the quasiparticle energies can be obtained by comparing the energy of a single quasielectron (for example, for the 10 electron system, the energy of the ground state at $L = N/2 = 5$ for $2Q = 27 - 1 = 26$) or a single quasihole (the $L = N/2 = 5$ ground state at $2Q = 27 + 1 = 28$ for the 10 electron system) with the Laughlin $L = 0$ ground state at $2Q = 27$. There can be finite size effects, because the quasiparticle states occur at different values of $2Q$ from that of the ground state. But estimation of reliable ε_{QE} and ε_{QH} should be possible for a macroscopic system by using the correct magnetic length $l_0 = R/\sqrt{Q}$ (R is the radius of the Haldane sphere) in the units of energy e^2/l_0 at each value of $2Q$ and by extrapolating the results as a function of N^{-1} to an infinite system.⁸

The quasiparticle pseudopotentials $V_{QP-QP'}$ can be obtained by subtracting from the energies of the two quasiparticle states obtained numerically, for example, for the ten particle system at $2Q = 25$ (2QE state), $2Q = 27$ (QE - QH state), and $2Q = 29$ (2QH state) the energy of the Laughlin ground state at $2Q = 27$ and two energies of appropriate noninteracting quasiparticles. As for the single quasiparticle, the energies calculated at different $2Q$ must be taken in correct units of $e^2/l_0 = \sqrt{Q}e^2/R$ to avoid finite size effects.

⁸ P. Sitko, S.-N. Yi, K.-S. Yi, J.J. Quinn, Phys. Rev. Lett. **76**, 3396 (1996).

16.9 Pseudopotentials

503

Electron pair states in the spherical geometry are characterized by a pair 504
angular momentum $L' (=L_{12})$. The Wigner–Eckart theorem tells us that the 505
interaction energy $V_n(L')$ depends only on L' and the Landau level index n . 506
The reason of the success of the mean field Chern–Simons picture can be 507
seen by examining the behavior of the pseudopotential $V_{QP-QP'}(L')$ of a pair 508
of particles. In the mean field approximation the energy necessary to create 509
a quasielectron–quasihole pair is $\hbar\omega_c^*$. However, the quasiparticles will inter- 510
act with the Laughlin condensed state through the fluctuation Hamiltonian. 511
The renormalized quasiparticle energy will include this self-energy, which is 512
difficult to calculate. We can determine the quasiparticle energies phenomeno- 513
logically using exact numerical results as input data. The picture we are using 514
is very reminiscent of Fermi liquid theory. The ground state is the Laughlin 515
condensed state; it plays the role of a vacuum state. The elementary excita- 516
tions are quasielectrons and quasiholes. The total energy can be expressed as 517
518

$$E = E_0 + \sum_{QP} \varepsilon_{QP} n_{QP} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{QP, QP'} V_{QP-QP'}(L) n_{QP} n_{QP'}. \quad (16.31) \quad 519$$

The last term represents the interactions between pair of quasiparticles in 520
a state of angular momentum L . One can take the energy spectra of finite 521
systems, and compare the two quasiparticle states, such as $|2QE\rangle$, $|2QH\rangle$, or 522
 $|1QE + 1QH\rangle$, with the composite fermion picture. The values of $V_{QP-QP'}(L)$ 523
are obtained by subtracting the energies of the noninteracting quasiparticles 524
from the numerical values of $E(L)$ for the $|1QP + 1QP'\rangle$ states after the 525
appropriate positive background energy correction. It is worth noting that 526
the interaction energy for unlike quasiparticles depends on the total angular 527
momentum L while for like quasiparticles it depends on the relative angular 528
momentum $\mathcal{R}$, which is defined by $\mathcal{R} = L_{\text{Max}} - L$. One can understand it 529
by considering the motions in the two dimensional plane. Oppositely charged 530
quasiparticles form bound states, in which both charges drift in the direction 531
perpendicular to the line connecting them, and their spatial separation is 532
related to the total angular momentum L . Like charges repel one another 533
orbiting around one another due to the effect of the dc magnetic field. Their 534
separation is related to their relative angular momentum $\mathcal{R}$.⁹ 535

If $V_{QP-QP'}(L')$ is a “harmonic” pseudopotential of the form 536

$$V_H(L') = A + BL'(L' + 1)$$

⁹ The angular momentum L_{12} of a pair of identical fermions in an angular momen-
tum shell or a Landau level is quantized, and the convenient quantum number
to label the pair states is the relative angular momentum $\mathcal{R} = 2l_{QP} - L_{12}$ (on a
sphere) or relative angular momentum m (on a plane).

every angular momentum multiplet having the same value of the total angular momentum L has the same energy. Here, A and B are constants and we mean that the interactions, which couple only states with the same total angular momentum, introduce no correlations. Any linear combination of eigenstates with the same total angular momentum has the same energy. We define $V_{\text{QP-QP}'}(L')$ to be “superharmonic” (“subharmonic”) at $L' = 2l - \mathcal{R}$ if it increases (decreases) approaching this value more quickly (slowly) than the harmonic pseudopotential appropriate at $L' - 2$. For harmonic and subharmonic pseudopotentials, Laughlin correlations do not occur. In Figs. 16.3b and d, it is clear that residual quasiparticle–quasiparticle interactions are present. If they were not present, then all of the 2QE states in frame (b) would be degenerate, as would all of the 2QH states in frame (d). In fact, these frames give us the pseudopotentials $V_{\text{QE}}(\mathcal{R})$ and $V_{\text{QH}}(\mathcal{R})$, up to an overall constant, describing the interaction energy of pairs with angular momentum $L' = 2l - \mathcal{R}$.

Figure 16.4 gives a plot of $V_n(L')$ vs $L'(L' + 1)$ for the $n = 0$ and $n = 1$ Landau levels. For electrons in the lowest Landau level ($n = 0$), $V_0(L')$ is superharmonic at every value of L' . For excited Landau levels ($n \geq 1$), $V_n(L')$ is not superharmonic at all allowed values of L' . The allowed values of L' for a pair of fermions each of angular momentum l are given by $L' = 2l - \mathcal{R}$, where the relative angular momentum $\mathcal{R}$ must be an odd integer. We often write the pseudopotential as $V(\mathcal{R})$ since $L' = 2l - \mathcal{R}$. For the lowest Landau level $V_0(\mathcal{R})$ is superharmonic everywhere. This is apparent for the largest values of L' in

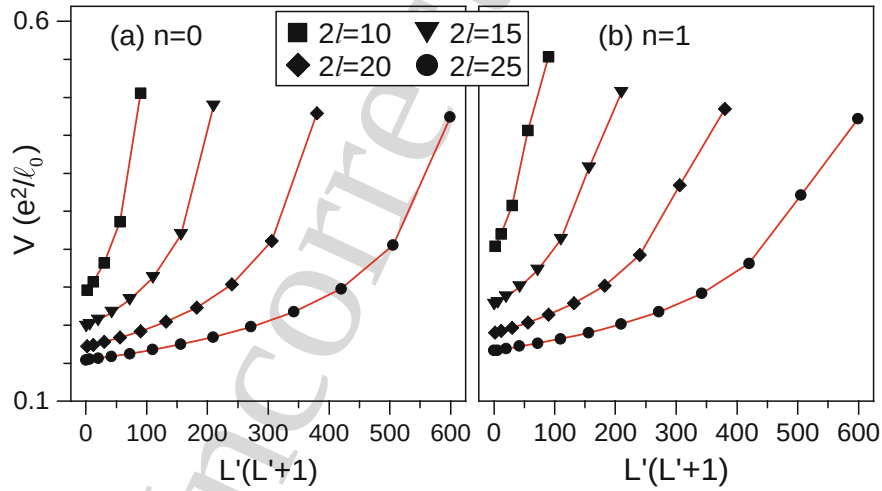


Fig. 16.4. Pseudopotential $V_n(L')$ of the Coulomb interaction in the lowest (a) and the first excited Landau level (b) as a function of the eigenvalue of the squared pair angular momentum $L'(L' + 1)$. Here, n indicates the Landau level index. *Squares* ($l = 5$), *triangles* ($l = 15/2$), *diamonds* ($l = 10$), and *circles* ($l = 25/2$) indicate data for different values of $Q = l + n$

Fig. 16.4. For the first excited Landau level V_1 increases between $L' = 2l - 3$ 559 and $L' = 2l - 1$, but it increases either harmonically or more slowly, and hence 560 $V_1(\mathcal{R})$ is superharmonic only for $\mathcal{R} > 1$. Generally, for higher Landau levels 561 (for example, $n = 2, 3, 4, \dots$) $V_n(L')$ increases more slowly or even decreases 562 at the largest values of L' . The reason for this is that the wavefunctions 563 of the higher Landau levels have one or more nodes giving structure to the 564 electron charge density. When the separation between the particles becomes 565 comparable to the scale of the structure, the repulsion is weaker than for 566 structureless particles.¹⁰ 567

When plotted as a function of $\mathcal{R}$, the pseudopotentials calculated for 568 small systems containing different number of electrons (hence for differ- 569 ent values of quasiparticle angular momenta l_{QP}) behave similarly and, for 570 $N \rightarrow \infty$, i.e., $2Q \rightarrow \infty$, they seem to converge to the limiting pseudopotentials 571 $V_{QP-QP'}(\mathcal{R} = m)$ describing an infinite planar system. 572

The number of electrons required to have a system of quasiparticle pairs 573 of reasonable size is, in general, too large for exact diagonalization in terms 574 of electron states and the Coulomb pseudopotential. However, by restricting 575 our consideration to the quasiparticles in the partially filled composite fermion 576 shell and by using $V_{QP}(\mathcal{R})$ obtained from numerical studies of small systems of 577 electrons, the numerical diagonalization can be reduced to manageable size.¹¹ 578 Furthermore, because the important correlations and the nature of the ground 579 state are primarily determined by the short range part of the pseudopotential, 580 such as at small values of $\mathcal{R}$ or small quasiparticle-quasiparticle separa- 581 tions, the numerical results for small systems should describe the essential 582 correlations quite well for systems of any size. 583

In Fig. 16.5 we display $V_{QE}(\mathcal{R})$ and $V_{QH}(\mathcal{R})$ obtained from numerical diag- 584 onalization of N ($6 \leq N \leq 11$) electron systems appropriate to quasiparticles 585 of the $\nu = 1/3$ and $\nu = 1/5$ Laughlin incompressible quantum liquid states. 586 We note that the behavior of quasielectrons is similar for $\nu = 1/3$ and $\nu = 1/5$ 587 states, and the same is true for quasiholes of the $\nu = 1/3$ and $\nu = 1/5$ Laughlin 588 states. Because $V_{QE}(\mathcal{R} = 1) < V_{QE}(\mathcal{R} = 3)$ and $V_{QE}(\mathcal{R} = 5) < V_{QE}(\mathcal{R} = 7)$, 589 we can readily ascertain that $V_{QE}(\mathcal{R})$ is subharmonic at $\mathcal{R} = 1$ and $\mathcal{R} = 5$. 590 Similarly, $V_{QH}(\mathcal{R})$ is subharmonic at $\mathcal{R} = 3$ and possibly at $\mathcal{R} = 7$. 591

There are clearly finite size effects since $V_{QP}(\mathcal{R})$ is different for different 592 values of the electron number N . However, $V_{QP}(\mathcal{R})$ converges to a rather well 593 defined limit when plotted as a function of N^{-1} . The results are quite accurate 594 up to an overall constant, which is of no significance when we are interested 595

¹⁰ As for a conduction electron and a valence hole pair in a semiconductor, the motion of a quasielectron-quasihole pair, which does not carry a net electric charge is not quantized in a magnetic field. The appropriate quantum number to label the states is the continuous wavevector k , which is given by $k = L/R = L/l_0\sqrt{Q}$ on a sphere.

¹¹ The quasiparticle pseudopotentials determined in this way are quite accurate up to an overall constant which has no effect on the correlations.

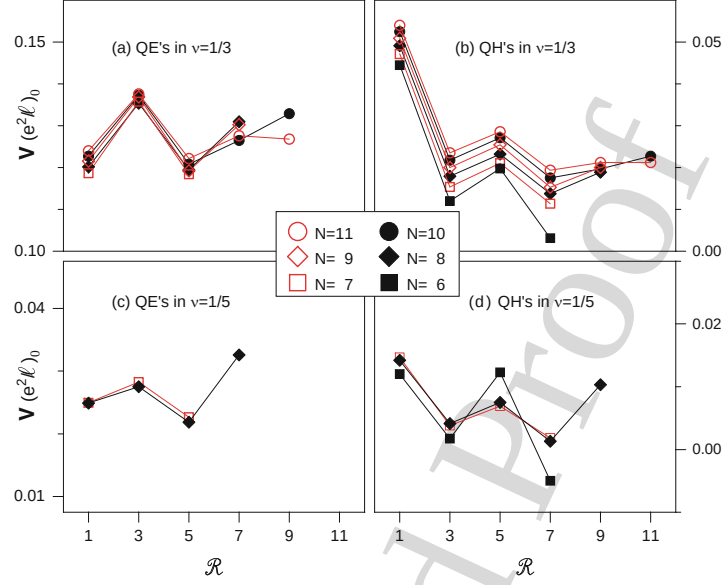


Fig. 16.5. Pseudopotentials $V(\mathcal{R})$ of a pair of quasielectrons and quasiholes in Laughlin $\nu = 1/3$ and $\nu = 1/5$ states, as a function of relative pair angular momentum $\mathcal{R}$. Different *symbols* denote data obtained in the diagonalization of between six and eleven electrons

only in the behavior of V_{QP-QP} as a function of $\mathcal{R}$. Once the quasiparticle–
quasiparticle pseudopotentials and the bare quasiparticle energies are known,
one can evaluate the energies of states containing three or more quasiparti-
cles. Figure 16.6 illustrates typical energy spectra of three quasiparticles in the
Laughlin incompressible ground states. The spectrum in frame (a) shows the
energy spectrum of three quasielectrons in the Laughlin $\nu = 1/3$ state of eleven
electrons. In frame (b) we show the energy spectrum of three quasiholes in
the nine electron system at the same filling. The results from exact numerical
diagonalization of the eleven and nine electron systems are represented by the
crosses and the Fermi liquid results are indicated by solid circles. The exact
energies above the dashed lines correspond to higher energy states containing
additional quasielectron–quasihole pairs. It should be noted that in the mean
field composite fermion model, which neglects the quasiparticle–quasiparticle
interactions, all of the three quasiparticle states would be degenerate and
the energy gap separating the three quasiparticle states from higher energy
states would be equal to $\hbar\omega_c^* = \hbar\omega_c/3$. Although the fit is not perfect in
Fig. 16.6, the agreement is quite good and it justifies the use of the Fermi liq-
uid picture to describe non-Laughlin type compressible states at filling factor
 $\nu \neq \frac{1}{2p+1}$.

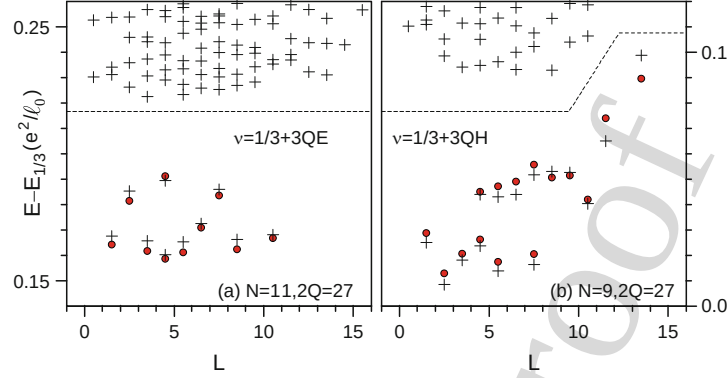


Fig. 16.6. The energy spectra of three quasielectrons (a) and three quasiholes (b) in the Laughlin $\nu = 1/3$ state. The solid circles denote the Fermi liquid calculation using pseudopotentials illustrated in Figs. 16.5a and b. The crosses correspond to exact spectra obtained in full diagonalization of the Coulomb interaction for electrons of $N = 11$ (a) and $N = 9$ (b) at $2Q = 27$

16.10 Angular Momentum Eigenstates

615

We have already seen that a spin polarized shell containing N fermions each with angular momentum l can be described by eigenfunctions of the total angular momentum $\hat{L} = \sum_i \hat{l}_i$ and its z -component $M = \sum_i m_i$. We define $f_L(N, l)$ as the number of multiplets of total angular momentum L that can be formed from N fermions each with angular momentum l . We usually label these multiplets as $|l^N; L\alpha\rangle$, where it is understood that each multiplet contains $2L + 1$ states having $-L \leq M \leq L$, and α is the label that distinguishes different multiplets with the same value of L . We define $\hat{L}_{ij} = \hat{l}_i + \hat{l}_j$, the angular momentum of the pair i, j each with angular momentum l .

We can write¹²

$$|l^N; L\alpha\rangle = \sum_{L'\alpha'} \sum_{L_{12}} G_{L\alpha, L'\alpha'}(L_{12}) |l^2, L_{12}; l^{N-2}, L'\alpha'; L\rangle, \quad (16.32)$$

where $|l^{N-2}, L'\alpha'\rangle$ is the α' multiplet of total angular momentum L' of $N - 2$ fermions each with angular momentum l . From $|l^{N-2}, L'\alpha'\rangle$ and $|l^2, L_{12}\rangle$ one

¹² The following theorems are quite useful:

Theorem 1: $\hat{L}^2 + N(N-2)\hat{l}^2 = \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \hat{L}_{ij}^2$, where the sum is over all pairs.

Theorem 2: $f_L(N, l) \geq f_L(N, l^*)$, where $l^* = l - (N-1)$ and $2l \geq N-1$.

Theorem 3: If $b_L(N, l)$ is the boson equivalent of $f_L(N, l)$, then $b_L(N, l_B) = f_L(N, l_F)$, if $l_B = l_F - \frac{1}{2}(N-1)$.

The first theorem can be proven using the definitions of $\hat{L}^2$ and $\sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \hat{L}_{ij}^2$ and eliminating $\hat{l}_i \cdot \hat{l}_j$ from the pair of equations. The other two theorems are almost obvious conjectures to a physicist, but there exist rigorous mathematical proofs of their validity.

can construct an eigenfunction of total angular momentum L . Here, we mean 628
that the angular momentum multiplet $|l^N; L\alpha\rangle$ obtained from N fermions, 629
each with angular momentum l , can be formed from $|l^{N-2}, L'\alpha'\rangle$ and a 630
pair wavefunction $|l^2, L_{12}\rangle$ by using $G_{L\alpha, L'\alpha'}(L_{12})$ the *coefficient of fractional* 631
grandparentage. The $G_{L\alpha, L'\alpha'}(L_{12})$ produces a totally antisymmetric eigen- 632
function $|l^N; L\alpha\rangle$, even though $|l^2, L_{12}; l^{N-2}, L'\alpha'; L\rangle$ is not antisymmetric 633
under exchange of particle 1 or 2 with any of the other particles. 634

Equation (16.32) is useful because of a very simple identity involving N 635
fermions: 636

$$\hat{L}^2 + N(N-2)\hat{l}^2 - \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \hat{L}_{ij}^2 = 0, \quad (16.33) \quad 637$$

where $\hat{L}$ is the total angular momentum operator, $\hat{L}_{ij} = \hat{l}_i + \hat{l}_j$, and the sum 638
is over all pairs. Taking the expectation value of this identity in the state 639
 $|l^N; L\alpha\rangle$ gives the following useful result: 640

$$L(L+1) + N(N-2)l(l+1) = \langle l^N; L\alpha | \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \hat{L}_{ij}^2 | l^N; L\alpha \rangle. \quad (16.34)$$

Because (16.32) expresses the totally antisymmetric eigenfunction $|l^N; L\alpha\rangle$ as 641
a linear combination of states of well defined pair angular momentum $\hat{L}_{ij}$, the 642
right hand side of Eq.(16.34) can be written as 643

$$\frac{1}{2}N(N-1) \sum_{\alpha} \mathcal{P}_{L\alpha}(L_{12}) L_{12}(L_{12}+1). \quad (16.35)$$

In this expression $\mathcal{P}_{L\alpha}(L_{12})$ is defined by 644

$$\mathcal{P}_{L\alpha}(L_{12}) = \sum_{L'\alpha'} |G_{L\alpha, L'\alpha'}(L_{12})|^2, \quad (16.36)$$

and is the probability that $|l^N; L\alpha\rangle$ contains pairs with pair angular momen- 645
tum L_{12} . It is interesting to note that the expectation value of square of 646
the pair angular momentum summed over all pairs is totally independent 647
of the multiplet α . It depends only on the total angular momentum L . Because 648
the eigenfunctions $|l^N; L\alpha\rangle$ are orthonormal, one can show that 649

$$\sum_{L_{12}} \sum_{L'\alpha'} G_{L\alpha, L'\alpha'}(L_{12}) G_{L\beta, L'\alpha'}(L_{12}) = \delta_{\alpha\beta}. \quad (16.37)$$

From (16.34)–(16.37) we have two useful *sum rules* involving $\mathcal{P}_{L\alpha}(L_{12})$. They 650
are 651

$$\sum_{L_{12}} \mathcal{P}_{L\alpha}(L_{12}) = 1 \quad (16.38) \quad 652$$

and

$$\frac{1}{2}N(N-1) \sum_{L_{12}} L_{12}(L_{12}+1) \mathcal{P}_{L\alpha}(L_{12}) = L(L+1) + N(N-2)l(l+1). \quad (16.39)$$

The energy of the multiplet $|l^N; L\alpha\rangle$ is given by

$$E_\alpha(L) = \frac{1}{2}N(N-1) \sum_{L_{12}} \mathcal{P}_{L\alpha}(L_{12})V(L_{12}), \quad (16.40)$$

where $V(L_{12})$ is the pseudopotential describing the interaction energy of a pair of fermions with pair angular momentum L_{12} .

Equation (16.40) together with our sum rules, (16.38) and (16.39) on $\mathcal{P}_{L\alpha}(L_{12})$ gives the remarkable result that, for a harmonic pseudopotential $V_H(L_{12})$, the energy $E_\alpha(L)$ is totally independent of α and every multiplet that has the same total angular momentum L has the same energy. This proves that the harmonic pseudopotential introduces no correlations and the degeneracy of multiplets of a given L remains under the interactions. Any linear combination of the eigenstates of the total angular momentum having the same eigenvalue L is an eigenstate of the harmonic pseudopotential. Only the anharmonic part of the pseudopotential $\Delta V(\mathcal{R}) = V(\mathcal{R}) - V_H(\mathcal{R})$ causes correlations.

16.11 Correlations in Quantum Hall States

Since the harmonic pseudopotential introduces no correlations, only the anharmonic part of the pseudopotential $\Delta V(\mathcal{R}) = V(\mathcal{R}) - V_H(\mathcal{R})$ lifts the degeneracy of the multiplets with a given L . The simplest anharmonic pseudopotential is the case in which $\Delta V(\mathcal{R}) = U\delta_{\mathcal{R},1}$. If U is positive, the lowest energy multiplet for each value of L is the one with the minimum value of the probability $\mathcal{P}_L(\mathcal{R} = 1)$ for pairs with $\mathcal{R} = 1$. That is, the state of the lowest energy will tend to avoid pair states with $\mathcal{R} = 1$ to the maximum possible extent.¹³ This is exactly what we mean by Laughlin correlations. In fact, if $U \rightarrow \infty$, the only states with finite energy are those for which $\mathcal{P}_L(\mathcal{R} = 1) = 0$, the probability for pairs with $\mathcal{R} = 1$, vanishes. This cannot occur for $2Q < 3(N-1)$, the value of $2Q$ at which the Laughlin $L = 0$ incompressible quantum liquid state occurs. If U is negative, the lowest energy state will have a maximum value of $\mathcal{P}_L(\mathcal{R} = 1)$. This would certainly lead to the formation of clusters. However, this simple pseudopotential appears to be unrealistic with nothing to prevent compact droplet formation and charge separation.

¹³ Avoiding $\mathcal{R} = 1$ is equivalent to avoiding pair states with $m = 1$ in the planar geometry.

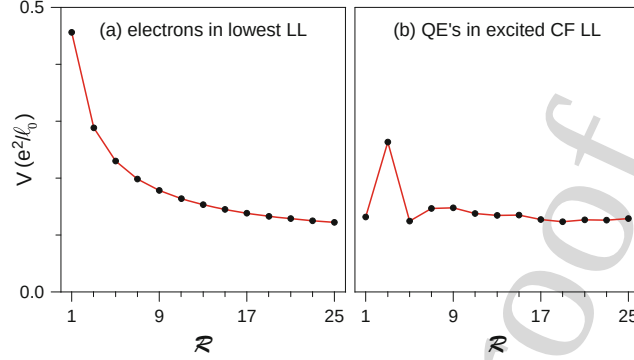


Fig. 16.7. Pseudopotentials as a function of relative pair angular momentum $\mathcal{R}$ for electrons in the lowest Landau level (a) and for quasielectrons in the first excited composite fermion Landau level (b). l_0 is the magnetic length

$\Delta V(\mathcal{R}) = U\delta_{\mathcal{R},3}$ gives the lowest energy states when $\mathcal{P}_L(\mathcal{R} = 3)$ is either a minimum for positive U or a maximum for negative U .

The pseudopotential describing the interaction energy of a pair of electrons in the first excited Landau level was shown in Fig. 16.4b. It rises faster than a harmonic potential $V_H(\mathcal{R})$ for $\mathcal{R} = 3$ and 5, but not for $\mathcal{R} = 1$, where it appears to be harmonic or slightly subharmonic. In this situation, a Laughlin correlated state with a minimum value of $\mathcal{P}_L(\mathcal{R} = 1)$ will have higher energy than a state in which some increase of $\mathcal{P}_L(\mathcal{R} = 1)$ (from its Laughlin value) is made at the expense of $\mathcal{P}_L(\mathcal{R} = 3)$, while the sum rules (16.38) and (16.39) are still satisfied. Figure 16.7 illustrates the pseudopotentials $V_0(\mathcal{R})$ for electrons in the lowest Landau level and $V_{QE}(\mathcal{R})$ for composite fermion quasielectrons in the first excited composite fermion Landau level.¹⁴ The pseudopotential $V_{QE}(\mathcal{R})$ describing the interaction of Laughlin quasiparticles is not superharmonic at all allowed values of $\mathcal{R}$ or L' .

In Fig. 16.8 the low energy spectrum of $N = 12$ electrons at $2l = 29$ and the corresponding spectrum for $N_{QE} = 4$ quasielectrons at $2l_{QE} = 9$, which are obtained in numerical experiments, are shown.¹⁵ The calculation for $2l_{QE} = 9$ and $N_{QE} = 4$ is almost trivial in comparison to that of $N = 12$ at $2l = 29$, but the low-energy spectra are in reasonably good agreement, giving us confidence in using $V_{QP}(\mathcal{R})$ to describe the composite fermion quasiparticles.

In Fig. 16.9 probability functions of pair states $\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{R})$ for the $L = 0$ ground states of the 12 electron system and the four quasielectron system illustrated

¹⁴ S.-Y. Lee, V.W. Scarola, J.K. Jain, Phys. Rev. Lett. **87**, 256803 (2001).

¹⁵ The composite fermion transformation applied to the electrons gives an effective composite fermion angular momentum $l^* = l - (N - 1) = 7/2$. The lowest composite fermion Landau level can accommodate $2l^* + 1 = 8$ of the particles, so that the first excited composite fermion Landau level contains the remaining four quasiparticles each of angular momentum $l_{QE} = 9/2$.

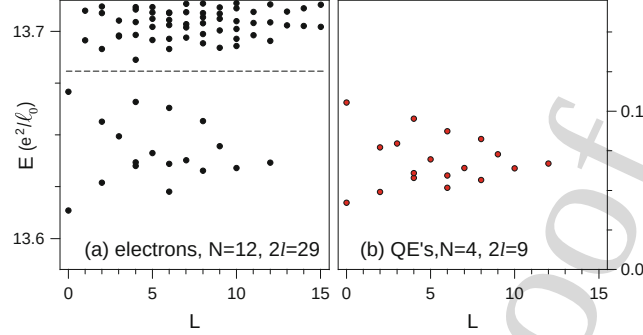


Fig. 16.8. Energy spectra for $N = 12$ electrons in the lowest Landau level with $2l = 29$ (a) and for $N = 4$ quasielectrons in the first excited composite fermion Landau level with $2l = 9$ (b). The energy scales are the same, but the quasielectron spectrum obtained using $V_{QE}(\mathcal{R})$ is determined only up to an arbitrary constant

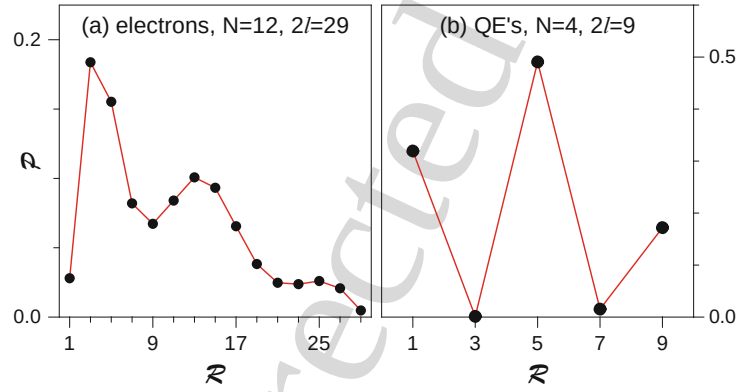


Fig. 16.9. Pair probability functions $\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{R})$ for the $L = 0$ ground states of the 12 electron system (a) and the four quasielectron system (b) shown in Fig. 16.8

in Fig. 16.8. The electrons are clearly Laughlin correlated avoiding $\mathcal{R} = 1$ pair states, but the quasielectrons are not Laughlin correlated because they avoid $\mathcal{R} = 3$ and $\mathcal{R} = 7$ pair states but not $\mathcal{R} = 1$ state.

It is known that, when $V_{QP}(L')$ is not superharmonic, the interacting particles form pairs or larger clusters in order to lower the total energy.¹⁶ These pairing correlations can lead to a nondegenerate incompressible ground state. Standard numerical calculations for N electrons are not very useful for studying novel incompressible quantum liquid states at $\nu = 3/8$, $3/10$, $4/11$, and $4/13$. Convincing numerical results would require values of N too large to diagonalize directly. However, one can look at states containing a small number

¹⁶ A. Wojs, J.J. Quinn, Phys. Rev. B **69**, 205322 (2004).

t3.1 **Table 16.3.** Some novel family of incompressible quantum liquid states resulting from pairing of composite fermion quasiparticles in the lowest Landau level

t3.2	ν_{QE}	2/3	1/2	1/3	ν_{QH}	2/7	1/4	1/5
t3.3	ν	5/13	3/8	4/11	ν	5/17	3/10	4/13

of quasiparticles of an incompressible quantum liquid state, and use $V_{QP}(L')$ 717
discussed here to obtain the spectrum of quasiparticle states. As an example, 718
Table 16.3 shows a novel family of incompressible states resulting from the 719
scheme of quasiparticle pairing. 720

Problems

16.1. The many particle wavefunction is written, for $\nu = 1$, by

$$\Psi_1(z_1, \dots, z_N) = \mathcal{A}\{u_0(z_1)u_1(z_2) \cdots u_{N-1}(z_N)\},$$

where $\mathcal{A}$ denotes the antisymmetrizing operator. Demonstrate explicitly that $\Psi_1(z_1, \dots, z_N)$ can be written as follows:

$$\Psi_1(z_1, \dots, z_N) \propto \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & \cdots & 1 \\ z_1 & z_2 & \cdots & z_N \\ z_1^2 & z_2^2 & \cdots & z_N^2 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \vdots \\ z_1^{N-1} & z_2^{N-1} & \cdots & z_N^{N-1} \end{vmatrix} e^{-\frac{1}{4l_0^2} \sum_{i=1,N} |z_i|^2}.$$

16.2. Consider a system of N electrons confined to a Haldane surface of radius R . There is a magnetic monopole of strength $2Q\phi_0$ at the center of the sphere.

(a) Demonstrate that, in the presence of a radial magnetic field $\mathbf{B} = \frac{2Q\phi_0}{4\pi R^2} \hat{R}$, the single particle Hamiltonian is given by

$$H_0 = \frac{1}{2mR^2} (\mathbf{l} - \hbar Q \hat{R})^2.$$

Here, $\hat{R}$ and $\mathbf{l}$ are, respectively, a unit vector in the radial direction and the angular momentum operator.

(b) Show that the single particle eigenvalues of H_0 are written as

$$\varepsilon(Q, l, m) = \frac{\hbar\omega_c}{2Q} [l(l+1) - Q^2].$$

16.3. Figure 16.4 displays $V_{QE}(\mathcal{R})$ and $V_{QH}(\mathcal{R})$ obtained from numerical diagonalization of N ($6 \leq N \leq 11$) electron systems appropriate to quasiparticles of the $\nu = 1/3$ and $\nu = 1/5$ Laughlin incompressible quantum liquid states. Demonstrate that $V_{QP}(\mathcal{R})$ converges to a rather well defined limit by plotting $V_{QP}(\mathcal{R})$ as a function of N^{-1} at $\mathcal{R} = 1, 3$, and 5 .

16.4. Consider a system of N fermions and prove an identity given by

$$\hat{L}^2 + N(N-2)\hat{l}^2 - \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \hat{L}_{ij}^2 = 0.$$

Here, $\hat{L}$ is the total angular momentum operator, $\hat{L}_{ij} = \hat{l}_i + \hat{l}_j$, and the sum is over all pairs. *Hint:* One can write out the definitions of $\hat{L}^2$ and $\sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \hat{L}_{ij}^2$ and eliminate $\hat{l}_i \cdot \hat{l}_j$ from the pair of equations.

16.5. Demonstrate that the expectation value of square of the pair angular momentum L_{ij} summed over all pairs is totally independent of the multiplet α and depends only on the total angular momentum L .

16.6. Derive the two sum rules involving $\mathcal{P}_{L\alpha}(L_{12})$, i.e., the probability that 744
the multiplet $|l^N; N\alpha\rangle$ contains pairs having pair angular momentum L_{12} : 745

$$\frac{1}{2}N(N-1) \sum_{L_{12}} L_{12}(L_{12}+1) \mathcal{P}_{L\alpha}(L_{12}) = L(L+1) + N(N-2)l(l+1)$$

and

$$\sum_{L_{12}} \mathcal{P}_{L\alpha}(L_{12}) = 1.$$

16.7. Show that, for harmonic pseudopotential $V_H(L_{12})$, the energy of the 747
multiplet $|l^N; L\alpha\rangle$ is given by 748

$$E_\alpha(L) = N \left[\frac{1}{2}(N-1)A + B(N-2)l(l+1) \right] + BL(L+1).$$

Summary

749

In this chapter, we introduce basic concepts commonly used to interpret experimental data on the quantum Hall effect. We begin with a description of two dimensional electrons in the presence of a perpendicular magnetic field. The occurrence of incompressible quantum fluid states of a two-dimensional system is reviewed as a result of electron-electron interactions in a highly degenerate fractionally filled Landau level. The idea of harmonic pseudopotential is introduced and residual interactions among the quasiparticles are analyzed. For electrons in the lowest Landau level the interaction energy of a pair of particles is shown to be superharmonic at every value of pair angular momenta.

The Hamiltonian of an electron (of mass μ) confined to the x - y plane, in the presence of a dc magnetic field $\mathbf{B} = B\hat{z}$, is simply $H = (2\mu)^{-1} [\mathbf{p} + \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})]^2$, where $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$ is given by $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{2}B(-y\hat{x} + x\hat{y})$ in a symmetric gauge. The Schrödinger equation $(H - E)\Psi(\mathbf{r}) = 0$ has eigenstates described by

$$\Psi_{nm}(r, \phi) = e^{im\phi} u_{nm}(r) \text{ and } E_{nm} = \frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega_c(2n + 1 + m + |m|),$$

where n and m are principal and angular momentum quantum numbers, respectively, and $\omega_c (= eB/\mu c)$ is the cyclotron angular frequency. The lowest Landau level wavefunction can be written as $\Psi_{0m} = \mathcal{N}_m z^{|m|} e^{-|z|^2/4l_0^2}$ where $\mathcal{N}_m$ is the normalization constant and z stands for $z (= x - iy) = re^{-i\phi}$. The filling factor ν of a given Landau level is defined by N/N_ϕ , so that ν^{-1} is simply equal to the number of flux quanta of the dc magnetic field per electron. The integral quantum Hall effect occurs when N electrons exactly fill an integral number of Landau levels resulting in an integral value of the filling factor ν . The energy gap (equal to $\hbar\omega_c$) between the filled states and the empty states makes the noninteracting electron system incompressible. A many particle wavefunction of N electrons at filling factor $\nu = 1$ becomes

$$\Psi_1(z_1, \dots, z_N) \propto \prod_{N \geq i > j \geq 1} z_{ij} e^{-\frac{1}{4l_0^2} \sum_{k=1, N} |z_k|^2}.$$

For filling factor $\nu = 1/n$, Laughlin ground state wavefunction is written as

$$\Psi_{1/n}(1, 2, \dots, N) = \prod_{i > j} z_{ij}^n e^{-\sum_i |z_i|^2/4l_0^2},$$

where n is an odd integer.

It is convenient to introduce a Haldane sphere at the center of which is located a magnetic monopole and a small number of electrons are confined on its surface. The numerical problem is to diagonalize the interaction Hamiltonian $H_{\text{int}} = \sum_{i < j} V(|\mathbf{r}_i - \mathbf{r}_j|)$. The calculations give the eigenenergies E as a function of the total angular momentum L .

Considering a two dimensional system of particles described by a Hamiltonian

16.11 Correlations in Quantum Hall States 513

$$H = \frac{1}{2\mu} \sum_i \left[\mathbf{p}_i + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}_i) \right]^2 + \sum_{i>j} V(r_{ij}),$$

we can change the statistics by attaching to each particle a fictitious charge q and flux tube carrying magnetic flux Φ . The fictitious vector potential $\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}_i)$ at the position of the i th particle caused by flux tubes, each carrying flux of Φ , on all the other particles at $\mathbf{r}_j (\neq \mathbf{r}_i)$ is written as $\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}_i) = \Phi \sum_{j \neq i} \frac{\hat{z} \times \mathbf{r}_{ij}}{r_{ij}^2}$. The *Chern-Simons gauge field* due to the gauge potential $\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}_i)$ becomes $\mathbf{b}(\mathbf{r}) = \Phi \sum_i \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_i) \hat{z}$, where $\mathbf{r}_i$ is the position of the i th particle carrying gauge potential $\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}_i)$. The new Hamiltonian, through Chern-Simons gauge transformation, is

$$H_{\text{CS}} = \frac{1}{2\mu} \int d^2r \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{r}) \left[\mathbf{p} + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) + \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{a}(\mathbf{r}) \right]^2 \psi(\mathbf{r}) + \sum_{i>j} V(r_{ij}).$$

The net effect of the additional Chern-Simons term is to replace the statistics parameter θ with $\theta + \pi \Phi \frac{q}{hc}$. If $\Phi = p \frac{hc}{e}$ when p is an integer, then $\theta \rightarrow \theta + \pi pq/e$. For the case of $q = e$ and $p = 2$, the statistics would be unchanged by the Chern-Simons terms, and the gauge interactions convert the electron system to the composite fermions which interact through the gauge field term as well as through the Coulomb interaction. In the mean field approach, the composite fermions move in an effective magnetic field B^* . The composite fermion filling factor ν^* is given by $\nu^{*-1} = \nu^{-1} - \alpha$. The mean field picture predicts not only the sequence of incompressible ground states, given by $\nu = \frac{\nu^*}{1+2p\nu^*}$ (with integer p), but also the correct band of low energy states for any value of the applied magnetic field. The low lying excitations can be described in terms of the number of quasiparticles n_{QE} and n_{QH} .

In a state containing more than one Laughlin quasiparticles, quasiparticles interact with one another through appropriate quasiparticle-quasiparticle *pseudopotentials*, $V_{\text{QP-QP}'}$. The total energy can be expressed as

$$E = E_0 + \sum_{\text{QP}} \varepsilon_{\text{QP}} n_{\text{QP}} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\text{QP}, \text{QP}'} V_{\text{QP-QP}'}(L) n_{\text{QP}} n_{\text{QP}'}.$$

If $V_{\text{QP-QP}'}(L')$ is a “harmonic” pseudopotential of the form $V_{\text{H}}(L') = A + BL'(L' + 1)$ every angular momentum multiplet having the same value of the total angular momentum L has the same energy. We define $V_{\text{QP-QP}'}(L')$ to be “superharmonic” (“subharmonic”) at $L' = 2l - \mathcal{R}$ if it increases approaching this value more quickly (slowly) than the harmonic pseudopotential appropriate at $L' - 2$. For harmonic and subharmonic pseudopotentials, Laughlin correlations do not occur. Since the harmonic pseudopotential introduces no correlations, only the anharmonic part of the pseudopotential $\Delta V(\mathcal{R}) = V(\mathcal{R}) - V_{\text{H}}(\mathcal{R})$ lifts the degeneracy of the multiplets with a given L .

A 1

Operator Method for the Harmonic Oscillator 2

Problem 3

Hamiltonian 4

The Hamiltonian of a particle of mass m moving in a one-dimensional harmonic potential is 5
6

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}m\omega^2 x^2. \quad (\text{A.1})$$

The quantum mechanical operators p and x satisfy the commutation relation $[p, x]_- = -i\hbar$ where $i = \sqrt{-1}$. The Hamiltonian can be written 7
8

$$H = \frac{1}{2m} (m\omega x - ip) (m\omega x + ip) + \frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega. \quad (\text{A.2})$$

To see the equivalence of (A.1) and (A.2) one need only multiply out the product in (A.2) remembering that p and x are operators which do not commute. Equation (A.2) can be rewritten by 9
10
11

$$H = \hbar\omega \left\{ \frac{(m\omega x - ip)}{\sqrt{2m\hbar\omega}} \frac{(m\omega x + ip)}{\sqrt{2m\hbar\omega}} + \frac{1}{2} \right\}. \quad (\text{A.3})$$

We now define the operator a and its adjoint $a^\dagger$ by the relations 12

$$a = \frac{m\omega x + ip}{\sqrt{2m\hbar\omega}} \quad (\text{A.4})$$

$$a^\dagger = \frac{m\omega x - ip}{\sqrt{2m\hbar\omega}}. \quad (\text{A.5})$$

These two equations can be solved for the operators x and p to give 13

$$x = \left(\frac{\hbar}{2m\omega} \right)^{1/2} (a^\dagger + a), \quad (\text{A.6})$$

$$p = i \left(\frac{m\hbar\omega}{2} \right)^{1/2} (a^\dagger - a). \quad (\text{A.7})$$

516 A Operator Method for the Harmonic Oscillator Problem

It follows from the commutation relation satisfied by x and p that 14

$$[a, a^\dagger]_- = 1, \quad (\text{A.8})$$

$$[a, a]_- = [a^\dagger, a^\dagger]_- = 0. \quad (\text{A.9})$$

By using the relation 15

$$[A, BC]_- = B[A, C]_- + [A, B]_- C, \quad (\text{A.10})$$

it is not difficult to prove that 16

$$\begin{aligned} [a, a^{\dagger 2}]_- &= 2a^\dagger, \\ [a, a^{\dagger 3}]_- &= 3a^{\dagger 2}, \\ &\vdots \\ [a, a^{\dagger n}]_- &= na^{\dagger n-1}. \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.11})$$

Here, $a^\dagger$ and a are called as *raising* and *lowering operators*, respectively. 18

From (A.3)–(A.5) it can be seen that 19

$$H = \hbar\omega \left(a^\dagger a + \frac{1}{2} \right). \quad (\text{A.12})$$

Now, assume that $|n\rangle$ is an eigenvector of H with an eigenvalue ε_n . Operate 20
on $|n\rangle$ with $a^\dagger$, and consider the energy of the resulting state. We can 21
certainly write 22

$$H(a^\dagger|n\rangle) = a^\dagger H|n\rangle + [H, a^\dagger]|n\rangle. \quad (\text{A.13})$$

But we have assumed that $H|n\rangle = \varepsilon_n|n\rangle$, and we can evaluate the 23
commutator $[H, a^\dagger]$. 24

$$\begin{aligned} [H, a^\dagger] &= \hbar\omega [a^\dagger a, a^\dagger] = \hbar\omega a^\dagger [a, a^\dagger] \\ &= \hbar\omega a^\dagger. \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.14})$$

Therefore, (A.13) gives 25

$$Ha^\dagger|n\rangle = (\varepsilon_n + \hbar\omega) a^\dagger|n\rangle. \quad (\text{A.15})$$

Equation (A.15) tells us that if $|n\rangle$ is an eigenvector of H with eigenvalue 26
 ε_n , then $a^\dagger|n\rangle$ is also an eigenvector of H with eigenvalue $\varepsilon_n + \hbar\omega$. Exactly 27
the same technique can be used to show that 28

$$Ha|n\rangle = (\varepsilon_n - \hbar\omega) a|n\rangle. \quad (\text{A.16})$$

Thus, $a^\dagger$ and a act like raising and lowering operators, raising the energy by 29
 $\hbar\omega$ or lowering it by $\hbar\omega$. 30

Ground State 31

Since $V(x) \geq 0$ everywhere, the energy must be greater than or equal to zero. 32
 Suppose the ground state of the system is denoted by $|0\rangle$. Then, by applying 33
 the operator a to $|0\rangle$ we generate a state whose energy is lower by $\hbar\omega$, i.e., 34

$$Ha|0\rangle = (\varepsilon_0 - \hbar\omega)a|0\rangle. \quad (\text{A.17})$$

The only possible way for (A.17) to be consistent with the assumption that 35
 $|0\rangle$ was the ground state is to have $a|0\rangle$ give zero. Thus, we have 36

$$a|0\rangle = 0. \quad (\text{A.18})$$

If we use the position representation where $\Psi_0(x)$ is the ground state wave- 37
 function and p can be represented by $p = -i\hbar\partial/\partial x$, (A.18) becomes a simple 38
 first-order differential equation 39

$$\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \frac{m\omega}{\hbar}x\right)\Psi_0(x) = 0. \quad (\text{A.19})$$

One can see immediately see that the solution of (A.19) is 40

$$\Psi_0(x) = N_0 e^{-\frac{1}{2}\alpha^2 x^2}, \quad (\text{A.20})$$

where N_0 is a normalization constant, and $\alpha^2 = \frac{m\omega}{\hbar}$. The normalization con- 41
 stant is given by $N_0 = \alpha^{1/2}\pi^{-1/4}$. The energy is given by $\varepsilon_0 = \frac{\hbar\omega}{2}$, since 42
 $a^\dagger a|0\rangle = 0$. 43

Excited States 44

We can generate all the excited states by using the operator $a^\dagger$ to raise the 45
 system to the next higher energy level, i.e., if we label the n th excited state 46
 by $|n\rangle$, 47

$$\begin{aligned} |1\rangle &\propto a^\dagger|0\rangle, & \varepsilon_1 &= \hbar\omega\left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\right), \\ |2\rangle &\propto a^{\dagger 2}|0\rangle, & \varepsilon_2 &= \hbar\omega\left(2 + \frac{1}{2}\right), \\ &\vdots & & \\ |n\rangle &\propto a^{\dagger n}|0\rangle, & \varepsilon_n &= \hbar\omega\left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right). \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.21})$$

Because $a^\dagger$ creates one quantum of excitation and a annihilates one, $a^\dagger$ and 48
 a are often called *creation* and *annihilation operators*, respectively. 49

If we wish to normalize the eigenfunctions $|n\rangle$ we can write 50

$$|n\rangle = C_n a^{\dagger n}|0\rangle. \quad (\text{A.22})$$

518 A Operator Method for the Harmonic Oscillator Problem

Assume that $|0\rangle$ is normalized (see (A.20)). Then, we can write 51

$$\langle n|n\rangle = |C_n|^2 \langle 0|a^n a^{\dagger n}|0\rangle. \quad (\text{A.23})$$

Using the relations given by (A.12) allows one to show that 52

$$a^n a^{\dagger n}|0\rangle = n!|0\rangle. \quad (\text{A.24})$$

So that

$$|n\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n!}} a^{\dagger n}|0\rangle \quad (\text{A.25})$$

is the normalized eigenfunction for the n th excited state. 54

One can use $\Psi_0(x) = \alpha^{1/2} \pi^{-1/4} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\alpha^2 x^2}$ and express $a^{\dagger n}$ in terms of p and x to obtain 55

$$\Psi_n(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n!}} \left[\frac{-i(-\hbar\partial/\partial x) + m\omega x}{\sqrt{2m\hbar\omega}} \right]^n \frac{\alpha^{1/2}}{\pi^{1/4}} e^{-\frac{\alpha^2 x^2}{2}}, \quad (\text{A.26})$$

This can be simplified a little to the form 57

$$\Psi_n(x) = \frac{(\alpha/\sqrt{\pi})^{1/2} (-)^n}{\alpha^n (2^n n!)^{1/2}} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x} - \alpha^2 x \right)^n e^{-\frac{\alpha^2 x^2}{2}}. \quad (\text{A.27})$$

Summary 58

The Hamiltonian of the simple harmonic oscillator can be written 59

$$H = \hbar\omega \left(a^{\dagger} a + \frac{1}{2} \right). \quad (\text{A.28})$$

and $H|n\rangle = \hbar\omega(n + \frac{1}{2})|n\rangle$. The excited eigenkets can be written 60

$$|n\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n!}} a^{\dagger n}|0\rangle. \quad (\text{A.29})$$

The eigenfunctions (A.29) form a complete orthonormal set, i.e., 61

$$\langle n|m\rangle = \delta_{nm}, \quad (\text{A.30})$$

and 62

$$\sum_n |n\rangle \langle n| = 1. \quad (\text{A.31})$$

The creation and annihilation operators satisfy the commutation relation 63

$$[a, a^{\dagger}] = 1.$$

Problems 64

A.1. Prove that $[\hat{A}, \hat{B}\hat{C}]_- = \hat{B}[\hat{A}, \hat{C}]_- + [\hat{A}, \hat{B}]_- \hat{C}$, where $\hat{A}$, $\hat{B}$, and $\hat{C}$ are 65
quantum mechanical operators. 66

A.2. Prove that $[\hat{a}, (\hat{a}^{\dagger})^n]_- = n(\hat{a}^{\dagger})^{n-1}$. 67

B 68

Neutron Scattering 69

A beam of neutrons interacts with a crystal through a potential 70

$$V(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mathbf{R}_i} v(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R}_i), \quad (\text{B.1})$$

where $\mathbf{r}$ is the position operator of the neutron, and $\mathbf{R}_i$ is the position operator 71
of the i^{th} atom in the crystal. It is common to write $v(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R}_i)$ in terms of its 72
Fourier transform $v(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{k}} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$. Then, (B.1) can be rewritten 73

$$V(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{R}_i} v_{\mathbf{k}} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R}_i)}. \quad (\text{B.2})$$

The potential $v(\mathbf{r})$ is very short-range, and $v_{\mathbf{k}}$ is almost independent of $\mathbf{k}$. 74
The $\mathbf{k}$ -independent coefficient $v_{\mathbf{k}}$ is usually expressed as $v = \frac{2\pi\hbar^2 a}{M_n}$, where a 75
is defined as the *scattering length* and M_n is the mass of the neutron. 76

The initial state of the system can be expressed as 77

$$\Psi_i(\mathbf{R}_1, \mathbf{R}_2, \dots, \mathbf{r}) = V^{-1/2} e^{i\frac{\mathbf{p}}{\hbar} \cdot \mathbf{r}} |n_1, n_2, \dots, n_N\rangle. \quad (\text{B.3})$$

Here, $V^{-1/2} e^{i\frac{\mathbf{p}}{\hbar} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$ is the initial state of a neutron of momentum $\mathbf{p}$. The ket 78
 $|n_1, n_2, \dots, n_N\rangle$ represents the initial state of the crystal, with n_i phonons in 79
mode i . The final state, after the neutron is scattered, is 80

$$\Psi_f(\mathbf{R}_1, \mathbf{R}_2, \dots, \mathbf{r}) = V^{-1/2} e^{i\frac{\mathbf{p}'}{\hbar} \cdot \mathbf{r}} |m_1, m_2, \dots, m_N\rangle. \quad (\text{B.4})$$

The transition rate for going from Ψ_i to Ψ_f can be calculated from Fermi's 81
golden rule. 82

$$R_{i \rightarrow f} = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} |\langle \Psi_f | V | \Psi_i \rangle|^2 \delta(E_f - E_i). \quad (\text{B.5})$$

Here, E_i and E_f are the initial and final energies of the entire system. Let us 83
write $\varepsilon_i = E_i - \frac{p^2}{2M_n}$ and $\varepsilon_f = E_f - \frac{p'^2}{2M_n}$. The total rate of scattering out of 84

initial state Ψ_i is given by

85

$$R_{\text{outof } i} = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} \sum_f \delta(\varepsilon_f - \varepsilon_i - \hbar\omega) |\langle \Psi_f | V | \Psi_i \rangle|^2, \quad (\text{B.6})$$

where $\hbar\omega = \frac{p'^2 - p^2}{2M_n}$ is the change in energy of the neutron. If we write $\mathbf{p}' = \mathbf{p} + \hbar\mathbf{k}$, where $\hbar\mathbf{k}$ is the momentum transfer, the matrix element becomes

87

$$\sum_{i,k} \langle m_1, m_2, \dots, m_N | v_{\mathbf{k}} e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{R}_i} | n_1, n_2, \dots, n_N \rangle. \quad (\text{B.7})$$

But we can take $v_{\mathbf{k}} = v$ outside the sum since it is a constant. In addition, we can write $\mathbf{R}_j = \mathbf{R}_j^0 + \mathbf{u}_j$ and

89

$$\mathbf{u}_j = \sum_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} \left(\frac{\hbar}{2MN\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}} \right)^{1/2} e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{R}_j^0} \hat{\varepsilon}_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} (a_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} - a_{-\mathbf{q}\lambda}^\dagger). \quad (\text{B.8})$$

The matrix element of $e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{u}_j}$ between harmonic oscillator states $|n_1, n_2, \dots, n_N\rangle$ and $|m_1, m_2, \dots, m_N\rangle$ is exactly what we evaluated earlier in studying the Mössbauer effect. By using our earlier results and then summing over the atoms in the crystal, one can obtain the transition rate. The cross-section is related to the transition rate divided by the incident flux.

90

91

92

93

94

One can find the following result for the cross-section:

95

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega d\omega} = \frac{p'}{p} N \frac{a^2}{\hbar} S(q, \omega), \quad (\text{B.9})$$

where $d\Omega$ is solid angle, $d\omega$ is energy transfer, N is the number of atoms in the crystal, a is the scattering length, and $S(q, \omega)$ is called the *dynamic structure factor*. It is given by

96

97

98

$$S(q, \omega) = N^{-1} \sum_f \left| \sum_j \langle m_1, \dots, m_N | e^{i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{u}_j} | n_1, \dots, n_N \rangle \right|^2 \delta(\varepsilon_f - \varepsilon_i - \hbar\omega). \quad (\text{B.10})$$

Again, there is an elastic scattering part of $S(q, \omega)$, corresponding to no-phonon emission or absorption in the scattering process. For that case $S(q, \omega)$ is given by

99

100

101

$$S_0(q, \omega) = e^{-2W} \delta(\omega) N \sum_K \delta_{q,K}. \quad (\text{B.11})$$

Here, e^{-2W} is the *Debye-Waller factor*. W is proportional to

102

$$\left[\langle n_1, \dots, n_N | [\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{u}_0]^2 | n_1, \dots, n_N \rangle \right].$$

From (B.11) we see that there are Bragg peaks. In the harmonic approximation 103
the peaks are δ -functions [because of $\delta(\omega)$] due to energy conservation. The 104
peaks occur at momentum transfer $\mathbf{p}' - \mathbf{p} = \mathbf{K}$, a reciprocal lattice vector. 105

In the early days of X-ray scattering there was some concern over whether 106
the motion of the atoms (both zero point and thermal motion) would broaden 107
the δ -function peaks and make X-ray diffraction unobservable. The result, 108
in the harmonic approximation, is that the δ -function peaks are still there, 109
but their amplitude is reduced by the Debye–Waller factor e^{-2W} . 110

For the one-phonon contribution to the cross-section, we obtain 111

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega d\omega} = N e^{-2W} \frac{p'}{p} a^2 \sum_{\lambda} \frac{(\mathbf{q} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{e}}_{\mathbf{q}\lambda})^2}{2M\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}} \{ (1 + n_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}) \delta(\omega + \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}) + n_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} \delta(\omega - \omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}) \}. \quad (\text{B.12})$$

There are still unbroadened δ -function peaks at $\varepsilon_f \pm \hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda} = \varepsilon_i$, corresponding 112
to the emission or absorption of a phonon. The peaks occur at a scattering 113
angle determined from $\mathbf{p}' - \mathbf{p} = \mathbf{q} + \mathbf{K}$ where $\mathbf{K}$ is a reciprocal lattice vector. 114
The amplitude again contains the Debye–Waller factor e^{-2W} . Inelastic neu- 115
tron scattering allows a experimentalist to determine the phonon frequencies 116
 $\omega_{\mathbf{q}\lambda}$ as a function of $\mathbf{q}$ and of λ . 117

The broadening of the δ -function peaks occurs only when anharmonic 118
terms are included in the calculation. Anharmonic forces lead to phonon– 119
phonon scattering and to finite phonon lifetimes. 120

	121
References	122
N.W. Ashcroft, N.D. Mermin, <i>Solid State Physics</i> (Thomson Learning, 1976)	123
O. Madelung, <i>Introduction to Solid-State Theory</i> (Springer, Berlin, 1978)	124
C. Kittel, <i>Introduction to Solid State Physics</i> (Wiley, New York, 1996)	125
G. Grosso, G.P. Parravicini, <i>Solid State Physics</i> (Academic, London, 2000)	126
H. Ibach, H. Lüth, <i>Solid-State Physics An Introduction to Principles of Material Science</i> (Springer, Heidelberg, 1995)	127
F.S. Levin, <i>An Introduction to Quantum Theory</i> (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2002)	128
Chapter 1 Crystal Structures	130
	131
R.W.G. Wyckoff, <i>Crystal Structures</i> , vol. 1–5 (Wiley, New York, 1963–1968)	132
G. Burns, <i>Solid State Physics</i> (Academic, New York, 1985)	133
Chapter 2 Lattice Vibrations	134
	135
L. Brillouin, <i>Wave Propagation in Periodic Structures</i> (Dover, New York, 1953)	136
R.A. Smith, <i>Wave Mechanics of Crystalline Solids</i> , 2nd edn. (Chapman & Hall, London, 1969)	137
J.M. Ziman, <i>Electrons and Phonons</i> (Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1972)	138
P.F. Choquard, <i>The Anharmonic Crystal</i> (Benjamin, New York, 1967)	139
G.K. Wertheim, <i>Mössbauer Effect: Principles and Applications</i> (Academic, New York, 1964)	140
Chapter 3 Free Electron Theory of Metals	141
	142
P. Drude, <i>Ann. Phys.</i> (Leipzig) 1 , 566 (1900)	143
K. Huang, <i>Statistical Mechanics</i> , 2nd edn. (Wiley, New York, 1987)	144
C. Kittel, <i>Elementary Statistical Physics</i> (Wiley, New York, 1958)	145
R. Kubo, <i>Statistical Mechanics</i> , 7th edn. (North-Holland, Amsterdam, 1988)	146
R.K. Pathria, <i>Statistical Mechanics</i> , 7th edn. (Pergamon, Oxford, 1972)	147
A.H. Wilson <i>The Theory of Metals</i> , 2nd edn. (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1965)	148
	149

AQ: The references are not cited in the text. Please check and confirm.

Chapter 4 Elements of Band Theory	150
J. Callaway, <i>Energy Band Theory</i> (Academic, New York, 1964)	151
J.M. Ziman, <i>Electrons and Phonons</i> (Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1972)	152
W.A. Harrison, <i>Electronic Structure and the Properties of Solids</i> (Freeman, San Francisco, 1980)	153
J. Callaway, <i>Quantum Theory of the Solid State</i> , 2nd edn. (Academic, New York, 1991)	154
Chapter 5 Use of Elementary Group Theory in Calculating Band Structure	155
V. Heine <i>Group Theory in Quantum Mechanics – An Introduction to Its Present Usage</i> (Pergamon, Oxford, 1977)	156
S.L. Altmann, <i>Band Theory of Solids: An Introduction from the Point of View of Symmetry</i> (Clarendon, Oxford, 1994)	161
H. Jones, <i>The Theory of Brillouin Zones and Electronic States in Crystals</i> (North-Holland, Amsterdam, 1975)	162
L.M. Falicov, <i>group theory and Its applications</i> (University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1966)	163
M. Tinkham, <i>Group Theory and Quantum Mechanics</i> (McGraw-Hill, New York, 1964)	164
P.Y. Yu, M. Cardona, <i>Fundamentals of Semiconductors</i> (Springer, Berlin, 1996)	165
Chapter 6 More Band Theory and the Semiclassical Approximation	166
J.C. Slater, <i>Symmetry and Energy Band in Crystals</i> (Dover, New York, 1972)	171
D. Long, <i>Energy Bands in Semiconductors</i> (Wiley, New York, 1968)	172
J. Callaway, <i>Energy Bands Theory</i> (Academic, New York, 1964)	173
Chapter 7 Semiconductors	174
J.C. Phillips, <i>Bonds and Bands in Semiconductors</i> (Academic, New York, 1973)	175
A. Anselm, <i>Introduction to Semiconductor Theory</i> (Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1981)	176
P.S. Kireev, <i>Semiconductor Physics</i> (Mir, Moscow, 1978)	177
P.Y. Yu, M. Cardona, <i>Fundamentals of Semiconductors</i> (Springer, Berlin, 1996)	178
K.F. Brennan, <i>THE PHYSICS OF SEMICONDUCTORS with applications to optoelectronic devices</i> (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1999)	179
M. Balkanski, R.F. Wallis, <i>Semiconductor Physics and Applications</i> (Oxford University Press, Oxford, 2000)	180
K. Seeger, <i>Semiconductor Physics – An Introduction</i> , 8th edn. (Springer, Berlin, 2002)	181
S.M. Sze, <i>Semiconductor Devices: Physics and Technology</i> , 2nd edn. (Wiley, New York, 2001)	182
G. Bastard, <i>wave mechanics applied to semiconductor heterostructures</i> (Halsted, New York, 1986)	183
T. Ando, A. Fowler, F. Stern, <i>Rev. Mod. Phys.</i> 54 , 437 (1982)	184
T. Chakraborty, P. Pietiläinen, <i>The Quantum Hall Effects, Integral and Fractional</i> , 2nd edn. (Springer, Berlin, 1995)	185
R.E. Prange, S.M. Girvin (eds.), <i>The Quantum Hall Effect</i> , 2nd ed., (Springer, New York, 1990)	186
	187
	188
	189
	190
	191
	192
	193
	194

K. von Klitzing, G. Dorda, M. Pepper, <i>Phys. Rev. Lett.</i> 45 , 494 (1980)	195
D.C. Tsui, H.L. Störmer, A.C. Gossard, <i>Phys. Rev. Lett.</i> 48 , 1559 (1982)	196
R.B. Laughlin, <i>Phys. Rev. Lett.</i> 50 , 1395 (1983)	197
Chapter 8 Dielectric Properties of Solids	198
J.M. Ziman, <i>Principles of the Theory of Solids</i> (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1972)	199
G. Grosso, G.P. Parravicini, <i>Solid State Physics</i> (Academic, London, 2000)	201
J. Callaway, <i>Quantum Theory of the Solid State</i> , 2nd edn. (Academic, New York, 1991)	202
P.Y. Yu, M. Cardona, <i>Fundamentals of Semiconductors</i> (Springer, Berlin, 1996)	204
A.A. Abrikosov, <i>Fundamentals of the Theory of Metals</i> (North-Holland, Amsterdam, 1988)	205
M. Balkanski, <i>Optical Properties of Semiconductors</i> (North-Holland, Amsterdam, 1994)	206
Chapter 9 Magnetism in Solids	207
D.C. Mattis, <i>The Theory of Magnetism</i> vols. I and II (Springer, Berlin, 1981)	208
R. Kubo, T. Nagamiya (eds.), <i>Solid State Physics</i> (McGraw-Hill, New York, 1969)	210
W. Jones, N.H. March, <i>Theoretical Solid State Physics</i> (Wiley-Interscience, New York, 1973)	211
Chapter 10 Magnetic Ordering and Spin Waves	212
C. Herring, <i>Direct exchange between well separated atoms in Magnetism</i> , vol. 2B, G. Rado, H. Suhl (eds.) (Academic, New York, 1965)	214
R.M. White, <i>Quantum Theory of Magnetism</i> (Springer, Berlin, 1995)	215
D.C. Mattis, <i>The Theory of Magnetism</i> vols. I and II (Springer, Berlin, 1981)	216
C. Kittel, <i>Quantum Theory of Solids</i> , 2nd edn. (Springer, Berlin, 1995)	217
Chapter 11 Many Body Interactions – Introduction	218
D. Pines, <i>Elementary Excitations in Solids</i> , 2nd edn. (Benjamin, New York, 1963)	219
K.S. Singwi, M.P. Tosi, <i>Correlations in Electron Liquids in Solid State Physics</i> 36 , 177 (1981), ed. by H. Ehrenreich, F. Seitz, D. Turnbull (Academic, New York, 1981)	220
D. Pines, P. Nozières, <i>The Theory of Quantum Liquids</i> (Perseus Books, Cambridge, 1999)	221
P.L. Taylor, O. Heinonen, <i>A Quantum Approach to Condensed Matter Physics</i> (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2002)	222
J. Hubbard, <i>Proc. Roy. Soc. A</i> 276 , 238 (1963); A 277 , 237 (1964); A 281 , 401 (1964)	223
A.W. Overhauser, <i>Phys. Rev. Lett.</i> 4 , 462 (1960); <i>Phys. Rev.</i> 128 , 1437 (1962)	224
Chapter 12 Many Body Interactions – Green’s Function Method	225
A.A. Abrikosov, L.P. Gorkov, I.E. Dzyaloshinski, <i>Method of Quantum Field Theory in Statistical Physics</i> (Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1963)	226
G. Mahan, <i>Many-Particle Physics</i> (Plenum, New York, 2000)	227

526 References

- P.L. Taylor, O. Heinonen, *A Quantum Approach to Condensed Matter Physics* 236
(Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2002) 237
- J. Hubbard, *Proc. Roy. Soc. A* **276**, 238 (1963); **A 277**, 237 (1964); **A 281**, 401 238
(1964) 239
- Chapter 13 Semiclassical Theory of Electrons** 240
- I.M. Lifshitz, A.M. Kosevich, *Soviet Physics JETP* **2**, 636 (1956) 241
- D. Shoenberg, *Phil. Roy. Soc. (London)*, Ser **A 255**, 85 (1962) 242
- J. Condon, *Phys. Rev.* **145**, 526 (1966) 243
- J.J. Quinn, *Nature* **317**, 389 (1985) 244
- M.H. Cohen, M.J. Harrison, W.A. Harrison, *Phys. Rev.* **117**, 937 (1960) 245
- M.P. Greene, H.J. Lee, J.J. Quinn, S. Rodriguez, *Phys. Rev.* **177**, 1019 (1969) 246
- Chapter 14 Electrodynamics of Metals** 247
- For a review of magnetoplasma surface waves see, for example, J.J. Quinn, K.W. 248
Chiu, *Magnetoplasma Surface Waves in Metals and Semiconductors*, Polaritons, 249
ed. by E. Burstein, F. DeMartini (Pergamon, New York, 1971), p. 259 250
- P.M. Platzman, P.J. Wolff, *Waves and Interactions in Solid State Plasmas*, Solid 251
State Physics-Supplement **13**, ed. by H. Ehrenreich, F. Seitz, D. Turnbull 252
(Academic, New York, 1973) 253
- E.D. Palik, B.G. Wright, *Free-Carrier Magneto-optic Effects*, Semiconductors and 254
Semimetals **3**, ed. by R.K. Willardson, A.C. Beer (Academic, New York, 1967), 255
p. 421 256
- G. Dresselhaus, A.F. Kip, C. Kittel, *Phys. Rev.* **98**, 368 (1955) 257
- M.A. Lampert, S. Tosima, J.J. Quinn, *Phys. Rev.* **152**, 661 (1966) 258
- I. Bernstein, *Phys. Rev.* **109**, 10 (1958) 259
- Chapter 15 Superconductivity** 260
- F. London, *Superfluids* vols. 1 and 2, (Wiley, New York, 1954) 261
- D. Shoenberg, *Superconductivity*, (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1962) 262
- J.R. Schrieffer, *Superconductivity*, (W.A. Benjamin, New York, 1964) 263
- J. Bardeen, L.N. Cooper, J.R. Schrieffer, *Phys. Rev.* **108**, 1175 (1957) 264
- A.A. Abrikosov, *Fundamentals of the Theory of Metals* (North-Holland, Amsterdam, 265
1988) 266
- M. Tinkham, *Introduction to Superconductivity* 2nd ed. (McGraw-Hill, New York, 267
1996) 268
- G. Rickayzen, *Theory of Superconductivity* (Wiley-Interscience, New York, 1965) 269
- R.D. Parks, ed., *Superconductivity* vols. I and II (Dekker, New York, 1969) 270
- F. London, H. London, *Proc. Roy. Soc. (London)* **A 149**, 71 (1935) 271
- Chapter 16 The Fractional Quantum Hall Effect** 272
- R.E. Prange, S.M. Girvin (eds.), *The Quantum Hall Effect*, 2nd edn. (Springer, 273
Berlin, 1990) 274
- T. Chakraborty, P. Pietiläinen, *The Quantum Hall Effects* Fractional and Integral, 275
2nd edn. (Springer, Berlin, 1995) 276
- K. von Klitzing, G. Dorda, M. Pepper, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **45**, 494 (1980) 277
- R.B. Laughlin, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **50**, 1395 (1983) 278
- D.C. Tsui, H.L. Stormer, A.C. Gossard, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **48**, 1559 (1982) 279

AQ: Please check
if the insertion of
publisher name
and location is
correct.

- A. Shapere, F. Wilczek (eds.), *Geometric Phases in Physics* (World Scientific, Singapore, 1989) 280
F. Wilczek, *Fractional Statistics and Anyon Superconductivity* (World Scientific, Singapore, 1990) 282
Z.F. Ezawa, *Quantum Hall Effects: Field Theoretical Approach and Related Topics* (World Scientific, Singapore, 2000) 284
O. Heinonen, *Composite Fermions: A Unified View of the Quantum Hall Regime* (Singapore, World Scientific, 1998) 286
P. Sitko, S.N. Yi, K.-S. Yi, J.J. Quinn, Phys. Rev. Lett. **76**, 3396 (1996) 288

Index

- acceptor, 185
- acoustic attenuation, 417
- acoustic wave, 441
 - electromagnetic generation of, 443
- adiabatic approximation, 366
- adiabatic demagnetization, 265
- Aharonov–Bohm phase, 494
- amorphous semiconductor, 206
- Anderson localization, 205
- Anderson model, 207
- anharmonic effect, 69
- anisotropy constant, 281
- anisotropy energy, 280
- antiferromagnet, 283
 - ground state energy, 299
- antiferromagnetism, 282
- anyon, 492
- anyon parameter, 492
- atomic polarizability, 217
- atomic scattering factor, 21
- attenuation coefficient, 381
- Azbel–Kanar effect, 430

- BCS theory, 462
 - ground state, 467
- Bernstein mode, 435
- binding energy, 27
- Bloch electron
 - in a dc magnetic field, 391
 - semiclassical approximation for, 168
- Bloch’s theorem, 112
- Bogoliubov–Valatin transformation, 469

- Bohr magneton, 250
 - effective number of, 257
- Boltzmann’s equation, 83
 - linearized, 95
- Bose–Einstein distribution, 56
- Bragg reflection, 17
- Bragg’s law, 17
- Bravais lattice
 - three-dimensional, 10
 - two-dimensional, 9
- Brillouin function, 256
- bulk mode
 - for an infinite homogeneous medium, 230
 - longitudinal mode, 230
 - of coupled plasmon–LO phonon, 231
 - transverse mode, 230, 232

- carrier concentration, 182
 - extrinsic case, 187
 - intrinsic case, 184
- Cauchy’s theorem, 344
- charge density, 334
 - external, 217
 - polarization, 217
- chemical potential, 86
 - actual overall, 347
 - local, 347
- Chern–Simons term, 492
- Chern–Simons transformation, 493
 - effective magnetic field, 494
- Clausius Mossotti relation, 221

530 Index

- coefficient
 - of fractional grandparentage, 505
- collision
 - effect of, 346
- collision drag, 442
- collision time, 79
- compatibility relation, 145
- composite fermion, 494
 - filling factor, 495
 - picture, 494
 - transformation, 495
- compressibility, 29, 94
 - isothermal, 29
- conductivity
 - local, 412
 - nonlocal, 411
- connected diagram, 371
- contraction, 368
- Cooper pair, 464
 - binding energy, 467
- core repulsion, 27
- correlation effect, 317, 326
- critical point
 - in phonon spectrum, 64
- crystal binding, 34
- crystal structure
 - body centered cubic, 10
 - calcium fluoride, 13
 - cesium chloride, 13
 - diamond, 13
 - face centered cubic, 11
 - graphite, 14
 - hexagonal close packed, 12
 - simple cubic, 10
 - simple hexagonal, 12
 - sodium chloride, 13
 - wurtzite, 13
 - zincblende structure, 13
- crystal structures, 3
- Curie temperature, 266
- Curie's law, 256
- current
 - conduction, 401
 - diffusion, 401
- current density, 334
 - including the effect of collisions, 349
- cyclotron frequency, 204, 395
- cyclotron mode, 435
- cyclotron orbit
 - radius of, 412
- cyclotron resonance
 - Azbel-Kaner, 427
 - Doppler shifted, 435
- cyclotron wave, 435
- de Haas-van Alphen effect, 262
- de Haas-van Alphen oscillation, 417, 448
- Debye, 223
- Debye model, 59
- Debye temperature, 60
- Debye-Waller factor, 520
- 2DEG, 198
- density matrix, 328
 - equation of motion of, 332
 - equilibrium, 346
 - single particle, 332
- density of states, 57, 88
- depletion layer
 - surface, 197
- depletion length, 191
- depletion region, 191
- depolarization factor, 218
- depolarization field, 218
- diamagnetic susceptibility, 254
 - Landau, 261
 - of metals, 259
- diamagnetism, 252
 - classical, 259
 - origin of, 254
 - quantum mechanical, 260
- dielectric constant
 - longitudinal, 340
- dielectric function, 101
 - Lindhard, 339
 - longitudinal, 339
 - of a metal, 224
 - of a polar crystal, 225
 - transverse, 339
- dielectric tensor, 217
- diffraction
 - electron wave, 17
 - neutron wave, 17
 - X-ray, 17
- diffusion tensor, 444
- dipole moment, 215
- direct gap, 181

- direct term, 276
- disorder
 - compositional, 207
 - positional, 207
 - topological, 207
 - types of, 207
- disordered solid, 207
- distribution function
 - Boltzmann, 83
 - Fermi–Dirac, 87
 - Maxwell–Boltzmann, 84
- divalent metal, 123
- domain structure, 279
- emergence energy, 279
- domain wall, 280
- donor, 185
- Doppler shifted cyclotron resonances, 446
- drift mobility, 80
- Drude model, 79
 - criticisms of, 82
- Dyson’s equation, 372

- easy direction, 281
- effective electron–electron interaction, 463
- effective Hamiltonian, 173
- effective mass, 121
 - cyclotron, 395, 406
- effective mass approximation, 121
- effective mass tensor, 167, 171
- effective phonon propagator, 381
- effective potential, 163
- Einstein function, 56
- Einstein model, 55
- Einstein temperature, 56
- electric breakdown, 170
- electric polarization, 216
- electrical conductivity, 80, 97
 - intrinsic, 180
- electrical susceptibility, 221
- electrical susceptibility tensor, 217
- electrodynamics of metal, 409
- electron–electron interaction, 326, 374
- electron–hole continuum, 351
- electron–phonon interaction, 462
- elementary excitation, 44
- empty lattice band, 137

- ensemble
 - canonical, 86
 - grand canonical, 86
- enthalpy, 89
- entropy, 89
- envelope function, 173
- envelope wave function, 199
- equation of states
 - Fermi gas, 94
- Euler’s relation, 89
- Evjen method, 30
- Ewald construction, 19
- exchange field, 275
- exchange interaction, 303
 - direct exchange, 303
 - double exchange, 304
 - indirect exchange, 303
 - superexchange, 303
- exchange term, 276
- exchange–correlation potential, 198
- exclusion principle, 84
- extended states, 205

- Faraday effect, 446
- Fermi energy, 85
- Fermi function integrals, 91
- Fermi liquid, 384
- Fermi liquid picture, 499
- Fermi liquid theory, 383
- Fermi temperature, 85
- Fermi velocity, 85
- Fermi–Dirac statistics, 84
- Fermi–Thomas screening parameter, 380
- ferrimagnet, 283
- ferromagnetism, 266
- field effect transistor, 199
- finite size effect, 502
- first Brillouin zone, 52
- Floquet’s theorem, 112
- flux penetration, 477
- free electron model, 118
- free energy
 - Gibbs, 89
 - Helmholtz, 89
- Friedel oscillation, 351

- gap parameter, 473
- gauge invariance, 335

532 Index

- generation current, 193
- geometric resonance, 448
- geometric structure amplitude, 22
- giant quantum oscillation, 448
- glide plane, 8
- grand partition function, 86
- graphene, 124, 159
- Green's function, 361, 368
- group, 3
 - 2mm, 6
 - 4mm, 5
 - Abelian, 4
 - class, 130
 - cyclic, 130
 - generator, 130
 - multiplication, 3
 - multiplication table, 4
 - of matrices, 131
 - of wave vector, 138
 - order of, 130
 - point, 4
 - representation, 131
 - space, 8
 - translation, 4
- group representation, 131
 - character of, 135
 - faithful, 134
 - irreducible, 135
 - reducible, 134
 - regular, 134
 - unfaithful, 134
- GW** approximation, 373
- Haldane sphere, 486
- Hall coefficient, 101
- hard direction, 281
- harmonic approximation, 38
- Hartree potential, 198
- Hartree–Fock approximation, 314
 - ferromagnetism of a degenerate electron gas in, 316
- heat capacity
 - Debye model, 59
 - due to antiferromagnetic magnons, 303
 - Dulong–Petit law, 54
 - Einstein model, 55
- Heisenberg antiferromagnet
 - zero-temperature, 286
- Heisenberg exchange interaction, 275
- Heisenberg ferromagnet
 - zero-temperature, 283
- Heisenberg picture, 362
- helicon, 433
- helicon frequency, 446
- helicon–phonon coupling, 446
- hole, 171
- Holstein–Primakoff transformation, 287
- hopping term, 208
- Hund's rules, 251
- hybrid-magnetoplasma modes, 434
- improper rotation, 148
- impurity band, 194, 208
- indirect gap, 181
- insulator, 123
- interaction
 - direct, 326
 - exchange, 326
- interaction representation, 363
- intermediate state, 477
- internal energy, 28, 89
- itinerant electrons, 304
- itinerant ferromagnetism, 304
- Jain sequence, 496
- Kohn anomaly, 354
- Kohn effect, 353, 381
- $\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{p}$ method, 165
- Kramers–Kronig relation, 344
- Landé g -factor, 251
- Landau damping, 435
- Landau gauge, 203
- Landau level, 483, 484
 - filling factor, 205
- Landau's interaction parameter, 384
- Langevin function, 223, 256
- lattice, 3
 - with a basis, 7
 - Bravais, 7
 - hexagonal, 10
 - monoclinic, 10
 - oblique, 10
 - orthorhombic, 10
 - reciprocal, 15
 - rectangular, 9

- square, 9
- tetragonal, 10
- translation vector, 3
- triclinic, 10
- trigonal, 10
- lattice vibration, 37
 - acoustic mode, 48
 - anharmonic effect, 69
 - dispersion relation, 50
 - equation of motion, 38
 - in three-dimension, 50
 - long wave length limit, 40
 - longitudinal waves, 60
 - monatomic linear chain, 37
 - nearest neighbor force, 40
 - normal coordinates, 41
 - normal modes, 41
 - optical mode, 48
 - phonon, 44
 - polarization, 51
 - quantization, 43
 - transverse waves, 60
- Laudau diamagnetism, 260
- Laue equation, 17
- Laue method, 23
- Lindemann melting formula, 63
- Lindhard dielectric function, 339, 380
- linear response theory, 328, 332
 - gauge invariance of, 335
- linear spin density wave, 325
- linked diagram, 372
- local field
 - in a solid, 217
- localized states, 205
- London theory, 459
 - penetration depth, 461
- long range order, 207
- Lorentz field, 219
- Lorentz relation, 221
- Lorentz sphere, 218, 219
- Lorentz theory, 82
- Lorenz number, 82
- Mössbauer effect, 44, 62
- macroscopic electric field, 218
- Madelung constant, 28
 - CsCl, 33
 - evaluation of, 30
 - Evjen method, 30
 - NaCl, 33
 - wurzite, 33
 - zincblende, 33
- magnetic breakdown, 170
- magnetic flux, 204
 - quantum of, 205
- magnetic length, 205, 392
- magnetic moment
 - of an atom, 250
 - orbital, 250
 - spin, 250
- magnetic monopole, 486
- magnetization
 - spontaneous, 293
- magnetoconductivity, 99, 401
 - free electron model, 407
 - quantum theory, 413
- magnetoplasma wave, 431
- magnetoresistance, 101, 396, 397
 - influence of open orbit, 398
 - longitudinal, 396
 - transverse, 396
- magnetoroton, 498
- magnon, 289
 - acoustic, 291
 - dispersion relation, 291
 - heat capacity, 292, 303
 - optical, 291
 - stability, 295
- magnon-magnon interaction, 291
- magnetoplasma surface wave, 440
- mean field theory, 307
- mean squared displacement
 - of an atom, 54
- Meissner effect, 455
- metal-oxide-semiconductor structure, 195
- Miller index, 14
- miniband structure, 202
- mobility edge, 209
- molecular beam epitaxy, 200
- monopole harmonics, 487
- monovalent metal, 123
- MOSFET, 199
- N-process, 72
- Néel temperature, 283
- nearest neighbor distance, 10
- nearly free electron model, 119

534 Index

- negative resistance, 195
- neutron scattering, 519
 - cross section, 520
 - dynamic structure factor, 520
 - scattering length, 519
- non-retarded limit, 239
- nonlocal theory
 - discussion of, 434
- normal form, 368
- occupation number representation, 312
- open orbit, 392, 398
- operator
 - annihilation, 517
 - creation, 517
 - lowering, 516
 - raising, 516
- optical constant, 236
- orbit
 - electron, 392
 - hole, 392
 - open, 392
- orthogonality theorem, 136
- orthogonalized plane waves, 161
- p-n junction, 189
 - semiclassical model, 190
- pair approximation, 379
- pairing, 368
- paramagnetic state, 316
- paramagnetism, 252
 - classical, 257
 - of atoms, 255
 - Pauli spin, 257
- partition function, 86
- Pauli principle, 85
- Pauli spin paramagnetism
 - of metals, 257
- Pauli spin susceptibility, 259
- periodic boundary condition, 37
- perturbation theory
 - divergence of, 326
- phase transition
 - magnetic, 306
- phonon, 44
 - collision rate, 72
 - density of states, 57
 - emission, 45
 - phonon-phonon scattering, 72
 - renormalized, 381
- phonon collision
 - N-process, 72
 - U-process, 73
- phonon gas, 74
- phonon scattering
 - Feynman diagram, 70
- plasma frequency, 102, 375
 - bare, 353
- plasmon, 239
 - bulk, 239
 - surface, 239
- plason-polariton mode, 240
- point group
 - of cubic structure, 148
- polariton mode, 234
- Polarizability
 - dipolar, 222
 - electronic, 222
 - ionic, 222
 - of bound electrons, 224
- polarizability factor, 376
- polarization part, 373, 379
- population
 - donor level, 186
- powder method, 23
- projection operator, 162
- proper rotation, 148
- pseudo-wavefunction, 163, 173
- pseudopotential, 163, 499
 - harmonic, 500, 513
 - subharmonic, 501, 513
 - superharmonic, 501, 513
- pseudopotential method, 162
- quantization condition
 - Bohr-Sommerfeld, 394
- quantum Hall effect
 - fractional, 205, 483, 485
 - integral, 205, 484
- quantum limit, 264
- quantum oscillation, 431
- quantum wave, 435
- quantum well
 - semiconductor, 200
- quasicrystal, 7
- quasielectron, 383
- quasihole, 383

- quasiparticle, 44
 - interaction, 383
- quasiparticle excitation
 - effective mass of, 383
 - lifetime, 382
- random phase approximation, 373
- rearrangement theorem, 130
- reciprocal lattice, 16
- recombination current, 193
- rectification, 194
- reflection coefficient, 236
- reflectivity
 - of a solid, 235
- refractive index, 232
- relaxation time, 79
- relaxation time approximation, 83
- renormalization factor, 382
- renormalization group theory, 307
- repopulation energy, 324
- representation
 - change of, 329
 - interaction, 363
- reststrahlen region, 234
- rotating crystal method, 23
- RPA, 373
- Ruderman-Kittel-Kasuya-Yosida (RKKY) interaction, 304
- saddle point
 - the first kind, 65
 - the second kind, 65
- Schrödinger picture, 362
- screened interaction
 - Lindhard, 374
 - RPA, 374
- screening, 349
 - dynamic, 350
 - static, 350
- screw axis, 8
- second quantization, 311
 - interacting terms, 314
 - single particle energy, 312
- self energy
 - electron, 382
- self energy part, 372
- self-consistent field, 328
- semiconductor, 123
- semimetal, 123
- short range order, 206
- Shubnikov-de Haas oscillation, 264, 417
- sine integral function, 352
- singlet spin state, 275
- skin depth, 237
 - normal, 426
- skin effect
 - anomalous, 237, 426
 - normal, 236, 425
- S matrix, 364, 388
- Sommerfeld model, 84
 - critique of, 99
- sound waves
 - first sound, 74
 - second sound, 74
- spectral function, 382
- spin density waves, 318
 - linear, 319
 - spiral, 318
- spin deviation operator, 287
- spin wave, 275, 290
 - in antiferromagnet, 296
 - in ferromagnet, 287
- spontaneous magnetization, 266, 277
- star of $\mathbf{k}$, 138
- Stoner excitation, 305
- Stoner model, 305
- structure amplitude, 22
- subband structure, 198
- sublattice, 283
- sublattice magnetization
 - finite temperature, 301
 - zero-point, 300
- sum rules, 505
- supercell, 200
- superconductivity, 455
 - BCS theory, 462
 - Cooper pair, 464
 - excited states, 472
 - ground state, 467
 - London theory, 459
 - magnetic properties, 456
 - microscopic theory, 462
 - phenomenological observation, 455
- superconductor
 - acoustic attenuation, 459
 - coherence length, 475
 - condensation energy, 472
 - elementary excitation, 473

536 Index

- flux penetration, 477
- gap parameter, 473
- isotope effect, 462
- London equation, 459
- London penetration depth, 461
- pair correlations, 462
- Peltier effect, 455
- quasiparticle density of states, 473
- resistivity, 455
- specific heat, 457
- thermal current, 455
- thermoelectric properties, 455
- transition temperature, 455, 475
- tunneling behavior, 458
- type I, 456, 475
- type II, 457, 475
- superlattice
 - semiconductor, 200
- surface impedance, 428
- surface inversion layer
 - semiconductor, 198
- surface polariton, 239
- surface wave, 237, 437
- surface space charge layer, 195
- symmetric gauge, 203, 483
- thermal conductivity, 72, 80, 97
 - in an insulator, 71
- thermal expansion, 67
- thermodynamic potential, 89
- Thomas–Fermi dielectric constant, 350
- Thomas–Fermi screening wave number, 350
- tight binding method, 112
 - in second quantization representation, 115
- time ordering operator, 365
- translation group, 3
- translation operator, 110
- triplet spin state, 275
- tunnel diode, 194
- two-dimensional electron gas, 198
- U-process, 73
- uniform mode
 - of antiferromagnetic resonance, 302
- unit cell, 8
 - primitive, 8
 - Wigner–Seitz, 8
- vacuum state, 313
- valley, 181
- Van der Monde determinant, 485
- wave equation
 - in a material, 229
- Weiss field, 266
- Weiss internal field
 - source of the, 277
- Wick’s theorem, 369
- Wiedemann–Franz law, 82
- Wigner–Eckart theorem, 500
- zero point vibration, 22